











# AFRICA

## South of the Sahara

*A Selected, Annotated  
List of Writings*



830 10007



U.S. Library of Congress, African Section.

# AFRICA

## South of the Sahara

*A Selected, Annotated  
List of Writings*

*Compiled by*

HELEN F. CONOVER

AFRICAN SECTION



GENERAL REFERENCE AND BIBLIOGRAPHY DIVISION  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT  
LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

WASHINGTON : 1963 [i.e. 1964]

15301  
1184

L.C. card 63-60087

# Introduction

This bibliographical analysis of writings on Africa south of the Sahara replaces two earlier Library of Congress bibliographies, both now out of print. When the first one, *Introduction to Africa*, was compiled in 1951 the continent was still obscure to the average American and only a handful of scholars in this country had made it their field of study. Such is emphatically no longer the case. Even when in 1957 it was decided to compile a revision covering new writings, the literature over a 6-year period had reached such proportions that two lists resulted: *Africa South of the Sahara . . . 1951-1956*, and *North and Northeast Africa, 1951-1957*. In 1963 Africa has been headline news for several years, more and more American universities are announcing courses in African studies, and the magazine reader is bombarded with feature articles on the African scene. An introductory survey of works suited to a general audience is no longer an appropriate undertaking for the Library of Congress, where the African Section has been set up to advance scholarly research in this area. The present broadly based bibliography is designed to provide the student of African affairs, for whom specialized subject matter is assuming vast proportions, with a beginning of bibliographical data in many fields.

In our scheme of coverage we interpret Africa south of the Sahara in the widest sense, including all countries except those of the Mediterranean littoral—Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libya, Egypt—and the Spanish Sahara. Thus we treat three countries, the Sudan, Ethiopia, and Somalia, which in 1957 were designated as Northeast Africa. The arrangement, as shown in the Table of Organization, is necessarily arbitrary; after the first long part in which works relating to Africa in general are arranged by discipline, the groupings are of regional, geographical, or even political import. This is because they reflect not so much the actualities of the recently changed and changing scene as they do the body of literature, much of which goes back to preindependence days. A good many items have been repeated from the two earlier bibliographies, with annotations rewritten to suit present perspectives.

The selection of references has been slanted toward the student on the graduate level or doing advanced

research. With so large a canvas it has been impossible to suggest more than a minimum on each topic, and no attempt has been made to track down obscure material; rather, we have tried to use books available in the Library of Congress collections so that our appraisals might be based on firsthand examination. When that was not possible, we have resorted to book reviews and notices. As the list is designed for serious scholars, it is assumed that those working on countries whose written language is other than English will be conversant with French, Portuguese, Spanish, or whatever is needed, and no preference has been given to less valuable material in English. Material in Arabic has not been considered. The annotations are written to indicate scope and character of works without critical comment. In a number of cases the user is referred to analytical reviews in certain well-known Africanist journals. Annotations frequently include biographical data on writers, and we trust that authors who find themselves identified by institutional connections now long in their past will understand that we have not always been able to get up-to-date information. Where titles of related works are placed in notes in fine print following other entries, it by no means implies that they are of secondary importance; it is a space-saving device by means of which we have added in the index about 1,000 references to the 2,173 numbered items.

The form of entry follows the bibliographical practice of the Library of Congress with some slight simplification—such as the omission in British official documents published by H.M. Stationery Office of the lengthy insertion [Gt. Brit. Parliament. Papers by command] and the use of the Command Paper number only. Library of Congress call numbers follow entries for material now cataloged in the collections, and the symbol DLC is used to indicate that the volume is known to have been received by early 1963. Attempts are being made to acquire almost everything for which no location symbol is shown, and by the time this list appears in print many of these may be duly recorded in the Library's public catalog. A fair proportion will no doubt also appear in the volumes of *The National Union Catalog*, which has reported holdings of the chief American libraries since 1953.



The compiler wishes to acknowledge help and advice generously given during the course of this work. One section, that on Music, was supplied in its entirety by Mr. Darius L. Thieme of the Library of Congress staff. The section on Linguistics was read and criticized by Professor William A. Welmers, that on population by Dr. Frank Lorimer, and the section and subsections on Anthropology and Ethnology by Dr. Conrad C. Reining. Mrs. Helen Kitchen reviewed and gave much-needed advice on the long general section on Politics, where choice was particularly debatable.

It has been difficult to terminate this bibliography, which has been in process for more than a year and a half. Throughout the list, no section or subsection (especially those pertaining to politics) could be con-

sidered closed, as every week's acquisitions in the Library of Congress have brought titles of new books that should be examined, and every journal opened has shown tantalizing references to new material of potential importance. We have often felt that we were working slowly backwards. The final entries were made in late April 1963, on the eve of the Addis Ababa Conference at which in May, just before this introduction was written, the Charter of the Organization of African Unity was signed by 30 independent African States. However the immediate future may change African realities, it is our purpose and hope that this background guide may serve American scholars in their search for an understanding of African questions.

HELEN F. CONOVER.

JUNE 1963.

# Table of Organization

|  |              |  |           |
|--|--------------|--|-----------|
| Introduction   |              | West Africa—Continued                                    |           |
| General  |              | Politics and Economics.....                              | 504-519   |
| Note on Bibliography (p. 1)  |              | Anthropology, Sociology, and Reli-<br>gion .....         | 520-530   |
|  | <i>Items</i> | Education and Culture.....                               | 531-538   |
| Surveys .....  | 1-28         | Natural Sciences.....                                    | 539-543   |
| Travel and Description.....  | 29-41        | Gambia .....   | 544-563   |
| Guides and Maps.....   | 42-52        | Ghana:   |           |
| History (including Archaeology, Pre-<br>history and Pre-Colonial His-<br>tory) ..... | 53-73        | Bibliography .....                                       | 564-565   |
| The Colonial Era.....  | 74-86        | General .....  | 566-577   |
| Government (including Colonial<br>Administration) .....                              | 87-104       | History .....  | 578-587   |
| Politics:  |              | Politics .....   | 588-600   |
| Political Affairs and Nationalism..  | 105-131      | Economics .....  | 601-620   |
| The Race Question.....   | 132-145      | Anthropology and Social Studies....                      | 621-650   |
| International Relations:   |              | Liberia .....  | 651-683   |
| General .....  | 146-151      | Nigeria:   |           |
| United Nations and Africa.....   | 152-155      | Bibliography .....                                       | 684-688   |
| United States and Africa.....  | 156-174      | General .....  | 689-700   |
| Communism and Africa.....  | 175-183      | History .....  | 701-714   |
| Law .....  | 184-192      | Politics .....   | 715-735   |
| Economics .....  | 193-225      | Economics and Social Studies.....                        | 736-759   |
| Social Studies.....  | 226-246      | Anthropology and Sociology.....                          | 760-790   |
| Labor .....  | 247-256      | Arts, Letters, and Education.....                        | 791-808   |
| Population .....   | 257-261      | Sierra Leone.....  | 809-837   |
| Anthropology and Sociology.....  | 262-285      | French-Speaking Africa (General) :                       |           |
| The Supernatural.....  | 286-292      | Bibliography .....                                       | 838       |
| Linguistics .....  | 293-313      | General (History, Description, etc.) ..                  | 839-852   |
| Arts and Culture.....  | 314-335      | Politics .....   | 853-872   |
| Music .....  | 336-347      | Economics .....  | 873-890   |
| Letters .....  | 348-363      | Cultural (including Anthropology<br>and Education) ..... | 891-895   |
| Education .....  | 364-390      | Former French West Africa.....                           | 896-929   |
| Christianity and Islam .....   | 391-422      | Dahomey .....  | 930-944   |
| Agriculture .....  | 423-446      | Guinea .....   | 945-960   |
| Natural Sciences.....  | 447-456      | Ivory Coast.....   | 961-981   |
| Geology and Mineral Resources.....   | 457-462      | Mali (former Sudan) .....                                | 982-1002  |
| Science and Technology.....  | 463-467      | Mauritania .....   | 1003-1019 |
| Medicine .....   | 468-478      | Niger .....  | 1020-1024 |
| West Africa:   |              | Sahara .....   | 1025-1044 |
| Bibliographies .....   | 479-480      | Senegal .....  | 1045-1068 |
| General .....  | 481-493      | Togo .....   | 1069-1086 |
| History .....  | 494-503      | Upper Volta.....   | 1087-1094 |

|   | <i>Items</i> |
|---|--------------|
| Former French Equatorial Africa-----  | 1095-1117    |
| Cameroon (Federal Republic)-----  | 1118-1152    |
| Central African Republic-----   | 1153-1163    |
| Chad-----   | 1164-1178    |
| Congo (Brazzaville)-----  | 1179-1185    |
| Gabon-----  | 1186-1204    |
| Malagasy Republic:  |              |
| Bibliography-----   | 1205-1206    |
| General (including Anthropology,<br>History, and Political develop-<br>ment)----- | 1207-1242    |
| Economics-----  | 1243-1249    |
| Réunion-----  | 1250-1258    |
| French Somaliland-----  | 1259-1266    |
| East Africa:  |              |
| Bibliography-----   | 1267-1268    |
| General (including History, etc.)---  | 1269-1286    |
| Politics and Economics-----   | 1287-1298    |
| Anthropology, Linguistics, Sociology,<br>etc.-----                                | 1299-1307    |
| Kenya-----  | 1308-1339    |
| Tanganyika-----   | 1340-1371    |
| Uganda-----   | 1372-1409    |
| Zanzibar-----   | 1410-1422    |
| Somalia-----  | 1423-1449    |
| Sudan:  |              |
| Bibliography-----   | 1450-1451    |
| General and Miscellaneous-----  | 1452-1462    |
| History-----  | 1463-1480    |
| Economics (including Nile Waters<br>Question)-----                                | 1481-1491    |
| Anthropology, etc.-----   | 1492-1503    |
| Ethiopia:   |              |
| Bibliography-----   | 1504         |
| General-----  | 1505-1518    |
| History and Archaeology-----  | 1519-1529    |
| Politics and Economics-----   | 1530-1545    |
| Anthropology, etc-----  | 1546-1557    |
| Mauritius-----  | 1558-1576    |
| Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Federation):  |              |
| Bibliography-----   | 1577         |
| General (including History, Anthro-<br>pology, etc.)-----                         | 1578-1600    |
| Politics and Economics-----   | 1601-1619    |
| Northern Rhodesia:  |              |
| General (including History)-----  | 1620-1627    |
| Politics and Economics-----   | 1628-1634    |
| Anthropology and Sociology-----   | 1635-1655    |
| Nyasaland-----  | 1656-1675    |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Federation)—                 |              |
| Continued  | <i>Items</i> |
| General (including Politics and Ec-<br>onomics)----- | 1676-1688    |
| History and Archaeology-----                         | 1689-1696    |
| Anthropology and Sociology-----                      | 1697-1703    |
| High Commission Territories-----                     | 1704-1711    |
| Basutoland-----                                      | 1712-1721    |
| Bechuanaland-----                                    | 1722-1739    |
| Swaziland-----                                       | 1740-1746    |
| South West Africa-----                               | 1747-1760    |
| South Africa:  |              |
| Bibliography-----                                    | 1761-1768    |
| General-----   | 1769-1779    |
| History (including Archaeology)----                  | 1780-1803    |
| Politics and Race Relations-----                     | 1804-1822    |
| Economics and Urban Sociology-----                   | 1823-1834    |
| Anthropology, etc.-----                              | 1835-1849    |
| Arts and Letters-----                                | 1850-1859    |
| Congo (Leopoldville):                                |              |
| Bibliography-----                                    | 1860-1868    |
| General-----   | 1869-1883    |
| History-----   | 1884-1898    |
| Politics-----  | 1899-1927    |
| Economics (including Population)--                   | 1928-1940    |
| Social Sciences-----                                 | 1941-1952    |
| Ethnology and Linguistics-----                       | 1953-1972    |
| Missions, Education, and Arts-----                   | 1973-1984    |
| Katanga-----   | 1985-1998    |
| Rwanda and Burundi-----                              | 1999-2017    |
| Portuguese Africa:                                   |              |
| Bibliography-----                                    | 2018-2022    |
| General (including History)-----                     | 2023-2033    |
| Politics and Economics-----                          | 2034-2049    |
| Anthropology, Sociology, and Cul-<br>ture-----       | 2050-2057    |
| Angola:  |              |
| General (including History and Ec-<br>onomics)-----  | 2058-2073    |
| Politics (Nationalist Revolt)-----                   | 2074-2083    |
| Anthropology, etc-----                               | 2084-2094    |
| Cape Verde Islands and Portuguese<br>Guinea-----     | 2095-2113    |
| São Tomé and Príncipe-----                           | 2114-2116    |
| Mozambique-----                                      | 2117-2141    |
| Spanish Guinea (Rio Muni and Fernando<br>Poo)-----   | 2142-2173    |
|  | <i>Pages</i> |
| Index-----   | 325-354      |



# GENERAL

## NOTE ON BIBLIOGRAPHY

Of the numerous bibliographies on Africa, most are concerned with particular regions or subject fields and are entered in the present compilation under the appropriate section headings. Certain types of bibliography, however, have general application to the continent as a whole or to all sub-Saharan Africa. Primarily, the continuing records of new publications in serial form are indispensable.

Foremost among these serials, perhaps, is *Africa*, the quarterly journal of the International African Institute, in which approximately 20 reviews of notable books are regularly followed by a classified listing of 300-odd books, pamphlets, and periodical references in all languages and in general fields as well as those of its special interests, ethnology and linguistics. (The Africa Bibliography Series now being published in regional volumes by the Library of the Institute is here mentioned in the appropriate sections; its other serial, *African Abstracts*, is preponderantly ethnological.) The bibliographical section of the *Journal de la Société des Africanistes* (Paris, Musée de l'Homme) is comparable in coverage to that in *Africa* but is less extensive, being carried in only one of two annual numbers. The American monthly for Africanists, *Africa Report*, (see no. 1), has steadily increased its bibliographic content, so that its book review section is now eminently useful. In 1962 approximately 300 books were reviewed; in addition, in most issues from 2 to 20 other titles were listed as "Books Received." The coverage is largely of monographic works, though an occasional bibliographical article is devoted to periodical literature; with few exceptions the works reviewed are in English. In *African Affairs*, the journal of the Royal African Society, the book reviews and the regionally classified general list of 70 to 100 titles of new material carried in the quarterly issues are similarly limited to monographs, mostly in English; this source is notable for its inclusion of documents and pamphlets published in Africa. The long "Bibliographie courante" of periodical references formerly published in the Belgian *Zaire* ceased with the discontinuance of that journal; it was of international cover-

age but was heavily weighted with references on the Congo. Book review and bibliographical sections in the leading Spanish and Italian Africanist journals—*África* (Madrid), *Africa; rivista bimestrale di documentazione* (Rome)—are not long, but include the interesting feature of contents notes for recent issues of periodicals from many countries.

There is general coverage of both current and retrospective material in the serial acquisition lists now being issued by several American libraries specializing in Africana, and a joint effort has been launched by a group of university libraries having large African programs. *A Joint Acquisitions List of Africana*, representing their new holdings and those of the Library of Congress, is compiled and issued quarterly by the African Department of Northwestern University Library (v. 2, 1963). Catalogs of their African collections have been published by Howard University (Washington, 1958. 398 p.) and by Northwestern University (Boston, G. K. Hall, 1962. 2 v.). Three catalogs, listing respectively serials, annual reports, and books held in the Library of the United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, are described in the annotation for UNECA (see no. 196n).

Among basic reading lists on Africa as a whole, two conspicuous examples of the last few years are the sections for Africa in the American Historical Association's *Guide to Historical Literature* (New York, Macmillan, 1961. Part 7, "Africa," by Vernon McKay, p. 745-769) and in the American Universities Field Staff's *Select Bibliography: Asia, Africa, Eastern Europe, Latin America* (New York, 1960. "Africa," by L. Gray Cowan and Edwin S. Munger, p. 195-253); entries in both are highly selective and evaluatively annotated. Another annotated list, *Africa, Its Problems and Prospects; A Bibliographic Survey*, issued in September 1962 by the Headquarters, U.S. Department of the Army (DA pamphlet 20-62, 195 p.), is continentwide but is slanted toward specific use in connection with strategic implications. Three Library of Congress publications, the *List of American Doctoral Dissertations on Africa* (1962. 69 p.), *United States and Canadian Publications on Africa in 1960* (1962. 98 p.), and *Serials for*

*African Studies* (1961. 163 p.), are of general geographical coverage but limited as to form of material. Incidentally, in the index to *Serials for African Studies* there is a heading "Bibliographies," under which are cited over 50 bibliographical periodicals and about 30 more serials which include bibliography.

The fundamental guide to African bibliographies is that of the South African Public Library in Cape Town, *Bibliography of African Bibliographies South of the Sahara*, now in its fourth edition (1961. 79 p.) It contains an impressive number of monographic bibliographies as well as reading lists included in other works. It is kept up to date by entries in the regular bibliographical sections of that library's *Quarterly Bulletin*. The arrangement is by Universal Decimal Classification, and titles of most of the old standard bibliographies can be found therein.

## SURVEYS

1. *Africa report*. v. 1, no. 1+ July 5, 1956+ Washington, African-American Institute. monthly. Edited by Helen Kitchen. DT1.A217

The African-American Institute was incorporated in 1954 as the Institute of African-American Relations, and has become increasingly influential in its avowed aim of "establishing closer bonds between the peoples of Africa and the United States." This it accomplishes through scholarship programs, teacher placement in Africa, lectures, guidance and visitor service, and notably through the publication of this journal, which is the foremost American organ for authoritative information of the survey type regarding Africa. In addition to articles and news notes in political, economic, social, and cultural fields, it has in each issue a significant section reviewing important recent books and articles on Africa.

A specially useful issue is that of November 1961 (v. 6, no. 10) constituting a "Country-by-Country Guide to Africa," with capsule summaries of current political and economic trends in 56 African states and territories.

Of the other leading magazines readily available to American readers at least three, *Africa Today* (New York), *Africa Digest* (London), and *African Affairs* (London) are almost exclusively concerned with politico-economic developments, *Africa* (London, International African Institute) with ethnology and linguistics, and so on with other special interest periodicals.

2. *Africa seen by American Negroes*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1958. 418 p. illus. DT14.A35

Includes bibliography.

Essays by leading American Negro Africanists, grouped in three sections, "Analysis of African So-

cieties," "African Art, Dance and Literature," and, taking up half the text, "American Negro Relations with Africa." The introduction is by Mr. John A. Davis, Director of the American Society of African Culture, which has ties with Présence Africaine. Among the twenty-odd contributors are the sociologists Professor St. Clair Drake of Roosevelt University, Professor E. Franklin Frazier of Howard University, Professor Hugh H. Smythe of Brooklyn University, the historians Dr. W. E. B. DuBois, known as the founder of Pan-Africanism, and Rayford W. Logan of Howard University. The last three papers by, respectively, Adelaide C. Hill of Boston University, Dorothy Porter of Howard University, and Ulysses Lee, editor of the *Journal of Negro History*, are African studies programs in the United States, a bibliography of writings by American Negroes about Africa, and American scholarly interest in Africa.

3. *Afrika heute*. 1957+ Bonn, L. Röhrscheid. illus. Edited for the Deutsche Afrika Gesellschaft by Oskar Splett. DT1.A27

An excellent symposium of articles on many aspects of African affairs by noted and competent writers, chosen on an international scale. In the 1960 edition (326 p.) there are contributions by Eugen Gerstenmaier, L. S. Senghor, Julius Nyerere, H. H. and M. M. Smythe, Franz Ansprenger, Mary Holdsworth, P. J. Idenburg, Mekki Abbas, J. S. Trimmingham, and many others. Appendixes include bibliography, chronology, a brief almanac of products by country, various tables, and directories of groups concerned with Africa.

4. АКАДЕМИЯ НАУК СССР. Институт этнографии. *Narody Afriki* [Peoples of Africa] edited by D. A. Ol'derogge and I. I. Potekhin. Moskva, 1954. 731 p. illus., col. plates, and maps. (Narody mira; etnograficheski-ocherki) DT15.A45

Bibliography: p. 665-677. (Includes many titles of works in western languages)

Edited by the Soviet's two leading specialists on Africa, this big volume is more a general than an ethnological survey, covering the continent and tracing the emergence of peoples and of national communities. Heavy emphasis is laid on "imperial exploitation" and the struggle for national independence.

A revised and updated edition is published in German translation, *Die Völker Afrikas; ihre Vergangenheit und Gegenwart* (Berlin, VEB Deutscher Verlag der Wissenschaften, 1961. 2 v.).

A more recent survey by Dr. Potekhin was published as a pamphlet, *Afrika smotrit v budushchee* [Africa Looks to the Future] (Moscow, Akademiya nauk SSSR. Institut Afriki,



1960. 86 p.). In this evaluation of the immediate present, imperialism and colonialism still loom as the chief menace threatening the young nations.

A shorter review in pamphlet form for popular orientation issued by the Institut Etnografii is by Antonina Semenovna Orlova, *Afrikanski narody; ocherki kultury, khoziaistva i byta* [African Nations: Outline of Culture, Economy and Life] (Moscow, 1958. 98 p. illus.).

The marked increase in recent Soviet publications relating to Africa is noticeable to Western scholars. In this connection there should be mentioned a bibliographical paper by Mary Holdsworth, *Soviet African Studies, 1918-59; An Annotated Bibliography* (London, Distributed for the Royal Institute of International Affairs by Oxford University Press, 1961. 2 pts. Chatham House Memoranda). A supplementary paper, *Soviet Writing on Africa, 1959-61: An Annotated Bibliography*, compiled by the staff of the Central Asian Research Centre, London, was similarly published by the Oxford University Press as another of the Chatham House Memoranda (Jan. 1963. 93 p.). An example of the more substantial Russian works is an encyclopedic handbook that has been announced by the publishing house "Sovetskaiâ entsiklopediâ" for appearance in early 1963: *Afrika: priroda; narody; istoriâ; ekonomika; kul'tura* [Africa: Natural Conditions; Peoples; History; Economics; Culture] (Moscow, 2 v.).

5. AMERICAN ACADEMY OF POLITICAL AND SOCIAL SCIENCE, Philadelphia. *Contemporary Africa trends and issues*, edited by William O. Brown. Philadelphia, 1955. 248 p. maps. (Its *Annals*, v. 298) H1.A4, v.298

Bibliographical footnotes.

A symposium of introduction to modern Africa, its changing scene and problems, by regional and subject specialists. The editor is Director of the African Research and Studies Program at Boston University. The essays fall in four groups, the first on environment, cultures, and place in world affairs. The second set outlines general characteristics of African economics and special aspects in French West Africa, the Belgian Congo, and the Union of South Africa. The third group is on political framework and evolution, and the last on social change under the Western influences of urbanization, Christianity, and education.

Because of the general nature of the subjects treated, this group of papers has become less outdated than another issue of the *Annals*, published in the following year: *Africa and the Western World*, edited by Thorsten Sellen (Philadelphia, 1956. 101 p. *Annals*, v. 306).

6. AMERICAN SOCIETY OF AFRICAN CULTURE. *Pan-Africanism reconsidered*. Berkeley, University of California Press, 1962. xix, 376 p. tables. DT30.A53

Speeches, papers, and comments at the important Third Annual Conference of the American Society of African Culture in Philadelphia in 1960, on the theme

of "African Unities and Pan-Africanism." The 30-odd contributors were about equally divided between Africans and Americans. Subjects examined were Pan-Africanism *per se* and its main manifestations in politics, economics, education, social thought, art, African culture, and negritude. The closing address was by J. A. Wachuku of Nigeria.

7. BUELL, RAYMOND LESLIE. *The native problem in Africa*. New York, Macmillan, 1928. 2 v. maps, tables. DT31.B8

Bibliography: v. 2, p. 983-1049.

Monumental study by a leading American expert on foreign affairs, a basis for all subsequent investigations. Prepared following 15 months of fieldwork and study of all available documents, which are listed by region in a 66-page bibliography. For each of the British, French, and Belgian territories south of the Sahara and for free Liberia, Dr. Buell surveyed analytically history, government, labor conditions, racial questions, and colonial policy, with the aim of determining how and to what extent the governments concerned were solving the problems raised by the impact of industrial civilization on primitive peoples.

8. CAMERON, JAMES. *The African revolution*. New York, Random House, 1961. 279 p. illus. DT30.C3 1961a

Quick journalistic review of past colonial history and present political development in Southern, East, and West Africa, country by country. Written by a British foreign correspondent and designed for the novice in African affairs, it necessarily lends itself to charges of overgeneralization and oversimplification. The current information is brought through March 1961.

9. *Des africanistes russes parlent de l'Afrique*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1960. 289 p. DT21.D4

Includes bibliographies.

The first essay in this compilation is by Professor Potekhin, on African studies in the Soviet Union from 1786 to 1959. He includes a list of the books and articles published in the second half of 1958, 18 titles in all. Then comes a paper on Russian travelers and scholars in Africa by Maria Rait, with full bibliography. Among other contributions are translation of an article by Basil Davidson on the history of Matabeleland, a study by Mme. Orlova of the fokon'olona (village communes) of Madagascar, and a second paper by Potekhin on the intelligentsia and the wakening of national consciousness. In conclusion there is

an annotated list of books and articles in Russian from 1953–1958, a few foreign titles, and long critical reviews of Cloete's *African Giant* and Chardonnet's *L'Industrialisation de l'Afrique*, both of which the reviewers find typical of imperialist exploitation.

10. DEUTSCHE AFRIKA-GESELLSCHAFT. *Die Länder Afrikas* [series] Bonn, Schroeder, 1958 +

A notable series of country studies, in which all states of Africa are being covered. They are written by specialists, and give a well-rounded survey, in under 200 pages, of land and people, political history and present developments, economy, cultural and social development. The volumes include statistical tables, bibliographies, indexes, and folded maps. Some individual titles are here listed under the separate countries.

11. FITZGERALD, WALTER. *Africa; a social, economic and political geography of its major regions.* 9th ed., rev. by W. C. Brice. London, Methuen; New York, Dutton, 1961. 511 p. maps.

DT5.F5 1961

Includes bibliographies.

Standard advanced manual of economic geography of Africa by the late professor of geography at the University of Manchester, formerly at the University of South Africa. Originally published in 1933, the ninth posthumous edition was revised by a former student. It embodies extensive changes in text, bibliography, and maps. The first two sections survey the physical environment and the people, immigrant and native, sketching the outlines of African history and characterizing main ethnic groups. Over three-fourths of the book is devoted to regional studies, with sections on South Africa, East Africa, Madagascar, Central Africa, West Africa, the Barbary States, the Nile Valley, and Abyssinia and its borderlands. In the references to sources at the end of each chapter the editor has added a few recent works without basic revision.

12. GOULD, PETER R. *Africa, continent of change.* Belmont, Calif., Wadsworth Pub. Co., 1961. 256 p.

DT4.G68

Issued as a paperback, this is a well-chosen collection of readings, "edited with the intelligent inquirer in mind." The editor, of the Department of Geography of Syracuse University, chooses excerpts from Prime Minister Macmillan's famous speech to the South African Parliament in 1960, "The Wind of Change," to open his volume. The selections by authoritative

spokesmen, a number of them African leaders, are in three sections, illustrating political, economic, and social change.

13. HAILEY, WILLIAM MALCOLM HAILEY, *baron.* *An African survey; a study of problems arising in Africa south of the Sahara.* Issued under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs. Rev. 1956. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1957. 1,676 p.

DT3.H3 1957

The Survey directed by Lord Hailey was set up in response to a plea by General Smuts, in a Rhodes Memorial Lecture in 1929, for the compilation of an overall review of the development of Africa under differing European controls. The original research was conducted during the midthirties, the first publication (1,837 p.) appearing in 1938. A second edition in 1945 was a reprint without revision, and did not take account of the changes in colonial policies which followed the Second World War—policies in the formulation of which this comprehensive comparative study had been an indispensable step. The third edition, for which revision was begun in 1952, while similar to the earlier volume in objective and arrangement of material, has been so extensively rewritten that it is in many respects a new work.

The *Survey*, since its first appearance, and notably in its latest form, has provided an invaluable reference book in all fields of modern knowledge regarding the territory south of the Sahara. The treatment, which includes a résumé of historic development with analysis of the situation as of the midfifties (statistics in most cases to 1955), is by subject field, with most chapters subdivided into sections by individual countries. The main divisions cover physical background, African peoples, languages, population records, political and social objectives, systems of government, non-European immigrant communities, administration of African affairs, law and justice, taxation, the land, agriculture and animal husbandry, forestry, water supply and irrigation, soil conservation, health, education and cultural agencies, economic development, development projects, labor problems, cooperative institutions, minerals and mines, transport and communications, and the organization of research. The elaborate index (p. 1617–1676) cross references topics and regions. It is frequently spoken of as the most important work ever published on Africa. A new edition of the *Survey* is in progress in 1962.



14. HATCH, JOHN C. *Africa today—and tomorrow; an outline of basic facts and major problems.* Rev. ed. New York, Praeger, 1962. 343 p. (Books that matter) DT31.H33 1962

Published in London in 1959 under title: *Everyman's Africa*.

The author, former commonwealth officer of the Labour Party and in 1961 Director of Extra-Mural Studies at the University College of Sierra Leone, had written in 1952 on South Africa (*The Dilemma of South Africa*. London, Dobson. 255 p.). In 1956 he had covered then British Africa in a quick perspective of political developments, *New from Africa* (Dobson. 123 p.). He speaks of the present work as "a simple outline book which provides the basic facts of the African continent"—a concentrated synthesis of political history in countries of British influence, with the rest of the continent lumped in 30 pages as "Other Europeans in Africa." His last chapter is on future perspectives for Africa as a whole. A chronology and summary of data through 1959 form appendixes.

Somewhat similar in intent, although almost the opposite in style, is a book for junior readers by Ellen and Attilio Gatti, *The New Africa* (New York, Scribner, 1960. 213 p. illus. World Background Book series). The photographs, many of them taken by the authors (Mr. Gatti is well known as a writer on adventure and big game hunting), are a notable feature of this simple and instructive work.

15. HAVLÍK, JIŘÍ. *Africa*. Kolektiv autorů; Jiří Havlík, Jiří Kettner, Dušan Provazník. [Vyd. 1.] Praha, Státní nakl. politické literatury, 1962. 450 p. DT30.H32

A compendium of general information, with systematic country-by-country review and emphasis on anticolonial politics.

16. HERSKOVITS, MELVILLE J. *The human factor in changing Africa*. New York, Knopf, 1962. 500 p. (A Borzoi book) DT352.H43

In the latest of his many works on Africa Professor Herskovits examines on a broad scale the reactions of the African peoples to the changes of the presentday world. "I began my research," he writes, "many years ago, with a question: How have the aboriginal similarities and differences in African culture been affected by the similarities and differences in the innovations to which the peoples of Africa and African descent have been exposed? I have not answered this question, but such beginnings as I have been able to make are to be found in this book."

17. HUGHES, JOHN. *The new face of Africa, south of the Sahara*. New York, Longmans, Green, 1961. 296 p. DT352.H8

By a journalist who had been an Africa correspondent for the *Christian Science Monitor* for 6 years, this book tells of the metamorphosis of a continent. As his title indicates, Mr. Hughes has described the Africa (sub-Saharan) of the moment, his record of events carrying up to the early summer of 1961. His reporting is as paced and dramatic as the evolving political history he recounts. Physical description and background history are limited to occasional brief sentences; his concern is to give an understanding of the new Africa, its leaders, and its policies, now that independence is so widely achieved that anti-colonialism is losing force as a unifying motive.

18. JARRETT, HAROLD R. *Africa*. London, Macdonald & Evans, 1962. 350 p. illus., maps, tables. (New certificate geography series, advanced level) DLC

This author has also a new *Outline Geography of Africa* (London, Methuen, 1962. 248 p.), for the secondary school certificate level.

19. JOURNAL OF HUMAN RELATIONS. *Dawn in the dark continent: Politics, problems, promises.* Wilberforce, Ohio, Central State College Press, 1960. 868 p. H1.S55, v. 8

Special issue, spring and summer, 1960, v. 8, nos. 3-4.

Collection of essays illustrative of modern Africa. Among the many scholars who have contributed in their special fields, a number are native Africans. Sections are on "Ancient African Civilizations," "Tribal Roots and Influences," "The Sine Qua Non: The Mature Mind" (health and psychology), "Clash of Color and Creed," "Toward Self-Determination," "Basic Aspects of Africa's Economy," "Social Services," "Cultural Arts," "Religion and Education," "Some Evaluative Considerations" (including "An African Balance Sheet: 1960," by H. H. and M. M. Smythe, with tabulated "assets and liabilities," economic, political, social, religious, and general). The big volume ends with an inspirational poem, "O Africa, My Africa," by Ralph Templin of Central State College.

20. KIMBLE, GEORGE H. T. *Tropical Africa*. New York, Twentieth Century Fund, 1960. 2 v. illus., port., maps. DT352.K48

Bibliographical footnotes.

The broadest recent geographical study of Africa in English, this work is the result of a project of sev-

eral years' duration in which many scholars collaborated. The list of 46 contributors of working papers is given opposite the title page. The geographer Dr. Kimble, now at the University of Indiana, served as director and put together the final text, which, though massive in its assemblage of facts, is eminently readable. The first volume covers the continent in terms of physical and economic geography. The second volume opens with an account of "The Old Order," and goes through the factors of social and political change to "The Price of Growth," and "The Shape of Things." In general, the Africa reflected is that of the midfifties, although some sources used for the appendix of "Selected Territorial Data" were of 1959.

A pamphlet by Dr. Kimble in the Foreign Policy Association Headline Series, *Tropical Africa: Problems and Promises* (New York, 1961. 62 p. no. 147), serves in part as a précis of the full-length work.

21. LEGUM, COLIN, ed. *Africa: a handbook to the continent*. New York, Praeger, 1962. 553 p.  
DT30.L38 1962

One of the most useful and perhaps the most comprehensive of the many reference guides to the fast-changing nations of Africa, this work is described by its editor, the African specialist for the *London Observer*, as halfway between Lord Hailey and John Gunther, written by experts for well-informed non-experts. The 40 articles by British and American specialists are in two sections, the first on the countries, some in regional groupings; for each there is a general sketch, a succinct statement of political development and economic situation, basic data of the almanac type, a brief who's who, and bibliography. In the second part are essays on international attitudes toward Africa, African art, changing cultural patterns, religion, economics, and the role of the United Nations.

22. *Meyers Handbuch über Afrika*. Mannheim, Bibliographisches Institut, 1962. 779 p.  
DT12.2.M4

A huge reference work, covering the continent and its peoples in general aspects, and country-by-country survey of economic and human geography.

23. MIGLIORINI, ELIO. *L'Africa*. Torino, Unione tipografico-editrice torinese, 1955. 821 p. illus., plates, maps.  
DT3.M5

Includes bibliographies.

An impressive volume covering all Africa in terms of physical, social, and politicoeconomic geography. Arrangement, after a general section, is by region. The folded, colored maps, supplemented generously

by subject sketch maps, are of high quality and value. The author is Director of the Institute of Geography at the University of Naples.

While American and British geographers now tend to treat regions or continents in independent studies of moderate length, continental writers continue the tradition of multi-volume sets of world geography. The great French *Géographie universelle* edited by Vidal de la Blache and L. Gallois reached its 15th and final volume after the war (Paris, A. Colin, 1927-48), though those devoted to Africa south of the Sahara, t. 11, ptie 2, *Afrique occidentale*, by Augustin Bernard (p. 285-529), and t. 12, *Afrique équatoriale, orientale et australe*, by Fernand Maurette (398 p.), appeared in 1939 and 1938 respectively. Little attention is paid in these to political and economic factors, the stress being on physical and human geography. An even more lavish publishing venture is the *Geografia universale illustrata; la fisionomia attuale del mondo considerata nell'aspetto fisico antropico ed economico*, edited by Roberto Almagna (Torino, Unione tip-editrice torinese). Vol. 5, *L'Africa*, by Elio Migliorini, was announced in 1960. It has not yet become available for examination in the Library of Congress, so we are unable to determine whether or not it is a revision of the work cited above. Another expected tome is the volume on Africa of the *Géographie universelle Larousse* (Paris, Larousse, 1959+ edited by Pierre Deffontaines). An edition is being published in English; the volume on Europe was released in 1961 (New York, Prometheus Press).

24. PRASAD, BISHESHWAR, ed. *Contemporary Africa*. Bombay, New York, Asia Pub. House, 1960. 133 p.  
DT30.P7

The attention being paid to Africa in Indian studies is exemplified in this volume based on a lecture series at the University of Delhi, organized by Peter S. Wright, 1954 to 1958. The emphasis is largely on politics. The separate papers are factual essays on geopolitics, traditions, history of European relations, colonial policies, political and national movements of East Africa and of Ghana, waterpower projects, land relations, and social change.

25. SAMPSON, ANTHONY. *Common sense about Africa*. New York, Macmillan, 1961. 175 p. illus. (Common sense series, 3)  
DT353.S3 1961

One of a new series of area studies halfway between academic scholarship and weekly journalism. The writer, former editor of *Drum* and now on the staff of the *Observer*, has tried to give a general picture of the continent south of the Sahara with stress on present rather than past, and the central theme nationalism. The preface is dated October 1959. "The preponderance of politics leaves little room [in 45,000 words] for Animal Africa, Explorers' Africa, Engineers' Africa or even Missionary Africa," but all these facets are



touched on. A reviewer in the *Times Literary Supplement* comments that it makes an excellent introduction to Lord Hailey.

26. SILLERY, ANTHONY. *Africa; a social geography*. London, G. Duckworth, 1961. 244 p. illus. DT12.2.S5

A region-by-region survey of Africa, presenting a picture of the country as it was toward the end of 1960. The writer, who tries for a balance between the work of the journalist and that of the specialist researcher, explains that he has concentrated on geography, ethnology, culture, economics, and racial relations—things “which, if not immutable, at least change more slowly than politics.” He includes historical background, most of it in his introductory general section on the continent and its people. This and the regional sections are written in strictly objective style. In a brief final chapter the author expresses his own views as to future prospects for Africa.

27. *Social research in Africa*; edited by Robert Lystad. To be published under the auspices of the African Studies Association. In preparation in 1963.

A set of 16 essays reviewing research in various disciplines of the social sciences, humanities, and physical sciences. According to the editor's report to the ASA meeting in 1961, “The book was intended to summarize and interrelate recent and pertinent earlier social research and generalizations within each discipline, in such a manner as to be usable both by scholars within the discipline and also by those of other disciplines.” Chapters “would not be primarily descriptive but would be analytic and integrative as to problems defined for research, theoretical and methodological considerations, gaps in knowledge, trends in research, etc.” (*African Studies Bulletin*, v. 4, no. 4, Dec. 1961, p. 31).

28. STAMP, LAURENCE DUDLEY. *Africa; a study in tropical development*. New York, Wiley, 1953. 568 p. illus., maps. DT12.S7

By the Director of the World Land Use Survey, this economic geography was expanded from lectures given in America and with its tremendous coverage is necessarily reduced to essentials. The first part surveys the continent in general, its exploration, physical background, climates and water problem, soils, forest, grassland and desert, peoples and ways of life, plagues and diseases, transportation. The second part is an analysis by region (not political but geographical), with a statement for each of physical geography, background history, and politico-economic trends at mid-

century. Part III discusses briefly past, present, and future problems of Africa, and gives a statistical summary by country of area, population, religion, land use, minerals, trade, and currency.

Professor Stamp edited the report of a geographical symposium held at Makerere College, Kampala, Uganda, in September 1955 under the auspices of the International Geographical Union, *Natural Resources, Food and Population in Inter-tropical Africa* (London, Geographical Publications, 1956. 104 p. maps).

## TRAVEL AND DESCRIPTION

29. CLOETE, STUART. *The African giant*, the story of a journey. Boston, Houghton Mifflin, 1955. 400 p. illus. DT12.C559

Report on a year of travel covering all Africa south of the Sahara, by a well-known South African novelist. In both style and content Mr. Cloete inclines toward the sensational, finding everywhere the overpowering evidences of savagery beneath the new trappings of Western culture. Writing at the height of Mau Mau, he declared that all Africa was watching Kenya with sympathetic approval. “No one can civilize the African. He must do it for himself. The question remains. Does he want to? Will he pay the price?” The author's conclusion was that he will not—that, if the white man leaves, in a few years “the forest will return.”

30. CONSIDINE, JOHN J. *Africa, world of new men*. New York, Dodd, Mead, 1954. 398 p. illus. DT12.C57

The author, of the Maryknoll Fathers (Catholic Foreign Mission Society of America), in this account of Africa south of the Sahara reported optimistically on changing conditions and progress from the viewpoint of Catholic missions, which he had visited from Dakar to Cape Town, and back on the East Coast to Nairobi. The appendixes carry statistics of the various religions in Africa and of personnel of Catholic missions.

31. ESKELUND, KARL. *While God slept; travels in Africa*. London, A. Redman, 1961. 190 p. illus. DT12.2.E813 1961

Impressions of a globe-trotting Danish writer who with his Chinese wife traveled in Africa in 1960—the Congo, including pygmies and elephants, Ruanda-Urundi, the Rhodesias, Mozambique, South Africa, Nigeria. His emphasis is on the question of color discrimination, which, needless to say, he views with horror. An earlier work had been *Black Man's*



*Country; A Journey through Ghana* (London, Redman, 1958. 164 p.). In both his photographs, some of them in color, are excellent.

32. FARSON, NEGLEY. *Behind God's back*. New York, Harcourt, Brace, 1941. 555 p.

DT12.F3

Narrative of travel in Africa, from coast to coast, beginning in Southwest Africa, through South Africa, Eastern Africa, the Congo, French Equatorial Africa in 1939, just before the beginning of the war. The author, a well-known writer and foreign correspondent, was much concerned with the former German colonies and the contrasts in attitudes of the British and French settlers and administrators to those of the Germans. His story, vivid, in part entertainingly personal, in part keenly analytical, is considered one of the best travel accounts of prewar years. The contrast between his reportage of conditions and society and that presented by journalists in the sixties is eloquent proof of the changes that have come in two startling decades.

33. FRANCK, FREDERICK. *African sketchbook*. Text and drawings by Frederick Franck. New York, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1961. 180 p. illus.

NC1145.F5A45

A dentist-artist's pen sketches and text written around them setting down impressions of West Africa, Kenya, Ethiopia, Sudan, and back through the Congo to Gabon, where he paid his third visit to Dr. Schweitzer at Lambaréné (see also no. 1200n). He found the great doctor aged and saddened, overtaken by the new god of young Africa, "the cruel god Progress." Graham Greene, writing the Preface, says: "The accuracy of feeling with which [Dr. Franck] describes what I know [Lagos, Freetown, etc.] gives me complete confidence in his picture of the unfamiliar . . . and of the new aspects of the familiar (for the wind of change is blowing through every scene in his sketchbook)."

34. GOSSET, PIERRE, and RENÉE GOSSET. *L'Afrique, les Africains*. Paris, R. Julliard, 1958-59. 2 v.

DT12.G66

By two experienced French travel writers, these are revealing objective impressions of modern Africa. In the first volume the countries then still officially known as Afrique Occidentale Française (A.O.F) and Afrique Équatoriale Française (A.E.F.) are covered in almost pure description and interpretation of present-day life.

The second volume treats Ghana, Liberia, the Belgium Congo, Mozambique, the Union of South Africa, Libya, the Sudan, Ethiopia, Kenya, Rhodesia, ending with the islands, Réunion, Mauritius, and "the forgotten island," Madagascar. For the non-French countries the writers include a larger measure of historical background.

35. GUNTHER, JOHN. *Inside Africa*. New York, Harper, 1955. xxiii, 952 p. maps, diagrs.

DT12.G86

Bibliography: p. 895-906.

For this "Inside" book Mr. Gunther and his wife covered 40,000 miles of Africa, taking in most of the 44 separate political units of that time. These are listed in a thumbnail tabulation of area, political status, description, population, etc., in the introductory pages, a glance at which in 1961 gives a striking picture of the evolution of the continent during the last 7 years. It is understandable that much of Gunther's analysis of social and political conditions in the continent which he found "trembling and astir with acute nationalist uplift" is now outdated. However, he synthesizes an enormous amount of assorted information on each place visited, touching on background and history and describing aspects and personalities. Although scholars have criticized him for occasional inaccuracies, the book remains a valuable source for quick and stimulating reference on all parts of Africa.

An inevitable comparison is drawn between Gunther and a survey similarly based on a far-ranging trip, *Le Poids de l'Afrique*, by Charles-Henri Favrod, a Swiss political journalist (Paris, Éditions du Seuil, 1958. 410 p.). M. Favrod contented himself with 24 countries, leaving out all north of the Sahara and south of the Zambezi, but his writing is as spirited and his observation as keen, with rather more of economic and political emphasis than that of his American confrère. For his more recent work see under Politics (no. 114).

36. HARCOURT, FRANÇOIS D'. *L'Afrique à l'heure H*. Paris, Gallimard, 1960. 312 p. illus. (L'Air du temps)

DT12.2.H3

Account of a trip from Algiers through the center of the continent, 35,000 kilometers of desert, forest, and new cities, by three young journalists who were out for adventure. They found it at every step, in the desert, Tchad, Congo, from Uganda to Zanzibar, Rhodesias, and South Africa, with nature and man. M. d'Harcourt's writing conveys a high degree of excitement and wonder. Naïve regarding historical legend or fact, his political comment on interviews with European and African leaders is perspicacious.

37. HEMPSTONE, SMITH. *Africa—angry young giant*. New York, Praeger, 1961. 664 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT352.H4

English ed., Faber & Faber, has title, *The New Africa*.

An ambitious work, aimed perhaps at replacing Gunther as picture and explanation of present-day Africa for the intelligent layman. Mr. Hempstone, a Washington journalist, spent 30 months of the late fifties in Africa south of the Sahara, his "mind . . . reasonably uncluttered with misinformation, facts or ideas" about the countries he visited. He attempted a limited coverage: "The Horn" (Sudan, Ethiopia, Somalia); "The Gallic Giant" (former French Equatorial Africa and French West Africa); "The Saxon West" (including Liberia with former British West Africa). For each country he gives well-summarized historical and cultural background and analysis of the current situation. All is interwoven with descriptive passages which, though vivid, depend heavily on personal travel difficulties, satire, and paradox.

38. MEEKER, ODEN. *Report on Africa*. New York, Scribner, 1954. 410 p. illus. D12.M39

Some of the chapters of this narrative of a wide-ranging tour of Africa south of the Sahara had appeared as articles in *The New Yorker* and *The Reporter*, and the style is typical of these magazines, picturesquely informative, humorous, the turns of phrase relating the strange places to American experience. Mr. Meeker's trip was made in 1952, covering 25 territories of West, Central, Southern, and East Africa. He was in Kenya at the time of the first big outbreak of Mau Mau, his account of which forms a high point in the report.

39. MUNGER, EDWIN S. *African field reports, 1952-61*. Cape Town, C. Struik, 1961. 808 p. DT352.M8

Since 1951 the intimate reports sent in by the world-traveling corps of the American Universities Field Staff have been privately circulated among scholarly circles, providing firsthand insight into contemporary affairs in the areas studied. Mr. Munger has been traveling in and reporting on Africa for over 10 years. This selection of his letters is in two parts, the first touching on highlights of the era in tropical Africa, from Ghana and Liberia to the Congo and Mozambique, the second on the land of his particular observance, South Africa.

40. SCHULTHESS, EMIL. *Africa*. New York, Simon and Schuster, 1959. 1 v. (various pagings) plates. 32 cm. DT12.S423

An album of 127 magnificent color photographs taken by a Swiss photographer in a 10-month trip from Tunis to Tripoli, Chad, Congo, and down the east coast of Africa to Capetown. A reviewer in *African Affairs* (January 1960), while overcome by the "feast of beauty," regrets that the shots of Africans "tend to portray the semi-naked and the primitive, while sophisticated and intelligent Africans are missing."

41. WOLLSCHLÄGER, ALFRED. *Gross ist Afrika, Europas dunkle Schwester* [von] A. E. Johann [pseud.] Gütersloh, C. Bertelsmann, 1957. 335 p. illus. DT12.W62 1961

An exceptionally thorough travel book based on research as well as 50,000 kilometers of land and water travel in 1955-56. The author had made his first extensive tour of Africa in 1939-40. Many drawings, maps, and photographs illustrate the diversity of the continent.

*Note:* Feature articles or sections on Africa have become increasingly numerous in general magazines of America and Europe. They vary from such scholarly surveys of political, social and economic changes as those presented in the *Queen's Quarterly* summer 1960 issue (Kingston, Queen's University, v. 67, p. 157-238), or the handsome special issue of the English language edition of *Réalités* (New York, Sept. 1960), to the sections, largely of full-page color photographs, in the April 1959 *Holiday*, the Mar. 28, 1961 issue of *Look*, or the September 1960 issue of the *National Geographic Magazine*. Special issues concerned with particular themes—education, politics, etc.—are noted in the appropriate sections of the present list. For identification of such material, reference should be made under subject entry to the usual library tools, *Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature*, *International Index*, *Public Affairs Information Service Bulletin*, etc., also to the special listing on Africa in the quarterly *Journal of Negro Education*.

## GUIDES AND MAPS

### Bibliography

42. DAHLBERG, RICHARD E., and BENJAMIN E. THOMAS. "An analysis and bibliography of recent African atlases." *African studies bulletin*, v. 5, no. 3, Oct. 1962: 23-33. DLC

The bibliography cites 92 atlases, examined by the authors at the Library of Congress, the American Geographical Society, and the University of California at Los Angeles.



43. AUTOMOBILE ASSOCIATION OF SOUTH AFRICA. *Trans-African highways*, a route book of the main trunk roads in Africa. 4th ed. Johannesburg, 1958. 539 p. maps.

GV1025.A2A84 1958

Earlier editions of this useful volume were in 1929, 1949 (408 p.), 1952 (480 p.). It carries sketch maps and detailed route descriptions of highways, including comment on facilities available at each stop. A full index of place names follows appendixes of practical information for motorists. Road guides are published also by regional automobile associations in East Africa, former French West Africa, and elsewhere.

44. BOYD, ANDREW, and PATRICK VAN RENSBURG. *An atlas of African affairs*, with maps by W. H. Bromage. New York, Praeger, 1962. 133 p.

G2445.B6 1962

A useful guide for the background and explanation of the fast-changing map of Africa, prepared with "the plain newspaper reader" in mind. The 50 sketch maps are "General" (population, regions and barriers, a few relating to history, the new political scene as of late 1962, United Nations activity, Pan-Africanism and regional unity, education, health, minerals, transport, power development) and "Sectional." They are explained succinctly on facing pages. Available in hardcover and paperback editions.

45. HORRABIN, J. F. *An atlas of Africa*. New York, Praeger, 1960. 126 p.

G2445.H6

The author is known for his political maps of current affairs and history. This little collection of 50 maps with facing pages of interpretation summarizes background information needed for understanding of current news. The first 22 maps are grouped as "Background," and explain history from the ancient world to the present. Part II is "Today," illustrating issues, regions, and trends. Part III is "Tomorrow," touching problems of linguistics, settlement, economic development, and the like.

46. KANE, ROBERT S. *Africa A to Z; a guide for travelers—armchair and actual*. Maps by Louise E. Jefferson; photos. by the author. Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 1961. 408 p. illus.

DT12.2.K3

An agreeable travel guide in essay style. The compendium of country-by-country information begins with chapters on background and general travel advice. Following sections on regions and chapters on individual countries include historical notes, condensed

itinerary for "your visit," "What to Buy," and "Creature Comforts," listing hotels and restaurants.

Charles R. Joy's *Africa: A Handbook for Travelers* (New York, Duell, Sloan and Pearce, 1958. 171 p.) is a useful systematic travel guide in compressed baedeker style, and of a size to be carried in the vestpocket or handbag. Two older guides, revisions of which may be hoped for, are *McKay's Guide to Africa*, by Joseph I. Touchette (New York, McKay, 1954. 311 p.), and the delightfully illustrated, interpretative guide in the McGraw-Hill World in Color Series, *South and Central Africa*, edited by Doré Ogrizek (New York, 1954. 431 p.).

47. PEARCY, GEORGE E. *Africa: names and concepts*. Washington, U.S. Dept. of State, 1961. 9 p. maps. (U.S. Dept. of State. Publication 7129. African series 9)

DT12.2.P4

Reprinted from the *Department of State Bulletin* of December 26, 1960.

By the Geographer of the Department of State, this is a concise review of the regions of Africa and the new names of states. A table gives adjective and noun forms applicable to 54 major political entities. A still more concise statement of *Political Divisions of Africa* is issued by the Office of Research and Analysis for the Mid-East and Africa of the Department of State (1962. 4 p. Publication 7067. African series 3). New revised versions will presumably appear periodically, to keep apace of events.

48. PHILIP (GEORGE) & SON, ltd. *Modern college atlas for Africa*. Edited by Harold Fullard, cartographic editor. [New ed.] London, 1961. 136, 31 p.

G1019.P5705 1961

World atlas with special application to Africa, prepared with needs of African as well as non-African students in mind. Of the 136 pages of maps, well over a third (p. 24-73) relate to regions and countries of Africa. The scales vary according to space allotted to the region, from 1:1 1/2M to 1:8 M.

49. SCIENTIFIC COUNCIL FOR AFRICA SOUTH OF THE SAHARA [CSA] *Cartes topographiques de l'Afrique au sud du Sahara*. Topographical maps of Africa south of the Sahara. [New ed.] London, C.C.T.A. [Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara] 1955. 2 v. (40, 70 p.) (*Its* Publication no. 15, 17)

AZ800.S35, no. 15, 17

Pt. 2 has title: *Cartographie de l'Afrique au sud du Sahara. Maps of Africa south of the Sahara. Cartes spéciales. Special subject maps.*

These two catalogs form the revision of a single list, *Maps of Africa South of the Sahara*, which was issued at Bukavu, then the site of CCTA/CSA, in April 1953

(122 p. Publication no. 4). That work had been based on a provisional list of maps prepared by Dr. R. J. H. Church of the London School of Economics and Miss Rudd of University College, Ibadan, augmented by information from many institutions and departments in and outside of Africa. It omitted obsolete material and historical maps and gave only samples of maps included in books, but was an attempt to record "all maps believed to be useful." Arrangement was by political divisions rather than geographic areas. For each region or country there were listed first topographical maps or series of maps, then the special maps in systematic subject classification. For the revision, the first part is limited to topographical maps, and the special maps—town plans and cadastral, maps of geology, climatology and hydrology, soils, vegetation and forests, agricultural and animal husbandry, entomology, medicine, population and tribal boundaries, administrative and political boundaries, communications—are in the second part. For CCTA/CSA Africa south of the Sahara includes Somaliland and offshore islands in the Indian Ocean, but omits Ethiopia and the Sudan.

A specialized climatological atlas for Africa, to be published by CSA, has been in preparation for several years. It is being prepared by S. P. Jackson of the University of the Witwatersrand, with a group of assistants, and will show meteorological conditions of the whole continent.

Nonserial publications of CCTA/CSA are published by its Publications Bureau, Watergate House, York Buildings, London W.C. 2. Those above mentioned are undoubtedly now out of print; however, microfilm reproductions may be ordered from the Bureau.

50. THE TIMES, London. *The Times atlas of the world*. Mid-century edition. Edited by John Bartholomew. v. 4. Southern Europe and Africa . . . with an index-gazetteer. London, The Times Pub. Co., 1956. 96 col. plates; 50 p. index. 49 cm. G1019.T52 1955

One of the best general atlases of Africa.

51. UNITED NATIONS EDUCATIONAL, SCIENTIFIC AND CULTURAL ORGANIZATION. Division of Natural Sciences. [*Natural resources series*. No. 2] Chap. I. Review of topographic mapping of Africa, by A. Rumeau. Annex I. Inventory of topographical maps of the African continent at the end of 1959. Paris, UNESCO, 1961. 11, 16 p. DLC

The essay by the Director of the French National Geographic Institute discusses the evolution of African topographic mapping between 1949 and 1959, having regard to reconnaissance maps, provisional

maps, sketch maps and aerial photography, the work done by the British Commonwealth, Belgians, Portuguese, French, and former French territories, the general situation in 1959, and international organizations concerned with cartography and geodesy of Africa. The 16-page inventory is limited to maps published since 1930 on scales comprised between 1/10,000 and 1/250,000, inclusive, thus bringing up to date a part of the matter covered in the CSA study of 1955. Two plates on supplementary pages show the parts of Africa topographically mapped in 1949 and 1959, respectively.

52. U.S. Hydrographic Office. *Sailing directions* [series] Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off.

H.O. Publication no. 105. *Southwest coast of Africa, Cape Palmas to the Cape of Good Hope*. 4th ed. 1952— 314 p. VK877.U62 1951

H.O. Publication no. 134. *West coast of Spain, Portugal, and Northwest Africa and off-lying islands . . .* 5th ed. 1952. 530 p. VK876.U6 1952

H.O. Publication no. 156. *Southeast coast of Africa; Cape of Good Hope to Ras Hafun*. 4th ed. 1951— 1 v. (loose-leaf) VK887.U52 1952

H.O. Publication no. 161. *South Indian Ocean, Madagascar and the islands west of longitude 90° east*. 4th ed. 1952— 1 v. VK885.U72 1952

The volumes for Africa in the Sailing Directions series begun in 1916 as the *Africa Pilot*, of which the above are examples, are in looseleaf binders allowing for supplementary material and including folded maps and charts. New editions are based on all available sources, including the recent volumes and supplements of the British Hydrographic Office *Africa Pilot*. The first chapter of each volume contains general remarks, and information on buoyage, lifesaving stations, signals, regulations, wind and weather, currents, routes. Then come detailed chapters describing shore features and sailing conditions point to point along the coast. There are appendixes listing principal ports, with particulars of depths, meteorological tables, and an index of place names.

## HISTORY

(including Archaeology, Prehistory, and Pre-Colonial History)

53. ALIMEN, HENRIETTE. *The prehistory of Africa*. Translated by Alan Houghton Brodrick. London, Hutchinson, 1957 xviii, 438 p. illus., maps, tables. GN861.A563

Includes bibliographies.

Professor Alimen of the Institute of Ethnology in Paris is a former president of the Société Préhistorique



Française; her field is one in which French scholarship has been in the vanguard. This work came out in the French edition in 1955 and serves as synthesis and summary of existing knowledge regarding geologic ages and remains of prehistoric man in Africa. There are included many comparative tables, maps, drawings, and plates (28, some in color) of artifacts and rock drawings. In the few references on prehistory in general following the introduction the periodical *L'Anthropologie* is noted, with the comment that it carries notices of most works of importance for Africa.

A scholarly study by the French anthropologist, Denis-Pierre de Pedrals, *Archéologie de l'Afrique noire* (Paris, Payot, 1950. 233 p.), treats the "protohistoric" past of Africa (Nubia, Ethiopia, the upper and lower regions of the Niger, the Tchad area, Zimbabwe, Senegambia, the Belgian Congo) in terms of "classical archaeology" (i.e., remains of art or written records), "ethonyms," "toponyms," "theonyms," and other evidences from philological speculation.

54. CORNEVIN, ROBERT. *Histoire des peuples de l'Afrique noire*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1960. 715 p. illus., plates, maps, geneal. tables. (Mondes d'outre-mer. Série histoire)

DT352.C6

Includes bibliographies.

Dr. Cornevin, a former chief administrator of France Overseas and now Director of the Centre d'Étude et de Documentation sur l'Afrique et l'Outre-Mer in Paris, writes from the viewpoint of archaeologist and anthropologist, putting together from many scholarly sources the prehistoric and pre-European history of the peoples of Africa. His valuable, though rather difficult, study is in three parts: 1, African historiography and origins in general; 2, the ancient kingdoms of West Africa; 3, East, Central and Southern Africa. The extensive bibliographical references are arranged by chapter (p. 671-686). This work expands and supplements the writer's earlier *Histoire de l'Afrique des origines à nos jours* (Paris, Payot, 1956. 404 p.), in which the broader scope included North and Northeast Africa. Professor Cornevin is now preparing an *Histoire de l'Afrique* for Payot's series, Bibliothèque historique, the first volume of which has appeared in 1962.

55. DART, RAYMOND A. *Africa's place in the emergence of civilization*. Johannesburg, South African Broadcasting Corporation, 1960. 96 p. illus., maps. GN645.D3

Popular discussion of the origins of man, which the author, emeritus professor of anatomy at the University of Witwatersrand and noted for his studies of "the

missing link," relates to the remains of man-apes found in southern Africa.

Dart's collection of bones of the australopithecines was the starting point of a study of the animal inheritance, physical and social, of man by Robert Ardrey: *African Genesis; A Personal Investigation into the Animal Origins and Nature of Man* (New York, Atheneum, 1961. 380 p.). The author, an anthropologist and playwright, preludes his discussion of past and present relationships between animal and human with a review of the latest discoveries of the physical anthropologists, Dr. Leakey, Dart, and others, and the proof they offer of "the rough but indisputable outline of the human emergence on the African highland."

56. DAVIDSON, BASIL. *The lost cities of Africa*. Boston, Little, Brown, 1959. 366 p. illus.

DT25.D3 1959a

London ed. (Gollancz) has title: *Old Africa rediscovered*. Includes bibliography.

The author, a well-known British journalist, has written a number of works on Africa (see, e.g., his *African Awakening*, no. 1874). This is a history of the 15 or 20 "proto-historic" centuries before the written records of European trade and penetration began. Addressed to a less scholarly audience than the earlier pioneer work by Westermann (no. 72), he takes into account almost two decades of rapid advances in scholarly research. His story, starting with the claims for the origin of man in East Africa, ranges over the continent from the Kush and Meroe of antiquity through the kingdoms of the old Sudan in the years of Mohammedan expansion, the less well identified societies of central Africa whose art remains provide the few clues to their culture, and the civilizations of East and Southeast Africa, culminating in the great stone ruins of Zimbabwe. The style, dramatic and exciting, lends itself with some justification to certain critics' charges of romanticism and overenthusiasm for things African.

Mr. Davidson has expanded the material covered succinctly in a little collection of essays, *The Dawn of African History*, edited by Roland Oliver (London, Oxford University Press, 1961. 103 p. maps). By specialists who have themselves contributed to original research, the chapters originated as talks on the BBC Third Programme, and summarize in 6 to 10 pages the known or deduced pre-European history of the different regions. Scholars represented include Thomas Hodgkin, Gervase Mathew, D. H. Jones, J. D. Fage, C. R. Boxer, J. Vansina, W. M. Macmillan. In his conclusion the editor emphasizes the geographical causes of Africa's isolation, and the political achievement against overwhelming odds.

The same ground is covered in a French thumbnail history, published with acknowledgments to Radio-Sénégal, *Brève histoire de l'Afrique noire* by Louis C. Joos (Issy-les-Moulineaux, Éditions Saint-Paul, 1961, 207 p. Afrique-monde).



57. ——— *Black mother; the years of the African slave trade.* Boston, Little, Brown, 1961. 311 p.  
DT352.D33 1961

Continuing his presentation of African history for the general audience, Mr. Davidson in a second book examines the connections of Africa and Europe from the 15th to the 19th centuries, through commerce and its development into the slave trade. Quoting extensively from contemporary sources, he endeavors to show that in the earliest contacts the races met on a basis of equality, the "feudal" societies of Africa understandable to Europeans still not emancipated from their own feudal traditions into the full era of commercialism; that in the latter age the subordination of all other values to the profit motive alone resulted in the appalling horrors of the traffic in slaves and its concomitant European assumption of African inferiority.

Mr. Davidson's book is focused directly on Africa and the conditions resulting from the slave trade, rather than, as is the case in many works on this subject, on the countries engaged in the traffic. Typical of such is Kenneth G. Davies' heavily documented study, *The Royal African Company* (London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1957. 390 p.).

58. DE GRAFT-JOHNSON, JOHN C. *African glory; the story of vanished Negro civilizations.* New York, Praeger, 1955. 209 p. illus. (Books that matter)  
DT22.D4 1955

One of the earlier works asserting what is now spoken of as "the African personality." The writer, an African scholar and member of a Ghana family distinguished as leaders in education, based his history on extensive study of sources in English. He accepts the view that Negro peoples at one time inhabited all North Africa, so that his narrative starts with ancient Egypt and the Roman world before sketching the Arab conquests and the rise and fall of the Moslem empires of West Africa, Ghana, Almoravid, Almohade, Mali, and Songhai. He reviews the European discoveries and settlement, and the era of slavery, ending with a long chapter on the evolution of the Gold Coast toward self-determination during the past century.

59. DIOP, CHEIKH ANTA. *L'Afrique noire pré-coloniale; étude comparée des systèmes politiques et sociaux de l'Europe et de l'Afrique noire, de l'antiquité à la formation des états modernes.* Paris, Présence africaine, 1960. 213 p. illus. (part col.), maps. (Collection Présence africaine)  
DT25.D5

One of the leaders of the Présence Africaine group of French-speaking African intellectuals, Cheikh Anta

Diop has written extensively on African cultural and linguistic history from a Marxist viewpoint. This book, a comparison of precolonial Sudanese Africa with ancient and medieval Europe, not to the advantage of the latter, he calls "a study in African historical sociology." His canvas is West Africa, mainly the former French territories. For source material he has depended heavily on the medieval Arabic accounts, El-Bakri, Idrisi, Batuta, etc. The book has as appendix a comparative study of four Sudanese languages. A section of plates, some in color, are drawn after the contemporary descriptions. Other books by M. Diop study even more closely specific aspects of the same general theme: *Nations nègres et culture* (Paris, Éditions africaines, 1955. 390 p.), and *L'Unité culturelle de l'Afrique noire; domaines du patriarcat et du matriarcat dans l'antiquité classique* (Paris, Présence africaine, 1959. 203 p.).

60. FAGE, J. D. *An atlas of African history.* London, E. Arnold, 1958. 64 p. 62 maps.  
G2446.S1F3 1958

The author, who at the time of writing was professor of history at the University of Ghana, is one of the editors of the *Journal of African History* (Cambridge, University Press, 1960+). In this first work of its kind for Africa, 62 sketch maps in diagrammatic form illustrate stages of African history from the eve of the Muslim Arab invasions to the present. Captions vary from thumbnail sketches of the historic situation to keys to symbols used to indicate, e.g., the spread of Christian missions. Sixteen maps show Northern Africa from the Roman world of the 4th century through the 18th century, and the empires of the western Sudan from the 5th to 18th centuries; four more show what is known of northeastern Africa and the Bantu states prior to the first Portuguese voyages and patterns of trade between the continents. Maps 24-57 illustrate European penetration from the 15th century on and the patterns of alien rule between 1830 and 1957. The last five are regional maps presenting modern economic development. An extended review of this book, by P. C. Lloyd, appeared in *Africa*, v. 29, January 1959, p. 98-100.

Of somewhat the same nature but greatly simplified, being designed as a text for secondary schools in Africa, is *The Map Approach to African History*, by Allan M. Healy and E. R. Vere-Hodge (London, University Tutorial Press, 1959. 64 p.). Both authors are teachers at the Duke of York School. Their booklet contains 28 sketch maps with facing explanatory text.

61. IBN BATUTA, 1304–1377. *Travels*. A.D. 1325–1354. Translated with revisions and notes from the Arabic text, edited by C. Defrémery and B. R. Sanguinetti by H. A. R. Gibb. Cambridge [Eng.] Published for the Hakluyt Society at the Cambridge University Press, 1958–62. 2 v. illus., maps. (Hakluyt Society works, 2d series, no. 110, 117) G370.I23

The early Arabic sources for African history are being increasingly studied for evidences of the medieval empires of sub-Saharan Africa. This 14th century traveler visited the Emperor of Mali. Modern texts in English or French translation are also available for the works of the 11th and 12th century geographers, al-Bakri and Idrisi, who describe the ancient Ghana.

These earlier sources are not included in Edward G. Cox's *Reference Guide to the Literature of Travel* (Seattle, University of Washington, 1935. 2 v.) which cites most of the known texts of travelers' accounts of Africa from 1500 to 1800 (see Vol. 1, p. 354–401).

62. INTERNATIONAL SEMINAR ON ETHNO-HISTORY IN AFRICA, Dakar, Dec. 1961.

A note on this seminar, sponsored by the International African Institute and organized with aid of a Ford Foundation grant, appears in *Africa*, v. 32, April 1962, p. 172. The meetings organized by M. R. Mauny, Director of the Section of Prehistoric Archaeology, Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, and Sociology Professor L. V. Thomas of the University of Dakar, were held at the IFAN Ethnographical Museum. Conclusions stressed "the importance of drawing the attention of African Government to the urgency of oral traditions." Papers and an introductory survey on methodology of historical research are being prepared for "early publication."

63. JONES, HUGH W. *Africa in perspective*. London, Quadriga Press, 1960. 214 p. illus. DT20.J6

The writer describes this as "a plain man's guide to the study of Africa . . . as simple, factual, objective, and balanced as the subject permits." Chapters move quickly over high points of prehistory, Egypt, Christian and Muslim Middle Ages, Portuguese ascendancy, evolution of South Africa, the slave trade, the great explorers, Europe in Africa, changing economy of present and future. As an introduction this work serves well its author's purpose of bringing the African continent more into focus for the nonspecialist reader.

64. *Journal of African history*. v. 1, no. 1+ May 1960+ London, Cambridge University Press.

Published for the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London and edited by R. A. Oliver and J. D. Fage. Two issues each appeared in 1960 and 1961, and three in 1962. This new journal is designed to represent the highest scholarly standards in its contributions to the broad field of African history.

65. KINGSNORTH, G. W. *Africa south of the Sahara*. Cambridge, University Press, 1962. 160 p. (Cambridge books on the history of Africa) DT352.K493

An outline history, comprehensive but extremely condensed, and intended for use in secondary schools in Africa.

66. LEAKEY, LOUIS S. B. *Stone age Africa: an outline of prehistory in Africa*. London, Oxford University Press, 1936. 218 p. GN776.A15L4

Lectures at Edinburgh University in 1935–36. Professor Leakey, Curator of the Coryndon Museum in Nairobi, is among the best-known of African archaeologists, and foremost exponent of the theory that man originated in East Africa during the glacial epoch. The question, as he emphasizes here, was—and is still—*sub judice*, as is also his conviction that a fragment of jawbone found in 1932 "represents the type of man who was living in East Africa during Lower Pleistocene times and that it represents a form ancestral to *Homo sapiens*." Professor Leakey's many other contributions to archaeological knowledge in journals and book form have related usually to East Africa only. Two short addresses in early 1961, briefly summarizing his theories, were published with the title *The Progress and Evolution of Man in Africa* (London, Oxford University Press, 1961. 50 p. plates). In the first lecture he stressed the idea that Africans are not inferior to but different from Europeans, and that there is a cruel fallacy in judging African advances by European standards.

67. LHOTE, HENRI. *The search for the Tassili frescoes; the story of the prehistoric rock-paintings of the Sahara*. Translated from the French by Alan Houghton Brodrick. New York, E. P. Dutton, 1959. 236 p. GN799.P4L513

Story of the expedition led by the author, which made dramatic archaeological finds in the Ahaggar mountains of the Sahara. The rock paintings, of which careful tracings, here reproduced in color, were made, bear striking evidence of the routes of culture migrations in prehistoric Africa.



68. LONDON. UNIVERSITY. School of Oriental and African Studies. *History and archaeology in Africa*; report of a conference held in July 1953 at the School of Oriental & African Studies, edited by R. A. Hamilton. London, 1955. 99 p. maps. DT349.L6

"A list of the conference papers . . . [with] bibliographical notes": p. 84–96. Bibliographical footnotes.

This conference, organized at the School of Oriental and African Studies, was the first international gathering bringing together British, French, and African scholars concerned with the African past before the period of European administration. Its purpose was to stimulate the collection and preservation of materials for the unwritten history of the African peoples. The two main sources of this history, oral tradition and archaeology, formed the subject matter of papers, a selected few of which are reproduced in this volume. A second conference was held at the School of Oriental and African Studies on July 16–18, 1957. Its proceedings were published by the School in 1959: *History and Archaeology in Africa*, edited by D. H. Jones (London. 58 p.). At this meeting a panel was set up to explore the practicability of publishing an international journal of African history. This was accomplished in 1960 with the launching of *The Journal of African History* (no 14). A third conference was held in August 1961; its resolutions are reported in *Africa*, v. 31, October 1961, p. 579–80.

A number of regional or national conferences on African history have been held of recent years, notably in Nigeria, Ghana, East Africa, the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland. They are reported regularly in the "Notes and News" section of the International African Institute journal, *Africa*.

69. OLIVER, ROLAND A. and J. D. FAGE. *A short history of Africa*. Baltimore, Md., Penguin Books, 1962. 279 p. (Penguin African library, AP 2) DT20.O4

By the editors of the *Journal of African History*, this concentrated survey of the entire course of African history has received, according to reviewers, "nothing but praise." Published in England and America in a paperback edition (\$1.25), it is within the reach of every student of African affairs. The legend on the back cover explains that "Drawing on archaeology, oral tradition, language relationships, social institutions, and material cultures [the work] not only assembles the most authoritative views [on African history] into an absorbing narrative, but also contains some original conclusions that take the study of Africa a stage further."

70. PAN-AFRICAN CONGRESS ON PREHISTORY. *Proceedings*. 1st+ 1947+ London [etc.] Chatto Windus [etc.] illus., maps. GN700.P3

Professor Leakey was moving spirit of the first Pan-African Congress on Prehistory, which was convened in Nairobi in 1947, and edited the *Proceedings* (published by Blackwell, Oxford, 1952. 239 p.). The second Congress was held in Algiers in 1952 (*Proceedings* published by Arts et Métiers Graphiques, 18 rue Segulier, Paris 6<sup>e</sup>), and the third in Livingstone, Northern Rhodesia, in 1955 (*Proceedings*, edited by J. Desmond Clark and Sonia Cole, London, Chatto & Windus, 1957. 440 p.). The fourth Congress took place in Leopoldville in August 1959 (*Actes . . . Tervuren, Musée Royal de l'Afrique centrale*, 1962. 505 p. *Annales, Sér. in-8°, Sciences humaines*, 40), and the fifth is scheduled to meet in Tenerife, Canary Islands, in 1963. All papers are highly technical.

71. WARD, WILLIAM E. F. *A history of Africa*. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1960. DT20.W3

Book 1. The old kingdom of the Sudan. Nigeria before the British came: South Africa.

The author was formerly history master at Achimota College, before it became the University College of Ghana. This book is the first volume of a series for secondary schools and teacher training colleges of Africa, for "a generation of young people who are thinking of Africa as one whole." The treatment is in dialogue form, questions and historical narrative as answers. Each part is to contain three topics; this first has also an introductory section on the nature of history, then on the old Sudan, Nigeria before the British, and South Africa.

72. WESTERMANN, DIEDRICH. *Geschichte Afrikas; Staatenbildungen südlich der Sahara*. Köln, Greven-Verlag, 1952. 492 p. illus. DT351.W433

Bibliography: p. 455–470.

The late Dr. Westermann, Emeritus Professor of African Languages at the University of Berlin and a founder and Director of the International African Institute, was Germany's foremost Africanist of the first half of the 20th century. This history of the building of states in Africa south of the Sahara was begun in 1939, and represents the sum total of scholarship to that date. The manuscript was twice destroyed in air raids during the war, so that the work was finished only in 1950. In chronicling the rise, rulers, reigns, battles, declines, and falls of 64 African kingdoms of the Sudan, Nigeria and the Guinea Coast, East, Cen-



tral and Southern Africa, the writer touched lightly on European contacts and domination, treating them merely as episodes in the story of independent peoples. The volume forms a standard reference work. It includes good illustrations, a long bibliography (p. 455–470), and comprehensive indexes of place, tribal, and personal names.

73. WIEDNER, DONALD L. *A history of Africa south of the Sahara*. New York, Random House, 1962. 578 p. DT352.W48

By an American scholar who teaches history at the University of Alberta, this big work is reviewed by R. W. Logan in *Africa Report* of August 1962 as "scholarly, comprehensive, and lucid." It is also rapid and readable.

## THE COLONIAL ERA

74. FARWELL, BYRON. *The man who presumed: a biography of Henry M. Stanley*. New York, Holt, 1957. 334 p. illus. DT351.S6A42

Full story of Stanley's life and explorations, based on a five-page bibliography, mainly of secondary sources, which begins with the titles of the subject's books. These formed the important adventure reading of their day: *How I Found Livingstone* (New York, Scribner, 1872); *Through the Dark Continent* (Harper, 1878. 2 v.); *In Darkest Africa* (Harper, 1890. 2 v.), and nine others. There have recently appeared two volumes of additional primary source material, *H. M. Stanley: Unpublished Letters*, by Albert Maurice (London, W. & R. Chambers, 1957. 183 p. Originally published in French, 1955), and *The Exploration Diaries of H. M. Stanley*, edited by Richard Stanley and Alan Neame (New York, Vanguard Press, 1961. 203 p.).

Another recent book on Stanley is concerned with the search for Livingstone and its aftermath: Ian Anstruther, *I Presume: Stanley's Triumph and Disaster* (London, G. Bles, 1956. 207 p.). The first five chapters are background of Stanley's early life, then chapters 6 to 13 tell in great detail of the expedition. Part 2 is "The Disaster," the ridicule Stanley met on his return from the triumph. "It was a great personal tragedy to him that at the proudest moment of his life he himself had created the joke . . . Stanley said, Dr. Livingstone, I presume?, and the world said, Ha ha!"

- 75 GUERNIER, EUGÈNE L. *L'Afrique, champ d'expansion de l'Europe*. Paris, A. Colin, 1933. 283 p. DT31.G8

This study by a prominent French geographer and philosopher of colonialism appeared shortly after the

International Colonial Exposition of Paris (1931) in which France displayed lavishly the results of her *mission civilisatrice* in her oversea empire, still frankly spoken of as colonies. The dedication is to "Lyautey the African, Marshal of France, Builder of Cities, Restorer of Empires," with whom Guernier had worked in North Africa. The scope of the book includes discussion of European overpopulation and need for emigration, the history of European penetration into Africa, the importance of Africa in modern economy, and European enterprise in the "moral and material" development of Africa.

76. HANNA, ALEXANDER J. *European rule in Africa*. London, Published for the Historical Association by Routledge and K. Paul, 1961. 36 p. (General series, G. 46) DT31.H26

Skillful summarization of colonial history from the mid-nineteenth century to the present day, by a lecturer in modern history at the University of Southampton. Moves and motives of the "Great Scramble" are outlined in capsule form.

77. LIVINGSTONE, DAVID. *Livingstone's travels*, edited by James I. McNair, with geographical sections by Ronald Miller. London, Dent, 1954. 429 p. illus., maps. DT731.L747 1954

Extracts from Dr. Livingstone's three big books recording his explorations, *Missionary Travels and Researches in South Africa* (1857), *The Zambezi and Its Tributaries* (1865), *Livingstone's Last Journal* (2 v. edited by Horace Waller, 1874), all published by John Murray, London. The generous selections provide, in the great missionary explorer's own words, a fairly full account of the travels that made him famous. Four geographical sections are interspersed, explaining the African background, South and West Central Africa, the Lower Zambezi and Nyasaland, and the East African plateau. Brief appendixes are in the nature of extended notes.

Another modern edition is *The Zambezi Expedition of David Livingstone, 1858–1863*, edited by J. P. R. Wallis and published as No. 9 of the Central African Archives, Oppenheimer Series (London, Chatto & Windus, 1956. 2 v. col. plates, map). The first volume contains a part of the Journals, the second continues the Journals, with letters and dispatches therefrom. Among the many lives of Livingstone, a notable biography emphasizing his role as explorer is by the geographer Frank Debenham, *The Way to Ilala; David Livingstone's Pilgrimage* (London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1955. 336 p. illus., maps). Other works by and about Livingstone are noted in the section of this list on Christian missions (see no. 404).

78. LUCAS, Sir CHARLES. *The partition and colonization of Africa*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1922. 228 p. DT31.L8

A set of lectures given at the Royal Colonial Institute by a noted Oxford historian of the British Empire, who had formerly been head of the Dominions Department of the Colonial Office. The first two chapters give pre-19th-century background, then nine talks expound with exemplary clarity the phases of the European penetration, rivalries, and wars in Africa. The last chapter assesses the results of World War I on the map of Africa and speculates on problems of the future, as "millions of natives [become] year by year less unsophisticated and possessed of more race consciousness and more self-respect."

The 19th-century standard history is Sir John Scott Kelcie's *Partition of Africa* (1st ed., 1893; 2d ed., rev., 1895), which according to Hanna has not been superseded. It was further revised and edited by Professor Albert Galloway Keller of Yale and published with the title *Africa* in the History of Nations series edited by Henry Cabot Lodge (New York, P. F. Collier & Son, Memorial edition, 1928. 335 p.).

Documentation on the diplomatic aspects of the European takeover of Africa is provided in one of the Peace Handbooks series prepared by the British Foreign Office, Historical Section: *Partition of Africa* (London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1920. 82 p. Handbooks, no. 89). The appendix gives texts of the bilateral agreements and treaties of Great Britain with the other European powers concerning African colonies, 1890-1904.

An anti-imperialist view of European colonization also found expression in England and America during the first decades of the 20th century. Typical is the English Fabian Leonard S. Woolf's *Empire and Commerce in Africa: A Study in Economic Imperialism* (Westminster, The Labour Research Dept.; London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1919. 374 p.). Two American interpretations are written by Professor Norman Dwight Harris of Northwestern University in his *Intervention and Colonization in Africa* (Boston, 1914; revised, with title, *Europe and Africa*, Houghton Mifflin, 1927. 479 p. International Politics, v. 1), and by the journalist and foreign correspondent, Lamar Middleton. In a frankly sensational book, *The Rape of Africa* (New York, Harrison Smith and Robert Haas, 1936. 331 p.), Middleton sought to expose "the recorded moves and remarks of a small group of statesmen who stole a continent, in the pious conviction that the African races craved the delights of Civilization." The book is spirited but not necessarily accurate.

79. MACMILLAN, WILLIAM M. *The road to self-rule; a study in colonial evolution*. London, Faber & Faber, 1959. 296 p. JV1062.M25

An historical study of the process of change from colonial rule to independent government, by a leading historian who after many years at the University of Witwatersrand in his native South Africa had been from 1947-54 Director of Colonial Studies at the Uni-

versity of St. Andrews. His primary attention is to African evolution, though he begins with general factors, "a preliminary glance at America, which set a bad example," and a chapter on the West Indies where he had recently been a visiting professor. He then limits his examination to British Africa, from "The Rule of Law at the Cape of Good Hope" to the new patterns, in which government has become "The Black Man's Burden." The book ends with a warning to the new rulers, that, though they feel themselves successful leaders of a revolution, "in fact the revolution has hardly yet begun," and the task of building nations out of the disparate elements of elite and masses, new urban centres and "bush," is yet to be accomplished.

80. OLIVER, ROLAND A. *Sir Harry Johnston & the scramble for Africa*. New York, St. Martin's Press, 1958. 368 p. illus. DA17.J604 1958

A satisfactory telling of history through the medium of biography. In ten years of intensive study of African history, says Mr. Oliver, "no one personality has more constantly crossed my path" than Johnston, whose career as naturalist, explorer, civil servant, administrator, and historian extended to most parts of Black Africa. Johnston's own works, including *The Colonization of Africa* (1899) and *The Opening up of Africa* (1911), as well as regional histories, linguistics, and zoological writings, are among the most important source works of his period.

81. PERHAM, MARGERY. *Lugard*. London, Collins, 1956-60. 2 v. illus., ports., maps, facsimis. DA566.9.L82P4

Circulated in America by Essential Books.  
Includes bibliographies.

These two volumes by one of England's foremost colonial scholars trace every phase of the career of the famous administrator who established the 20th-century British concept of indirect rule in native administration. "It is fortunate," writes Lord Hailey in a review of the second volume (*Africa*, v. 31, April 1961, p. 185-186), "that Miss Perham found herself able to accept the role of biographer which Lugard himself had hoped that she might assume. A friend bound to him by close ties of affection and respect, she nevertheless exhibits the virtues of an objective and scholarly historian."

Miss Perham has also edited three volumes of Lord Lugard's diaries, covering his East African experience (see no. 1278). His own work (Lugard, F. J. D., baron. *The Dual Mandate in British Tropical Africa*, Edinburgh and London, Blackwood, 1922. 643 p.) enunciates the philosophy of local ad-



ministration based on the use of the traditional Native Authorities, which presumably would allow the African a gradual introduction to modern civilization.

82. PERHAM, MARGERY and J. SIMMONS, eds. *African discovery*, an anthology of exploration. London, Faber & Faber, 1946. 280 p. plates, ports., maps. DT3.P4 1946

From the works of the British explorers of Africa, covering the period from 1769 to 1873. List of books: p. 274-277.

The most considerable modern selection of original sources, this volume edited by the Director of the Institute of Colonial Research, now Official Fellow of Nuffield College at Oxford, contains generous extracts from the books of 11 British explorers, arranged in the order in which the writers had arrived in Africa (2 for Livingstone). Introductions by Miss Perham on the purpose and character of the anthology and by Mr. Simmons briefly sketching the geography of the continent and the explorers, are followed by the selections, each preceded by a few paragraphs of details regarding careers of the travelers. Those represented are James Bruce, Mungo Park, Clapperton and Lander, Livingstone (1), Baikie, Burton, Speke, Baker, Livingstone and Stanley. The bibliography, p. 274-277, names the chief works by these men and biographies or other sources of information about them. Fuller selections from the British explorers have been published in volumes for West Africa (no. 500) and East Africa (no. 1284).

83. ROBINSON, RONALD, JOHN GALLAGHER, with ALICE DENNY. *Africa and the Victorians; the climax of imperialism in the Dark Continent*. New York, St. Martins Press, 1961. 491 p. DT32.R55

Two British historians trained in African studies survey the age of imperialist expansion, particularly from the British side. It is their thesis that strategy and defensive measures against other European powers were the motivating force in the partition, and that trade, plantations, and economic exploitation followed rather than led the way. British ministers were not impelled, they argue, by "new sustained or compelling impulses towards African empire," but their territorial claims were "little more than by-products of an enforced search for better security" in the Mediterranean and the East.

Anti-imperialism presumably finds vigorous expression in a work now being published in Hungary: Endre Sík, *Histoire de l'Afrique noire* (Budapest, Akadémiai Kiadó for the Hungarian Academy of Sciences). The first of three volumes

appeared in French in 1961 (408 p.), covering African history from earliest times through the 19th century. The book is not yet available at the Library of Congress, but the publisher's announcement gives the table of contents and explains that Professor Sík examines first the history of the African peoples themselves, and then, from their point of view, the history of the conquerors and their conquests. "He denounces the falsifications of [previous] literature and shows the true face of colonization, stressing above all the secular struggles of the peoples of Africa for their liberty."

84. SCHIFFERS, HEINRICH. *The quest for Africa*; two thousand years of exploration. Translated from the German by Diana Pyke. New York, Putnam, 1958. 352 p. illus. DT20.S353 1958

Translation of *Wilder Erdteil Afrika*.

The title of this German retelling of selected chapters from the history of European penetration of Africa is somewhat misleading. A few paragraphs on Egyptians and Carthaginians account for 1,500 of the author's "two thousand" years. The arrangement is regional, beginning with the quest for the sources of the Nile, a section which includes the story of the Mahdi's rebellion in the Sudan. Other sections record voyages on the seacoasts, the Boer trek from the Cape, the opening of Central Africa (mostly Livingstone and Stanley), the gold discoveries, a long chapter on Emin Pasha, and some French travels in the North African desert. The style is popular to the point of sensationalism.

A more condensed treatment is by a French Catholic historian, Bernard de Vaulx, *En Afrique: cinq mille ans d'exploration* (Paris, Fayard, 1960. 318 p.). The author begins with the Egyptian legends of the land of Punt and of Ophir and the periplus of Hannon, reviews voyages of the middle ages and the first discoveries around the coast, then the explorations into the interior, from Mungo Park in the late 18th century to the French in the Sahara in recent years. Basing his account on secondary sources, he leaves out few names, but practically all detail. He is concerned to show scientific or spiritual motives, though—to quote the editor's foreword—"he has none the less retained the passage from the *Essay on Manners* in which Voltaire relentlessly asserted the role of 'cupidity' in discovery."

85. THOMSON, ARTHUR A. M., and DOROTHY MIDDLETON. *Lugard in Africa*. London, R. Hale, 1959, 189 p. illus. DA566.9.L82T5

Includes bibliography.

Published almost simultaneously with the first volume of Miss Perham's far more extended study of Lugard, this is a well-told narrative biography of the great administrator from his early command against the slave trade in East Africa through his introduction of indirect rule as Governor-General of Nigeria.



86. TOWNSEND, MARY E., and CYRUS H. PEAKE. *European colonial expansion since 1871*. Edited by Walter Consuelo Langsam. Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1941. 629 p. JV105.T6

A useful synthesis of colonial history, designed as a textbook for college courses. Beginning with Stanley's discoveries in Central Africa and the formation of the Association Internationale Africaine by Leopold II of Belgium, the account of the rivalry of the European Powers for territory in the opening continent is reduced to bare bones. Each chapter is followed by an evaluative reading list.

An earlier study by Dr. Townsend was on the former German territories, *The Rise and Fall of Germany's Colonial Empire, 1884-1918* (New York, Macmillan, 1930. 424 p.). The efforts of Germany to recover the territories during the interwar period were carefully examined by Rayford W. Logan, Howard University historian, in *The African Mandates in World Politics* (Washington, Public Affairs Press, 1949. 220 p.).

## GOVERNMENT

(including Colonial Administration)

*Note:* For this section the series of bibliographies now being compiled by the Library of Congress on official publications of the individual African countries are particularly applicable. To mid-1963 lists have been published for Nigeria, former French West Africa, Somalia, and a series for British East Africa (former) in four parts, East Africa High Commission, Tanganyika, Kenya and Zanzibar, Uganda. These lists, while including currently published documents as comprehensively as possible, are perhaps of greatest value for retrospective studies. The same is true of the British and French official listings of documents of their overseas possessions (now mostly former): Gt. Brit. Colonial Office. Library Reference and Research Section. *Monthly List of Official Colonial Publications* (London, June 1948+ Mimeographed); *Bibliographie sélective des publications officielles françaises* (Paris, La Documentation française, 1952+ semi-monthly).

87. AKPAN, NTIEYONG U. *Epitaph to indirect rule; a discourse on local government in Africa*. London, Cassell, 1956. 204 p. JS7525.A45

By an administrative officer of the Eastern Region of Nigeria, himself a native of the country. Much of his discussion of the current system of local government—functions and responsibility, financing, administrative organization, etc.—in British West Africa is illustrated by the experience of the Eastern Region, the first territory in which the change from indirect rule was instituted by the Local Government Ordinance of 1950.

88. COHEN, Sir ANDREW. *British policy in changing Africa*. Evanston, Northwestern University Press, 1959. 116 p. (Northwestern University. African studies, no. 2) DT32.C6

Sir Andrew Cohen came to America as Permanent British Member of the Trusteeship Council in 1957, and this book consists of a series of lectures given at Northwestern University in the spring of 1958. As former Governor of Uganda, famed for his progressive policies, he is uniquely qualified to talk about British government in Africa. The four talks, informal and absorbingly interesting, were on "Africa and the West: Encounter and Period of Building," "The Nation and the Tribe," "The Tasks of Government," "Africa and the West: Needs of the Future." He concluded by pointing out the similarity of interests of the United States and Britain in Africa.

89. CROCKER, WALTER RUSSELL. *Self-government for the colonies*. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1949. 177 p. JV412.C7

The Australian author of this forceful statement of post-war colonial theory had formerly been an administrator in Nigeria, an official with the League of Nations, and from 1946-49 Chief of the African Section of the U.N. Secretariat. His study in 1946, *On Governing Colonies* (Allen & Unwin, 152 p.) was a thoughtful "outline of the real issues and a comparison of the British, French, and Belgian approach to them." In the 1949 work he examined the colonial world of the postwar era. His conclusion was that, in spite of increasing good government by England and the other colonial powers, the pace of progress toward political independence must be faster, that the old form of colonialism was dead or dying, and that future relations must be voluntary partnership, to come at a moment which the colony itself must decide.

During the years just before and after the Second World War statements and comparative analyses of colonial policy on the part of the European powers were numerous. Among conspicuous general and theoretical treatments, attention might be called to the following:

- Colonial administration by European powers*. London, New York, Royal Institute of International Affairs, 1947. 97 p. JV412.C6

Papers by leading spokesmen for colonial policy of France (H. Laurentie), Indonesia (A. M. Joeques), Belgian Congo (Robert Godding), Portugal (José de Almada), Great Britain (Lord Hailey).

- Du Bois, W. E. BURGHARDT. *Color and democracy: colonies and peace*. New York, Harcourt, Brace, 1945. 143 p. D816.D8

Argument for freedom of dependent peoples, by an internationally known leader of Negro thought whose

anti-imperialism, at the time of writing, was considered by many American critics to be a moderate viewpoint and "a tract for the times."

WALKER, ERIC A. *Colonies*. Cambridge, England, University Press, 1944. 168 p. (Current problems, 20) JV185.W25

Survey of world conditions of colonies, the policies of the powers, comparative political, economic and social development of colonial peoples, and future prospects, by an authority on South Africa.

90. DOWSON, Sir ERNEST, and VIVIAN L. O. SHEPARD. *Land registration*. 2d ed. London, H.M. Stationery Office, 1956. 265 p. diagr. (Colonial research publications no. 13)

JV33.G7A52, no. 13

Second edition of a book first published in 1948 at the request of the Colonial Land Tenure Advisory Panel specifically for the use of colonial officers. Most of the text gives history of land records from early Egyptian times in Europe and modern India, but a chapter is devoted to the system of land registrations in French colonies and Belgian Congo, and accounts of the evolution in tribal areas of the British African possessions were added in the 1956 volume.

91. ELIAS, TASLIM OLAWALE. *Government and politics in Africa*. New York, Asia Pub. House, 1961. 228 p. JQ1872.E4

This volume by Nigeria's first Attorney General, the best known African writer on Nigerian and customary law (see no. 724) is put together from a series of lectures at the University of Delhi in 1956, consequently somewhat dated. Dr. Elias carried back his account of indigenous institutions to the medieval empires, then discussed forms of constitutions and federations, as well as many questions of common law and customary law.

92. *Fabian colonial essays*. With an introduction by A. Creech Jones. Edited by Rita Hinden. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1945. 261 p. JV1027.F3

This collection of essays on colonial policy expresses the views of the Socialist thinkers who in 1945 were to take over colonial administration (A. Creech Jones was Minister of Colonies in the Labour Government). Most of the papers are concerned with the colonial world in general, but three deal directly with Africa: "The Challenge of African Poverty," by Rita Hinden, secretary of the Fabian Colonial Bureau (her answer is perhaps through cooperatives, and "to put an end to extraction of wealth from Africa in the European interest"); "Language and the African," by Ida

Ward; "Is Literacy Necessary in Africa?" by Margaret Wrong.

In interesting contrast to the idealistic hopes expressed in this work is the tone of a later volume also edited by Mr. A. Creech Jones, *New Fabian Colonial Essays* (New York, Praeger, 1959. 271 p.). The dilemma of British Socialists faced with problems of plural societies, world politics, economic dependence of the underdeveloped countries, education barely begun, etc., etc., were voiced by several leading thinkers, including Rita Hinden, Kenneth Younger, Thomas Balogh, and others. The former editor of *African Affairs*, H. V. L. Swanzy, commented in a review in that journal (January 1960, p. 64-65), "the lessons of the last 15 years have added a colder light to the rose-pink spectacles."

93. FURSE, Sir RALPH D. *Aucuparius: recollections of a recruiting officer*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. 330 p. illus.

JV1076.F8

The title is a classical allusion (perhaps a myth, says Sir Ralph, like the British Empire) to a mythological birdcatcher. The development of the recruitment and training system of the British Colonial Civil Service is explained through the urbane reminiscences of the author, who had been deeply involved in this task for 40 years.

94. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Annual reports on the colonies*. London, H.M. Stationery Office . . .

This valuable series, providing an authoritative general survey of the current situation and background of each of the British colonial possessions, was suspended in 1940, and begun again with the *Reports* for 1946. They are published annually, or in some cases biennially, in uniform booklets, varying from about 50 to over 100 pages, including a few pages of photographs and a folded map. For anyone reading on particular British colonies in Africa, the *Reports* are perhaps the most useful preliminary to be found, and, after discontinuance of the current report as each country reaches independence, will continue to be of prime importance for background study. The arrangement of contents is systematic, with slight variations: Part I has a general review of the year's developments. Part II gives brief factual and statistical paragraphs regarding population, occupations, wages and labor, public finance and taxation, currency and banking, commerce, production, social services (health, education, etc.), legislation, justice, police and prisons, public utilities, communications and public works, research, land tenure, etc. Part III outlines geography and climate, history, administration and public relations, explains weights and measures used, lists news-



papers and periodicals, and gives bibliography, which includes governmental and nongovernmental publications. Appendixes give texts of special documents and statistical tables.

The quarterly *Journal of African Administration* (since January 1962 *Journal of Local Administration Overseas*) has been edited since 1949 in the African Studies Branch of the Colonial Office. In 1962 it was published by the new Department of Technical Co-operation. Its articles are the exchange of information on techniques and practices of administration. It contains also sections of book reviews, summarization of reports, and notes on legislation.

95. ———. *Colonial research*. 1944/45+ London. annual. JV1027.A32

This annual report includes the overall report of the Colonial Research Council and the individual reports of its branches: in 1959/60, the Committee for Colonial Agricultural, Animal Health and Forestry Research, Colonial Economic Research Committee, Colonial Fisheries Advisory Committee, Colonial Medical Research Council, Colonial Pesticides Committee, Colonial Road Research Committee, Colonial Social Science Research Council, Tsetse Fly and Trypanosomiasis Committee, and the report of the Director, Anti-Locust Research Centre. The last section summarizes research matters not covered by the specialist advisory bodies, including African administration, building research, geological surveys, industrial and engineering research, meteorology, road research, water pollution research. For each subject of research, projects are outlined as to scope and results and titles given of research publications.

96. HAILEY, WILLIAM M. H., baron. *Native administration in the British African territories*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1950–53. 5 v. JQ1890.H28

At head of title, pt. 1–4; Colonial Office; pt. 5: Commonwealth Relations Office.

Lord Hailey's *African Survey* (see no. 13) had appeared first in 1938. In 1941 he reported following journeys in the British colonies during the two previous years, examining administration under wartime conditions. After an inspection in 1947–48 he found the situation so much changed that he rewrote his report, the first four volumes of which (East Africa, Central Africa, West Africa, General Survey) appeared in 1950–51, the fifth, on the High Commission Territories, in 1953. The work is little concerned with political or constitutional development, but is a detailed statement of administrative systems in the colonies

under review, including the administration of justice through native tribunals and changes in land law and customary law—the whole forming a handbook for administrative officers in the colonial service.

97. JEFFRIES, Sir CHARLES JOSEPH. *Transfer of power; problems of the passage to self-government*. London, Pall Mall Press, 1960. 148 p. JV1060.J4

The author was for many years an official of the Colonial Office, a history of which he published in 1956 (*The Colonial Office*. London, Allen & Unwin; New York, Oxford University Press. 222 p. The New Whitehall series). In this book he examines the phases and problems of the British withdrawal, accomplished or approaching, from administrative authority in general, in Ceylon, Ghana, Malaya, Nigeria, and elsewhere.

98. KIMBLE, DAVID. *The machinery of self-government*. London, Penguin Books, 1953. 124 p. (Penguin West African series, WA 4) JQ2998.A2K5

One of a series of little books adapted to the needs of African students. The first chapters are on public opinion, its formation, organization, and expression. Then comes a simple exposition of the legislative assembly and its procedure, political parties, the role of the executive, the civil service, the head of state. The author was at the time Director of Extra-Mural Studies at the University College of the Gold Coast.

99. MAIR, LUCY P. *Native policies in Africa*. London, G. Routledge, 1936. 303 p. maps. DT21.M3

Bibliography: p. 295–298.

In a comparative analysis of European control, the London School of Economics specialist in colonial administration contrasted the policies of British administration in countries of white settlement and in the colonies governed through systems of native administration, making a strong case for the latter. She then outlined policies of France, Belgium, and Portugal in their African colonies, concluding with a plea for the study and application of social anthropology in the government of dependent peoples.

100. ———. *Primitive government*. Baltimore, Penguin Books, 1962. 288 p. (A Pelican book, A542) DT365.M25

In this book, published in a series for the informed layman, Dr. Mair examines systems of government in



a number of tribal societies of East Africa and Ruanda-Urundi. Her thesis is that the concepts essential to ordered rule exist among "peoples of simple technology"—e.g., those who have no written records.

Another of Dr. Mair's recent works is written especially for an African audience, with suggestions as to the pitfalls that may be awaiting them as they initiate their own governments: *Safeguards for Democracy* (London, Oxford University Press, 1961. 90 p. The New Africa Library).

101. PERHAM, MARGERY F. *The colonial reckoning; the end of imperial rule in Africa in the light of British experience.* New York, Knopf, 1962. 203 p. DT31.P37 1962

An expanded version of the Reith lectures given through the BBC in late 1961 by this distinguished professor of colonial administration. (A note about the author at the end of the book outlines her career.) Miss Perham's talks were on the changing significance of the terms colonialism and imperialism, on African nationalism, the politics of the newly "liberated" states, the huge and disturbing problem of white settlement, the colonial balance-sheet—much of it on the credit side for Britain—and future prospects, more hopeful than pessimistic. To her British listeners, although in no sense does the biographer of Lugard offer an apology for British action, the lectures must have brought a measure of satisfaction with the largely well-meaning past of their colonial empire and its present, for the most part well-accomplished, liquidation.

102. RHODES-LIVINGSTONE INSTITUTE, Lusaka, Northern Rhodesia. 13th conference, 1959. *From tribal rule to modern government; proceedings.* Edited with an introd. by Raymond Apthorpe. Lusaka, 1959. xix, 216 p. maps. JQ1872.R53 1959

Includes bibliographies.

Papers regarding the transition from the traditional tribal, usually chiefly, government under indirect rule to the politics of modern Western-style bureaucracy. Chiefs, councils, courts, and political organization are considered in case studies of tribes in Northern and Southern Rhodesia, Tanganyika, Nigeria, Nyasaland, and Somalia. The contributors were social anthropologists and administrators. The editor, who wrote the introductory essay generalizing on the aspects of political change, is Research Secretary of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute.

103. WIESCHHOFF, HEINRICH A. *Colonial policies in Africa.* Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania Press, 1944. 138 p. (African handbooks, edited by H. A. Wieschhoff. 5)

DT31.W5

Bibliography: p. 126–132.

A clear and simple statement of the principles and aims of the colonial powers in their rule of Africa, written in anticipation of the Peace Conference to follow the Second World War. The last chapter discussed the application of the Atlantic Charter to the future of the African colonies. A well-chosen bibliography of 132 references included many of the most authoritative works of the between-wars period on theory and practice of colonialism.

An interesting book applicable also in regard to colonial theory is the more recent study by D. O. Mannoni, *Prospero and Caliban.* As it applies the "psychology of colonization" to the special case study of Madagascar, it is described in this list under the regional heading (see no. 1232).

104. YOUNGER, KENNETH G. *The public service in new states; a study in some trained manpower problems.* London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. 113 p. JQ1876.Y6

By the Director-General of the Royal Institute of International Affairs, this is an objective and factual study of administrative cadres in the transition period from colonial to independent government. In contrast to India and Malaya, where trained and competent nationals were available, in the new countries of Africa the withdrawal of expatriate officers and the Africanization of the higher grades of public services have presented serious problems. Mr. Younger studies the methods adopted by the British Government in the cases of Ghana, Malaya, the Sudan, and especially the Federation and Regions of Nigeria.

The question of the national elites and the European civil service formed the theme of the 32d Study Session of INCIDI (International Institute of Differing Civilization) held in Munich in September 1960. The detailed reports and papers were published with the title, *Problèmes des cadres dans les pays tropicaux et subtropicaux. Staff Problems in Tropical and Subtropical Countries*, by INCIDI (Bruxelles, 1961. 681 p.). Shorter papers under the same title were printed in the Inter-African Labour Institute *Bulletin* of May 1961 (see no. 248).

## POLITICS

*Note:* The fluidity of African politics results in a literary situation aptly described by a Belgian scholar: "Today, to write on Africa is to write in the sand, to describe a momentary reality which is no longer that of yesterday and which tomorrow will overthrow" (E. Bustin, *Décentralisation ad-*

*ministrative et l'évolution des structures politiques en Afrique orientale britannique*. Liège, Faculté de Droit de Liège, 1958, p. 2). The consequence is that works of timely interest of the past decade are quickly outdated. Into this category, for which many other titles might be cited, fall Vernon Bartlett's *Struggle for Africa* (New York, Praeger, 1953. 246 p.), *Transition in Africa: Studies in Political Adaptation*, edited by Gwendolen M. Carter and William O. Brown (Boston, Boston University Press, 1958. 158 p.), and the symposium edited by Calvin W. Stillman, *Africa in the Modern World* (Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1955. 341 p.). A fair proportion of the works listed below may have joined these as sources for historical research by the time the present bibliography is published.

In the study of politics, more perhaps than in any other field, it is essential to make use of the current periodical press. The daily and weekly newspapers are of first importance—the *London Times*, *Observer*, and *Economist*, the *Manchester Guardian*, Paris *Le Monde*, *New York Times*, to mention a few of the most accessible. Of the periodicals devoted in whole or large part to African affairs listed in the *Library of Congress Serials for African Studies* (1961), over 70 are indexed as political journals and about an equal number as news weeklies. (A year and a half after publication of that list of over 2,000 serial titles, the African Section has in its card files titles of at least 300 new periodicals.) Among those found most useful in research on current political questions are: *Africa Diary* (Delhi, India, weekly); *Africa Digest* (London, bimonthly); *Africa Report* (Washington, D.C., monthly); *Africa Today* (New York, monthly); *Afrique nouvelle* (Dakar, weekly); *Bulletin de l'Afrique noire* (Paris, weekly); *Chronologie politique africaine* (Paris, weekly); *Jeune Afrique* (Tunis, weekly); *West Africa* (London, weekly). These journals give general coverage to the continent or large portions of it; others of more limited regional scope are noted in appropriate sections of this bibliography.

## POLITICAL AFFAIRS AND NATIONALISM

105. ADAM, THOMAS R. *Government and politics in Africa, south of the Sahara*. Revised and enlarged edition. New York, Random House, 1962. 185 p. (Studies in political science, PS28) JQ1872.A33

Includes bibliography.

This handy booklet, now in its second edition (1st 1959), is by a political scientist at New York University, and is slanted toward scholastic use. The concise summary of political history and current situation is brought up to mid-1961. There are for this edition two appendixes, one of party organization in countries of French expression, one of political status, area, population, and education in all countries of sub-Saharan Africa.

106. *African one-party states*, edited by Gwendolen M. Carter. Contributors, Charles F. Gallagher, Ernest Milcent, L. Gray Cowan, Virginia Thompson, J. Gus Liebenow, and Margaret L. Bates. Ithaca, New York, Cornell University Press, 1962. 501 p. DT30.A38

Includes bibliographies.

Substantial, authoritative summaries of political backgrounds of six African countries which have developed one-party governments: Tunisia, Senegal, Guinea, the Ivory Coast, Liberia, and Tanganyika, by one French and five American specialists. Especially useful because the countries were selected partly because of paucity of available information. The book is reviewed in the March 1963 issue of *Africa Report*.

107. BAULIN, JACQUES. *The Arab role in Africa*. Baltimore, Penguin Books, 1962. 143 p. illus. (Penguin African library, AP6) DT176.B3

By a French journalist who has specialized in Arab problems, this is a serious study of relationships between Arab Africa and Africa south of the Sahara. The special focus is the Casablanca group and the efforts of Nasser for Pan-African unity and Egyptian influence. Reviewed in *Africa Report* of December 1962.

108. CARTER, GWENDOLEN M. *Independence for Africa*. New York, Praeger, 1960. 172 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT31.C33

Includes bibliography.

An illuminating introduction to the changing political scene in the new Africa. Dr. Carter, a professor of political science at Smith College and one of America's leading Africanists (see her *The Politics of Inequality*, no. 1806), bases her survey on a recent trip in which she had observed at first hand the interactions between the many rival groups and factions of Africans, and, in Central and East Africa, of Asians and Europeans, in the countries approaching independence.

109. CHISIZA, DUNDUZU KALULI. *Africa—what lies ahead*. New York, The African-American Institute, 1962. 64 p. (Occasional papers) DLC-AFR

The first of a new pamphlet series, to be written principally by Africans. The author, a Nyasaland leader who functioned brilliantly as Parliamentary Secretary to the Ministry of Finance of his country until his tragic death in an automobile accident in late 1962, expounded lucidly and simply what he considered the chief and lasting problems facing the new states. These he grouped as secular and religious; in



the first he treated political problems, leadership, social and economic problems. The second is concerned chiefly with indifference to religion, which the writer considered "a continent-wide phenomenon which deserves to rank as one of the major social problems of Africa." The booklet is reviewed at length by F. Taylor Ostrander in *Africa Report* of August 1962.

110. COLEMAN, JAMES S. "Politics of sub-Saharan Africa." In Almond, Gabriel A., and James S. Coleman, eds. *The politics of the developing areas*. Princeton, N.J., Princeton University Press, 1960: p. 247-368. JF31.A53

In a volume of comparative analysis of political systems in Asia, Africa, and Latin America, the essay on African politics by the coauthor, Professor Coleman, is focused on the great diversity of African traditional and evolving political systems and on the racial and tribal pluralism which complicates the establishment of new governments. He does not find that these factors will necessarily retard the building of unified nations, nor that they are necessarily unhealthy. Rather, "it could be argued that such a rich pluralism [of tribes within a state] makes dictatorship less likely by providing countervailing power centers which cannot be coerced into a single authoritarian system." His discussion is illustrated with notable tables of population, degree of commercialization, political groups, party strengths, types of elites, etc.

111. COLEMAN, JAMES S., and BELMONT BRICE, Jr. "The role of the military in sub-Saharan Africa." In Johnson, John J., ed. *The role of the military in underdeveloped countries*. Princeton, N.J., Princeton University Press, 1962: p. 359-405. U21.5.J6

Published also by African Studies Center, University of California at Los Angeles as its African studies paper no. 3.

The volume in which this paper appears results from a RAND Corporation conference of August 1959, revised with data through 1960. The authors of the paper for Africa examine the military legacy of the colonial powers and the national military situation, buildup, and policies in the new nations. Reviewed in *Africa Report*, July 1962.

112. DUFFY, JAMES, and ROBERT A. MANNERS, eds. *Africa speaks*. Princeton, N.J., Van Nostrand, 1961. 223 p. DT30.D8

For this compilation the editors obtained from about twenty eminent African and European spokesmen essays giving their views on the present and future of Africa in general, or in regard to their particular re-

gions or subjects. The collection, they feel, expresses in essence the conflicts and aspirations of Africa south of the Sahara, which "cannot be written simply in terms of nationalism and colonialism." In all, "change itself is inevitably stressed, and the direction of the change is towards freedom of the new and gestating African nations to choose their own way and to make their own mistakes." Sections are "The Independence of Africa" (by Mboya, Nyerere, Sékou Touré, and Nkrumah); "The Problems of Freedom" (in Ghana, Togo, and the former Belgian Congo, including papers by Olympio and Lumumba); "Africa in Transition" (Tanganyika, Kenya, the Central African Federation); "An Antique Colonialism" (Portuguese Africa, by Henrique Galvão); and "Union of South Africa." This last shows strikingly the impasse in South Africa; the three papers are by Ruth First, leader of the South African National Congress, M. D. C. de Wet Nel, the Minister of Bantu Administration and Development (to whom "The essence of the apartheid policy is . . . to imbue the Bantu with a spirit of independence and self-help . . ."), and an essay written just before the Sharpeville riots by Ronald Segal, then editor of *Africa South*, "The Free World's Other Face."

113. EMERSON, RUPERT. *From empire to nation; the rise to self-assertion of Asian and African peoples*. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1960. 466 p. JC311.E49

Includes bibliography.

This book by a professor of international relations at Harvard, known for studies of African as well as Asian politics, begins on the decline of imperialism and the rise of nationalism with historical background. The author then analyzes brilliantly the elements of race, culture, and economic interest that lead to nationalism, the relationship of nationalism to democracy, and the difficulties of self-determination in plural societies. In the last part he reviews main causes and events of recent history in the emerging states, and considers the problems of bringing the new societies into the modern and, to be hoped, the free world.

114. FAVROD, CHARLES HENRI. *L'Afrique seule*. Paris, Éditions du Seuil, 1961. 255 p. DT30.F3

In this book, written 3 years after his travel narrative (see no. 35n) M. Favrod analyzed objectively recent political developments of Black Africa, rather particularly West Africa, with emphasis on Guinea and Ghana, in vivid and unusual style. His chapters are in terms of the categories of African elite, to whom



the destinies of the new countries must be trusted, "The Jurist" (Touré's efforts to win independence and yet remain in the Community), "The Chief," "The Townsman," "The Salaried Man," "The Fighter," "The Business Man," "The Planner." He shows extensive familiarity with recent political and economic studies as well as with the usual tools of journalism.

115. HODGKIN, THOMAS. *Nationalism in colonial Africa*. London, F. Muller, 1956. 216 p. illus. DT31.H56

116. ———. *African political parties, an introductory guide*. Harmondsworth, Middlesex, Penguin Books, 1961. 217 p. (Penguin African series, WA 12) JQ1879.A795H6

With the first named of these works the author, who had been writing and lecturing on adult education and African affairs, acquired the reputation of a foremost authority on the politics of the developing countries of Africa. He had been carrying on investigations in what was then French West Africa and the Belgian Congo as well as in the British possessions, and in this book made use of extensive study of French, English, and other sources on African politics, sociology, and history. He compared in tabular form the self-contradictions of French, British, and Belgian policies, examined the institutions of African nationalism and the ideologies behind them, and foresaw accurately what would be the results of the chain reactions of nationalism in the territories then considered calm in their colonial status. *African Political Parties*, issued in paperback, is a concise and valuable guide, sketching the setting, the origins, the types of political parties, party organizations, activities, and objectives, with a conclusion of generalized "hypotheses" regarding them. A bibliography of sources is followed by an appendix listing the major parties from 1945 to 1960. The book was reviewed by Harvey Glickman in *Africa Report*, v. 7, April 1962, p. 19–22. In 1962 Dr. Hodgkin went to the University of Ghana in Legon to head a new program of African studies.

117. INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS. [*Africa*] London. 1960. p. 423–494. JX1.I53, v. 36  
Special issue, v. 36, Oct. 1960.

This issue of the quarterly of the Royal Institute of International Affairs contains a group of articles by experts on African political and governmental affairs. The contributions are: "Frontiers in Africa," by C. E. Carrington; "Economic Aspects of Political Independence in Africa," by S. Herbert Frankel; "Social Change in Africa," by L. P. Mair; "Multi-Racialism

in Africa," by Gwendolen M. Carter; "African Nationalism in East and Central Africa," by B. T. G. Chidzero; "The New Africa and the United Nations," by Sir Andrew Cohen; "New Lamps for Old: Review article on Kenneth Younger's 'The Public Service in New States'," by Hugh Tinker.

Two recent issues of the American monthly of world affairs, *Current History*, have also been devoted to surveys of political movements in Africa: "Changing Africa," February 1961 (v. 40: 65–110), and "Africa: a New Nationalism," October 1961 (v. 41: 193–239). The issue of July 1959 had also been on "New States of Africa" (the former French West and Equatorial Africa).

118. JACKSON, BARBARA WARD. *Five ideas that change the world*. New York, Published for the University College of Ghana by Norton, 1959. 188 p. JC311.J24

In a series of brilliant popular lectures at the University College of Ghana, Barbara Ward of the London *Economist* analyzed nationalism, industrialism, colonialism, communism and internationalism as the powerful forces of the present age. Her lucid picture of the world complex included an appeal to the small "uncommitted" nations, notably those whose preoccupation is anti-colonialism, to follow a policy of neutrality which, rather than playing off the great power blocs against one another, would take what she calls "a truly positive approach" to world order under the rule of law.

119. *The Journal of modern African studies*; a quarterly survey of politics, economics and related topics in contemporary Africa. To be edited by David and Helen Kimble. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press.

Advance notice in mid-1962.

"Interest will centre on the present, not on the more distant past . . . the aim will be to bring together the best current work on a wide and important range of related subjects that have not hitherto found a common published forum." Articles to be 3,000 to 6,000 words, occasionally 10,000. 128 pages per issue. The journal will be concerned not only with academic studies and specialist interests, but also with promoting more informed general discussion of contemporary African affairs. Editorial policy will avoid commitment to any political viewpoint or ideology. The only comparable journal is *Cahiers d'études africaines* (Paris, École pratique des hautes études, Sorbonne. 6e section; sciences économiques et sociales, 1960+)

120. LEGUM, COLIN. *Pan-Africanism; a short political guide.* London, Pall Mall Press, 1962. 296 p. map. DT30.L39 1962 b

Bibliography: p. 279-285

By the well-known expert on Africa of the London *Observer*, this masterly explanation of the ideas and programs of Pan-Africanism is expanded from the 1961 Annual Address of the Africa Bureau, delivered by Mr. Legum. Pan-Africanism, he asserts, is not a declaration of political principles, but essentially a "movement of ideas and emotions," its fullest expression the "casting aside by Africans of subservience to foreign masters in all forms, and their confident assertion that African interests are paramount." He examines emotional roots, citing many fervent expressions in poetry of negritude, then summarizes the history of the movement from the first Congress in 1900, its growth abroad and its return to Africa in the newly independent states, the African regroupings since independence, the conflicting attitudes toward East and West, and the political concepts which involve primarily nonalignment and the "African personality." A chapter on trade unions, "Africa's Divided Workers," is contributed by Mrs. Legum. About half the text, which the author calls the most useful part, consists of an appendix of documents, containing 25 major texts of Pan-Africanism.

121. MACKENZIE, WILLIAM J. M. and KENNETH ROBINSON, eds. *Five elections in Africa; a group of electoral studies.* Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1960. 496 p. illus., maps. JQ1879.A5M3

Bibliographical footnotes.

A set of analytical papers, edited by, respectively, a Professor of Government at the University of Manchester, and the Director of the Institute of Commonwealth Studies at the University of London. The pioneer elections examined, all orderly beyond expectation, are those of the Western Region of Nigeria in 1956, the Eastern Region in 1957, Sierra Leone in 1957, Senegal in 1957, and African elections in Kenya in March 1957. The papers are by Dr. Philip Whitaker and G. F. Engholm of the University College of East Africa (Makerere), J. H. Price of the University College of Ghana, D. J. R. Scott of Manchester, and Professor Robinson (on Senegal). In a chapter of conclusions Professor Mackenzie discusses the way in which the electoral system, a characteristically Western device, can and should be adapted to African society.

The same theme is treated in broader context by T. E. Smith in his *Elections in Developing Countries; A Study of*

*Electoral Procedures Used in Tropical Africa, South-east Asia and the British Caribbean* (London, Macmillan; New York, St. Martins Press, 1960. 278 p.).

122. MACMILLAN, WILLIAM M. *The road to self-rule; a study in colonial evolution.* London, Faber and Faber, 1959. 296 p. JV1062.M25

An historical study of the process of change from colonial rule to independent government, by a leading historian who after many years at the University of Witwatersrand in his native South Africa had been from 1947-54 Director of Colonial Studies at the University of St. Andrews. His primary attention is to African evolution, though he begins with general factors, "a preliminary glance at America, which set a bad example," and a chapter on the West Indies where he had recently been a visiting professor. He then limits his examination to British Africa, from "The Rule of Law at the Cape of Good Hope" to the new patterns, in which government has become "The Black Man's Burden." The book ends with a warning to the new rulers that, though they feel themselves successful leaders of a revolution, "in fact the revolution has hardly yet begun," and the task of building nations out of the disparate elements of elite and masses, new urban centers and "bush," is yet to be accomplished.

123. PADMORE, GEORGE. *Pan-Africanism or communism? The coming struggle for Africa.* New York, Roy Publishers, 1956. 463 p. illus. DT31.P3

Standard work on the history of Pan-Africanism by the late West Indian journalist and politician who from his London headquarters was the councilor and friend of all nationalist leaders of English-speaking Africa. This book is a straightforward account of nationalist movements in West Africa, East and Central Africa, and Liberia, and of the Pan-African movement, its launching by the American Negro leader W. E. B. Dubois, its international congresses, and leaders in the individual countries who follow its aims. Padmore also traced the history of Communist attempts to influence African movements, exposing the policy as false and cynical. Although in general advocating all forms of African nationalism, even, despite its terrorism, Mau Mau, he credited the empirical system of British "imperialism" with being more workable than that of other colonial powers.

A recent quick survey of this subject in French is by Philippe Decraene, *Le pan-africanisme* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1959. "Que sais-je"). A translation, *Panafricanism*, was issued in the Penguin Book series, Harmondsworth, England, in 1961.



124. PANIKKAR, K. MADHU. *Revolution in Africa*. New York, Asia Pub. House, 1961. 202 p.

DT30.P3

Study by a young Indian political scientist, who writes of nationalism and the rise of the new states in Africa from an anticolonial viewpoint. Following his appraisal of political patterns, pan-Africanism, and efforts of East and West to control Africa's natural resources, he devotes the last third of his book to a sympathetic case study of Guinea, likening Touré to Nehru. Mr. Panikkar is the son of Kavalam Madhava Panikkar, former Ambassador of India to China and Egypt, and now Ambassador to France, whose lectures at the Sorbonne in 1957 on *Afro-Asian States and their Problems* were published by the John Day Co., New York (1960. 104 p.). Like his son he emphasized nonalignment and antineocolonialism.

125. *The Political economy of contemporary Africa*. by Immanuel Wallerstein, David E. Apter, Carl G. Rosberg, Edward Marcus. Washington, National Institute of Social and Behavioral Science, George Washington University, 1960. 24 p. (Symposia series no. 1)

Four articles by American specialists in African political and social sciences, analyzing the general patterns and concepts for African society. Wallerstein discusses "Evolving Patterns of African Society," Apter and Rosberg set forth their theories of nationalism, and models of political change (see other works by these two writers), and Marcus outlines succinctly obstacles to economic growth.

126. ROTHCHILD, DONALD S. *Toward unity in Africa; a study of federalism in British Africa*. Foreword by Gwendolen Carter. Washington, Public Affairs Press, 1960. 224 p. DT32.R6

Includes bibliography.

Expanded from a doctoral dissertation, this is a study of efforts to solve racial and regional differences in nation-building by means of a federal constitution in Nigeria and Central Africa, and the economic and social steps toward that end in East Africa.

127. SEGAL, RONALD. *Political Africa; a who's who of personalities and parties* [by] Ronald Segal in collaboration with Catherine Hoskyns [and] Rosalynde Ainslie. New York, Praeger, 1961. 475 p. (Books that matter) DT18.S4

This is by far the most useful and comprehensive biographical directory as yet available. The author was editor of the now defunct *Africa South in Exile*; he admits in the preface that his information is more

complete for South Africa, Kenya, and Nigeria than for former French Africa and other territories where contacts were scanty. The first 288 pages contain biographical sketches in alphabetical order, varying in length from a short paragraph to two or three pages. The subjects are all political figures; scholars and literary men are included only if, like Professor Z. K. Matthews of Fort Hare University, or the Malagasy poet Jacques Rabemananjara, they are also concerned in political life. The second part of the book, pages 291-475, is a country-by-country report on political parties, their actions and status. In some cases information is given into 1961. A condensed version, *African Profiles*, has been published in the paperback Penguin African Library (Baltimore, Penguin Books, 1962. 352 p.).

Two other recent books are collections of biographical sketches of African leaders, limited, however, to the most prominent—Haile Selassie, Nkrumah, Mboya, Nyerere, Senghor, Sékou Touré, Tubman, Houphouët-Boigny, etc.—Rolf Italiaender's *The New Leaders of Africa* (Englewood Cliffs, N.J., Prentice-Hall, 1961. 306 p. Translated from the German), and Thomas P. Melady's *Profiles of African Leaders* (New York, Macmillan, 1961. 186 p.). A bimonthly *Dossier on Tropical Africa* in looseleaf form, published by Raymond Lefèvre in Paris, is so largely focused on French-speaking Africa that it is noticed in the regional section (no. 867).

128. SHEPHERD, GEORGE W. *The politics of African nationalism; challenge to American policy*. New York, Praeger, 1962. 244 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT30.S5

Includes bibliography.

Reviewed by St. Clair Drake in *Africa Report* of January 1963, together with Legum's *Pan-Africanism* (no. 120) and Pannikar (no. 124).

129. SPIRO, HERBERT J. *Politics in Africa: prospects south of the Sahara*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J., Prentice-Hall, 1962. 183 p. (A Spectrum book) JQ1872.S65

Paperbound volume by a political scientist at Amherst, analyzing the present political scene first on the international level, then by region. The book is reviewed together with half-a-dozen others of the same general description by Harvey Glickman in *Africa Report*, April 1962, p. 21-22.

130. SYMPOSIUM ON AFRICA, Wellesley College, 1960. *Symposium on Africa*. Wellesley, Mass., Wellesley College, 1960. 163 p. DT23.S9 1960

A set of papers on a high level of authoritativeness, delivered at five sessions. The first group, "Does 'Af-

rica' Exist," with Ralph J. Bunche as moderator, had as participants the Ambassador of Morocco, El-Mahdi Ben Aboud, Professors Herskovits, Hance, and Carter. Julia J. Henderson of United Nations Economic and Social Council was moderator of the second, "Changing Political Status," with addresses by Professor Harry Rudin of Yale and Mr. Rodrigues, chargé d'affaires of the French Community. Dr. William O. Brown was moderator of the third panel, on "Colonial Inheritance," with speeches by Mr. Duncan of the British Information Service and Mr. Essafi of Tunisia. The fourth, "After Independence What?" was moderated by Professor Rupert Emerson, with talks by the Hon. Garfield Todd of Southern Rhodesia, Professor Andrew Kamarck, and Mr. C. Vaughan Ferguson of the Department of State. The final address, "Africa's Place in the World," was by Julius Nyerere of Tanganyika.

131. WALLERSTEIN, IMMANUEL M. *Africa: the politics of independence*; an interpretation of modern African history. New York, Vintage Books. 1961. 173 p. (A Vintage original, V-206) DT30.W33

Dr. Wallerstein of the Department of Sociology at Columbia University has specialized in studies of French-speaking Africa. In this book for the general reader—which he speaks of as an "essay" rather than a full-scale study—he examines first ways by which colonial governments brought about social change and conflict, then the ways in which the social structures of the new states are evolving toward viable forms of political and economic cohesion. He generalizes about the continent as a whole rather than describing individual states. The work is reviewed by Harvey Glickman in *Africa Report*, April 1962, p. 20-21.

## THE RACE QUESTION

132. AKADEMIĀ NAUK SSSR. Institut vostokovedeniĀ. *Rasovaia diskriminatsiĀ v. stranakh Afriki* [Sbornik statei] Moskva, Izd-vo vost. lit., 1960. 255 p. DT15.A46

Includes bibliography.

"Racial discrimination in the African countries; a collection of articles." This publication of the Institute for Eastern Studies brings together a group of statements of the Soviet "anti-imperialist" argument for propaganda purposes in Africa.

133. BROOMFIELD, GERALD W. *The chosen people; or, the Bible, Christianity and race*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1954. 91 p.

HT1561.B7

The Secretary of the Universities' Mission to Central Africa had compared the South African racial situation to the Hitlerian doctrine of the *Herrenvolk* in a book of 1944, *Colour Conflict*. In this later work he approached the race issue from the standpoint of what the Bible and Christian teaching imply regarding racial relationships: ". . . not only aggressive action, but even the desire of any nation or race to dominate others . . . is an offense against God." He talked simply of the application in multiracial countries of Christian unity, understanding, and trust, going deeply into the question of social relationships.

134. BURNS, Sir ALAN C. *Colour prejudice*, with particular reference to the relationship between whites and Negroes. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1948. 164 p. HT1521.B85

The writer was a permanent British representative on the Trusteeship Council of U.N. from 1947-56, his previous job as governor of Nigeria being terminated in 1947 with the adoption of the greatly liberalized Constitution of that year, known as the "Burns Constitution." In this book he examined carefully the relationships between whites and Negroes in Africa, America and elsewhere, quoting largely from the extensive literature on the subject published in the United States and South Africa. He commented in the introduction on "the curious failure of the educated Negro to appreciate fully the advantage of British rule." He refuted any argument of African racial inferiority; "The lack of achievement by Negroes in the past is attributable to conditions over which they had no control [climate, disease, isolation, etc.] and their present low position in the scale of civilization is due to the short period during which they have had contact with the outside world and the advantages of education."

135. CAMPBELL, ALEXANDER. *The heart of Africa*. New York, Knopf, 1954. 487 p. illus.

DT31.C3

By a Scottish newspaperman who had gone out to South Africa in the late thirties and worked successively for a small local British newspaper, for the Johannesburg *Star*, and as correspondent for *Time* and *Life*, this narrative is vivid reporting on postwar Africa. In 1952-53 Mr. Campbell had covered stirring events—



Mau Mau in Kenya, federation in Central Africa, struggles toward self-government in Nigeria and the Gold Coast. His book takes in also earlier travels and wide experience of South Africa and the Rhodesias. He writes largely of what he saw and what important and unimportant people told him—his underlying interpretations stressing the inevitability as well as the ironies and tragedies of change. His story begins and ends with “the root of the evil, for white and black alike . . . the color bar.” A reviewer in the *London Times Literary Supplement* (Mar. 4, 1955, p. 127) contrasts it with Van der Post (no. 143) as being the extrovert as opposed to the introvert expression of the racial issue.

136. GANN, LEWIS H., and PETER DUIGNAN. *White settlers in tropical Africa*. Baltimore, Penguin Books, 1962. 169 p. (Penguin Africa series, WA 13) DT365.G3

An argument for the subordination of the racial to the economic factor in future development of a multi-racial society. The writers begin with historical background and a reasoned evaluation of patterns of race relations, then analyze motivations of Black nationalism, and in a long chapter state the white man's case. They claim that the job is “to contain conflict [between the races] within a peaceful framework which will permit of continued economic progress.” The book is reviewed in *Africa Report*, May 1962. Its scope is general for Southern and Eastern Africa, though much of the detail relates to the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland.

137. THE INSTITUTE OF RACE RELATIONS, *London. Newsletter*. no. 1+ Jan. 1961+ London. monthly. DLC

A monthly booklet summarizing events in race relations throughout the world, and particularly in Africa, and Britain. The Institute publishes also a semiannual journal, *Race* (v. 1, no. 1+ Nov. 1959+, printed by Oxford University Press), and occasional pamphlets on race questions.

138. KONDAPI, C. *Indians overseas, 1838–1949*. New Delhi, Indian Council of World Affairs, 1951. 558 p. DS432.5.K65

Bibliography: p. 535–542.

Among practical works on specific race questions is this scholarly research study by the Assistant Secretary of the Indian Council of World Affairs, covering the entire field of Indian emigration which is of particular importance in East and Southern Africa.

139. LOMAX, LOUIS E. *The reluctant African*. New York, Harper, 1960. 117 p. illus.

DT15.L65

By an American Negro journalist who visited Africa in 1960, going by way of Cairo to the Second Conference of Independent African States in Addis Ababa in June 1960, then visiting African leaders above-ground in Nairobi, underground in Salisbury, and for a tense 24 hours in Johannesburg. His pithy report conveys his own sense of horror at racism, both black and white. American foreign service officers he found helpless, “laced to their swivel chairs watching the greatest freedom explosion in human history occur in an anti-American, antiwhite, anticapitalist, anti-Western context.”

140. MASON, PHILIP. *Common sense about race*. London, Gollancz, 1961. 173 p. (The Common sense series) GN320.M35

Mr. Mason, formerly a high official in the Indian Civil Service, is Director of the Institute of Race Relations. Since 1952, when studies of race relations were begun under his direction at Chatham House, he has been a foremost spokesman on the subject. In 1954 his *Essay on Racial Tension* (London, New York, Royal Institute of International Affairs. 149 p.), aired provocatively the main lines of recent theory on the race question in general, then examined the particular aspect in South Africa. In 1956 his talk on *Christianity and Race* (at Leeds University; New York, St. Martin's Press, 1957. 174 p.) was published in the Burroughs memorial lectures, and his Burge memorial lecture, on *Race Relations in Africa, Considered against the Background of History and World Opinion* was printed by the SCM Press (London, 1960. 24 p.). The book of 1961, in a notable series on important questions for the general reader, is largely in theoretical terms. Mr. Mason considers and refutes arguments of racial differentiation and/or inferiority on physical and mental grounds, using authoritative evidence of biology, genetics, intelligence testing, and other socio-psychological methods. In his examination of race relations rising from “Conquest and Fusion,” he uses specific instances of African societies, notably the “classical example” of an insoluble dilemma in South Africa. He finds that the ultimate cause of racialism is “the simple fact that a group who have special sources of wealth or power are reluctant to share them.” A selected bibliography cites the most valuable literature of past and present on racism.

141. RICHMOND, ANTHONY H. *The colour problem, a study of racial relations*. Rev. ed. Baltimore, Penguin Books, 1961. 374 p. (A Pelican book, A328) JV1037.R5 1961

Discussion of the social aspects of race conflicts, beginning with a general analysis of race prejudice, discrimination, and segregation, then considering the political background in British Africa and the British West Indies, and the situation in separate places—the Union of South Africa, the crisis areas in Kenya and other British dependencies, the West Indies, among Negro groups in England. The writer suggests a program to solve race tensions through the universal application of the principles of human rights.

142. SITHOLE, NDABANINGI. *African nationalism*. With a foreword by R. S. Garfield Todd. Cape Town, New York, Oxford University Press, 1959. 174 p. DT31.S55

By a Matabele who became a Methodist preacher, this discursive, oversimplified, and intensely personal view of the racial situation in general and in Southern Africa in particular is characterized by a reviewer (in *African Affairs*, April 1960) as “acute, innocent and maddening.” The book was written in America, where Mr. Sithole took a degree. He is concerned to explain to Americans the reasons for African nationalism—“white supremacy is a stubborn rejection of the African by the white man, and . . . African nationalism is a reaction to that rejection.” He talks of the part played by the Church, of European misconceptions about Africans (he selects Cloete’s *African Giant* as typical of misleading writing), why Africans will not be Communists, and why to Africans of today the “myth of white superiority” has been exploded.

143. VAN DER POST, LAURENS. *The dark eye in Africa*. New York, Morrow, 1955. 224 p. DT15.V3

Colonel Van der Post is known as an inspirational writer with deep insight into the African mind. This is a lecture given before a combined meeting of the C. J. Jung Institute and the Psychological Club of Zurich in March 1954, with the title, “Mata Kelap, or, the Appearance of the Dark Eye in Africa: a Talk on the Invisible Origins of African Unrest.” The argument, in somewhat metaphysical language, is in part that Western man is “neglecting all manner of invisible and imponderable values in his own life, and therefore ignoring them in the lives of those . . . with whom he is thrown in contact. These factors sooner or later combine in rebellion against him.” Following

the speech there was discussion, much of it turning on Mau Mau and other critical racial issues. Colonel Van der Post emphasized that the European, while bringing economic well-being to the African, has not brought “the light that is in the eye . . . of a human being when he looks at another human being he loves and respects as an equal.”

144. WEULERSSE, JACQUES. *Noirs et blancs; à travers l’Afrique nouvelle: de Dakar au Cap*. Paris, Libr. A. Colin, 1931. 238 p. DT12.W45

A striking study by a young French university professor whose observations during his trip through West Africa, the Congo, Angola, and South Africa had been centered on race aspects of relations between Africans and European colonists. This and a later book by M. Weulersse, *L’Afrique noire* (Paris, Fayard, 1934. 484 p.), a synthesis of history and economic geography, are considered among the most significant works of that era.

145. WRIGHT, RICHARD. *White man, listen!* Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 1957. 190 p. HT1581.W7

The American Negro novelist’s passionate book on the wrongs of the white race against the black is dedicated to “the Westernized and tragic elite of Asia, Africa, and the West Indies.” The “explosive,” “blatantly unacademic” text reproduces four lectures: “The Psychological Reactions of Oppressed People,” “Tradition and Industrialization,” “The Literature of the Negro in the United States,” and “The Miracle of Nationalism in the African Gold Coast.” In all except the third there is emphasis on the horrors that transpire “in those geographical prisons known as colonies.”

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

### General

146. *Africa and international organization*, edited by Norman J. Padelford and Rupert Emerson. *International organization*, v. 15, Spring 1962: 275–464. JX1901.I55. v. 15

Bibliography (classified by subject): p. 449–464.

This special issue of the quarterly of the World Peace Foundation is a useful guide to the political groupings of Africa in the present-day world (data to mid-1961). It contains articles by Professor Emerson on Pan-Africanism, by John Holmes on the Commonwealth and Africa, by Stanley Hoffmann on the U.N.



in the Congo, by Paul-Marc Henry on the U.N. and African development problems, on Africa at the U.N. by John H. Spencer, and a review of African unification movements, by E. H. Kloman. The last named explains succinctly groupings of Casablanca and Monrovia powers, the All-African Conferences and Conferences of Independent African States, the All-African Trade Union Federation and the rival African Trade Union Federation, the Afro-Malagasy Organization, etc. It includes a table of participation of African groupings in major organizations and conferences. This article is supplemented by a helpful summary of the political and regional groupings prepared by Carol A. Johnson, who is also responsible for the selected bibliography which includes sections of references on these groupings. The collection of articles has been brought out in book form by Praeger with the title, *Africa and World Order* (New York, 1963. 152 p.).

Individual conferences are noticed in many of the African news journals. A useful chronological record of all meetings is included in *Chronologie politique africaine*, bimonthly publication issued by the Centre d'Etude des Relations Internationales of the Fondation Nationale des Sciences Politiques in Paris. A comprehensive listing of scheduled meetings is given each month in the Library of Congress publication, *World List of Future International Meetings*.

147. KAHIN, GEORGE MCT. *The Asian-African conference, Bandung, Indonesia, April 1955*. Ithaca, Cornell University Press, 1956. 88 p. DS35.A8 1955c

The final communiqué of the Bandung Conference, a conspicuous clause of which condemned racialism and colonialism "in whatever form it may be," is included in one of the appendixes to this objective review of the meeting. The writer summarized background, key issues, proceedings and political achievements of the Conference, including partial texts of several speeches. African nations represented at Bandung were Egypt, Ethiopia, the Gold Coast, Liberia, Libya; the Central African Federation, though invited, did not attend. The issue of racialism and colonialism was raised particularly in connection with North Africa and the Union of South Africa.

A less objective picture of the Bandung Conference was given by the American Negro author, Richard Wright, in *Color Curtain* (New York, World Pub., 1956. 221 p.). It may be balanced by two lectures delivered at the University of North Carolina by the Philippine delegate to the Conference, Carlos P. Romulo, *The Meaning of Bandung* (Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina Press, 1956. 102 p.). Mr. Romulo emphasized the expression of opposition to communism at Bandung.

148. LEGUM, COLIN. *Bandung, Cairo and Accra; a report on the First Conference of Independent African States*. London, Africa Bureau, 1958. 32 p. illus. DT1.C58 1958c

Report of the first Conference of Independent African States, Accra, April 1958, by the London *Observer* expert on Africa. For a full register and bibliography of this and other political inter-African conferences see *Africa and International Organizations* (no. 146).

149. MCKAY, VERNON. *Africa in world politics*. New York, Harper, 1963. 468 p. DT30.M24  
"List of sources": p. 429-454.

By the Director of the Program of African Studies at the Johns Hopkins School of Advanced International Studies. Professor McKay speaks of his study of African relations with the outside world as "essentially a narrative of contemporary history since 1945." Its four parts deal with the impact of the United Nations on Africa, Pan-African, Afro-Asian, and Eurafri-can movements, African relations with India and the Soviet Union, and American policy in Africa. The book is scheduled for review in *Africa Report* in 1963.

150. OAKES, JOHN B. *The edge of freedom*. New York, Harper, 1961. 129 p. illus. DT353.02

A journalist's appraisal of the attitudes in international politics in the evolving states of Africa (Guinea, Mali and Senegal, Ghana, Nigeria, Cameroon, French Africa, Congo, Rhodesia, East Africa) and Asia, with particular stress on neutralism and authoritarianism. With these trends, he argues, America must be sympathetic, rather than to press for Western-style democracy. Mr. Oakes is an editor of the *New York Times*.

151. RIVKIN, ARNOLD. *Africa and the West; elements of free world policy*. New York, F. A. Praeger, 1962. 241 p. DT30.R5

Dr. Rivkin of the Center for International Studies at Massachusetts Institute of Technology, now Special Advisor on Africa to the World Bank, brings together in this book the results of four years' research and many published articles on problems of African economic and political development. After examination of the African and Western perspectives, including the uncertain ties with the European Economic Community, the United States policy, and the new factor of connections with Israel, he turns to the question of national security. Here he urges limitation of arms for Africa and urges a guaranteed neutrality through the United Nations, as in the Congo and the former trust territories. In the third part of his book, on

economic development, he stresses as a major weakness of many new states the dependence on one-crop economies, and urges diversification, with technical assistance from abroad for development of transportation systems and training of African technicians. He formulates his proposals for a new multilateral organization—an organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, to succeed the OEEC, and to have close ties with CCTA/CSA, the United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, and other groupings. His documentation, largely from official papers and newspapers and given in chapter notes, includes citations into April 1961.

### *United Nations and Africa*

152. COHEN, Sir ANDREW. "The new Africa and the United Nations; with discussion." *African affairs*, v. 60, October 1961: 508–517.

DT1.R62, v. 60

By the former Governor of Uganda, who from 1957–1961 was Permanent British Representative on the Trusteeship Council of U.N. from which he came away, he says, a wiser but not a sadder man. He resumes and evaluates favorably U.N. policy toward Africa and its recent implementation.

153. SADY, EMIL J. *The United Nations and dependent peoples*. Washington, D.C., The Brookings Institution, 1956. 205 p. JX4021.S25

An overall study of the history of non-self-governing territories in relation to the United Nations, devoting a long chapter to the international trusteeship system, particularly in the African trust territories.

154. UNITED NATIONS. Office of Public Information. *The United Nations and Africa*; a collection of basic information on the economic and social activities of the United Nations and related agencies in Africa. New York, United Nations, distributed by the United Nations Office of Public Information, External Relations Division, 1962. 262 p. tables. DLC

Issued in February 1962.

The introduction by Mekki Abbas, Executive Secretary of the U.N. Economic Commission for Africa [UNECA] is followed by an explanation of the functions and organizations of the Commission. Then come detailed and statistically supported reports of U.N. programs for technical cooperation, and of programs carried out by the 11 related agencies. A section is given to U.N. civilian operations in the Congo, and another to international economic assistance to

Africa. The Appendixes give various tabulated country-by-country surveys, a list of addresses of U.N. and related agency officers and representatives, and a glossary interpreting initials used to designate organizations and programs.

For publications of UNECA, see in the section on Economics (no. 225).

155. WILCOX, FRANCIS O. *U.N. and the nonaligned nations*. New York, Foreign Policy Association, 1962. 55 p. (Headline series, no. 155, September–October 1962)

E744.H43, no. 155

Of the 51 Afro-Asian nations now members (pre-Algeria and Uganda membership), 43 describe themselves as "nonaligned." In this guide booklet for students of international affairs the former Assistant Secretary of State for International Organization Affairs explains the meanings of nonalignment and implications for United States foreign policy. He includes tables of participation of African groupings in major organizations and conferences and voting patterns in the General Assembly.

### *United States and Africa*

156. AFRICA LEAGUE. *A new American policy toward Africa*. Editorial Committee: David Apter [and others] New York, 1960. 29 p.

DT38.A45

This pamphlet for which five American political scientists collaborated (David Apter, Rupert Emerson, Elliot Berg, Ruth Schachter, and Immanuel Wallerstein), begins with a glance at background of Western influences, nationalist movements, and problems facing the new nations—training of personnel, breakdown of tribal differences, economic development, foreign relations. Then past American policy toward Africa is analyzed and a set of policy suggestions offered. It is significant that these policies—to establish the priority of African interests, to welcome independence based on racial equality, to support African moves toward unity, to help train personnel, and to expand aid and technical assistance—have become integral components of current United States relations with Africa.

157. AMERICAN ASSEMBLY. *The United States and Africa*; background papers prepared for the use of participants and the Final report of the Thirteenth American Assembly, Arden House, Harriman Campus of Columbia University, Harriman, New York, May 1–4, 1958. Final ed. New York, 1958. xiv, 252 p. illus., maps.

DT38.A65 1958



The papers in this volume were prepared as background for three days of high-level discussions by American Africanists of political, social, economic, and cultural relations of the United States and Africa. The discussions and formal lectures are not included, but there is a four-page final report of findings and conclusions, strongly enunciating support for the principle of self-determination for African peoples. The papers, all stressing American interest, are: Rupert Emerson, "The Character of American Interests in Africa"; James S. Coleman, "The Character and Viability of African Political Systems"; Vernon McKay, "External Political Pressures on Africa Today"; S. Daniel Neumark, "The Character and Potential of African Economies"; Andrew M. Kamarck, "The African Economy and International Trade"; William O. Brown and Hylan Lewis, "Racial Situations and Issues in Africa"; Walter Goldschmidt, "Culture and Changing Values in Africa."

158. BOWLES, CHESTER. *Africa's challenge to America*. Berkeley, University of California Press, 1956. 134 p. illus. DT31.B75

Mr. Bowles, in 1962 Special Assistant to the President on African, Asian, and Latin American Affairs, who as U.S. Ambassador in India had watched the Communist approach to indigenous movements of nationalist revolt, in this series of lectures of March 1956 extended his thesis of the need of American political and economic efforts in underdeveloped areas from Asia to Africa. In a rapid glance over the continent he quoted views of African leaders and examined the elements of the "Revolution of Rising Expectations" in Africa, the Soviet tactics, the response of the colonial powers. Last he outlined "American approach," criticizing what he considered the lack of a positive African policy—particularly noticeable in the Trusteeship Council of U.N.—and citing Cordell Hull's five points for colonial powers as a basis—progressive self-government with tentative dates for full freedom, and world policies of development. He called for a carefully planned schedule, declaring that Africa will become a military problem only if we fail to meet the challenge of its economic, political, and ideological needs.

159. COLEMAN, JAMES S., and CARL ROSBERG. *New perspectives on sub-Saharan Africa*. Washington, Americans for Democratic Action, Educational Fund, 1961. 29 p. (Elmer Davis memorial pamphlet) DLC-AFR

A leaflet prepared for distribution by Americans for Democratic Action as an expression of liberal attitudes

toward Africa. The writers are California professors of political science, both well known as Africanists. After a succinct analysis of the diverse problems confronting America in formulation of articulate policy for the new Africa and a rapid review of past policy, they suggested specifically: Acceptance of African neutralism; acceptance of diversified dependency on East as well as West; tolerance of various forms of government and economy; support for full African participation in the United Nations.

160. COMMITTEE ON AFRICA, THE WAR, AND PEACE AIMS. *The Atlantic Charter and Africa from an American standpoint*. New York, 1942. 164 p. Supplement, 68 p. D754.A34C6

This Committee was organized at the suggestion of the officers of the Phelps-Stokes Fund, which for many years has been concerned with educational and interracial movements in Africa. It included missionaries, anthropologists, and other specialists in African and international problems. The aim of the report was to formulate peace aims for Africa, with application of the eight points of the Atlantic Charter to African welfare. The major findings and recommendations of the Committee were summarized in chapter V, calling for international and American efforts to aid African self-development. The appendixes included a brief general description of Africa, the terms of the mandate system under the League of Nations, a list of American organizations interested in Africa, a selected bibliography. A supplement was contributed by Dr. Edwin W. Smith, former missionary, anthropologist, formerly President of the Royal Anthropological Institute of Great Britain: "Events in African History," a chronology beginning with the Egyptian calendar in 4241 B.C. and ending with the British occupation of Madagascar, May 4, 1942.

161. HOOPES, ROY H. *The complete Peace Corps guide*. New York, Dial Press, 1961. 180 p. HC60.5.H6

This book, written under official auspices to correct erroneous ideas about the Peace Corps, has sections on: Background, origins and creation; objectives, form of operation, specific projects; the volunteer, his motivation, training, life, etc. The conclusion is headed "Challenge and response." The specific projects described include, for Africa, Tanganyika, Nigeria, Ghana, and Sierra Leone.

Another book of 1961, *The Peace Corps—Who, How, and Where*, by Charles Wingenbach (New York, John Day, 154 p.), covers much the same ground, and includes a number of letters from the field. A new edition in 1963.

162. ISAACS, HAROLD R. *Emergent Americans*; a report on "Crossroads Africa." With a foreword by James H. Robinson. New York, J. Day Co., 1961. 158 p. DT500.I8

The author is with the Center for International Studies at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Here he analyzes the 1960 experience of the project launched in 1958 under which young Americans—in this year a group of almost 200—spend their summer vacations working in Africa. His interest was less in the effect on the African nations and their sense of American friendship than in that on the American boys and girls selected to participate in this program. The Foreword is by the originator and director of Crossroads Africa.

163. MILLIKAN, MAX F., ed. *The emerging nations: their growth and United States policy*, edited by Max F. Millikan and Donald L. M. Blackmer. A study from the Center for International Studies, Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Boston, Little, Brown, 1961. 171 p. HC59.M542

Includes bibliography.

An extensive revision of a document submitted by the Center for International Studies of M.I.T. to the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations (*United States Foreign Policy: Economic, Social and Political Change in the Underdeveloped Countries and Its Implications for United States Policy*. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1960. 98 p. Committee print, 86th Cong., 2d sess.). This is an "interdisciplinary" analysis in which experts in several branches of the social sciences—economists, political scientists, sociologists, psychologists—shared. An appendix gives summary tables of suggested levels of international aid for individual countries. These are derived from a study by Professor P. N. Rosenstein-Rodan, "International Aid for Underdeveloped Countries" (*Review of Economics and Statistics*, May 1961). The book ends with a long selected bibliography on underdeveloped areas and international assistance.

164. MONTGOMERY, JOHN D. *Aid to Africa; new test for U.S. policy*. New York, Foreign Policy Association—World Affairs Center, 1961. 62 p. (Headline series, no. 149).

E744.H43, no. 149

A clear and concise review of American aid policies, techniques, and investments in Africa, with special case studies of operations in Liberia, Ethiopia, Ghana, and Guinea. The writer explains that the greatest difficulty comes in the aid triangle—contradictions

and stresses between the receiving country, American policy, and the individual American implementing the programs in the field. Like other pamphlets of the series, the text is addressed to adult study groups.

165. NATIONAL CONFERENCE ON UNESCO. 8th, Boston, 1961. *Africa and the United States, images and realities*; background book, 8th National Conference, U.S. National Commission for UNESCO, Boston, Oct. 22–26, 1961. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1961. 212 p. (Department of State publication 7332. African series, 26) DT30.N3 1961

"An introductory list of recommended bibliographies for Africa South of the Sahara," p. 205–212.

This Conference brought together over two thousand delegates, among them more than 60 African leaders, experts from the United Nations and UNESCO, and many of the leading Africanists of America under the chairmanship of Dr. Vernon McKay. The purpose was to promote mutual understanding between Africans and Americans. Panels were on relations between Africa, the United States, and world organizations in general, on education, on science, technology and economic development, culture, communication. The Conference has been followed up by local branches of the Commission with many programs on Africa. The preliminary *Background Book* given to delegates (now available from U.S. Government Printing Office, price \$1) contains papers on various aspects of the Conference themes, edited by Helen Kitchen, who wrote the first essay, "The Politics of Africa in 1961: Some Guidelines." A *Final Report* on the Conference was published by the U.S. National Commission for UNESCO Office in 1962 (97 p.). Prepared by Simon and Phoebe Ottenberg, it includes an account of the Conference proceedings, with summarization of the more important papers and discussions.

166. NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY, Evanston, Ill. Interdisciplinary Committee on African Studies. *United States foreign policy: Africa*. Prepared at the request of the Committee on Foreign Relations, United States Senate by Program of African Studies, Northwestern University. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1959. 84 p. map. (U.S. Congress. Senate. Committee on Foreign Relations. A study, no. 4) DT38.N6

At head of title: Committee print. 86th Cong., 1st sess. Bibliographical footnotes.

This report on Africa, prepared as one of an influential series of studies authorized by the Senate



Committee on Foreign Relations in 1958 reviewing conditions and trends in the world and policies and programs of the United States with respect thereto, was presented by Dr. Melville J. Herskovits of Northwestern University. It begins with a summary of the position of the United States, of African dynamics and African-American relations, African nationalism and multiracism, economic factors, and the position of Africa in the East-West struggle. There follows a succinct statement of conclusions and recommendations—for a flexible policy, favoring African development free from outside interference, recognizing non-alignment, promotion of peaceful transition to self-rule and resolution of interracial conflict, greatly increased appropriations for educational exchanges and programs, aid programs, grants or loans, and encouragement of American capital investment in Africa. The body of the text expands these points.

167. PLIMPTON, RUTH T. *Operation Crossroads Africa*. New York, Viking Press, 1962. 142 p. DT15.P5

A well-written popular account of the operation which Mr. Adlai Stevenson, writing the preface, characterizes as “a shining example of a people-to-people relationship that works.” A more analytical study of Crossroads Africa is that of Isaacs (no. 162).

168. RITNER, PETER. *The death of Africa*. New York, Macmillan, 1960. 312 p. DT32.R5

A bold attack on U.S. foreign policy, to which the report of a quick survey tour of Africa made by the journalist author is almost incidental as providing a medium.

169. U.S. Congress. House. Committee on Foreign Affairs. *Activities of private U.S. organizations in Africa*. Hearings . . . 87th Congress, 1st sess. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off. 1961. 280 p. HD69.F6U5

Statements of industrial firms investing in Africa, directors of missionary work, and organizations for African-American relations.

170. ———. *Briefing on Africa*. Hearings before the Subcommittee on Africa. 86th Cong., 2d sess. . . . Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1960. 142 p. HC502.U56

Statements of ICA officials and others regarding aid programs for Sub-Saharan Africa.

171. ———. *United States Information Agency operations in Africa*. Hearing before the Subcommittee on Africa. 87th Cong., 2d sess., Feb. 7, 1962. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1962. 22 p. DT38.U485

172. U.S. Congress. Senate. Committee on Foreign Relations. *Study mission to Africa*, November-December 1960. Report of Frank Church, Gale W. McGee, and Frank E. Moss to the Committee on Foreign Relations, Committee on Appropriations, and Committee on Interior and Insular Affairs, U.S. Senate. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1961. 55 p. DT38.C5

At head of title: 87th Cong., 1st sess. Committee print.

Report on current conditions and trends in 16 countries of Africa. The Senators warned America against disappointment over extremist tendencies emerging from the African independence movement, and urged that “all of us in the United States must make a determined effort to see Africa through African eyes.” They emphasized the need for new approaches in American policy.

Earlier study missions by Members of Congress were conducted by the Hon. Frances P. Bolton (*Report of the Special Study Mission to Africa, South and East of the Sahara*, printed for the House Committee on Foreign Affairs, 84th Cong., 2d sess., 1956. 151 p.); Senator Theodore F. Green (*Economic Aid and Technical Assistance in Africa*, printed for the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations, 85th Cong., 1st sess., 1957. 34 p.); and Congressmen Wayne L. Hayes, Barratt O'Hara, and Marguerite S. Church (*Report of the Special Study Mission to the Near East and Africa*, printed for the House Committee on Foreign Affairs, 85th Cong., 2d sess., 1958. 38 p. House Report no. 1834.) A later report was that of Senators Albert Gore, Philip A. Hart, and Maurine B. Neuberger, *Study Mission to Africa, September-October, 1961* (Washington, 1962. 17 p.).

Policy statements and addresses by officials of the Administration relating to Africa are published regularly in the *U.S. Department of State Bulletin*.

173. U.S. Dept. of State. Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs. *International educational, cultural and related activities for African countries south of the Sahara*. Washington, August 1961. 321 p. E744.5.U484 1960a

A large pamphlet in offset print serving as a guidebook to the activities of agencies of the U.S. Government, private organizations, the respective African countries, and United Nations. Each is described succinctly in the first 46 pages. Then 25 pages explain the contributions, benefits, and results of these activities. A hundred pages more describe the pro-

grams for each country of Africa. A number of tables, of exchange programs, students, etc., are scattered throughout; appendixes are directories of officers, agencies, business organizations, and examples of publications and research by Americans in Africa and Africans in America. There is no index, but a detailed table of contents is designed to lead the searcher to helpful data.

174. U.S. Dept. of State. External Research Division. *African programs of U.S. organizations; a selective directory*. Washington, Dept. of State, Bureau of Intelligence and Research, 1961. 90 p. H35.U423, no. 53

Earlier editions of this directory were published in 1958 and 1960. The 1961 edition lists 580 colleges and universities, foundations, religious groups, business firms, social welfare and cultural agencies, and other associations substantially concerned with African affairs. For each the program is explained in necessary detail.

### *Communism and Africa*

175. AJAO, ADEROGBA. *On the tiger's back*. Cleveland, World Pub. Co., 1962. 149 p. illus. HX450.N5A7

The personal testimony of a Nigerian who had been in East Germany undergoing Communist indoctrination together with his studies, and who had become thoroughly disillusioned during a stay in Russia which included the 1957 Youth Festival. He suggests that many Africans in Russia share his views.

Another book also expressing African disillusionment with Russia is by a Togolese student, Michel Ayih-Dosseh; his *Ein Afrikaner in Moskau* was published in Cologne in 1961 (Verlag Wissenschaft und Politik. 196 p.).

176. AKADEMIĀ NAUK SSSR. Afrika Institut. *Afrika 1956-1961* [edited by I. I. Potekhin] Moskva, Izdat. vost. lit., 1961. 252 p. illus., maps. DT30.A45

A survey of political, economic, and cultural developments over the past 5 years as seen from Moscow. Emphasis is on relations with the U.S.S.R. and statistics are included of African trade with the Soviet Union. One chapter gives figures of African students in Russian universities, except the Patrice Lumumba University which had its first term only in 1960-61; the largest number, 350, were from Egypt, and about 70 each from Ghana, Sudan, and Guinea. The editor is the leading voice in Soviet political studies of Africa.

177. ASIAN PEOPLES' ANTI-COMMUNIST LEAGUE, Republic of China. *Communist China in Africa*. Taipei, Taiwan, 1961. 50 p. DT38.9.C5A8

Booklet on Communist attempts at infiltration of Africa by an anti-Communist Chinese pressure group. Sections are on the Afro-Asian People's Solidarity Council, the exchange of visiting delegations between Communist China and African states, Communist Chinese economic aid to Guinea, aid to the Algerian rebels, and ultimate aim to convert the new nations into Communist satellites.

178. BOTZARIS, ALEJANDRO. *Communist penetration in Africa*. Lisbon, 1961. 71 p. DT38.9.R8B6

Record and analysis of organizations under Soviet auspices which serve as vehicles for Communist penetration into Africa. The first-named is the Council of Solidarity of the Afro-Asian Peoples with its Cairo headquarters, then the author concentrates on the Communist world organizations, such as the World Syndicalist Federation (FSM). The last section surveys studies carried out in the Institute of Ethnography of the U.S.S.R. Academy of Sciences in Moscow. A Spanish edition has been issued in Madrid by the Instituto de Estudios Africanos. A shorter pamphlet by the same author, also published in 1961, was similarly a factual examination of *Communist Dogma and the African Nationalisms* (Lisbon. 38 p.).

The same theme is pursued by Pieter Lessing in his *Africa's Red Harvest* (New York, John Day Co., 1962. 207 p.). The South African author had traveled over Africa in 1959-60 investigating Russian and Chinese efforts to win friends and influence governments. Angola is used as a case study in the first chapter.

179. FILESI, TEOBALDO. *Comunismo e nazionalismo in Africa*. Roma, Istituto Italiano per l'Africa, 1958. 368 p. DT31.F5

Academic study including an historical review of the rise of nationalist feeling from the days of Marcus Garvey through the first independence day for West Africa (Ghana) in 1957. The writer's special interest is in detecting Communist influences. His bibliography includes many Soviet publications, as well as United Nations and English-language sources. This work was published in Spanish translation in 1960 by the Instituto de Estudios Africanos in Madrid.

In 1958 a bulletin warning of Communist dangers in Africa was brought out by the Spanish Government (Spain. Dirección General de Plazas y Provincias Africanas. *La actividad comunista en Africa*. Madrid, 1958. 134 p. illus., ports, maps). At the head of the title were the words: "Atención! Peligro rojo!" A rubric, "Actividades comu-



nistas en el mundo afroasiatico," appears each month in *Africa*, journal of the official Instituto de Estudios Africanos.

180. LAZIÓ, BRANKO M. *L'Afrique et les leçons de l'expérience communiste*. Introd. de Michel Ayih-Dosseh. Paris, Édimpra éditeur, 1961. 189 p. HC502.L39

By an East European expatriate who explains Marxist theory and its application to Africa, the faults of Communist planning and mistakes in application of Communist techniques to African conditions, the attraction of communism to Africa, and reasons why Africans had better resist them. The introduction is by an African (Togolese) student who had spent two unhappy years in Russia.

181. SLAWECKI, LEON M. S. "The two Chinas in Africa." *Foreign affairs*, v. 41, January 1963: 398-409. D410.F6, v. 41

Analysis of the activities of Communist China and Nationalist China in Africa, where there is rivalry for diplomatic recognition and other political, economic, and cultural ties with the new states. The question of African votes for the seating of Communist China in the United Nations is perhaps the largest factor in the competition, from which Africa is benefiting in matters of trade, aid, and technical cooperation.

182. WODDIS, JACK. *Africa; the lion awakes*. London, Lawrence & Wishart, 1961. 301 p. DT31.W59

This Marxist work is dedicated to Lumumba, Moumbe, and other "martyrs of Africa's struggle against imperialism." A book of the previous year by the same author (*Africa—The Roots of Revolt*, London, Lawrence & Wishart. 285 p.) had told *why*, the present semi-historical study of African politics tells *how*. The three major themes are the struggle of the African working class ("disintegration of traditional African agriculture under the impacts of imperialist depredations"), the struggles for trade unions, and "imperialism's new tactics" of "going in order to stay" as economic rulers, with the United States leading and supplanting the former sinners. The models for the new states, Mr. Woddis pronounces, should be Soviet Central Asia and China.

An earlier enunciation of the same Communist line of thought was in a pamphlet of 1954 by a foreign correspondent for the London *Daily Worker*, Derek Kartun: *Africa, Africa! A Continent Rises to Its Feet* (London, Lawrence & Wishart; New York, International Publishers, 1954. 99 p.). In this the emphasis had been on stories of British "atrocities" in Kenya. Mr. Henry Swanzy, then

editor of *African Affairs*, commented in his review: "The impact of such a book on the African student must be great."

The East German view of current African issues is summarized in a special issue of *Deutsche Aussenpolitik*, "Afrikanische Gegenwartsfragen" (Berlin, Sonderheft I/1960), which contains the papers presented at a conference on Africa in June 1960.

183. ZARTMAN, I. WILLIAM. "Communist China and the Arab-African areas." *U.S. Naval Institute Proceedings*, v. 86, no. 9, September 1961: 23-30.

A warning of a growing problem. See also Fritz Schatten, "Peking's Growing Influence in Africa," *Swiss Review of World Affairs* (v. 10, August 1960: p. 8-11).

The Library of Congress has received a copy of a propaganda pamphlet put out by the Chinese-African People's Friendship Association: *The Chinese People Resolutely Support the Just Struggle of the African People* (Peking, Foreign Languages Press, 1961. 139 p.).

## LAW

184. AFRICAN CONFERENCE ON THE RULE OF LAW, Lagos, 1961. *A report on the proceedings*. Geneva, International Commission of Jurists, 1961. 181 p. DLC-LL

The Conference here reported on took place in Lagos from Jan. 3-7, 1961. An 8-page leaflet, "Consensus of Lagos," issued immediately following the meeting, contained the declaration of principles and resolutions. The assembled body of lawyers urged establishment of permanent organizations of African and Middle Eastern states for the promotion of law and peaceful settlement of disputes, to include African and Arab Courts of Justice.

185. AFRIKA-INSTITUUT, Netherlands. *The future of customary law in Africa*. L'avenir du droit coutumier en Afrique. Symposium-colloque, Amsterdam, 1955. Organized by the Afrika-Instituut, Studiecentrum, Leiden, in collaboration with the Royal Tropical Institute, Amsterdam. Leiden, Universitaire Pers Leiden, 1956. 305 p. DLC-LL

Bibliography: p. 273-305.

Papers on the law of indigenous societies in Africa as exercised through the Native courts and local jurisdictions in the former Belgian, British, and French territories. Past development, present conditions, and future possibilities under spreading detribalization were discussed. Among contributors were: for the Belgian Congo, A. Sohler and J. P. Paulus; for Nigeria, F. A.

Ajayi; for customary and Islamic law in British Africa, J. N. D. Anderson, Arthur Phillips, and I. Schapera; for French Africa, D. Boisdon, G. H. Bousquet, J. Poirier, André P. Robert, and G. Mangin. An essay on Indonesian tribal law is included, followed by a short paper on customary law in the Portuguese overseas territories by Adriano Moreira, and a longer consideration of Bantu customary law in South Africa by F. D. Holleman. The volume concludes with resolutions, in which it is emphasized that in future customary law should be increasingly supplementary to general law, and limited to family relations, succession, and other local matters.

186. ALLOTT, ANTONY N. *Essays in African law*, with special reference to the law of Ghana. London, Butterworth, 1960. xxviii, 323 p. (Butterworth's African law series, no. 1)

DLC-LL

This volume begins a new series which will presumably reappraise the law of all Africa, certainly of all English-speaking Africa. Dr. Allott, Reader in African Law in the University of London School of Oriental & African Studies, is editor of the *Journal of African Law*. The three parts of his study deal in historical and analytical terms with: 1, the general common law of British Africa, received from the metropole; 2, customary law, its fundamental characteristics and possible unity between laws of the innumerable tribes, native administration; 3, a special case study of Ghana, particularly in relation to conflicts of customary law. Dr. Allott had also edited the record of proceedings of a Conference held in London from December 28, 1959–January 8, 1960, under the chairmanship of Lord Denning, formerly Lord Chief Justice. The volume was published with the title, *The Future of Law in Africa* (London, Butterworth, 1960. 58 p.).

187. ———, ed. *Judicial and legal systems in Africa*. London, Butterworth, 1962. 226 p. diags. (Butterworth's African law series, no. 4)

DLC-LL

Dr. Allott is also Director of the Restatement of African Law Project undertaken by the School of Oriental and African Studies, which as its first step is engaged in a *Bibliography of African Law* to cover published and unpublished material on the customary laws of Commonwealth African territories. *Part I, East Africa*, was issued in draft form (83 p. 33 cm., mimeographed) in 1961. It includes many references to documents in East African archives.

188. ANDERSON, JAMES N. D. *Islamic law in Africa*. With a foreword by Lord Hailey. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1954. 409 p. (Colonial research publication, no. 16)

JV33.G7A52, no. 16

Survey prepared for the Colonial Office by the Professor of Oriental Laws in the University of London. His interest was in the interaction of Islamic law—the Shari'a—on the customary law of the various Muslim societies of British Africa and of the native law on Islamic law and institutions. He analyzed practices in Aden, British East Africa, and [then] British West Africa, colony by colony, assessing the position occupied by Islamic law in judicial procedure, both civil and criminal law. In British East Africa he showed that Islamic law is applied largely in matters of the family, whereas in Northern Nigeria the Islamic law is more exclusively followed as “native law and custom” than anywhere else in the world outside Arabia. Appendixes include a survey of the Sudan, of the law as affecting immigrant Muslims, tables of ordinances and cases, glossary. There is a full index.

189. EGYPTIAN SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL LAW. *Constitutions of the new African states; a critical survey*. [Cairo?] 1962. 107 p.

JQ1873.E45 1962

Analytical compilation of essential features of the constitutions of the new states of Africa south of the Sahara, prepared with the aid of a Ford Foundation grant. There are included the states of the Afro-Malagasy Union and other French and English-speaking states of Africa, the Congo-Leopoldville Republic, and the East African colonies and territories. The Appendix contains texts of the Casablanca Charter, the Charter for the Union of African States, the conclusions of the 1961 African Conference on the Rule of Law, and other documents. This is the most concise reference work of its kind available in English as of mid-1962.

190. ELIAS, TASLIM OLAWALE. *British colonial law; a comparative study of the interaction between English and local laws in British dependencies*. London, Stevens, 1962. 323 p. DLC-LL

191. ——— *The nature of African customary law*. Manchester, University Press, 1956. 318 p. DLC-LL

Dr. Elias is a Nigerian jurist who gained his reputation as an interpreter of legal institutions in English-speaking Africa with his *Nigerian Land Law and Custom* in 1951 (see no. 724). In 1962 he is Attorney-



General of the Federation of Nigeria. His 1962 study is a profound interpretation of the relationships between the British common law and the customary laws of the peoples under British rule. The latter had been the subject of Dr. Elias' important study in 1956, in which he examined indigenous laws, exclusive of Muslim institutions, in British Africa. This work was reviewed at length by John Matson in *Africa*, January 1958 (p. 78-80).

192. *Journal of African law*. v. 1, no. 1+ Spring 1957+ London, Butterworth. 3 times a year.  
DLC-LL

Designed as an organ for the discussion of general principles that might emerge from objective study, criticism, and comparison of the diverse legal systems operative in Africa—the heterogeneous tribal laws, the variant forms of Islamic law, the British common law, the codes imported from France, Belgium and the other colonial powers. The journal was founded in 1957, following the Leiden Conference (see Afrika-Instituut, above) at which extensive airing had been given to the confusion of law in Africa.

## ECONOMICS

### *Bibliography*

193. Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara [C.C.T.A./C.S.A.] *Inventory of economic studies concerning Africa south of the Sahara*; an annotated reading list of books, articles, and official publications. Répertoire des études économiques intéressant l'Afrique au sud du Sahara; liste annotée de livres, d'articles, et de publications officielles. Contendo uma relação de títulos em português. London, 1960. 301 p. (*Its* Publication no. 30)  
Z7165.A46J6

This useful bibliography, a joint project of CCTA and its advisory Scientific Council for Africa (CSA), was edited by Miss Peter Ady of St. Anne's College, Oxford with the aid of national correspondents in each country. The period covered is largely from 1945 through 1956, though there are a few references of 1957 and 1958. The annotated entries of books, pamphlets, and periodical articles are arranged by region with subject subclassification. Regarding the latter, the editor comments that "it has proved more than usually difficult in Africa to draw the line between economics and anthropology on the one hand, and between political economy and politics on the other."

Another significant bibliography on African economics is No. 5 in the CIDESA series of Enquêtes bibliographiques, Guy Smet's *Contribution à l'étude de la progression économique de l'Afrique* (Bruxelles, 1960. 217 p.). The 1532 numbered entries of books, pamphlets, official documents, and articles chosen from a four-page list of periodicals consulted are very slightly annotated and are arranged alphabetically by author (a heavy preponderance French or Belgian), with a complicated "Plan analytique et géographique" at the beginning, referring to the entry numbers. Material analyzed runs through the first half of 1959.

Two others of the Enquêtes bibliographiques primarily concerned with economic questions are by T. Heyse, *Problèmes fonciers et régime des terres; aspects économiques, juridiques et sociaux* (Bruxelles, 1960. 163 p. no. 4) and J. Nuyens, *Le Problème des routes en régions intertropicales, spécialement l'Afrique* (Bruxelles, 1961. 133 p. no. 6).

194. HAZLEWOOD, ARTHUR, comp. *The economics of "under-developed" areas*; an annotated reading list of books, articles, and official publications. 2d enlarged ed. London, Published for the Institute of Commonwealth Studies by Oxford University Press, 1959. 156 p.

Z716.H3 1959

The first edition of this highly regarded list was published in 1954, and is here reprinted, (p. 1-89), with an additional section of 65 pages, including separate indexes. Mr. Hazlewood's classifications are by subject, national income, consumption and investment, population and labor, etc., and for reference to parts of Africa the Indexes of Places must be consulted, where under each place name there is subject breakdown.

195. LANDSKRON, WILLIAM A. *Official serial publications relating to economic development in Africa south of the Sahara*; a preliminary list of English-language publications. Cambridge, Center for International Studies, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1961. 44 l.

Z7165.A45L3

This list is announced as preliminary to a larger bibliography on economic development south of the Sahara, which had not yet appeared as of April 1963. It covers a broad range of subjects relating to economic development, citing the latest issues of official and a few unofficial serial reports known to have been received in the United States by December 1960. Most items are dated from 1958-1960. Before the listing, a preliminary page names 25 African states and territories for which no English-language periodicals are known to exist; this includes the states of former French Africa, reports from which would normally be in French.

196. UNITED NATIONS. Economic Commission for Africa. *Bibliography of African statistical publications*. [Addis Ababa?] 1962. xiii, 206 p. (United Nations. [Document] E/CN.14/112) JX1977.A2 E/CN.14/112

Issued by the Fourth session of ECA, Addis Ababa, February–March 1962.

A valuable listing of official documents, serials, and reports from African countries, including a few significant unofficial publications on African statistics. Arranged by country with subject subclasses and symbols for cross reference.

The Library of UNECA in Addis Ababa is publishing a bibliographical series relating to works received there (U.N. Document Series E/CN.14/Lib/Ser.A). As of late 1962 there have been issued *Periodicals Received in the UNECA Library* (October 1961, 113 p. Suppl. 1, October 1962), *Annals Received in the UNECA Library* (1962, 194 p.), and *Books on Africa in the UNECA Library* (September 1962, 318 p.) The first two carry items of worldwide coverage, though in large part emanating from Africa, grouped as: (1) Nongovernmental publications; (2) Governmental publications; (3) United Nations publications.

197. AFRIKA-VEREIN, Hamburg. *Afrika Bericht: die Afrika-Wirtschaft*. Hamburg. annual.

HC501.A12

A yearly review of the economic situation in Africa. The edition for 1960/61, issued in the summer of 1961, has 175 pages and includes: "Retrospective View of the African Year;" "The Year of Conferences;" "Problems of the Development Policy and the Financial Economy"; "Association of the African Countries to the European Economic Community," etc.

198. AFRO-ASIAN ORGANISATION FOR ECONOMIC CO-OPERATION. *Economic understanding & foreign investment; a survey and some suggestions*. Cairo, Afro-Asian Organisation for Economic Co-operation, Economic Documentation and Research Division, 1960. 25 l. (*Its Occasional paper*. MA1.2/IBC/1) DLC

This organization was established at a Conference in Cairo, Dec. 8–11, 1958, which was described by the United Arab Republic Minister in the Introduction to its *Proceedings* (Cairo, 1959+) as "another embodiment of the Bandung spirit." The invitations for the Conference had been sent by the Federation of Chambers of Commerce in the U.A.R. to all countries of Asia and Africa; the inaugural meeting was attended by 38 countries, including Algeria, Cameroons, Liberia, Libya, Ethiopia, Ghana, Somalia, Sudan, Togoland. At a second Conference in Cairo, April 30–May 3, 1960, Morocco and Tunisia were also full members

and Nigeria had associate membership. A third Conference was held in New Delhi in December 1961; a fourth is scheduled to meet in Karachi in December 1963. The Organization publishes a processed bulletin of business information, *Afro-Asian Economic Review* (Cairo, 1959+ monthly).

199. BATTEN, THOMAS R. *Problems of African development*. 3d ed. London, Oxford University Press, 1961. 292 p. maps. DT32.B28

Addressed particularly to educated Africans, this concise survey of the economic, social, and political problems confronting the developing countries was published first in 1947–48 and represented the main trend of enlightened British thought in the immediate post-war era regarding peaceful evolution from colonial status to self-government. The author was the former Vice-Principal of Makerere College in Uganda, one of the most advanced institutions for African higher learning. Revised, but only slightly, for the third edition.

A third edition is being published in 1962 of another work by Dr. Batten for African readers, *Tropical Africa in World History* (London, Oxford University Press, 4 v. 1st ed. 1951, 2d ed. 1956).

200. BENVENISTE, GUY, and WILLIAM E. MORAN. *Handbook of African economic development*. New York, Published for the Stanford Research Institute by Praeger, 1962. 178 p. (Books that matter). HC502.B37

By two members of the staff of the Stanford Research Institute, this meaningful study, finished and published by the Institute in 1960, suggests ways in which Western aid to African countries can best be used in coordination with efforts of the countries themselves. If African economic growth fails in the coming years, the authors warn, African leaders will turn to China as a model. Factors of expanded multilateral action and of governmental assistance in men, money, foreign investments, and trade are examined in general aspects and in specific cases, including analysis of proposals made bilaterally and in international councils of European and African powers. The writers stress the need for long-term aid geared to careful and coordinated planning on the part of the recipient countries, and strongly advocate the creation of new international organisms. Tables include statistics of trade with and aid to Africa in the postwar period.

201. BOHANNAN, PAUL J., and GEORGE DALTON, eds. *Markets in Africa*. Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Press, 1963. 735 p. maps, diagrs. (African studies, no. 6) DLC



Papers written by professional anthropologists, economists, and geographers on the role of markets, money uses, and external trade in the non-industrial economies of 28 societies south of the Sahara.

202. COLLOQUE SUR LE PROJET D'UN MARCHÉ COMMUN AFRO-ASIATIQUE, Brussels, 1959. *Actes*, 27–29 mai 1959. Bruxelles, Centre pour l'étude des problèmes du monde musulman contemporain, 1960. 272 p. (Correspondance d'Orient, no. 1)

HF1612.5.A7C6, no. 1

"Bibliographie préliminaire à l'étude d'un marché commun afro-asiatique": p. 241–268.

Not available for examination.

203. COMMISSION FOR TECHNICAL CO-OPERATION IN AFRICA SOUTH OF THE SAHARA [CCTA]. *Systems of national accounts in Africa*, by P. Ady and M. Courcier for the Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara in co-operation with O.E.E.C. Paris, Organisation for European Economic Co-operation, 1960. 232 p. DLC

204. COUNCIL OF EUROPE. Consultative Assembly. *Europe and Africa*. Strasbourg, 1960. 37 p. HC502.C67

Booklet explaining the Assembly's proposals for economic relations between Europe and Africa. The "Strasbourg Plan" adopted by the Assembly on September 25, 1952, had suggested the establishment of a European Bank for the Development of Overseas Territories, directed toward countries having constitutional links with the countries of the Council. Political changes and other considerations forced modification of the proposal, and in 1958 a Study Group of Experts drew up new proposals, which were before the Assembly in 1960. The proposals were for: An investment fund; a guarantee fund for private investors against political risks: expansion of technical assistance through FAMA/CCTA, and a Europe/Africa Conference to provide for cooperation of the European and African participating countries "on a footing of equality." In this connection see also current issues of the *Bulletin* of the European Economic Community, Brussels.

205. COUSTE, PIERRE-BERNARD. *L'Association des pays d'outre-mer à la Communauté économique européenne*. Paris, Librairies techniques, 1959. 286 p. HC59.C74

A treatise urging economic relations between Europe and Africa as a third force between American and Soviet power.

206. DIA, MAMADOU. *The African nations and world solidarity*. Translated from the French by Mercer Cook. New York, Praeger, 1961. 145 p. (Books that matter) HC502.D417

At the time of writing the author was President of the Council of Ministers of Senegal. In 1956 he had been sent as a Deputy to the French National Assembly, and is known as a foremost African expert in economics. An advocate of union, he was a leader in the formation of the shortlived Federation of Mali, and it was in part a clash between him and President Keita (of Soudan) that caused the breakup of the Federation. He has written much on African economics, his best known earlier book being *Réflexions sur l'économie de l'Afrique noire* (see no. 876). The present book was published in Paris in 1960. Like his colleague, President Senghor, at that time he believed in socialism, but not in the Soviet style—the Soviet version of "imperialism" he thought at least as dangerous as that of the former colonial powers. For Africa, he argued, the first essential is a "truly neutral and really positive" neutralism. Next in importance is a co-ordination of economic planning and "mutual development," which he believed will lead by stages to a united Africa. He considered it the "vocation" of the new French-speaking nations to set the model for both political and economic independence.

207. DRACHOUSOFF, V. *L'Afrique décolonisée; essai sur le développement de l'Afrique noire*. Bruxelles, 1960. 150 p. plates. (Académie royale des sciences d'outre-mer. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8° n.s., t. 23, fasc. 1). DLC

Bibliography: p. 143–146.

Study in development of underdeveloped areas with much attention to Eurafrika. The author's professional interest is in agriculture and agricultural industries.

208. DU JONCHAY, IVAN. *L'industrialisation de l'Afrique: historique, énergie, matières premières, industries, transports, main-d'oeuvre et infrastructure, finances*. Paris, Payot, 1953. 344 p. illus. (Bibliothèque géographique) HC502.D8

Overall study by an engineer who has contributed economic and statistical portions to the *Atlas international Larousse*. His encyclopedic treatment, heavily

reinforced by tables of statistics and maps, is by subject, as indicated in the subtitle. Thus in his chapter on energy he begins with general remarks, then looks at the entire African picture of coal production and resources, oil, electricity, and other forms of energy. Statistical tables interpreting the chapters are at the end of the volume. The lack of an index is somewhat obviated by a full Table of Contents.

Another French survey of economic development of all Africa is by René Laure, *Le Continent africain au milieu du siècle; perspectives et problèmes de la mise en valeur économique* (Paris, Charles-Lavauzelle, 1952. 433 p.). It is written in the form of sections on general factors, followed by paragraph résumés of the situation in individual territories.

The same theme, with emphasis on "Eurafrica" and the implications of the global fight against communism, was treated by a German economist, Anton Zischka, in his *Afrika, Europas Gemeinschaftsaufgabe. Nr. 1* (Oldenburg, G. Stalling, 1951. 339 p. illus.). His broad picture of the Western economic investment in and development of Africa and its potential as a source of raw material for Europe and an outlet for European industrial production was presented challengingly for a general audience, in less systematic arrangement than the two French works. The book, published simultaneously in Austria, appeared in Italian translation in 1953.

209. THE ECONOMIST, London. *Three monthly economic reviews*, compiled by the Economist Intelligence Unit. London, 1952-53+ DLC

Originally published as *Quarterly Economic Reviews*, these are series of statistical surveys of individual countries, summarizing latest data in large processed pamphlets. Among seventy-odd areas covered, a number are useful for keeping abreast of the latest economic information on Africa: e.g., *British East Africa, Ethiopia and Somalia* (no. 39, September 1962), *Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland* (no. 38, August 1962), *Former French Tropical Africa and Liberia* (no. 10, July 1962), *Ghana, Nigeria, Sierra Leone, Gambia* (no. 38, June 1962), *Republic of South Africa, Southwest Africa* (no. 43, August 1962).

210. FRANKEL, S. HERBERT. *The economic impact on under-developed societies; essays on international investment and social change*. Oxford, Blackwell, 1953. 179 p. HC55.F7

The author, for many years head of the Department of Economics and Economic History at Witwatersrand, has been Professor of Colonial Economic Affairs at Oxford since 1946. This volume is a group of previously published papers dealing with the clash of functional forces of modern industrialism and the disintegrating indigenous economies. One lecture on

the South African course ("Whither South Africa?") dates from 1947, but most of the others are articles or lectures of 1952. The last is "Some Reflections on Civilization in Africa," a lecture before the South African Institute of Race Relations in 1952, which is also published separately by the Institute (1952, 27 p.). In it Professor Frankel reminds that there is only one way of building a system of effective co-operation in society, which is to build it—"daily, wholly, unselfishly; until to each one in his daily task the unaccustomed becomes the accustomed, and the way which was no way becomes a way: a path—a road—across the valleys and over the mountain tops."

An earlier study by Professor Frankel, *Capital Investment in Africa* (London, Oxford University Press, 1938. 487 p.) showed that before the Second World War investments in development of African resources, especially minerals, had not been high when compared with the rest of the world.

211. GACHE, PAUL, and ROBERT MERCIER. *L'Allemagne et l'Afrique; analyse d'une pénétration économique contemporaine*. Paris, Éditions des relations internationales, 1960. 177 p.

HF3568.A34G13

The writers probe the German interests in African trade and markets since the Second World War with particular reference to the European Common Market, of which they feel Germany is making use as a stepping-stone to a great Eurafrican policy in which she may play a major role. They are suspicious of Afrika-Verein as a leader in this maneuver.

212. GORST, SHEILA. *Co-operative organization in tropical countries; a study of co-operative development in non-self-governing territories under United Kingdom administration, 1945-55*. Oxford, Blackwell, 1959. 343 p.

HD3488.A3A22

The cooperative movement had had only faint beginnings in the British colonial territories before the Second World War. In the years from 1945 to 1955 it made great advances, taking firm root in many countries and providing a valuable training for self-government. In this study the author first surveys the course of cooperatives throughout the British colonial world, chapters 5-7 being on West, East, and Central Africa. In the second part she analyzes the principles and practices of cooperative enterprise and the role of government cooperative departments. The last 10 pages summarize conclusions.



213. GOUROU, PIERRE. *The tropical world; its social and economic conditions and its future status.* Translated by E. D. Laborde. 3d ed. London, Longmans, 1961. 159 p. (Geographies for advanced study) G515.G63 1961

By a professor of the Collège de France and the Université Libre de Bruxelles, this often-quoted study in economic and social geography of the hot wet lands was originally published in 1947. The third edition of the English translation has some revision by the author to reflect recent development. Of the 12 chapters, only 2 do not relate to Africa; in the other 10, emphasis is heavy on tropical Africa.

214. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *An economic survey of the colonial territories.* 1932, 1933, 1935–37, 1951. London, H. M. Stationery Off. maps (part fold.) (*Its Colonial*) HC259.A19

Begun as an annual review, this overall statistical report on British colonial possessions was published in one volume until 1938, when the war caused its suspension. The only postwar edition, 1951, appeared in 1952 in 7 volumes of 100 to 200 legal-size pages each. Those relating to Africa are: 1. *The Central African and High Commission Territories*; 2. *The East African Territories . . .* 3. *The West African Territories . . . with St. Helena.* The country sections give systematic coverage of economic life and conditions, with summarization of general background of geography and population, political structure, principal economic legislation, communications and transport, then surveys of productive activities, finance and trade, development. Many statistical tables and folded maps showing production areas are included. Volume 7, evenly divided into 100 pages of text and 100 pages of tables of exports, analyzed principal products throughout the colonial territories.

A coordinated report on the economics of the English-speaking countries of Africa, as well as the rest of the former Empire, is now issued by the British Central Office of Information, Reference Division as a reference pamphlet, *Economic Development in the Commonwealth* (3d ed. London, H. M. Stationery Off., 1961. 133 p.).

215. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office [and others] *Technical assistance from the United Kingdom for overseas developments, Dept. of Technical Co-operation.* London, H.M. Stationery Off., July 1961. 43 p. (Misc. no. 1, 1961. Cmd. 1308) DLC

The new British Government Department of Technical Co-operation was set up in mid-1961 to admin-

ister economic and technical aid to underdeveloped countries. It took over functions of this nature relating to the former colonial possessions previously handled by the Colonial Office, as well as certain functions of the Commonwealth Relations Office and the Foreign Office. The Command Paper here cited explains these functions. A statute of June 1961 (*Dept. of Technical Co-operation Act, 1961: 9–10 Eliz. 2, Ch. 30*) established the Department. Its first *Progress Report* was issued in April 1962 (18 p. Cmd. 1698). The Department was reported to have spent £180 million in all forms of aid during 1961.

216. HANCE, WILLIAM A. *African economic development.* New York, Published for the Council on Foreign Relations by Harper, 1958. 307 p. maps, tables. HC502.H33

Bibliography: p. 291–296.

Resulting from research papers presented to a discussion group of the Council on Foreign Relations, this book examines African economic development not by general analysis but through case studies. Chapters are on: Agricultural development as exemplified in the Sudan Gezira Scheme; industrial development, the proposed Volta River project; the question of transport in tropical Africa; the economic development and potentialities of the Central African Federation (the most dynamic and hopeful of the continent “if continued progress is made . . . [in attitude] toward African advancement”); the report of the East Africa Royal Commission, focused on changes in land tenure and use; American investment and the development of Liberia; the economy of Madagascar compared with that of tropical Africa. The last chapter reassesses potentialities and needs, the former very great but darkened by “somber” factors of economic, cultural, and political, as well as physical, diversity. The needs are recited—physical, economic, human. “The paramount need is for education, always and everywhere.” Professor Hance, who was responsible for the final form, is an economic geographer at Columbia University.

217. HAZLEWOOD, ARTHUR. *The economy of Africa.* London, Oxford University Press, 1961. 90 p. (The New Africa library) HC502.H38

One of a series of succinct texts by recognized authorities, specially addressed to the new African readers.

218. JACKSON, BARBARA WARD. "Free Africa and the Common Market." *Foreign affairs*, v. 40, Apr. 1962: 419-430. D410.F6, v. 40

"Nowhere," writes Lady Jackson, "do the problems of Britain's entry into the Common Market seem more daunting than in independent Africa where by a chance of history, the confrontation of Commonwealth and Common Market is physically most direct and potentially most disruptive." She follows with a lucid examination of these problems, ending with a question as to whether the "partially preferential solution" of association of Africa with the Common Market is likely to contribute to stability in either continent, or will seem to African nationalists irritating neo-colonialism. In a volume of lectures published by the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation, *The Rich Nations and the Poor Nations* (Toronto, 1961. 97 p. The Massey Lectures, inaugural series) Lady Jackson again stressed the need of African nations in the light of world economy.

219. LEUBUSCHER, CHARLOTTE. *Bulk buying from the colonies; a study of the bulk purchase of colonial commodities by the United Kingdom Government*. Issued under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1956. 206 p. tables. HF3506.L65

During the Second World War the United Kingdom introduced a system of wartime economy called bulk purchase. Under this system various government departments became the sole importers of certain food-stuffs and raw materials. By 1946-47 the character of the system was beginning to change in adaptation to the revival of world trade. This study by an English economist, done at the invitation of Chatham House under a Fellowship at Manchester University, attempts to show the significance of bulk purchase of colonial products from both the colonies' and the United Kingdom's point of view. The summary and conclusions suggest that in peace time the price risks involved to both buyer and seller are greater than normal commercial risks, and that government agencies are given power without adequate control.

220. MARCUS, EDWARD, and MILDRED R. MARCUS. *Investment and development possibilities in tropical Africa*. New York, Bookman Associates, 1960. 286 p. HC502.M25

In this survey of the potentialities and problems of exploitation of the tremendous natural resources of tropical Africa north of the Republic of South Africa

and south of the Sahara, the main theme is attraction of capital from Western Europe and the United States. Much of the information is based on the investigations made at first hand by the two economist writers during a study tour in 1958-59. They discuss general and regional aspects of the role of private investments, the possibilities for development of power, mining and petroleum, agriculture and industry, and the accompanying factors of labor, transport, finance, trade, and political situations, all presenting difficulties which militate against overoptimism for the investor.

221. NEWLYN, WALTER T., and D. C. ROWAN. *Money and banking in British colonial Africa; a study of the monetary and banking systems of eight British African territories*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1954. 301 p. diagrs., tables. (Oxford studies in African affairs)

HG3394.N4

By two economists who had done field work in East and Central Africa (Newlyn) and in West Africa (Rowan). They reviewed social and economic background in the former British colonies, then the operations of the West African Currency Board, the East African Currency Board, and the Southern Rhodesia Currency Board. They analyzed all other forms of banking in the colonies—foreign and indigenous banks, such financial institutions as postal savings banks and cooperative societies, moneylenders and finance corporations, the monetary system and government policy in relation to finance. In conclusion they offered proposals for monetary and financial reform, involving a plea for central banking.

222. "The proposed African Development Bank." *Africa report*, v. 7, Apr. 1962: 16.

DT1.A217, v. 7

Short but highly informative résumé of plans and progress toward the Bank proposed at meeting of U.N. Economic Commission for Africa, Addis Ababa, Feb. 1962.

223. UNITED NATIONS. Dept. of Economic and Social Affairs. *Economic survey of Africa since 1950*. New York, 1959. 248 p. maps, tables. (*Its* [Document] E/CN.14/28)

JX1977.A2 E/CN.14/28

This report reviews and supplements the statistical material covered in earlier economic analyses of Africa published by this Department from 1951-1958 (see list on p. iii of the survey). It was requested by the Economic Commission for Africa at its first session,



December 1958/January 1959, and prepared for submission to the second session. The sections, fortified with tabulated statistics, are on structural aspects, growth trends, development of external trade, and capital formation, each covering available data for all the countries of Africa.

224. UNITED NATIONS. Economic Commission for Africa. *Economic bulletin for Africa*. v. 1, no. 1+ Jan. 1961+ Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, Published by the Secretariat of the Economic Commission for Africa. Semi-annual. DLC

The first issue of the official journal of ECA is in two parts, A, Current economic trends, and B, Special articles. In the first, there are general surveys of world economic trends and their impact on the countries exporting primary raw materials, and of recent trends in African trade, and notes on the chief export commodities of the African region as a whole. Part B contains articles on institutional changes in the field of foreign trade and payments, money and banking for the franc zone, the sterling area, the Congo, and Somalia, also a survey of development programs in selected countries, and a review of economic developments in the Congo, 1957-60.

225. ———. *Report*. 1st+ sess.; Dec. 29, 1958-Jan. 6, 1959+ New York. ([U.N. Document] E/CN/14/) DLC

Issued as supplements to the *Official Records* of the Economic and Social Council.

UNECA has headquarters in Addis Ababa where most of its many reports and other documents are prepared, though usually issued in New York. The Fourth Session was held from February 19-March 3, 1962, and a two-page list of its documents and resolutions appears in the *United Nations Review* of May 1962 (p. 49-50). These include the semi-annual *Economic Bulletin for Africa* and many special studies and reports.

An article by the *Observer* correspondent, Colin Legum, "Economic Commission for Africa: Progress Report," in *World Today* of July 1961 (v. 17, p. 299-307), summarized proceedings at the third session of UNECA in March 1961, and described the kinds of information being assembled at the headquarters, "where Mr. Mekki Abbas, the Secretary-General, is building up an impressive staff of Africans and non-Africans."

In the *Ethiopia Observer* of Autumn 1961 (v. 5, no. 3, p. 254-284) there are two useful articles prepared by UNECA. The first is "Analysis—Recent Trends in African Trade," including tables of imports, exports, etc., in general and by country and region. The second, "Development Programmes and Policies in Africa," similarly summarizes in general and

by country, ending with a useful list of documents relating to development plans.

Among the more substantial mimeographed reports prepared by the Economic Commission for Africa and published as United Nations Documents are the following:

*Report of the facilities available for the training of Africans in economics, statistics and related fields of study*, prepared by UNESCO . . . 7 Dec. 1959. 35, 11, 36, 2, 8, 5 p. (includes appendixes) (E/CN.14/35)

*Transport problems in relation to economic development in West Africa*. 6 Dec. 1960. 125 p., tables. (E/CN.14/63)

*The impact of Western European integration on African trade and development*. 7 Dec. 1960. 101 p. (E/CN.14/72)

*International economic assistance to Africa*. 16 Nov. 1960. 35 p. (E/CN.14/88)

*Economic and social consequences of racial discriminatory practices*. 1962. 216 p. diagrs. (E/CN.14/132)

*The Co-operative movement in Africa*. 15 Jan. 1962. 208 p. (E/CN.14/133)

*Note:* For the help of Western business interests in Africa there is a wide variety of slight but useful material. In the list of *Serials for African Studies* prepared by the Library of Congress in 1961, almost 200 periodicals are indexed under Commerce and Economics; many of these are weekly newspapers or bulletins. The Bureau of International Commerce of the U.S. Department of Commerce issues constant reports in its World Trade Information Service. A checklist of available titles in December 1962 includes well over a hundred on Africa and the separate countries. This listing is reproduced in an article in *African Studies Bulletin*, vol. 5, no. 3, Oct. 1962, by the Department's Director of the Africa Division of the Bureau of International Programs, Bernard Blankenheimer. Among the series for each country are: *Establishing a Business in* [. . .], *Economic Developments in* [. . .], *Preparing Shipments to* [. . .], *Living Conditions in* [. . .]. A comparable British series is issued by the Board of Trade in London, *Hints to Business Men Visiting* [. . .]—little pamphlets of elementary information regarding travel, trade, credits, etc. The Austrian Bundeskammer der Gewerblichen Wirtschaft has a series of booklets of *Oesterreichs Aussenhandel* which relate to individual countries of Africa, giving the same sort of data. An Italian series, *Guida per l'Esportatore Italiano in* [Ghana, etc.] are leaflets with colorful covers, containing the same practical notes.

## SOCIAL STUDIES

### *Bibliography*

226. CENTRE INTERNATIONAL DE DOCUMENTATION ÉCONOMIQUE ET SOCIALE AFRICAINE. *Enquêtes bibliographiques* [series] Bruxelles, 1959+

This association, which began as CEDESA and in 1961 added the adjective International to its name, thus becoming CIDESA, is concerned with bibliographies, both as card service and in the series of printed

bibliographies on special subjects of social or economic significance. Among the contributions to date are:

Fasc. 1. *Le problème de la délinquance juvénile*, by M. L. Kerremans-Ramioulle. 1959. 63 p.  
Z5118.C9K4 1959

Fasc. 2. *L'enseignement supérieur et la recherche scientifique en Afrique intertropicale*, by Jean Leyder. 1960. 219 p.  
Z3501.L4

Fasc. 3. *Le problème de l'habitat rural en Afrique noire*, by Paul Verhaegen. 1960. 73 p.  
Z7164.H8V4

Fasc. 4. *Problèmes fonciers et régime des terres*, by T. Heyse. 1960. 163 p.  
Z7164.L3H4

Fasc. 5. *Contribution à l'étude de la progression économique de l'Afrique*, by Guy Smet. 1960. 217 p.  
Z7165.A4S6

Fasc. 6. *Le problème des routes en régions intertropicales*, by J. Nuyens. 1961. 133 p.  
Z7295.N8

Fasc. 7. *Bibliographie de la condition de l'Africaine en Afrique noire*, by F. Plisnier-Ladame. 1961. 241 p.  
Z7964.A3P5

Fasc. 8. *Aspects économiques et sociaux de l'industrialisation en Afrique*, by P. Dethine. 1961. 136 p.

Fasc. 9. *L'Urbanisation de l'Afrique noire: son cadre, ses causes et ses conséquences économiques, sociales et culturelles*, by P. Verhaegen. 1962. 388 p.

227. COMHAIRE, J. L. L., comp. *Urban conditions in Africa*; select reading list on urban problems in Africa. [New and rev. ed.] London, Published for the Institute of Colonial Studies by Oxford University Press, 1952. 48 p.  
Z3501.C65 1952

The first edition of this list, edited by Dr. Margery Perham, was issued in 1947. It was revised to reflect the great increase of literature on the subject in 5 years, and as one of the distinguished series of reading lists upon colonial questions prepared for the Institute of Colonial Studies. Like the others of the series, it might be cited as a model for a subject bibliography relating to Africa.

Urbanization is one of the themes stressed in several UNESCO publications, notably *Current Sociology*, the *International Social Science Bulletin*, and the *International Bibliography of Social and Cultural Anthropology*. In all these, however, the approach is worldwide, without geographical subdivision.

228. AFRICAN-AMERICAN INSTITUTE. Women's Africa Committee. *The role of women in Africa*. Edited by Mary Craig Schuller and Elizabeth Hunting Wheeler. New York, 1960. 36 p.  
HQ1788.A55

Report of a conference held in New York in November 1959, at which this committee, an affiliate of the African-American Institute, discussed the changing role of African women in home and community,

and attempted to outline exchange programs in which American women may cooperate with them.

An African Congress of the World Movement of Mothers was held at Abidjan, Ivory Coast, April 4-10, 1961. The Congress with 500 in attendance considered values and detriments to women in the traditional family life, health, housing, education, economic and social roles, progress due to the new ways of life and tensions created by them. The Report is to be published according to a note in a special issue of *Movement mondial des mères*, (Paris, no. 16, avr.-juin 1961). As of early 1963 it has not reached the Library of Congress.

229. BATTEN, THOMAS R. *Communities and their development*; an introductory study with special reference to the Tropics. London, Oxford University Press, 1957. 248 p. illus.  
HN15.B35

Basic work by the Supervisor of Studies on Community Development of the University of London Institute of Education. His own previous field experience had been in West and East Africa from 1927 to 1949, and though his study is general for underdeveloped regions of tropical countries, many of his examples are drawn from Africa. He discusses trends in community development, agencies and their work of directing, of aiding community projects, and of building communities, the school and literacy campaigns, methods of "introducing new ideas," and of working with groups and training workers. The bibliographical chapter notes include many specific references on community work in Africa.

Mr. Batten's book of 1959, *School and Community in the Tropics* (London, Oxford University Press, 177 p.) is concerned with the connections of community development with the schools and the role of teachers. It relates more to other parts of the world than to Africa.

230. BINET, JACQUES. *Le mariage en Afrique noire*. Paris, Éditions du Cerf, 1959. 176 p. illus. (Foi vivante. Série "Vie des missions")  
HQ691.B5

By an administrator and sociologist particularly familiar with Cameroun and Equatorial Africa. This is a study of the causes and extent of polygamy, of dowries, and of traditional and changing marriage customs.

231. *L'Enfant africain*; l'éducation de l'enfant africain en fonction de son milieu de base et de son orientation d'avenir. Paris, Éditions Fleurus, 1960. 484 p. (Bureau international catholique de l'enfance. Collection Études et documents)  
HQ792.A4C6 1957a

The report of a Conference held under auspices of the Bureau at Yaoundé, Cameroun, in 1957, and at-



tended by 400 European and African missionaries, priests, nuns, doctors, and teachers. Twelve chapters summarize the material gathered from responses to a preliminary questionnaire, and the papers and discussions of the Conference on various aspects of the life, education, and well-being of the African child. The text of the questionnaire, a synthesis of the 800 pages of documentation received in replies, and a bibliography of about 1,500 references (p. 464-484) are given as appendixes.

232. GARDINER, ROBERT KWEKU, and HELEN O. JUDD. *The development of social administration*. 2d ed. London, Oxford University Press, 1959. 208 p. HN18.G29 1959

This book sketched the history and principles of social welfare in Britain as a guide to the social progress that is demanded in the present rapidly changing society of West Africa. As the old village system in which the family looked out for its own members breaks down under urban economic development, the writers stress that the new African society must accept responsibility for "the needs of the social 'casualties' of industrialization." The social aspects of administration, community development, mutual aid and social insurance, philanthropy, education, health, rehabilitation of delinquents, education and training for social work, are some of the themes illustrated for the coming leaders of Africa. Mr. Gardiner, in 1962 head of the U.N. Mission to the Congo, was at the time an official in the Gold Coast administration, and Mrs. Judd a social scientist at the London School of Economics.

233. HUNTER, GUY. *The new societies of tropical Africa; a selective study*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. xviii, 376 p. illus., fold. maps, tables. HN777.H8

Issued under the auspices of the Institute of Race Relations, London. Bibliography: p. 348-360.

The result of a project undertaken in 1959 and placed under the direction of Mr. Hunter, who traveled widely in Africa, interviewing over a thousand people. Although he is responsible alone for the final text, it was based on the work of many writers and on papers done especially for this purpose by local study groups in Africa. The chapters cover the historical growth of modern economies and changing culture, present rural and urban society, growth of industry, labor problems, education and manpower, evolving political systems, and last, "The Quality of African Society."

234. INTER-AFRICAN CONFERENCE ON SOCIAL SCIENCES. 1st, Bukavu, Belgian Congo, 1955. [*Memoranda and documents* prepared for the C.C.T.A. Conference on Social Sciences to be held at Bukavu in the Belgian Congo in August and September 1955. n.p., 1955] 20 pieces. HN792.I53 1955

Working papers prepared for the Conference by committees from the various countries attending the meeting. The first eight papers, each of some length, are by East African specialists, commenting on research accomplished and in prospect in sociology, social anthropology and psychology, economics, human geography, demography, social history, education, and linguistics. Comparable papers or short résumés were submitted also by committees from the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, the Gold Coast, Sierra Leone, from the French Government with relation to tropical Africa and Madagascar, and from the Union of South Africa. A number of the papers include or consist of bibliographies. Last is the annual report of the West African Institute of Social and Economic Research at Ibadan.

235. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *Social implications of industrialization and urbanization in Africa south of the Sahara*. Paris, UNESCO, 1956. 743 p. illus., maps, diagrs., tables. (Tensions and technology series) HN773.I5

Under the auspices of UNESCO an International Conference on the Social Impact of Industrialization and Urban Conditions in Africa south of the Sahara was organized by the International African Institute at Abidjan in September-October 1954. This volume represents the results. The first two parts comprise an introduction by the Director of the Institute, Professor Daryll Forde, explaining the Conference and its field of study, then a survey by Miss Meran McCulloch of about thirty recent and current field studies on the social effects of economic developments in tropical Africa, ending with a chapter of comparisons and conclusions. Part 3 is the report of a sample study made by a field research team on social effects of urbanization in Stanleyville, Belgian Congo (preliminary report by V. G. Pons, N. Xydias, and P. Clément). Part 4 contains papers presented at the Conference, five on West Africa, five on East Africa, three on the Belgian Congo, three on Southern Africa.

236. INTERNATIONAL CHILDREN'S CENTRE, Paris.  
*Étude des conditions de vie de l'enfant africain en milieu urbain et de leur influence sur la délinquance juvénile.* Enquête entreprise à Madagascar, au Cameroun et en Côte d'Ivoire de 1954 à 1957. Paris, 1959. 175 p. (Travaux et documents, xii) HV9217.A516

Thorough sociological study presented statistically with many tables, graphic charts, maps, and case histories. Includes bibliography on juvenile delinquency in Africa and other underdeveloped areas (p. 165-173).

Two conferences on the problems of African childhood have been organized by the International Children's Centre, the first in Brazzaville in December 1952, the second at Lagos in March 1959, in collaboration with the Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara. The report of the latter, Conference on the Welfare of the African Child, Lagos, 1959, was published with the title, *Le bien-être de l'enfant en Afrique au sud du Sahara . . . Child welfare in Africa South of the Sahara* (Paris, I. Paul Pont et F. Flis, for the Centre international de l'enfance, 1959. 185 p.) The volume contains lists of delegates, opening and closing addresses, program, and summaries of reports and conclusions.

237. INTERNATIONAL INSTITUTE OF DIFFERING CIVILIZATIONS. *Women's role in the development of tropical and sub-tropical countries.* Report of the 31st meeting, Brussels, 17-20 Sept. 1958. Brussels, 1959. 543 p. HQ1154.I6

At this session of the influential organization known as INCIDI, representatives from 18 countries were present, and papers were on a high level of authoritativeness. The first 254 pages are given, after opening speeches, to reports from Africa, beginning with an address by Sister Marie André du Sacré Coeur on French West Africa. There follow reports by spokesmen for the Ivory Coast, Liberia, Nigeria, Somalia, Portuguese provinces in Africa, the Belgian Congo, Ruanda, Rhodesia and Nyasaland, Uganda, Madagascar, the Union of South Africa (by Muriel Horrell of the S.A. Institute of Race Relations), Egypt and the Sudan. The remainder of the volume is taken up with reports from Asia and Latin America.

238. MARIE ANDRÉ DU SACRÉ COEUR, Sister. *La femme noire en Afrique occidentale.* Paris, Payot, 1939. 278 p. illus. (Bibliothèque scientifique) HQ1802.M3

Bibliography: p. 275-278.

239. ———. *La condition humaine en Afrique noire.* Paris, Grasset, 1953. 262 p. illus. HN776.M3

The writer, a White Sister, is also a Doctor in Law of the Catholic University of Lille and a member of the French Conseil Supérieur des Affaires Sociales d'Outre-Mer. Her first book, resulting from her observations of the life of the women among who she worked in the remote "bush," won an Academy prize. The second work, for the preparation of which she spent fifteen months in former French West Africa and Cameroun, is a socio-legal study of the African family, with special reference to marriage law and the place of the woman in the as yet almost unchanged polygamous rural society. She traces resemblances between African customary law and the laws of Rome and the Germanic tribes of antiquity. Most of her information, she claims, comes from the African elites, and she urges that the West trust the Africans in their will toward evolution and their receptivity to a spiritual message.

240. MAUNIER, RENÉ. *The sociology of colonies; an introduction to the study of race contact.* Edited and translated by E. O. Lorimer. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1949. 2 v. (International Library of Sociology and Social Reconstruction) JV305.M314

The first edition of this well-known French study in colonial theory was published in 1932. Professor Maunier (Colonial Sciences, University of Paris) wrote it in three parts, the first two of which are combined in Volume 1 of the English edition; these two are concerned with general issues, doctrine, forms and effects of race contact, and mental and spiritual reactions of blacks and whites. The third part, written later and published separately, examines the solutions, which are in essence for the white man to pass from domination to partnership, in cooperation with the black.

241. MINER, HORACE, ed. *Social science in action in sub-Saharan Africa.* New York, Society for Applied Anthropology, 1960. p. 97-167. (*Human organization*, v. 19, Fall 1960)

GN1.H83, v. 19

This special issue of the journal of the Society for Applied Anthropology "was planned as a contribution to the American discovery of Africa," its purpose to acquaint American scholars recently entering this field with some of the European tradition of African studies and resultant activities. The first four papers examine British, French, Belgian, and Soviet research in the social sciences in Africa; the writers are Lucy Mair, Georges Balandier, Joseph Nicaise, and Christopher



Bird. The following articles are by English and American scholars on particular subjects—slums and family life, labor migration, etc., etc.

242. OJIKE, MBONU. *My Africa*. New York, John Day, 1946. 350 p. DT14.04

Interpretive account of African life, much of it in terms of comparison with the West, which is now looked on as a classic. The writer, a young Nigerian educated partly in African mission schools, partly in an American university, extended his generalizations to the whole continent, though his examples are drawn largely from his own nation. He begins with the personal story of his background, childhood, and education in a Nigerian village. In the second part he describes various phases of life in Africa, economic, social, religious, aesthetic, and political. His final section, "Practicing Brotherhood," is a plea for Africa's place in the sun. He protests against the misrepresentation of Africans by publicists who have "treated Africans just as a museum specimen. We are likened to a zoo where you go to see lower forms of animal lives." The emphasis throughout is nationalistic. The writer had formerly been an editor of the leading Nationalist paper of Nigeria, the *West African Pilot* of Lagos, and at the time was managing director of an African enterprise, the African Development Corporation.

243. PAULME, DENISE, ed. *Femmes d'Afrique noire*. Paris, Mouton, 1960. 280 p. (Le Monde d'outre-mer passé et présent. 1. sér. Études 9) HQ1287.P3

Six exceptionally interesting essays by women ethnologists, based on field experience of the last 10 years. The introduction, generalizing on the theme of the work, the status, and ways of life of women in Africa, is by a well-known anthropologist now with the Division des Aires Culturelles in the École Pratique des Hautes Études. A long analytical bibliography (p. 219–278) is classified by subject.

244. PHILLIPS, ARTHUR, ed. *Survey of African marriage and family life*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1953. 462 p. HQ691.P45

Inspired by the International Missionary Council at the suggestion of Lord Hailey in 1946. The editor, reader in administration of colonial law at the University of London, writes an introductory essay. Part 1, "African Marriage and Social Change," is by Dr. Lucy P. Mair. Part 2, "Marriage Laws in Africa," is

by Dr. Phillips. Part 3, "Christian Marriage in African Society," is by the Rev. Lyndon Harris of the School of Oriental and African Studies, formerly of the Universities' Mission to Central Africa. Each part has its own scholarly footnotes, bibliography and indexes, including separate indexes of the tribes studied.

A short summarization of the *Survey of African Marriage and Family Life* was published by the International Missionary Council as No. 1 of their series of Research Pamphlets, *African Marriage*, by Thomas Price (London, SCM Press, 1954. 56 p.). The conflicts of Christian practices and principles with the tribal marriage customs—particularly with polygamy and bride price—are the main points of discussion.

245. UNITED NATIONS. Secretariat. *Progress of the non-self-governing territories under the Charter*. v. 3. Social conditions. New York, 1961. 251 p. (ST/TRI/Ser.A/15/v.3) JX1977.A2

This review of general development in social conditions of independent territories throughout the world covers race relations, social welfare, social security legislation, community development, freedom of association and industrial relations, cooperative societies, demographic conditions and population trends, health services and activities, nutrition. It is one of five volumes, the first a general review, Volume 2 on economic conditions, Volume 4 on educational developments, Volume 5 summaries for individual territories. A cumulative index will be published separately. The period covered in the progress report is 1946 to 1957, consequently most of Africa south of the Sahara (former British colonies except Ghana, former French territories, Belgian Congo) are included. Official sources are given for most data.

246. WORLD UNION OF CATHOLIC WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS. Regional seminar, Lomé, Togo, 1958. *African women speak*. Edited by the National Catholic Welfare Conference, Office for U.N. Affairs. Maryknoll, N.Y., World horizon reports, 1960. 117 p. illus., ports. (World horizon reports. Report no. 26) HQ1788.W65 1958

A summary of abridgment of the French and English talks and a summary of the discussions in the eight workshops which followed each session. Over 300 African Catholic women were present at this meeting, from 10 countries of West and Central Africa. "In a continent where they have traditionally occupied an inferior position women spoke up for themselves—about themselves." Themes were education and vocational training for girls, marriage, bride price, polyg-

amy, legal status of the widow or deserted wife, family and social life, civic responsibilities, Catholic education and action.

## LABOR

### Bibliography

247. PANOFSKY, HANS E. *A bibliography of labor migration in Africa south of the Sahara*. Evanston, University Library, Northwestern University, 1961. 28 l. DLC-AFR

Compiled by the Curator of Africana of Northwestern University Library, who has specialized in the study of African labor migration. Although his focus is a limited phase of the labor question, a number of general works on labor in Africa are included. The arrangement is regional, with author index. Mr. Panofsky has made extensive coverage of books and periodical materials in English and European languages up to mid-1961, and includes slight annotations and indication of reviews or précis in *African Abstracts*.

248. INTER-AFRICAN LABOUR INSTITUTE. *Bulletin*. London, Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara. 1954+ bimonthly. English and French.

HD4811.I56

The Institute was set up in 1948 as the permanent organ of the Inter-African Labour Conference operating under the aegis of CCTA. The quarterly journal provides broad coverage of important aspects of African labor in its articles, also bibliographical notes that include texts of labor legislation. Two typical issues, v. 8, no. 2-3, May and August 1961, contain articles on the problems of executive staff in Nigeria, Uganda, Nyasaland, Ivory Coast, Guinea, and Morocco, a report of the 6th Inter-African Labour Conference, Abidjan, April 1961, and specialist articles on labor migration in Madagascar, the functions of management, and unemployment in Leopoldville.

The Institute also prepares monographic studies: e.g., *The Human Factors of Productivity in Africa; A Preliminary Survey* (2d ed. Brazzaville, 1960. 156 p. diag.).

249. INTERNATIONAL LABOR OFFICE. *African labour survey*. Geneva, 1958. xiv, 712 p. map, tables. (*Its Studies and reports*, new ser., no. 48) HD7801.I67, no. 48

Bibliography: p. 695-707.

The drafts of this survey, which had been authorized by ILO in 1956, were examined by its Committee of

Experts on Social Policy in Non-Metropolitan Territories in late 1957, and the final text prepared under supervision of the Director General. The primary purpose of the big study was to provide a point of departure for future work in Africa south of the Sahara. All possible aspects bearing on labor are covered—economic and social conditions, land and labor, community development, all phases of employment, work performance, wages, recruitment, social provisions, labor administration, and application of international labor standards. Each chapter ends with a summary of conclusions, and a final chapter gives the general conclusions of the Committee of Experts, which in 1958 was to be replaced by a separate ILO African Field Office and an African Advisory Committee. Appendixes are texts of ILO documents of standards and recommendations, citation of principal labor legislation of the countries of Africa, miscellaneous tables of statistics, and a bibliography.

250. ISTITUTO ITALIANO PER L'AFRICA. *Premesse al lavoro italiano in Africa*. Roma, 1960. 271 p. DT35.I82

By Teobaldo Filesi, chairman of the Studies Board of the Institute, and other specialists, this book is designed to promote Italian emigration and aid in development of the new countries of Africa. Filesi and S. Bono write the first essay on Italian communities already existing, G. Ziliotto on laws, requirements, and methods of emigration. L. Magnino describes education in the African countries, A. Napoletano discusses climate, and A. Bettola tropical diseases.

251. LUX, ANDRÉ. *Le marché du travail en Afrique noire*. Louvain, Nauwelaerts, 1962. 328 p.

General study of labor market in South, Central and East Africa, with detailed analysis for Kasai Province in the Congo. Includes many statistical tables.

252. MORGAUT, MARC-EDMOND. *Un dialogue nouveau; l'Afrique et l'industrie*. Paris, Fayard, 1959. 200 p. HD8776.M6

By a "psychotechnician" who had worked with large industrial enterprises in Equatorial Africa, Cameroun, Senegal, and Guinea. The writer analyzed the character of the African worker, finding that similarities with the European worker are greater than the differences. He made suggestions for employment of African labor, for training the various cadres of technicians, and for constant improvement in relations between Africans and Europeans in industry.



253. NOON, JOHN A. *Labor problems of Africa*. Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania Press, the University Museum, 1944. 144 p. (African handbooks, ed. by H. A. Wieschhoff. 6) HD8776.N6

Bibliography: p. 140-144.

One of a series of wartime introductions to African problems, written for the lay reader. The rapid change in much of Africa from a subsistence village economy to wage earning is the main subject of analysis.

254. ORDE-BROWN, G. ST. J. *The African labourer*. London, Published for the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures by Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1933. 240 p. map. HD8774.07

The writer of this pioneer study of the problems of African labor had been Labour Commissioner in Tanganyika from 1926 to 1931 and was subsequently a representative in the International Labour Organization and an Advisor on Colonial Labour to the British Colonial Office. In the first part of this book he treated the background of primitive African society and the first impact of foreign influences, the incentives offered the African for wage earning, forced labor, methods and conditions of recruiting and labor contracts, living and social conditions of laborers, etc. Part 2 contains a country-by-country summary of labor legislation, and Part 3 cites international draft conventions relative to African labor. Major Orde-Brown made regional surveys, which were published by H.M. Stationery Office for the Colonial Office: *Labour in the Tanganyika Territory* (1926. 105 p. Its Colonial no. 19); *Labour Conditions in Northern Rhodesia* (1938. 99 p. Its Colonial no. 150); *Labour Conditions in West Africa* (1941. 149 p. Cmd. 6277); *Labour Conditions in East Africa* (1946. 94 p. Colonial no. 193).

255. *Le Travail en Afrique noire*. Paris, Éditions du Seuil, 1952. 427 p. illus. (Présence africaine, 13) GN645.P74, no. 13

Group of papers, mostly by French economists and sociologists, on labor questions in Africa. Some of the views expressed were far to the left, reflecting extreme anticolonialism.

256. U.S. BUREAU OF INTERNATIONAL LABOR AFFAIRS. *Directory of labor organizations, Africa*. Rev. ed. Washington, 1962. 1 v. (looseleaf) HD6856.U6

Large processed pamphlet containing the most accurate available information on the structure, composi-

tion, membership, and international affiliations of labor organizations in Africa as of May 1, 1962. Narratives accompanying each chapter provide some indication of the significance of the labor movement within the social structure of the country. There are 49 chapters in all, one for each country of Africa. Two appendixes give a list of abbreviations and a list of names of labor officials.

## POPULATION

257. BARBOUR, KENNETH M., and R. M. PROTHERO. *Essays on African population*. New York, Praeger, 1962. 336 p. (Books that matter) HB3661.B3

Besides the two editors' contributions, this volume includes essays by several other British geographers, sociologists, and population experts. Subjects are censuses, population mapping, wages, labor and population movements, towns, etc. Most parts of Africa south of the Sahara come under consideration.

258. BLANC, ROBERT. *Handbook of demographic research in under-developed countries*. [n.p., n.d.] 115 p. (Scientific Council for Africa South of the Sahara. Publication no. 36) DLC

This work, not yet available for examination in the Library of Congress in March 1963, is an edition in English of a paper in French, issued in a limited mimeographed edition as Publication No. 36 of CSA in 1958 or 1959. The English handbook was circulated to participants at the Seminar on Population Problems in Cairo (see below).

259. KUCZYNSKI, ROBERT RENÉ. *Demographic survey of the British colonial empire*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1948. 4 v. tables. HB3584.A1K8

Includes bibliographies.

A comprehensive survey of demographic statistics prior to World War II, prepared under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs by a population analyst who during the course of the work was appointed adviser to the British Colonial Office. Mr. Kuczynski died in 1947, while the first two volumes were still in process of publication, and proofreading and indexing were completed by his daughter, Dr. Brigitte Long. The first volume deals with West Africa, with full account from the beginnings through 1946 and statistics for each country of census taking, total population, composition of African and non-African population, birth and death registration, fertility, mortality, and population growth. The second volume

covers the same material for the High Commission territories, Central and East Africa, Mauritius, and Seychelles.

260. LORIMER, FRANK. *Demographic information on tropical Africa*. Boston, Boston University Press, 1961. 207 p. map. HB3661.L6

Professor Lorimer's book results from a study carried out under the auspices of the African Studies Program at Boston University and the Population Council of New York, and his own investigations in statistical offices and research centers in Africa. It is a review and analysis of the whole course of population studies for Africa, beginning with general consideration of methodology, then examining by regions the development of demographic information. Tables and bibliographies of census reports and other population studies are interspersed. In the introductory chapter there are listings and explanation of the chief bibliographies and manuals of African demographic statistics, and of the conferences on population held by CCTA and other international bodies.

261. SEMINAR ON POPULATION PROBLEMS, Cairo, Oct. 29–Nov. 10, 1962. *Report*. Cairo, United Nations. Economic Commission for Africa, 1962. 58 p. and annexes. (U.N. Document E/CN.14/186. E/CN.9/Conf. 3/1) DLC

This Seminar held under UNECA auspices is described by Dr. Lorimer as "important," its report of proceedings as "excellent." The document begins with summary of conclusions and recommendations, then gives summary of discussions. The annexes contain texts of the most important addresses and statements, lists of participants and observers, program, and last a long list of documents (E/CN.14/ASPP/L.1–17; E/CN.14/ASPP/INF.1; E/CN.14/ASPP/G.1–7) which had been prepared as preliminary papers for the Conference. Among these was the *Handbook* by Blanc, noted above.

## ANTHROPOLOGY AND SOCIOLOGY

### *Bibliography*

262. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *Africa bibliography series: ethnography, sociology, linguistics, and related subjects*. London, 1958+

A series based on the bibliographical card index of the International African Institute, compiled by Ruth Jones, librarian, with the assistance of a panel of con-

sultants. Many of the entries have appeared in the quarterly bibliographies published in the journal of the Institute, *Africa*, since 1929, and the more notable periodical contributions have been summarized in *African Abstracts*, issued by the Institute in cooperation with UNESCO since 1950. There have been, to Spring 1963, four volumes folio size, in offset print: *West Africa* (1958. 116 l. Z3516.5I5); *North-East Africa* (1959. 51 l. Z3516.I5); *East Africa* (1960. 62 l. Z3516.I47); *South-East Central Africa and Madagascar* (1961. 53 l. Z3516.I53). They include books, periodical articles, and documents arranged by country, subject, and under the main subjects, ethnography and linguistics, by tribal groupings. Each part has an index of names of ethnic sections and languages.

Besides these comprehensive bibliographies and the above-mentioned current lists in *Africa* and *African Abstracts*, there are notable chapter bibliographies in the Institute's series of the Ethnographic Survey of Africa (no. 270). Useful reading lists will also be found in a number of the studies described in this section.

For even more extensive reference to European writings on cultural anthropology of Africa south of the Sahara, see the Belgian *Bibliographie ethnographique* . . . published annually by the Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale (no. 1953) which since its first volume analyzing writings "du Congo belge et des régions avoisinantes" for 1925–30 has steadily increased its coverage of literature relating to territories beyond the borders of the former Belgian territories.

263. WIESCHHOFF, HEINRICH A. *Anthropological bibliography of Africa*. New Haven, American Oriental Society, 1948. 461 p. (American Oriental series, 23) Z5113.W5

The late author, a well-known American Africanist, had been editor of the University of Pennsylvania series of handbooks during the Second World War, and subsequently an official at the United Nations. He was with Dag Hammarskjöld as a technical advisor on the mission in the Congo in which both lost their lives in September 1961. This big subject bibliography was prepared under a grant from the American Council of Learned Societies, and was developed from a working card catalog. Entries are under the names of tribes and geographic areas, listed in alphabetical order with many cross-references of tribal names and their synonyms. They include articles from over 200 scholarly periodicals and journals of learned societies.

264. BASCOM, WILLIAM R., and MELVILLE J. HERSKOVITS, eds. *Continuity and change in African cultures*. Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1958. 309 p. illus., maps. GN651.B3



These essays by social anthropologists who had begun their work under Professor Herskovits at Northwestern University are based on a set of papers delivered at an "interdisciplinary conference" at Princeton University in 1953. The first five relate to cultural change in Africa as a whole, the others to particular areas or peoples, mostly in West Africa, where a number of the writers have done field work. The opening essay examines challengingly "The Problem of Stability and Change in African Culture," arguing for analysis of change through an historical and cultural approach rather than through sociology. The other papers of the general section study cultural changes in linguistics, art, music, and the status of women under plural marriage. The papers on specific cultures treat social, political, economic, and religious changes. A feature of the Princeton conference had been the attendance of Muslim students.

265. BAUMANN, HERMANN, and DIEDRICH WESTERMANN. *Les peuples et les civilisations de l'Afrique*, suivi de *Les langues et l'éducation*. Traduction française par L. Homburger. Paris, Payot, 1948. 605 p. (Bibliothèque scientifique) illus. DT14.B38

The German original of this basic work in which the anthropologist Professor Baumann collaborated with the philologist Professor Westermann was published in 1939, with a second edition in 1943. In the latter there was a third part on the European impact on African society by Dr. Richard Thurnwald, which is omitted in the French translation by the director of African linguistic studies at the École Pratique des Hautes Études. Dr. Baumann's part (p. 11-437), which is considered authoritative by many European ethnologists, is a broad analysis of cultural cycles and regional ethnography in sub-Saharan Africa.

266. BÉART, CHARLES. *Jeux et jouets de l'Ouest africain*. Dakar, IFAN, 1955. 2 v. (888 p.) illus. GN456.88.W4B4

267. ———. *Recherche des éléments d'une sociologie des peuples africains à partir de leur jeux*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1960. 147 p. GN456.82B4

M. Béart's first book is an ethnological study of the games and playthings of both children and adults in West Africa, particularly former French West Africa. The two big volumes, involving a detailed analysis of each game or toy, are lavishly illustrated. In the second book, which goes on from the earlier work, the author urges that the meanings of the traditional

games and dances in the social development of the peoples be probed and evaluated before they die out under cultural change. As before, his examples are drawn largely from French-speaking West Africa, including games and ritual dances, which now, he says, are undergoing "désacralisation."

268. BIASUTTI, RENATO. *Le razze e i popoli della terra*. Con la collaborazione dei professori Matteo Bartoli [et al.] 3. ed. riv. e aggiornata. Torino, Unione tipografico-editrice torinese, 1959. 4 v. (ca. 2,500 p.) illus., col. plates, maps, diagrs. GN315.B46 1959

Includes bibliographies.

Volume 3 of this encyclopedic Italian work on worldwide ethnology is devoted to Africa. Prepared with the collaboration of Professors Ernesta Cerulli, Lidio Cypriani, and other leading Italian Africanists, it is a handsomely illustrated compilation of data regarding the findings of anthropological study. A general survey of African prehistory and of present-day races and cultures is followed by chapters analyzing the physical anthropology of African peoples by region, each chapter ending with bibliography. A comprehensive index of tribal names is, unfortunately, in volume 4 along with that of peoples of the rest of the world.

269. BOHANNAN, PAUL, ed. *African homicide and suicide*. Princeton, N.J., Princeton University Press, 1960. xviii, 270 p. map, tables. HV6513.B5

Dr. Bohannan, a professor of social anthropology at Northwestern University, is an authority on the Tiv tribe of Central Nigeria. In the course of field research some years ago, he encountered a file on a murder case, and realized that it contained invaluable ethnographic information. This led to the present study, in which he and a group of associates have collected statistical data and case histories of homicide and suicide among various African peoples. The introductory and closing chapters by the editor theorize on the subject, and analyze its patterns. Women, it is found, indulge in murder and suicide almost entirely for domestic reasons; for men, the patterns also include status in society.

270. *Ethnographic survey of Africa* [series] Edited by Daryll Forde. London, International African Institute, 1950+

French series, *Monographies ethnologiques africaines*, published for the Institute by Presses universitaires de France, Paris.

Subseries are: Western Africa (English and French series); East Central Africa; West Central Africa; Belgian Congo (prepared with the cooperation of the Musée Royal du Congo Belge and published also in its series, *Monographies ethnographiques*); Southern Africa; Madagascar (a related French series).

The volumes in this series are generally considered the most comprehensive sources for information on the peoples of Africa, based on extensive research in published material as well as on original field studies. Each volume presents a concise summary of an African people or group of peoples, covering location, natural environment, economy, crafts, social structure, political organization, religious beliefs and cults. Each contains a bibliography and a specially drawn map. A number of the individual volumes are now out of print, and plans are afoot to make revisions in some of them before reprinting. The full list of surveys published in English or French in the various subseries is given in a list of its publications issued each year by the International African Institute. The individual volumes are cited in regional sections of the present bibliography.

271. FORTES, MEYER, and E. E. EVANS-PRITCHARD. *African political systems*. London, Published for the International Institute of African Languages & Cultures by the Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1940. xxiii, 301 p. maps, geneal. tables, diags. GN490.F6

A group of short surveys by prominent anthropologists, a number of the essays being taken from longer works by the same writers. Thus Max Gluckman, then director of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, analyzed the kingdom of the Zulu of South Africa, Dr. Isaac Schapera explained the political organization of the Ngwato of Bechuanaland, Dr. Audrey I. Richards the political system of the Bemba tribe of Northern Rhodesia, K. Oberg the kingdom of the Onkole in Uganda, S. F. Nadel the Kede, an emirate in Northern Nigeria, Günter Wagner the political organization of the Bantu of Kavirondo, Dr. Fortes the Tallensi of the Gold Coast, Dr. Evans-Pritchard the Nuer of the southern Sudan. The writers vary in treatment, some concentrating on traditional patterns, others on the changes made under European rule. The editors in the introduction explained that the peoples studied are representative of the major political groupings of Africa. The first group, the Zulu, Ngwato, Bemba, Banyankole and Kede, have centralized authority, administrative machinery and judicial institutions as primitive states. The second group are stateless societies, without centralized authority. All the peoples

treated except the Nilotic Nuer are predominantly Bantu or Negro.

272. GLUCKMAN, MAX. *Custom and conflict in Africa*. Glencoe, Ill., Free Press, 1956. 173 p. GN645.G55

Six speeches delivered on the Third Programme of BBC in 1955 by the former director of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute in Lusaka, now professor of social anthropology in the Victoria University of Manchester. His theme, illustrated by discussion of feuds, rebellions against authority, kinship systems, witchcraft, rituals that consist of lifting taboos, is that "Social life breeds conflict, and societies by their customary arrangements . . . accentuate conflicts. The conflicts in wider ranges compensate one another to produce social cohesion." He relates his arguments interestingly to English social life. His last speech, "The Bonds in the Colour-Bar," speculates on whether the tensions in South Africa will bring greater unity among Africans.

273. HOLAS, BOHUMIL. *L'homme noir d'Afrique*. Dakar, Institut français d'Afrique noire, 1951. 105 p. illus., 48 plates, map. (Initiations africaines, 8) GN645.H6

Bibliography: p. 89-101.

Treatise by a French Africanist which is in the nature of a general handbook of African anthropology. Dr. Holas began with a brief outline of human paleontology, physical anthropology, and anthropometry, and devoted the bulk of his text to systematic description of the principal ethnic groups of Africa south of the Sahara, specifying over 150 tribes. Many other scientific studies by this scholar, formerly an associate of IFAN and now Director of the Centre des Sciences Humaines in Abidjan, relate to French-speaking West Africa.

274. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN SEMINAR. 1st, Makerere College, 1959. *Social change in modern Africa*; studies presented and discussed. Edited by Aidan Southall. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1961. 337 p. HN777.I6 1959

Includes bibliographies.

The great increase in research on African contemporary social and cultural life has been accompanied by the establishment of a number of research centers and frequent assemblages held under the auspices of various organizations seeking to pool their insights. In the notable seminar of which the present volume is the report, leading scholars from most countries of Black



Africa took part. The introductory survey by the Director of the host Institute reviewed social change and demography norms and status symbols, small groups and social networks, kinship, tribalism and family anthropology, the position of women, and the stability of marriage. The special studies were on general themes: e.g., Professor M. Gluckman, "Anthropological Problems Arising from the African Industrial Revolution," and J. E. Goldthorp, "Educated Africans: Some Conceptual and Terminological Problems"; and papers relating to specific issues or areas: e.g., E. W. Ardener, "Social and Demographic Problems of the Southern Cameroons Plantation Area," and J. Rouch, "Second Generation Migrants in Ghana and the Ivory Coast."

275. JOHANNESBURG. PUBLIC LIBRARY. *African native tribes*; rules for the classification of works on African ethnology in the Strange Collection of Africana with an index of tribal names and their variants. Johannesburg, 1956. 142 l. Z697.E8J6

Handbook giving classification numbers (Dewey) used in the collection. Prefatory leaves d, e, and f give sources, and leaves ii-xxvii the geographic class numbers. Then on 142 leaves are listed the African tribes, in alphabetical arrangement, followed by geographic numbers—e.g., aBulu (6755), which refers back to p. xiii, and locates the tribe in the Belgian Congo, Eastern Province. There are about 13,000 names of tribes, including variant names.

276. MALINOWSKI, BRONISLAW. *The dynamics of culture change*; an inquiry into race relations in Africa. Edited, with a new introd., by Phyllis M. Kaberry. New Haven, Yale University Press, 1961. 171 p. (A Yale paper-bound, Y-47) GN645.M3 1961

Originally published in 1945.

This posthumous work by one of the most famous of modern anthropologists, edited by a former student, embodies the central core of Malinowski's doctrine of practical anthropology. His functional approach to the study of native cultures as they undergo change in contact with Western civilization is explained in the first chapter, "New Tasks of Anthropology." Part 1 further examines the theoretical and historical aspects of cultural change and the scientific principles and instruments for its analysis. Examples are drawn largely from the culture of Bantu Africa (South and East Africa). Part 2 considers specific problems of the Bantu, warfare, native diet, land problems, indi-

rect rule. The new edition was reviewed by E. P. Skinner in *Africa Report*, February 1962.

277. MEEK, CHARLES KINGSLEY. *Land law and custom in the colonies*. With an introd. by Lord Hailey. 2d ed. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1949. xxvi, 337 p. DLC-LL

A comprehensive and scholarly study by a former administrative officer in Nigeria, later with the Institute of Colonial Studies at Oxford. In this survey of land policies of the (former) British empire as a whole, he explores thoroughly in terms of ethnology and legislation native concepts of communal ownership as they affect and are affected by contact with the West. About a third of the book is devoted to tenure of agricultural lands and tribal customs in the then British African colonies. Opposite the title-page Dr. Meek quotes the saying of a Nigerian chief: "I conceive that the land belongs to a vast family of whom many are dead, few are living, and countless numbers are still unborn."

278. MIDDLETON, JOHN, and DAVID TAIT, eds. *Tribes without rulers*; studies in African segmentary systems. London, Routledge & Paul, 1958. 234 p. illus. GN490.M5

Includes bibliographies.

A set of papers on the social structures of six representative African societies, by young anthropologists. Planned as a successor to the 1940 volume edited by Fortes and Evans-Pritchard (no. 271), the new studies take into account basic assumptions on the classification of African political systems made through research done since that time. The introduction by the two editors explains these new classificatory concepts. The societies studied are the Tiv, by Laura Bohannan, the Mandari of the Southern Sudan, by Jean Buxton, the Western Dinka, by Godfrey Lienhardt, the Bwamba, by Edward Winter, the Konkomba, by David Tait (who died before publication of the work, so that it is in a sense a memorial to him), and the last, on the Lugbara of the Nile-Congo divide, by John Middleton.

279. MURDOCK, GEORGE P. *Africa: its peoples and their culture history*. New York, McGraw-Hill, 1959. xiii, 456 p. illus., maps. DT14.M8

Includes bibliographies.

A compendium of African ethnological data. In the first few chapters Professor Murdock summarizes the general topics of geography, race, language, economy, society, government, and history for the whole

continent, then follows with systematic surveys by cultural areas. Each regional section begins with a numbered list of the tribes in groups of essentially identical language and culture, and each chapter ends with a selective reading list. The author explains in his introduction that his process of selection necessitated "a limited range of subject matter," excluding such fields as religion, art, law, etc., and limiting the history to exclude prehistory and the present age. "In general, the book aims to present a cultural-historical base line to aid in the understanding of more recent events and ongoing trends." The work ends with an index of about 5,000 tribal names, and, in a pocket inside the back cover, a large folded map of the chief culture areas.

280. OTTENBERG, SIMON, and PHOEBE OTTENBERG, eds. *Cultures and societies of Africa*. With a general introd., commentaries, and notes. New York, Random House. 1960. 614 p. plates. GN645.O75

Bibliography: p. 565-598.

Selections chosen to fill a need for a collection of readings on Africa suitable for use in courses in anthropology in American universities. The articles, all by well-known specialists, and dating from 1940 to the present, follow an introductory survey of Africa and its peoples by the editors, who teach at the University of Washington. There are six groups of papers, some general, some relating to individual areas or tribes: "People and Environment," "Social Groupings," "Authority and Government," "Values, Religion and Aesthetics," "Culture Contact and Change." Most of the essays are followed by references for further reading, and there is a long classified bibliography.

281. PEDRALS, DENIS-PIERRE DE. *Manuel scientifique de l'Afrique noire*. Paris, Payot, 1949. 202 p. illus. (Bibliothèque scientifique) GN645.P25

A survey of African anthropology, prehistory, archaeology, cultures and arts, political and social institutions, and pre-European history, by a leading French specialist who has combined ethnological research with practical experience as a colonial administrator. Among M. de Pedrals' other notable studies are two more in this same series, *Archéologie de l'Afrique noire* (Paris, 1950. 233 p.) and *La Vie sexuelle en Afrique noire* (Paris, 1950. 188 p.) The term *l'Afrique noire* is for this writer essentially synonymous with sub-Saharan Africa.

282. RADCLIFFE-BROWN, ALFRED R., and DARYLL FORDE, eds. *African systems of kinship and marriage*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1950. 399 p. illus., maps. GN480.R3

Reprint in paperback edition, 1960.

Symposium by nine eminent anthropologists who illustrate through study of a representative selection of native tribes in Africa south of the Sahara the main varieties of kinship organization. The long introduction by Professor Radcliffe-Brown is a definitive essay on existing knowledge and theory regarding kinship systems.

283. SELIGMAN, CHARLES G. *Races of Africa*. 3d ed. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1957. 236 p. illus. (The Home university library of modern knowledge, 144) DT15.S45 1957

The late Dr. Seligman, Professor of Ethnology at the University of London, first prepared this work in 1930 as a basic primer for a wide public audience. In the little volume he brought together the main findings of ethnologists and physical anthropologists, analyzing them for the general reader. His chief criteria of race are physical—color of skin, quality of hair, stature, head shape, character of face, and shape of nose. Into his racial divisions he fitted an interesting account of the characteristics, customs, beliefs, and institutions of many tribes. His racial groupings have been contested by various experts and, in view of current theories, it is remarkable that the groupings were retained in the new edition. This contains many revisions of data, showing advances in knowledge "due largely to the work of Professor Seligman's own students. [It is] an index of his scholarship and expertise in all fields of authorship that what he could do almost single-handed has now required the collaboration of many" (Preface, September 1956). A new reading list with references by chapters includes writings into 1956.

284. SMITH, EDWIN W. *The golden stool; some aspects of the conflict of cultures in Africa*. 2d ed. London, Holborn, 1927. 328 p. DT31.S6 1927

This book by a noted missionary and anthropologist is referred to by later writers as a classic study of the African position in relation to the white man. The title is taken from the first story in the book, that of the Golden Stool of Ashanti, which was considered to contain the soul of the nation. The British, at that time lacking understanding of its psychological signifi-



cance, claimed the Stool as a symbol of their power, and brought about wars which were ended only when the Anthropological Officer, Captain Rattray, studied and found out what it meant to the Ashanti; his study marked a turning point in the European policy of dealing with the African.

285. WESTERMANN, DIEDRICH. *The African to-day and to-morrow*. 3d ed. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1949. 174 p. map. (Colonial bookshelf)

GN645.W4 1949

Written originally in German, but first published in English. Bibliography: p. 167–168.

Of this short anthropological study of the African by the professor of African linguistics (see no. 310–312) and former co-Director of the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures, the editor of *Africa* wrote in an obituary editorial (October 1956): “He [Westermann] had a deep and informed concern for the social and moral problems arising from the impact of Western influences on African peoples and on these he wrote with wide knowledge and remarkable sympathy.” The book, first published in 1934, is considered a landmark in the introduction of presentday Africa. Westermann’s conclusion stresses the responsibility of the native African leaders: “in the last resort, the fate of the African depends not on the will of the white man but upon what the African himself makes of himself.”

Professor Westermann’s co-Director when the Institute (now the International African Institute) was founded in 1926 was the French ethnologist Maurice Delafosse. Delafosse died in the same year, and was succeeded in this post by Henri Labouret. Both of these scholars have contributed works comparable to the above as clear syntheses of the various branches of anthropology—linguistics, history, ethnology: Delafosse’s *Les Noirs de l’Afrique* (1921) and *Civilisations négro-africaines* (1925), which were published together in English translation under the title, *Negroes of Africa* (Washington, The Associated Publishers, 1931. 313 p.); and Labouret’s *Histoire des noirs d’Afrique* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1946. 127 p. “Que sais-je?”).

## THE SUPERNATURAL

286. ELLENBERGER, VICTOR. *Afrique avec cette peur venue du fond des âges: sorcellerie, initiation, exorcisme*. Paris, Livre contemporain, 1958. 255 p. illus. (Collection L’Aventure du passé)

GN475.8.E5

By a Protestant missionary with over thirty years’ experience in Africa. This sociological study of magic

practices, witch doctors, sorcerers, etc., whose influence outweighs the “mission civilisatrice” of European administrators, clergy, and doctors, is written in the form of case histories. It includes a plea for more tolerant attempts at understanding the African mind.

287. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *African worlds; studies in the cosmological ideas and social values of African peoples*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1954. xvii, 243 p. Reprint, 1960. DT15.I5

This volume, one of the best known works on African religion, brings together a set of concise studies of the relationship of religious myth and social practice as exemplified by typical African peoples. The introduction by Professor Forde, Director of the Institute, explains the general frame of reference—analysis of the world outlook of each people as expressed in beliefs, ritual, and secular practice. The nine separate essays are by distinguished ethnologists and social anthropologists who have studied the societies of which they write at firsthand. All are written to interest the lay reader and are provided with scholarly footnotes and reading lists.

288. JOSET, PAUL E. *Les sociétés secrètes des hommes-léopards en Afrique noire*. Paris, Payot, 1955. 276 p. illus. (Bibliothèque historique)

GN495.2.J6

In a style which because of its subject matter can hardly fail to seem sensational, the author of this study of the notorious “leopard-men” societies examined records of trials and other evidence, analyzing the basis of the secret society in religion and magic, its political implications, ritual practices, and significances of cannibalism. A long bibliography of source materials is given on pages 260–276. M. Joset is a former colonial administrator from the Belgian Congo.

289. PARRINDER, EDWARD G. *African traditional religion*. [2d rev. ed.] London, S.P.C.K., 1962. 156 p. (Seraph)

BL2400.P37 1962

First published in Hutchinson’s University Library; World Religions in 1954.

Dr. Parrinder here offers a general account of the old beliefs of the “incurably religious” people of Africa which are still held by the majority of Africans and underlie the veneer of new faiths accepted by the educated. He treats his subject on a comparative basis, sketching broad lines of religion that are similar in many parts of the continent. As in all other great religions, he says, the African world is “a spiritual arena, in which is seen the interplay of psychic forces.”

An interesting study, *Witchcraft*, by Dr. Parrinder, was brought out by Penguin Books, Harmondsworth, in 1950 (208 p. Pelican Books, A409; new ed., 1963). In it he compares African witchcraft to the witch lore of Europe, finding deep similarities.

In *Neues Afrika* of July 1961 there is an account of a Colloquium held by the Société Africaine de Culture (Présence Africaine group) at Abidjan, April 5–12, 1961, the subject of which was the relation of religion to the cultural expression of the African personality.

290. SMITH, EDWIN W., ed. *African ideas of God, a symposium*. London, Edinburgh House Press, 1961. 208 p. map. (2d ed. revised, recited by E. G. Parrinder.) BL2400.S58

The introductory essay by the late Dr. Smith, a survey of the general subject, is followed by a group of analyses of the religious beliefs of the tribes with which the writers have worked. The contributors are well-known missionary anthropologists of South-West Africa, the Belgian Congo, East and West Africa. The essay on the Luo peoples of Uganda is by H. B. Thomas, formerly of the Civil Service, the only layman of the group. The peoples studied are Bantu and Negro tribes (except Bushmen) and the writing is non-academic. 1st edition published in 1950.

Dr. Smith has himself written extensively on this subject. There might be noted his lecture series, *The Secret of the African* (London, Student Christian Movement Press, 1929. 142 p.), an analysis of the basis of African religion, its relation to magic, spiritism, the awareness of God of the African as it varies in South, Central, and West Africa, and the strength and weakness of African religion. In 1936 his *African Beliefs and Christian Faith* (London, United Society for Christian Literature. 192 p.), an introduction to theology for African students of the ministry, had as its first part a simply-phrased analysis of "Belief in God among the Africans."

291. TEMPELS, PLACIDE. *Bantu philosophy*. Translated into English from La philosophie bantoe, the French version by A. Rubbens of Fr. Tempels' original work. Colin King, translator. Paris, Présence africaine, 1959. 123 p. illus. (Collection Présence africaine)

GN657.B2T414

First French ed., 1949.

This celebrated monograph by a Catholic missionary priest in the Belgian Congo is described as a "revolutionary" study of the soul of the Bantu, trying to prove that his religious creed is not sheer incoherent animism, but based on a solidly built set of abstract ideas which constitutes a complete philosophical system. Father Tempels argued that a new approach is needed for the European missionaries and ethnologists if their "mission civilisatrice" is to produce évolués

"in the noble sense of the word"—something which the civilization of money values has failed to do. The brochure is well presented, with dramatic full-page plates of Bantu carving. The first edition, in Dutch, was published in Antwerp in 1946.

292. YOUNG, T. CULLEN. *African ways and wisdom; a contribution towards understanding*. London, United Society for Christian Literature, 1937. 144 p. BV3530.Y6

The writer was known in missionary fields as an anthropologist and leader in work for education of the African. In this book he analyzed interestingly Bantu psychology and religious thought, specially for the benefit of missionaries who are to work with the natives and may be puzzled by how to approach animism and black magic, differing concepts of marriage, the place of the medicine man, the African idea of justice, African etiquette and behavior patterns.

Dr. Young was a vigorous opponent of the "color line" in relations between African and European. In 1945 he published an ardent denouncement of British race discrimination in Africa and India, *Herrenvolk and Sahib-log* (London, Lutterworth Press).

## LINGUISTICS

### Bibliography

*Note:* Bibliographical sources for the study of African languages and linguistics are numerous and extensive, particularly for the early period, when missionaries and colonial officers making contacts for the first time with unstudied tribes, were prolific in their written attempts at grammar and vocabularies, and in their translations of Scripture. Long bibliographies are included in such important linguistic studies as Cust's in 1883, or Sir H. H. Johnston's in 1919. *The Catalogue of Bantu, Khoisan and Malagasy in the Strange Collection of Africana* in the Johannesburg Public Library (edited by Anna H. Smith, Johannesburg, 1942. 232 p.) contains 1671 numbered entries. One regional section alone of the bibliography compiled in 1937 by Russian linguists runs to over 30 pages.

Among the most useful sources are the various publications of the International African Institute, which was founded in 1926 under the name of International Institute of African Languages and Cultures. (Use of the shorter name was authorized by the Executive Council in 1939, but it did not appear on the title-page of *Africa* until 1947.) The quarterlies, *Africa* and *African Abstracts*, are in part or whole bibliographical, with language a major concern. The Africa Bibliography Series based on the bibliographical card index of the Institute has Linguistics as one of its three subject classifications. The volumes of the Handbook of African Languages series contain long bibliographies of the languages covered, and the references in a good many of the volumes of the Ethnographic Survey of Africa include linguistics.

Other scholarly journals which, both in articles and in bibliographical sections, count linguistics among their pri-



mary interests are: *African Studies* (formerly *Bantu Studies*, published at the University of the Witwatersrand); *Afrika und Übersee: Sprachen, Kulturen*; the *Journal of the Société des Africanistes* (Paris, 1931+); *Zaire*, (formerly *Congo*, Bruxelles, 1920-60).

A notable regional institution devoted to language studies is the East African Swahili Committee, Makerere College, Kampala, Uganda. One of its publications is *A Linguistic Bibliography of East Africa*, by W. H. Whiteley and A. E. Gutkind (Kampala, 1954. 62 l., 2 supplements; revised edition, 1958). Such regional bodies as the East African Literature Bureau and the Bureau of Ghana Languages, which are publishing texts in the vernacular in increasing numbers, issue occasional lists of their stock. Lists from government information services include their publications in the vernacular. The current bibliography, *Nigerian Publications*, has a separate listing of works in African languages, as does also the South African bibliography, *Africana Nova*.

293. *African language studies*. No. 1+ Edited by Malcolm Guthrie. London, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, 1960+ annual. DLC

The first number of this significant new series contains thirteen articles on the structure of African languages by leading scholars. Second and third numbers have come out in 1961 and 1962.

294. АКАДЕМИЯ НАУК СССР. Институт языков и мышления. *Trudy . . . t.x. Africana*. Moskva, 1937. 198 p. PL 8005.A5

Transactions of the Section of African languages of the Marr Institute of Language and Mentality, t. 9.

Pt. III. Section 1. The South-Eastern Bantu.

Includes papers, some by Western authors; book reviews, long "Bibliography of African languages," ed. by I. L. Sneguireff and N. V. Yushmanov (p. 163-196), of books received by Marr Institute.

295. COLE, DESMOND T. "African linguistic studies, 1943-1960." *African studies* (Johannesburg), v. 19, no. 4, 1960: 219-229. DT751.A4, v. 19

A valuable bibliographical essay, offering comparative analysis of the most important modern works on classification of African languages and area studies, particularly of the Bantu area.

296. CUST, ROBERT NEEDHAM. *A sketch of the modern languages of Africa*. Accompanied by a language map. London, Trübner, 1883. 2 v. 30 ports. maps. (Trübner's oriental series) PL8005.C8

The first, and for many years the only, overall study in English of African languages. The writer followed the classification of African languages made by the

Viennese philologist and ethnologist, Friedrich Wilhelm Müller (*Ethnographie générale*, 1873) into six divisions: the Semitic family, the Hamitic group, Nuba-Fula group, Negro group, Bantu family, Hottentot-Bushman group. Cust's two-volume work describes the great variety of source material already available and locates the most reliably identifiable languages on a map which forms the first appendix. Other appendixes include a 50-page "Bibliographical Table of Languages, Dialects, Localities, and Authorities" (covering 438 languages and 151 dialects), a list of translations of the Bible, and various indexes of languages and dialects, authors quoted, etc.

297. DOKE, CLEMENT M. *Bantu*; modern grammatical, phonetical, and lexicographical studies since 1860. London, Published for the International African Institute by P. Lund, Humphries, 1945. 119 p. Z7106.D6

298. ———. *Bantu linguistic terminology*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1935. 237 p. PL8025.D6

Professor Doke, foremost authority on Bantu languages, came to South Africa as a missionary in 1903, and in 1923 was appointed to the University of the Witwatersrand, where he held the chair of Bantu Philology until his retirement. From 1931-53 he was joint editor of the journal *African Studies* (until 1941, *Bantu Studies*). The two works listed above are concerned with Bantu linguistics; his classification of Bantu languages into seven zones, four subzones and subsidiary groups and dialect clusters is presented tentatively and piecemeal in the firstnamed, which is essentially a bibliographical study. It is described by Cole in his article on "African Linguistic Studies" (no. 295). Professor Doke's other works include grammars, vocabularies, and studies of Lamba, Zulu, Shona, Sesuto, and other southern Bantu languages. He is author of the volume on *The Southern Bantu Languages* in the International African Institute series, *Handbook of African Languages* (1954, 262 p.) for which his 1945 bibliography, *Bantu*, is a preliminary. His introductory chapter in the lastnamed survey, "The History and Growth of Knowledge concerning the Southern Bantu Languages," records the great names in this field. It is expanded in a long article, "The Growth of Comparative Bantu Philology," in *African Studies* (v. 19, no. 4, 1960: p. 193-218; reprint with additions from an earlier article, *African Studies*, v. 2, no. 1, 1943).

299. GREENBERG, JOSEPH H. *Studies in African linguistic classification*. Reprinted from the Southwestern Journal of Anthropology for the Language and Communication Research Center, Columbia University and the Program of African Studies, Northwestern University. New Haven, Compass Pub. Co., 1955. 116 p. maps. PL8005.G7 1955

In the original seven papers published in the *Southwestern Journal of Anthropology* in 1949–50 Professor Greenberg offered an entirely new classification of African languages, based not on typological criteria but on rigorous lexical and morphological comparison. His terms were made more explicit in an eighth paper published in 1954 (SJA, v. 10, no. 4). The first tabulation offered six major genetic language families and ten lesser ones. In 1954 the author revised the list, reducing the number of independent families to twelve. These eight papers make up the reprint of 1955. A summarization by Professor William E. Welmers ("Note on the Classification of African Languages," *The Linguistic Reporter*, v. 1, no. 2, May 1959; supplement no. 1) indicates that Greenberg is now inclined to reduce his families to four which Welmers labels Afro-Asiatic, Sahara-Savannah, Niger-Congo, Macro-Khoisan. According to Cole (no. 295) "there can be no denying the fact that [Greenberg's] is the first attempt at a pan-African classification on genetic principles and that as a genetic classification it will prevail in its essentials, if not in all minute detail." A new work by Professor Greenberg (not yet available for examination) is *The Languages of Africa*, published as Part 2 of the *International Journal of American Linguistics*, v. 29, no. 1 (Bloomington, Indiana University, 1963. 171 p. Indiana University. Research Center in Anthropology, Folklore, and Linguistics. Publication, 25).

300. GUTHRIE, MALCOLM. *The classification of the Bantu languages*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1948. 91 p. map. PL8025.G8

Inventory and classification of Bantu languages and dialects, much of it based on data gathered by Dr. Guthrie himself in little-known areas. This was expanded in his volume on *The Bantu Languages of Western Equatorial Africa* in the Handbook of African Languages series (below). For comment on both see article by Cole, cited above.

301. *Handbook of African languages* [series] London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1948+

This series was planned "to provide a systematic and critical study of the incidence, distribution and inter-relations of the different African languages and dialects, as well as of the numbers speaking the several languages and dialects, and the extent of literacy among these different groups." It includes bibliographies of publications relating to the various language groups—linguistic studies, grammars, dictionaries, and textbooks. The following handbooks have been published:

- La Langue berbère, by André Basset. 1962. 71 p. map, diagrams. PJ2343.B35  
 Languages of West Africa, by D. Westermann and M. A. Bryan. 1952. 201 p. map. PL8017.W43  
 The Non-Bantu languages of North-Eastern Africa, by A. N. Tucker and M. A. Bryan. 1956. 228 p. PL8016.T8  
 The Bantu languages of Africa, comp. by M. A. Bryan. 1959. 170 p. map. PL8025.B7  
 The Classification of the Bantu languages, by Malcolm Guthrie. 1948. 91 p. map. PL8025.G8  
 The Bantu languages of Western Equatorial Africa, by Malcolm Guthrie. 1953. 100 p. map. PL8025.G79  
 The Southern Bantu languages, by Clement M. Doke. 1954. 302 p. map. PL8025.D62  
 Linguistic survey of the Northern Bantu borderland, vol. 1, by A. Jacquot, I. Richardson, G. van Bulck, Peter Hackett, A. N. Tucker, and M. A. Bryan. 1956. 146 p. maps. PL8025.I5, v. 1  
 ———, v. 2, by Irvine Richardson. 1956. 95 p. PL8025.I5, v. 2  
 ———, v. 3, by G. van Bulck. PL8025.I5, v. 3  
 ———, v. 4, by A. N. Tucker and M. A. Bryan. 1957. 89 p. maps. PL8025.I5, v. 4

302. HOMBURGER, LILIAS. *The Negro-African languages*. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1949. 275 p. PL8005.H613

The author, Director of African Linguistic Studies at the École Pratique des Hautes Études (Sorbonne, Paris), has here revised a book originally published in 1941. It is a study of various aspects of African language structure, with an historical sketch of African linguistic studies. Her conclusion, not shared by most African language specialists, is that Negro-African languages "represent the evolution of dialectal forms of Egyptian or of Coptic."

A new revised edition with an added chapter on the "Sindo-African," was published by Payot in Paris in 1957 (*Les Langues négro-africaines et les peuples qui les parlent*. 343 p. Bibliothèque scientifique).



303. JOHNSTON, Sir HARRY H. *A comparative study of the Bantu and semi-Bantu languages*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1919–22. 2 v.

PL8025.J6

In this impressive work, still one of the landmarks of African linguistic studies, the famous explorer and writer gave illustrative vocabularies of over 200 languages and dialects. The first volume includes an annotated bibliography of his sources (p. 784–815).

304. *Journal of African languages*. v. 1, pt. 1+ 1962+ London, Macmillan.

DLC

A scholarly linguistic journal sponsored jointly by Michigan State University and the School of Oriental and African Studies of the University of London. The editor is Professor Jack Berry of the latter institution, and the roll of assistant editors and editorial consultants includes leading philologists of Europe, the United States, and Africa. Three numbers appeared in 1962, each carrying from five to eight papers of high professional level.

305. KOELLE, SIGISMUND WILHELM. *Polyglotta Africana*, or A comparative vocabulary of nearly 300 words and phrases in more than 100 African languages. London, Church Missionary House, 1854. 24, 188 p., map.

NN

The first major effort to transcribe evidence from a maximum variety of African languages. In Sierra Leone, Koelle transcribed a list of 283 words and phrases in 156 languages spoken by freed slaves who had settled there. He performed this task at the age of 30 in a period of six months. His map, made up from information laboriously elicited from illiterate informants, is astonishingly accurate. He grouped most of the languages into small groups of rather obviously related languages, but did not attempt an overall classification.

306. MEINHOF, CARL. *An introduction to the study of African languages*, trans. by Alice Werner. London, Dent; New York, Dutton, 1915. 169 p.

PL8005.M4

Professor Meinhof, of the Kolonial-Institut in Hamburg, was one of Europe's foremost authorities on African languages. J. Lukas in an obituary article in the journal founded and edited by Meinhof, *Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen* (now *Afrika und Übersee*), gave a forty-page list of his writings—including book reviews—on African languages, religion, etc. The book named above is largely concerned with phonetics. It had been preceded by, among many

other writings, two major studies of Bantu languages, *Grundriss einer Lautlehre der Bantusprachen* . . . (1899; 2d ed., Berlin, D. Reimer, 1910. 340 p.; English translation by N. J. v. Warmelo, *Introduction to the Phonology of the Bantu Languages*, with revision by the author and Dr. Alice Werner, Berlin, 1922), and *Grundzüge einer vergleichenden Grammatik der Bantusprachen* (Berlin, D. Reimer, 1906). Other notable books were *Die Sprachen der Hamiten* (Hamburg, Friederichsen, 1912. 256 p.), and three volumes in the series *Deutsche Kolonialsprachen*, published by Reimer in Berlin, *Die Sprache der Herero in Deutsch-Sudwest-Afrika* (Bd. 1, 1909, 1928. 114 p.; new ed., 1937, 118 p.), *Die Sprache der Suaheli in Deutsch-Ostafrika* (Bd. 2 1910, 1928, 109 p. 3d and 4th ed., 1940–41. 116 p.), and *Die Sprache der Duala in Kamerun* (Bd. 4, 1912. 119 p.).

307. WELMERS, WILLIAM E., and RUTH C. SLOAN. *A preliminary survey of existing resources for training in African languages and linguistics*, prepared for Georgetown University's Institute of Languages and Linguistics. Washington, Georgetown University Press, 1957. 145 p.

PL8004.W4

This study, published as a mimeographed pamphlet, was based on a questionnaire sent out to missionaries by Professor Welmers, who at that time was teaching linguistics at the Kennedy School of Missions, Hartford Seminary Foundation (in 1962 at UCLA). A brief summary is followed by tabular presentation of the data obtained, then by annexes which survey the major languages of Africa, and programs for training in these languages in Europe, Africa, the U.S.S.R., and the United States, notes on linguistics and orthographies, a bibliography of materials used by mission stations, and a directory of individual missionaries engaged in linguistic work. Another pamphlet issued by Dr. Welmers on *African Language Programs: Problems and Proposals* (Los Angeles, March 1961. 42 p.), appeared as part of a Report of the Conference on Neglected Languages, Modern Language Association. Here he names and discusses linguistic problems relating to 61 African languages and includes a useful selected bibliography of pedagogical materials for these languages.

A National Conference on the Teaching of African Languages and Area Studies was held at Georgetown University, Washington, D.C., in March 1960, under the chairmanship of Leon E. Dostert. The papers on language teaching and research in America and elsewhere, by William E. Welmers, Joseph H. Greenberg, K. L. Pike, Wolf Leslau, and Mark Hanna Watkins among American scholars, and a number of

visiting experts, were published in a brochure edited by John G. Brodie (Washington, D.C., 63 p.).

A program of African language studies is being carried on by the Foreign Service Institute in Washington. It is planned to comprise 11 languages of sub-Saharan Africa, plus Amharic. Textbooks for general use in a Basic Course Series are being prepared for publication by the U.S. Government Printing Office. Up to spring 1963 there have been published volumes for Igbo (1962. 498 p.), Swahili (1963. 560 p.), and Twi (1963. 224 p.). Other volumes to appear during the next year or two will be for Yoruba, Hausa, Lingala, Kituba, Rundi, Bambara, Fula, and More.

308. WERNER, ALICE. *The language-families of Africa*. 2d ed. London, K. Paul, Trench, Trübner, 1925. 151 p. map, tables.

PL8005.W4 1925

309. ——— *Structure and relationship of African languages*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1930. 61 p.

PL8005.W45

Simple popularizations of Westermann's five-way division of African languages (Semitic, Hamitic, Negro, Bantu, Hottentot-Bushman).

310. WESTERMANN, DIEDRICH. *Die Sudansprachen, eine sprachvergleichende Studie*. Hamburg, L. Friederichsen, 1911. 222 p. map. (Abhandlungen des Hamburgischen Kolonialinstituts. Bd. 3)

PL8027.W4

311. ——— *Die westlichen Sudansprachen und ihre Beziehungen zum Bantu*. Berlin, de Gruyter, 1927. 313 p. (Beiheft zu den Mitteilungen des Seminars für orientalische Sprachen, Jahrg. 29)

PL8021.S8W4

312. ——— "Les langues et l'éducation." In Baumann, Hermann, and D. Westermann. *Les peuples et les civilisations de l'Afrique*, suivi de *Les langues et l'éducation*; traduction française par L. Homburger. Paris, Payot, 1948. 605 p. (Bibliothèque scientifique)

DT14.B38

These three books are mentioned as major contributions to the general field of African linguistics by the famous German scholar who was "the outstanding figure in the development of African linguistic studies in this century" (*Africa*, obituary note, Oct. 1956). Westermann's first of many studies of individual languages was a Dictionary of the Ewe Language, published in 1905 while he was a missionary in Togoland (2d ed., Berlin, de Gruyter, 1961). From 1909 he was Director of the Seminar for Oriental Languages at the University of Berlin; from 1926 he was co-Director of the International Institute of African Languages and

Cultures (now the International African Institute), with which he was associated until his death. It was he who proposed the Institute's Ethnographic Survey and the Handbook of African Language series. In his early years Westermann followed a classification of African languages into five families: Semitic, Hamitic, Sudanic, Bantu, Hottentot-Bushman. In 1927 he discarded his earlier (1911) effort to establish a single Sudanic family from the Atlantic to the Nile, and isolated a West Sudanic group with possible relations to Bantu. In 1952 he accepted the basic premises of Greenberg's reclassification, though with some reservations in manner of statement ("African Linguistic Classification," *Africa*, v. 22, July 1952, p. 250-256).

313. WESTERMANN, DIEDRICH, and IDA C. WARD. *Practical phonetics for students of African languages*. London, Published for the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures by Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1935. 227 p. illus.

PL8007.W4

This book has been for many years a basic text of students of African languages. The authors begin with a consideration of the difficulties of learning a new language and explain phonetic alphabets and orthography, the organs of speech, classification of vowel and consonant sounds, and phonemes. Then they turn to the specifically African sounds, classifying the various types of vowels and consonants and explaining syllables, stresses, etc. Over 50 pages are given to phonetic summaries of 10 languages. There is a subject index, and an index of about 70 languages, broken down by subject.

A pamphlet guide, *A Practical Orthography of African Languages*, issued by the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures (now International African Institute) as its Memorandum 1 in 1927 (16 p.), and revised in 1930, set down the standard phonetic system advocated by the Institute. Another of the Memoranda Series (no. 14, 1937), *Practical Suggestions for Learning an African Language in the Field*, by Ida C. Ward, which was issued as a supplement to *Africa*, vol. 10, no. 2, has been reprinted by the Institute (1960. 39 p.).

## ARTS AND CULTURE

### Bibliography

314. AFRICAN STUDIES BULLETIN. *Arts, human behavior, and Africa*. New York, African Studies Association, 1962. 70 p. (*Its* v. 5, no. 2, May 1962)

DLC

Special issue of the bulletin of the African Studies Association, devoted to essays on various aspects of the



arts in Africa, followed by helpful selected bibliographies. The latter relate to music (by Alan P. Merriam: p. 35–40), art (by Roy Sieber: p. 40–42); oral literature, (by Daniel J. Crowley: p. 43–44); dance (by Nadia Chilkovsky: p. 45–47); architecture (by Douglas Fraser: p. 47–49); theater and drama (by Herbert L. Shore: p. 49–53); “Fiction by African authors: a preliminary checklist” (by Dorothy B. Porter: p. 54–66).

315. *African folktales & sculpture*. Folktales selected and edited by Paul Radin, with the collaboration of Elinore Marvel. Introd. to the tales by Paul Radin. Sculpture selected with an introd. by James Johnson Sweeney. New York, Pantheon Books, 1952. xxi, 355 p. plates, map. (Bollingen series, 32)

GR350.A35

A luxurious publication, in which a fine selection of folktales from many parts of Africa (p. 25–320) is followed by an album of reproductions of African sculpture. The tales, with an introduction by the anthropologist Paul Radin, are in four groups: “The Universe and Its Beginnings”; “The Animal and His World”; “The Realm of Man”; and “Man and His Fate.” They are followed by an epilogue, list of sources, and glossary. The striking full-page plates are preceded by an introductory essay by James Johnson Sweeney, who had directed the exhibition of African Negro Art at the Museum of Modern Art in New York in 1935.

A Russian collection of African folklore is edited by the leading ethnologist, D. A. Ol'derogge: *Skazki narodov Afriki* [Tales of the African Peoples] (Moscow, State Publishing House for Artistic Literature, 1959. 319 p. illus). It is in regional arrangement, with subdivision by tribes, and sparsely illustrated with line drawings.

316. *L'Art nègre*. Paris, Éditions du Seuil, 1951. 254 p. illus. (Présence africaine, 10–11)

GN645.P74, no. 10–11

This combined special number of the journal of French-speaking African intellectuals contains a group of articles by European specialists in African anthropology, sociology, and art. Alioune Diop, editor of *Présence africaine*, who writes the introduction, is touched by “so much European generosity,” but does not admit that the White man can understand the Black man’s soul. The essays, by the sociologists Georges Balandier and Jacques Howlett, the anthropologists Marcel Griaule, Henri Labachery, Denise Paulme, the art historian William Fagg, and others,

attempt to define “Points of View,” “Ancient Art,” and certain particular aspects—fetish gold, Ashanti gold weights, Oguwe masks, etc. As an appendix there is printed an English translation (by S. W. Allen) of a celebrated essay on negritude by Jean-Paul Sartre, “Black Orpheus,” which had been written in 1948 as preface to L. Sédar Senghor’s *Anthologie de la nouvelle poésie nègre et malgache de langue française* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France). The book contains about 150 photographs and drawings exemplifying African art.

317. ELISOFFON, ELIOT. *The sculpture of Africa*; 405 photographs. Text by William Fagg. Pref. by Ralph Linton. Design by Bernard Quint. New York, Praeger, 1958. 256 p. illus. (Books that matter) NB1080.E57

Bibliographical notes: p. 252–254.

The distinguished folio is among the notable art albums of recent years. Mr. Elisoffon, who made the plates, is a Research Fellow in Primitive Art at Harvard University. His 405 photographs, a large proportion of them full-page reproductions, are arranged in 3 groups according to the regions from which they come: Western Sudan, Guinea Coast, and the Congo. Each group is preceded by a short interpretive essay—stated not to be “encyclopaedic”—by Mr. William Fagg, Assistant Keeper of the Department of Ethnography of the British Museum. The introduction, a significant discussion of primitive art, is by the late Professor Ralph Linton of the Department of Anthropology of Harvard University.

318. GRIAULE, MARCEL. *Folk art of black Africa*. Photos. by Emmanuel Sougez. Translated from the French by Michael Heron. Paris, Éditions du Chêne; New York, Tudor Pub. Co., 1950. 126 p. illus. (part col.) (The World’s art) N7380.G714 1950

Published also under title: *Arts of the African native*.

This penetrating essay by a prominent French Africanist, accompanying a selection of 10 plates of African art from the Musée de l’Homme in Paris, was published in French in 1947. The English translation is a significant addition to the studies of African anthropology through art forms.

319. GUERNIER, EUGÈNE L. *L’apport de l’Afrique à la pensée humaine*. Paris, Payot, 1952. 245 p. (Bibliothèque historique) CB197.G8

Study of the African contribution to world culture, including a long chapter on the arts and music of Negro Africa, though most of the text is concerned

with ancient Egypt and classical and medieval Barbary, on which the writer is an authority.

320. HIMMELHEBER, HANS. *Negerkunst und Negerkünstler*. Mit Ergebnissen von sechs Afrika-Expeditionen des Verfassers. Braunschweig, Klinckschardt & Biermann, 1960. 436 p. illus. (Bibliothek für Kunst- und Antiquitätenfreunde, Bd. 40) N7380.H5

Dr. Himmelheber, an ethnologist and physician, has made six expeditions in Africa, his particular interest being to examine for himself works of art and the identity of artists. The 386 illustrations are in large part his own photographs *in situ*. He looks first at the forms of art and the character, techniques, and style of the artists, then turns to a detailed survey of sculpture by regions and tribes. His bibliography, pages 415-527, is arranged in the same way.

A new German work, *Afrikanische Kunst*, by Boris de Rachewiltz (Stuttgart, Artemis-Verlag, 1961. 245 p. illus.) is not yet available for examination. A review in the *London Times Literary Supplement*, June 23, 1961, speaks of it as having some interesting photographs, but making little new contribution to knowledge of African art.

321. INTERNATIONAL CONGRESS OF AFRICAN CULTURE (SOUTH OF THE SAHARA) Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia, August 1962. [Announcement] Salisbury, Rhodes National Gallery, 1962. DLC-AFR

Handsomely illustrated and unpagged brochure with cover title: "first biennial international congress of African culture; festival of African and neo-African art and music." The main theme was the influence of African art and music on the Western world. The Conference was scheduled to last for 2 weeks, with many exhibitions, music and film sessions, to continue for 2 months. Papers were invited from about 70 delegates from Africa, the Americas, Europe, and the West Indies.

Other publications resulting from the International Congress of African Culture have not reached the Library of Congress as of January 1963. There have been a number of press reports. A particularly full discussion, "Conversation Piece," by the Director of the Rhodes National Gallery, Frank McEwen, the organizer of the Congress, appeared in the *Central African Examiner*, September 1962, p. 15-20.

322. JAHN, JANHEINZ. *Muntu; an outline of the new African culture*. Translated by Marjorie Grene. New York, Grove Press, 1961. 267 p. illus. DT352.J313

A rather mystical examination of African religion, art, dance, philosophy, and literature, particularly modern writing, on a questionable assumption of similarity of all African cultures. The British edition has as subtitle, "An outline of neo-African culture." There has been considerable controversy over this work, the author of which, in spite of exhaustive reading of African creative writings, had carried on his studies entirely in Europe (since remedied by a trip in West Africa, traveling, living, and eating with Africans, which he has chronicled in his *Through African Doors*, New York, Grove Press, 1962. 235 p.). Mr. Colin Legum says of *Muntu* in his *Pan-Africanism*: "No better attempt has been made to understand and explain these arguments and themes [of African cultural values] . . . Whatever its failings, it offers a comprehensive and comprehensible analysis of the effects of the culture conflict between Europe and the black world."

323. KRIEGER, KURT, and GERDT KUTSCHER. *Westafrikanische Masken*. Berlin, Museum für Völkerkunde, 1960. 93 p. 80 plates.

Essay on the masks in a notable exhibit at the Museum of Folklore in Berlin, with many illustrations and a complete catalog of the 172 masks shown.

324. LEUZINGER, ELSY. *Africa; the art of the Negro peoples*. [Translated by Ann E. Keep] New York, McGraw-Hill, 1960. 247 p. illus. (part mounted col.) 4 maps. (Art of the world; the historical, sociological and religious backgrounds. Non-European cultures). N7380.L363

Bibliography: p. 228-232.

A broad study of African art in relation to historical, sociological, and religious backgrounds, illustrated with 63 color plates and 144 figures, with sources named. Chapters are on country and people, religion, sociology, material and technique, form, then on eight style regions. The appendixes include maps, tables of culture, bibliography, and glossary. A list of plates and figures, with sources, precedes the text.

325. NEW YORK. Museum of Primitive Art. *Traditional art of the African nations*. With an introduction by Robert Goldwater and photographs by Charles Uht. New York, Distributed by University Publishers, Inc., 1961. 72 p. (chiefly illus.) N7380.N45

An album of objects in the Museum's permanent collection, largely made up of full-page plates, including a number in color, arranged by country. An earlier album, the catalog of the Museum's first loan exhibi-



tion was issued in 1958: *African Sculpture Lent by New York Collectors* (28 plates).

326. PAULME, DENISE. *African sculpture*. Translated by Michael Ross. New York, Viking Press, 1962. 160 p. (A Studio book)  
NB1080.P313

327. ———. *Parures africaines*; texte de Denise Paulme et Jacques Brosse, photos de M. Huet [et al.] Hachette [c1956] illus., part col. 91 p.  
GT1580.P34

The author, director of the Département d'Afrique Noire of the Musée de l'Homme, had begun her studies of Africa under Marcel Griaule. Her *African Sculpture* is more valuable as a contribution to social anthropology than for its illustrations. The original French edition appeared in 1956 (*Les Sculptures de l'Afrique noire*. Paris, Presses universitaires de France. 130 p., 32 plates). A companion volume of striking photographs, many in color, depicts ceremonial costumes, masks, and cicatrizations of many African tribes. Most of the pictures are from West and Equatorial Africa, with a few from Southwest Africa, Mozambique, and the Sudan.

328. SCHMALENBACH, WERNER. *African art*. New York, Macmillan, 1954. 175 p. illus. (part col.) map.  
N7380.S375

Translated from the German language by Glyn T. Hughes.

This translation is identical in impressive make-up and illustration with the German original. The author considers the art of all Negro Africa, analyzing in general chapters the various cultures—hunting, farming, pastoral, and so-called “high” cultures—religious and social groups, role of the artist, the function of art. Then he examines in some detail materials, techniques, and particular forms of art. The text is interspersed with about 150 full-page and small plates, some in color. At the end are a map of tribes, a brief bibliography, and names of collections from which photographs were secured.

329. SEGÝ, LADISLAS. *African sculpture speaks*. New York, A. A. Wyn, 1952. 254 p.  
NB1080.S4

A collector's essay on the Negro sculpture of West Africa, its magico-religious basic concepts, cults of ancestor worship, totemism, secret societies, its historical background, characteristic forms and stylistic features, etc. The last chapters discuss the influences of African art on modern European art, and the interests of

collectors. A long appendix lists and describes style regions for about 200 of the best known tribes of French, Portuguese, British, and Belgian West and Equatorial Africa. The bibliography (p. 231–236) begins with an extensive list of Mr. Segý's own articles, and includes references in English and Western European languages. There is a list of the 276 illustrations, which are photographs of objects in many collections, and a full index.

A smaller selection with a brief introductory essay was published by this author in 1958: *African Sculpture* (New York, Dover Publications, 1958. 34 p. 163 plates).

Another volume by Mr. Segý appeared in 1956, *African Art Studies* (New York, Wittenborn & Co. 240 p.). It is in two parts, 1, “Analysis of Art Appreciation,” and 2, “The African Background.” Illustrations are 130 plates.

330. SYDOW, ECKART VON. *Afrikanische Plastik*; aus dem Nachlass herausg. von Gerdt Kutscher. Berlin, Verlag Gebr. Mann, 1954. 177 p. 144 plates.  
NB1080.S88 1954

Professor von Sydow of Berlin University, who died in 1942, was an expert in the culture and art of primitive peoples. His *Handbuch der afrikanischen Plastik* (Berlin, 1930) was considered a pioneer work on the sculpture of West Africa. This volume, edited from his manuscripts after his death, had been planned as a second volume of the *Handbuch*. It begins with an anthropological and historical discussion of styles and psychology of African art, then surveys the style-regions of African sculpture. Chapters are followed by bibliographies, and the volume is provided with a number of registers and indexes, to maps of the style-regions, to the provenance of the plates, etc.

331. SYMPOSIUM ON THE ARTIST IN TRIBAL SOCIETY. London, 1957. *The artist in tribal society*; proceedings of a symposium held at the Royal Anthropological Institute. Edited by Marian W. Smith. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1961. 150 p. illus. (Royal Anthropological Institute. Occasional publications, no. 15)  
N5310.S96 1957

The papers and discussions of an international cross-section of anthropologists and art historians, including such prominent spokesmen as Sir Herbert Read, E. R. Leach, and William Fagg. An American edition of this work was published by the Free Press of Glencoe.

332. TROWELL, KATHLEEN MARGARET. *African design*. New York, Praeger, 1960. 78 p. 77 plates. (Books that matter) NK1487.T7

333. ———. *Classical African sculpture*. London, Faber and Faber, 1954. 103 p. 48 plates.  
NB1080.T7 1954

By the Art Director in the Uganda Museum in Kampala, these two works are descriptive of art of sub-Saharan Africa in general. The first named covers in text and plates a variety of media: textile design, basketwork, beadwork, hides and leather work, body painting, carving of calabashes, wood, metal, and pottery. The second earlier work is a more extended essay on the history and culture of Africa, particularly West Africa, as interpreted in figures and masks of wood and bronze.

334. WASHINGTON, FORRESTER B. *Contemporary artists of Africa*. New York, Division of Social Research and Experimentation, Harmon Foundation, 1960. 32 l. N7380.W3

Useful mimeographed pamphlet made up for an informal committee interested in data on contemporary African art. It includes tabulated listings of where in Africa artists and art schools were found and where no artists or schools were found, as well as names of artists and sculptors. Those located are heavily concentrated in Ghana, Nigeria, and the Congo.

335. WINGERT, PAUL S. *The sculpture of Negro Africa*. New York, Columbia University Press, 1950. vii, 96 p. illus., plates, map.  
NB1080.W5

This book, by an Assistant Professor of Art and Archaeology at Columbia University, was described at the time of writing as "the most comprehensive study of its subject in the English language." The essay treats African sculpture under the four major regions, West Africa, Cameroon, Central Africa, and East Africa. It is accompanied and illustrated by 118 excellent plates, and includes a long bibliography (p. 83-96).

## MUSIC

### Bibliography

336. MERRIAM, ALAN P. "An annotated bibliography of African and African-derived music since 1936." In *Africa*, Journal of the International African Institute, v. 21, no. 4, Oct. 1951: 319-329. PL8000.I6, v. 21

An extension of the Varley bibliography, including references to books and periodical sources published up to and including 1950. Entries are listed alphabetically by author in two sections. Section I lists references the compiler checked personally; section II

lists references obtained from various other sources. See also this author's contribution in *African Studies Bulletin*, no. 314.

337. VARLEY, DOUGLAS H., comp. *African native music, an annotated bibliography*. London, The Royal Empire Society, 1936. 116 p. (*On cover*: Royal Empire Society bibliographies, no. 8) ML120.A35V31

The literature on music among the native tribes of Africa is widely scattered in general studies of ethnological, geographical and anthropological nature. This comprehensive bibliography brings together the titles of many books and articles from journals in these fields. Its arrangement is geographical, by territory, with large general sections; the subject matter covers native music and musical instruments. It is restricted to music of the Bantu and Negro races, roughly to peoples south of the Sahara.

*Note*: The selection and annotations of items for this section were made by Mr. Darius Thieme of the Music Division of the Library of Congress, a specialist in African music. An extensive annotated bibliography by Mr. Thieme, *African Music*, is now in preparation and will be published by the Library, probably in late 1963. It will contain about 750 entries, comprising a full survey of 12 journals of special importance in the field, also presenting a comprehensive list of references from an international roster of general, anthropological, linguistic, and other periodicals for the years since 1950.

338. *African music*: journal of the African Music Society. v. 1, no. 1+ 1954+ Roodepoort, Transvaal. annual. ML5.A26

Superseding the earlier *Newsletter*, this journal has an annual issue usually running to about a hundred pages, including musical scores, illustrations, bibliographic references, book and record reviews, etc. Although the preponderance is Bantu music, coverage is general for Africa south of the Sahara. Volume 1, no. 4 (1957) and Volume 2, no. 1 (1958) include a list of the 100 longplaying records of African native music issued by the International Library of African Music.

Records of African music are steadily increasing in popularity and will be found listed in catalogs of commercial firms.

339. BRANDEL, ROSE. *The music of Central Africa; an ethnomusicological study: former French Equatorial Africa, the former Belgian Congo, Ruanda-Urundi, Uganda, Tanganyika*. The Hague, M. Nijhoff, 1961. xii, 272 p. illus., music. ML3740.B7



A careful, introspective study of the traditional music of the region generally known as Central Africa. The 135 pages of musical examples include 52 transcriptions of recorded music of several central African tribes. A preliminary ethnography of the area, a discussion of various religious rites, and some coverage of linguistics are also presented. The transcriptions are partly taken from records made available following the Denis-Roosevelt expedition (now currently reissued on longplaying records).

340. CARRINGTON, JOHN F. *Talking drums of Africa*. London, Carey Kingsgate Press, 1949. 96 p. illus., map. ML1035.C3

Bibliography: p. 91-93.

A monumental work, the only book-length study at present available of African drum languages.

341. GIORGETTI, FILBERTO. *Musica africana, sua tecnica e acustica*. [Bologna], Nigrizia, 1957. 128 p. illus., music. (Museum Combonianum, n. 10) ML3760.G56

An intensive study of harmonic and melodic practice among the Zande. A chart is laid in which offers a basis for comparison between Western and local African tonal systems. Many musical scores include transcriptions of Zande songs. Includes photographs and illustrations.

342. JONES, A. M. *Studies in African music*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1959. 2 v. xviii plates, charts, music. 22, 23 x 32 cm. ML3760.J63

On the basis of a thorough study of native music in the Rhodesias and nearby regions, Father Jones takes data from Ghana, particularly Ewe, and other areas, correlates and compares. The result is the first large-scale work on the subject which is to some degree comprehensive. An attempt is made to point out regional variations in melodic and harmonic style and in instrumental techniques. Volume 2 consists of musical examples in full score of pieces discussed in Volume 1. Included also in Volume 1 are a map showing regional variations in musical practice, photographs, illustrations, and charts.

343. KING, ANTHONY. *Yoruba sacred music from Ekiti*. Ibadan, Ibadan University Press, 1961. xlix, 45 p. illus., music. ML3760.K47

An intensive study of Yoruba religious music, and particularly of drumming techniques and types of drums. Includes a chapter on "The Relationship between Speech Tone and Song."

344. KYAGAMBIDWA, JOSEPH. *African music from the source of the Nile*. New York, Praeger, 1955. 225 p. illus., music, map.

ML3760.K9

Following an encapsulated history of some African regions, a thorough discussion of musical styles and practices in Uganda and some adjoining regions is presented. The many musical examples include vocal and instrumental music. Song texts are in the original language, with English translations and comments.

345. NKETIA, KWABENA. *African music in Ghana*. Accra, London, Longmans, Green, 1962.

A monograph by a professor at the University of Ghana, offering a general introduction to African traditional music as practiced in that country.

346. TRACEY, HUGH. *Chopi musicians, their music, poetry, and instruments*. London, Oxford University Press, 1948. 180 p. illus., maps, music. ML3760.T7

Includes analysis of the poetry and music of a people particularly noted for their xylophone playing. Musical examples, descriptive charts, illustrations, diagrams, and English translations of the poetry are given.

347. WEMAN, HENRY. *African music and the church in Africa*. [Translated by Eric J. Sharpe] Uppsala, Lundequivistska bokhandeln, 1960. 296 p. illus. (Uppsala universitets årsskrift 1960: 3. Acta universitatis Upsaliensis)

ML2951.A4W4

"Also published as *Studia missionalia Upsaliensia*, 3."

Following a discussion of the structure and form of music in several African societies, the author examines extensively the role of native music in Christian church services. His data and musical examples come for the most part from south and south-central Africa. Includes transcriptions of vocal and instrumental songs and dances.

## LETTERS

348. CONGRÈS INTERNATIONAL DES ÉCRIVAINS ET ARTISTES NOIRS, 1st, Paris, Sept. 1956. *Contributions . . .* Paris, 1957. 362 p.

GN645.P74, no. 14-15

Special issue of *Présence africaine*, nouv. sér. bimestrielle, no. 14-15, juin-sept. 1957.

349. ——— 2d, Rome, mars-avr. 1959. *T. 2. Responsabilités des hommes de culture*. Paris, 1959. 368 p. GN645.P74, no. 27-28

Special issue of *Présence africaine*, nouv. sér. bimestrielle, no. 27-28, août-nov. 1959.

The first International Congress of Negro Writers and Artists was called by Alioune Diop, founder and editor of the journal *Présence africaine*, which is the chief organ of French-speaking African intellectuals. It was well attended by Negro writers from many parts of Africa and from the United States. The second Congress, 3 years later, was given still more attention. Papers contributed at both sessions were concerned with the manifestations of African culture in 1956, with literature, art, theater, dance, etc., but also with political expression, particularly with race and culture conflicts; in 1959, with the concept of negritude, with the re-creation of African history, African philosophy, and in general, the assertion of the African personality in the arts and social sciences.

350. DEI-ANANG, MICHAEL. *Africa speaks*; a collection of original verse with an introd. on "poetry in Africa." Accra, Guinea Press, 1960. 104 p. PR6007.E296A7 1960

A book of verse by one of the better known West African poets.

351. DIOGENES: AN INTERNATIONAL REVIEW OF PHILOSOPHY AND HUMANISTIC STUDIES. *Diogenes looks at Africa*. Montreal, International Council for Philosophy and Humanistic Studies, 1962. 136 p. (Its no. 37, Spring 1962: p. 1-136) AS4.D5, no. 37

Special issue of a quarterly review published in French and English editions (the latter by Mario Casalini Ltd., Montreal). The lead article is by Léopold Sédar Senghor, foremost exponent of the concept of negritude: "On Negrohood: Psychology of the African Negro," which is an essay in Negro esthetics. Three other articles are directly concerned with letters: "The Concept of an African Prose Literature," by Wilfred H. Whiteley; "The Social and Economic Background of Portuguese Negro Poetry," by Alfredo Margarido; and "Humanism and Negritude: Notes on the Contemporary Afro-American Novel," by Albert Gérard. The other articles are by Claude Tardits, "Religion, Epic, History. Notes on the Underlying Function of Cults in Benin Civilizations"; Geneviève Calame-Griaule, "The Spiritual and Social Role of Women in Traditional Sudanese Society"; P. C. W. Gutkind, "Some Problems of African Urban Family Life (Kampala)"; and Hubert Deschamps, "Toward a History of Africa."

352. DOOB, LEONARD W. *Communication in Africa*; a search for boundaries. New Haven, Yale University Press, 1961. 406 p. P92.A4D6

Professor Doob, a social psychologist who has been deeply concerned with techniques of psychological warfare, here uses Africa as a case study for variables that may affect communication and the media of communication. The author's style makes intriguing reading, but the argument is for the initiate.

353. HUGHES, LANGSTON, ed. *An African treasury*: articles, essays, stories, poems, by black Africans. New York, Crown Publishers, 1960. 207 p. PR9799.H8

Selection from African writings in newspapers, magazines, and submitted in manuscript, chosen by this American Negro author following his having judged a short story contest for the Johannesburg magazine of African circulation, *Drum*. The contributions are grouped according to their form—articles, miscellaneous (including newspaper columns, folk tales, and proverbs), essays, stories, and poetry. Biographical notes on authors.

354. HUTH, ARNO. *Communications media in tropical Africa*; report. Prepared for the International Cooperation Administration. Washington, 1961. 171 p. HE282.H8

Study of the operations of radio, press, and cinema in fifteen countries of Africa, with recommendations for improvement of programs. A review by K. A. B. Jones-Quartey in *Africa Report* of November 1962 speaks of it as "the most comprehensive reference work on all the media examined."

A UNESCO-sponsored conference on this theme was held in Paris in 1962. The report was published as Meeting of Experts on Development of Information Media in Africa: *Developing Information Media in Africa; Press, Radio, Film, Television* (UNESCO. Mass Communication Techniques Division. Reports and Papers on Mass Communication, no. 37. 57 p.).

355. LESLAU, CHARLOTTE, and WOLF LESLAU, comps. *African proverbs*. With decorations by Jeff Hill. Mount Vernon, N.Y., Peter Pauper Press, 1962. 61 p. PN6519.A6L4

356. MPHALELE, EZEKIEL. *The African image*. London, Faber & Faber, 1962. 240 p. GN645.M7

Essays by one of Africa's most noted literary men, surrounding four main themes: the African personality, which he maintains is both political slogan and reality; the French African concept of negritude of which he disapproves; nationalism as seen by African and European; and the literary image of the African as seen by white man and black. In the two chap-



ters of the latter theme he quotes from and comments on many novels and other literary works by European and African writers. Mr. Mphalele, a South African and former schoolteacher who achieved fame with his autobiography of the frustrated African intellectual, *Down Second Avenue*, has taught at Ibadan and in 1962 is with the Congress of Cultural Freedom in Paris.

Mr. Mphalele served as chairman of the conference called by the Mbari Writers' and Artists' Club of Ibadan at Makerere College, June 8-17, 1962. An article regarding the questions of writing discussed by the 40-odd participants was contributed by him to *Africa Report* of July 1962 (p. 7-8).

357. *Oxford Library of African Literature* [series]  
London, Oxford University Press. 1961(?) +

A projected series has been announced of the indigenous prose and poetry of Africa to be edited by E. E. Evans-Pritchard, W. H. Whiteley, and Godfrey Lienhardt. The volumes are to have English translation of text or texts, introductory essay and notes, with either full vernacular text or specimens. Titles of individual volumes will presumably be listed under the series in the index of the *British National Bibliography*; possibly also in the quarterly section of Notes carried in *Africa*, the journal of the International African Institute.

358. "La Presse en Afrique au sud du Sahara." *Afrique* (Paris) no. 19, déc. 1962: 35-53; no. 26, juil. 1963: 32-49. DLC

A roundup of newspapers and journals published in both English and French-speaking countries of Africa, with analytical description of each cited. The first article, in the section called "Le Dossier d'Afrique" of this useful monthly, takes in the first two parts: West Africa and Madagascar. The second issue carries parts on the press in East Africa and South Africa, and a final part of general reflections on the African press and its future development. Naturally, in an evaluative listing of this sort, the very ephemeral and inconsequential periodicals are excluded. For West Africa the vernacular press is not noticed, but the section on Madagascar includes dailies in Malagasy.

359. RUTH SLOAN ASSOCIATES, Washington, D.C.  
*The press in Africa*. Edited by Helen Kitchen.  
Washington, 1956. 96 p. PN5450.R8

Although outdated, this survey, which gives special emphasis to the native press in each country of Africa, is still a unique and valuable contribution. The tabulated indexes of principal newspapers of each country

are preceded by a page or two of explanatory comment on the state of the press in that country, including newspapers in vernacular languages as well as English, French, etc.

The most comprehensive available directory of the African press is the annual volume published for the advertising trade, *Advertising and Press Annual of All Africa*, founded by Chas. R. Pask (Cape Town, Johannesburg, National Publishing Co.). It includes, however, only a small number of papers in the vernacular, and few of the scholarly publications. Many African newspapers and periodicals are listed in the *Serials for African Studies* published by the Library of Congress in 1961.

360. RUTHERFOORD, PEGGY, ed. *African voices; an anthology of native African writing*. New York, Vanguard Press, 1960. 208 p.

PN6014.R79 1960

First published in 1958 under title: *Darkness and Light*.

An excellently varied anthology of stories, poems, tales, essays, grouped by the regions from which they come. Some are the products of well-known new writers, some are translations by Europeans or Africans from traditional song or legend, some are as told by informants. At the end there are biographical notes about the writers, whose styles vary from traditional parables to imagist poetry and prose in the Joycean fashion.

Another anthology in 1963 is edited by Jacob Drachler, *African Heritage* (New York, Crowell-Collier Press. 286 p.) The subtitle reads "Intimate Views of the Black Africans from Life, Lore, and Literature." The editor provides an introduction and interpretive notes, including biographical data on writers. The selections are in three main parts: 1, examples of many kinds of African writing; 2, "Afro-American Responses"—essays and poems by New World Negroes; 3, excerpts from European literature regarding Africans.

A pamphlet edited by Gerald Moore, *Seven African Writers* (London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 108 p. Three Crowns Book), is not yet available for examination.

361. *Schöne Schriften aus Afrika; ein Verzeichnis von Werken zeitgenössischer afrikanischer Autoren*. Bonn, Deutsche Afrika-Gesellschaft, 1962. 83 p. DLC-AFR

A listing of present-day African writers and their literary works. Pages 9-54 cover in one alphabet writers of the continent and their books in English, French, and African languages. Then there are separate alphabetical listings of writers in Arabic, with translation of titles in German, of writers from Madagascar and Reunion, and from the Caribbean. The last list is of anthologies and collections of tales. A "Landesregister" groups the writers by country.

362. SENGHOR, LÉOPOLD SÉDAR. *Anthologie de la nouvelle poésie nègre et malgache de langue française*, précédé de Orphée noir par Jean-Paul Sartre. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1948. 227 p. (Colonies et empires: 5. série: Art et littérature) PQ3899.S4

By the celebrated French African poet and apostle of negritude—also political leader to independence for Senegal and currently President of that country—this anthology includes the most famous poems by Negroes and Malagasy brought up in the French culture. The first selections are by West Indians, among them Aimé Césaire, whose poem, “Cahier d’un retour au pays natal,” here included, first brought the term “negritude” to prominence. Then three poets of West Africa, Birago Diop, Senghor himself, and David Diop, and the Malagasy nationalist poets Rabéarivelo, Rabemananjara, and Ranaivo. The volume has as introduction the essay by Jean-Paul Sartre, “Orphée noir” (Black Orpheus) which introduced the concept of negritude to the French literary world.

363. TRAORÉ, BAKARY. *Le théâtre négro-africain et ses fonctions sociales*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1958. 159 p. (Enquêtes et études) PN2979.T7

Developed from a dissertation at the École Pratique des Hautes Études by a former teacher from Senegal. The author considers in sociological terms the origins of African dramatic forms in dance, miming, song, traditional drama, and the forms and tendencies of modern theater. A part of the book was presented as a paper at the first International Congress of Negro Writers and Artists (see no. 321).

## EDUCATION

### *Bibliography*

364. COUCH, MARGARET, comp. *Education in Africa: a select bibliography*. Pt. 1, British and former British territories in Africa. London, Institute of Education, University of London, 1962. 121 p.
365. DOLAN, ELEANOR F., comp. *Higher education in Africa south of the Sahara; selected bibliography 1945–1961*. Washington, American Association of University Women, Educational Foundation. 80 p. DLC–AFR

Prepared for the use of women’s study groups, this bibliography goes well beyond basic material on higher education in Africa in its coverage, including many

works in the social sciences in which some attention is given to African education. The arrangement is by form of material—annuals, bibliographies, newspapers, periodicals, books and pamphlets, articles, and publications of United Nations and African and other governments.

366. DRAKE, HOWARD. *A bibliography of African education south of the Sahara*. Aberdeen, the University Press, 1942. 97 p. (University of Aberdeen Anthropological Museum. Publication, no. 2) Z5815.A3D7

This bibliography provides extensive coverage of prewar material on the subject.

367. AFRICAN EDUCATION COMMISSION. *Education in Africa; a study of West, South and Equatorial Africa*, conducted by the African Education Commission under the auspices of the Phelps-Stokes Fund and foreign mission societies of North America and Europe; report prepared by Thomas Jesse Jones, chairman. New York, Phelps-Stokes Fund, 1922. 323 p. illus. LA1501.A4

368. ———. *Education in East Africa . . .* Thomas Jesse Jones, chairman. New York, Phelps-Stokes Fund, 1925. 416 p. illus.

LA1501.A4 1925

The Phelps-Stokes Commission on African Education sent representatives in the early twenties to study the entire field of education in Africa south of the Sahara. The reports marked an important step in American interest in African development. As a direct result, the Jeanes schools were begun in East and Central Africa in 1925. Named for a Philadelphia philanthropist who had left a fund for training teachers for Negro schools, these institutions train native teachers and their wives to take charge of village schools and community improvement. An abridged edition of the Phelps-Stokes Reports, with introduction by Leonard J. Lewis, was published by the Oxford University Press in London, September 1962 (5, 213 p.).

369. AZEVEDO, ÁVILA DE. *Política de ensino em África*. Lisboa, Ministério do Ultramar, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais, 1958. 198 p. map, tables. (Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais) LA1501.A9

A scholarly comparative study, assessing the educational activities of United Nations, CCTA, UNESCO,



then describing the general character of education of Africans, and the particular systems of South Africa, the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, the British, Belgian, French, and other systems. The last four chapters review the history of education in Portuguese Africa, its present state, and future plans, including the question of a university.

370. CARR-SAUNDERS, Sir ALEXANDER M. *New universities overseas*. London, Allen & Unwin, 1961. 260 p. LA669.5.C3

The distinguished author, who has served on many social science commissions and special commissions on higher education in the British colonial possessions, in this book describes the universities in territories which had been under the British crown in 1945, most of them now independent countries. He begins with an account of the situation before the appointment of the Asquith Commission on Higher Education in the Colonies (1943-45), of which he was a member. He continues with a detailed account of recent developments and present status. African universities included are Fourah Bay College (University College of Sierra Leone), Kumasi College of Technology, Makerere College (University College of East Africa), Royal College, Nairobi, University College of Khartoum, University of Nigeria, University College, Ibadan, University College of Ghana, University College of Rhodesia and Nyasaland.

371. CONFERENCE OF AFRICAN STATES ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF EDUCATION IN AFRICA, Addis Ababa, 15-25 May, 1961. *Final report*. Paris, United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, 1961. 64, 27, 127 p. L106.A3 1961

Organized and convened by the United Nations Economic Commission for Africa and the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization, this conference brought together representatives of 63 governments, 39 participating, 24 as observers (including the United States), and delegates from United Nations and international nongovernmental agencies. The chairman was the Minister of Education and Welfare of Ghana, Mr. A. J. Dowuona-Hammond. The final report contains summarizations of the plenary sessions—an inventory of educational needs, education as a basic factor in economic and social development, patterns of international cooperation for developing African education—and the reports of several commissions, concerned with financing, educational planning, technical and vocational training, and adult edu-

cation. These occupy 64 pages. Then 27 separately numbered pages give the "Outline of a Plan for African Educational Development" (also issued as a separate), very largely concerned with financing and ending with 80 recommendations for long-term (1961-80) and short-term (1961-66) plans. The long-term plan aims at universal primary education by 1970, with 23 percent secondary and 2 percent higher education. The short-term plan envisages an annual increase of 5 percent in primary school enrollment; the staggering total cost for the 6-year plan set at \$4,150 million, of which \$1,310 million will have to come from outside Africa. Low or no-interest long-term loans payable in local currencies are urged, and it is considered urgent that one or more institutions be established in Africa for development and research in education.

A followup Meeting of Ministers of Education of African Countries Participating in the Implementation of the Addis Ababa Plan was held in Paris from March 26-30, 1962, under the auspices of UNESCO. Its *Final Report* was issued as a UNESCO Document (Paris, 1962. 223 p., tables. UNESCO/ED/191).

A second Conference on the Development of Higher Education in Africa was held under UNESCO auspices in Tananarive, Madagascar in September 1962. The *Report* will be published by UNESCO. A summary of proceedings is given by the American representative of the Phelps-Stokes Fund, Karl W. Bigelow, in *Africa Report* of November 1962. The summary of a report by Sir Alexander Carr-Saunders, *Staffing African Universities*, is available from the American Council on Education, Publications Division, Washington, D.C.

372. CONFERENCE ON AFRICAN EDUCATION, Cambridge, Eng., 1952. *African education; a study of educational policy and practice in British tropical Africa*. Oxford, University Press; to be obtained from the Crown Agents for the Colonies, London, 1953. 187 p. Edited by W. E. F. Ward. LA1530.C6 1952

Significant publication resulting from the work of two Study Groups sponsored by the Nuffield Foundation and the Colonial Office, 1951-52, and the ensuing Conference at Cambridge in September 1952. The three main parts are the Report of the West Africa Study Group, chairman, D. G. B. Jeffrey of London University Institute of Education, the Report of the East and Central Africa Study Group, chairman, Mr. A. L. Binns, and the record of the Conference proceedings, with summarization of discussions. The two Reports were based on 6 months' visits by teams of three or four educational specialists, who examined thoroughly the entire educational systems of the two regions, their special problems and needs. The East

and Central Africa group made much the fuller statement, facing the problems of a plural society in which the place of the African must be stabilized in relation to other races as well as to his own changing culture, which is seen as a primary need in West Africa. Mr. Binns and his associates spelled out recommendations at the end of each of their chapters, declaring that they "erred on the side of dogmatism and simplification" as a basis for action by workers in the field. Among interesting points were their discussion of the "wastage"—the loss of children from school during even the minimum four-year period—and their conviction that the *lingua franca* of the coast, Swahili, should be eliminated from the elementary school curriculum as overburdening the children with a need of literacy in three languages.

A summarization in popular style of the work of the 1952 Conference was written by John McLeod Campbell, *African History in the Making* (London, Edinburgh House Press, 1955. 120 p.). Also official summaries of the Conference report and other British official reports were issued in pamphlets of the British Central Office of Information, Reference Division, *Education in the United Kingdom Dependencies* (London, 1954. 92 p.; 1959. 46 p.). These review the current position in education in the non-self-governing territories of Africa and other parts of the British Commonwealth, including tables of statistics.

373. GREENOUGH, RICHARD. *Africa calls . . . Development of education, the needs and problems.* Paris, UNESCO, 1961. 50 p. illus.

LA1501.G7

Short pamphlet surveying education in Africa south of the Sahara. The author, a UNESCO staff member, explains problems, needs, remedies, the Addis Ababa Plan, and work of UNESCO. Of 25 million children, 13 million do not have schools. Illiteracy rate among adults is almost 80 percent. UNESCO is currently supporting about 130 projects in 28 countries.

A United Nations survey of *Progress of the Non-Self-Governing Territories under the Charter*, v. 4, *Educational Conditions* (New York, 1961. 126 p.) has tabulated statistics on all phases of education in Africa together with those for Asia and the Pacific and Caribbean areas. The figures, however, are for 1946 to 1956 or, in a few cases, 1957.

374. HODGKIN, ROBIN A. *Education and change; a book mainly for those who work in countries where education is part of a process of rapid social change.* London, Oxford University Press, 1957. 150 p. illus.

LC191.H6

Thoughtful essay based on the author's experience of teaching in the Sudan, though his illustrations are drawn from the underdeveloped countries in general. His argument, largely in theoretical terms, is that in

the stresses and strains of social change, education must be to develop citizens who are "active, social and creative. Education for creative action means, externally, the getting of skill and experience and, internally, the development of reflective, imaginative and questioning powers."

Beside Mr. Hodgkin's abstract study there may be set a little book by Reginald J. Mason, *British Education in Africa* (London, Oxford University Press, 1959. 141 p.), which sets down in concrete terms the facts of the English system and policy in African schools and universities.

375. INSTITUTE OF INTERNATIONAL EDUCATION. *Survey of the African student: his achievements and his problems*, by James M. Davis, Russell G. Hanson and Duane R. Burnor. New York, 1961. 71 p.

LA230.I5

Survey of 1,600 Africans from south of the Sahara in U.S. colleges, based on an extensive analytical questionnaire and personal interviews regarding backgrounds, major problems, educational and social experiences (discrimination, jobs, advisers, financial support, etc.), images of America, and other pertinent questions. Includes tabulated data and text of the questionnaire. In estimating factors of success or failure, only 6 percent reported academic difficulties as a major problem. The economic factor loomed large, particularly as to the difficulty of getting through vacation periods.

The racial discrimination factor and relations of African students with American Negroes, as revealed in the survey, are discussed in an article by John F. Melby and D. R. Burnor, "Future Leaders of Africa," *Saturday Review*, Aug. 18, 1962, p. 49-51.

In this connection it is interesting to compare the statement of the USSR in the UNESCO report, *Fellowships for Africans*. The financial lures held out include free trips to vacation resorts, a large allowance for warm clothing, etc., and a suggestion that expenses for lodging represent less than 2 percent of the monthly allowance.

376. JOURNAL OF NEGRO EDUCATION. *African education south of the Sahara.* Washington, 1961. p. 173-364.

LC2701.J6, v. 30

The yearbook number, v. 30, Summer 1961.

Comprehensive survey of the topic, comprising 19 authoritative articles. The first section is "Common Problems Involved in the Task of Nation-Building." Section 2 is on "Some Special Educational Problems in Africa South of the Sahara." Section 3 is "African Education South of the Sahara—Some Problems of Implementation," including role of U.N., stake of the United States, future of missionary enterprise, teacher supply and demand. The last section has two papers of "Critical Summary" by Professor Karl Bigelow of



Teachers College, Columbia University, and Dean Horace Mann Bond, School of Education of Atlanta University.

377. MAISTRIAUX, ROBERT. *Les méthodes actives en terre d'Afrique; une expérience pédagogique pilote au Congo*. Bruxelles, Editest, 1960. 142 p. LB1027.M316

Experiments in education of African children in primary grades. The writer, who is author also of a valuable study of African mentality, *L'Intelligence noire et son destin* (Bruxelles, Éditions de problèmes d'Afrique centrale, 1957. 256 p. illus.) has established from a series of tests that the fact that "the Bantu pupil of 6-7 years is about two years behind his European comrades of the same age [is] the inevitable consequence of a depressed socio-economic milieu and not at all due to congenital intellectual inferiority of the black child."

378. MUMFORD, WILLIAM BRYANT, and G. ST. J. ORDE-BROWN. *Africans learn to be French*. London, Evans Bros., 1937. 174 p. LA161.M8

This volume, covering a review of educational activities in the seven federated colonies of French West Africa, was based on a tour undertaken in 1935 by the head of the Colonial Department of the University of London Institute of Education, and Major Orde-Brown, the specialist on African labor. The two writers gave the most complete account then available in English of the system by which the present leaders of French-speaking Africa were taught. The frontispiece is a comment on the French concept of assimilation; it shows French and African primary school children leaving school together, with the caption: "Association of mental capacity with colour of skin would be placed by France in the same category as character-judging by cranial bumps."

379. PIFER, ALAN J. *Forecasts of the Fulbright program in British Africa; a report to the United States Educational Commission in the United Kingdom*. London, U.S. Educational Commission in the United Kingdom, 1953. 119 p. LB2285.A35P5

The writer had visited West Africa, East and Central Africa, also the Sudan, South Africa, and Malta, to report on educational administration and institutions and to examine lines for educational exchanges between America and African colonies. The aim of his survey was improvement of caliber both of African students coming to America ("should be largely post-graduate") and of American teachers going to Africa. In his last final chapter on travel grants, Mr. Pifer sup-

ported strongly the suggestion of a Colonial Office official for a survey "of what has actually happened to African students with American qualifications after they return to Africa," and urged a comparison with Africans holding British degrees. The bulk of the text described existing universities, colleges, schools, and research institutes.

380. POLITICAL AND ECONOMIC PLANNING. *Colonial students in Britain; a report*. London, 1955. 257 p. LA637.7.P6

Bibliography: p. 240-251.

Survey carried out over 4 years with case studies and questionnaires investigating statistics and characteristic educational, social, and welfare problems of the over 10,000 young people from the colonial territories studying in Britain. This figure, as of January 1, 1955, contrasted with between 500 and 600 in 1939. About 40 percent were from West Africa. Included were students in teaching hospitals, technical colleges, and those enrolled in special courses, as well as universities. The color bar was a main issue, also British apathy. Recommendations of the investigating group included more education and more advisory arrangements in the colonies before the students come abroad, more planning of all sorts, through a Central Placing Service in Britain, and emphatically more attention on the part of the British public.

381. READ, MARGARET. *Education and social change in tropical areas*. London, New York, Nelson, 1955. 130 p. LC2605.R4

Set of papers by the Head of the Department of Education in Tropical Areas of the University of London Institute of Education. Dr. Read is a social anthropologist, and most of these speeches and articles reflect her special interest in the relationship of anthropological studies to methods of education in Africa and other countries where community development projects are being carried on. She stressed in her last lecture, "African Education and World Opinion," how little is known in the outside world of British progress in this field in Africa.

Although its emphasis is naturally on British territories, the Department of Education in Tropical Areas gives attention to education and social development on a worldwide scale in its two valuable serial publications, *Community Development Bulletin* (1949+ quarterly) and *Oversea Quarterly* (1958+; formerly *Colonial Review*). The *Bulletin* reports on progress in all phases of village improvement and adult education. The *Oversea Quarterly* is "a readers' digest of important articles on colonial affairs, including special articles on education, selected from leading British, foreign, and colonial periodicals." Another serial publication of this Department, *African Women* (v. 1, no. 1+ Dec. 1954+ 2 a

year), is a bulletin of 25 to 30 pages devoted to conditions and interests of women in the continent as a whole, though the preponderance of material is on British Africa.

382. RUTH SLOAN ASSOCIATES, *Washington, D.C.*  
*The educated African*; a country-by-country survey of educational development in Africa. Edited by Helen Kitchen. New York, Praeger, 1962. xvii, 542 p. illus., maps. (Books that matter) LA1501.R79

This volume, which Dr. Ruth Sloan designates a "functional reference survey," will be an invaluable source book for years to come. It represents a tremendous accomplishment of collecting and synthesizing factual and statistical information on all phases of education in almost 50 countries of Africa, presented to the editors in working papers by about thirty area specialists. The arrangement is systematic by region and country; for each country, first thumbnail statistics, the briefest possible bit of historical background, an outline of the history of education, statement with statistics of present situation, plans and prospects for the future. Reviewed in *Africa Report*, February 1962.

383. ——— *Resources and needs for training facilities for Africans in British Africa, Ethiopia and Liberia.* Washington, 1955. 250 l. diags. LA1501.R8

Basic compilation of data and statistics regarding facilities and programs for African education and training in the rapidly advancing countries south of the Sahara. Areas covered are the countries of British West Africa, British Central Africa, British East Africa, Liberia, and Ethiopia. For each there are brief statements of background information on geography and economic resources, population, government and political parties, outline of general education and development plans, then detailed examination of training facilities. This involves accounts—with names and statistics—of the structure of the educational system, of lower schools, technical training, teacher training, training for government service, higher education, scholarships, programs for training in other countries, notably in the United States.

384. SCIENTIFIC COUNCIL FOR AFRICA SOUTH OF THE SAHARA (CSA). *Directory of scientific and technical libraries in Africa south of the Sahara.* London, Published under the sponsorship of the Commission for Technical Cooperation in Africa South of the Sahara, 1954. 71 p. (*Its* Publication no. 10)

AZ800.S35. no. 10

Title also in French.

Provisional edition with title first in French issued in 1953 (*Its* Publication no. 3).

The second revised edition of the list contains data concerning 239 libraries outside the Union of South Africa, and 68 within the Union. For the countries outside the Union, the large general libraries of universities and municipalities are included. "The reason is that in countries which have a paucity of purely scientific and technical libraries, general libraries may contain material which is not otherwise available." This list has been supplemented by Miss Hazel Mews in "Scientific Documentation in Africa South of the Sahara," *Revue de la Documentation*, v. 26, Nov. 1959, p. 87-93.

385. UNITED NATIONS. Secretariat. *Educational facilities and training programmes in the non-self-governing territories.* Report. 6 Mar. 1962. New York, 1962. 71 p. (A/AC.35/L.353) DLC

This general report for non-self-governing territories around the world includes résumés of civil service preparation and training, and education in Kenya, Uganda, Nyasaland, and Northern Rhodesia.

386. UNITED NATIONS EDUCATIONAL, SCIENTIFIC AND CULTURAL ORGANIZATION. *Fellowships for Africans*; Bourses destinées aux Africains. Paris, 1961. 51 p. (IES/5) DLC-AFR

A supplement to the 13th edition of the handbook, *Study Abroad*, this is a round-the-world listing of organizations, universities, and governments that offer scholarships to African students. There are indexes of donor countries and recipient countries. The introduction advises that the full handbook gives more complete information about opportunities in specified fields of study.

387. ——— Education Clearing House. *African languages and English in education*; a report of a meeting of experts on the use in education of African languages in relation to English, where English is the accepted second language, held at Jos, Nigeria, November 1952. Paris, 1953. 91 p. (*Its* Educational studies and documents, no. 2) LB5.U37, no. 2

Discussion by a group of experts, with recommendations for UNESCO action along the lines of increased research. Papers by educators from institutions in South Africa, Nigeria, the Gold Coast, etc. Appendixes include a survey of the use of vernacular languages as vehicles of instruction in British territories



in Africa, with listing of chief languages. The ideal is stated as pre-primary and primary instruction in the vernacular, thereafter greater emphasis on English.

A Commonwealth Conference on the Teaching of English as a Second Language was held in Uganda in 1961. The Report, which in March 1963 is not yet available in the Library of Congress, was reviewed in the *Central African Examiner* of August 1961, and was the point of departure for a feature section in the *Times Literary Supplement* (London) of Aug. 10, 1962 (p. 567-572), which includes a lead article on English as a second language, a number of poems from Africa and Asia, and a long discussion of "Writing in West Africa."

388. UNESCO BULLETIN FOR LIBRARIES. *Library development in Africa*. Paris, 1961. p. 225-287. Z681.U5, v. 15

Special issue, v. 15, no. 5, Sept.-Oct. 1961.

Contains details of library projects to be undertaken by UNESCO in Africa in 1961-62, surveys of library resources in the region, and special articles. The surveys of resources are, for English-speaking West Africa by Evelyn J. A. Evans, for English-speaking East Africa by S. W. Hockey, for French-speaking countries by K. E. W. Dadzie. Special articles are on the East African Literature Bureau, university libraries, public and school libraries, library construction in tropical countries, and furniture and equipment. The last 12 pages describe collections of Africana in libraries and other institutions of Europe, Africa, and the United States, ending with the Library of Congress.

Literature concerning libraries in Africa is covered through 1961 in a Library of Congress bibliography, *African Libraries, Book Production, and Archives: A List of References* (1962. 64 p.).

389. WILLIAMS, CHANCELLOR. *The rebirth of African civilization*. Washington, Public Affairs Press, 1961. 328 p. DT532.W5

By a social scientist at Howard University. This work was planned in the early fifties as a study of the African school system, particularly the mission schools, and changed into an analysis of African life and culture, with the emphasis on education as the primary need. Much of it results from a questionnaire, "Survey of African Opinion," taken in the Gold Coast in 1954-57. The dedication is to Nkrumah and Azikiwe.

390. WORLD CONFEDERATION OF ORGANIZATIONS OF THE TEACHING PROFESSION. *Survey of the status of the teaching profession in Africa*. Washington, 1962. 150 p. DLC

Resulting from a field survey made by a Commission on Educational Policy for Africa of the WCOTP. It contains fairly full sections for each country, reviewing

such problem areas as low salaries, lack of new candidates, and uneven standards, as well as many evidences of progress in educational methods. The report was prepared by a Gambian Education officer, Mr. S. H. M. Jones. The WCOTP publishes a quarterly, *Panorama*: a reprint is available of an issue devoted to "Education in Africa" (v. 1, no. 4, Winter, 1959).

A Conference on Education in Africa, sponsored by the World Council of Churches, was held in Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia, in late December 1962 and January 1963. The purpose was to reassess the role of churches and missions and "to formulate afresh in African terms the Christian concept of education."

## CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM

391. ALL-AFRICA CHURCH CONFERENCE, Ibadan, Nigeria, 1958. *The church in changing Africa*; report of the All-Africa Church conference, held at Ibadan, Nigeria, January 10-19, 1958. New York, International Missionary Council, 1958. 106 p. BX6.A46A3 1958c

This significant conference brought together Protestant clergy from all over Africa as well as Europe and America. Of the over 200 representatives, more than half were African. The major themes were: The church, youth, and the family; the church and economic life; the church and citizenship; the church and culture; the growing church. Information sessions worked on these subjects, and rather particularly on the question of Christian literature, its preparation and distribution.

This assembly immediately followed an Assembly of the International Missionary Council which was held at Accra from Dec. 28, 1957, to Jan. 8, 1958. Its papers, edited by Ronald K. Orchard, with the title, *The Ghana Assembly of the International Missionary Council*, were published by the Edinburgh House Press in London and distributed in the United States by Friendship Press (New York, 1958. 240 p.). Its theme was the broad question of missionary policy in today's world, and its four parts, preparatory papers, papers delivered at the sessions, speeches, and papers resulting from the Assembly, are more concerned with the world picture and with Asia than with Africa.

392. ANDERSSON, EFRAIM. *Messianic popular movements in the Lower Congo*. Uppsala, Almqvist & Wiksells boktr., 1958. 287 p. illus., col. plate (Studia ethnographica Upsaliensia, 14) GN654.A7

Among the most notorious of the "prophets" who have led dissident movements arising from Christianity was the Congolese preacher and faith healer Simon Kimbangu. His active part in his "Ngunzist" movement lasted only for a few months in 1921; as its na-

tionalistic and anti-European aspects came to the attention of the authorities he was arrested and spent the rest of his life, till 1950, in prison in Elisabethville. This martyrdom of the "messiah" led to a long series of prophet movements in the Congo and neighboring regions, which are here studied in detail by a Swedish missionary anthropologist.

393. BOUCHAUD, JOSEPH. *L'Église en Afrique noire*. Paris, La Palatine, 1958. 189 p.

BV3500.B63

The preface by Cardinal Lefebvre, Apostolic Delegate in Dakar, speaks of the author as one of the most competent men in the African Catholic mission field. His book describes the past and present position of missions, and problems concerned with education, African family relations, political evolution, traditional paganism, Islam, and communism. In the conclusion Father Bouchaud states forthrightly that no solutions will be valid until the Church becomes a truly African church, with its own bishops, priests, and lay workers. To this end, he says, all mission work must be directed.

A book of the year before by Bernard de Vaulx. *Les Églises de couleur*, (Paris, A. Fayard, 1957. 157 p.), is a survey of the native churches in Africa and Asia. A later work by a Catholic journalist, Ève Dessarre, *L'Afrique noire chrétienne* (Paris, SPES, 1960. 191 p.) is useful for its statistical round-up, including graphic charts, of Catholics and Protestants in all countries of Africa.

394. BRYAN, G. McLEOD. *Whither Africa*. Richmond, John Knox Press, 1961. 157 p.

DT30.B73

Dr. Bryan is a professor of Christian ethics who has studied the place of religion in African colleges and served as supervisor of Operation Crossroads Africa. In this well-informed and persuasive study addressed particularly to the "Universal Church," he surveys in turn the ideologies competing for the mind of new Black Africa: tribalism, Islam (winning out on the religious side), Christianity, nationalism, racism, communism (tabulating factors for and against), and "Educationalism" (higher education). The new religion is nationalism, in respect of which the missions have been delinquent, though most nationalist leaders "write from a Christian perspective." The author warns the Christian world that only through immediate reform can it maintain its foothold as "a decidedly minority religion."

In 1962 another "Christian Perspective" on Africa, written by the founder and Director of Crossroads Africa, James H. Robinson, was published with the title, *Africa at the Crossroads* (Philadelphia, Westminster Press. 83 p.). In a series entitled Christian Perspectives on Social Problems, it is de-

scribed in the foreword as "a summons and a strategy for emergent Americans". (see Isaacs, no. 162).

395. CARDAIRE, MARCEL. *L'Islam et le terroir africain; études soudaniennes*. Koulouba, Impr. du Gouvernement, 1954. 168 p. BP64.A1C3

"The study of the development of Black Islam and the problem of the spiritual void that follows the disappearance of the old terror beliefs seem to us . . . indissolubly linked" writes the author in his introduction to this analysis of the present-day religious thought of the Sudanic belt of Africa. In Mauritania, Senegal, Mali (then Sudan) Guinea, northern Ghana and Nigeria, the dominant faith of Islam has largely replaced the dying pagan belief in magic, fetishism, and witchcraft which M. Cardaire calls "religions of terror." But their partial survival has led to variations in traditional Islam, and in the Reform movement that began with Wahabism and has spread through Muslim Africa. The writer describes the counterreform movements in former French West Africa.

396. CARPENTER, GEORGE W. *The way in Africa*. New York, Friendship Press, 1959. 165 p. illus. HN663.C3

By the Acting General Secretary of the International Missionary Council, this little paperback is penetrating analysis of the changing cultural, social, and political patterns of Africa, with particular reference to the place of Christianity as "catalyst and conscience." Dr. Carpenter emphasizes the need for ministerial training in Africa, and the point now made by most competent observers of the mission field, that as the African church "comes to maturity the missionaries must resign posts of authority and leadership to Africans."

397. CATHOLIC CHURCH. Pope, 1939-1958 (Pius XII) Fidei donum (21 Apr. 1957) *The future of Africa*; the encyclical, Fidei donum of Pope Pius XII. London, Sword of the Spirit, 1957. 24 p. BV3500.C35

This message, addressed particularly to those working in the mission field, called for "particular heed to the accession of new peoples to the responsibilities of political freedom." The Pope pointed out obstacles—the increase of atheistic materialism in Africa, the spread of Islam—and urged more missionary endeavor and interracial sense of brotherhood.

398. *Changing Africa and the Christian dynamic: A seminar for mission board executives*. Chicago: Center for the Study of the Christian World Mission, Federated Theological Faculty, University of Chicago. 1960. 560 p. DLC



Processed pamphlet containing eleven ably written papers presented at a seminar that brought together over 50 specialists on Christianity in Africa. A timely survey.

399. DELAVIGNETTE, ROBERT L. *Christianisme et colonialisme*. Paris, Fayard, 1960. 127 p. Je sais—je crois. Encyclopédie du Catholique au XX<sup>ième</sup> siècle) JV321.D4

A searching essay by one of France's leading colonial thinkers, Honorary Governor of France Overseas. There are three parts; first the writer assesses the importance of European colonialism at its height in the 19th century. Then he examines the position of Christianity in colonization, his concern mostly with Catholicism. The last part, on prospective meanings of decolonization for Christianity, takes its point of departure from the Papal encyclical *Fidei Donum*, and concludes on the note of fellowship between men of different races.

400. DE MESTRAL, CLAUDE. *Christian literature in Africa*. London, Distributed by the Christian Literature Council, 1959. 84 p. BV2369.D4

The director of an important body prepared this useful survey of principles (the readers, the literature), administrative matters (church leaders and missionary boards), and technical problems (literature committees, Christian bookshops, Christian presses). The last three sections contain lists of addresses; the bookshops and presses are of Protestant sects only.

401. DUNCAN, SYLVIA, and PETER DUNCAN. *Bonganga; experiences of a missionary doctor*. New York, W. Morrow, 1960. 240 p. illus. BV3625.C63B7

Spirited and inspirational account of the work of a Baptist mission doctor in the Congo for over 20 years—a progressive story of dealing with primitive tribesmen subject to malaria, yaws, yellow fever, leprosy, and a host of other tropical diseases. Although in a specific location, the conditions are typical for “the bush” in much of Black Africa.

402. GROVES, CHARLES PELHAM. *The planting of Christianity in Africa*. London, Lutterworth Press, 1948–1958. 4 v. maps. (Lutterworth library, v. 26, Missionary research series, no. 12) BR1360.G7

Published under the auspices of the Department of Missions, Selly Oak Colleges.

Contents.—v. 1 to 1840.—v. 2. 1840–1878.— v. 3. 1878–1914.—v. 4. 1914–1954.

The definitive history in English of Christian missionary work in Africa, Protestant and Catholic, written by a professor of missions in the Selly Oak Colleges, Birmingham. The first volume opens with a glance at the peoples of Africa, then the writer begins his full historical account with the apostolic age in Egypt and North Africa, on through early Christianity to the Islamic invasion which eclipsed all else save in lost Abyssinia until missionary enterprise was begun by the Portuguese in the 15th and 16th centuries. The “period of pause” of the 17th and 18th centuries ended with the antislavery movement, and the first work of missionary societies in Southern Africa, Sierra Leone, the Gambia, Liberia, and the Gold Coast. Volume 2 opens in 1840, the year before the arrival of Livingstone in Africa. It falls into two parts, “Reconnoitering for Advance, 1840–1858,” in West, East, and Livingstone’s “Thrust from the South,” then “Pressing the Advantage, 1858–1878,” which ends with “Livingstone’s Legacy.” Volume 3 depicts the continuing development from 1878 to 1914, and the final volume carries the story through the decade following the Second World War.

403. KITTLER, GLENN D. *The White Fathers*. New York, Harper, 1957. 299 p. illus. BV2300.W5K5

A Catholic layman tells here in dramatic presentation the stirring history of the White Fathers. Founded in North Africa by the great Bishop Lavigerie in 1856, the path of the order in Arab and Black Africa is marked over and over with martyrdom. It is now the largest Catholic missionary order operating in Africa. The present aim of the White Fathers, as of other forward-looking mission groups, is to prepare the African staffs to take over. Recent evidence of this policy occurred, the writer tells us, in 1956, when in Ruanda a French bishop was consecrated by an African bishop, “the product of White Fathers’ missions, schools, and seminaries.”

404. LIVINGSTONE, DAVID, 1813–1873. *Missionary correspondence, 1841–1856*. Edited with an introd. by I. Schapera. Berkeley, University of California Press, 1961. 342 p. DT731.L736 1961

“A basic source of information about what was, or should have been, Livingstone’s main activity during the period of his first residence in Africa: his work as a missionary to the heathen,” reporting to the Board of Directors of the London Missionary Society “regularly, at least twice a year.” The introduction is by

an authority on Southern Africa. Dr. Schapera edited also *Livingstone's Private Journals, 1851-1853*, published by the University of California Press in 1960 (Berkeley, xxiv, 341 p., maps).

A recent biography by George Seaver, *David Livingstone: His Life and Letters* (London, Lutterworth Press, 1957. 650 p.) aims, says the author, "as far as possible to allow the subject of it to tell his own story in his own way," hardly a page failing to include an extract from Livingstone's correspondence with family, friends, and civil authorities as well as the missionary correspondence.

Other works by and about Dr. Livingstone are mentioned in the sections on history of the colonial era and on Central Africa.

405. MENDELSON, JACK. *God, Allah, and Ju Ju, religion in Africa today*. New York, T. Nelson, 1962. 245 p. BR1430.M4

A popular and informative analysis of the influence of Christianity and Islam and the changing but reviving force of animistic rituals and beliefs (the latter strong among the intellectual elites) of present-day Africa. The writer draws less on personal experience than on his study of writings on religion and magic in Africa. Himself a Unitarian, he is not optimistic about the future of African Christianity. The book is favorably reviewed by Dr. Gwendolen Carter in the *New York Times Book Review* of April 29, 1962.

406. MOSMANS, GUY. *L'Église à l'heure de l'Afrique*. Tournai, Éditions Casterman, 1961. 254 p. BX1675.M6

By a White Father who had worked for 16 years in the Kivu Province of the Congo, this is a collection of articles written between 1954 and 1960 for *La Revue nouvelle*, with an additional concluding chapter. Like other recent studies of Christianity in Africa, the theme is that the Church, in order to be an influence in the new order, must be nationalized, with foreign missionaries withdrawn from positions of power, and secular activities, politics in particular, made the province not of the priests but of the laity. A number of his observations in the preindependence period have been borne out by subsequent events.

407. NEW YORK, MISSIONARY RESEARCH LIBRARY. *Directory of North American Protestant foreign missionary agencies*. 4th ed. New York, 1960. 78 p. (MRL directory series no. 11) BV2050.N4 1960

408. OLDHAM, JOSEPH H., and B. D. GIBSON. *The remaking of man in Africa*. London, Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1931. 185 p. LC627.A205 1931a

By the Secretary and the Assistant Secretary of the International Missionary Council, this book is a thoughtful examination of the questions of missionary work in Africa particularly with regard to education. At the time, state-run schools had not been widely developed, except in a few French colonies, and education was largely in the hands of the missions. Appendix B, p. 151-182, gives country-by-country summaries of educational systems.

409. OLIVER, ROLAND. *How Christian is Africa?* London, The Highway Press, 1956. 24 p. DS

A powerful statement in nutshell form of the past, statistics, present state, and future of the Christian missionary movement in Africa. The text is consolidated from three broadcasts by this historian in 1956, under the general title, "Christian Responsibility in Africa." A pioneering study by Dr. Oliver is *The Missionary Factor in East Africa* (London, Longmans, Green. 1952. 302 p.).

410. ROSS, EMORY, and MYRTA ROSS. *Africa disturbed*. New York, Friendship Press, 1959. 183 p. DT14.R59

The noted leader in American missionary work wrote this book with his wife following a trip in 1958 to Africa, which they had known, he tells us, since 1912. Their purpose was to "present Africans' reactions to the impact of the West on their lives," and their investigations went far beyond church matters, though their primary attention was to the work of missions and clergy. The book is written for the use of study groups. The Rosses summarize the discussions in about 800 hours of talk with about 2,000 Africans in 21 areas. Although the contribution made by the Christian gospel has been more fundamental than any other power from the west, the diverse policies and practices of Christians, sectarian and race divisions, are puzzling and unacceptable to Africans, and "Africans desire wider participation in the planning and action of the Christian churches." In an earlier book, *African Heritage* (Friendship Press, 1952. 145 p.), Mr. Ross had stressed North America's responsibility in the Christian effort in Africa.

Another recent publication of the Friendship Press, also for study groups, is by a Sierra Leone minister, doctor, and political leader, and his American wife, John and Rena Karefa-Smart: *The Halting Kingdom; Christianity and the African Revolution* (New York, 1959. 86 p.). Written for the Student Christian Movement, the little book traces the African background, particularly in regard to religious aspects, and the political evolution through colonialism to responsible African leadership, then describes contemporary



Christian activity in Africa, the strengths and weaknesses of the Christian community, and the challenge of the revolution that calls for reconciliation in the church.

411. SCHLOSSER, KATESA. *Propheten in Afrika*. Braunschweig, A. Limbach Verlag, 1949. 426 p. (Kulturgeschichtliche Forschungen. 3. Bd.) BL2421.S35

An ambitious work, identifying leaders of the dissident sects which have arisen widely both among Christian converts and in Islamic Africa. The list of prophets recorded, each through citation of published sources of information, begins in the 8th century when the first wave of Islam brought forth opposing prophets of the old indigenous religions of Africa. These are followed through Northwest Africa, the Sahara, Gambia, South and East Africa, and the Upper Nile. Then came Islamic prophets, also dating from the 8th century and on through the time of the Mad Mullah in Somaliland. Last are discussed the prophets leading splinter movements from the Christian missions, who often represented nationalistic as well as religious dissension, like Harris in Guinea and Kimbangu in the Congo.

Studies on individual prophets and sects are noticed in the regional sections of the present work. Dr. Schlosser has herself a recent book on indigenous churches in South Africa, *Eingeborenenkirchen in Süd- und Südwest-Afrika* (Kiel, Mühlau, 1958. 355 p.).

412. SMITH, EDWIN W. *Aggrey of Africa, a study in black and white*. New York, Doubleday, Doran, 1929. 292 p. illus. E185.97.A26

One of the great names of African history in the twenties is that of the American-educated African religious and educational leader, James Emman Kwegyir Aggrey. As a member of the Phelps-Stokes Education Commission to Africa (see no. 367-368) he traveled widely through all English-speaking countries of the continent; later he served as vice-principal of the new University of Achimota. His fame is as an interpreter of European civilization to his own people, strikingly illustrated in his famous parable of the piano keys—"for harmony you must use both the black and the white." Dr. Smith, author of this full-length biography, was a close friend of Aggrey.

413. SUNDKLER, B. G. M. *Bantu prophets in South Africa*. 2d ed. London, New York, Published for International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1961. 281 p. BR1367.Z8S8 1961

An exhaustive study of the separatist churches in South Africa and of their leaders, first published in

1948. A list of about 800 independent churches is printed as an appendix in 1961. The separatist churches rose in great numbers from 1890 to 1910 and have increased in proportion to the political color bar. Chief among them are the sects of the Zionist and the Ethiopian types; the most famous prophet is perhaps the Nazarite Shembe. Dr. Sundkler explains the religious and social background of the Zulus, the rise of the independent church movement, and its relation to missions. He gives the history of government policy and the place of the churches in the community, then turns to a detailed account of leaders and leadership, and of forms of worship and healing, with their mingling of Christian and pagan practice. The book is mentioned here as being of broad application in Bantu Africa.

414. ——— *The Christian ministry in Africa*. Uppsala, Swedish Institute of Missionary Research, 1960. 346 p. illus. (Studia missionalia Upsaliensia, 2) BR1360.S84

Includes bibliography.

"Whether in the bush or in the city, it is in the local church that the message of Christianity becomes real and relevant, or fails to prove itself as the message of salvation. It is well to keep in mind [the] little groups of pastors and local helpers . . . Their errand is the most important in Africa." This book, the first extensive general study of the native African ministry, is written at the request of the International Missionary Council by a Swedish scholar and missionary who after experience in Zululand and Tanganyika was named Research Secretary of the Council and has traveled widely in Africa gathering the material for his survey. He begins "where the pastor himself begins: with his calling to the ministry;" often the result of a vocation dream. The writer examines the development, mostly recent, of African leadership in both Protestant and Catholic churches rather than dependence on European missionaries, and the role of the pastor in the new Africa and in his relations with his coworkers. Then almost half the text describes the problems of training ministers, and patterns and trends of African theological thought. In an appendix a list is given of theological schools, other than Roman Catholic, in the whole of Africa. Dr. Sundkler says that in his travels of investigation he counted a day lost in which he did not talk with an African pastor, and much of his argument stems from individual instances.

415. TAYLOR, JOHN VERNON. *Christianity and politics in Africa*. London, Penguin Books, 1957. 127 p. (Penguin African series, WA 9)

Dr. Taylor of the International Missionary Council had had missionary experience in Uganda. This forceful little book, written at the height of race feeling in East and Central Africa—the time of Mau Mau and the efforts of the Capricorn Society—urges the missionary's responsibility to the State, and the necessity of the missions influencing the State toward a Christian approach to nationalism and race. The writer avoids, however, advocacy of such outright defiance of the State as that expressed for South Africa by Father Huddleston (see no. 1826).

From his mission station in Uganda, Dr. Taylor wrote an inspirational preface for the handsome and moving pictorial work, *The Passion in Africa* (London, Mowbray, 1957. unpagged). The volume is made up of 24 fine full-page plates from the Passion Play performed in the mission chapel, interspersed with the Gospel verse interpreted in each picture and "spirituals" sung during the performance.

416. TRIMINGHAM, JOHN SPENCER. *Islam in the Sudan*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1949. 80 p. BP65.E5T7

417. ———. *Islam in Ethiopia*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1952. 299 p. BP65.E8T7

418. ———. *Islam in West Africa*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1959. 262 p. BP64.A4W4

419. ———. *A history of Islam in West Africa*. London, Glasgow, New York, Published for the University of Glasgow by the Oxford University Press, 1962. 262 p. BP64.A4W38

420. ———. *Islam in East Africa; the report of a survey undertaken in 1961*. London, Published for the World Council of Churches Commission on World Mission and Evangelism by Edinburgh House, 1962. 47 p., maps. (International Missionary Council. Research pamphlets, no. 9)

Dr. Trimingham, a sociologist and Arabic scholar as well as a clergyman, was in the Sudan as Secretary of the Church Missionary Society in the late forties, and published his first booklet, *The Christian Approach to Islam in the Sudan*, in 1948 (Oxford University Press. 73 p.). The following year came his full-length study of Islam in the Sudan, analyzing the conflict between the dogmatic conception of religion, the shari'a, and the mystic Sufistic interpretation which had inspired the Mahdist movement, and examining

the present day impact of the West upon the Islamic way of life. Dr. Trimingham then turned to Ethiopia. A short pamphlet, *The Christian Church and Mission in Ethiopia*, was published in a Survey series by the World Dominion Press (London, 1951. 73 p.). *Islam in Ethiopia* continues the author's main work, a definitive study of Islam in Africa south of the so-called Middle East. This was carried farther in his *Islam in West Africa*, which deals similarly with the present age and the effects of cultural change. The second volume on West Africa is an historical study of Islam, going back to the medieval states of the Sudan before, during, and after the Mohammedan invasion. The chronological tables in the Appendix run from the Soninke state of Wagadu in A.D. 750–800 to the French conquest of Guinea in 1902. The author is now lecturer in Arabic at the University of Glasgow.

421. WELBOURN, FREDERICK B. *East African rebels; a study of some independent churches*. London, SCM Press, 1961. 258 p. (World mission studies) BR1440.W4

By a clergyman who is Warden of a Hall at Makerere College, this book "falls on the boundary between Church History and Social Psychology." It is a scholarly study of four movements of separatist churches, three in Uganda, and an allied Kikuyu group in Kenya. All, Dr. Welbourn explains, are of the type that, though nationalistic and insistent on independence, "were genuinely trying to be orthodox in doctrine and catholic in outlook." The Uganda groups—the Society of the One Almighty God, led by Joswa Kate Mugema against medicine, the Mengo Gospel Church, led by the Irishwoman Mabel Ensor "against convention," and the African Greek Orthodox Church, led by Reuben Spartas against paternalism—were not of the type that produces revolt. As to the Kikuyu groups, the Kikuyu Independent Schools Association and others, the writer declares that "it is important not to exaggerate" the part they played in the growth of the Mau Mau. There are chapter notes and a bibliography, much of it unpublished source materials.

422. WESTERMANN, DIEDRICH. *Africa and Christianity*. London, Oxford University Press, 1937. 221 p. (Duff lectures, 1935) BV3500.W4

A set of missionary lectures by the great Professor of African Languages who had begun his career in the West African mission field. In these talks he examined the old ideals of the African and their changes, especially under political control, the religious heritage of the pagan, "anima naturaliter christiana," the competition of Christianity both with paganism and Islam,



the connection of missionaries with the African churches, and last, Christian literature—"the more than 250 languages belonging to practically all important linguistic groups in which translations of the Bible or of single Biblical books and other works of a Christian character have been published."

## AGRICULTURE

### *Bibliography*

423. U.S. LIBRARY OF CONGRESS. General Reference and Bibliography Division. *Agricultural development schemes in sub-Saharan Africa; a bibliography*, compiled by Ruth S. Freitag. Washington, 1963. 189 p.

This bibliography, prepared for the African Section with the assistance of a panel of consultants, is for sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

424. *Agricultural economics bulletin for Africa*. no. 1+ Sept. 1962+ Addis Ababa, ECA-FAO Joint Agriculture Division. irregular. DLC

Joint publication of the United Nations Economic Commission for Africa and the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, to appear "at intervals during the year" in English and French editions. The object of the *Bulletin* is "to spread the experiences of African countries in the field of agricultural development, as widely as possible, throughout the continent." The first number carries two long articles (20-35 p.) by specialists, and seven notes of one to four pages on individual agricultural experiments. The last page carries a listing of future meetings.

425. ASSOCIATION POUR L'ÉTUDE TAXONOMIQUE DE LA FLORE D'AFRIQUE TROPICALE. *Vegetation map of Africa south of the Tropic of Cancer*. Explanatory notes by R. W. J. Keay. Carte de la végétation de l'Afrique au sud du Tropic du Cancer. Notes explicatives par R. W. J. Keay. Traduction d'A. Aubréville. London, Oxford University Press, 1959. 24 p. fold. col. map (in pocket) QK965.A78

Bibliography: p. 20-24.

This large map, colored to show the plant communities of the various regions of Africa, is accompanied by notes explaining in technical terms the types of vegetation in Africa south of the Sahara. The author and translator are both noted botanists.

426. AUBREVILLE, ANDRÉ. *Climats, forêts et désertification de l'Afrique tropicale*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1949. 351 p. illus., maps.

QK938.F6A8

"Bibliographie": p. 345-351.

An ecological study by the inspector-general of French colonial forests and waterways, covering tropical forests in general and those of Africa in particular. He treats the causes of climates of the great natural regions, then gives systematic classification of climates and forest formations of tropical and subtropical areas of Africa. The last part examines the problem of the advancing desert. A "climatological and phytogeographical" bibliography is arranged by region. Other works by M. Aubréville deal with specific colonial areas (see no. 1097-98).

427. FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION OF THE UNITED NATIONS. *FAO Africa survey: report on the possibilities of African rural development in relation to economic and social growth*. Rome, 1962. 168 p., tables, fold. map. DLC

A survey by an international team of experts, who examined 33 countries (omitting 22 others), as well as studying available reports. Special reports were prepared for seven countries, and Ghana supplied a report on agricultural development plans. The final report here presented, utilizing these materials, has 3 parts: 1, "The Setting"; 2, "Technical Change and the Balanced Use of Resources"; 3, "Some Problems of Rural Development." The last chapter draws conclusions regarding administrative, financial, and technical phases of rural development.

428. ——— Plant Production and Protection Division. *The grass cover of Africa*, by J. M. Rat-tray, Crop Production and Improvement Branch. Rome, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 1960. 168 p. fold. col. map. (FAO agricultural studies, no 49). QK495.G74F6

Bibliography. p. 136-144.

A technical study in phytogeography, including a large map with colors to indicate the types of grasses indigenous to regions of Africa. The appendices include index of types, geographical distribution, bibliography (p. 136-144), and index of botanical names.

This and the work by Joshi (no. 438) are mentioned as among the more general of the numerous FAO publications having to do with Africa. For any complete listing of FAO documents, the *United Nations Documents Index* should be consulted.

429. GAUDY, M. *Manuel d'agriculture tropicale* (Afrique tropicale et équatoriale). Paris, Maisson Rustique, 1959. 443 p. illus., map, diagrs.

DA

Handbook for students in African agricultural schools and for officials of the agricultural services. The work covers systems and possible improvements in African agriculture, problems of soil conservation, irrigation and drainage, mechanization, and rural economy.

430. GITHENS, THOMAS S., and CARROLL E. WOOD, Jr. *The food resources of Africa*. Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania Press, the University Museum, 1943. 105 p. illus. (maps) diagrs. (African handbooks, edited by H. A. Wieschhoff. 3)

HD2117.G5

Bibliography: p. 100–105.

A wartime handbook in elementary terms for an uninformed public by two American agronomists, based on a careful study of economic and statistical sources then available concerning the whole continent of Africa. The authors explained distinctions in terms of rainfall, elevation, and chief products (the West Mediterranean littoral for grain, desert and semiarid for animal husbandry, the rain forest and park savannah for palm oil seeds, the high grass savannah for peanuts, the mountain and high plateau for coffee, tea, etc.), as well as by geographical regions. Stress was laid on the primitive methods of farming, the communal ownership of arable land in tribal society, the lack of incentive to grow larger crops, the influence of foreign settlement. The statistics of production for specific crops are interesting in comparison with those in current statistical studies (e.g., those of U.S. Foreign Agriculture).

431. GT. BRIT. Colonial Advisory Council of Agriculture, Animal Health and Forestry. *The improvement of cattle in British colonial territories in Africa*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1953. 144 p. (Publication no. 3)

SF196.G7A52

432. ——— *The indigenous cattle of the British dependent territories in Africa; with material on certain other African countries*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1957. 186 p. 119 plates. (Publication no. 5)

SF196.A35G7

The first paper is a survey with recommendations for the solution of problems that might lead to improvement of the African livestock—a phase of the general British program of helping the development of

the native economy of the territories progressing toward independence. The second paper is a comprehensive and semitechnical description of the types of cattle indigenous to various regions of Africa. Sketch maps show migratory routes of origin and similar data. The material had been compiled in 1955 and 1956; by the time of its publication Ghana had already become an independent country.

433. HARROY, JEAN PAUL. *Afrique, terre qui meurt, la dégradation des sols africains sous l'influence de la colonisation*. Bruxelles, M. Hayez, 1944. x, 557 p. fold. map.

S623.H37

“Principaux ouvrages cités”: p. 549–557.

Among important older studies of soil exhaustion and erosion in Africa is this brilliant work by the Belgian director of a foundation promoting scientific study of the national parks of the Belgian Congo. Of his seven lucidly presented sections, two are devoted to the transformation of native life and of African agriculture under colonization and exploitation, and two to possible remedial measures and their application through science, education, and government direction. M. Harroy has since been director of the Institut de Recherches Scientifiques en Afrique Centrale (IRSAC) and governor of Ruanda-Urundi.

434. HESELTINE, NIGEL. *Remaking Africa*. London, Museum Press, 1961. 159 p.

DT30.H4

Thomas Balogh of Oxford, writing the foreword to this diagnosis of African problems by an FAO official, formerly an agricultural officer in East Africa, calls it “a signpost which points towards effective solutions” of the great difficulties confronting the new states in developing viable economies. Mr. Heseltine looks back at the historical picture and at the need for a revolution in agriculture to maintain and increase fertility of the land. He discusses the problem of nomadism and transhumancy of the cattle people, the failing vegetation of the savannah belt, the need for conservation in the river valleys, then outlines requirements for the “big push” in agriculture, town building, communications, and industrialization and the fields for foreign aid.

A valuable general book is by Richard C. Haw, *The Conservation of Natural Resources* (London, Faber & Faber, 1959. 256 p.). The writer has been an agricultural officer in Southern Rhodesia, and has had extensive experience with combatting soil erosion in South, East, and Central Africa. One of his illustrations is a sketch map showing land classification with controlled intensive cultivation as practiced on the University Farm in Salisbury.



435. IRVINE, FREDERICK R. *A text-book of West African agriculture, soils and crops*. 2d ed. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1953. 367 p. illus. S517.A45I7 1953

This little book by an agronomist at Achimota was written for his African students and though specifying West African conditions, is largely applicable to most of Africa south of the Sahara. The first edition was published in 1934. The text covers soils and manures, crops, propagation, storage, insect pests, plant diseases, and other elementary facts of agricultural science.

436. JOHNSTON, BRUCE F. *The staple food economies of western tropical Africa*. Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1958. 305 p. illus. (Stanford University. Food Research Institute. Studies in tropical development). HD2119.W4J6

Authoritative work by an economist of this Institute, which leads in the study of food economics. The broad region covered by Dr. Johnston in his examination of the most important food crops includes Angola and the Belgian Congo together with the territories of former French and British West Africa. The physical environment is considered, and the geographical distribution of the major crops—millets and sorghums, rice, maize, plantains, manioc, yams, cocoyams, sweet potatoes—economic factors and social, cultural and historical influences, the place of the foods in African diets, and prospects for changes and increasing production.

437. JONES, WILLIAM O. *Manioc in Africa*. Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1959. 315 p. illus., maps. (Stanford University. Food Research Institute. Studies in tropical development) SB211.C3J6

Manioc, or as it is perhaps more usually known, cassava, is one of the chief starchy staples of African diet. Dr. Jones explains that when he began collecting material on this plant as a major supplier of food and feed calories to the tropical world, he had thought he could devote one of fourteen chapters to Africa and Madagascar; his research soon led to this complete book on African uses of manioc alone. His study is written with so much interesting nontechnical detail that the layman can get pleasure from turning pages. He goes into background of land, climate and people, then into the history of the introduction and spread of manioc, methods of cultivation and preparation, and production in the Congo, Guinea, and East Africa. Citations are given at ends of chapters and there is a section of

notes and separate name and subject indexes. The text is illustrated with many sketch maps.

438. JOSHI, N. R. *Types and breeds of African cattle*, prepared by N. R. Joshi, E. A. McLaughlin, and Ralph W. Phillips. Rome, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 1957. 297 p., tables. (FAO agricultural studies, no. 37) SF196.A3J6

Issued also in French.

Information on indigenous types and breeds of African cattle of importance as to numbers and differentiation. It is explained that tribal migrations and nomadic movements have tended to produce many intermediate types. There are five main types, which are described in detail, with regard to characteristics, measurements, numbers, milk production, etc.

439. MONOD, THÉODORE. *Les grandes divisions chorologiques de l'Afrique; rapport présenté à la Réunion de spécialistes sur la phytogéographie, Yangambi, 29 juillet-8 août 1956*. Londres [Commission de coopération technique en Afrique au sud du Sahara] 1957. 146 p. illus., fold. map. (Scientific Council for Africa South of the Sahara. Publication, no. 24) AZ800.C35, no. 24

Bibliography: p. 127-137.

A very learned paper by the Director of the Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, constituting "a descriptive explanation and definition of the phytogeographic territories of the continent on the upper levels of the floristic hierarchy (Regions and Domains)," and comparing the patterns thus established with the findings of zoologists. Professor Monod discusses the conclusions of many scientists and includes a long bibliography (p. 127-137). His first paragraphs define "chorological" in a number of uses, stating his meaning as "the study of the dispersion and distribution of living beings," interpreted in this paper in botanical terms.

440. PHILLIPS, JOHN F. V. *Agriculture and ecology in Africa*, a study of actual and potential development south of the Sahara. New York, Praeger, 1960. 423 p. map, tables. (Books that matter) S471.A35P45 1960

Bibliography: p. 397-412.

The writer, "forester, conservationist, agriculturalist and ecologist," was formerly at the University College of Ghana, and the foreword to this important book, by Nkrumah, comments on the highly technical nature of the subject. Its scope is set forth simply in

the first chapter as "no more than a preliminary recording of some salient points" regarding hazards and potentialities in agricultural and related development, classification of ecological units, and suggestions as to ways and means of such development. The contents are in five books, the first the ecological basis and background of problems inherent in African climate, vegetation and soils, wild life, and domesticated animals. Then two books discuss the bioclimatic regions of the forest and the great wooded savannah. Book four is on human and animal health and economics and planning. The last book offers conclusions and suggestions for "saving Africa unnecessary disappointment" in her development schemes for agriculture.

Professor Phillips, who is now adviser on agricultural development to the Government of Southern Rhodesia, has been on several World Bank and other international missions. His experience in Africa and other parts of the tropical world has led to a second book, *The Development of Agriculture and Forestry in the Tropics* (London, Faber & Faber, 1961. 212 p.), in which the problems of Africa are discussed in comparison with those of the rest of the tropical world.

441. PIM, Sir ALAN W. *Colonial agricultural production*; the contribution made by native peasants and by foreign enterprise. Issued under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1946. 190 p. HD1930.A3P5

Bibliographical footnotes.

By an expert who had directed many of the pre-war financial and economic surveys of the colonies, and in 1940 published an important *Financial and Economic History of the African Tropical Territories* (Oxford University Press). In this overall study he was particularly concerned with the "plantation-peasant issue," that is, whether colonial agriculture should be encouraged to develop in the direction of large-scale plantation enterprises, usually of one crop, or toward the peasant production, which should be diversified in connection with the export crops. Almost half the book is devoted to the discussion of agriculture in the African colonies. (The large-scale enterprise, advocated by many influential British leaders, was unfortunately exemplified in the Groundnuts Scheme in Tanganyika (see no. 1369).

442. SHANTZ, HOMER L. *Agricultural regions of Africa*. Published in *Economic geography*, Clark University, Worcester, Massachusetts. With 297 photographs by the author unless otherwise cited. Santa Barbara, Calif., H. L. Shantz [1944?] cover-title, 327 p. illus. (incl. maps) S471.A35S48

Nine articles from *Economic Geography*, v. 16-19, 1940-1943.

Dr. Shantz, a distinguished American plant physiologist, began his studies of African agriculture in connection with the American Commission to Negotiate Peace in 1918-19, and went on special details to Africa to study crops in 1919-20 and 1924. In 1923 he published, with C. F. Marbut as collaborator, an authoritative study, *Vegetation and Soils of Africa* (American Geographical Society, 1923. 263 p.). His nine articles in *Economic Geography* form a valuable introductory survey for the layman. The first two papers (January, April 1940), are on "Basic Factors," the figures not later than 1931; tables showing all statistical aspects are scattered through the text. The succeeding articles describe vegetation and potential productivity of the land (October 1940, July, October 1941), present and potential productivity (July, October 1942), and finally "Regional Distribution and Character of Land Use" (January, July 1943). Much is of sufficiently general character to have remained valid in spite of the changes of the intervening period. In his chapter of potentials Dr. Shantz reckoned that Africa has 11 percent of the world's forest land, a third of the world's grazing land, and 28 percent of the total potential crop land area of the world.

443. SHANTZ, HOMER L. and B. L. TURNER. *Photographic documentation of vegetational changes in Africa over a third of a century*. Tucson, 1958. 158 p. illus., map, diagrs. (University of Arizona, College of Agriculture. Report 169). QK965.S5

In Dr. Shantz's three trips to Africa in 1919, 1920, and 1924, some 5,000 photographs had been taken to illustrate natural plant coverage. In 1956-57 an attempt was made to reduplicate the photographic record. Only 241, or 18.4 percent of the former shots could be secured, as urban development or agricultural extension had changed the original sites. These photographs are reproduced in the volume undertaken as a joint project between the College of Agriculture at the University of Arizona and the Office of Naval Research. The text explains changes in terms of animals and men rather than climate. Dr. Shantz, who had formerly been president of the University of Arizona, died in 1958 shortly before publication of this unusually valuable document.

444. TEMPANY, HAROLD A., and D. H. GRIST. *An introduction to tropical agriculture*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1958. 347 p. SB111.T4



The late Sir Harold Tempany was agricultural adviser to the Secretary of State for the Colonies. This book, written in collaboration with a former agricultural economist of Malaya, is general for tropical regions. It is in three parts, the first on the tropical background of climate, soils, types of vegetation, etc., the second on agricultural practices, and the third on economic conditions of marketing and transport, land tenure and use, finance and credit.

Longmans, Green has followed this work with a Tropical Agriculture series in which the volumes cover Africa and the rest of the tropical world in their analysis of all aspects relating to specific agricultural products. There have been published to date, *Rice*, by D. H. Grist (1959), *Bananas*, by N. W. Simmonds (1959), *Beekeeping in the Tropics*, by F. G. Smith (1960), *Introduction to Animal Husbandry*, by G. Williamson and W. J. A. Payne (1960), and *Cocoa*, by Duncan H. Urquhart (1961). The last named is the second edition of a work first published in 1955 by the Director of Agriculture for Ghana. The other books are of equal authority as to authorship and coverage. They are prepared "with the active encouragement" of the Colonial Advisory Council of Agriculture, Animal Health and Forestry.

445. U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE. Economic Research Service. [Publications of the African and Middle East Analysis Branch, Regional Analysis Division] Washington.

The Africa and Middle East Analysis Branch was a part of the Foreign Agricultural Service until April 1961, when it was transferred to the newly formed Economic Research Service (ERS). Its publications on Africa formerly issued in the FAS-M series, and occasionally in the more substantial Foreign Agricultural Report series, now appear in the ERS-Foreign series. The majority of these publications apply to a single country or region, and they vary in extent from processed "Notes" to full-scale surveys of the agricultural economies of specific countries. Thus there have been studies of the agricultural economy of the Belgian Congo and Ruanda-Urundi, and of the Sudan, as well as of several states of North Africa. Notes on the agricultural economy have been issued for various countries, including the Central African Republic, Dahomey, Niger, and Upper Volta. The following publications are cited as of general or regional interest rather than being limited to one country:

- Agricultural developments in Angola, British East Africa, Rhodesia and Nyasaland, and Zanzibar—their effects on U.S. farm exports*, by Robert C. Moncure. 1958. 81 p. illus. (Foreign agriculture report no. 111)  
*Citrus industry of Southern Africa*, by Joseph H. Burke. 1957. 89 p. illus., fold. map, tables. (Foreign agriculture report no. 103)  
*Cotton production in Africa, trends and prospects*, by Horace G. Porter and Thomas R. Richmond. Feb.

1960. 40 p. illus. (Foreign agriculture report no. 117)

*The Outlook for wheat and flour imports in tropical Africa*, by Bruce F. Johnston. 1959. 34 p. (FAS-M-8)

*Planting and harvesting seasons for Africa and West Asia*, by Ione L. Bauman. 1960. 60 p., tables. (FAS-M-90)

446. UVAROV, BORIS P. *Locust research and control, 1929–1950*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1951. 67 p. (Colonial research publication, no. 10) JV33.G7A52, no. 10

Record of the work done by Great Britain in cooperation with other Governments in research on the locust problem and in campaigns against locust plagues, which have caused periodical devastations and famines in Africa and Asia. The author was director of the Anti-Locust Research Centre of the Colonial Office.

A convention was signed in Paris on May 15, 1952 by the Governments of the United Kingdom, Belgium, and France regarding the supervision and effective control of the African migratory locust (London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1953. Cmd. no. 8820). Locust control has now come under the auspices of the Food and Agriculture Organization, in addition to work carried out in East Africa under the Desert Locust Survey and the Desert Locust Control Organisation, both organs of the East African Common Services Organisation.

## NATURAL SCIENCES

447. BANNERMAN, DAVID ARMITAGE. *The birds of West and Equatorial Africa*. Edinburgh, Oliver & Boyd, 1953. 2 v. (1,526 p.) QL692.B16

Handbook with full descriptions in clear, simple language, and with technical data, illustrated with drawings and color plates of all species. The two-volume edition is condensed from an eight-volume work by this leading British ornithologist, *Birds of Tropical West Africa* (London, Crown Agents for the Colonies, 1930–51). A portion of the handbook has been further condensed for a popular audience in a volume of the Penguin Books series, *Larger Birds of West Africa* (Harmondsworth, Baltimore, 1958. 195 p.).

448. CARRINGTON, RICHARD. *Elephants: a short account of their natural history, evolution and influence on mankind*. London, Chatto & Windus, 1959. 272 p. illus. QL737.U8C3

A fascinating account of elephants, from the prehistoric prototypes to the surviving African and Asian species. Mr. Carrington gives special attention to pro-

visions for their preservation in the national parks of Africa.

449. COPLEY, HUGH. *The game fishes of Africa*. London, H. F. & G. Witherby, 1952. 276 p. illus. QL635.A1C6

Designed to be a standard reference book, a companion volume to the time-honored work of Richard Lydekker, *The Game Animals of Africa*, 2d ed., rev. by J. G. Dollman (London, Ward, 1926. 483 p.).

Mr. Copley has also prepared illustrated booklets on the fauna of East Africa, among them one published by Witherby, *Common Freshwater Fishes of East Africa* (1958. 172 p.), and several in a series of Highway Nature Guides, published by the Highway Press in Nairobi; these include *Lakes and Rivers of Kenya* (1948. 80 p.), *Small Mammals of Kenya* (1950. 96 p.), and *Wonders of the Kenya Seashore* [birds, fishes, shells, etc.] (1946. 78 p.).

450. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *The wild resources of East and Central Africa: a report following a visit to Kenya, Uganda, Tanganyika, Northern and Southern Rhodesia and Nyasaland in February and March, 1960*; by Dr. E. B. Worthington. London, H.M. Stationery Office, 1961. 26 p. (Colonial no. 352) JV33.G7A5, no. 352

This report by Dr. Worthington as Deputy Director General (Scientific) of Nature Conservancy, a British Government office established in 1949, relates specifically only to those parts of Africa south of the Sahara still at the time under British authority, but is widely applicable to the rest of the subcontinent. His thesis is that the extremely varied and rich wild flora and fauna of Africa is "a cultural and scientific asset of priceless value" and that increasing efforts must be made by international bureaus and governments, particularly the new independent governments, to conserve their wild resources. The hardest problem, he warns, is that of influencing African public opinion to regard wild life as an asset rather than a nuisance.

A comparable report of a mission accomplished for UNESCO in July–September 1960 was made by Sir Julian Huxley, *The Conservation of Wild Life and Natural Habitats in Central and East Africa* (Paris, UNESCO, 1961. 113 p.; bibliography, p. 110–113). The writer's conclusions are more specific than those expressed by Dr. Worthington, ending with 46 points on which he recommends urgent study.

451. GRZIMEK, BERNARD, and MICHAEL GRZIMEK. *Serengeti shall not die*. [Translated from the German by E. L. and D. Rewald] London, H. Hamilton, 1960. 344 p. illus. QH77.T3G713

Dr. Grzimek, one of whose books had in the English edition the title, *Dr. Jimek, I Presume*, is Director of the Frankfurt Zoo. In this latest of several accounts of his collecting trips to Africa he was accompanied by his son, the joint author, who met a tragic death at the end of the expedition. As in his previous *No Room for Wild Animals* (London, Thames & Hudson, 1956. 250 p.), a large part of his attention is devoted to the protest against destruction of wild life in Africa. Serengeti, the national park for the protection of wild life in Tanganyika, is one of the best known haunts of big game. A note in *East Africa and Rhodesia* of December 20, 1962, reports that Dr. Grzimek had arrived in Nairobi with £200,000 he had collected for expenditure on game preservation in East Africa, mainly in Tanganyika.

An English book that stresses the same theme of preservation of wild life is *Animal Africa*, by Earl Denman (London, R. Hale, 1957. 208 p.). It includes an appendix listing the national parks and game reserves of the entire continent.

452. GUGGISBERG, CHARLES A. W. *Simba; the life of the lion*. Cape Town, Timmins; London, Bailey Bros., and Swinfen, 1961. 304 p. illus. QL737.C2G92

American ed. Chilton Books, New York, 1963.

A serious and valuable monograph on the African lion, including description of lion behavior, history, and folklore. Although in style suited to a lay audience, the work shows the writer's scholarship.

Two books on lion behavior have risen high on the best-seller lists of the last 3 years. Joy Adamson's *Born Free; A Lioness of Two Worlds* (New York, Pantheon Books, 1960. 160 p.), and its sequel, *Living Free: The Story of Elsa and Her Cubs* (New York, Harcourt, 1961. 161 p.), have endeared to American hearts the lioness whom the gamekeeper and his wife brought up as a pet kitten before reintroducing her to her natural way of life.

453. KOFFLER, CAMILLA. *Animals in Africa*, photographed by Ylla [pseud.] Text by L. S. B. Leahey. New York, Harper, 1953. 144 p. QL336.K6

The fine plates, some in the form of color inserts, in this album of animal pictures by a noted photographer are reinforced by nontechnical comment on the wild denizens of East Africa written by Kenya's leading natural scientist, the Director of the Coryndon Museum in Nairobi. The book ends with Ylla's account of her picture taking, "The Photographer's Story" (p. 127–144).



454. MACKWORTH-PRAED, CYRIL W., and CLAUDE H. B. GRANT. *Birds of Eastern and North Eastern Africa*. 2d ed. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1957-60. 2 v. (African handbook of birds, ser. 1, v. 1-2)

QL692.M312

Reprint, with additions, of the first edition of this authoritative ornithological handbook which had been published in 1952-55. The various species of birds are cataloged with brief descriptions and diagrams, illustrated in black and white drawings and color plates. The two big volumes have, respectively, 806 and 1,113 pages, with full unpaginated indexes of scientific and popular names.

In its 1961 catalog Longmans, Green announced the first volume of the African Handbook of Birds, series 2, *Birds of Southern Africa*, by the same two ornithologists.

455. MOOREHEAD, ALAN. *No room in the ark*. New York, Harper, 1960. 227 p. illus. QL336.M6

The noted war correspondent in this delightful and sophisticated book turns his attention to wild life and incidentally to tribal life in eastern and southern Africa.

The personal narratives of the travelers who hunt big game, sometimes with gun but nowadays more frequently with camera, continue as numerous as in the days before the "wind of change" blew over the "bush" of which they write. Some are nostalgic reminiscences of long experience, others reports of individual safaris. Among recent titles, the following represent no more than a haphazard selection of always readable and often informative works:

- GATTI, ATTILIO. *Africa is adventure*. New York, J. Messner, 1959. 249 p. QL336.G3

By a veteran safari writer, who has 16 other African books to his credit on the flyleaf.

- FORAN, W. ROBERT. *A breath of the wilds*. London, R. Hale, 1958. 206 p. QL336.F6 1958

A white hunter's reminiscences regarding pursuit of big game, mostly in East Africa.

- BROM, JOHN L. *Twenty thousand miles in the African jungle*. London, Gollancz, 1958. 224 p. illus. DT352.B713

The author of *Kon-tiki* was given a contract to make a film on the private lives of the animals of Africa, which took him to the big game country of Central and Eastern Africa. He observed and photographed the wilds, people, both African and European, and a lavish variety of beasts.

- BELL, WALTER D. *Bell of Africa*; with appendix on rifles and shooting. Boston, C. T. Branford, 1961. 236 p. illus. SK305.E3B39 1961

The most recent of a number of books by elephant hunters, in English, French, German, and other languages. A notable French study is by Georges Blond, *La grande aventure des éléphants* (Paris, Fayard, 1959. 252 p.).

- MULDOON, GUY D. *Leopards in the night*. New York, British Book Service, 1960. 234 p. First English ed., 1955. SK33.M78 1960

By an official of the Department of Agriculture in Nyasaland, part of whose duty consisted in protecting the villagers from their wild neighbors. He specialized in leopards, though on occasion he took on lions, baboons, or what have you.

- POTOUS, PAUL L. *My enemy, the crocodile; the strange story of Africa's deadliest business*. New York, W. Funk, 1957. 214 p. illus. QL666.C9P6 1957

This hunter's narrative, also specialized as to quarry, is by another oldtimer of Nyasaland.

456. SKAIFE, SYDNEY H. *African insect life*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1953. 387 p. QL485.S54

By a South African entomologist, this book is written "in language as simple as is consistent with scientific accuracy," primarily intended for farmers, gardeners, and householders who cope with African insect friends and foes. Arrangement is systematic by orders, from lowest to highest—primitive insects, cockroaches, to bees and wasps, ants. Illustrated with drawings and photographs. The few color plates are mostly of the more amiable insects, moths and butterflies.

## GEOLOGY AND MINERAL RESOURCES

457. EUROPE FRANCE OUTREMER. *Exploitations et perspectives minières de l'Afrique*. Paris, 1961. 59 p. (Its no. 382, 39. année, sept. 1961) JV1801.E65, no. 382

A special issue of this magazine devoted to the mineral resources of Africa. Articles are by Fernand Blondel, Raymond Furon, and other specialists. They cover general aspects, perspectives and markets for the principal minerals, iron, bauxite, uranium, manganese, phosphates, etc., then report on special projects, mostly in French-speaking Africa.

458. FURON, RAYMOND. *Géologie de l'Afrique*. 2. éd. Paris, Payot, 1960. 400 p. illus., maps (Bibliothèque scientifique) NN

Translation by A. Hallam and L. A. Stevens: *Geology of Africa*. New York, Hafner Pub. Co., 1963. 377 p.

459. — *Les ressources minérales de l'Afrique, leur découverte, leur exploitation, les nouveaux problèmes*. 2. éd. Paris, Payot, 1961. 284 p. maps, diagrs. (Bibliothèque économique) TN115.F8 1961



Professor Furon of the Académie des Sciences d'Outre-Mer is a leading geologist who has specialized on the study of Africa. The first edition of his *Ressources minérales de l'Afrique* came out in 1944; that of his *Géologie de l'Afrique* in 1950. The new revised editions account for the advances in knowledge and development of recent years. The *Géologie* begins with a general survey of stratigraphy of the continent, then 25 chapters on individual regions, exclusive of North Africa. There are new and abundant footnote references. The even more extensively revised and modernized *Ressources minérales* has a general and historical introduction, a classification and allocation of individual mineral products, and discussion of their regional importance, concluding with prospects and problems for the future. As the respective series in which the two works are issued indicate, the first is couched in more scientific terms, the second is concerned with practical and economic aspects.

460. POSTEL, ALBERT W. *The mineral resources of Africa*. Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania Press, the University Museum, 1943. 105 p. maps. TN115.P6

Useful and simple statement of the chief mineral deposits and industries of Africa, with tables of available statistics, now of course much outdated. The writer's survey is not by regions but by substances, base metals, nonferrous metals, minor metals, precious metals, nonmetallics, with separate sections on water-power and on the minerals of Madagascar.

461. ROZIN, M. S. *Geografiya poleznykh iskopayemykh Afriki*. Moskva, Gos. izd-vo geogr. lit.-ry, 1957. 278 p. maps. TN115.R6

Bibliography: p. 258-263.

This work, whose title means "Geography of Useful and Mineral Resources," is a general survey of mines and mineral resources throughout Africa. Its many statistics are carried through 1955.

462. WOODTLI, ROBERT. *Le potentiel minéral africain*. Lausanne, Centre de recherches européennes, École des H.E.C., [Hautes études commerciales] Université de Lausanne, 1961. 302 p. (L'Europe et l'Afrique, v. 1) HD9506.A2W6

Bibliography: p. 295-302.

Compendium of detailed information on mineral resources of Africa by an eminent Swiss geologist. The book is in two parts, with brief general introduction and conclusions. Part 1, of about 170 pages, classifies individual minerals, and names the chief African de-

posits; the arrangement is alphabetical from "Abrasis" to "Zirconium et Halmium." The second part (p. 197-274) specifies resources of the African states, similarly in alphabetical order. In his conclusion Dr. Woodtli examines the place of Africa in world mineral production, as a whole and by region, and speculates on the future role of the European in mineral development. He considers that as "counselor," the white man will be needed for many years to come.

## SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

463. COMMISSION FOR TECHNICAL CO-OPERATION IN AFRICA SOUTH OF THE SAHARA. *Inter-African scientific and technical co-operation, 1948-1955*. London, Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara [and] Scientific Council for Africa South of the Sahara, Bukavu, 1956. xv, 294 p. maps. HC501.C6

The Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara (CCTA) and its scientific advisory body, the Scientific Council for Africa (CSA) were established in 1950 by six governments then responsible for African development and welfare, Belgium, France, Portugal, the United Kingdom, Southern Rhodesia, and the Union of South Africa. The purpose was to provide a long-term program of technical and scientific conferences and exchanges of technicians and research workers. The Secretariats of the two bodies were merged in a Joint Secretariat in 1954, with two seats, one in London, the other in Bukavu. The comprehensive report in 1956 tells in detail of conferences held, projects, and recommendations by CCTA and its affiliates from 1948, when the idea was first proposed, to 1955. The first chapters describe the organization and the scope and accomplishment of the bureaus set up under it, which "represent a network of technical co-operation covering practically every field of technical activity in Africa south of the Sahara." The list of bureaus and committees is given on p. 137-138, followed by an index of technical conferences held; these are in five groups: natural resources, health, organization of production, social welfare, and statistics. The list of CSA publications is given on a final page.

At inter-African governmental conferences in the sixties, the CCTA/CSA has been much discussed as an important nucleus for African unification. Changes have come over the organization. Southern Rhodesia was replaced as a member by the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland by 1954. In 1957



Ghana was admitted to membership on the Commission, and by 1960 was objecting that the colonial powers were full members. In 1958, as the new African states began taking membership, there was begun transfer of the Secretariat from London to Lagos; as of 1962 this was not completed, the publications office still being in London. In 1960 the office at Bukavu in the former Belgian Congo was liquidated. The 17th session of CCTA (also sessions of CSA and of the financial affiliate, FAMA—Foundation for Mutual Assistance in Africa) was held at Abidjan in February 1962. The membership now includes all the new African governments, the phrase “south of the Sahara” has been dropped as North African governments are taken in, the South African Republic has been thrown out, and the position of Portugal is not determined (“untouchable,” according to an article in *West Africa*, Mar. 17, 1962). Britain, France, and Belgium will be voteless observers. There were in 1962 29 member nations, and the former French Secretary-General Claude Cheysson has been succeeded by the Mauritanian Touré.

A bimonthly information bulletin, *Science-Afrique*, issued by CCTA/CSA since 1956 has been the most useful source for data regarding the conferences and operations of the organization and its affiliates. On its back pages were listed the various bureaus and committees, and all publications. The bulletin was suspended after the issue of February 1961; it is to be hoped that the Secretariat will again bring it to life.

464. *Foundation for Mutual Assistance in Africa South of the Sahara* [FAMA] London, CCTA/CSA, Joint Secretariat, 1959. 4 p. HC501.F6

Leaflet explaining the Foundation which was formed in February 1958 to promote technical aid in Africa. Modeled on the Colombo Plan, its functions are to find out about offers of and requests for assistance and to arrange bilateral agreements over and above existing programs. Its periodic reports are available from CCTA/CSA. A press release from Lagos headquarters reviews the program adopted at the 4th meeting in Abidjan in February 1962.

465. NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES, Washington, D.C. *Recommendations for strengthening science and technology in selected areas of Africa South of the Sahara*. Prepared for the International Cooperation Administration. Washington, National Academy of Sciences, National Research Council, 1959. 108, 12 p. map. T28.A5N3

Bibliography: 12 p. at end.

This study, known as the Harrar Report (Executive Director, Dr. J. George Harrar of the Rockefeller Foundation) was an attempt to draw up guidelines for long-range patterns of technical assistance to Africa. The collaboration and advice of a long list of specialists in African studies and of scientific consultants were enlisted. The stress is on educational needs; the most important contribution foreign countries can make is stated to be “support to educational programs whose object is to train an ever-increasing number of Africans for a wide variety of national responsibilities.” In section after section, dealing with aspects of education *per se*, with medical and public health services, agriculture, national resources, engineering, technology and industry, the primary recommendations are for the establishment of training centers for African personnel. Although the study is limited to countries where English is generally spoken, including Ethiopia, Somalia, and the Sudan (but excluding South Africa), the recommendations are applicable throughout tropical and subtropical Africa.

466. SCIENTIFIC COUNCIL FOR AFRICA SOUTH OF THE SAHARA (CSA) *Report of the Secretary-General to the 13th meeting of the Scientific Council*, Muguga, 1962. CCTA. 1962. 148 p. [n.p.] DLC

Distributed by the Publications Bureau, Watergate House, York Buildings, London, W.C. 2.

The most recent report of CSA as the present bibliography goes to press. In three parts: 1, “General Questions” (the Council, the Commission, FAMA, training of personnel); 2, “Natural Resources” (activities in conservation, climatology, pedology, etc.); 3, “Social, Economic and Technical” (activities in public health, linguistics, and other social sciences, education, etc.). There are five useful appendixes: 1, “Meetings Held under CCTA/CSA/FAMA Auspices from June 1961 to June 1962”; 2, “Meetings . . . [Prospective] 1962–64”; 3, “Other Meetings at which CCTA was Represented, June 1961–June 1962”; 4, “Publications”; 5, “List of Joint Projects.”

467. WORTHINGTON, EDGAR B. *Science in the development of Africa*; a review of the contribution of physical and biological knowledge south of the Sahara. London, Commission for Technical Co-operation in Africa South of the Sahara, 1958. xix, 462 p. illus., maps. Q127.A2W62

In 1938 Dr. Worthington, who had been connected with Lord Hailey’s African Survey Committee, pub-

lished a volume called *Science in Africa* (London, Oxford University Press, 746 p.; bibliography, p. 626-691), in which he reviewed scientific research carried out in all parts of tropical and southern Africa. When the Scientific Council for Africa was formed, Dr. Worthington was appointed its first Secretary-General 1950-55). The new version of his study, prepared for CCTA/CSA, covers, besides the previously recorded research, the work accomplished or projected under the aegis of the new international organizations. He divides the book in four parts: "Principles and Generalities" (the changing scene, principles of development and of science, the agencies devoted to research); "Physical Background" (research in geography and mapping, geology, meteorology, hydrology, soils); "Biological Subjects" (botany, forestry, wild life, fish, insects and their control, plant and animal industry and diseases); "Human Subjects" (health and medicine, archaeology, and the social sciences). The appendixes give a much-needed list of abbreviations, the principal inter-African meetings from 1948-56, a list of scientific bodies and services, and a bibliography (p. 421-435). The work is reviewed at length by R. W. Steel in *African Affairs* of April 1959.

## MEDICINE

468. CAROTHERS, JOHN C. *The African mind in health and disease; a study in ethnopsychiatry*. Geneva, World Health Organization, 1953. 177 p. diagr. (World Health Organization. Monograph series, no. 17) GN651.C28  
Bibliography: p. 173-177.

Dr. Carothers has been a medical officer in a Kenya mental hospital and Consultant in Mental Health to WHO. In this technical study, full of statistics, he drew on his own experience and that of many other authorities to examine African psychology against the background of the environment, physical anthropology, and other factors. He included comparative consideration of the psychology and psychiatry of the Negro in the United States.

469. CLEMES, GENE PHILLIPS. *Drum call of hope*. New York, Published for American Leprosy Missions, Inc. by Friendship Press, 1959. 96 p. BV2637.C55

Inspirational little book, addressed to a general or juvenile audience, with pictures and text telling the story of the great modern advance in controlling leprosy in Africa.

470. DICK-READ, GRANTLEY. *No time for fear*. London, Heinemann, 1955. 235 p. illus.

GN482.1.D5

Dr. Dick-Read is an advocate of natural births, on which he has written a number of studies. In this book he examined practices of natural childbirth among tribes of Central Africa, particularly in Rhodesia and the Belgian Congo.

471. GELFAND, MICHAEL. *The sick African; a clinical study*. 3d ed. Cape Town, Juta, 1957. 866 p. DNLM

A handbook on diseases most common to the native of Africa—"destined," said a reviewer in *African Affairs*, at the time of its first publication (1944) "to lie upon the table of doctors, nuns, priests, medical missionaries, colonial administrators, in fact, every white man and woman working in Equatorial Africa who has to treat the sick African." The preliminary chapters discuss popular fallacies regarding tropical diseases and native psychology—the native fear of hospitals, which anger the dark forces of the spirit world in which they unswervingly believe, their clinging to witch doctors, their conviction that illness is caused by witchcraft. Following chapters describe and analyze individual diseases and give directions for their treatment, in a style as little technical as possible. Other studies by Dr. Gelfand relate specifically to Southern Africa.

472. INTERNATIONAL CHILDREN'S CENTER. *Journées africaines de pédiatrie*. Dakar, du 12 au 16 avril 1960. Rapports. Paris, 1961. 256 p. illus. DLC

This one of a number of recent conferences relating to African children (see also no. 236) was concerned with questions of health and childhood diseases.

473. RODGER, FREDERICK C. *Blindness in West Africa*. London, Published for the Royal Commonwealth Society for the Blind by H. K. Lewis, 1959. xiv, 262 p. illus., maps, diagrs. RE30.A35R6

Although based on a survey in West Africa, this highly technical monograph is applicable to the entire continent of Africa.

474. SACHS, WULF. *Black anger*. Boston, Little, Brown & Co., 1947. 324 p.

GN273.S25 1947

By a physician and psychoanalyst, this unique book, which reads like fiction, was first published as *Black Hamlet: The Mind of an African Negro Revealed by*



*Psychoanalysis* (London, Bles, 1937. 280 p.). The author had come across a Rhodesian tribesman who was practicing native medicine—a nganga—in Johannesburg, and persuaded him to go through the regular technique of long sessions, on a couch, of free association and dream interpretation. During the process Dr. Sachs developed a deep friendship for his subject, whose intense emotions regarding his dead and living relations invoked the parallel with Hamlet. In the later version the author continued the story of the young man's mental development.

475. TROWELL, HUBERT C. *Non-infective disease in Africa*; the peculiarities of medical non-infective diseases in the indigenous inhabitants of Africa south of the Sahara. London, E. Arnold, 1960, [on cover: Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins] 481 p. illus. RA545.T7

Includes bibliography.

By a clinician with 29 years' experience in East Africa as well as work in other parts of Africa south of the Sahara, this study is of diseases common among Africans but seldom seen elsewhere. "Examples are endomyocardial fibrosis, idiopathic cardiomyopathy, siderosis, porphyria, primary carcinoma of the liver, kwashiorkor and some of the haemoglobinopathies." As the foregoing sentence indicates, the work is technical in nature.

476. VANE, MICHAEL. *Black magic and white medicine*; a mine medical officer's experiences in South Africa, the Belgian Congo, Sierra Leone, and the Gold Coast. London, W. & R. Chambers, 1957. 254 p. illus. DT14.V3

Popularly written personal narrative of a surgeon who practiced medicine in various parts of Africa, beginning as a mine medical officer in the Transvaal. He took advantage of his profession to learn much about the universal African belief in witchcraft and the methods of native witchdoctors.

477. WILCOCKS, CHARLES. *Aspects of medical investigation in Africa*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. 120 p. (University of London Heath Clark lectures 1960) R854.A3W5

Not examined.

478. WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION. *Catalogue of World Health Organization publications, 1947-1958*. Geneva, 1959. 78 p. Z6660.W56

Listing of titles and prices of all WHO publications up to the end of 1958. In three parts, the first grouping by subject certain nonperiodical publications and some important numbers of technical periodicals, with descriptive annotations. The second part describes periodical publications and gives titles of works in series, cross-referenced to the annotated entries in Part I. Part III is official (i.e., administrative) publications of WHO. An earlier *Bibliography of WHO Publications* (1958. 128 p.) listed all technical articles and works in alphabetical order by subject, and included author and country. Many are concerned with Africa; e.g.:

- BROCK, J. F., and M. AUTRET. *Kwashiorkor in Africa*. Geneva, 1952. 78 p. illus. (WHO. Monograph ser. no. 8) RJ399.K9B7

# WEST AFRICA

## BIBLIOGRAPHIES

479. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *West Africa: general, ethnography, sociology, linguistics*, compiled by Ruth Jones, librarian, with the assistance of a panel of consultants. London, 1958. 116 l. 33 cm. (Africa bibliography series: ethnography, sociology, linguistics and related subjects) Z3516.5.I5

Based on the bibliographical card index of the International African Institute. For note on series, see no. 262.

480. RYDINGS, H. A. *The bibliographies of West Africa*. Ibadan, Published on behalf of the West African Library Association by the Ibadan University Press, 1961. 36 p. Z3516.5.R9

Critically annotated bibliographical essay. The author, formerly Deputy Librarian of the University College of Ghana, is now Librarian of the University of Hong Kong. He comments comparatively here on the chief general African bibliographies, serial bibliographies and selective lists, then on bibliographical sources for the individual countries of West Africa in English, French, and Portuguese. Besides bibliographical publications, he includes the valuable reading lists in the leading country studies. He ends with a tabulated survey of the 50 items covered.

## GENERAL

481. BIGGERS, JOHN. *Ananse; the web of life in Africa*. Austin, University of Texas Press, 1962. 110 p. 89 illus. NC1075.B54A42

By an American Negro artist who went to West Africa on a UNESCO art fellowship, and here interprets the individual people of Ghana, Togo, Dahomey, and Nigeria in drawings with slight text. Ananse the spider is taken as a symbol of universal order and interdependence.

Another book of drawings by an American Negro artist, Elton C. Fax, *West African Vignettes*, was published by the American Society of African Culture (New York, 1960.

62 p. 2d ed., 1963. 92 p.). The subjects, with few exceptions, were "the ordinary citizens of the cities, towns and villages."

482. BRAITHWAITE, EDWARD R. *A kind of homecoming*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J., Prentice-Hall, 1962. 243 p. DT471.B7

Travel narrative of a West Indian, a native of British Guiana, who visited Guinea, Sierra Leone, Liberia, and Ghana in 1961, looking for copy and talking at great length with everyone he could meet. His own experience of race discrimination in England, where he had taught school, had armed him for the anti-American feeling he constantly encountered. His impressions are interesting, though the style of his reporting of conversations is stilted and unconvincing.

483. CHURCH, RONALD J. H. *West Africa; a study of the environment and of man's use of it*. 3d ed. New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1961. 547 p. illus. maps. (Geographies, for advanced study) GF721.W4C5

Updated edition of a standard work first issued in 1957, by a well known British geographer at the London School of Economics. The three parts are devoted, respectively, to 1, the physical basis of geology, topography, climate, vegetation and soils; 2, man's development of resources in agriculture, livestock and fisheries, minerals and power, transport, and population factors; 3, examination of the individual countries, in terms of political and economic geography. Reviewed in *Africa Report* of August 1962.

484. CROWDER, MICHAEL. *Pagans and politicians*. Illus. by the author. London, Hutchinson, 1959. 224 p. illus. DT471.C7

The author, a British journalist who has been much in West Africa—especially in Nigeria, where he acted as editor of *Nigeria Magazine* (see no. 697n)—made a trip across West Africa from Portuguese Guinea to Gambia, through Senegal, Soudan and Niger to Nigeria and Ghana. His companion was a Sierra Leonean, also a journalist, later in the Information Services at Freetown. Both young men had many



connections and saw people in all walks of life, but rather particularly in the upper nationalist circles.

485. GREEN, LAWRENCE G. *White man's grave; the story of the West African coast—the cities, sea-ports and castles, white exiles and black magic.* London, S. Paul, 1954. 249 p. illus. DT471.G74

By a prolific South African travel writer and journalist, this is a spirited and somewhat sensational account of West Africa from Angola to Dakar. Mr. Green's technique is anecdotal, and his recital is rich in lore of eccentricities. The resulting volume is more to amuse than to instruct.

486. HOWE, RUSSELL W. *Black star rising; a journey through West Africa in transition.* London, H. Jenkins, 1958. 254 p. illus. DT471.H73

Mr. Howe, who since the Congo crisis has been reporting on African affairs for the *Washington Post* and other American newspapers, wrote this travel narrative after his second trip in Africa—the first in French Equatorial Africa in 1954 (see no. 1195). As a reporter who had been studying and working in France, his main attention was focused on French-speaking Africa. His acquaintance with the Guinean writer Camara Laye and other French intellectuals may have helped to shape his impressions, which as the title indicates are in favor of the new Africa. He was enthusiastically in Ghana for Independence Day.

A much-noticed earlier book in which the emphasis is on former French West Africa is Geoffrey Gorer's *Africa Dances: A Book about West African Negroes* (1st ed., New York, Knopf, 1935; paperback ed., Cambridge, Eng., Heffer, 1962). In his trip to interpret West African character and arts, the English writer was guided by members of the French African elite with whom he had been associated in Paris.

487. HUXLEY, ELSPETH. *Four Guineas; a journey through West Africa.* London, Chatto & Windus, 1954. 303 p. illus. DT497.H8

A noted East African writer describes a long trip through the four British colonies of West Africa, Gambia, Sierra Leone, the Gold Coast, ending with Nigeria. In each territory she visited far and wide, towns, institutions of all kinds, bush villages, and met, talked with, and observed people of all classes and degrees of civilization and barbarism. Her vivid, realistic, and humorous writing points up the tremendous contrasts she observed between the revolutionary development of economies and welfare, the political advancement and opportunism, and the primitive society close below the surface education and westernization.

488. KINGSLEY, MARY H. *Travels in West Africa, Congo français, Corisco and Cameroons.* London, Macmillan, 1897. 743 p.

DK471.K55

489. ———. *West African studies.* London, Macmillan, 1899. 639 p. DT471.K56

This famous lady, in whose honor the Royal African Society was founded in 1901, is among the most conspicuous figures of the late 19th century in West Africa, where her long skirts trailed through jungles, over mountains, in and out of perilous rivers. Her travels along the coast in pursuit of her etymological interests led her from bugs and beetles to a career as interpreter of West Africa to the English public through her books and lectures. The two books named are delightful reading today. Miss Kingsley's observations were recognized as factually and scientifically important and her humor is in the best style of her highly literate period.

There are many biographies of Mary Kingsley, including a book by Rudyard Kipling and a standard life by the popular English-Irish writer Stephen Gwynn (1932). Three biographies were published in London almost simultaneously: Kathleen Wallace, *This Is Your Home; A Portrait of Mary Kingsley* (Heinemann, 1956. 168 p.), Olwen W. Campbell, *Mary Kingsley, A Victorian in the Jungle* (Methuen, 1957. 196 p.) and Cecil Howard, *Mary Kingsley* (Hutchinson, 1957. 231 p.).

490. READE, WINWOOD. *Savage Africa: being the narrative of a tour in euatorial, southwestern, and northwestern Africa; with notes on the habits of the gorilla; on the existence of unicorns and tailed men; on the slave-trade; on the origin, character, and capabilities of the Negro, and on the future civilization of western Africa.* New York, Harper, 1864. 452 p. illus. DT471.R27 1864

The author of this curious travel narrative, almost more revealing of Victorian beliefs than of African mores, was a Fellow of the Geographical and Anthropological Societies of London. He claims the merit, not of an explorer, but "of having been the first young man about town to make a *bona fide* tour in Western Africa, . . . with no special object, and at his own expense . . ." His work is still much quoted.

491. THEOBALD, ROBERT, ed. *The new nations of West Africa.* New York, Wilson, 1960. 179 p. map. (The Reference shelf, v. 32, no. 2)

DT471.T43

Bibliography: p. 173–179.

In a series for the uninitiate, addressed specifically to college and study groups, this is a selection of short

articles from *New York Times*, *The Listener*, *Current History*, and comparable magazines. Most contributions, which in scope cover general and economic-political aspects, present popularization by well known writers. A slight bibliography of books and articles is appended.

492. *West Africa*; a weekly newspaper. v. 1+ Feb. 3, 1917+ London. illus. DT491.W4

*West Africa*, published by the West African Graphic Co., 9 New Fetter Lane, London E.C. 4, is the essential source for continuing information about economic, political, and social affairs in both British and French-speaking West Africa. The magazine has a useful annual index (for 1961, in no 2339, 31st March 1962). A regular feature is a Profile of an African notable. Each issue also carries several signed book reviews, in which most new works on the region are surveyed.

493. *West African Directory*. London, T. Skinner & Co. 1962+ annual DT471.W395

Produced jointly with Overseas Newspapers, Ltd.

Sections for each country with encyclopedic information. Special air and shipping sections, a list of exporters including names of thousands of firms trading with West Africa.

## HISTORY

494. BLAKE, JOHN W. *European beginnings in West Africa, 1454–1578*; a survey of the first century of white enterprise in West Africa, with special emphasis upon the rivalry of the great powers. London, New York, Pub. for the Royal Empire Society by Longmans, Green & Co., 1937. 212 p. fold. map. (Half-title: Imperial studies, no. 14) DT471.B45

Selected bibliography: p. 193–203.

Standard work, based on examination of many primary sources. The author laments the loss in the Lisbon earthquake of 1765 of a mass of documents, but has found rich returns in the British High Court of the Admiralty records. He speaks of much material to be unearthed in Portuguese local archives.

495. BOVILL, E. W. *The golden trade of the Moors*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1958. 281 p. DT356.B6 1958

In his *Caravans of the Old Sahara*, published in 1933, the author had followed the history of trade con-

nections between the Arabs of North Africa and the kingdoms of the Western Sudan in their great days of the 13th to 18th centuries, in a narrative highly praised as at once scholarly and fascinating. The work of 1958 is a rewriting, making use of the many researches into Arabic and other early sources which have abounded during the 25-year interval.

496. CONTON, WILLIAM. *West Africa in history*. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1961+ DT471.C64

Vol. 1. *Before the Europeans*. 93 p.

Concise little sketch of the past of English-speaking West Africa by a Ghanaian writer who is now principal of a secondary school in Sierra Leone. The book, outlining the "shared memory of the greatness of ancient Ghana, Mali, Songhai, Bornu, Ashanti and Benin," is addressed to pupils and suggests a year's outside reading. A second volume will treat modern history. Mr. Conton has written also a novel, *The African* (Boston, Little, Brown, 1960. 244 p.), which reached best seller lists in America and England.

497. FAGE, J. D. *An introduction to the history of West Africa*. 3d ed. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1962. 232 p. illus. DT471.F15 1959

The first edition of this authoritative story of West Africa from the earliest days of the trans-Saharan trade contacts to the present, now in its second updating revision, was published in 1955, when the author, now coeditor of the *Journal of African History*, was teaching history in the University College of the Gold Coast. He pleads the lack of African sources as his reason for concentrating upon the "colonial" side of the story.

498. *Guide to materials for West African history in European archives*. London, University of London, Athlone Press, 1962+ CD1000.G8, no. 1

The first volume of this new series of guides for scholarly research is by Patricia Carson: *Materials for West African History in the Archives of Belgium and Holland*, 1962. 86 p.

499. GWYNN, STEPHEN L. *Mungo Park and the quest of the Niger*. London, John Lane, 1934. 269 p. plates, maps. (Half-title: *The Golden hind series*) DT356.G8

Biographical study of the Scottish surgeon whose own chronicle of his adventurous exploration of the River Niger in 1795–97, *Travels in the Interior of*



*Africa*, is an English classic of the Dark Continent. The English-Irish author directs primary attention to the quest which was carried on over many years for the great river of Western Africa, known long only by rumor. Subsequent explorations of the Niger are outlined in the last chapters.

500. HOWARD, CECIL, ed. *West African explorers*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1952. 598 p. (The World's classics, 523)  
DT471.H7

The editor in his selections has tried to cover each explorer's journey and achievement, and to avoid repetition of routes traveled. Extracts are, among others, from the works of the famous 17th- and 18th-century travelers Richard Jobson and William Bosman; the 19th-century Mungo Park, Major Denham, Captain Clapperton, Richard Lander, Sir Richard Burton, William Balfour Baikie, Dr. Henry Barth, Mary Kingsley. The volume, printed on India paper, is pocket size, but with such clear print that it is not hard to read.

501. MARTIN, EVELINE C. *The British West African settlements, 1750-1821; a study in local administration*. London, New York, Pub. for the Royal Colonial Institute by Longmans, Green, 1927. 186 p. maps. (Imperial studies, no. 2)  
DT502.M3

Note on sources: p. 167-177.

By a lecturer in history at the University of London, this historical study, prepared as a doctoral dissertation and sponsored for publication by the Imperial Studies Committee of the Royal Colonial Institute, describes the administration of the slave trade posts in Senegambia, Sierra Leone, and the Gold Coast in the time of the Company of Merchants trading to Africa.

502. MAUNY, RAYMOND. *Gravures, peintures et inscriptions rupestres de l'Ouest africain*. Dakar, Institut français d'Afrique noire, 1954. 91 p. illus. (Initiations africaines, XI)  
N5310.M3

Inventory of prehistoric art of West Africa by an archaeologist and historian of IFAN. The sites covered are in the Southern and Western Sahara and generally in the former A.O.F. and Nigeria. Professor Mauny has contributed many other monographs and papers to the various series and serial publications of IFAN. Among his most recent is a study in pre-European history, *Les Navigations médiévales sur*

*les côtes sahariennes antérieures à la découverte portugaise (1434)* (Lisboa, Centro de Estudos Históricos Ultramarinos, 1960. 151 p. maps).

503. NEWBURY, COLIN W. *The western slave coast and its rulers; European trade and administration among the Yoruba and Adja-speaking peoples of South-Western Nigeria, Southern Dahomey and Togo*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1961. 234 p. (Oxford studies in African affairs)  
DT471.N38

The historian warns that in the study of West Africa's past "there is perhaps a danger that academic partition may faithfully follow international partition," and he emphasizes the lack of clear boundaries in tribal society and the international nature of European contacts. The period under intensive study is from the late 18th to early 20th century. The sources include unpublished material in European and African archives.

## POLITICS AND ECONOMICS

504. BAUER, PÈTER TAMÀS. *West African trade; a study of competition, oligopoly and monopoly in a changing economy*. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1954. 450 p. map, diagrs., tables.  
HF3896.B3

Study for specialists, often quoted as authoritative. The author, a Cambridge Fellow and lecturer in economics, outlined special interests and monopolistic practices, analysing general aspects of the economic life of West Africa, and the various organs of trade, with special attention to the policies of the statutory marketing boards. He was concerned chiefly with Nigeria and the Gold Coast. He concluded that government regulation through such organs as the marketing boards had failed to accomplish its avowed ends, had stultified the usual forces operating in the market, and had delayed economic development.

505. CAMERON, IAN D., and T. B. K. COOPER. *The West African councillor*. 2d ed. London, Oxford University Press, 1961. 224 p. illus.  
JS7525.C3 1961

Written in 1955 specially for new members of African local councils, this little handbook is couched in clear and simple terms. The writers discuss first the development of local government and the British model on which the West African institutions are patterned and which continue in much the same form in the newly independent countries. The structure,

purpose, and functions of the Village Council, the Urban or Rural District Council, and the County or Divisional Council are described. Chapters are given to finance, elections, and development plans.

A comparable text by Ronald E. Wraith, *Local Government*, was published in 1953 by Penguin Books, especially for West African readers (London. 123 p. Penguin West African series, WAI).

506. CARNEY, DAVID E. *Government and economy in British West Africa*; a study of the role of public agencies in the economic development of British West Africa in the period 1947-55. New York, Bookman Associates, 1961. 207 p. HC517.W5C3 1961

Bibliography: p. 197-201.

A well-documented study prepared as a dissertation. The author had served as an economist on the United Nations staff.

507. COWAN, LAING GRAY. *Local government in West Africa*. New York, Columbia University Press, 1958. 292 p. JQ1879.W4C6

By the Professor of Government at Columbia University, who is recognized as an American expert on African political questions. In this study of the representative institutions coming into operation, especially those in French territories under the *loi-cadre*, he focuses attention on the problems of getting the new local authorities accepted by the unprepared communities where the traditional authority of the paramount chief still exists and is frequently in conflict with that of the government official. His data are of 1954-55.

508. DAVIDSON, BASIL, and ADENEKAN ADEMOLA, eds. *The new West Africa*; problems of independence. London, Allen & Unwin, 1953. 184 p. DT503.D3

Group of essays sponsored by the Union for Democratic Control, with aid from the Foundation of World Government at the University of Virginia. The viewpoint is that of the British Labour Party, the book dedicated to E. D. Morel, the early-20th-century crusader for anticolonialism. These papers, by F. Le Gros Clark, Henry Collins, Thomas Hodgkin, Amanke Okafor, and Basil Davidson, give an historical outline of the British West African colonies and discuss modern political institutions and economic position, focusing on the transition from a backward economy to independent nation status. Emphasis is on the British responsibility for leading and helping the West

Africans, notably as to trade-union rights and capital loans without imperialist purposes.

509. DEGRAFT-JOHNSON, JOHN C. *African experiment*; cooperative agriculture and banking in British West Africa. London, Watts, 1958. 198 p. illus. HD1491.A55D4

Valuable record and estimate of the agricultural cooperative movement in English-speaking West Africa. Professor DeGraft-Johnson, a prominent Ghanaian scholar, is senior Resident Tutor of Extra-Mural Studies at the University of Ghana. A new edition has been issued in June 1962 of his series of historical lectures, *An Introduction to the African Economy* (New York, Asia Pub. House. 116 p.), delivered at the Delhi School of Economics where he spent a term as visiting professor.

510. EGYPTIAN SOCIETY OF INTERNATIONAL LAW. *Constitutions of the new African states: a critical survey*. Alexandria, 1962. 107 p. (Its Brochure no. 17, Mar. 1962) JQ1873.E45 1962

This valuable brochure was published with the aid of a grant from the Ford Foundation. The cover title reads ". . . the new African States," but with the exception of the Malagasy Republic, the states whose constitutions are explained are in West Africa. Following a section on sources and references there is an overall statement regarding the French African States (L'Afrique d'expression française) and the French Community, then factual résumés of constitutional changes for each country of former French and British Africa, and the Congo and Katanga), with notes on the [then] still dependent countries, Ruanda-Urundi, Gambia, and the Portuguese and Spanish possessions. Appendixes are important inter-African documents, including the Conclusions of the African Conference on the Rule of Law, Lagos, 1961.

511. INTERNATIONAL WEST AFRICAN CONFERENCE. *Comptes rendus*. 1+ 1954+ illus., maps. DT471.I58

This international gathering of economists, sociologists, scientists, and other specialists from the countries of West Africa was begun at the instigation of the Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, and the first meeting held in Dakar in 1945. The second session, 1947, was in Bissau, Portuguese Guinea; the fourth session, 1951, in Santa Isabel, Spanish Guinea; fifth, Abidjan, Ivory Coast, 1953; sixth in São Tomé, Portuguese



West Africa, in August 1956; seventh in Accra, Ghana, in April 1959. The papers are published by the hosts of the respective sessions, those of 1947 having appeared in five volumes, from 1950–52, issued by the Ministério das Colónias in Lisbon. Contributions are in the languages in which the papers were delivered, titles and editorial matter in the language of the hosts—*Comptes rendus*, 1945, *Conferência*, 1947, etc. Volumes of the 1951 meeting appeared in 1953–54.

For complete information, inquiries may be addressed to Dr. Théodore Monod, Director of the Institut Français d'Afrique Noire in Dakar, who is chairman of the Permanent Commission of the Conference.

512. LAWSON, ROWENA M. *Elements of commerce in West Africa*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1957. 136 p. illus.

HF3876.L3

One of a series for African students by the former acting head of the Department of Commerce at Kumasi College of Technology.

513. MCPHEE, ALLAN. *The economic revolution in British West Africa*. London, G. Routledge, 1926. 322 p. (Studies in economics and political science . . . no. 89 in the series of monographs by writers connected with the London School of Economics and Political Science).

HC517.W5M3

The "revolution" studied in this substantial historical monograph is explained by the writer as having begun in the nineties with the advent of modern means of transportation which linked West Africa with the outside world. The changes of 40 years as to trade, transport, land, finance, currency, status of the native, and health are discussed. An interesting table in an appendix shows that in the "white man's grave" in 1903 deaths and invalidism disposed of 85.7 percent of nonnative officials within 2 years and 4 months, whereas in 1920 total casualties were only 39 percent and average length of service 6 years and 4 months.

514. PEDLER, F. J. *Economic geography of West Africa*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1955. 232 p. illus.

HC515.P4

The writer announced as his purpose to establish, through facts, analysis, and reasoning, "the relationship of cause and effect in the work-a-day world of West Africa." His coverage included questions of land and its users, domestic production and export

crops, mining, manufacturers, transport, commerce, and the economic aspects of government. Statistical data were closely current at the time of writing.

515. PETCH, G. A. *Economic development and modern West Africa*. London, University of London Press, 1961. 224 p.

HC515.P45

This introductory study for English-speaking students in West Africa is written by an economics professor at Fourah Bay College, who is a specialist on the oil palm industry. Reviewed in *West Africa*, Feb. 17, 1962.

516. ROPER, JOSEPH I. *Labour problems in West Africa*. London, Penguin Books, 1958. 111 p. (Penguin African series, WA8)

HD8796.R82

A little survey for the general reader in this excellent paperback series covers the territories then still British and French in West Africa, with special attention to the newly independent Ghana. For other studies of labor, see under individual countries.

517. SPILSBURY, CALVIN C. *West Africa's fats and oils industry*. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1959. 42 p. illus., map. (U.S. Foreign Agricultural Service. FSA-M-62)

S21.Z2383, no. 62

This survey is typical of an increasing number of special studies on individual aspects of African economy being carried out by agencies of the U.S. Government. The oilseed trade is the chief economic factor in much of West Africa, where the cash crop is peanuts.

518. UNITED AFRICA COMPANY, LTD. *Statistical & economic review*. v. 1, no. 1+ Mar. 1948+ London. illus. (part col.) maps, diagrs. semi-annual.

HC517.W5U5

The journal of this subsidiary of Unilever, which is active in the palm-oil and other industries of West Africa, is a useful source for articles of economic significance as well as statistics and other data of West African trade.

519. UNITED NATIONS. Economic Commission for Africa. *Transport problems in relation to economic development in West Africa*. Addis Ababa, 1960. 125 p. tables. (E/CN.14/63)

Typical of ECA studies is this survey of transport development, industries, costs, and policies in West Africa. The last chapter evaluates the probable impact of road improvement.

# ANTHROPOLOGY, SOCIOLOGY, AND RELIGION

520. BOWEN, ELENORE S., pseud. *Return to laughter*.  
New York, Harper, 1954. 276 p.

DT500.B6 1954a

By a social anthropologist who had spent a season doing field work in a West African bush village, this is written under a pseudonym to differentiate it from the author's scholarly studies. It is a fictionalized narrative, depicting the life of the community in human terms and telling a story full of dramatic interest.

521. GOODY, JOHN R. *Death, property and the ancestors*; a study of the mortuary customs of the LoDagaa of West Africa. Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1962. x, 452 p. illus., geneal. tables.

GN486.G65

Bibliography: p. 436-444.

522. ——— *The social organisation of the LoWiili*. London, H. M. Stationery Office, 1956. 119 p. illus., maps. (Colonial Office. Colonial research studies, no. 19) JV33.G7A48, no. 19

By a Cambridge social anthropologist, these two monographs, based on fieldwork in West Africa, are studies of Voltaic tribes which spread over the borders on both banks of the Volta River in Ghana, the Ivory Coast, and Mali. The work on the LoDagaa (called by the Library of Congress the Dagari) is reviewed in *Africa Report* of August 1962.

523. JABLOW, ALTA. *Yes and no*; the intimate folk lore of Africa. New York, Horizon Press, 1961. 223 p.

GR350.J3

A collection of stories and proverbs from the folklore of West Africa, the storytellers, and the proverbs which, "sprinkled through normal conversation, debate and storytelling . . . are the backbone of African law and education." The material is grouped in four parts, dilemma tales, proverbs, stories of love, riddles, the solution. Each is identified by tribe, from Liberia along the coast and inland from the Gulf of Guinea to Angola.

524. MIGEOD, FREDERICK W. H. *The languages of West Africa*. London, K. Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1911-13. 2 v.

PL8017.M5

The writer, an official in the Gold Coast, was an authority on the languages of the region, in particular Mende. His well-known work is a study of linguistic classification, grammar, syntax, and parts of speech including 50-odd language specimens.

525. PARRINDER, GEOFFREY. *West African psychology*; a comparative study of psychological and religious thought. London, Lutterworth Press, 1951. 229 p. (Lutterworth library, v. 37. Missionary research series, no. 17)

BL2465.P297

526. ——— *West African religion*, illustrated from the beliefs and practices of the Yoruba, Ewe, Akan, and kindred peoples. London, Epworth Press, 1949. 223 p. map.

BL2465.P3

The writer, a former missionary and recognized authority on West African religious beliefs, had spent 10 years as lecturer in the Department of Religious Studies at Ibadan. His *West African Religion*, in the first (1949) edition, had been used as a doctoral thesis, with the subtitle: "illustrated from the beliefs and practices of the Yoruba, Ewe, Akan, and kindred peoples." The second edition is rewritten and brought up to date, including coverage of religion of the Ibo peoples, and a final chapter on religious change. *West African Psychology* is a comparative study of the concepts of the soul among West African tribes. For part of this material Dr. Parrinder has depended on other authorities. Review in *Africa*, Oct. 1951, p. 342-344.

527. SOCIOLOGICAL REVIEW. *Urbanism in West Africa*, edited by Kenneth Little. Keele, University College of North Staffordshire, 1959. 122 p.

HM1.S7, n.s. v. 7

Special issue, n.s. v. 7, July 1959.

Analysis of city life and society, with articles by: R. J. Harrison Church, "West African Urbanisation, a Geographical View"; William Bascom, "Urbanism as a Traditional African Pattern"; P. C. Lloyd, "The Yoruba Town Today"; Kenneth Little, "Some Urban Patterns of Marriage and Domesticity in West Africa"; D. K. Fiawoo, "Urbanisation and Religion in Eastern Ghana"; Tanya Baker and Mary Bird, "Urbanisation and the Position of Women." The several essays are followed by bibliographies.

528. TRIMINGHAM, JOHN SPENCER. *The Christian church and Islam in West Africa*. London, S.C.M. Press, 1955. 56 p. (International Missionary Council. Research pamphlets no. 3)

BV3540.T7

529. ——— *Islam in West Africa*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1959. 262 p. fold. map, diagr.

BP64.A4W4

See no. 420 for general comment on Dr. Trimingham's studies of Islam.



530. VERGER, PIERRE. *Dieux d'Afrique; culte des Orishas et Vodouns à l'ancienne Côte des esclaves en Afrique à Bahia, la baie de tous les saints au Brésil*. 160 photographies de l'auteur. Paris, P. Hartmann, 1954. 191 p. BL2490.V4

This is an album of interesting ethnological pictures, showing the religious rites of voodoo and Orisha in West Africa, chiefly Dahomey and Nigeria, and as they have been transplanted to Bahia in Brazil. Captions are in French and English, an explanatory comment on the plates, at the end of the book, is in French. The work is well documented, with footnote references. It is incorporated at the end of the long text by this scholar, *Notes sur le culte des Orisha et Vodouns à Bahia, la baie de tous les saints, au Brésil et à l'ancienne Côte des esclaves en Afrique* (Dakar, IFAN, 1957. 609 p. plates Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 51).

## EDUCATION AND CULTURE

531. BASSIR, OLUMBE, comp. *An anthology of West African verse*. Ibadan, Ibadan University Press, 1957. 68 p. PN6109.2.B3

A pamphlet containing almost 40 poems by West Africans, in original English or in translation from the French. There are three groupings, "Natural," "Supernatural," and "Philosophical," the latter the largest, containing a number of the more famous poems of Senghor, Diop, Osadebay, and other spokesmen of African nationalism.

532. CONFERENCE ON EDUCATIONAL AND OCCUPATIONAL SELECTION IN WEST AFRICA. University College of Ghana, 1960. *Educational and occupational selection in West Africa*, edited by A. Taylor. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 219 p.

LB1620.5.C57 1960c

Set of papers delivered at this conference, held under Carnegie Corporation grant in March–April 1960. The speakers, American, British, and Ghanaian, and Dr. S. Biesheuvel, director of the National Institute of Personnel Research in Johannesburg, discussed methods of student selection, aptitude testing, personnel selection, and vocational guidance, with particular reference to Ghana and Nigeria.

533. HILLIARD, FREDERICK H. *A short history of education in British West Africa*. London, New York, T. Nelson, 1957. 186 p. illus. (Nelson's education handbooks) LA1611.A2H5

A useful survey of a subject increasing in importance during the years before independence. Another book covering the same field had been published the year before, Colin Wise's *History of Education in British West Africa* (London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1956. 134 p.).

534. SADLER, Sir MICHAEL ERNEST, ed. *Arts of West Africa* (excluding music). London, Pub. for the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures, by the Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1935. 101 p., xxxii plates on 16 l. NT397.W4S3

"Bibliography relating to indigenous art in tropical Africa": p. 97–101.

The authoritative essays in this compilation are by way of introduction to the 32 plates, each of which is described in a long note. The editor wrote the first essay on the general significance and vitality of African art; the second, by G. A. Stevens, a teacher at Achimota College on the Gold Coast (now the University of Ghana), is on the educational significance of native African art; the third, by Gabriel Pippet, is "Teaching Wood Carving at Achimota." The examples were selected mainly from collections in British museums.

535. SMITH, ANTHONY. *Sea never dry*. London, Allen & Unwin, 1958. 204 p. PN5499.W4S4

A fictionized story of the career of a small-town newspaper and its staff is here told with verve, the experiences being based on those of a former editor of the West African edition of the Johannesburg *Drum*. It is revealing regarding the insouciant West African character.

536. UNDERWOOD, LEON. *Figures in wood of West Africa*. London, J. Tiranti, 1947. xlx p., 48 plates. NB1080.U5

537. ———. *Masks of West Africa*. 1948. 49 p., plates. NB1310.U5

538. ———. *Bronzes of West Africa*. 1949. 32 p., 64 plates. NK7987.U55

Three little monographs on the typical forms of West African traditional art, accompanying sections of handsome photographs. The first and second volume in which the writer—himself an English artist and sculptor—speculates on the abstractions and symbolism of Negro carving, have text in French as well as English.

## NATURAL SCIENCES

539. CANSDALE, GEORGE S. *Animals of West Africa*. 3d ed. London, Longmans, 1960. 124 p. illus. QL337.W4C3 1960

540. ——— *Reptiles of West Africa*. London, Penguin Books, 1955. 104 p. (Penguin West African series no. 5) DLC

Handbooks for African readers. A still more condensed manual of the same sort is by Gwenlilian C. Webb, *A Guide to West African Mammals* (Ibadan, Ibadan University Press, 1957. 40 p. illus.).

541. JONES, GEORGE HOWARD. *The earth goddess; a study of native farming on the West African coast*. London, New York, Pub. for the Royal Empire Society by Longmans, Green, 1936. 205 p. plates. (Half-title: Royal Empire Society Imperial studies, no. 12. General editor: A. P. Newton) HD2130.W5J6

"Notes on the bibliography": p. 197-202.

Study of the agricultural methods, practices and beliefs of the tribes of the West African coast. The botanist writer had formerly been connected with the Department of Agriculture in Nigeria. Much of his text is devoted to a careful analysis of the efforts at education made by the colonial administrators.

542. ORGANIZATION FOR EUROPEAN ECONOMIC CO-OPERATION. *The cultivation of groundnuts in West Africa*. Paris, 1953. 54 p. illus., maps. SB351.P3O7

Result of a study by a mission of experts from the United States, the Netherlands, Italy, Senegal, and

the Belgian Congo. The team examined the industry country by country, with chief attention to Nigeria, Portuguese Guinea, and the Gambia, assessing factors of transport, production disposal, possible expansion, and offering general recommendations.

A comparable study published in 1956 by OEEC is *The Main Products of the Overseas Territories: Cocoa* (Paris, 164 p. HD9200.A207)

543. STEBBING, EDWARD P. *The forests of West Africa and the Sahara; a study of modern conditions*. London and Edinburgh, W. & R. Chambers, 1937. 245 p. diags. plates, maps. SD105.W457

Professor Stebbing of the University of Edinburgh, now Emeritus, has been for many years a leading British authority on forestry. In 1934 he visited West Africa and the Sahara, and studied exhaustively the situation, which he considers of the utmost gravity, of deforestation and desiccation. He attributes this largely to the waste caused by shifting cultivation and by reckless "hacking" and unnecessary exploitation. In this book, much of which is technical and statistical, he recommended an Anglo-French commission of officials with local knowledge who should work for establishment of protective belts in the forest and desert regions.

In at least three other books, *The Threat of the Sahara*, 1937; *The Man-Made Desert in Africa*, 1938; and *Africa, Its Intermittent Rainfall and Role of the Savannah Forest*, 1938, Professor Stebbing emphasized the same themes. In 1947 he again visited Africa on a mission to the Sudan. A paper of 1954, *The Creeping Desert in the Sudan and Elsewhere in Africa 15° to 13° Latitude* is mentioned in the biographical note in *Who's Who*, 1960.

## Gambia

### Bibliography

544. GAMBLE, DAVID P. *Bibliography of the Gambia*. London, 1958. 34 p. Z3735.G3

A mimeographed, legal-size brochure prepared for the Colonial Office by this scholar who has done research on problems of the Gambia. He stated in his introductory note that he had listed everything he could find except annual reports. There are between 400 and 500 items, classified and arranged in chronological order under subheadings. Entries are for books, documents, and periodical material.

545. ARCHER, FRANCIS B. *Gambia colony and protectorate; an official handbook*. London, St. Bride's Press [1905?] 364 p. DT509.A6

This early reference work, which is still considered useful, contains, besides the condensed history of the colony, "particulars of the districts under the travelling commissioners," "particulars of the direct marches throughout the Gambia Protectorate and a return of chiefs receiving stipends," an English-Mandingo vocabulary, and other details of colonial administration.



546. GAMBIA. Laws, Statutes, etc. *The laws of the Gambia* in force on the 1st day of January 1955; rev. ed., prepared under the authority of the Revised edition of the laws ordinance 1955, by Donald Kingdom. London, Printed by Waterlow, 1955. 6 v. DLC-LL

The first edition of the collected laws of the Gambia was published in 1900. The present edition has five volumes of laws and an index volume. It is supplemented in the annual *Ordinances, Rules, Regulations, Orders, etc.* (Bathurst, Govt. Printer).

547. "Gambia, Africa's test case." *West African review*, v. 33, August 1962: 4-8.

DT491.W47, v. 33

Specially contributed feature article on the possibility of union of Gambia with Senegal. The Gambians do not favor it, but economically it seems inevitable. The writer suggests that a successful union might set the pattern of Pan-Africanism.

A earlier article on the same subject, "Gambia and Senegal Get Together" (*New Commonwealth*, v. 39, June 1961, p. 393), gave a short account of the visit of Premier Mamadou Dia, of Senegal, to the Gambia in April 1961, where after friendly discussions with the Chief Minister, Mr. N'Jie, arrangements were made for an interministerial committee to meet and work out steps for closer relations between the two countries. The committee met in June and decided on economic and cultural rapprochement, but no immediate steps toward political association. Comment on this topic appears from time to time in *West Africa*: e.g., "The 'Senegambian' Idea," no. 2377, Dec. 22, 1962, p. 1417.

548. GAMBIA CONSTITUTIONAL CONFERENCE, London, 1961. *Report*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1961. 7 p. (Cmnd 1469) DLC-LL

The terms of the agreement for general elections and internal self-government in 1962 (elections held in May) and full independence probably in 1963.

549. GAMBIA OILSEEDS MARKETING BOARD. *Report*. 1st + 1949/50 + Bathurst. annual.

HD9490.G24G32

Almost 90 percent of exports from the Gambia consist of peanuts, the sales for which are handled by this Board.

550. GAMBLE, DAVID P. *The Wolof of Senegambia*, together with notes on the Lebu and the Serer. London, International African Institute, 1957. 110 p. illus., maps. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: Western Africa, pt. 14) DT549.G3

For a general description of the systematic ethnological surveys in this series, see no. 270. Mr. Gamble's

study is notable for its extensive list of references on the Wolof (who in the Colonial Office Report are spelled "Wollof"). This list is in three sections, linguistic material, religious literature, and general bibliography. In 1949 Mr. Gamble had prepared for the Colonial Office a paper, *Contributions to a Socio-Economic Survey of the Gambia*, an account of Wolof agriculture and money economy. A linguistic work by this author, *Gambian-Fula Verb List*, was issued by the Research Department of the Colonial Office in 1958 (London. 43 p., processed).

551. GRAY, Sir JOHN MILNER. *A history of the Gambia*. Cambridge, The University Press, 1940. 508 p. fold. map. DT509.G7

The standard scholarly history of the Gambia. The author, at that time Justice of the Supreme Court of the Gambia, had made use not only of the many early travel narratives that included references to the Gambia, but also of the unpublished material in the Public Record Office and other university and mission archives. The book is documented with footnote references.

552. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Gambia*; report for the year . . . London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1948 + biennial. Report for the years 1958 and 1959, London, 1961. 97 p., fold. map.

DT509.A33

For general note on the report series of the Colonial Office, see no. 94.

553. GT. BRIT. Treaties, etc., 1910- (George V). *Agreement between H.M.'s Government in the United Kingdom and the Government of France respecting the delimitation of certain portions of boundary between Senegal and the Gambia*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1929. 19 p. 4 fold. maps. (Treaty series, 1929, no. 3) JX636 1892 1929, no. 13

Published as Cmd. 3340.

554. HASWELL, MARGARET R. *Economics of agriculture in a savannah village*; report on three years' study in Genieri village and its lands, the Gambia. London, Published by H.M. Stationery Off. for the Colonial Office, 1953. 142 p. maps, diagrs., tables. Processed. (Colonial research studies, no. 8)

JV33.G7A48, no. 8

This study is described by the editor of *African Affairs* as "a model of what surveys can be when intelligently planned and carried out at sufficient leisure."

It includes statistics of cultivation and production in the open grassland region, analysis of work methods, and social background. Beyond its immediate content it is valuable as charting the types of data to be desired in future research projects.

555. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *Report on need for ethnographic and sociological research in the Gambia*, by director, International African Institute. Bathurst, Gambia, Govt. Printer, 1955. 19 p. DT509.I5

This 8-page report on studies obviously needed regarding the various ethnic groups of the Gambia is signed by Dr. Daryll Forde, who had spent a month or so surveying the situation. It is followed by an appendix of notes on the several groups, the Mandinka [sic], the Wolof, the Serahuli, several groups of the Fulbe (commonly known in the Gambia as the Fula), and the Jola.

556. JOBSON, RICHARD. *The golden trade: or, A discovery of the riuer Gambra, and the golden trade of the Aethiopians. Also, the commerce with a great blacke merchant called Buckor Sano, and his report of the houses couered with gold, and other strange obseruations for the good of our owne countrey; set downe as they were collected in traueilling, part of the yeares, 1620 and 1621.* London, Printed by Nicholas Oakes . . . 1623. Facsimile reprint. London, The Penguin Press, 1932. 218 p.

DT509.J63 1932

One of the first and most famous British travel narratives of West Africa. The reprint has an historical introduction by D. B. Thomas.

557. MOORE, FRANCIS. *Travels into the inland parts of Africa: containing a description of the several nations for the space of six hundred miles up the River Gambia . . . To which is added Capt. Stibb's voyage up the Gambia in the year 1723.* London, Printed by E. Cave for the author, 1738. 305, 86, 23 p. plates, map.

DT509.M82

This, next to Jobson, is probably the most quoted of the early British references to the Gambia.

558. REEVE, HENRY FENWICK. *The Gambia.* London, Smith, Elder & Co., 1912. 288 p. illus. DT509.R4

The subtitle of this time-honored work is "its history, ancient, mediaeval, and modern, together with its

geographical, geological, and ethnographical conditions and a description of the birds, beasts, and fishes found therein." The author's name is followed by a collection of letters, C.M.G., M.I.C.E., F.R.G.S., F.A.S., etc.; his portrait facing page 276 suggests that he will tell a good story agreeably.

559. ROWLANDS, EVAN C. *A Grammar of Gambian Mandinka.* London, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, 1959. 159 p. PL8491.R6

The second of a series of monographs on African languages by staff members of the school, carried out with the assistance of Gambian students in London. The Mandinka or Mandingos are the dominant tribe in the Gambia, their number being given as 100,800 in the annual count of population for 1957 (Fula, 59,900; Wolof, 32,400, according to the Colonial Office Report).

560. SOUTHOORN, BELLA S., Lady. *The Gambia; the story of the Groundnut Colony.* London, Allen & Unwin, 1952. 283 p. illus.

DT509.S68

Lady Southorn spent 5½ years as Governor's lady with her husband in the Gambia. Her book, the only recent history of the British colony, is a pleasant retelling of the European narratives from the first Portuguese voyages of the mid-15th century on, mixed with affectionate description of the country and its people as she had known them.

561. TEAGUE, MICHAEL. "The Gambia." *Geographical magazine*, v. 34, Nov. 1961: 380-392.

G1.G343, v. 34

Feature article in the British journal that serves as the popular organ of the Royal Geographical Society. This is one of the fullest of recent surveys of the Gambia. Other special surveys, in which Sierra Leone and Gambia are discussed together, appeared in the *New Commonwealth* of September and November 1960 (v. 38: 568-570; v. 39: 105-112).

562. VAN DER PLAS, CHARLES D. *A report of a survey of the rice areas in the Central Division of the Gambia.* Bathurst. [n.d.] Obtainable from the Information Office, Bathurst.

An intensive effort has been made in recent years to increase production of subsistence crops, particularly swamp rice, and experimental programs for improved techniques of production are underway at the Jenoi Rice Station and the Gambia Rice Farm. This



report, which presumably treats of the program, is announced in the Colonial Office Report of 1958-59. There is announced also a document by this writer, *Report of Socio-Economic Survey of Bathurst and Kombo St. Mary in the Gambia*, issued by the United Nations in New York in 1956. The work has not been located in the *United Nations Documents Index*.

563. "Who's who in the Gambia? Personalities on the political scene." *West African review*, v. 32, Sept. 1961: 63-67. DT491.W47, v. 32

A useful article for biographical data on leaders of the day.

A biographical sketch of Mr. Pierre N'jie, Chief Minister and head of the United Party, appeared in *West Africa*, July 29, 1961, p. 823.

## Ghana

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

564. CARDINALL, ALLAN W. *A bibliography of the Gold Coast*. Issued as a companion volume to the Census report of 1931. Accra, Gold Coast Colony, Printed by the Government Printer, 1932. 384 p. Z3553.G6C2 1932

Classified, with author index. Blank pages for "Addenda" at end of each section.

This justly celebrated bibliography, covering all writing up to its time on the Gold Coast and much on West Africa in general, is noticed at length by Rydings in his *West African Bibliographies* (no. 480). The compiler, a British colonial official of long experience in British West Africa, was author of several other books (see no. 569).

Plans have been discussed but not yet worked out for an updating or supplement to Cardinal's bibliography. The only extensive recent bibliographical study is that compiled by G. M. Pitcher, *Bibliography of Ghana, 1957-1959* (Kumasi, College of Technology Library, 1960. 177 l. Mimeographed). It is strictly limited, however, to writings of the first years of independence, with a preponderance of references to articles in British magazines.

565. JOHNSON, ALBERT F. *Books about Ghana; a select reading list*. Accra, Ghana Library Board, 1961. 32 p. Z3785.J6

Selection of the most significant and easily accessible works on the Gold Coast and Ghana. About 300 titles are classified by subject, with author index. A separate section names the chief official publications—commissions and special reports, documents on the Constitution.

### GENERAL

566. AMAMOO, J. GODSON. *The new Ghana; the birth of a nation*. London, Pan Books, 1958. 145 p. illus. (A Pan original, G110) DT510.A75

Available from Acme News, New York.

A straightforward and dignified account of the transition from colony to independent nation, by an African writer, addressed to an elite audience in Ghana.

*Ghana Is Born, 6th March 1957*, was published by Neame in London for the Ghana Information Services Department (text by Lionel Birch. 1958. 106 p. illus.). The text, make-up, and color plates are suggestive of the *National Geographic*; in many of the numerous photographs, Dr. Nkrumah shares the spotlight view with the Duchess of Kent.

A more prosaic, but concentratedly factual, pamphlet was issued by the British Central Office of Information, Reference Division, *The Making of Ghana* (London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1957. 45 p.).

567. AMERICAN UNIVERSITY, Washington, D.C. Special Operations Research Office. *Area handbook for Ghana*, prepared by Foreign Areas Studies Division. Washington, 1962. 533 p. DT512.A75

One of a series of country background studies being prepared under contract with the Department of the Army. The extensive coverage is of sociological, political, economic, and military background. Each section is followed by bibliography of the main sources used.

568. BOATENG, E. A. *A geography of Ghana*. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1959. 204 p. illus., maps. DT510.B6

Physical and human geography by a Ghanaian geographer who is professor of this subject at the University of Ghana. The book is intended as an introductory text for students in West Africa. The first two parts treat in general of the land and "human response," the third part examines regional patterns.

Another text for African students is by an English author, David Thickens Adams, *A Ghana Geography* (2d ed., London, University of London Press, 1960. 192 p. illus.).

This was first published in 1951 as *A Gold Coast Geography, Book I*, for use in secondary schools. The high standard of its contents removes any wonder that the Ghanaian school-boys turn out well educated.

569. CARDINALL, ALLAN W. *In Ashanti and beyond*. London, Seeley, Service, 1927. 288 p.  
DT507.C3

This work had as subtitle: "The record of a resident magistrate's many years in tropical Africa, his arduous & dangerous treks both in the course of his duty and in pursuit of big game, with descriptions of the people, their manner of living and the wonderful ways of beasts and insects." More directly anthropological, though not technical in style, was Cardinall's *Natives of the Northern Territories of the Gold Coast; their Customs, Religion and Folklore* (American edition, New York, Dutton, 1920. 158 p.). He is author also of a collection of folklore, *Tales told in Togoland* (Oxford University Press, 1931, 290 p.). These are stories told him by peasants and hunters of Togoland and the Gold Coast, not given as separate anecdotes but enclosed in a running commentary which coordinates them as to types—origin of things, the Sons of God, the Pixie-folk and their ways, etc. There is included a long historical legend, "Mythical and Traditional History of Dagomba," contributed by a native assistant, E. F. Tamakloe of the Gold Coast Civil Service.

570. *The Diplomatic Press directory of Ghana*, including trade index and biographical section. London, Diplomatic Press & Pub. Co., 1961–62. 224 p. illus., ports. Cover title 1959+: Directory of Ghana including trade index and biographical section. DT512.D5

The series of country directories now being published regularly by the Diplomatic Press are compiled with the cooperation of Public Relations services in the countries concerned. This Directory of the Republic of Ghana for 1961–62 is the 3d edition (previous editions, 1959, 1960/61). It includes almanac-type information on the country and government, trade index, and a biographical section; a restrained number of pages of advertising.

The *Ghana Year Book*, an annual publication of the *Accra Daily Graphic*, carries much the same type of information, in some cases even more extensively: e.g., important dates, learned societies, though less luxurious in format. 1960 edition has 228 p. and folded map.

571. *Ghana today*. no. 1+ Mar. 1957+ London, Information Section of the Ghana Office. bi-weekly. DLC

This information bulletin, which was begun in 1956 as *The Gold Coast Today*, is a useful official source for following current developments in Ghana.

572. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Annual report on the Gold Coast*. 1946–54. London, H.M. Stationery Off. illus. (*Its Colonial annual reports*) DT511.A323

The last Colonial Office Report on the Gold Coast in the latest series of annual reports on British colonial possessions which after the Second World War superseded earlier series going back to the mid-19th century, was for the year 1954 and was published in 1956 (184 p.). The general review of events of the year was followed by summary statements on economic, administrative, and social organization and conditions. Appendixes gave names of Cabinet and legislators, tables of statistics, and a Reading List that included the chief official documents. The Colonial Reports form an important source for any study of Ghana's past.

573. MITCHISON, NAOMI H. *Other people's worlds*. London, Secker & Warburg, 1958. 160 p. illus. DT512.M5 1958

Travel narrative of a British literary woman, "written after only six weeks of observation and thought in the place itself" in late 1957. Her fresh and interesting impressions are of classes, language and words, history, religion, morals, education, politics, clothes, art and music of "other people's worlds" in Ghana and Nigeria.

574. POTEKHIN, IVAN I. *Gana segodnia; dnevnik*, 1957 g. Moskva, Gos. izd-vo geogr. lit-ry, 1959. DT512.P6

The Director of the Afrika Institut of the Soviet Academy of Sciences reported with enthusiasm on his visit to the new country in its first year of national existence. His book is reviewed by M. H. [Mary Holdsworth] in *Africa*, July 1960, p. 281–282.

575. RYAN, ISOBEL. *Black man's town*. London, Cape, 1953. 249 p. illus. DT511.R9

By the wife of a Colonial officer, who had written in 1950 her experiences in the Nigerian "bush" (no. 699). Her second book is the account of a year in a port city of the Gold Coast just as self-government was being established in the colony. The highly personal and amusing narrative combines description of the experience of the European housewife in the, to her, often fantastic West African setting with insight into the



changing relations of black and white in the evolving society.

576. WARNER, DOUGLAS. *Ghana and the new Africa*. London, F. Muller, 1960. 181 p. illus. DT510.W3

Personal impressions of a journalist who had fled from the *Drum* office in Johannesburg to what he considered the more enlightened regions of West Africa. He found Accra a congenial atmosphere and is enthusiastic about Ghana and Nkrumah's program of pan-Africanism. He draws a rather depressing picture of Nigerian cities, which he also visited. He is criticized for inaccuracies in a review in *West Africa*, Aug. 13, 1960.

A fresh and entertaining travel narrative of a few years earlier is translated from the Danish, Karl Eskelund's *Black Man's Country; A Journey through Ghana* (London, A. Redman, 1958. 164 p. illus.).

577. WRIGHT, RICHARD. *Black power; a record of reactions in a land of pathos*. New York, Harper, 1954. 358 p. illus. DT511.W7

The noted American Negro novelist and ex-Communist visited the Gold Coast in the late years of its status as a British colony, and wrote a powerful, highly subjective account of his trip and his impressions. He was constantly thrilled, at times with joy, almost more often with horror, both at what Europe had done to Africa and at African superstition. He concludes with a letter to Nkrumah, for whom he had ardent admiration, urging that Africa must follow an African path, free of domination by West or East.

## HISTORY

578. CLARIDGE, WILLIAM W. *A history of the Gold Coast and Ashanti* from the earliest times to the commencement of the twentieth century. London, J. Murray, 1915. 2 v. DT511.C6

This famous work is particularly valuable in its full treatment of the Ashanti wars. According to the later historian, W. W. Ward, "Every one who writes on Gold Coast history should begin, after the fashion of the country, by pouring a libation and sacrificing a sheep in honour of Dr. Claridge, whose monumental *History* . . . is not likely to be superseded."

579. DAVIES, OLIVER. *Archaeology in Ghana*. London, Published by Nelson for University of Ghana, 1961. 45 p. illus. DT510.3.D3

Five papers by a scholar at the university (until 1961/62 University College) of Ghana, who has done

extensive archeological research in that country. A review signed by Thurston Shaw appeared in *West Africa* of April 7, 1962.

580. FAGE, J. D. *Ghana: a historical interpretation*. Madison, University of Wisconsin Press, 1959. 122 p. illus. DT511.F3

Based on a series of lectures while the former University College of Ghana professor was temporarily at the University of Wisconsin. His emphasis is on adaptations of the people of Ghana to the social and economic changes of the modern world rather than on constitutional developments.

581. KIMBLE, DAVID. *A political history of Ghana 1850-1929*. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 516 p. maps. DT511.K42

The announcement from the publishers speaks of this as "the first full-scale history of the origins of nationalism in an African country." The author was Director of the Institute of Extra-Mural Studies at the University College of Ghana.

582. METCALFE, G. E. *Maclean of the Gold Coast*. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 344 p. (West African history series) DT510.6.M28M4

Political biography of the almost legendary George Maclean, who in the 1830's and 1840's established peaceful relations with the Ashanti and Fanti, leading to the establishment of the British protectorate.

583. REINDORF, CARL C. *The history of the Gold Coast and Asante*, based on traditions and historical facts comprising a period of more than three centuries from about 1500 to 1860. With a biographical sketch by C. E. Reindorf. 2d ed. Basel, Basel Mission Book Depot, 1951. 349 p. illus. DT511.R4 1951

Reprint of a book published in 1889, which was a pioneer work by a native pastor of the Basel Mission in Christiansborg. His history, based very largely on the traditions he had heard in his youth, "covers the kingdoms of Akra (Accra) and Ashantee—my ancestors on the father's and mother's side belonged to the families of national officiating high priests in Akra and Christiansborg. And I should have become a priest . . . if I had not been born a mulatto and become a Christian." The introductory biography of the author is by his son. Important as a source work, the narrative abounds in translations of Ga anecdotes, sayings, and songs.

584. WARD, WILLIAM ERNEST. *A history of Ghana*. 2d ed. rev. London, Allen & Unwin, 1958. 434 p. illus., ports., maps.

585. ———. *A short history of Ghana*. 7th ed. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1957. 275 p. illus. DT511.W3 1957

Professor Ward's *Short History* was published first while he was teaching at Achimota in 1935, and was addressed particularly to African students. It has gone through many editions and has become the standard modern text for political history, "of tribal movements, wars and treaties, and the rise and fall of states." The latest revision brings the story up to independence. The longer work, for a European audience, was first published in 1948 as *A History of the Gold Coast*.

586. WILKS, IVOR. *The northern factor in Ashanti history*. [Legon, Ghana? 196-]

This monograph is mentioned in "Matchet's Diary" in *West Africa*, June 23, 1962, as one of the first publications of the Institute of African Studies at the University of Ghana. The work had not been received by the Library of Congress as of January 1963.

587. WOLFSON, FRED. *Pageant of Ghana*. London, Oxford University Press, 1958. 266 p. (West African history series) DT510.W6

A compilation of well-chosen extracts from written records about the Gold Coast, dating back to the first narrative of discovery by the Portuguese João de Barros in 1471, and ending with Nkrumah's independence motion speech in July 1953.

## POLITICS

588. APTER, DAVID E. *The Gold Coast in transition*. Princeton, Princeton University Press, 1955. 355 p. illus. DT511.A7 1955

Rev. ed., New York, Atheneum, 1963. 432 p.  
Bibliography: p. 335-346.

Case study of political institutional transfer, the first of two field studies carried out by Dr. Apter under a Social Science Research Council grant (see also *Uganda*, no. 1372). Much of the text, after a sketch of background, traditional system of politics, and the British policy of indirect rule, is devoted to the evolutionary changes between the Constitution of 1950 and the Nkrumah Constitution of 1954, which brought representative and responsible self-government, foreshadowing complete independence. In a chapter on "Prospects of Gold Coast Democracy" the writer discusses the functions of the charisma arising from the

mass support of Nkrumah, which has given to this authority an ideological character that represents divine sanction.

589. BENNION, FRANCIS A. R. *The constitutional law of Ghana*. London, Butterworths, 1962. xxxvi, 527 p. (African law series, no. 5) DLC-LL

590. BOURRET, F. M. *Ghana, the road to independence, 1919-1957*. rev. ed. Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1960. 246 p. illus. DT511.B68 1960

The third edition of an informative study by an American professor, first published in 1949 with the title: *The Gold Coast; A Survey of the Gold Coast and British Togoland, 1919-1946* (Stanford, 1949. 231 p.). Dr. Bourret planned her political, economic, and social history of the colony in the 20th century as a case study of the "day-by-day working out" of British policy in bringing dependent territories into the modern world. An updated edition, 1919-51, was published in 1952, and the present volume completes the survey with a chapter detailing the political and constitutional changes of 1945-57, and Independence Day. The work has footnote references and a useful bibliography, including documents.

591. BUSIA, KOFI A. *The position of the chief in the modern political system of Ashanti; a study of the influence of contemporary social changes on Ashanti political institutions*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1951. 233 p. JS7649.G62B8

This study of Ashanti political institutions of the past and of their changes under the 50 years of British administration was presented as a thesis at the University of London. The fieldwork was done in 1941-42, and the contemporary scene studied through 1946, thus already outdated by postwar changes at the time of its publication. In 1947-48 Dr. Busia was in charge of a government-sponsored case study of a war boom town where traditional African ways of life were undergoing rapid changes; his *Report on a Social Survey of Sekondi-Takoradi* (London, Crown Agents for the Colonies on behalf of the Government of the Gold Coast, 1950. 164 p. maps) is a careful analysis according to the methods of applied social anthropology. Dr. Busia has been active in political affairs as a spokesman for the United Party, the group which represents the chief opposition to Nkrumah, and is now in voluntary exile. He has held the chair of



Sociology at the Institute of Social Studies at the Hague and the Chair of Social Culture of Africa in Leyden since 1959. In 1962 he has been a guest professor at the University of Mexico.

592. ELIAS, TASLIM OLAWALE. *Ghana and Sierra Leone; the development of their laws and constitutions.* London, Stevens, 1962. 334 p. (The British Commonwealth, the development of its laws and constitution, v. 10)  
DLC-LL

See note on Dr. Elias, no. 191.

593. GHANA. *Statement of the Government on the recent conspiracy.* Accra, 1961. 50 p.  
DLC

This White Paper on the so-called Amponsah-Awhaitey conspiracy in 1961 alleged that opponents of Nkrumah's taxation proposals had conspired to assassinate him, and that a general plot had been devised to overthrow the government, with aid from Togo. It is discussed at length in *West Africa*, Dec. 16, 1961, p. 1377-1378.

594. NKURUMAH, KWAME. *Ghana; the autobiography of Kwame Nkrumah.* New York, T. Nelson, 1957. 302 p. illus.  
DT511.N55

595. ———. *Hands off Africa!!!* Some famous speeches by Dr. the Rt. Hon. Kwame Nkrumah P.C., M.P. (first President of the Republic of Ghana); with a tribute to George Padmore, written by Twia Adamafo, General Secretary of C. P. P. Accra, Kwabena Owusu-Akyem, 1960. 62 p.  
DT510.6.N5A45 1960

596. ———. *I speak of freedom; a statement of African ideology.* New York, Praeger, 1961. 291 p. (Books that matter)  
DT512.N55 1961

The autobiography of the charismatic leader of Ghana was timed for release to coincide with the birth of the new nation whose successful fight for independence was due in large part to his dynamic direction. The second-named volume is a pamphlet collection of some of Nkrumah's most famous speeches, dating from the farewell tribute to the departing Colonial Governor of the Gold Coast, the late Sir Charles Arden-Clarke, on May 11, 1957, to the speech on his return from the Commonwealth Prime Ministers' Conference in London, June 1960. The speeches are preceded by a paragraph of tribute to the late George Padmore, and a "profile" of Nkrumah, "Man of

Destiny," reprinted from the *West African Review*. *I Speak of Freedom* is again autobiographical, recounting developments from Nkrumah's return to his country in December 1947—the achievement of independence of the first Black African territory to emerge from colonial rule, the impetus given other African states to follow the example, the progress toward building a welfare state, and the stand taken by Ghana, under his leadership, in international affairs. His ideology is summed up in his final paragraph: "But the whole of Africa must be free and united. Only then will we be able to exercise our full strength in the cause of peace and the welfare of mankind." Dr. Gwendolen Carter in a review (*New York Times*, Aug. 29, 1961) speaks of this book as "surprisingly readable."

597. PADMORE, GEORGE. *The Gold Coast revolution; the struggle of an African people from slavery to freedom.* London, D. Dobson, 1953. 272 p. illus.  
DT511.P3

Political account of the Gold Coast from the foundation of the Ashanti Confederation to the accession of Nkrumah as Prime Minister. The author was criticized by the Manchester *Guardian* as being "less than fair to Nkrumah's predecessors or opponents." Some of the same ground is covered in Mr. Padmore's later book (no. 123).

598. PHILLIPS, JOHN F. V. *Kwame Nkrumah and the future of Africa.* New York, Praeger, 1961. 272 p. illus. (Books that matter)  
DT31.P5 1961

As Professor of Agriculture at the University College of Ghana, the writer had had opportunity to observe at firsthand the political progress of Ghana, and the dominant role of Dr. Nkrumah. Professor Phillips is sympathetic with emergent Africanism, and, while not without criticism, is admiring of Nkrumah, whom he compares as a political philosopher and nation builder to Field Marshal Smuts.

Sketches of Nkrumah are included in many recent works on African politics, notably in such books as those on African leaders by Melady and Italiaander (no. 127n). There might be mentioned here the brief but incisive picture by Vera Micheles Dean in her *Builders of Emergent Nations* (New York, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1961; see p. 154-161). It follows a general sketch of African political evolution and is accompanied by biographical comment on Houphouët-Boigny, Tom Mboya, and Julius Nyerere.

An enthusiastic biography of Dr. Nkrumah was written before the winning of independence by a newspaperman from Accra, by birth a Sierra Leonean, Bankele Timothy: *Kwame Nkrumah: His Rise to Power* (London, Allen &

Unwin, 1955. 198 p.). The present Ghanaian style of writing about the President of the Republic is exemplified in a highly illustrated pamphlet of 1961 put together by an Information Service officer, John Arthur: "*Mile 51*" (*In Honour of Osagyefo's 51st Birthday*), with at head of title, "On behalf of the nation." Printed by the Guinea Press in Accra, its 83 pages include portraits of the "Deliverer" and his chief associates, pages offering birthday greetings of commercial companies, tributes in prose and verse.

On the opposite side of the ledger is a thoughtful article in *The New Leader* of Nov. 26, 1962 by a sociologist from Stanford University, William McCord: "Long Night in Ghana." Professor McCord went to Ghana recently from Nigeria and has accumulated evidence of the terrorist nature of Nkrumah's authoritarian state. He feels that the slight economic advantages of absolute rule are not sufficient gains to compensate for "the death of political freedom."

599. RUBIN, LESLIE and PAULI MURRAY. *The Constitution and government of Ghana*. London, Sweet & Maxwell, 1961. 310 p. tables. (Law in Africa series, no. 1) DLC-LL

Much of this study is speculative, as the Ghana courts have not yet given decisions on various significant questions. The book is reviewed at length in *West Africa*, Mar. 10, 1962.

600. WIGHT, MARTIN. *The Gold Coast Legislative Council*. London, Pub. under the auspices of Nuffield College by Faber & Faber, 1947. 285 p. fold. map. (Studies in colonial legislatures, v. 2) JQ3033.W5

Second volume of the significant series, now chiefly of historical value, edited by Margery Perham. Mr. Wight, an authority on colonial constitutions, had written also the first general volume, *Development of the Legislative Council, 1606-1945*. His specialist study of the Gold Coast function of self-government began with a review of historical and political development, then analyzed the Constitution of 1925, the Council set up by it, and its working. He examined the postwar political situation of the colony, and concluded with a brief glance at the new Constitution of 1946.

## ECONOMICS

601. AKWAWUAH, KWADWO ASOJO. *Prelude to Ghana's industrialisation*. London, Mitre Press [195 ] 96 p. HC517.G6A65

A pamphlet for African readers by the first President of the West African Management Association. Chapters explain industrial finance, location of industry, unemployment, the place of management, language in industry, and planning.

602. COLLINS, W. B. *They went to bush*. London, MacGibbon & Kee, 1961. 231 p.

Personal narrative of problems encountered in managing forest reserves in Ghana.

603. GHANA. *1960 population census of Ghana*. Accra, 196- DLC

Obtainable from the Census Office.

The 1960 census was the first complete census held in Ghana and the first to use modern census techniques. Its results are being published in six volumes. As of January 1963 there have appeared: Vol. 1, *The Gazetteer (Alphabetical List of Localities)*; Vol. 2, *Statistics of Localities and Enumeration Areas (Sex, Age, Birthplace, School Attendance and Economic Activity)*; Advance Report of Vols. 3 and 4. A first article on the census appears in *West Africa* of Jan. 5, 1963, with the announcement that fuller details will be published as available.

604. ———. *Second Development Plan, 1959-64*. Accra, Govt. Printer, 1959. 124 p. DLC

For analysis of the Plan, see a series of five articles by a correspondent from Ghana in *West Africa*, Apr. 18-May 23, 1959 (p. 367, 397, 425, 473, 496).

605. ———. [*White Paper on the Volta River Project*] Accra, 1961. ca. 100 p. DLC

This important paper, which was explained to the National Assembly by Dr. Nkrumah in February 1961, included the draft "Master Agreement" between the Ghana Government and Valco, the group of aluminum companies which have undertaken to build a smelter at Tema, utilizing power from the proposed Akosombo dam. The dam is described in some detail. A summarization of the paper and of Dr. Nkrumah's talk is given in *West Africa* of March 4, 1961 (p. 227).

606. ———. Government Statistician. *Survey of cocoa producing families in Ashanti, 1956-57*. Accra, Govt. Printer. 1960. 112 p. (Statistical and economic papers, 7)

607. ———. Information Services. *Roadmakers; a picture book of Ghana*. Accra, Printed for Ghana Information Services by Newman Neame (London) 1962. DLC

Album of photographs of present-day Ghana life, with text by Efua Sutherland and photographs by Willis E. Bell. "Our fathers found the paths. We are the roadmakers."



608. ——— *Tema; Ghana's new town and harbour*. [Written by Keith Jopp] Accra, Published for the Development Secretariat by the Ministry of Information, 1961. 51 p. illus.

DT512.9.T4A5

A well-presented booklet signed by the Hon. E. Ayeh-Kumi, Executive Director of the Development Secretariat, gives a factual account of the development of the new harbor and town, proposed in 1951 and built up from a fishing village into a port indispensable for marketing the aluminum resulting from the Volta Project. Cost to date is given as £G6,508,264.

A special survey section on "Tema Harbour" was published in the *Guardian* (Manchester) of Feb. 10, 1962 (p. 7-10).

609. GHANA. Town and Country Planning Division. *Accra, a plan for the town*; the report for the Minister of Housing. With a foreword by Kwame Nkrumah, and an introd. by A. E. Inkumsan. Accra, 1958. 137 p. illus. (part col.) maps, plans. NA9278.A2A53

610. GOULD, PETER R. *The development of the transportation pattern in Ghana*. Evanston, Ill., Dept. of Geography, Northwestern University, 1960. 163 p. (Northwestern University. Studies in geography, no. 5) HE284.G5G6

611. HILL, POLLY. *The Gold Coast cocoa farmer; a preliminary survey*. London, Oxford University Press, 1956. 139 p. HD9200.G62H5

This study is a collection of separate social and economic reports on the employment of laborers in the cocoa farms of the Gold Coast, the pledging of cocoa farms, and the income and expenditures of the cocoa farmers. The surveys on which the work is based were carried out in 1954-55, largely with the help of the cooperative societies. Although the findings are of some years ago, the book is still constantly cited as authoritative. The author, now Mrs. Humphreys, is on the staff of the University College of Ghana and in 1962 will be a member of the new Institute of African Studies. According to "Matchet's Diary" in *West Africa* of June 23, 1962, she has "a massive new book on the rise of the cocoa industry [which] will for the first time give the Ghana farmer the credit he deserves."

For any study of the cocoa industry, reference should be made to the annual reports of the Ghana Cocoa Marketing Board and to its quarterly magazine *The C.M.B. Newsletter* (Accra, 1957+).

612. HILTON, T. E. *Ghana population atlas; the distribution and density of population in the Gold Coast and Togoland under United Kingdom trusteeship*. Edinburgh, T. Nelson, 1960. 40 p. G2701.E2H5 1960

Published on behalf of the University College of Ghana, where this geographer was a staff member. The study is on population censuses of 1931 and 1948, and includes an analysis of internal migration from north to Ashanti and south. Maps show distribution, density rates of population increase, and occupational structure.

613. IRVINE, FREDERICK R. *The fishes and fisheries of the Gold Coast*. With illus. and an account of the fishing industry by A. P. Brown and classification and keys for the identification of the fishes by J. R. Norman and E. Trewavas. London, Published on behalf of the Government of the Gold Coast by the Crown Agents for the Colonies, 1947. 352 p. illus. SH315.G617

Includes bibliography.

614. ——— *Woody plants of Ghana, with special reference to their uses*. London, Oxford University Press, 1961. xcv, 868 p. illus., 35 plates (part col.) QK490.G5I7 1961

First published in 1930 under title: *Plants of the Gold Coast*.

Bibliography: p. 790-793.

Another full-scale study of forestry in Ghana is by Charles J. Taylor: *Synecology and silviculture in Ghana* (Edinburgh, Published on behalf of the University College of Ghana by Nelson, 1960. 418 p. illus. maps).

615. PFEFFER, KARL H. *Ghana; menschlich-soziale Grundlagen für die wirtschaftliche Entwicklung eines jungen Staatswesens*. Hamburg, Verlag Weltarchiv, 1961. 81 p. (Schriften des Hamburgischen Welt-Wirtschafts-Archivs, Nr. 12. Sonderreihe Entwicklungsgebiete) HC517.G5P4

Somewhat involved socio-economic study, much of it in technical language. The writer is author of several of the African country surveys in the series *Die Länder Afrikas* (see no. 10) including *Ghana* (Bonn, K. Schroeder, 1958. 104 p.).

616. POLEMAN, THOMAS T. *The food economies of urban middle Africa: the case of Ghana*. Stanford, Calif., Food Research Institute, Stanford University, 1961. 175 p. illus. DLC-AFR

Reprint from *Food Research Institute Studies*, vol. 2, no. 2, May 1961.

617. SKINNER, SNIDER W. Ghana's agriculture and trade in farm products. Washington, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, 1958. 34 p. illus., map (FAS-M-34)

For general note on this series, see no. 445.

618. VOLTA RIVER PREPARATORY COMMISSION. *The Volta River project*. London, Published for the Governments of the United Kingdom and of the Gold Coast by H.M. Stationery Office, 1956. 3 v., illus., maps, diagrs., tables.

HD1699.V6V6

This scheme for the development of large-scale aluminum production had been outlined in a British Colonial Office White Paper of 1952 (Cmd. 8702), with an estimate for total general expenditure of £144 million. The Preparatory Commission was set up in 1953. Its report is given in the first of the three volumes (135 p., and large folded map); Vol. 2, with many tables, maps, and charts, contains appendixes on various effects and special problems (475 p.). Vol. 3, *Engineering Report*, by Sir William Halcrow and Partners, contains 88 pages of text and many large folded sheets of plans.

A monograph on *The Geology of the Volta River Project*, by W. B. Tevendale (Accra, 1957. 119 p. illus.), was published as Bulletin No. 20 of the Ghana Geological Survey.

619. WILLS, J. BRIAN, ed. *Agriculture and land use in Ghana*. London, New York, published for the Ghana Ministry of Food and Agriculture by the Oxford University Press, 1962. 503 p. illus. tables, charts.

S338.G6W5

Compendium of information available on background, state, and problems of agriculture and land use in Ghana. In three parts, the first on general conditions and patterns of rural land use; the second on special aspects, with particular emphasis on cocoa crops; the third on forestry and plant and animal husbandry. The work, intended as a textbook for officials, teachers, and research workers, was begun in 1954, and finished by an official of the Ghana Soil and Land-Use Survey.

620. WITTMAN (G. H.) INC., New York. *The Ghana report*; economic development and investment opportunities, legal problems relative to investment, sociological factors relative to general economic development. New York, 1959. 236 l., map, forms, tables.

HC517.G6W5

This report of a firm of business consultants is designed as a guide for foreign investment and business capital. It involved 12 months of study and re-

search, including two field trips. The aim was for complete objectivity in reporting.

## ANTHROPOLOGY AND SOCIAL STUDIES

621. ACQUAH, IONÉ. *Accra survey: a social survey of the capital of Ghana, formerly called the Gold Coast*, undertaken for the West African Institute of Social and Economic Research, 1953-6. London, University of London Press, 1958. 176 p. illus.

DS

Reviewed by Kenneth Little as "one of the most useful surveys that have so far been carried out in an African town" (*Africa*, April 1960, p. 190-191). The interesting information includes data on the extent to which the town's social life is affected by migration.

622. CHRISTENSEN, JAMES B. *Double descent among the Fanti*. New Haven, Human Relations Area Files, 1954. 145 p. (Behavior science monographs) Edited by Genevieve A. Highland.

GN655.F32C4

Anthropological monograph resulting from field-work among the Fanti tribe of the Akan peoples of the Gold Coast. The writer endeavors to make the point that the role of the patrilinear line, with worship of the father's deity, has been neglected in studies of this society in which descent has been considered matrilinear. The book is critically reviewed in *Africa*, January 1955, p. 102-104. Its format, made up from facsimiles of sheets of the Human Relations Area files, involves notations of file numbers at page headings and in margins which, though serving as an index, make for difficulty in reading the text to other than trained anthropologists.

623. DANQUAH, JOSEPH B. *Gold Coast: Akan laws and customs of the Akim Abuakwa constitution*. London, Routledge, 1928. 272 p.

DLC-LL

The founder of the prewar movement for autonomy, who lost his mantle of leadership and his Ghana Congress Party to the younger Nkrumah and the Congress Peoples' Party in the elections of 1954 and 1956 and is now in retirement, prepared this book in the course of his law training in the Inner Temple in London (1922-27). He is the author of a number of books, other pamphlets, and articles. A recent biographical pamphlet is *Liberty, A Page from the Life of J. B.* (Accra, H. K. Akyeampong, 1960. 34 p. illus.). One of his longer works, a philosophic ethnological



study, is *The Akan Doctrine of God: A Fragment of Gold Coast Ethics* (London, Lutterworth Press, 1944. 206 p.).

624. DEBRUNNER, H. *Witchcraft in Ghana; a study on the belief in destructive witches and its effects on the Akan tribes.* Kumasi, Presbyterian Book Depot, 1959. 209 p. illus.

BF1584.G5D4

By a missionary who wrote avowedly to help the Church form a policy without waiting "until all aspects of the problem are studied by Anthropologists, Sociologists, Psychologists, etc." The work is based on the author's own long personal experience as well as the more scholarly sources which he has studied. Several chapters relate to the new pagan cults or separatist "Christian healing churches," whose prophets engage in witchhunting. It was enthusiastically reviewed by Geoffrey Parrinder in *West Africa* (May 21, 1960, p. 576).

625. DU SAUTOY, PETER. *Community development in Ghana.* London, Oxford University Press, 1958. 209 p. illus.

HN398.G5D8

The author had been appointed Deputy Director of the Department of Social Welfare and Community Development in the Gold Coast in 1952. This book tells the story of its achievement. Under the Ghana Republic the Department of Community Development has become a general extension agency for other government departments, organizing training for many cadres of new officialdom.

626. FIELD, MARGARET J. *Religion and medicine of the Gã people.* London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1937. 214 p.

BL2480.G3.F5 1937

627. ——— *Social organization of the Gã people.* Accra, Gold Coast, Published by the Crown Agents for the Colonies, 1940. 231 p.

DT511.F5

628. ——— *Akim-Kotoku; an oman of the Gold Coast.* Accra, Published by the Crown Agents for the Colonies, 1948. 211 p. DT511.F498

Three anthropological studies by a scholar who acted as social anthropologist to the Gold Coast Government. The first, prepared as a doctoral thesis at the University of London, is interesting reading, much of it dealing with witches and their magic. The second describes family and kinship customs and life in the Gã towns, Temma, Nungwa, Accra, Osu, Labdi

and Teshi, and the future problems of the administration. The last is a study of the government of the chief in one of the native tribes, the adaptation of "indirect rule" which the British had hoped to make really efficient and satisfactory to the people, as an answer to the nationalist demand for self-government.

629. ——— *Search for security; an ethno-psychiatric study of rural Ghana.* Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Press, 1960. 478 p. (Northwestern University. African studies, no. 5)

RC451.G45F5

Returning to the locale of her earlier studies, in this work Dr. Field focused attention on the Ashanti shrines in Ghana to which the rural inhabitants come in their "search for security," which accompanies mental ills. The first part is a general analysis, the second and larger part devoted to case histories. The book is reviewed in *Africa*, Jan. 1961, by Gustav Jahoda, who says: "In the relatively unexplored territory between anthropology and psychiatry this study constitutes a landmark of permanent value."

630. FORTES, MEYER. *The dynamics of clanship among the Tallensi,* being the first part of an analysis of the social structure of a Trans-Volta tribe. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1945. 270 p. DT511.F59

631. ——— *The web of kinship among the Tallensi;* the second part of an analysis of the social structure of a Trans-Volta tribe. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1949. 358 p. illus.

DT511.F6

Professor Fortes, who has held the William Wyse Chair of Social Anthropology in Cambridge University since 1950, did his first fieldwork as a Fellow of the International African Institute in the Gold Coast in the thirties. These two notable works of scholarship, studying a tribe in the Northern Territories, are considered classics in social anthropological analysis.

632. ——— *Oedipus and Job in West African religion.* Cambridge, University Press, 1959. 81 p.

BL2480.T3F6

Essay expanded from the Frazer Lecture for 1956, which was entitled "The Idea of Destiny in West African Religions," exploring the beliefs in Fate and the Ancestors of the Tallensi (in L.C. catalog, the Talansi), and their common elements with the Fate of early Greek religion and the God of Job.

633. JAHODA, GUSTAV. *White man; a study of the attitudes of Africans to Europeans in Ghana before independence*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1961. 144 p. DT510.42.J3  
Sociopsychological analysis based on two attitude surveys. Reviewed by Michael Banton in *Africa*, Oct. 1961, p. 390-391.
634. KAYE, BARRINGTON. *Bringing up children in Ghana, an impressionistic survey*. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1962. 244 p. HQ771.G43K3  
Study of what happens in the many different societies of Ghana, prepared as a preliminary to the setting up of a Ford Foundation-financed Child Development Research Unit. Reviewed in *West Africa*, June 2, 1962.
635. LYSTAD, ROBERT A. *The Ashanti; a proud people*. New Brunswick, N.J., Rutgers University Press, 1958. 212 p. illus. DT507.L9  
Sociological study by a former pupil of Dr. Herskovits, written in narrative style that avoids technical language. It was warmly reviewed by Meyer Fortes in *Africa* of April 1959.
636. MANOUKIAN, MADELINE. *Akan and Ga-Adangme peoples of the Gold Coast*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1950. 112 p. map. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: Western Africa, pt. 1) DT511.M27
637. ———. *The Ewe-speaking people of Togoland and the Gold Coast*. London, International African Institute, 1952. 63 p. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: Western Africa, pt. 6) DT500.M35  
Bibliography: p. 55-61.
638. ———. *Tribes of the northern territories of the Gold Coast*. London, International African Institute, 1951. 102 p. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: Western Africa, pt. 5) DT511.M28  
Bibliography: p. 99-101.  
See general description of the series in which these three volumes occur (no. 270). The author is connected with the International African Institute.
639. MEYEROWITZ, EVA L. R. *The sacred state of the Akan*. London, Faber & Faber, 1951. 222 p. illus., plates. GN493.4.A6M4
640. ———. *Akan traditions of origin*. London, Faber & Faber, 1952. 149 p. maps. GN493.4.A6M38 1952
641. ———. *The Akan of Ghana, their ancient beliefs*. London, Faber & Faber, 1958. 14 p. illus. BL2480.A4M4
642. ———. *The divine kingship in Ghana and ancient Egypt*. London, Faber & Faber, 1960. 260 p. illus. BL325.K5M4  
In 1943 the author, then art supervisor at Achimota College, became interested in the gold work of the Ashanti. This led to a series of anthropological studies of the Akan people, for which she visited many towns and villages, listening to tales of traditions. The first study is of the concept of the sacred state, its basis in matrilineal clans within a territorial and military confederation, the role of Queenmother, divine king, religious beliefs and symbolism, cults and ceremonies, ending with an account of the sacred art of gold work. In the second book the author relates the traditional tales she had heard. Her third and fourth studies are in support of her controversial thesis that there is obvious derivation from ancient Egypt in Akan beliefs and customs.
643. NKETIA, J. H. *Funeral dirges of the Akan people*. Achimota, 1955. 296 p. DLC  
Study by a prominent Akan scholar, at what was then the University College of the Gold Coast. It contains a background essay, the texts of over a hundred examples of dirges for various groups or individuals, and appendixes which include musical terms.
644. OLLENNU, N. A. *Principles of customary land law in Ghana*. London, Sweet & Maxwell, 1962. xxvi, 272 p. plates, maps, tables, diagrs. (Law in Africa series, no. 2) DLC-LL
645. RATTRAY, ROBERT SUTHERLAND. *Ashanti*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1923. 348 p. DT507.R3
646. ———. *Religion and art in Ashanti*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1927. 414 p. DT507.R34
647. ———. *Ashanti law and constitution*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1929. 420 p. GN493.4.A9R3



648. ———. *Tribes of the Ashanti hinterland*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1932. 2 v. DT11.R3

This anthropologist, whose career in Africa began with the South African War and who was in the Civil Service from 1907 on, was well known as an authority on native languages and customs. Following the First World War he was named head of a new Anthropology Department in Ashanti, and it was his detailed investigation of the beliefs and customs of that war-like people, submitted in 1921 as a confidential "Intelligence Report" to the Administration, that made the British realize the true cause of the Ashanti Wars, another of which was then threatening—the disposition of the Golden Stool, in which the Ashanti believed the soul of the nation resided. That paper is included as the final chapter of Captain Rattray's *Ashanti*. Of the three first-named books, which were published as a uniform series, the second, *Religion and Art in Ashanti*, comes closest to popular style; all are definitely scholarly works. The first two volumes, *Ashanti*, and *Religion and Art in Ashanti*, were brought out in reprint editions by the Basel Mission Book Depot in Kumasi, Ghana, in 1954–55. Another book by Captain Rattray was *Akan-Ashanti Folk-Tales* (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1930. 275 p.). This is a group of stories collected in the remoter villages, and given as closely as possible in the words of the informants, with text on one side in the Akan

language, on the other in English. Illustrations are by African artists.

649. TAIT, DAVID. *The Konkomba of Northern Ghana* [by] David Tait. Edited from his published and unpublished writings by Jack Goody. London, Published for the International African Institute and the University of Ghana by the Oxford University Press, 1961. 255 p. DT582.42.T3

The author, an anthropologist working on a full-scale study of the Konkomba, was killed in an automobile accident in Ghana in 1956. This volume includes all his published work plus posthumously edited and unpublished manuscripts. The political system, domestic organization, and some rituals of the tribe, a small group in northern Ghana, are described.

650. *Voices of Ghana*, edited by H. M. Swanzy. Accra, Ghana Government Press, for the Ministry of Information and Broadcasting, 1958.

The editor of this volume of literary contributions to the Ghana Broadcasting System was formerly editor of the Royal African Society journal, *African Affairs*. The compilation is reviewed in the April 1959 issue of this magazine by a Ghanaian writer, Yaw Atta Warren.

An organ for literary work in Ghana is the journal *Universitas*, which has been published irregularly at the University College since 1953.

## Liberia

### Bibliography

651. SOLOMON, MARVIN D., and WARREN L. D'AZEVEDO, comps. *A general bibliography of the Republic of Liberia*. Evanston, Ill., 1962. 68 p. (Northwestern University. Working papers in social science, no. 1) DLC

The most up-to-date and comprehensive bibliography available for Liberia. Entries are in four sections, the first by individual author; second, title or corporate author entries; third, official documents; and 4, miscellaneous materials such as maps and surveys. There are well over 2,000 entries, including periodical references.

See also works by Holas (no. 662) and Huberich (no. 663).

652. ANDERSON, ROBERT E. *Liberia, America's African friend*. Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina Press, 1952. 305 p. illus., maps. DT624.A64

Bibliographical references included in "Notes" (p. 287–294).

Informative account of Liberia by a consulting engineer whose previous writings had been on naval architecture. This book, based on a wide variety of written source materials and personal contacts made during a long stay in Liberia, gave a full picture surveying country, tribal people and their life, early and recent history, the American concessions and engineering improvements, Monrovia and the Liberian government, missions and education, forestry,

agriculture, and economic prospects. In his final chapter, "Looking Ahead," the writer addressed himself particularly to American investors, being enthusiastic over the "mutually advantageous relationship" of Liberia and Firestone, etc. The book is dedicated to Dr. and Mrs. George Way Harlcy, whose pioneer medical mission at Ganta he has described as representing a contribution "beyond measure" to Liberia's welfare.

653. AZIKIWE, NNAMDÍ. *Liberia in world politics*. London, A. H. Stockwell, 1934. 406 p. DT632.A85

The first major work of the Nigerian leader, expressing the African nationalist viewpoint on Liberian politics and defending the administration against the misunderstanding shown by the outside world. "Zik" admitted the need for political and social reforms, but urged special emphasis on the spiritual values which Liberia should assert as "the nucleus of black hegemony."

654. BROWN, GEORGE W. *The economic history of Liberia*. Washington, D.C., The Associated Publishers, 1941. 366 p. HC591.L6B74

History by an American Negro scholar, published with help from the Phelps-Stokes Fund (American foundation for aid to Negro education), the Republic of Liberia, and the London School of Economics. The first part is a rapid historical and geographical survey, the second part a careful study of the economy of a native communal society, and the "loans and concessions" imposed on it by the Republic and foreign influences. The Appendix quotes historical and economic documents.

655. BUELL, RAYMOND LESLIE. *Liberia: a century of survival, 1847-1947*. Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania Press, the University Museum, 1947. 140 p. (African handbooks, ed. by H. A. Weischhoff. 7) DT632.B8

In his *Native Problem in Africa* of 1928 (see no. 7), Dr. Buell had given special attention to the situation in Liberia. This later pamphlet, prepared as a centennial study, expressed clearly his criticism of the Liberian experiment in independent government. He began with a statement of the American wartime interest in Liberia, then reviewed political and economic history, with special consideration of the interwar period under the dictatorial True Whig regimes of Presidents King and Barclay, the establish-

ment of the Firestone concessions, and the League of Nations investigations. He stressed the need for a fresh approach, both in Liberian government and in American attempts at rehabilitation. Appendixes give documents of Liberian agreement with the United States and with Firestone up to 1939.

656. EASTMAN, ERNEST. *A history of the State of Maryland in Liberia*. Monrovia, Bureau of Information, Department of State [1957?] 108 p. DT637.M3E18

The first settlement in Liberia of the freed Negroes from America was in 1821 at Cape Mesurado (now Monrovia), but other independent settlements were made, and in 1833 the American Colonization Society established an independent state of Maryland in Liberia at Cape Palmas. This was formally annexed to the Republic of Liberia in 1857. In this brochure, prepared for the centennial celebration, the author presents a well-documented history of Maryland in Liberia.

The country around Cape Palmas was the home of the Glebo (or Grebo) with whom the state of Maryland was at war in 1857. A volume of *Traditional History and Folklore of the Glebo Tribe* was published by the Liberia Bureau of Folklore in 1957 in honor of the centennial. The work, prepared by the research officer, S. J. M. Johnson, is a large processed pamphlet, the copy received by the Library of Congress unfortunately so pale as to be hardly legible. It tells the story of the tribe from traditions going back to the 17th century, with account of tribal government, social life, and customs. A comparable volume (L.C. copy in clearer type) *Traditional History, Customary Laws, Mores, Folkways and Legends of the Vai Tribe*, was also published by the Bureau of Folkways (Monrovia, 1954? 119 l.). This tribe, descendants of the Mandingo peoples of the Sudan, are in northwestern Liberia, Sierra Leone and the Ivory Coast; they are one of the two African tribes to have developed their own script. (The other is the Mun of Cameroon—see no. 1144.)

657. GENEVRAY, J. *Éléments d'une monographie d'une division administrative libérienne* (Grand Bassa County). Dakar, IFAN, 1952. 135 p. illus., map. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 21) DT637.G7G4

Treatise on a region of 9,000 square kilometers along the central coast and reaching back into the interior of Liberia. Subjects covered include physical setting and climate, origins and history of the landings and settlements of colonists from America still limited to the towns of the coastal strip, anthropometry and habitat of the indigenous tribes, Bassa, Kru and



Vai, the Liberian administrative system, religious practices of Liberians and of the partially Christianized—Protestant—Africans, and the language of the Bassa. An appendix is analysis of observations of a thousand cases of yaws among the bare-footed natives—a disease, says the writer, that never attacks those who wear shoes.

658. HARLEY, GEORGE WAY. *Native African medicine*; with special reference to its practice in the Mano tribe of Liberia. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1941. 294 p. R651.H3

Ethnological study by a famous medical missionary who in his long experience in West Africa has penetrated deeply into the native consciousness. In his cultural analysis Dr. Harley drew on his own rich knowledge and on the findings of other leading African scholars. After chapters on the Mano tribe, their medicine in general, their conception of treatment of disease, which is partly rational and partly magical, the medicine of their secret societies, poison, divination, etc., he gives in his summary and conclusions a clear exposition and definition of fetishism. A supplementary section, which reflects the writer's wide study, is on "Native medical practice in Africa as a whole." A long bibliography of sources is included.

Two other ethnological studies by Dr. Harley have been published by the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology of Harvard University in their monograph series, "Notes on the Poro in Liberia" (*Papers*, v. 19, no. 1941), and "Masks as Agents of Social Control in Northeast Liberia" (*Papers*, v. 32, no. 2, 1950). He also contributed additional material to George Schwab's anthropological survey (below). Dr. Harley, among his many other activities, has been medical consultant to the Firestone Liberia Construction Company as well as to the U.S. Public Health Mission in Liberia.

659. HARVARD AFRICAN EXPEDITION, 1926–1927. *The African Republic of Liberia and the Belgian Congo*; based on the observations made and material collected . . . Edited by Richard P. Strong. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1930. 2 v. illus. (Contributions from the Dept. of Tropical Medicine and the Institute for Tropical Biology and Medicine, no. 5) DT626.H3

This expedition, which included Dr. Strong, professor of tropical medicine at Harvard, and other physicians and zoologists, was for the purpose of making a biological and medical survey of Liberia, with comparative study of other regions including the Belgian Congo. The first part is a résumé of the little

knowledge then available regarding the inhabitants of tribal Liberia and the conditions under which they live (ca. 200 p). The longer parts in Volume I are medical and pathological investigations of various diseases. Volume II is data on zoological investigations. The two volumes constitute over a thousand quarto pages.

660. HIMMELHEBER, HANS, and ULRIKE HIMMELHEBER. *Die Dan, ein Bauernvolk im westafrikanischen Urwald*; Ergebnis dreier völkerkundlicher Expeditionen im Hinterland Liberias, 1949/50, 1952/53, 1955/56. Stuttgart, W. Kohlhammer, 1958. 256 p. illus. GN655.L5H5

661. HIMMELHEBER, ULRIKE. *Schwarze Schwester*; von Mensch zu Mensch in Afrika. Mit 45 Aufnahmen der Verfasserin. Bremen, C. Schünemann, 1957. 213 p. illus., maps (on lining papers) DT626.H5

The first named is the record of three of the six expeditions made by this ethnologist, physician, and art expert (see his *Negerkunst und Negerkünstler*), all to the country of the Dan tribe in the Liberian hinterland. His wife, who accompanied him, was particularly concerned with women's affairs. In both books the text is possibly of secondary interest to the fine photographs.

662. HOLAS, BOHUMIL. *Mission dans l'Est libérien* (P. L. Dekeyser, B. Holas, 1948) Résultats démographiques, ethnologiques et anthropométriques. Dakar, IFAN, 1952. 566 p. illus., 40 plates. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 14) DT630.H6

Report of an expedition undertaken by two IFAN scientists, the first time this learned institution had treated a territory outside the French possessions. Of eight parts, the first and longest is "Itinéraire," containing systematic descriptions, in demographic detail village by village, of the tribal regions of Eastern Liberia through which the authors traveled. Part 2 is physical anthropology, with tabled anthropometric observations; Part 3, linguistics; Part 4, religion and magic; Part 5, "intellectual manifestations," chiefly in arts and crafts. Part 6 is a comprehensive bibliography of Liberia (p. 481–530), covering books, pamphlets, documents, periodical literature, and maps, in English, French and other languages. Part 7 is given to indexes, general (subject and place name), vernacular terms, and personal names, and Part 8 is a separate section of 39 plates, mostly of ethnological interest.

663. HUBERICH, CHARLES H. *The political and legislative history of Liberia*. New York, Central Book Co., 1947. 2 v. (1734 p.)

DT632.H8

Subtitle: "A documentary history of the constitutions, laws and treaties of Liberia from the earliest settlements to the establishment of the Republic, a sketch of the activities of the American colonization societies, a commentary on the constitution of the Republic and a survey of the political and social legislation from 1847 to 1944; with appendices containing the laws of the colony of Liberia, 1820-1839, and Acts of the Government and Council, 1839-1847." Foreword by Roscoe Pound.

This exhaustive and heavily documented work, which places chief emphasis on legislative history, is more useful for reference than for reading. Its extensive bibliography (p. 1668-1703) covers printed material and manuscript collections in the United States.

664. JOHNSTON, Sir HARRY H. *Liberia*. New York, Dodd, Mead, 1906. 2 v. DT624.J7

The classic work on Liberia is by this distinguished 19th century British colonial administrator and Africanist (see no. 80). The first volume deals comprehensively with the period of settlement, the slave trade, the establishment of the colony and the first half-century of the Republic, the second volume with natural history (including an appendix on the flora of Liberia by Dr. Otto Stapf of the Kew Herbarium), anthropology and linguistics.

Two other of the older well-written and highly informed British books are Henry Fenwick Reeve's *The Black Republic* (London, Witherby, 1923), and R. C. F. Maugham's *Republic of Liberia* (London, Allen & Unwin, New York, Scribner, 1920), which analyze politics and social conditions.

665. KEISER, ROBERT L. *Liberia; a report on the relations between the United States and Liberia*. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1928. 371 p. (U.S. Dept. of State. Second series B, no 1. Liberia no. 1) E183.8.L5K4

The agreement in 1926 of the Firestone Rubber Co. with the Liberian Government for a concession of a million acres of land was followed in the same year by arrangement of a loan of \$5 million through the Finance Corporation of America, to provide for the rehabilitation of the deeply embarrassed finance of Liberia—a loan which had been arranged in 1922 through the U.S. Treasury but had failed of ratification in the Senate. This study by a Foreign Service officer covers the official record of both transactions. Mr. Keiser restricted his work to material dealing specifically with American-Liberian relations, from the

foundation of the Liberian colonies to 1926, using for most of the record the actual text of documents. There are five chapters: "Background of Liberian History"; "Financial and Economic History Prior to 1923"; "Firestone Projects"; "Concessions"; "United States Interests in Liberia Subsequent to 1923." The appendixes are index-digests of documents and lists of papers and memoranda.

666. LIBERIA. Laws, statutes, etc. *Liberian code of laws of 1956*, adopted by the Legislature of the Republic of Liberia, March 22, 1956. Published under authority of the Legislature of Liberia and President William V. S. Tubman. Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University Press, 1957. 3 v. DLC-LL

667. "Liberia; a Guardian survey." *The Guardian*, Manchester, Nov. 23, 1961. 5 p. DLC

Special feature section on Liberia. The first, page 14, is "The Long Example of Diplomatic Cordiality," beginning with a message from the Liberian ambassador in London. Then on history and nationalism, "Bombard and be Damned"; then "The Independent Heritage," by John Hatch (economic and social life), "Rising Standards of Education," by James Johnson, "The Anglo-Liberian Society," by Pamela Collyer, and by Hella Pick two articles, "An Economy Built on Rubber and Iron," and a sketch of President Tubman. Advertisements of Bank of Liberia, Liberian American-Swedish Metals Co., Liberia Mining Co., etc. This survey was in honor of the visit of the Queen and Duke of Edinburgh to Liberia, Nov. 23, 1961.

668. *The Liberian yearbook for 1962*; compiled and edited by Henry B. Cole. Monrovia, Liberian Review, 1962. 272 p. illus., ports., maps. DLC

Second edition of a comprehensive handbook (1st, 1956). The 21 chapters cover in factual presentation all matters relating to Liberia—land and people, government and administration, economic, social, political, and cultural life. Lists of names and addresses of officials, business firms, and institutions of various kinds are included.

669. PADMORE, GEORGE. *American imperialism enslaves Liberia*. Moscow, Centrizdat, 1931. 45 p. DLC

The African nationalist viewpoint regarding the Firestone concession and the American loan to Liberia was expressed in this fiery propaganda booklet.



670. PRICE, FREDERICK A. *Liberian odyssey* "by hammock and surfboat"; the autobiography of F. A. Price. New York, Pageant Press, 1954. 260 p. illus. BV3625.L6P7

Account of mission work in Liberia during most of the first half of the 20th century. The author, now a Liberian citizen and government servant (in 1956 Dr. Price was Consul General in New York), went to Liberia for the Board of Missions of the Protestant Episcopal Church in 1904. His story ranges widely over experience in the bush and the cities of the coast, relating progress in many aspects of Liberian life.

Among a number of missionary narratives testifying to the importance of the American Protestant missions in development of hinterland Liberia, there might be noted *Adventures with the Kru in West Africa*, by Walter B. Williams and Maude W. Williams (New York, Vantage Press, 1955. 146 p. illus.), which tells a spirited story, detailed as to local history, of Methodist missionary stations on the southern coast—the "Kru Coast"—from 1909 to 1933. There is also a recent historical study prepared as a thesis (M.A.) at the Kennedy School of Missions of the Hartford Seminary Foundation by Harold V. Whetstone, *The Lutheran Mission in Liberia* (New York, Board of Foreign Missions of the United Lutheran Church in America, 1955. 255 p. illus.).

671. RICHARDSON, NATHANIEL R. *Liberia's past and present*. London, Diplomatic Press & Pub. Co., 1959. 348 p. illus. DT631.R5

The author, a high-ranking Americo-Liberian officer, at time of writing a member of the Army and Intelligence staff, had formerly been Superintendent of Government printing. This large volume, somewhat promotional in character, includes biographical sketches, a résumé of history, short paragraphs on conditions, sketches of presidents, 5-year plan, and texts of many documents and addresses. It ends with a calendar of events from 1816 to 1952.

672. SCHWAB, GEORGE. *Tribes of the Liberian hinterland*. Cambridge, Mass., Peabody Museum, 1947. 527 p. 111 plates. (*Its Papers*, v. 31) E51.H337, v. 31

A big work on the little-studied tribes of Liberia by an amateur anthropologist, for 50 years a missionary in the Cameroons, who with his wife had undertaken an expedition financed by the Peabody Museum in 1928. It has been edited, with contributions of additional material, by Dr. G. Way Harley. Twenty-three tribes or remnants of tribes are covered, with full technical data on nine of these regarding their economy, village life, social organization, religious beliefs and material culture. There are two appendixes, one on languages, one a glossary, and a long section of plates

showing artifacts and physical anthropology. The book was reviewed in the *American Anthropologist* of April-June 1949 (v. 51, p. 305-307) by George Herzog, author with Charles G. Blooah of *Jabo Proverbs from Liberia* (London, Oxford University Press, 1936. 272 p.). The reviewer finds Schwab's work excellent where factual information is concerned, but weak on anthropological interpretations, and with "a strong ethnocentric bias, partly that of the missionary, partly reflected in a patronizing or impatient attitude." There is to date in English no equally detailed ethnographic survey of the tribes of the Liberian hinterland.

673. SIBLEY, JAMES L. *Liberia—old and new; a study of its social and economic background with possibilities of development*. Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, Doran, 1928. 317 p. DT624.S5

The writer had gone to Liberia as educational adviser on behalf of the American Advisory Committee on Education, and had much influence on educational developments in the country. His book is a good presentation of history and economic and social conditions, with particular attention to the native cultures and the work of education and missions among the many backward tribes. Part of the book is based on contributions by the prominent German anthropologist, Dr. Dietrich Westermann, who had made an exhaustive study of the Kpelle tribe of central Liberia.

674. SIMPSON, C. L. *The memoirs of former Liberian Ambassador to Washington and to the Court of St. James's; the symbol of Liberia*. London, Diplomatic Press & Pub. Co., 1961. 293 p. DT636.S5A3

A rambling narrative in which the personal recollections of a Liberian statesman are closely intertwined with political life over "more than 40 years of continuous service to the State . . ."

675. STAUDENRAUS, P. J. *The African colonization movement, 1816-1865*. New York, Columbia University Press, 1961. 323 p. E448.S78

This thorough study, based largely on the archives of the American Colonization Society, a collection of several hundred volumes held by the Manuscript Division of the Library of Congress, is an historical examination of American social thought regarding slavery and colonization rather than of the actual settlement in Liberia. It includes detailed bibliography in the "Notes," p. 252-304, and a "Bibliographical Essay," p. 305-310.

676. TAYLOR, WAYNE C. *The Firestone operations in Liberia*. Washington, National Planning Association, [c1956] 115 p. illus.

HD2709.N322, no. 5

Cover title: *United States business performance abroad; the case study of the Firestone operations in Liberia*.

The fifth in an NPA series on U.S. business performance abroad, this is a study of one of the first American experiments in investment and large-scale plantation operations in tropical Africa. The author devoted a beginning third of his text to "Liberia—Past and Present," telling briefly significant facts of Liberian geography, history, economic, social, and political development. Then he recited the steps leading to the Firestone concession of 1926, with its three agreements for harbor, planting, and loan, and explained the development, operation, and organization of the plantations, the care of Liberian workers, the arrangements for American and European staff, and subsidiary activities of Firestone. The last section evaluated Firestone's impact on the country and the future outlook, both for the company and for the progress of Liberia.

677. TUBMAN, WILLIAM V. S. *President Tubman of Liberia speaks*, edited by E. Reginald Townsend. London, Consolidated Publications Co., 1959. 301 p. illus. DT624.T8

In the elections of 1943, William V. S. Tubman was chosen President of Liberia, then in heavy economic difficulties. According to Mr. Townsend, who edited this volume of speeches, "A New Day was dawning. A New Nation was being born." In 1963 President Tubman is nearing the end of his fourth term, and has become one of the most powerful leaders of Africa. (See, e.g., sketches in Melady, no. 127n; Dean, no. 598n.) This handsomely printed and illustrated volume begins with his first inaugural address on January 5, 1944, and continues with his more important speeches through 1958. The arrangement by subject grouping—educational, health of the nation, political speeches, etc.—covers the interests and affairs of the country during the years of his administration.

678. U.S. OPERATIONS MISSION TO LIBERIA. [*Reports*] Washington, 195—

Issued by International Cooperation Administration, etc.

American cooperation in economic aid to Liberia has been intensified since the Second World War, and

many missions have made reports. Among the more substantial are the following:

*From strength to strength*; completion of tour report by Griffith J. Davis, audiovisual advisor. [Monrovia, Authority Govt. Print. Off., 1953] 79 l. illus. HC591.L6U5

*Government building activities in Liberia, 1954–1956*, completion report by Fred V. Annis, architectural advisor. [Washington?] 1956. 76 p. illus., maps. HD4366.L5U5

*The marine fisheries program in Liberia*. Annual report. 1955– [n.p.] illus. SH315.L5U5

*Third report on forestry progress in Liberia, 1951–1959*. Washington, 1961. 1 v. [various pagings] illus., maps. SD242.L5U57

*12 years of mutual cooperation*; terminal report by Frank E. Pinder, chief agriculturist U.S.A. Operations Mission to Liberia, 1944–1957. [Washington, 195 ] 35 l.

679. WARNER, ESTHER S. *New song in a strange land*. Boston, Houghton Mifflin, 1948. 302 p. illus. DT629.W3

680. ———. *Seven days to Lomaland*. Boston, Houghton Mifflin, 1954. 269 p. illus. DT629.W33

These two books, based on the personal experiences of the author, wife of a Firestone research botanist living in the rubber plantation, provide a sympathetic and vivid interpretation of life, manners, and art of the tribesmen, chiefly Mandingo, in western Liberia. Mrs. Warner, herself an artist, was much interested in arts and crafts. In the first she includes the account of a visit to the Ganta Mission and Dr. Harley. The second is the narrative of a trek to a faraway village with a group of Africans, the purpose being character rehabilitation of two of them in accord with local custom and rites of the Poro Society. A novel by Mrs. Warner, *The Silk-Cotton Tree* (Doubleday, 1958. 236 p.), is in the same setting, with a bit of life in Monrovia thrown in. In all her books she uses much dialog in poetic pidgin English.

Mrs. Warner's books are among the more recent of a long list of personal narratives of residence and travel in Liberia. Probably the best known is Graham Greene's *Journey without Maps* (Doubleday, 1936. 310 p.; paperback reprint, New York, Viking, 1961, Compass Books), which is in the literary tradition of Gide's *Voyage au Congo*. The British novelist and a woman cousin made an arduous trip in the hinterland of Liberia and into Guinea and the Ivory Coast. Mr. Greene's *Heart of the Matter*, set in an unnamed British colony identifiable as Sierra Leone, is a notable English novel relating to Africa.

There is a literary flavor also to the travel narrative of an Englishwoman, Lady Dorothy Mills, *Through Liberia* (London, Duckworth, 1926. 240 p.). Another readable



older book which combines a sketch of history and economy with description of life both in Monrovia and among the tribes is by an American who had been financial adviser to the Liberian Government, Sidney De La Rue, *The Land of the Pepper Bird: Liberia* (New York, London, Putnam, 1930. 330 p.). *Top Hats and Tom-Toms* by Elizabeth J. Furbay (Chicago, Ziff-Davis, 1943. 307 p.) is focused on Americo-Liberian society, "the African equivalent of the D.A.R.'s." Journalistic accounts include *Unknown Liberia*, by Harry J. Greenwall and Roland Wild (London, Hutchinson, 1936. 283 p.), a rather sensational exposé of Liberian politics and of Firestone exploitation, as well as of Leopard Men and strange tribal mores. A more optimistic picture was given a decade later by an American writer, Charles Morrow Wilson, *Liberia* (New York, William Sloane Associates, 1947. 226 p.). A French travel writer, Christine Garnier, in *Les Héros sont fatigués; visages du Libéria* (Paris, Grasset, 1953. 222 p.), depicts amusingly Monrovia society, including, besides Americo-Liberians and tribesmen, the many European exiles—adventurers, refugees, the "exhausted heroes" of her title.

681. WELCH, GALBRAITH. *The jet lighthouse; an account of Liberia*. London, Museum Press, 1960. 270 p. illus. DT624.W4

By an American woman journalist who had been invited to visit Liberia and wrote a travel narrative which is a collection of impressions and information, sympathetic but not over well organized. Interviews with President Tubman are recorded, enforcing Mrs. Welch's idea that recent advances in the country are largely due to his strong personality.

682. YANCY, ERNEST J. *The Republic of Liberia*. London, Allen & Unwin, 1959. 156 p. illus., maps. DS

The author, now in the Liberian Diplomatic Serv-

ice, is a historian who had served as Secretary of the Department of Public Instruction. He prepared this short book as a straightforward, simple account of the country, for the use of upper schools and the general reader. His viewpoint is that of the Americo-Liberians, interested primarily in the history of the settlers and their struggles with the tribes. He sketches modern political and economic development, for which he gives generous credit to President Tubman. An earlier work by Mr. Yancy, also slanted toward the settlers, was *Historical Lights of Liberia's Yesterday and Today* (New York, H. Jaffe, 1934. 323 p.).

683. YOUNG, JAMES C. *Liberia rediscovered*. New York, Doubleday, Doran, 1934. 212 p.

DT635.Y6

Primarily a history of the establishment and development of the Firestone rubber plantations in Liberia. The writer set his enthusiastic account of the jungle against the background of Liberia's economic and political difficulties—the loans and international receivership before the First World War, the financial collapse after the war, and the American private loan that accompanied the Firestone concession in 1926, the charges of slavery and forced labor that led to investigation before the League of Nations, and the resignation of President King and Vice President Yancy. The appendix includes the League of Nations' documents of the plan for assistance to Liberia, which was abandoned in 1934, leaving the country's financial rehabilitation for the time being in the hands of Firestone.

## Nigeria

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

684. HARRIS, JOHN. *Books about Nigeria; a select reading list*. 3d ed. Ibadan, Nigeria, Ibadan University Press, 1962. 46 p. Z3553.N5H3 1962

A useful classified and annotated reading list of some 350 titles, including periodicals and official reports, compiled by the Librarian of the University of Ibadan. In his prefatory note he comments that 50 new titles have been added since the second edition in 1960—an impressive amount of writing on a single country.

685. IBADAN, NIGERIA. UNIVERSITY COLLEGE. Library. *Nigerian periodicals and newspapers, 1950–1955; a list of those received from April 1950 to June 1955 under the Publications ordinance, 1950*. Ibadan, 1956. 23 p. Z6960.N5I2

Supplemented regularly in *Nigerian Publications*.

686. *Nigerian publications*. v.1+ 1953+ Ibadan. annual, with quarterly supplements.

Z3353.N5N5

Published by the Library of the University College of Ibadan. Serial list of works received under the

Publications ordinance by the University College Library, following a monograph, *Nigerian Publications, 1950-1952* (43 p.). Included are books in English published in Nigeria during the period, works in the vernacular, periodicals and newspapers, recent works about Nigeria published outside the country. This is the only substantial national bibliography published in Black Africa.

687. PERRY, RUTH. *A preliminary bibliography of the literature of nationalism in Nigeria*. [n.p., 1955-56?] 38 p. Transcript. DLC-AFR

By a librarian from the Hoover Library at Stanford University who had studied under a Fulbright grant in Nigeria. Nine pages of her posthumously issued manuscript are devoted to a review of the educational and literary aspects of Nigerian nationalism from its mid-19th-century beginnings through its great upsurge during the past decade. Her bibliography is limited to titles of works—mainly pamphlets—on politics, history, tribal laws and customs, biographies, and trade union publications printed by the private presses of Nigeria. Sixty-five per cent of the almost 300 items listed are preserved in the Library of the University College at Ibadan, the rest were located in local and private collections.

688. U.S. Library of Congress. General Reference and Bibliography Division. *Nigerian official publications, 1869-1959*; a guide compiled by Helen F. Conover. Washington, 1959. 153 p. Z3553.N5U5

## GENERAL

689. BUCHANAN, KEITH M., and JOHN C. PUGH. *Land and people in Nigeria: the human geography of Nigeria and its environmental background*. London, University of London Press, 1955. 252 p. illus. DT515.B75

Standard geographical survey of Nigeria, considering environment, people, agricultural economy, natural resources, transport and communications, public and social services. Professor Buchanan was at one time Head of the Department of Geography at Ibadan, and Mr. Pugh formerly of the Nigerian Survey Department. A section on health problems (p. 41-57) is by Professor A. Brown. The last chapter is devoted to problems to be stressed in development plans, emphasizing the primary importance of education for the Nigerians. A number of chapters are followed

by bibliography. The 6th edition, 1958, was reprinted in 1961.

A nicely planned booklet, *Human Geography of Nigeria*, written for secondary school and training college use, is by George D. Watson (London, Longmans, 1960. 180 p.). The author is at Government College in Zaria.

690. COLLIS, WILLIAM R. F. *African encounter; a doctor in Nigeria*. New York, Scribner, 1961. 211 p. illus. R489.C65A28

First published in England as *A Doctor's Nigeria*.

Account of personal experience in a Lagos hospital and trips far and wide about the country. The author is an Irish pediatrician who was instrumental in arranging conferences on child health.

691. DICKSON, MORA. *New Nigerians*. With illus. by the author. London, Dobson, 1960. 254 p. illus. LG481.V5D5

American ed. Rand McNally, Chicago.

A personal but revealing account of the Man-O-War Bay Training Centre in the former British Cameroons to which potential young Nigerian leaders were brought for intensive courses.

692. *The Diplomatic Press directory of the Federation of Nigeria*, including trade index and biographical section. 1960+ London, Diplomatic Press & Pub. Co. illus., ports. DT515.A5613

It is hoped that this useful reference work will appear regularly. The 2d edition, 1962, has 248 p.

693. GRANT, JAMES. *A geography of Western Nigeria*. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1960. 95 p. illus. DT515.G69

Large pamphlet, well printed and illustrated, for secondary school use in Nigeria.

694. MITCHISON, LOIS. *Nigeria; newest nation*. New York, Praeger, 1960. 122 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT515.M58

Perceptive picture of the country at the moment of independence, by a young British journalist.

695. NIGERIA. *The Nigeria handbook*. London, Published by the Crown Agent on behalf of the Government of Nigeria. 12th ed. 1953. 339 p. illus., tables, maps. DT515.A44

This formerly indispensable work, containing essays, statistics, and tabular data on all aspects of the country and its life, is now so outdated as to be of use for historical research only.



696. *Nigeria in costume*; pictures by John Danford. Lagos, The Shell Co. of Nigeria Ltd., 1960. illus., col. plates.

A handsome album of plates, mostly in color, showing typical costumes of various regions, tribes and professions of Nigeria. The book was printed by L. Van Leer & Co. of London and Amsterdam.

697. *Nigeria, 1960*. Edited by Michael Crowder, with assistance of L. O. Ukeje and Onuora Nzekwu. Lagos, Federal Govt. Printing Dept., 1960. 232, vii p. illus. DT515.4.N5

Special independence issue of *Nigeria Magazine*, October 1960. Includes advertising section.

A group of feature articles on Nigerian history, economy, arts, life, and on individual cities, regions, and tribes. Brief biographical notes on the contributors are given on page 232.

The quarterly *Nigeria Magazine* has been published since 1934 by the Nigeria Education Department. Its issues are often devoted to a single theme, or even a special publication: e.g., Robin Horton, *The Gods as Guests; An Aspect of Kalabar Religious Life* (1960). In 1962 Michael Crowder has been succeeded as editor by the Nigerian writer, Onuora Nzekwu.

698. *Nigeria year book*. Appa, Times Press, 1951+ annual. DT515.N48

Directory and guide of the almanac type, including a "Commercial who's who in Lagos." 1962 edition, 272 p.

699. RYAN, ISOBEL. *Black man's country*. Illus. by "Bill." London, Cape, 1950. 276 p. illus. DT515.R95

Narrative by the wife of a Development officer concerned with erosion prevention in Agulu, bush village of Southern Nigeria, among the Ibo. Mrs. Ryan writes understandingly, although she admits that "for the White Man (or Woman) to see life through the eyes of the bush Africans is a feat rarely accomplished and then only by those of remarkably selfless, brilliantly sympathetic disposition. We could only be observers of, not true participants in Agulu's way of life."

700. *Who's who in Nigeria*; a biographical dictionary. Lagos, Nigerian Print. & Pub. Co., 1956. 278 p. ports. DT515.6.A1W51

Edited by the Nigerian newspaper, the *Daily Times*. This was announced as a first edition. No later revisions have reached the Library of Congress in 1962.

## HISTORY

701. BARTH, HEINRICH. *Barth's travels in Nigeria*. Selected and edited, with an introduction, by A. H. M. Kirk-Greene. London, Oxford University Press, for Overseas Newspapers Group, 1962. 300 p. (West African history series) DT515.2.B313

An admirable selection from the five volumes of Barth's report of his 6 years' travel from Tripoli through the Sahara to West Africa which was published in London and Germany in 1857. (A reprint in 5 volumes of the original German edition of 1857-58 is being issued by Bonner, London, in 1963.) Mr. Kirk-Greene's introduction serves as an excellent biography of the traveler. The book is reviewed by Basil Davidson in *West Africa*, Mar. 3, 1962, and by Conrad Reining in the *American Historical Review* of Oct. 1962.

702. BIOBAKU, SABURI OLADENI. *The Egba and their neighbours, 1842-1872*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1957. vi, 128 p. maps, tables. (Oxford studies in African affairs) DT515.B5

Bibliography: p. 108-118.

A historical study of the State of the Egba, a Yoruba tribe, during the first penetration by the British. The chief Egba city, Abeokuta, between Lagos and Ibadan, was reached by British missionaries in 1842, but the Egba "came to be regarded by the Lagos authorities as the chief obstacle to peace in the neighborhood."

703. BLOOD, Sir HILARY, comp. *Eminent Nigerians of the nineteenth century*. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1960. 97 p. DT515.N49

A collection of addresses by noted African and British historians, given for the Nigerian Broadcasting Corporation. The introduction is by Professor Dike. The eminent Nigerians include rulers who resisted the British, religious and educational leaders, and the first of the successful West African women traders.

704. BURNS, Sir ALAN C. *History of Nigeria*. 5th ed. London, Allen & Unwin, 1955. 349 p. maps. DT515.B8 1955

This standard history of Nigeria, first published in 1929, is largely confined to the period of European control. In the latest (1955) edition, the account of political and social change is brought up through the

postwar changes and federal and regional governments established by the 1951 Constitution. The author served in Nigeria in the early days of his distinguished civil service career (1912–24), then was acting Governor in 1942, while at the same time wartime Governor of the Gold Coast. From 1947–56 Sir Alan was the U.K. Representative on the Trusteeship Council of the United Nations.

705. CROWDER, MICHAEL. *A short history of Nigeria*. New York, Praeger, 1962. 307 p. (Books that matter) DT515.5.C7

This is a straightforward and interesting narrative of Nigerian history, based largely on modern research recorded in a six-page bibliography and written without show of scholarship as a clear account for the general reader.

706. DIKE, KENNETH ONWUKA. *100 years of British rule in Nigeria, 1851–1951*; a reprint of the 1956 Lugard lectures. Lagos, Federal Information Service, 1958. 49 p. illus. DT515.D5

707. ———. *Origins of the Niger Mission, 1841–1891*; a paper read at the centenary of the mission at Christ Church, Onitsha, on 13 November 1957. Ibadan, Published for the C.M.S. Niger Mission by the Ibadan University Press, 1957. 21 p. BV3625.N5D5

Includes bibliography. A new edition has been issued in 1962.

708. ———. *Trade and politics in the Niger Delta, 1830–1885*, an introduction to the economic and political history of Nigeria. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1956. 250 p. (Oxford studies in African affairs) HG517.N48D5

Dr. Dike is a distinguished African historian, formerly professor, now Principal at University College, Ibadan, which in 1962 became the University of Ibadan. He is also on the editorial board of the *Journal of African History*. The last of the above-mentioned published volumes, a notable example of African scholarship based on his doctoral thesis at the University of London, is a thoroughly documented study of the gradual supplanting of the Native governments of Nigeria by British administration. The same theme is treated in condensed form in his 1956 Lugard Lectures, and a particular aspect of British penetration is the subject of his paper on the Niger Mission.

709. EGHAREVBA, JACOB U. *A short history of Benin*. 3d ed. Ibadan, Ibadan University Press, 1960. 101 p. illus. DT515.9.B4E35 1960

Another work by a Nigerian scholar, examining records of the past.

710. FLINT, JOHN E. *Sir George Goldie and the making of Nigeria*. London, Oxford University Press, 1960. 340 p. illus. (West African history series) DT515.6.G6F55

Historical study of the chartered Royal Niger Company; reviewed by A. Kirk-Greene in *Africa*, October 1961.

711. HODGKIN, THOMAS L. *Nigerian perspectives; a historical anthology*. London, Oxford University Press, 1960. 340 p. illus. (West African history series) DT515.A3H6

This work, called by reviewers “indispensable,” is a selection of documents concerned with the pre-colonial history of Nigerian peoples. The extracts are from European and Arabic sources, recorded oral tradition, local chronicles, etc., chosen to illustrate the past of five major regions—Kanem-Bornu, the Hausa States, the Oyo Empire and Yoruba successor States of the 19th century, the Kingdoms of Benin and Warri, the Delta States and Iboland. In 1962–63 Professor Hodgkin accepted the post of director of the new Department of African Studies at the University of Ghana.

712. KIRK-GREENE, ANTHONY H. M. *Adamawa, past and present*; a historical approach to the development of a northern Cameroons province. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1958. 230 p. maps. DT515.K57

Dr. Kirk-Greene here describes the province in which he had spent several years as a district officer in all aspects, geographical, social, and economic, of the present, and relates its history during the last two centuries, particularly as to Fulani kingdoms which rose and fell in this region. The appendixes include historical and ethnographic material. The author had made extensive use of source materials in Arabic and Western languages, among them the narrative of the early traveler, Barth (see above). Since independence Dr. Kirk-Greene has been director of the Institute of Administration in Zaria. A booklet by him, *This Is Northern Nigeria; Background to an Invitation*, was issued by the Government Printer of



Northern Nigeria, Kaduna, in 1956, with text in English and Hausa. He is a frequent contributor to Africanist journals.

713. NIVEN, CECIL R. *A short history of the Yoruba peoples*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1958. 135 p. illus. DT513.N73

The writer was for many years in the Colonial Service in Nigeria; he now lives in Kaduna, where he is Commissioner for Special Duties in Northern Nigeria, having been President of the Northern House of Assembly from 1947 to 1958 and Speaker from 1958 to 1959. His first book, *A Short History of Nigeria* (1937), has been followed by several others addressed to the general public, especially the African reader; among these are *Nigeria: The Outline of a Colony* (London, T. Nelson, 1946, 162 p.); *How Nigeria Is Governed* (Longmans, Green, 1950; 3d ed., 1958. 184 p.); *You and Your Government* (London, Evans Bros., 1958. 94 p.; a booklet in civics); and the booklet cited above. The latter, adapted to schools of Western Nigeria, is almost entirely African [i.e. non-European] history.

714. PEDRAZA, HOWARD J. *Borrioboola-Gha*; the story of Lokoja, the first British settlement in Nigeria. London, Oxford University Press, 1960. 118 p. illus. DT515.9L6P4

A detailed account of the first expeditions on the left bank of the Niger, particularly that of Baikie in 1832, and the establishment of the settlement at Lokoja under Sir George Goldie's Royal Niger Company. The title is taken from Mrs. Jellyby in Dickens' *Bleak House*, who neglected home duties for an imaginary missionary settlement. The book is reviewed by Anthony Kirk-Greene in *Africa*, April 1961, p. 193-194.

## POLITICS

715. AJULUCHUKU, M. C. K. *Profiles of the ministers of Eastern Nigeria*. Enugu, Eastern Nigeria Ministry of Internal Affairs, 1960. 122 p. illus. DT515.9.E3A6

A brochure in deluxe format, with full-page photographs and biographical sketches of 5 to 10 pages, on the Premier, Dr. Okpara, and the Cabinet Ministers of the Eastern Region in 1960. The account of education and careers of the 14 subjects makes impressive reading.

There have been several editions of a brochure published by the Information Services in Kaduna, *Northern Nigeria Legislature Who's Who*. The latest is commented on in *West Africa*, April 28, 1962, as being up to date.

716. AWOLOWO, OBAFEMI. *Awo*; the autobiography of Chief Obafemi Awolowo. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1960. 315 p. illus. DT515.6.A9A3

717. ———. *Path to Nigerian freedom*; with a foreword by Margery Perham. London, Faber & Faber, 1947. 137 p. JQ3082.A85

The spirited autobiography of the Yoruba leader of the Action Group, former Premier of the Western Region, takes the author from childhood through his career in the nationalist movement from its early years to almost the moment of its triumph, with full independence scheduled. It is reviewed in *African Affairs* of October 1961, p. 542-543. Chief Awolowo's book of 1947 was written just as he attained to the Bar of Nigeria (November 1946), at the time when he was leader of the Youth Movement in Ibadan. Much of the text is criticism of the Richards Constitution of 1945; while supporting (contrary to Azikiwe) the division of the country into regions, Awolowo demanded faster progress toward self-government. Miss Perham, asked to write a foreword, contributed a thoughtful short essay on the aspirations and methods of the young nationalists, characterizing Awolowo as a "relatively moderate and certainly a rational and constructive critic of British rule."

718. AZIKIWE, NNAMDI. *Zik*, a selection from the speeches of Nnamdi Azikiwe. Cambridge, University Press, 1961. 344 p. DT515.6.A9A5

This selection of the speeches of the dynamic leader of Nigerian nationalism, former Premier of Eastern Nigeria, and Governor-General of the Federation of Nigeria from October 1960, begins with lectures as a graduate student in America in 1927, and offers the most celebrated examples of Zik's oratory through 1959. Among topics are education, democracy, the color bar, finance and banking, the press and broadcasting, Moral Rearmament, local government, the Church Missionary Society, and many aspects of anti-colonial politics. Dr. Azikiwe's first major work was *Liberia in World Politics*, published in 1934 (see no. 653), his second, voicing the now realized hopes for his country, *Renasant Africa* (Accra, 1937). As leader of the nationalist movement his organ was the *West African Pilot* (1938+) of which he was editor for many years. His *Development of Political Parties in Nigeria*, summarizing Nigerian nationalist history, was delivered as a lecture at Oxford in 1957 (published by Eastern Region of Nigeria Office, London, 24 p.).

Biographical sketches of Dr. Azikiwe have been included in several works on African leaders. A full-length biography by a Nigerian colleague appeared in 1961: *Zik of New Africa*, by Vincent C. Ikeotuonye (London, Geneva, P. R. Macmillan. 262 p.).

719. BELLO, Sir AHMADU. *My life*. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1962. 225 p.

DT515.6.B4A3

The autobiography of the Sardauna of Sokoto, political and spiritual leader of Northern Nigeria. A portion of the last chapter of this work was reprinted in *West Africa*, Nov. 17, 1962.

720. BRETTON, HENRY L. *Power and stability in Nigeria; the politics of decolonization*. New York, F. A. Praeger, 1962. 208 p. (Books that matter)

DT515.8.B7

Not yet examined.

721. COKER, G. B. A. *Family property among the Yorubas*. London, Sweet & Maxwell, 1958. 314 p.

DLC-LL

By a Yoruba lawyer, this is a study based on cases disputing land and other family property in the fusion of British and customary law. It is reviewed in *Africa*, January 1961, p. 291-292.

722. COLEMAN, JAMES S. *Nigeria: background to nationalism*. Berkeley, University of California Press, 1958. 510 p. illus., ports, maps.

DT515.C685

Bibliography: p. 481-496.

Dr. Coleman's history of the emergence of the Nigerian nation from colony to full self-government (his survey ends three years short of independence) is a notable contribution to American scholarship regarding African affairs. The first part is physical, cultural, and historical background, the second an analysis of the factors in the Western impact which led to social and political change. With Part 3, page 169, he turns to a detailed account of the beginnings and progress of the nationalist movement in the inter-war years, carrying it in the last part to the postwar achievement of the new era of self-government. Among many reviews, there might be mentioned that by Dr. Lucy Mair in *Africa*, April 1960, p. 189-191.

723. DAVIES, H. O. *Nigeria; the prospects for democracy*. London, Weidenfeld & Nicolson, 1961. 135 p.

DT515.8.D3

Chief Davies, a Lagos barrister, was one of the organizers, in the midthirties, of the Lagos Youth Movement which spearheaded Nigerian nationalism.

Now an elder statesman, he writes here an objective analysis of Nigerian politics. After an outline of economy, constitution, and political parties he discusses the distinctions between democracy and military regimes, turning specifically to the drift in Ghana to one-party rule, then analyzing Nigeria's problems.

724. ELIAS, TASLIM OLAWALE. *Nigerian land law and custom*. 3d ed. rev. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1962. 386 p.

DLC-LL

This work was published first as Dr. Elias' LL.D. thesis at the University of London. (He is in 1962 Attorney-General of Nigeria). A second edition came in 1953, since when it has been recognized as a standard study of the principles of Nigerian land tenure in the light of "the growing body of case law." The text is preceded by a Table of Cases and a Table of Ordinances, and concluded with bibliography and index. A second book, *Groundwork of Nigerian Law* (London, Routledge & Paul, 1954. 374 p.), was intended as a textbook for fellow countrymen who, like the author, take their law degree abroad and return to practice in Nigeria. The volume is in four parts, first an examination of the sources of Nigerian law in indigenous local and customary law, the British common law, ordinances, etc. Part 2 is a detailed history of Nigerian courts from the mid-19th century to 1954, including the latest changes under the new constitution. Part 3 analyzes Nigerian law according to the branches of the common law—criminal law, law of contract, law of torts, etc. Finally, Part 4 examines the role of the lawyer in Nigeria, offering suggestions for future development, the most strongly urged of which is establishment of a Nigerian Law College where teaching will focus on legal aspects special to Nigeria. A paper by Dr. Elias, *Makers of Nigerian Law* (London, 1956. 55 p.), was reprinted from a series of articles in *West Africa* in 1955-56.

725. EZERA, KALU. *Constitutional developments in Nigeria; an analytical study of Nigeria's constitution-making developments and the historical and political factors that affected constitutional change*. Cambridge, University Press, 1960. xv, 274 p. maps.

JQ3082.E95

Bibliography: p. 262-270.

Clear, factual analysis of the constitutional history of Nigeria. Dr. Ezera, now in the Department of Government at Ibadan University, had been a research student at Nuffield College and received his doctorate at Oxford, after earlier study in America (Lincoln University and Harvard). The book is re-



viewed, together with other works on Nigeria (including Awolowo's autobiography), by Harvey Glickman in *Africa Report*, January 1961.

726. HARRIS, PHILIP J. *Local government in southern Nigeria*; a manual of law and procedure under the Eastern Region local government law, 1955, and the Western Region local government law, 1952. Cambridge, University Press, 1957. 348 p. DLC-LL

Includes legislation.

727. NIGERIA. Laws, statutes, etc. *The laws of the Federation of Nigeria and Lagos*; in force on the 1st day of June, 1958. Rev. ed. . . . by Donald Kingdon. London, Printed by Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1959. 12 v. DLC-LL

For Nigeria, as for the English colonies in general, under the colonial administration annual volumes of legislation were published and periodic compilations made. They include provisions of customary law as well as English law. Full details regarding them are being given in the series of official publications of African governments now being issued by the Library of Congress (see no. 688).

728. ——— Nigerianisation Office. *Guide to careers in the Federal Public Service of Nigeria*. Lagos, Federal Govt. Printer, 1961. 322 p. DLC

The very size of this official pamphlet shows the urgency of its subject.

729. OLUGBOJI, DAYO. *The United States of West Africa and Realpolitik*. Lagos, Nigeria, 1959. 44 p. DT471.04

Typical of the thoughtful political writings being produced by the West African elite is this criticism by a Nigerian of "the Pan idea and all that." The writer suggests that an alternative for West Africa consists "not in flabby appeal to the emotions of race or in fanning the sentiments of nationalism, but in the practical and realistic arrangement for a Union of the states."

730. ORIZU, AKWEKE A. NWAFOR. *Without bitterness: Western nations in post-war Africa*. New York, Creative Age Press, 1944. 395 p. DT14.07

The writer, a Nigerian prince, had studied in American colleges and was founder of the American Council on African Education, which brings advanced Africans to a number of American institutions. A follower in the early years of Nnamdi Azikiwe, much

of his book is his interpretation of what he calls "Zikism," an aspect of the philosophy of the "New Africa" enunciated by the leader, demanding economic, social, and political freedom.

731. PERHAM, MARGERY F. *Native administration in Nigeria*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1937. 404 p. fold. maps. DT515.P45

Reprint, 1961.

Miss Perham spent 9 months in Nigeria making the studies which led to this comprehensive analysis, region by region, of the methods of indirect rule among many and varied native tribes. The author is concerned over British policy, not only as to the lag of research—she speaks sadly of the priority given to taxation over anthropology—but as to the delicate balance needed between control and freedom: "a mean between over-regulation, which even under a system of indirect rule can drain the remaining sense of responsibility from tribal communities, and upon the other hand, a *laissez-faire* attitude which allows them to drift into unforeseen maladjustments or even dangers. I believe that almost everywhere in Africa, even in Nigeria, we err upon the side of over-regulation."

732. ROYAL INSTITUTE OF INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS. *Nigeria; the political and economic background*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. 141 p. DT515.7.R65

The contents of this concise and factual survey fall into two almost equal parts. The first is political and social, including a general geographical picture, an outline of recorded history, and summary of political developments, with a section devoted to the Cameroons. The second part, fortified with charts and statistics, is an economic survey, ending with development plans up to 1960. For the new 7-year development plan promulgated in the spring of 1962, see no. 745.

733. TILMAN, ROBERT O., and TAYLOR COLE, eds. *The Nigerian political scene*. Durham, N.C., Published for the Duke University Commonwealth-Studies Center by Duke University Press, 1962. 340 p. (Duke University Commonwealth-Studies Center. Publication no. 17) DT515.8.T5

In 1962 the most recent African addition to the Commonwealth nations, as also to this university series, is a volume of essays by American and British social and political scientists. Their analyses embrace

traditional socio-political background and evolution of British policy, the federal state now being constructed, its administration and foreign policy, the pressing problems of economic development, prospects for democracy in Nigeria and for authoritarian tendencies of the new African nations. As appendix, a bibliographical essay by Father James O'Connell of University College, Ibadan surveys social science research on Nigeria since the end of 1957.

An extended analysis by Richard L. Sklar, *Politics of Nigeria*, is scheduled for publication in 1963 by the Pittsburgh University Press.

734. UWANAKA, CHARLES U. *Zik and Awolowo in political storm*. Independence ed. Onitsha, Ezeagwu Bookshop, 1960. 89 p.

DT515.8.U89 1960

A typical Nigerian political pamphlet.

735. WHEARE, JOAN. *The Nigerian Legislative Council*. With an introd. by Margery Perham. London, Published under the auspices of Nuffield College by Faber & Faber, 1950. xxiii, 265 p. fold. map. (Studies in colonial legislatures, v. 4) JQ3093.W48 1950

Mrs. Wheare's authoritative study shows how for many years the effective institutions of Nigeria were the native administrations—a policy of “differentiation,” as opposed to the unity of legislation vested in the Legislative Council. She described the background and evolution of the Council, its nature and composition (including the personalities of the “Zik” nationalist group), its working from 1922 to 1926, and constitutional prospects under the then new 1946 Constitution (Richards Constitution). Miss Perham, editor of the series, in her introduction characterized the Constitution with its majority of native members as “an ingenious attempt to bring together the two parallel principles of Nigerian government [unity and differentiation] not only into harmony but into complete articulation . . . a central legislature which, for the first time, represented the whole country.”

## ECONOMICS AND SOCIAL STUDIES

736. ARDENER, EDWIN. *Divorce and fertility; an African study*. London, Published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research by Oxford University Press, 1962. 171 p. (Nigerian social and economic studies, no. 3) GN480.A7

Not yet examined.

737. BALDWIN, KENNETH D. S. *The marketing of cocoa in western Nigeria*, with special reference to the position of middlemen. London, Oxford University Press, 1954. 52 p.

HD9200.N5B3

738. ———. *The Niger agricultural project; an experiment in African development*. Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1957. 221 p. illus. S471.N7B3

The author of the factual account of workings of the system under the Nigerian Cocoa Marketing Board, an officer in the Agricultural Service, had been Senior Research Officer for a committee surveying the cocoa economy in 1951–52. Attention is given to the role of middlemen and attitudes of the farmers. Mr. Baldwin's later study is of the Mokwa experiment in mechanized farming.

739. HOGG, V. W., and C. M. ROELANDTS. *Nigerian motor vehicle traffic*, an economic forecast. London, published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research by Oxford University Press, 1962. 72 p. (Nigerian social and economic studies, no. 2)

HE373.N5H6

The Institute which sponsors the series of Nigerian Social and Economic Studies was established at Ibadan in 1952 under the name of West African Institute of Social and Economic Research. It has published annual reports and papers of its annual conferences.

740. INTERNATIONAL BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT. *The economic development of Nigeria*; report of a mission organized by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development at the request of the Governments of Nigeria and the United Kingdom. Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Press, 1955. 686 p. maps, diagrs., tables. HC517.N48I5 1955

Study prepared in connection with technical aid by a mission of experts on agriculture, money and banking, transportation, mineral resources, roads, water resources and power, who had made a full survey in late 1953. The first part of the report embodies recommendations for organization and financing of a 5-year development program. Part 2 consists of technical reports on specific phases, and Part 3 of appendixes giving mainly statistical data. Many maps, charts, and tables occur throughout the volume.



741. JACKSON, I. C. *Advance in Africa*, a study of community development in Eastern Nigeria. London, Oxford University Press, 1956. 110 p. HD990.N5N66

By the former principal of the Awgu Training Centre in Eastern Nigeria, this is an account of work done in local villages, where the villagers themselves had built roads, schools, and hospitals under African leaders who had followed the short courses in community development given at the Centre.

742. MARRIS, PETER. *Family and social change in an African city*; a study of rehousing in Lagos. Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Press, 1962. 180 p. illus. (Northwestern University African studies, no. 8) HN800.L3M3 1962

Includes bibliography.

By a staff member of the Institute of Community Studies in London, who had surveyed a slum-clearance area and the new housing development 6 miles out of town, and analyzes sympathetically the shattering effects on some of the families moved to the new location.

743. NEDERLANDS ADVIESBUREAU VOOR INGENIEURSWERKEN IN HET BUITENLAND. *River studies and recommendations on improvement of Niger and Benue*. Amsterdam, North-Holland Pub. Co., 1959. 1,000 p. illus., maps. TC519.N5N4

Bibliography: p. 981-989.

744. ———. *River charts of the Niger* from Burutu to Jebba and the Benue from Lokoja to Garua. Niger and Benue investigation, final report 1959. The Hague, NEDECO, 1959, 64 p. of maps. 36 x 67 cm. TC519.N5N4

A huge engineering study prepared by a group of experts during 3 years of investigation in Nigeria, and providing for submission to the Nigerian Government what the Bureau considered "a justified and workable programme of successive improvements to the shipping conditions" of the two rivers.

745. NIGERIA. *Federal Government development programme 1962-1968*. Lagos, Federal Printing Division, 1962. DLC

Summaries of the federal and regional seven-year plans for economic development were published in a series of five articles in *West Africa*, April 7 to May 5, 1962.

746. NIGERIA. Cocoa Marketing Board. *Nigerian cocoa farmers*, an economic survey of Yoruba cocoa farming families, by R. Galletti, K. D. S. Baldwin, and I. O. Dina. London, Oxford University Press, 1956. 744 p. maps, tables, diagrs. SB267.N5

Survey of the social and economic organizations, resources, and way of life of the Yoruba cocoa-farming communities in Nigeria. The first half of the study is in general terms, the second half a statistical analysis of the economic records of 187 families, following their work through a full year.

747. NIGERIA. Federal Ministry of Commerce and Industries. *Handbook of commerce and industry in Nigeria*. 4th ed., Lagos, 1960. 338 p. HC517.N48A35

The first edition of this booklet of useful information for businessmen was issued in 1952. It includes surveys and statistics of economic and governmental life, useful addresses, tables, maps, and miscellaneous commercial facts. This office has issued also an *Industrial Directory of Nigeria* (1963?) which lists some 700 major manufacturing plants in the country.

748. NIGERIA. National Economic Council. Joint Planning Committee. *Economic survey of Nigeria 1959*. Lagos, Federal Govt. Printer, 1959. 132 p. plate, col. maps, tables. HC517.N48A55 1959

Valuable assemblage of statistics and summary articles regarding the position and outlook of the economy of Nigeria as of mid-1958, with a review of economic development since 1945.

An earlier survey of somewhat the same nature, made by the Near Eastern and African Division of the U.S. Bureau of Foreign Commerce was published in 1957: *Investment in Nigeria; Basic Information for United States Businessmen* (prepared by Bernard Blankenheimer and others). (Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 182 p.).

749. *Nigerian journal of economic and social studies*. no. 1+ May 1959+ Ibadan, 3 times a year. DLC

Publication of the Nigerian Economic Society, edited at University College, Ibadan.

750. OKIGBO, PIUS NWABAFO. *Nigerian national accounts, 1950-57*. Enugu, Eastern Nigeria, Federal Ministry of Economic Development, 1962. 206 p. DLC

Basic official document on the Nigerian economy of the fifties by a Nigerian economist who has studied in

America and England. The review of national finances was begun under the auspices of the Colonial Office, and authorized after independence by the Federal Ministry of Economic Development.

751. OREWA, G. O. *Taxation in Western Nigeria; the problems of an emergent state.* London, Published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research by Oxford University Press, 1962. xvii, 169 p. fold. map, tables. (Nigerian social and economic studies, no. 4)  
HJ3069.W407

Not available for examination.

752. PERHAM, MARGERY F., ed. *The economics of a tropical dependency.* London, Published under the auspices of Nuffield College by Faber & Faber, 1946-48. 2 v. maps, tables.  
HC517.N5P4

This significant study of the economic development of Nigeria was prepared at the end of the war and foresaw but did not take into account the establishment of the new Legislative Council in 1947 and the 10-year plan under the Colonial Development and Welfare Act. The first volume is concerned with anthropological research, now accepted as the foundation of modern colonial thought: *Native Economies of Nigeria*, by Daryll Forde and Richenda Scott. Professor Forde contributed the larger portion, examining in sociological and geographic terms the rural economies of Nigerian villages. Dr. Scott, a research economist, analyzed reports and statistics of export crops. The second volume, *Mining, Commerce, and Finance in Nigeria*, is by a number of specialists. Miss Penelope Bower surveyed the mining industry; J. Mars studied extraterritorial enterprises; Dr. Charlotte Leubuscher examined the policy governing external trade; Mr. Mars, the monetary and banking system and loan market, Sir Alan Pim the workings of public finance, Miss Bower the balance of payments. The conclusion, by A. J. Brown, stressed the main problems—poverty, insecurity of primary production, external control, social adjustment.

753. PREST, ALAN R., and I. G. STEWART. *The national income of Nigeria, 1950-51.* London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1953. 124 p. maps. (Colonial Office. Colonial research studies, no. 11)  
JV33.G7A48, no. 11

From this study, prepared under the direction of the Department of Applied Economics of Cambridge University by highly qualified economists, the Colonial

Office was enabled to gauge the capacity of Nigeria to contribute toward her own economic development. Dr. Prest and Mr. Stewart estimated income per head in West Africa at about £20—more than twice prewar estimates.

754. SMITH, MICHAEL G. *The economy of Hausa communities of Zaria; a report to the Colonial Social Science Research Council.* London, Published by H.M. Stationery Off. for the Colonial Office, 1955. 264 p. illus., maps, diagrs., tables. (Colonial research studies, no. 16)  
JV33.G7A48, no. 16

Socio-economic survey for the Colonial Social Science Research Council, based on field work under a grant from Colonial Development and Welfare funds. Contains many tables in text and appendixes, a few photographs, a sketch map, and a brief bibliography (p. 258-260).

755. SMYTHE, HUGH H., and MABEL M. SMYTHE. *The new Nigerian elite.* Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1960. 196 p. map.  
HN800.N5S56

Bibliographical references included in notes (p. 175-191).

Dr. Smythe is a professor of sociology at Brooklyn College. In this thorough study, prepared in collaboration with his wife who is also a sociologist, the first three chapters are background of history and political development, the rest an analysis of social classes and cadres in general rather than personal terms.

756. STAPLETON, G. BRIAN. *The wealth of Nigeria.* London, Oxford University Press, 1958. 228 p. illus.  
HC517.N48S8

Evaluation of the country's economic condition and wealth of natural resources by an economist who has taught in Nigeria.

757. WALKER, GILBERT J. *Traffic and transport in Nigeria; the example of an underdeveloped tropical territory.* London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1957. xiv, 318 p. maps, tables. (Colonial research studies, no. 27)  
JV33.G7A48, no. 27

One of the last full-scale research studies of Nigeria as a British colony. One aspect of the subject had been studied the year before in a monograph by Edward K. Hawkins, *Road Transport in Nigeria; A Study of African Enterprise* (London, Oxford University Press, 1958. 99 p.).



758. WELLS, F. A., and W. A. WARMINGTON. *Studies in industrialization: Nigeria and the Cameroons*. London, Published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research by Oxford University Press, 1962. 266 p.

HC517.N48W4

Joint publication based on separate research into conditions and efficiency of industrial projects. Dr. Wells had made his studies in Eastern and Northern Nigeria in 1959, and Dr. Warmington had done research in the Southern Cameroons in 1953-56 (see his 1151). The writers explain that, although political changes have now separated the latter territory from Nigeria, to become West Cameroon in the Cameroon Republic, they feel that "the conditions and problems with which the studies are concerned will be affected only slowly by the passage of time." Dr. Wells' examination is of the Sapele timber industry, operated by a subsidiary of the United Africa Company and in 1959 employing over 3,000 people, and of the Kano groundnut crushing industry. Warmington is concerned here as before with the Cameroons Development Corporation.

Typical of a number of industrial studies now being issued under official sponsorship is a paper published by the U.S. AID Mission in Lagos and to be printed by the Ministry of Information of Eastern Nigeria: *Development of Small Industry in Eastern Nigeria*, by Peter Kilby (1962. 57 p.)

759. YESIFU, TIJANI M. *Industrial relations in Nigeria*. London, Published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research by Oxford University Press, 1962. 190 p. tables.

HD8791.N5Y4

Not yet available for examination.

## ANTHROPOLOGY AND SOCIOLOGY

760. AKIGA. *Akiga's story: the Tiv tribe as seen by one of its members*. Tr. and annotated by Rupert East. London, New York, Published for International Institute of African Languages and Cultures by Oxford University Press. 1939. 436 p.

DT515.A7

The book is translated from the Tiv language in which it had been written, representing a work of 20 years. The translator, then a senior education officer in Nigeria, declared that Akiga's story gives a true and impressive picture of native life and customs.

761. BABA, of Karo. *Baba of Karo: a woman of the Muslim Hausa*. [Autobiography recorded] by M. F. Smith. London, Faber & Faber, 1954. New York, Philosophical Library, 1955. 299 p.

DT515.B115 1954

Unusual presentation of ethnological data in the form of an interesting biography, told by an elderly woman in Zaria Province, Nigeria, to Mrs. M. F. Smith, who was working with her husband, M. G. Smith, in field research. Baba's memory went back to the days of tribal wars and slave raiding before the British came, and she described the life of the big slave estates in her youth. Her reminiscences for the most part have little concern with public issues, but illustrate vividly domestic life and the sphere of women in African Muslim society. A condensed outline of this society forms the introduction, and careful ethnographic data appear in footnotes.

762. BOHANNAN, PAUL. *Justice and judgment among the Tiv*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1957. 221 p.

GN493.B6

763. ———. *Tiv farm settlement*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1954. 87 p. (Gt. Brit. Colonial Office. Colonial research studies, no. 15)

JV33.G7A48

This American social anthropologist had done extensive field work among the Tiv tribe who live on both banks of the Benue River in central Nigeria. The first published result was the summary account, done with his wife, in the Ethnological Survey series (see no. 771). The brochure issued by the Colonial Office contains a technical analysis of land owned by family and lineage groups, crops and crop rotation, agricultural labor, land tenure, and other aspects of the agricultural economy of the Tiv. The later significant work explores the concepts of law and the legal systems of the tribe.

764. FORDE, CYRIL DARYLL, ed. *Efik traders of Old Calabar*, containing The diary of Antera Duke, an Efik slave-trading chief of the 18th century, together with An ethnographic sketch and notes, by D. Simmons, and an essay on "The political organization of Old Calabar," by G. I. Jones. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1956. 166 p. maps, tables.

HT1394.N5F6

The Director of the International African Institute

and editor of *Africa*, Professor of Anthropology at the University of London since 1945, and author of several numbers of the West African series of the Ethnographical Survey, had begun his anthropological studies among the American Indians but by the forties had become a specialist on southeastern Nigeria. His *Marriage and the Family among the Yako* was published for the London School of Economics (by P. Lund, Humphries, London, 1941. 121 p. Processed), as No. 5 of its Monographs on Social Anthropology, and reprinted by the Institute in 1951. (See also his contributions to *African Worlds*, no. 287). In *Efik Traders of Old Calabar* he has combined ethnographical analyses with early historical source materials.

765. GREEN, MARGARET MACKESSEN. *Ibo village affairs*, chiefly with reference to the village of Umueke Agbaja. London, Sidgwick & Jackson, 1947. 262 p. illus., maps. NN

766. ———. *Land tenure in an Ibo village in south-eastern Nigeria*. London, Published for the London School of Economics and Political Science by P. Lund, Humphries, 1941. 44 p. maps. (Monographs on social anthropology, no. 6) GN489.1.G7

Dr. Green did field work among the Ibo from 1934–37, spending a year in the village of Agbaja, the daily life of which she described in her full-scale study of 1947. The earlier paper was devoted to a single aspect of Ibo village affairs.

767. GREENBERG, JOSEPH H. *The influence of Islam on a Sudanese religion*. New York, J. J. Augustin. 1947. 73 p. maps, diagrs. (Monographs of the American Ethnological Society, 10) E51.A556, no. 10

Dr. Greenberg submitted this monograph for his doctoral thesis in ethnology at Northwestern University following fieldwork as a Fellow of the Social Science Research Council. In later studies, he has specialized in linguistics (see no. 299). In this interesting book on the Hausa he includes a long table of the spirits or jinn, and their characteristics.

768. HOPEN, C. EDWARD. *The pastoral Fulbe family in Gwandu*. London, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1958. 165 p. illus., maps. GN652.F9H66

One of a group of studies of the Fulani, a cattle people widely dispersed in the Western Sudan, from

Senegal to Lake Chad and in Northern Nigeria. Other volumes are by D. J. Stenning (no. 785) and Mlle. Dupire (no. 968). Dr. Hopen's book is reviewed by A. Kirk-Greene in *Africa*, January 1959.

769. HUBBARD, JOHN. *The Sobo of the Niger Delta*; a work dealing with the history and languages of the people inhabiting the Sobo (Urhobo) Division, Warri Province, southern Nigeria, and the geography of their land. Zaria, Gaskiya Corp., 1948. xxvi, 369 p. illus., maps. DT515.H8

A full anthropological study of an individual tribe.

770. IDOWU, E. BOLAJI. *Olodùmarè; God in Yoruba belief*. London, Longmans, Green, 1962. 222 p. BL2480.Y6I3

A Yoruba Anglican clergyman enlarged this book from a thesis presented to the Faculty of Theology at the University of London, analyzing his people's idea of the Deity—the Supreme Being alone, not the many lesser divinities—through the medium of their myths, songs, sayings, and liturgies. Dr. Idowu's effort is to prove the religion of the Yorubas to be a "Primitive Monotheism." He intends the work as a text for teachers and students.

771. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *Ethnographic survey of Africa: Western Africa*. London.

See general note on this series, no. 270. The following surveys, which summarize ethnological findings to the time of their publications, with full bibliographical data and tribal maps, relate to Nigeria:

3. FORDE, DARYLL, and G. I. JONES. *The Ibo and Ibibio-speaking peoples of south-eastern Nigeria*. 1950. 80 p. DT515.F6

4. FORDE, DARYLL. *The Yoruba-speaking peoples of south-western Nigeria*. 1951. 102 p. DT513.F6

7. GUNN, HAROLD D. *The peoples of the plateau area of Northern Nigeria*. 1953. 111 p. DT515.G8

8. BOHANNAN, LAURA, and PAUL BOHANNAN. *The Tiv of central Nigeria*. 1953. 100 p. DT515.B66

10. *Peoples of the Niger-Benue confluence*: Nupe, by Daryll Forde; Igbara, by Paul Brown; Igala and Idoma-speaking peoples, by Robert G. Armstrong. 1955. 160 p. DT515.I5

12. GUNN, HAROLD D. *Pagan peoples of the central area of northern Nigeria*. 1956. 146 p. DT515.G78

13. BRADBURY, R. E. *The Benin kingdom and the Edo-speaking peoples of south-western Nigeria*. 1957. 212 p. DT515.B7



15. GUNN, HAROLD D., and F. P. CONANT. *Peoples of the middle Niger region of northern Nigeria*. 1960. 136 p. DT515.42.G8
772. LEBEUF, JEAN PAUL. *L'habitation des Fali, montagnards du Cameroun septentrional; technologie, sociologie, mythologie, symbolisme*. Paris, Librairie Hachette, 1961. 607 p. illus. (drawings) (Bibliothèque des guides bleus) GN655.F25L4
- Published under the auspices of the Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique.
- This French anthropologist carried out three expeditions in the Sahara, Chad, and Northern Cameroons before and since the Second World War. In a comprehensive study of a tribe in the northern tip of Adamawa Province, he concentrates on Fali architecture as expressing in symbolic form their myth, beliefs, and concepts. His examination is detailed regarding all aspects of habitation.
773. LEITH-ROSS, SYLVIA. *African women; a study of the Ibo of Nigeria*. London, Faber & Faber, 1939. 367 p. plates, maps. DT515.L4 1939
774. ———. *African conversation piece*. London, New York, Hutchinson, 1944. 133 p. plates. DT515.L39
- The writer, wife of a former colonial officer in Nigeria, is a trained ethnologist and student of native languages. Her study of the Ibo women, prepared under a Leverhulme research fellowship, was the result of 30 years' experience and study in southeastern Nigeria. The 1944 book, for a popular audience, describes the daily life of women in the Ibo city of Onitsha. A bibliographical "portrait" of Mrs. Leith-Ross appeared in *West Africa* of Nov. 24, 1962. She is now an expert on Nigerian pottery.
775. LLOYD, PETER C. *Yoruba land law*. London, New York, Published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research, Ibadan, by the Oxford University Press, 1962. 378 p. DLC-LL
- Reviewed at length by Basil Davidson in *West Africa* of Sept. 22, 1962, no. 2364, p. 1043.
776. MEEK, CHARLES KINGSLEY. *The northern tribes of Nigeria; an ethnographic account of the Northern Province of Nigeria, together with a report on the 1921 decennial census*. London, Oxford University Press, 1925. 2 v. DT515.M4
777. ———. *A Sudanese kingdom; an ethnographical study of the Jukun-speaking peoples of Nigeria*. London, K. Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1931. 548 p. illus. DT515.M43
778. ———. *Tribal studies in northern Nigeria*. London, K. Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1931. 2 v. illus. DT515.M45
779. ———. *Law and authority in a Nigerian tribe: a study of indirect rule*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1937. 372 p. DT515.M38
780. ———. *Land tenure and land administration in Nigeria and the Cameroons*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1957. 420 p. (Colonial research studies, no. 22) JV33.G7A48, no. 22
- Dr. Meek, who went to Nigeria as a civil service officer in 1912 and retired as Resident of the [then] Northern Provinces in 1933, had anthropological interests and training. He was appointed to the Northern Provinces as Anthropological Officer in 1924, after having been the Commissioner for the decennial census in 1921. His first book, resulting in part from the census, of which it is the only published report, was *The Northern Tribes of Nigeria*. (The census for the Southern Province was directed by Talbot [see no. 787].) He followed it 6 years later with the collected series of official ethnographic reports, *Tribal Studies*, and the long study of the Jukun-speaking peoples. The book in 1937, written after he had retired and gone to lecture at Oxford, is an exhaustive account of the social institutions of a selection of village groups among the Ibos of Southeastern Nigeria. In 1946 Dr. Meek's *Land Law and Custom in the Colonies* (see no. 277) was published under sponsorship of the Institute of Colonial Studies. His last work, prepared for the Colonial Office, returns to Nigeria as locale for a treatise on African land tenure and administration.
781. NADEL, SIEGFRIED F. *A black Byzantium; the kingdom of Nupe in Nigeria with a foreword by the Right Hon. Lord Lugard . . .* London, New York, Published for the International Institute of African Languages & Cultures by the Oxford University Press, 1942. 420 p. illus., tables, diagrs. maps. [Reprinted 1961.] DT515.N27

782. ——— *Nupe religion*. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1954. 288 p. illus.

BL2480.N8N3

Published for the International African Institute. The late Dr. Nadel, Professor of Anthropology at the Australian National University, had done extensive fieldwork among the Nupe people in Northern Nigeria. In 1942 he served as government anthropologist in the Southern Sudan embodying his findings in a book of 1947, *The Nuba: An Anthropological Study of the Hill Tribes in Kordofan* (London, New York, Oxford University Press. 527 p.). The first book named above, of which a reprint has been issued after twenty years, is on economic and political organization, kinship, and rites of adolescence, the second a thorough treatment of beliefs, rituals, medicine, and other aspects of Nupe culture. The latter is considered a classic study of a nonmystic and largely rational pagan religion.

783. PARRINDER, E. GEOFFREY. *Religion in an African city*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1953. 211 p. illus. BL2465.P29

In this work Dr. Parrinder of Ibadan University writes of Ibadan, the largest city in tropical Africa, with a population at the time of between 300,000 and 400,000, as typical of the large Yoruba towns. He describes first the pagan animist religion and shrines, then the "rising crescent" of Islam, which he admits is the most considerable factor in the religious life of southern as well as northern Nigeria. Chapters are devoted to mission churches, the various Christian sects, the effects of Christian worship and secret societies, part Christian and part pagan in character. In his final chapter the writer explains the modern religious situation, deploring the division into separatist sects. Appendixes give statistics of temples and shrines, mosques and churches. A historical monograph by Dr. Parrinder, *The Story of Ketu, an Ancient Yoruba Kingdom* (Ibadan, Ibadan University Press, 1956. 92 p.) takes as locale the town of Kétou in Dahomey.

784. SMITH, MICHAEL G. *Government in Zazzau, 1800–1950*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1960. 371 p. maps, diags. JQ3099.Z3S5

By an authority on Hausa society who has done long field work in Northern Nigeria, this book, subtitled "A Study of Government in the Hausa Chiefdom of Zaria in Northern Nigeria," analyzes the historico-political

structure of the emirate from the viewpoint of the anthropologist. It is reviewed at length by A. Kirk-Greene in the *International Review of Misisions*, v. 50, July, 1961, p. 363–367.

785. STENNING, DERRICK J. *Savannah nomads; a study of the Wodaabe pastoral Fulani of Western Bornu Province, Northern Region, Nigeria*. London, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1959. xiv, 266 p. illus., maps. GN652.F9S8 1959

Bibliography: p. 249–253.

Companion study to the work by Hoppen (no. 768).

786. TALBOT, P. AMAURY. *Life in Southern Nigeria; the magic, beliefs and customs of the Ibibio tribe*. London, Macmillan, 1923. 356 p. illus. DT515.T35

787. ——— *The people of Southern Nigeria, a sketch of their history, ethnology and languages*. With an abstract of the 1921 census. London, Oxford University Press, 1926. 4 v. illus. DT515.T355

788. ——— *Some Nigerian fertility cults*. London, Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1927. 140 p. illus. BL2470.N5T3

789. ——— *Tribes of the Niger delta, their religions and customs*. London, The Sheldon Press; New York, Macmillan, 1932. 350 p. DT515.T357

790. ———, and HARRY MULHALL. *Physical anthropology of Southern Nigeria; a biometric study in statistical analysis*. Cambridge, University Press, 1962. 127 p. (Cambridge University. Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology. Occasional papers) GN653.T32 1962

Dr. Talbot, like Dr. Meek, was for long an administrator in Nigeria, and was seconded to conduct the 1921 census for the Southern Provinces, the only published report of which is in his four-volume *People of Southern Nigeria*. Also like Dr. Meek, he was one of the first generation of colonial servants who combined anthropological proficiency with administrative ability, and his several volumes are highly regarded. He died in 1945 and the last-named paper was edited from the results of his large-scale anthropometric survey in the 1920's.

Among other older writers who might be mentioned as typical is the missionary George T. Basden, whose *Niger Ibos* (London, Seeley, Service, 1938. 447 p.), describes



the primitive life, customs, and animistic beliefs of the people among whom he had lived for 35 years. Still another work of this character of wonder at strange ways was by James R. Wilson-Haffenden: *The Red Men of Nigeria, an Account of a Lengthy Residence among the Fulani, or "Red Men," & Other Pagan Tribes of Central Nigeria, with a Description of their Headhunting, Pastoral & Other Customs, Habits & Religion* (Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1930. 318 p.); this rated a foreword by the famous anthropologist Malinowski.

## ARTS, LETTERS, AND EDUCATION

791. ACHEBE, CHINUA. *Things fall apart*. London, Heinemann, 1958. 185 p.; New York, McDowell, Obolensky, 1959. 215 p.

PZ4.A17Th

792. ———. *No longer at ease*. London, Heinemann, 1960; New York, I. Obolensky, 1961. 170 p.

PZ4.A17Noz

The first of these two novels by an Ibo writer who is being hailed as one of the emerging leaders of an African awakening in letters, is the reconstruction of an Ibo village in the late 19th century, under the first impact of the West. The second has as theme the difficulties of the present-day educated African, the "been-to" torn between Western standards and tribal tradition. Both are excellent reading according to Western standards.

793. ADETORO, J. E., ed. *The handbook of education, Nigeria, 1960; an independence year souvenir*. [n.p.] Schools and General Publications Services, 1960. 280 p.

LA1611.N5A63

Booklet printed at the Tanimehin-Ola Press, Oshogbo. The editor is at Kirji Memorial College, Igbajo. The handbook gives an outline of the history of educational development in southern and northern Nigeria, an explanation of educational systems, and a directory, with catalog information regarding institutions of learning.

794. ARTS COUNCIL OF GREAT BRITAIN. *Nigerian tribal art*. London, 1960. unpagd. illus.

N7397.N5A7

The catalog of an impressive exhibition of Nigerian sculpture brought together in honor of the independence celebrations. The selection and arrangements were made by William Fagg, who was in part responsible for the accompanying text. A note in *Africa* of January 1961 by G. I. Jones is enthusiastic about the exhibition, critical of the catalog, especially of the plates, finding only a few of the over 170 reproduc-

tions to "convey the beauty or the structure of the masks and statuettes."

795. BEIER, ULLI. *Art in Nigeria, 1960*. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1960. 24 p. illus.

N7397.N5B4 1960

Essay by an Austrian scholar on the staff of Ibadan University, who is a specialist in Nigerian arts and letters. In a booklet prepared to coincide with the independence celebrations Mr. Beier discussed first traditional art, then the contemporary artists, in particular Mr. Ben Enwonwu. He has chapters on commercial art, modern architecture, sculpture and woodcarving, and art teaching. The bulk of the book is taken up by almost 200 excellent plates.

796. *Black Orpheus*; a journal of African and Afro-American literature. no. 1+ Sept. 1957+ Ibadan. irregular (two or three times a year)

DLC

This impressive literary magazine is published by the Ministry of Education in Ibadan; editors in 1961 (no. 9) were Ezekiel Mphahlele, Wole Soyinka, and Ulli Beier. The contributions are by no means limited to Nigerian writings, but these represent the preponderance.

Another literary journal published in Ibadan, *Odù* (University Press, 1955+ usually two a year), is issued by the Western Nigeria Literature Committee, and is "a journal of Yoruba and related studies," with its contents in part in Yoruba.

Like *Black Orpheus*, the magazine begun as a quarterly in 1961 by the Ghana Society of Writers, *Okyeame* (Accra; first letter of title is the backward G character of African orthography), is intended as a literary interpretation of the new Africa, with contributions going beyond national borders.

797. EKWENSI, CYPRIAN. *People of the city*. London, Dakers, 1954. 237 p.

PZ4.E349Pe

Novel depicting the life of the elite in contemporary Lagos. Mr. Ekwensi is one of the prominent literary figures in West Africa.

798. GBADAMOSI, BAKARE. *Yoruba poetry*. Traditional Yoruba poems collected and translated by Bakare Gbadamosi and Ulli Beier. Ibadan, Nigeria, General Publications Section, Ministry of Education, 1959. 68 p.

PL8824.Z95E5 1959

An interesting collection, with an interpretative introduction by Mr. Beier, who had assisted the Yoruba editor in the translation of these praise names, oracle poems, songs of the hunters, of marriages and funerals, poetry for children, proverbs, and other traditional

Yoruba poetry. The pamphlet, a special publication of *Black Orpheus*, is illustrated with full-page color plates of traditional designs by Susan Beier, who with her husband had lived for some years among the Yoruba.

799. IDEWU, OLAWALE, and OMOTAYO ADU. *Nigerian folk tales . . .* Told to and edited by Barbara K. and Warren S. Walker. New Brunswick, N.J., Rutgers University Press, 1961. 113 p. illus. GR360.N5I3

Text decorations by Margaret Barbour. The two Nigerian informants who told these tales were studying in America, Mr. Idewu, from Western Nigeria, a Christian convert studying medicine, Mr. Adu, a Moslem from Lagos—both Yoruba. The stories are by classes, tales of demon lovers, “pourquoi” stories, moral fables, trickster tales, fertility tales. The collection was edited at the Blackburn College Language Laboratory.

800. M'BARI WRITERS CLUB. Literary summit conference for African writers of English expression. Makerere College, June 11–16, 1962.

Brief summary by Bloke Modisane in *West Africa*, no. 2352, June 30, 1962: p. 716.

801. MELLANBY, KENNETH. *The birth of Nigeria's university*. London, Methuen, 1958. 263 p. illus. LG481.I3522M4

Account of the beginning of University College, Ibadan, the largest university of English-speaking West Africa. Dr. Mellanby writes from firsthand experience as Ibadan's first principal, 1947–53.

802. NIGERIA. Commission on Post-School Certificate and Higher Education. *Investment in education*; report. Nigeria, Federal Ministry of Education, 1960. 140 p. L675.N5A48

The so-called Ashby Report; chairman of the Commission, Sir Eric Ashby of Cambridge University. In two parts, the first general and containing recommendations which aim at meeting Nigeria's needs for educated manpower up to 1980, with university development planned to ensure an enrollment of at least 7,500 students by 1970, and substantial growth during the next decade. The second part consists of special reports on high-level manpower needs, sixth form and examinations, teacher training, technical and commercial education, agricultural education, universities, and new educational techniques.

803. NZEKWU, ONUORA. *Wand of noble wood*. London, Hutchinson, 1961. 207 p.

PZ4.N998Wan

Novel of Ibo life and conflict between tradition and modernism, with much detail of anthropological interest. The author has in 1962 replaced Mr. Michael Crowder as editor of *Nigeria Magazine*, of which he had formerly been assistant editor. A second novel, *Blade among the Boys*, was published by Hutchinson in 1962 (192 p.).

804. OLUBUMMO, ADEGOKE, and JOHN FERGUSON. *The emergent university, with special reference to Nigeria*. London, Longmans, Green, 1960. 122 p. LB2321.048

Attempting to explain to a general public, primarily of educated Africans, the aims of higher education, the two writers, both at Ibadan University, sketch the history of university development from Plato's Academy onward, and discuss the nature, functions, and methods of university education in general and with special reference to Nigeria. They particularly “deplore any attempt to make the higher education of the country the plaything of party or tribal politics,” and look with some suspicion at the project of the University of Eastern Nigeria.

805. SAUNDERS, JOHN T. *University College, Ibadan*. Cambridge, University Press, 1960. 223 p. illus. LG481.I3522S3

The author of this history and description of the University College, now University of Ibadan, was Principal of the College from 1953 to 1956. He goes into less detail regarding the beginnings of the College than did Kenneth Mellanby (see no. 801). Dr. Saunders, however, includes appendixes of statistics and a complete register of undergraduates from January 1948 through the academic year 1958/59.

806. SIEBER, ROY. *Sculpture of Northern Nigeria*. New York, Museum of Primitive Art; distributed by University Publishers, 1961. 32 p. plates. NB1097.N5S5

Collection assembled by the author in a field study. The 12-page introduction, discussing the varying art forms of different tribes, is followed by 45 plates with accompanying notes.

807. TUTUOLA, AMOS. *The palm-wine drinkard and his dead palm-wine tapster in the Deads' Town*. London, Faber and Faber, 1952. 125 p. PZ4.T968Pa1



808. ——— *My life in the Bush of Ghosts*. London, Faber & Faber, 1954. 174 p.

PZ4.T968My

These two stories by a Nigerian Yoruba have been widely praised as representing a new departure in

African letters. The author uses traditional mythology in his own pattern of a partly westernized culture. The result is a curious and fascinating combination of ancient and primitive beliefs with modern ideas—e.g., “television palm witchess.” In his later work Mr. Tutuola has received more critical reviews.

## Sierra Leone

### *Bibliographies*

809. HAIR, P. E. H. *A bibliographical guide to Sierra Leone, 1460–1650; 1650–1800*. Sierra Leone studies, n.s. no. 10, June 1958: 62–72; no. 13, June 1960: 41–49. DT516.A155, no. 10, 13

This new comprehensive guide to sources for studies of Sierra Leone is being published in parts. The arrangement is chronological in the first two sections. The third section (not yet in L.C., Feb. 1963) will treat Christian missions in Sierra Leone.

810. LUKE, HARRY C. *A bibliography of Sierra Leone*, preceded by an essay on the origin, character and peoples of the colony and protectorate. 2d ed. London, Oxford University Press, 1925. 230 p. Z3553.S5L8 1925

An authoritative bibliography, with wide coverage almost to date of publication, is prefaced by an interesting essay which is one of the best introductions to Sierra Leone. The author was Colonial Secretary.

811. BANTON, MICHAEL P. *West African city; a study of tribal life in Freetown*. London, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1957. xvii, 228 p. illus., 2 maps. DT516.B25

A comprehensive analysis of social life and customs of various tribal groups in Freetown. Reviewed at length in *African Affairs*, October 1958, p. 324–326. A reprint has been issued in 1961.

812. BARCLAYS BANK (DOMINION, COLONIAL AND OVERSEAS) *Sierra Leone; an economic survey*. London, 1960. 23 p. illus.

HC517.S5B3

On the popular level, for the businessman, but useful in its summarization of various aspects of the economy; e.g., legislation regarding the Diamond Mining Ordinances.

813. COLE, ROBERT W. *Kossoh Town boy*. With illus. by Felix Cobbson. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1960. 190 p. illus.

R654.C6A3

Autobiographical narrative of a boyhood in Sierra Leone and experiences in school, torn between British values and traditional customs. The writer is a distinguished surgeon, but this book—which was reviewed in the *London Times Literary Supplement* (Sept. 30, 1960) as “a minor classic in the autobiography of youth”—has little to do with medical matters, as it leaves the boy at 15 years of age.

814. COX-GEORGE, N. A. *Finance and development in West Africa; the Sierra Leone experience*. New York, Humanities Press, 1962. 333 p.

HC517.S5C6

London edition by Dobsqn, 1961.

815. ——— *Report on African participation in the commerce of Sierra Leone*, by N. A. Cox-George and the Government statement thereon. Sierra Leone, Govt. Print. Dept., 1958. 64 p. diagr., tables. HF3899.S5C6

The author of these two studies is a Sierra Leonean economist whose thesis for his doctorate at the University of London in 1956, *The Financial System of a West African Colony in Relation to Economic Development* (466 p., microfilm) formed the basis for the complete analysis of the economics and financial history of the former British dependency published in 1961. The new book is reviewed at length by K. J. Rothwell in *Africa Report* of January 1963. The 1958 Report which is related to the drive for Africanization of the Civil Service, was prepared at the request of the Government of Sierra Leone while Mr. Cox-George was in the Department of Economics at Fourah Bay College. In 1962 he was Professor of Economics at the University of Nigeria at Nsukka.

816. CROOKS, JOHN J. *A history of the colony of Sierra Leone, Western Africa* (with maps and appendices). Dublin, Browne & Nolan, 1903. 375 p. DT516.C9

A standard older work by a British officer who had been in the administrative service in Sierra Leone. It is still considered useful, not least for its appendixes containing text of territorial treaties, lists of native chiefs, etc.

817. FOSTER, RAYMOND SAMUEL. *The Sierra Leone Church*, an independent Anglican Church; a contemporary study. With a foreword by Stephen Neill. London, S.P.C.K., 1961. 76 p. BX570C.7.A44S53

Not yet available for examination.

818. FYFE, CHRISTOPHER. *A history of Sierra Leone*. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 773 p. DT516.5.F85

This impressive history has a brief introduction on the period from the 15th century Portuguese discovery of Sierra Leone to the founding of the Colony in 1787 (which is treated in the complementary work by Kup, no. 827) then covers chronologically and in great detail all affairs of the Colony and Protectorate to about 1900. The author had been temporary Government Archivist in Sierra Leone, and his sources (itemized on pages 621–639, with “References” on p. 640–723) include a vast array of documents and newspapers. The book was reviewed at some length in *West Africa*, April 28, 1962. A greatly simplified version, *A Short History of Sierra Leone*, adapted to school use, has been issued in a paperback by Longmans, Green (1962. 194 p.).

819. GERVIS, PEARCE. *Sierra Leone story*; with 65 pages of photos. by the author. London, Cassell, 1952. 240 p. illus. DT516.G4

Narrative of an English visitor who lived for some time in a fishing village and made trips into the interior. His story is full of informal accounts of the “bush” life—dances and ceremonies, initiation rites, talk in Pidgin English—giving a picture of the semi-pagan tribesmen. The photographs are notable.

820. GT. BRIT. Central Office of Information. Reference Division. *Sierra Leone; the making of a nation*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1961. 38 p. illus. (Reference pamphlet 45) DT516.8.G7

One of a series prepared for the Overseas Information Services, this pamphlet was the final British sur-

vey of her former territorial possession. It gives a brief, factual account of the land and its people, their economic and social development, the evolution toward self-government, and the final transition to independence.

821. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Annual report on Sierra Leone*. 1946+ London, H.M. Stationery Off. illus., fold. map. (*Its Colonial annual reports*) DT516.A15

The report for 1958, published in 1960, is the latest of which record is found in H.M. Stationery Office Catalogue, and thus the final one of the series for this country, which became independent in April 1961. The 1958 report has 135 pages and large folded map; all aspects of economic, political, and social life are summarized in its succinct paragraphs, which include also a general review of the past year, and an outline of geography and history. The Reading List, p. 114–120, names official and unofficial books, pamphlets, and serial publications, the official documents of Sierra Leone being classed by subject.

822. HARGREAVES, J. D. *A life of Sir Samuel Lewis*. London, Oxford University Press, 1958. 111 p. illus. (West African history series) DT516.H28

In a series for African schools, this is the biography of one of the great Creole leaders of Sierra Leone in the late 19th century. Sir Samuel Lewis, the son of a Freetown trader, educated at the Middle Temple, the most prominent lawyer of the colony and for many years a member of the Legislative Council, was knighted in 1896, the first West African to receive that honor from the Government which he supported and opposed equally in accordance with his principles.

823. HORNELL, JAMES. *Report on the fishery resources of Sierra Leone*. Freetown, Govt. Printing Off., 1928. 51 p. SH315.S5H6

Mr. Hornell, a marine biologist and former Director of Fisheries to the Government of Madras, was deputed by the Colonial Secretary, at the instance of the Governor of Sierra Leone, to carry out a survey of the fishery resources of the Colony and Protectorate. He spent 2 months in 1928 examining in detail the sea coast and fisheries. His conclusion was that the resources were very great, but that the fishermen were prone to limiting production and overpricing; that if the industry were to prosper, a change in psychology was needed. The report, in which all aspects of fisheries were covered, is cited as an authority in the 1957 study by Richardson and Collins (no. 833).



824. JACK, DANIEL T. *Economic survey of Sierra Leone*. Sierra Leone, Govt. Print. Dept., 1958. 75 p. HC517.S5J3

Dr. Jack, professor of economics at King's College of Durham University, Newcastle upon Tyne and an expert on international trade, was commissioned by the Government of Sierra Leone to make this survey of the economy of the country.

825. JARRETT, HAROLD R. *A geography of Sierra Leone and Gambia*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1954. 136 p. illus. DT516.J3

Designed for West African secondary school use. The author was a lecturer in geography at Fourah Bay College.

826. JOHNSON, THOMAS S. *The story of a mission; the Sierra Leone Church, first daughter of C. M. S.* London, S.P.C.K., 1953. 148 p. illus. BX5682.S568

By an African bishop, this historical sketch is devoted almost exclusively to the record of the Anglican Church in Sierra Leone, through the Church Missionary Society which began its work in the colony, then still under the Sierra Leone Company, in 1804. The author calls the roll of churches, giving names of many individual clergymen.

827. KUP, A. P. *A history of Sierra Leone, 1400-1787*. Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1961. 211 p. illus. DT516.K8

By a historian at Fourah Bay College, this study of the earliest history of Sierra Leone in its connections with Europe is based on Portuguese and other pre-colonial source materials. It is critically reviewed by Dr. Fyfe, whose history (no. 818) begins where this account left off, in the *Journal of African History*, v. 2, no. 2, 1961, p. 327-328.

828. LEWIS, ROY. *Sierra Leone; a modern portrait*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1954. 263 p. illus., maps (The Corona library, 2) DT516.L4

Bibliography: p. 249-251.

The series of popularly written illustrative accounts of the dependent territories in which this is the second number, is designed to fill the place between the cold facts of the official Blue Books and the "personalized" records of travel writers. This attractive book is based on thorough study of sources and on a visit which was in the nature of a field trip to talk with the people and the Government.

829. LITTLE, KENNETH L. *The Mende of Sierra Leone; a West African people in transition*. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1951. 307 p. illus., maps (International library of sociology and social reconstruction) DT516.L5

Bibliography: p. 292-294.

Dr. Little, Head of the Department of Anthropology at the University of Edinburgh, is an authority on West African cultures. This book brings together a number of articles previously published in scholarly journals, all based on his fieldwork among the tribesmen in the Sierra Leone Protectorate in 1945 and 1946. The fullest portion of the study relates to social organization and the role of the secret societies, the men's Poro and the women's Sande. The last chapter studies social changes of the postwar period.

830. McCULLOCH, MERRAN. *The peoples of Sierra Leone Protectorate*. London, International African Institute, 1950. 102 p. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: Western Africa. Pt. 2) DT516.M3

Like the other parts of the Ethnographic Survey (see no. 270), the study is intended as a quick reference source, bringing together scattered information regarding the tribes of the area in question and outlining their ethnic and cultural position.

831. MIGEOD, FREDERICK W. H. *A review of Sierra Leone*. London, K. Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1926. 351 p. illus., map. DT516.M5

By a retired colonial officer, an expert on West African languages. His account ends with ethnological chapters on the Mende people.

832. PFEFFER, KARL H. *Sierra Leone und Gambia*. Bonn, K. Schroeder, 1958. 85 p. illus. (Deutsche Afrika-Gesellschaft e.V. Bonn. Die Länder Afrikas, Bd. 11).

See general note on this series, no. 10. DLC

833. RICHARDSON, E. M., and G. R. COLLINS. *Economic and social survey of the rural areas of the Colony of Sierra Leone; a report to the Colonial Social Science Research Council*. London, Research Dept., Colonial Office, [1952?] 490 p. HN800.S5R5

Report by two British investigators who in 1949-51 made a study of the Sierra Leone Colony with special attention to conditions in the coastal fishing villages, which have declined in Creole population due to the exodus of young people to the city of Freetown. On the other hand, there has been increasing immigra-

tion of tribal people from the Protectorate, so that the society has become more mixed. This report takes the form of a general account of environment in natural and human terms, discussion of overall problems, then detailed studies of four individual villages. Emphasis is on economic factors, though the social structure and cult practices also come in for attention. The large processed volume includes figure charts and many tables of statistical data.

834. SIERRA LEONE. *White paper on education*. Freetown, Govt. Printer, 1958. (Sessional paper no. 4 of 1958)

Full statement of the program envisaged for educational development. The primary emphasis is on elementary education, proposing 63,000 more primary schools in the next 5 years, which would still leave 70 percent of the population without a school system.

835. SIERRA LEONE. Commission of Inquiry into the Issue of Alluvial Diamond Mining Licences in the Gbambaiadu Area, Kono District. *Report*. Freetown, Govt. Printer, 1957. 14 p.  
HD9677.S52A53

The Alluvial Diamond Mining Ordinance (no. 2 of 1956) was passed in an effort to reduce illicit diamond mining by allowing the issuance of certain licences. This Commission had studied what were charged to be infringements of the Ordinance. In 1956 there had also been set up a Diamond Area Development Authority. In 1959 two further bills were passed in the effort to stop smuggling, and subsequent legislation is often recorded in the *Sierra Leone Gazette*. For instance, a new set of *Diamond Marketing Rules*, 1962, has been published by the Govern-

ment Diamond Office. According to an article in *West Africa* (no. 2359, Aug. 18, 1962, p. 965), the Selection Trust Company must deposit all stones at GDO, under whose supervision they will be examined and valued; the Selection Trust must sell 50 percent to the British Diacorp, and must pay a service fee to GDO of 5 percent.

836. SIERRA LEONE. Produce Marketing Board. *The Sierra Leone Produce Marketing Board: what it is, what it does and what it hopes to do*. Freetown [1961?] 32 p. illus.  
HD9017.S52A56

A list of published documents of the Sierra Leone Government is now in preparation by the African Section, Library of Congress, in our series of official publications of African countries. It will be as complete as possible without extended research in archival sources.

837. *Sierra Leone year book*. 1961. Independence year. Freetown, Daily Mail, 1961. 126 p. illus., advertisements. DT516.A2S5 1961

The triumphant 1961 edition of this handbook includes summarization of the Report of the Constitutional Conference of 1960, with annexes of its provisions for fundamental rights, retirement benefits for the public service, and speeches of Sir Milton Margai and other leaders. In addition there is a list of former governors, a trade directory, a who's who, and other miscellaneous information. The 1962 edition has been announced in mid-year, 128 p.

A *Handbook of Sierra Leone*, by Thomas N. Goddard (London, G. Richards, 1925. 335 p., illus., map), was prepared under auspices of the Sierra Leone Government. It covers at considerably greater length earlier aspects of the subjects treated in the current year book. The author was Colonial Secretary in Freetown.



# FRENCH-SPEAKING AFRICA

## (GENERAL)

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

838. ROBINSON, KENNETH E. "Survey of the background material for the study of government in French tropical Africa." *American political science review*, v. 50, Mar. 1956: 170-198.  
JA1.A6, v. 50

Bibliographical article of lasting value for any serious research on former French Africa. Professor Robinson, now Director of the Institute of Commonwealth Studies at the University of London, made his selections from the authoritative literature, largely in French, over the preceding quarter-century, with special emphasis on French legislative sources. His evaluative analyses covered the chief bibliographical works, French official publications, specialized periodicals, books and articles on French Africa in general, then in separate sections, French West Africa, French Equatorial Africa, and Madagascar. Because of the availability of this highly informed, masterly bibliography, the compiler of the present list has omitted titles of many older works there cited.

A Bibliography on the Former French Territories in West and Equatorial Africa is in preparation by Jacques Louis Hymans at Stanford University in 1962-63, to be issued in the Hoover Institution's Bibliographical Series.

### GENERAL

(History, Description, etc.)

839. AUJOULAT, LOUIS. *Aujourd'hui, l'Afrique*. Tournai, Casterman, 1958. 400 p. (Église vivante) DT352.A8

A discussion of African cultural, economic, and political ambitions in the waning era of colonial rule. The author, a doctor of long experience in the Cameroons, wrote with intimate understanding of the African soul. His conclusions relate to the position of the Catholic Church in Africa.

840. BALANDIER, GEORGES. *Afrique ambiguë*. Paris, Plon, 1957. 291 p. (Terre humaine; civilisations et sociétés. Collection d'études et de témoignages) DT352.B3

By one of the leading French Africanists, a social anthropologist presently connected with the École Pratique des Hautes Études, and author of social studies in French Equatorial Africa. This profound consideration of the fast developing states of French-speaking Africa is based on over ten years' travel and experience, first in French West Africa, later in the service of the Gouvernement Général de l'A.E.F. in Brazzaville. The writer ranges over many scenes and subjects—traditions, lost arts, cities. The impasses of contradictions between the new Africa and the old form his main themes. The "ambiguity" of his title, he says, is "that we carry in ourselves . . . the image of our uncertainties" before "the march of a progress which must lay waste before establishing a superior order."

In 1961 Professor Balandier edited a significant work on developing areas published by the Institut National d'Études Démographiques, *Le "Tiers-Monde," sous-développement et développement* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 393 p., illus. Travaux et documents, cahier no. 39).

841. BRUNSCHWIG, HENRI. *Mythes et réalités de l'impérialisme colonial français, 1871-1914*. Paris, A. Colin, 1960. 204 p. JV1817.B74

By an Alsatian scholar whose historical studies have included *La colonisation française* (Paris, Calmann-Lévy, 1949) and *L'expansion allemande outre-mer du XV<sup>e</sup> siècle à nos jours* (Presses universitaires de France, 1957), this is an acute and highly documented analysis of French relations with the other European powers in the scramble for Africa.

842. DEKEYSER, P. L., and A. VILLIERS. *Les animaux protégés de l'Afrique noire*. Dakar, Institut français d'Afrique noire, 1951. 128 p. illus. (Initiations africaines, 5) SK571.D4

Handbook of birds and beasts which were protected in French West Africa and French Equatorial Africa. The descriptions are faced by inserted pages of drawings in sepia and color wash by the author, picturing each species. An appendix quotes the regulations for hunting. This appeared in a series which, unlike IFAN's other highly scientific contributions, is addressed to a general public.

Now that French regulations are no longer in effect, international opinion is being brought to bear on influencing the African nations to take measures to preserve their valuable assets of wild life (see, e.g., Huxley, no. 452n).

843. DESCHAMPS, HUBERT J. *Les méthodes et les doctrines coloniales de la France, du XVI<sup>e</sup> siècle à nos jours*. Paris, A. Colin, 1953. 222 p. illus. (Collection Armand Colin, no. 281. Section d'histoire et sciences économiques)

JV1815.D4

Professor Deschamps, formerly a colonial governor, now in charge of studies of overseas France at the Institut d'Études Politiques of the University of Paris, has written many books enunciating the enlightened views of liberal French thought. This short account includes in its chapters on the period from 1880–1940 comment on the great spokesmen of French colonial theory: Albert Sarraut, *La mise en valeur des colonies françaises* (1923), and *Grandeur et servitude coloniales* (1931); Georges Hardy, “grand universitaire colonial” (see no. 848); René Maunier, *Sociologie coloniale* (1932); Henri Labouret, *À la recherche d'une politique indigène dans l'Ouest africain*; and others who foresaw an end to empire. It concludes with a selected bibliography by period, the last covering the years 1940–50.

Among other general books by Professor Deschamps are *Peuples et nations d'outre-mer* (Paris, Dalloz, 1954. 475 p.), and *L'Union française; histoire, institutions, réalités* (Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1952. 214 p. illus.). An English translation of the latter, *The French Union*, was issued by Berger-Levrault in 1956 (256 p.).

844. DEVÈZE, MICHEL. *La France d'outre-mer, de l'empire colonial à l'Union française, 1938–1947*. Paris, Hachette, 1948. 321 p.

JV1818.D44

General study of the background and development of French colonial policy. The writer analyzed changing trends under wartime conditions and after 1944, when at the Brazzaville Conference of Colonial Governors there was formulated the aim of development of native peoples within terms of their own cultures. This changing concept led to the reorganization of the

French colonial empire as a Union of Nations represented like the *départements* of the French Republic and theoretically evolving toward autonomy, “France Overseas.”

An essay on the concept, structure, and current position of the French Union, from which Morocco and Tunisia were already separated, and the future of the French plan for “an orderly evolution of a nation of many peoples, traditions and cultures” was presented to an American public in No. 495 of the International Conciliation pamphlets, *The French Union*, by the liberal colonial administrator General Georges Catroux (New York, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1953. 256 p.). General Catroux was a disciple of the great Marshal Lyautey, under whom he had served in the pacification of Morocco, and of whom he wrote a biography, *Lyautey-le-Marocain*.

845. *Encyclopédie coloniale et maritime*, edited by Eugène Guernier and G. Froment-Guieysse. Paris, Encyclopédie coloniale et maritime, 1944–1951.

JV1086.E5

This basic reference work, with separate folio volumes devoted to each of the French overseas territories, was published in 15 parts during the between-war years. A revised postwar edition was begun in 1944 with Vol. 2, *Tunisie* (4<sup>e</sup> éd.). Parts relating to French sub-Saharan Africa were Vol. 4, *Afrique occidentale française* (1947. 2 v.); Vol. 5, *Afrique équatoriale française et Côte française des Somalis* (1950); Vol. 6, *Togo et Cameroun* (1951); and Vol. 7, *Madagascar et Réunion* (1947. 2 v.). Edited by two distinguished geographers and written by competent specialists, among them high-ranking colonial administrators, each volume presents a comprehensive set of essays on physical, economic, and human geography, history, administrative organization, arts and culture of the territory in question, including statistics and extensive bibliographies.

M. Froment-Guieysse is now editor of a periodical begun in 1950 with the title, *Encyclopédie coloniale et maritime mensuelle*, later *Encyclopédie mensuelle d'outre-mer*, changed in 1958 to *Encyclopédie mensuelle de l'Afrique*—a large illustrated review designed to cover “toutes questions concernant nos territoires d'outre-mer.” In Jan. 1960 a new magazine with the same format and cover design was launched by M. Froment-Guieysse, published in Abidjan, *Revue encyclopédique de l'Afrique*. Occasional supplements are devoted to a single country or topic; some again bear the title, *Encyclopédie mensuelle de l'Afrique*.

846. *Études sociales nord-africaines*. Africains noirs en France. Paris, 1961. 64 p. map. (Cahiers nord-africains, 86, oct.-nov. 1961)

DC41.A4E8, no. 86

In a series of sociological papers usually devoted to conditions of North Africans at home and working in



France, this pamphlet examines life in the metropole for Africans from south of the Sahara.

847. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. [Les nouvelles Républiques d'Afrique] Paris, 1960-61. (Notes et études documentaires)  
D411.F67

A set of surveys of most of the new states of former French Africa were issued in this official documentary series in 1960 and 1961. The coverage is systematic: first a general glance at geography, history, ethnography, and demography, then outline of political and administrative institutions, economic and financial, cultural and social evolution, ending with a conclusion of prospects, and in appendixes, text of the new Constitution. For series numbers, see under individual countries.

A more popular set of statements for American readers regarding the former French African countries is in a series of illustrated booklets: *The Republic of . . . Hour of Independence*, issued by the Service de Presse et d'Information of the French Embassy in New York.

848. HARDY, GEORGES. *Nos grands problèmes coloniaux*. 3. éd. Paris, A. Colin, 1942. 216 p.  
JV412.H35 1942

Professor Hardy, former Director of the École Coloniale and author of many historical and geographical works on French colonial possessions, was one of the group of able liberal colonial specialists who attempted to influence French policy toward the Union of autonomous governments. His best known histories (*Histoire de la colonisation française*, 1947; *Histoire sociale de la colonisation française*, 1953; *La politique coloniale et le partage de la terre au XIX<sup>e</sup> et XX<sup>e</sup> siècles*, 1937) are broadly conceived, encompassing the entire empire. Among his more particularized studies are *L'Art négre; l'art animiste des noirs d'Afrique* (Paris, H. Laurens, 1927. 168 p. Art et religion); *Le Problème religieux dans l'empire français* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1940. 153 p.), *La Mise en valeur du Sénégal* (see no. 1052).

849. PARAF, PIERRE. *L'ascension des peuples noirs; le reveil politique, social et culturel de l'Afrique au XX<sup>e</sup> siècle*. Paris, Payot, 1958. 236 p.  
DT14.P3

A sympathetic study of the rapidly advancing French African territories following the *loi-cadre* of 1956, including a country-by-country summary. The author, a radio commentator and writer, hopefully foresaw African autonomy within the Community.

850. PEDRALS, DENIS PIERRE DE. *Voyage aux fondateurs de l'Afrique*. Paris, Librairie autonome, 1960. 204 p.  
DT352.P4

By a literary man who is also an ethnologist and former administrator, a return visit to the scenes of his earlier work produced this book of charming reminiscences and acute comment on changes.

851. PRIESTLY, HERBERT I. *France overseas: a study of modern imperialism*. New York, London, Appleton-Century, 1938. 463 p.  
JV1811.P7

Solid and concentrated work by a historian at the University of California. His fact-laden study covers the French acquisition of her overseas empire during the 19th century and the first two decades of the 20th century, and forms a useful reference work.

A British publication by an Australian historian, Stephen H. Roberts (*History of French Colonial Policy, 1870-1925*, London, P. S. King, 1929, 2 v.) dealt in more detail (and more readably) with the French administrative theory and practice in her dependent territories.

852. SURET-CANALE, JEAN. *Afrique noire, occidentale et centrale*. [2d rev. ed.] Paris, Éditions sociales, 1961. 322 p. illus., maps. (La Culture et les hommes)  
DT524.S8

Includes bibliography.

The writer, a geographer who had taught in Senegal, studied African history and problems from an anti-imperialist viewpoint. This work, the first edition of which came out in 1958, is an introductory volume outlining physical and human geography and history up to 1900. It is impressively documented with footnotes and a 32-page bibliography. M. Suret-Canale is in the 1960's Director of the Institut National de Recherches et de Documentation of Guinea in Conakry. The *Recherches africaines* of which he is editor is printed in East Berlin.

M. Suret-Canale's account of the French "pacification" of West Africa gives a very different picture from that presented by historians of the colonial era. Typical is Jacques Méniaud, *Les pionniers du Soudan avant, avec et après Archinard, 1879-1894* (Paris, Société des publications modernes, 1931. 2 v.), and *Sikasso, ou histoire dramatique d'un royaume noir au XIX<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Paris, Bouchy, 1935. 208 p.).

## POLITICS

853. *Administration et diplomatie d'Afrique noire et de Madagascar*. Paris, Europe-outremer.  
[annual?]  
JQ1874.A2

Directory of the governments of "l'Afrique de l'expression française." The first volume for 1962 has 391 pages, including a few advertising pages.

854. ANSPRENGER, FRANZ. *Politik im schwarzen Afrika; die modernen politischen Bewegungen im Afrika französischer Prägung.* Köln, Westdeutscher Verlag, 1961. 516 p. (Deutsche Afrika-Gesellschaft. Schriften des Heinrich-Barth-Instituts) DT353.A8

Under a research grant from the Deutsche Afrika-Gesellschaft this scholar visited French Africa in late 1959 and used sources available in Paris. His comprehensive, highly informed, and well-documented study of the recent political history of the states of former French Africa carries events through 1960. He furnishes indexes of African political and other figures and of subjects, with explanation of abbreviations, a chronology, and a bibliography.

855. ARBOUSSIER, GABRIEL D'. *L'Afrique vers l'unité.* Paris, Éditions parisiennes de Saint-Paul, 1961. 124 p. (Collection "Afrique monde") DLC

Essay on efforts toward Pan-African unity, particularly those of the Union Africaine et Malgache, by the Minister of Justice of Senegal. His argument is for a federation of states, not a state federation.

856. BLANCHET, ANDRÉ. *L'itinéraire des partis africains depuis Bamako.* Paris, Plon, 1958. 209 p. (Tribune libre, 31) JQ3193 1958 B6

This account of the preindependence parties in French Africa was rapidly outdated by events, but remains a source for background study. It includes a "Petit bottin politique de l'Afrique noire," with names and brief biographical notes on 30-odd leaders in early 1958.

Another reliable study, *Introduction à l'étude des partis politiques de l'Afrique française* by Léo Hamon (Paris, 1959, 196 p.), was reprinted from the authoritative journal, *Revue juridique et politique de l'Union française*. What is possibly an updated edition was published in 1961 (Hamon, L. *Les partis politiques africains* (II) Paris, Librairie générale de droit et de jurisprudence, 1961. 51 p.).

857. BLARDONE, GILBERT, and others. *Initiation aux problèmes d'outre-mer, colonisation, décolonisation, sous-développement.* Lyon, Éditions de la Chronique sociale de France, 1959. 366 p. (Collection "Savoir pour agir," v. 5) JV1827.B55

Volume in an outstanding Catholic series of thoughtful analyses of current problems. The authors are the economist Gilbert Blardone, an international lawyer, Raoul Padirac, Abbé Paul Catrice, a former councilor of the Union Française, and the sociologist Joseph Folliet. The appendixes include data on the political status as of late 1959.

858. CÉSAIRE, AIMÉ. *Discours sur le colonialisme.* 2 éd., rev. et augm. Paris, Présence africaine, 1955. 71 p. (Collection "Le Colonialisme," 1) JV51.C4 1955

Eloquent essay on the African desire for human dignity by the West Indian poet and nationalist. Running contemptuously through famous statements of some of the great French Africanists, he points out in them all the hated assumption of European superiority. This is one of the classic texts of the nationalist movement.

859. DIOP, MAJHEMOUT. *Contribution à l'étude des problèmes politiques en Afrique noire.* Paris, Présence africaine [1958] 267 p. illus. (Enquêtes et études) DT353.D5

Includes bibliography.

By one of the Senegalese nationalist writers connected with Présence Africaine, this work is a Marxist review of conditions and causes for African backwardness, with constant quotations from Lenin and other Communist writers. The work has been commented on as more pro-Communist than pro-African.

860. DUGUÉ, GIL. *Vers les États-unis d'Afrique.* Dakar, Éditions "Lettres africaines," 1960. 314 p. DT33.5.D8

Journalistic résumé of postwar political history of French Africa. The preface is by Modibo Keita, at that moment President of the short-lived Federation of Mali.

861. DUMON, FRÉDÉRIC. *La Communauté franco-afro-malgache; ses origines, ses institutions, son évolution, octobre 1958-juin 1960.* Bruxelles, Université libre de Bruxelles, Institut de sociologie Solvay, 1960. 294 p. (Études d'histoire et d'ethnologie juridiques, 2) DLC

862. *États africains d'expression française et République malgache.* Paris, R. Julliard, 1962. 342 p. DLC

A handbook offering "as precise as possible a summary of political and administrative organization of the young States," and describing their common organisms and those which furnish aid. There are three parts. The first, systematic by country, describes 14 States, including Mali and Togo, but not Guinea. Part 2 explains the Union Africaine et Malgache, its economic branch, OAMCE, the Société Air-Afrique, ASNECA (Navigation Aérienne pour l'Afrique et Madagascar), and the Office Inter-États du Tourisme



Africain. Part 3 covers French and international organisms for technical and financial aid. In the foreword it is stated that there will be annual revisions.

863. EUROPE FRANCE OUTREMER. *L'Afrique d'expression française*. 3. éd. Paris, 1963. Special issue of *Europe France outremer*.

JV1801.E65

The first special issue with this title in a journal emphasizing African affairs came out in December 1960; the 2d edition appeared in the spring of 1962; and the 3d edition has been announced for publication in March 1963. It comprises a country-by-country guide to the political and economic status of French-speaking Africa, to groups and organizations (with index of initials), and to links with the Common Market. The Republics of Algeria, Tunisia, the Congo (Leopoldville), Guinea, Mali, and the Kingdom of Morocco are included with the States of the Union Africaine et Malgache.

864. GONIDEK, P. F. *Constitutions des états de la Communauté*; textes recueillis. Paris, Sirey, 1959. 185 p.

DLC-LL

Texts of the Constitutions of the new States which had opted for the French Community in the referendum of September 1958. This specialist in the law of French overseas had been responsible for two authoritative earlier works, both published by the Librairie Générale de Droit et de Jurisprudence: *Droit de travail des territoires d'outre-mer* (in collaboration with M. Kirsch. 1958. 743 p.—Bibliothèque de droit des territoires d'outre-mer, v. 1); *L'évolution des territoires d'outre-mer depuis 1946* (1958. 126 p.).

865. GUÈYE, LAMINE. *Étapes et perspectives de l'Union française*. Paris, Éditions de l'Union française, 1955. 136 p.

JN2609.5.G8

This study of the road of evolution from the complete dependence of the colonial empire to the French Union is by an African elder statesman and political leader, formerly deputy to the French Parliament from Senegal and Socialist mayor of Dakar, currently President of the Senegal Assembly.

866. LAVROFF, D. G., and G. PEISER. *Les constitutions africaines, l'Afrique noire francophone et Madagascar*. Paris, Pcdone, 1961. 279 p. (Collection du Centre de recherche, d'études et de documentation sur les institutions et la législation africaines, 1)

Announcement seen in *International Organization* of Summer 1962. This work may include Guinea, Mali, and Togo as French-speaking states, as well as those of the Union Africaine et Malgache.

867. LEFÈVRE, RAYMOND. *Dossier on French tropical Africa*. Asnières (Seine) 1960+ (loose-leaf)

DLC-AFR

A serial consisting of groups of "cards" (slips, 6½ × 8), usually about thirty a month, giving biographical data regarding statesmen in the countries of French-speaking Africa, occasionally a few in English-speaking countries. The pink sheets, each with name of an individual at the top, are interspersed with white cards showing government organizations.

868. LUCHAIRE, FRANÇOIS. *Les institutions politiques et administratives des territoires d'outre-mer après la loi-cadre*. Paris, Librairie générale de droit et de jurisprudence, R. Pichon et R. Durand-Auzias, 1958. p. 221-294.

DCL-LL

An authoritative analysis of the changes in administration of the French overseas territories established by the law passed by the French National Assembly on June 23, 1956 (*Journal officiel de la République française. Lois et décrets*, 24 juin 1956. 88 année, no. 146, p. 5782-5784). The so-called *loi-cadre* increased autonomous government in the territories, established executive councils for internal affairs, made provision for officials "of local origin," and granted universal suffrage with a common electoral role.

A document containing full texts of legislation relating to the reforms of the *loi-cadre* was published as follows:

FRANCE. Laws, statutes, etc. *Réorganisation municipale en Afrique occidentale française, en Afrique équatoriale française, au Togo, au Cameroun et à Madagascar*; communes de plein exercice et communes de moyen exercice. Ed. à jour au 1<sup>er</sup> septembre 1956. Paris, Impr. des journaux officiels, 1956. 167 p.

On cover: *Journal officiel de la République française* no. 1073.

869. *Nations nouvelles*. no. 1+ 1962+ Cotonou, Dahomey. illus.

DLC

English edition has title: *New Nations; Mouthpiece Binding the African and Madagascan Union (A.M.U.)*

Journal of the Union Africaine et Malgache, prepared by the Secretariat of UAM (better known by the French initials than as AMU), and printed by Diloutremer, Paris. Editions are issued in French, English, and Arabic. The first number followed and was devoted to the Conference of the Heads of States

and Governments of UAM, Bangui, Mar. 19-22, 1962; it includes outstanding speeches, political and economic resolutions, etc. A second number issued in late 1962 concentrated on diplomatic activities of the Union. A branch of UAM publishes an economic review (see no. 888).

870. PIERSON-MATHY, Mme. P. "L'évolution politique de l'Afrique." *Chronique de politique étrangère* (Bruxelles) v. 14, no. 1-3, janv.-mai 1961. 485 p. DT839.C82, v. 14

By a specialist in international law of the University of Brussels, in charge of research at the Institut des Relations Internationales, in three issues of whose journal this comprehensive study is published. It is in four parts: 1, "La Communauté française: a) L'organisation; b) Les regroupements interstatiques et l'évolution politique des républiques africaines"; 2, "Union Sahel-Benin, Mauritanie, Conseil de l'Entente, ancienne AEF"; 3, "Guinée"; 4, "Somalie." The documentation, official and unofficial, is very completely cited in footnotes. All phases of constitutional and foreign affairs are covered, with background. Events are carried through September 1960, including complete account of the Federation of Mali breakup.

871. SENGHOR, LÉOPOLD SÉDAR. *Nation et voie africaine du socialisme*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1961. 138 p. (Collection "Leaders politiques africains") DLC

Reprint of speeches of the poet and statesman, President of Senegal, and foremost exponent of negritude. Senghor's socialism is a combination of Marxism and Christianity with strongly spiritual and African nationalist overtones. A speech to the party which he helped form in 1958 has been given to American readers in a translation by Mercer Cook, *African Socialism; A Report to the Constitutive Congress of the Party of African Federation* (New York, American Society of African Culture, 1959. 49 p.) More recently his theories have been expounded in a series of articles contributed by M. Senghor to *West Africa*, "Senghor's Philosophy" ("What is Negritude?" No. 2318, Nov. 4, 1961, p. 1211; "African Style Socialism," No. 2319, Nov. 11, 1961, p. 1245).

872. TEVOEDJRE, ALBERT. *L'Afrique révoltée*. Paris, Présence africaine 1958. 157 p. illus., ports. (Tribune de la jeunesse, 1) DT33.T4

A strong indictment of the French colonial system by a young African intellectual, who as editor of the Paris journal *L'Étudiant d'Afrique noire* had served a

prison term and after his release had toured French West Africa assembling documents in proof of repressive actions. M. Tevoedjre, a Dahomean, was the Secretary General of the Union Africaine et Malgache from its founding in 1961 to March 1963.

## ECONOMICS

873. *Cahiers d'études africaines*. no. 1+ Jan. 1960+ Paris, Mouton. quarterly. DLC

An important journal edited by the École Pratique des Hautes Études at the University of Paris (6<sup>e</sup> Section, Sciences Économiques et Sociales). The essays and notes are on a high level of scholarship and authoritativeness, concerned largely with socioeconomic aspects of modern Africa, and in particular with the French-speaking countries.

874. CAISSE CENTRALE DE COOPÉRATION ÉCONOMIQUE. *Les opérations de FAC, du FIDES, du FIDOM et de la Caisse centrale de coopération économique en 1961*. Paris, 1962.

The Caisse Centrale administers financial aid to the independent African republics (centralized under FAC) as well as those of FIDES, which is concerned with the remaining overseas territories of France. The agencies in question are the Fonds d'Aide et de Coopération, the Fonds d'Investissement pour le Développement Économique et Sociale, and the Fonds d'Investissement d'Outre-Mer.

875. CHARBONNEAU, JEAN, and RENÉ CHARBONNEAU. *Marchés et marchands d'Afrique noire*. Paris, La Colombe, 1961. 150 p. HF3876.C45

Informal study of trade and traders of former French Africa, including comment on the European merchant firms and white traders, as well as on African merchants. General Jean Charbonneau is author of many other books on Africa, including *Blancs et noirs au rendezvous* (Paris, La Colombe, 1956. 151 p.), an understanding analysis of relations between Africans and French, from a standpoint of Catholic responsibility.

The annual special issue of the Paris weekly, *Marchés tropicaux et méditerranéens*, December 1962, comprises a statistical survey, "Le Marché africain et malgache" (2. éd., 1962). It is announced as containing 240 pages, 40 studies, and 280 statistical tables, graphs, and charts. The studies are in three groups, the first on basic facts of marketing in Africa, in which the lead article is by René Charbonneau. The second and third set analyze respectively the markets for capital equipment and for consumer goods.



876. DIA, MAMADOU. *Réflexions sur l'économie de l'Afrique noire*. 2. éd. Paris, Éditions Présence africaine, 1961. 210 p. (Enquêtes et études) HC502.D42 1961

The former President of the Council of Ministers of Senegal, who had served as a Deputy to the National Assembly in Paris, had studied deeply in economics and has been regarded as an expert theoretician. This thoughtful essay, advocating a coordinated socialist organization of African economy free from European pressures, was published first in 1952. It is reprinted in this second edition together with several later addresses, including a speech before the General Assembly of the United Nations in 1960. In 1957 Dia published a second influential work on general economic theory, *L'Économie africaine; études et problèmes nouveaux* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France. 119 p.), and in the next year a particularized study, *Contribution à l'étude du mouvement coopératif en Afrique noire* (Paris, Présence africaine, 1958. 62 p.).

877. DUMONT, RENÉ. *Afrique noire, développement agricole; reconversion de l'économie agricole: Guinée, Côte d'Ivoire, Mali*. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1961. 212 p. (Cahiers "Tiers monde." Problèmes des pays sous-développés) HD2117.D8

878. ———. *L'Afrique noire est mal partie*. Paris, Coll. Esprit "Frontière ouverte," 1962. 286 p. DLC

The author, a distinguished agronomist and political scientist, is a member of the Fonds d'Aide et de Coopération (FAC) that has replaced FIDES. In the first-named work, published in a scholarly economic series, he spells out in detail the plans that with outside financial help might revolutionize agricultural production in the three countries studied. In the 1962 book, which has attracted attention at home and abroad, he attacks the waste and prestige expenditures of the new cadres of African bureaucracy, urges vigorous development for the *paysannats*, and calls on Europe to make 20-year plans of economic rather than military aid.

879. EUROPE FRANCE OUTREMER. *Exploitation et perspectives minières de l'Afrique*. Paris, 1961. 64 p. JV1801.E65, no. 382

Special issue of *Europe France outremer*, no. 382, September 1961: 1-64.

A survey containing articles by G. R. Manue, F. Blondel, and other experts. The articles are on min-

eral resources and prospects in general, then on principal minerals and individual enterprises.

This review updates a compendium of information about mines and mining industry in all French Africa, *Les Mines en Afrique française* (Paris, Encyclopédie d'outre-mer [1955?]) 140 p. illus., maps, diagrs.—Cahiers encyclopédiques d'outre-mer, no. 1).

The issue of *Europe France outremer* for December 1962 is devoted to "Les Transports en Afrique noire francophone et à Madagascar."

880. ———. *Trois ans de Fonds d'aide et de coopération (F.A.C.)* Paris, 1962. p. 14-59. Special issue of *Europe France outremer*, 39 année, no. 390, août 1962: 14-59.

JV1801.E65, no. 390

The number devoted to FAC carries a dozen or more articles on the French program of overseas aid in general and specific aspects. Two in particular include tabulated statistics: "Le F.A.C. et les crédits ouverts au budget de 1962 pour l'aide aux pays d'Afrique noire et à Madagascar," and "Les crédits ouverts par le F.A.C. en 1959, 1960 et 1961, par grandes catégories d'opérations." There is also a listing of French enterprises and operations financed in part or whole under FAC funds.

881. FRANCE. Ambassade, U.S. Service de presse et d'information. *French Africa: a decade of progress, 1948-1958; achievements of FIDES, Investment Fund for Economic and Social Development in French West and Equatorial Africa*. New York, 1958. 40 p. col. maps, col. diagrs. HC545.F7

On cover: French economic assistance in West and Equatorial Africa; a decade of progress, 1948-58.

Bibliography: p. 40.

882. FRANCE. Institut national de la statistique et des études économiques. *Publications*. Paris. [annual?] 1961 ed., 32 p. DLC

The list of publications of the Institut has a section for "Outre-Mer" (in the 1960 edition, Sect. C, p. 20-22), which includes the many statistical annuals, bulletins, and special reports prepared in past years and in some cases still being published. For instance, the sociodemographic studies begun in the midfifties were still appearing in 1961.

Other sources for French official publications regarding the Community are the *Bibliographie sélective des publications officielles françaises*, issued fortnightly by La Documentation Française, and *Supplément F. Publications officielles*, of the *Bibliographie de la France*, published several times a year by the Bibliothèque Nationale.

883. FRANCE. Service des statistiques d'outre-mer. *Outre-mer 1958; tableau économique et social des états et territoires d'outre-mer à la veille de la mise en place des nouvelles institutions.* Paris, 1959. 862 p. tables, diagrs., charts.  
HC279.A54

Complete statistical handbook. Many of the tables include figures for the year 1957/58. Part 1: Overseas territories in world setting. Part 2: Territories, plus Togo and Cameroun, 1947–1958. Part 3, analysis by subject as of about 1958, with tabular breakdown for individual countries.

Earlier works of the same character from this office were *L'Économie de l'Union française d'outre-mer*, a reprint from the professional journal *Revue d'économie politique* (Paris, Sirey, 1952–54. 2 v.); and *Inventaire social et économique des territoires d'outre-mer, 1950 à 1955* (Paris, Impr. Nationale, 1957. 467 p. tables).

884. HOFFHERR, RENÉ. *Coopération économique franco-africaine.* Paris, Sirey, 1958. 173 p.  
HC545.H6

By a former High Commissioner in the Cameroun, this is a discussion of the French plan of the midfifties for the overseas territories, with its large scheme for modernization and repartition. The argument is almost entirely economic, with emphasis on the possible development of the Sahara as an integrating factor for the different regions as well as for the French economy. The writer calls the Sahara the Ruhr of Africa.

885. LATTRE, JEAN MICHEL DE. *La mise en valeur de l'ensemble eurafricain français et la participation des capitaux étrangers, sociétés à participation étrangère, compagnies à charte.* Paris, Librairie générale de droit et de jurisprudence, 1954. 166 p.  
HC545.L3

Argument for coordination of economic development of resources of France and her African possessions and spheres of influence, with special reference to possibilities for foreign—i.e., American—investment, by a lawyer of the Paris Court of Appeals. M. de Lattre discussed the international funds—International Bank, TCA, etc.—but preferred a system of chartered companies, to the analysis of which he devoted most of his text.

A later book on the idea of coordinated economic development of the resources of Europe and Africa, as well as of political and cultural integration, was by Pierre Nord, *L'Eurafrique, notre dernière chance* (Paris, Fayard, 1955. 124 p. illus.).

The standard economic directory for French-speaking Africa is the annual *Bottin d'outre-mer* (Paris, Didot-Bottin).

The main section is of addresses in geographical classification by continents, countries, communes, or localities, with notes on administrative organization, economic conditions, and statistical data.

886. MORGAUT, MARC-EDMOND. *Un dialogue nouveau: l'Afrique et l'industrie.* Paris, Fayard, 1959. 200 p.  
HD8776.M6

By a French industrial manager who had employed African labor in Cameroun, Senegal, Guinea, and other parts of West Africa. His book analyzes understandingly relations between the races, assuming continuous Franco-African cooperation.

887. MOUSSA, PIERRE. *Les chances économiques de la communauté franco-africaine.* Paris, A. Colin, 1957. 271 p. illus. (Cahiers de la Fondation nationale des sciences politiques, 83)  
H31.F6, no. 83

By the director of the Affaires Économiques et du Plan of the Ministère de la France d'Outre-Mer, who analyzed the failure and discrepancies of the economic equilibrium of the former colonial empire, and principles and stages of the development plan. He included statistics of French economic aid to Africa. In 1960 Moussa explained *L'Économie de la zone franc* in a succinct text for the general public (Paris, Presses universitaires de France. 128 p. "Que sais-je?" 868).

888. ORGANISATION AFRICAINE ET MALGACHE DE COOPÉRATION ÉCONOMIQUE. *Revue trimestrielle.* no. 1+ dec. 1962+ Yaoundé, Cameroun.

Organ launched by the economics branch of the regional grouping, Union Africaine et Malgache (OAMCE).

889. POQUIN, JEAN J. *Les relations économiques extérieures des pays d'Afrique noire de l'Union française, 1925–1955.* Paris, Librairie A. Colin, 1957. 297 p. (Centre d'études économiques. Études et mémoires, 37)  
HF1617.P6

Scholarly economic history by a professor at the University of Poitiers. The preface is by M. Houphouët-Boigny of the Ivory Coast, who in 1957 was a Minister of State of France.

890. ROBEQUAIN, CHARLES. *Les richesses de la France d'outre-mer; structure économique et problèmes humains.* Paris, Payot, 1949. 221 p. (Bibliothèque géographique)  
HC279.K6



A professor of geography at the Sorbonne surveyed here on a broad scale the economic structure and status of the overseas territories, evaluating products and their development always in terms of their relation to the well-being of the native populations. In his conclusion he exclaimed "Riches! This book has had to show also poverties!" and pled for more scientific and ethnological research in colonial planning.

## CULTURAL

(including Anthropology and Education)

891. BOULNOIS, JEAN, and BOUBOU HAMA. *L'empire de Gao; histoire, coutumes et magie des Sonraï*. Paris, Librairie d'Amérique et d'Orient, 1954. 182 p. illus. DT551.B6

Historical and ethnological study of the Sonraï (Songhai), descendants of the powerful empire whose capital of Gao flourished in the middle Niger region in the 15th and 16th centuries. They are a typical Nigritic people, their dominant tribe the Sorko, fishermen of the great river, from whom come their "picturesque" religious traditions and beliefs. About a third of the volume is devoted to the origins and history of the Sonraï, the rest to their religion, mythology, and magic. Written in nontechnical style, this book is the result of collaboration by a French physician and an African teacher and government adviser.

892. FROELICH, J. C. *Les Musulmans d'Afrique noire*. Paris, Éditions de l'Orante, 1962. 408 p.

The author is connected with the Conseil Supérieur des Recherches Sociologiques d'Outre-Mer of the Centre des Hautes Études d'Administration Musulmane. In 1955 he prepared for the French Direction de la Documentation a *Carte des populations de l'Afrique noire* which showed ethnographic distribution in western Africa south of the Sahara to the Congo Basin. The same territory is covered in this study of Islam in the French-speaking states of Black Africa.

893. LEROI-GOURHAN, ANDRÉ, and JEAN POIRIER. *Ethnologie de l'Union française* (territoires extérieurs). Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1953. 2 v. (1083 p.) plates, maps. (Pays d'outre-mer; colonies, empires, pays autonomes. 6. sér. Peuples et civilisations d'outre-mer, 1-2) DC34.L58

An encyclopedic study, written by scholars for the lay reader. The first volume is on Africa, the second on Asia, Oceania, and America. Tome 1, *Afrique*, begins with a general section, then treats by regions, ending with an essay on "Les sociétés négro-africaines," a long bibliography (p. 441-468) and statistical appendixes.

894. N'DIAYE, JEAN-PIERRE. *Enquête sur les étudiants noirs en France*. Paris, Éditions Réalités africaines, 1952. 315 p. DLC

By a Senegalese who has finished his sociological studies in Paris with a survey of experiences and attitudes of the new French-speaking African elite as they prepare themselves in Paris and other French universities. He has analyzed the many significances resulting from a questionnaire submitted to 310 students. There is a long review of his book in *Afrique* (Paris), November 1962, p. 72-74.

895. *Présence africaine; revue culturelle du monde noir*. no. 1+ nov.-dec. 1947+ n.s. trimestrielle, 1953+ Paris. GN645.P74

The review *Présence africaine* and the several series of books and pamphlets published under the auspices of *Présence Africaine* form the chief organs for the elites of French-speaking Africa. Edited by M. Alioune Diop, the contributions are largely by African writers, and the contributors during the decade of the fifties included the foremost nationalist intellectuals. Typical books are Césaire's *Discours sur le colonialisme* (see no. 858), Tevoedjre's *L'Afrique révoltée* (see no. 872). Numbers of the review were often on a single theme; e.g., *Les Étudiants noirs parlent* (Paris, 1963. *Présence africaine*, 14). Catalogs of all publications are available from the Librairie *Présence Africaine*, 42, rue Descartes, Paris V<sup>e</sup>.

# FORMER FRENCH WEST AFRICA

## Bibliography

896. JOUCLA, EDMOND A. *Bibliographie de l'Afrique occidentale française*, par E. Joucla, avec la collaboration des services du Gouvernement général de l'Afrique occidentale française et pour le Dahomey de m. Maupoil, administrateur des colonies. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1937. 704 p. (Bibliographie générale des colonies françaises, par G. Grandidier . . . E. Joucla) Z3711.J68 1937

Basic for any study of French West Africa that involves background material, this huge bibliography appeared in an officially sponsored series begun shortly before the Second World War. Joucla cites almost 1700 maps and charts of A.O.F. His references include books, papers, official documents (without distinction from unofficial material), and select periodical articles. The arrangement is alphabetical, with several subject indexes.

For a more recent list, see bibliography included in the book by Thompson and Adloff (no. 925).

897. U.S. Library of Congress. General Reference and Bibliography Division. *Official publications of French West Africa, 1946-1958: a guide*; compiled by Helen F. Conover. Washington, 1960. 88 p. Z3672.U5

Listing of official publications of the A.O.F., the individual states, and the French Government relating to the region up to the moment of independence. The coverage is of documents available in the United States, also of those identified through French bibliographical sources and material available from French West Africa; no claim to completeness can be made.

898. *Afrique occidentale française. Togo*. Paris, Hachette, 1958. ccxlv, 542 p. maps (part fold. col.) (Les Guides bleus) DT523.A7  
Bibliography: p. ccxxiv-ccxxxi.

Still useful for most matters aside from politics is this complete baedeker guide to the countries of A.O.F.

and Togo, with a preliminary section on airlines, shipping, railroads and roads, and detailed descriptions of localities. The introductory essays on West Africa, its geography, economy, history and prehistory, missions, peoples, arts and crafts, languages, flora and fauna, are by prominent scholars, headed by Professor Théodore S. Monod of IFAN.

899. *Annuaire des Républiques de l'Ouest africain: Côte d'Ivoire — Dahomey — Haute-Volta — Mauritanie — Niger — Sénégal — Soudan*. 1960. Paris, Diloutremer; Dakar, Havas Afrique, 1960. 450 p. illus. DT521.A75 1960

Useful yearbook, the first part carrying essays on notable aspects of West African affairs, the second part giving systematic data about political, economic, and social life country by country, the third explaining organization of the community. The section on Dakar includes a business directory. Advertising is interspersed throughout. The Library of Congress has not received information as to whether this annual is being issued for later years.

A pamphlet guide of a more commercial nature, though covering much the same data in slighter outline, is the *Guid' Ouest africain*, issued by the Agence de Distribution de Presse in Dakar and Diloutremer in Paris. The 1962-63 edition, with 540 p. and 30 maps and plans, is the 16th annual volume (1948-58/59, *Guid'A.O.F.*).

900. CAPET, MARCEL F. *Traité d'économie tropicale: les économies d'A.O.F.* Paris, Librairie générale de droit et de jurisprudence, 1958. 348 p. illus., fold. map. HC545.C35

A survey of the economic situation on the eve of independence.

901. CHAILLEY, MARCEL. *Les grandes missions françaises en Afrique occidentale*. Dakar, Institut français d'Afrique noire, 1953. 145 p. illus. (Initiations africaines, 10) DT532.C47  
Bibliography: p. 135-137.

Recital of French exploration in West Africa, from the first establishment in Senegal in 1639 (Saint-Louis in 1659, Gorée in 1677) to the 28,000-kilometer inspection of the African sky, from the Sahara to Dakar,



to Zinder and the A.E.F., by a 28-plane air squadron under General Vuillemin in 1933. There are indexes of geographical and personal names, illustrations, and maps.

902. *Coutumiers juridiques de l'Afrique occidentale française*. Paris, Larose, 1939. 3 v. (Publications du Comité d'études historiques et scientifiques de l'A.O.F., ser. A, no. 8-10).

DLC-LL

Comprehensive study on customary law of the French colonies of West Africa, the first volume devoted to Senegal, the second to the Sudan, the third to Niger, the Ivory Coast, Dahomey and French Guinea. The Committee preceded IFAN as a center for scholarly research regarding the A.O.F.

903. DAKAR. CHAMBRE DE COMMERCE. *Synthèse de la situation économique de l'ex-Afrique occidentale française durant la période de 1948 à 1958*. Dakar, 1959. 7 v. (1455 l.)

HC547.W5D3

Contents.—t. 1. Problèmes de structure.—t. 2. Problèmes de structure (suite) Productions.—t. 3. Productions (suite)—t. 4. Productions (suite) Transports et communications.—t. 5. Économie générale.—t. 6. Économie générale (suite)—t. 7. Investissements et mise en valeur. Balance des comptes.

904. DELAVIGNETTE, ROBERT. *Freedom and authority in French West Africa*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1950. 152 p.

JQ3195.A1D43

The writer, former Governor-General of France Overseas and from 1947-1951 Director of Political Affairs of the Ministry of France Overseas, had many years' experience as administrator in French West Africa. This book is a translation of his 1948 *Service africain*, which was a reworking of his *Les Vrais chefs de l'empire*, published in late 1939, when he was teaching young administrators. His emphasis in this general study of African society in the French colonies is on the new Africa and the task, for which the administrator is the chief agent, of introducing her into the modern world. Professor Delavignette is known for many other books on the West African colonies, of which perhaps the most famous was *Paysans noirs* (see no. 984).

905. GAUTIER ÉMILE F. *L'Afrique noire occidentale; esquisse des cadres géographiques*. Paris, Larose, 1935. 188 p. (Publications du Comité d'études historiques et scientifiques de l'Afrique occidentale française) DT471.G33

Professor Gautier of the University of Algiers was one of the great geographers of the French colonies. This short essay is on the geographic and geological factors that have shaped the history of West Africa.

906. GOUILLY, ALPHONSE. *L'Islam dans l'Afrique occidentale française*. Paris, Larose, 1952. 318 p. illus.

BP65.A4G6

Study by a French authority on Islam. The introduction describes country and people of the semi-arid Sahelian zone where the Muslim nomads of the "white" north have met, clashed, and mingled with the sedentary animist blacks. The first part relates the history of the Islam conquests, from the invasion of the Berber Almoravides in the 11th century on to the last forced conversions before the French took over control; Part 2 is on the religious brotherhoods; Part 3 examines the effects of Islamization—corruption of the Muslim creed through animist accretions, influence of Islam on Negro ways of life; and Part 4 contains a discussion of the French policy toward Islam. A concluding balance sheet weighs positive and negative aspects.

907. GOYAT, MICHEL. *Guide pratique de l'employeur et du travailleur en Afrique occidentale*. Dakar, Sénégal, Éditions Clairafrique, 1960. 798 p.

DLC-LL

A treatise on labor legislation and practice.

908. HODGKIN, THOMAS L., and RUTH SCHACHTER. *French-speaking West Africa in transition*. New York, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1960. p. 375-436. (International Conciliation, no. 528, May 1960)

DT532.H6

Two specialists in French West African affairs review the socio-political background in French West Africa, the constitutional framework under French assimilative policy, postwar reforms, *loi-cadre*, Community of 1959, the political parties, and the groupings of the new states. Originally prepared for the May 1960 issue of *International Conciliation*, the study did not receive publication till the spring of 1961. A few changes were made to update certain already invalidated points; the penetrating analysis is of continuing significance.

909. INSTITUT FRANÇAIS D'AFRIQUE NOIRE, Dakar. *Bulletin*. t. 1-15, jan. 1939-oct. 1953. quarterly.

Q89.I5

910. ——— *Ser. A., Sciences naturelles.* t. 16+  
jan. 1954+ quarterly. QH3.I6
911. ——— *Ser. B., Sciences humaines.* t. 16+  
jan./avr. 1954+ semiannual. DT1.I5123
912. ——— *Mémoires.* 1940+ irregular (monographic series)
913. ——— *Notes africaines.* 1939+ quarterly.  
DT1.I513

The renowned research institute of French West Africa was created in 1936 and activated in 1938 with the appointment of Dr. Théodore Monod as director. In 1960 it was incorporated as an Institute in the University of Dakar. A sketch of IFAN's history for its 25th birthday was published in *Notes africaines*, no. 90, April 1961. During these years IFAN has undertaken learned studies in practically all disciplines relating to the region—botany, zoology, oceanography, ethnology, archeology, anthropology, sociology, linguistics, geography; only geology is excluded, as coming within the province of the Direction des Mines. The monographic series of *Mémoires*, which was begun in 1939 with R. Trautman's *La divination à la Côte des esclaves et à Madagascar*, has included distinguished contributions in all these fields. A few recent volumes in the human sciences are separately analyzed in the present bibliography. Besides the *Mémoires*, there is the monographic series of *Initiations africaines*, shorter papers usually in more popular vein than the *Mémoires*; also catalogs of the various collections of natural and ethnological materials gathered by IFAN and preserved in its museums in Dakar and local branches. The *Bulletin* of IFAN, a journal of scholarly contributions in the various disciplines, often of monograph length, is now published in two sections, *Série A, Sciences naturelles*, and *Série B, Sciences humaines*. The full list of IFAN publications is given on inside of front and back covers of each issue. The bulletin of information and correspondence, *Notes africaines*, is also published quarterly, and this too carries on its back cover pages the full list of the Institute's publications.

In the A.O.F., regional studies were issued by the various Centres IFAN; *Études camerounaises*, Douala, Cameroun; *Études dahoméennes*, Porto-Novo, Dahomey; *Études ébur-néennes*, Abidjan, Ivory Coast; *Études guinéennes*, Conakry, French Guinea; *Études mauritaniennes*, Saint-Louis-du-Sénégal; *Études nigériennes*, Niamey, Niger; *Études sénégalaises*, Saint-Louis-du-Sénégal; *Études soudanaises*, Bamako, French Sudan; *Études voltaïques*, Ouagadougou, Upper Volta. Some of these plan to continue publication under the independent governments.

914. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *Mono-graphies ethnologiques africaines.* Paris, Published for the Institute by Presses universitaires de France, 1954+

The French series of the Ethnological Survey of Africa (see no. 270). Volumes published are: *Les Bambara*, by Viviana Paques (1954. 100 p.); *Les Songhay*, by Jean Rouch (1954. 100 p.); *Les Coniagui et les Bassari*, by Monique de Lestrangé (1955. 86 p.); *Les Dogon*, by Montserrat Palau Marti (1957. 122 p.); *Les Senoufo*, by B. Holas (1957. 183 p.); *Le Groupe dit Pahouin: Fang, Bulu, Beti*, by P. Alexandre (1958. 152 p.); *Les Kongo Nord-occidentaux*, by Marcel Soret (1959. 144 p.); *Les Populations du Tchad*, by Annie M.-D. Lebeuf (1959. 130 p.); *Les Populations païennes du Nord Cameroun et de l'Adamaoua*, by B. Lembezat (in press in 1962).

915. LABOURET, HENRI. *Paysans d'Afrique occidentale.* Paris, Gallimard, 1941. 307 p.  
GN655.F7L3

One of a distinguished series on worldwide agricultural societies, "Le Paysan et la terre." The writer in his foreword quoted the French colonial theorist, Jules Harmand, who in 1910 gave his formula for tropical colonies: "The true colonist is the native and the great colonizer is the State." In his text Labouret explained the French implementation of this philosophy in the West African colonies, where the chief effort had been directed to forming a viable economy based on rural communities. His lucid study covered the physical and human milieu, the territorial divisions, systems of land tenure, the ways of village society, and the actual workings of agricultural economy. A section is devoted to African thought and literary expression.

916. LAVERGNE DE TRESSAN, MICHEL DE. *Inventaire linguistique de l'Afrique occidentale française et du Togo.* Dakar, IFAN, 1953. 240 p. 9 fold. maps. (*Mémoires*, no. 30) PL8017.L3

Bibliography: p. 25–45.

By a French commander of colonial troops who calls himself an "amateur" linguist, this comprehensive reference work gives detailed information as to localities where the various languages of French West Africa are spoken, with estimates of number of speakers from the French census of 1950. The bibliography for each language or group of languages includes texts as well as ethnological books and articles. Many other linguistic studies published by IFAN will be found in the list of publications above-mentioned.



917. MAUNY, RAYMOND. *Tableau géographique de l'Ouest africain au Moyen Age d'après les sources écrites, la tradition et l'archéologie*. Dakar, IFAN, 1961. 587 p. illus., maps (part fold.) plans. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 61) DT471.M35

Bibliography: p. 547-575.

A study of West African history between the Arab invasions and the era of Portuguese discoveries. The author, then director of archaeological research for IFAN, presented this work as his thesis for the doctorat d'état-es-lettres at the Sorbonne in 1959. His secondary thesis was *Les Navigations médiévales sur les côtes sahariennes antérieures à la découverte portugaise (1434)* (Lisboa, Centro de Estudos Históricos Ultramarinos, 1960. 151 p. illus., maps).

918. MILCENT, ERNEST. *L'A.O.F. entre en scène*. Paris, Éditions Témoignage chrétien, 1958. 190 p. illus. (Bibliothèque de l'homme d'action) DT534.M5

By a well-informed journalist in Dakar, correspondent for *Le Monde* (Paris), and editor of *Afrique nouvelle* from October 1959 to April 1963, this is a lucid history of political developments from the Conference of Brazzaville in 1944 to mid-1957, with particular reference to the reactions of the various parties to provisions of the *loi-cadre*. The preface is by Senghor, then leader of the Convention Africaine; he speaks with approval of M. Milcent's forward-looking analysis of future ties between an autonomous West Africa and France.

919. MISSION ANTHROPOLOGIQUE DE L'AFRIQUE OCCIDENTALE FRANÇAISE, 1946+ *L'alimentation en A.O.F.; milieux, enquêtes, techniques, rations*, par Léon Pales. Avec la collaboration de Marie Tassin de Saint Péreuse. Dakar, O.R.A.N.A., 1954. 434 p. DLC

Dr. Pales was chief of this study mission which carried out many research projects relating to anthropometry, alimentation, nutrition, etc., in French West Africa in the late forties and early fifties. A partial listing will be found in the Library of Congress bibliography, *Official Publications of French West Africa 1946-1958* (on p. 14-16).

920. NERES, PHILIP. *French-speaking West Africa—from colonial status to independence*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. 101 p. illus. DT532.N4 1962

A succinct account in pamphlet form, issued under the auspices of the Institut of Race Relations.

921. RICHARD-MOLARD, JACQUES. *Afrique occidentale française*. 3. éd., rev. et mise à jour. Paris, Éditions Berger-Levrault, 1956. 252 p. illus. (L'Union française) DT524.R5 1956

A highly praised introductory survey by the late chief of the Geographical Section of the Institut Français d'Afrique Noire at Dakar. Original edition, 1949. The preface by Professor Monod, director of IFAN, speaks of it as the most fully satisfactory up-to-date synthesis for the layman of the many special studies on French West Africa, interpreted through the understanding eye of the geographer.

922. ———. *Problèmes humains en Afrique occidentale*. 2. éd. rev. et complétée de l'Hommage à Jacques Richard-Molard. Paris, Présence africaine, 1958. 467 p. illus. DT530.R5 1958

Collection of papers in physical and human geography relating to West Africa, prepared as a tribute to their author, the brilliant young geographer Jacques Richard-Molard, who was killed by a fall while on a mountain expedition in 1951. The essays are in three groups: "Civilisations et société ouest africaines," "La terre et l'homme en Afrique noire," and "L'Afrique nouvelle: bilan, transformations, perspectives."

923. ROBERT, ANDRÉ P. *L'évolution des coutumes de l'Ouest africain et la législation française*. Paris, Éditions de l'Encyclopédie d'outre-mer, 1955. 255 p. (Bibliothèque juridique de l'Union française) DLC-LL

Analysis of the customary law of French West Africa and its relationship to and conflicts with French legislation. The writer, who deals with many varied tribes and their customs, urged that the role of the chief and the "chefferie" be maintained, in protection of the traditional elites of African society.

924. SPITZ, GEORGES. *L'Ouest africain français: A.O.F et Togo*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1947. 508 p. (Terres lointaines). DT524.S65

A comprehensive survey in a semipopular series of well-balanced country studies. The author, an honorary governor of the colonies, was formerly an administrator in A.O.F.

925. THOMPSON, VIRGINIA McLEAN, and RICHARD ADLOFF. *French West Africa*. Stanford, Calif, Stanford University Press, 1957. 626 p. illus., maps, tables. DT524.T5

Bibliography: p. 599-614.

Clear, detailed, analytical survey by two experts, examining with keen insight the political scene in French West Africa as it had developed from 1944, the economy in all phases, and present-day social and cultural aspects. The only modern study of this scope in English, it is indispensable for any research on the French-speaking countries of West Africa. Its full bibliography includes books, pamphlets, documents, and significant periodical material.

926. U.S. Bureau of Foreign Commerce. Trade Mission Division. *Business opportunities in Ivory Coast, Dahomey, Togo, Niger, Upper Volta, Senegal, Mauritania, Mali*; a businessmen's on-the-spot report to businessmen: exports, imports, investments, potentials. Washington, U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Bureau of Foreign Commerce, 1961. 19 p. DLC

927. URVOY, YVES. *Petit atlas ethno-démographique du Soudan entre Sénégal et Tchad*. Paris,

Larose, 1942. 46 p., 3 l. illus., iv pl. on 2 l., fold. maps. (Mémoires de l'IFAN, n° 5)

GN651.U7 1942a

The region covered in this map and summary analysis of Western Sudanic peoples includes Senegal, the former French Sudan (Mali), Upper Volta, Niger, Northern Nigeria, and Chad.

928. VIGUIER, PIERRE. *L'Afrique de l'ouest vue par un agriculteur; problèmes de base en Afrique tropicale*. Paris, La Maison rustique, 1961. 133 p. S471.A395V5

Brief commentary by an experienced agricultural officer, suggesting technical procedures that might maintain fertility of the fields for cultivation by improved, but still traditional, non-mechanized methods.

929. WALLERSTEIN, IMMANUEL. "How seven states were born in former French West Africa." *Africa report*, v. 6, Mar. 1961: 3-4, 7, 12, 15. DT1.A217, v. 6

By an American political scientist who has specialized in French-speaking Africa, this article provides a useful survey in English of the political groupings and actions that brought about independence in the former A.O.F.

## Dahomey

930. AKINDÉLÉ, ADOLPHE, and CYRILLE AGUESSY. *Contribution à l'étude de l'histoire de l'ancien royaume de Porto-Novo*. Dakar, Institut français d'Afrique noire, 1953. 168 p. (Mémoires, n° 25) DT553.P6A7

Based on a work written in Yoruba by Akindélé Akinsowon, father of one of the authors, and published in 1914 under the title: *Iwé itan Ajasè*.

"Bibliographie sommaire": p. 163-168.

Monograph by two African scholars, relating to the general and particular history of the former kingdom of Porto-Novo, now the capital of Dahomey, including details of the selection and coronation of the king and other aspects of court and governmental life, the list of kings and chiefs from 1688 to 1941, with notes on their reigns. The long section on family and religious customs contains poetic translations of funeral chants. Appendixes give a list of native words and a select bibliography. In the Preface, Professor Monod, Director of IFAN, commented on the satisfaction of the study of African history written by Africans.

Another in this series of monographs published the same year relates to the modern city and its chief resource, *Porto-Novo et sa palmeraie*, by Paule Brasseur-Marion and G. Brasseur (Dakar, 1953. 131 p. illus. Mémoires de l'IFAN, no. 32).

931. ———. *Le Dahomey*. Préf. du gouverneur C. H. Bonfils. Paris, Éditions maritimes et coloniales, 1955. 126 p. plates, maps, tables. (Pays africains, 6) DT541.A6

In the preface of this introductory survey the former governor of the small country which gives French West Africa its outlet on the Gulf of Guinea speaks of advances under the equipment plan—roads to the farthest-off points, "hospitals, schools, dispensaries, literally springing from the earth." The two African writers outline succinctly history and ethnology, religions, and administrative organization of Dahomey, and devote their chief attention to social and economic developments under the French rule and particularly under FIDES.



932. BURTON, Sir RICHARD F. *A mission to Gelele, king of Dahome*, with notices of the so-called "Amazons," the Grand Customs, the yearly Customs, the human sacrifices, the present state of the slave trade, and the Negro's place in nature. London, Tinsley Bros., 1864. 2 v. Memorial ed., edited by his wife, Lady Isabel Burton. London, Tylston and Edwards, 1893. 2 v. DT541.B97 1893

One of the most famous of the travel narratives of Dahomey, though by no means the earliest. Other journeys and histories in English and French from the late 17th century voyages of William Bosman to the late 19th century are discussed by Dr. Herskovits in the first chapter of his *Dahomey* (below).

933. CLERC, JOSEPH, PIERRE ADAM, and CLAUDE TARDITS. *Société paysanne et problèmes fonciers de la palmeraie dahoméenne*, étude sociologique et cadastrale. Paris, Office de la recherche scientifique et technique outre-mer (ORSTOM) 1956. 147 p. illus. (L'Homme d'outre-mer, no. 2) HD999.D3C6

Report of an officially sponsored study of Dahomean palm-oil plantations and land problems.

934. CORNEVIN, ROBERT. *Histoire du Dahomey*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1962. 568 p. illus., maps. (Mondes d'outre-mer. Histoire) DLC

Not yet available for examination in the Library of Congress. Announced in the *Bibliographie de la France*, 1 fév, 1963.

935. DESANTI, HYACINTHE. *Du Danhomé au Bénin-Niger*. Paris, Larose, 1945. 262 p. DT541.D4

By a colonial governor with long experience in Dahomey, this full survey is in four parts; the first sketches history, geography, and ethnology, the second, French political and social administration, the third, economic development, and last, the place of Dahomey in French West Africa. The author foresaw a revolt against French assimilative policy.

936. DIAMOND, STANLEY. *Dahomey: a proto-State in West Africa*. Ann Arbor, University Microfilms, 1951. (Publication No. 2808) Microfilm AC-1, no. 2808. AS30.M5

Microfilm copy of typescript. Positive. Abstracted in *Microfilm Abstracts*, v. 11 (1951), no. 4, p. 812-814.

Doctoral study in the ethnological field, analyzing the organization of the pre-French Dahomean state.

The writer depicts it as a society in transition from the kinship system of family-controlled peasant agriculture to a civil state based on tribute in the form of human labor, with power divided between the royal Fon clan, the war chief, and an emerging civil organization of bureaucracy.

937. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République du Dahomey*. Paris, 1959. 38 p. Notes et études documentaires, no. 2620, 31 déc. 1959) D411.F67, no. 2620

See general note on series (no. 846). There is available also an illustrated booklet in English, *Dahomey, Hour of Independence* (New York, 1960. 32 p.).

938. FRENCH WEST AFRICA. Gouvernement général. *Le Dahomey*. Corbeil, Éd. Crété, 1906. 351 p. (Notices publiées . . . à l'occasion de l'Exposition coloniale de Marseille). DT541.F84

Authoritative survey of the French colony at the beginning of the present century. History, physical and human geography, material and social advances under French rule, industrial development, administrative organization, and all aspects of economic life are succinctly covered.

939. GRIVOT, RENÉ. *Réactions dahoméennes*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1954. 180 p. illus. DT541.G75

By the chief administrator of the "cercles" of Dahomey. The writer's great experience in the administration and tribal life of the territory is here reflected.

940. HERSKOVITS, MELVILLE J. *Dahomey, an ancient West African kingdom*. New York, J. J. Augustin, 1938. 2 v. illus. DT541.H4

941. ——— and FRANCES HERSKOVITS. *Dahomean narrative; a cross-cultural analysis*. Evanston, Northwestern University Press, 1958. 490 p. (Northwestern University, Evanston, Ill. African studies, no. 1) GR360.D3H4

942. ——— *An outline of Dahomean religious belief*. Menasha, Wis., 1933. 77 p. (Memoirs of the American Anthropological Association, no. 41). GN2.A22, no. 41

The late Professor Herskovits of Northwestern University, who was the first President of the African Studies Association in 1957-58, was perhaps the best known anthropologist among American Africanists. After writing several books on the American Negro

(though his doctoral thesis in 1926 was on East Africa), he did fieldwork in West Africa in 1931. The first published result was the paper in which he collaborated with Mrs. Herskovits. The full-scale work in 1938 has an established place among the studies of African anthropology. The *Dahomean Narrative* is a collection of tales gathered by Professor and Mrs. Herskovits in 1931, as a French-speaking informant translated them from the lips of the narrators in Dahomey. They are of nine general types, with variant versions for some. The long introduction (p. 3-122) combines analysis of the narrative forms with a general "cross-cultural" discussion of myth.

943. REVUE ENCYCLOPÉDIQUE DE L'AFRIQUE. *République du Dahomey*. Abidjan, 1960. 32 p. illus. (Encyclopédie mensuelle de l'Afrique) DLC-AFR

This Supplement to no. 2 of the above periodical is a special issue devoted in full to Dahomey. In the other French feature magazines Dahomey is usually included in general coverage of the states of the Entente.

944. TARDITS, CLAUDE. *Porto-Novo; les nouvelles générations africaines entre leurs traditions et l'Occident*. Paris, Mouton, 1958. 128 p. (École pratique des hautes études, Paris, 6. section: Le Monde d'outre-mer, passé et présent. 1. sér.: Études, 7)

DT553.P6T3

Sociological study including an inquiry by questionnaire which covered urbanized and traditional mores. Reviewed at length in *Africa*, January 1960 (v. 30, p. 87-88).

## Guinea

945. FRANCE. Institut national de la statistique et des études économiques. Service de coopération. *Enquête démographique de la région du Konkouré* (Guinée, 1957) Résultats définitifs. Paris, 1962. 71 p. DLC

One of a series of regional studies of population and living standards begun before independence.

946. FRÖHLICH, GERD. *Guinea nach der Regenzeit*. Leipzig, F. A. Brockhaus, 1961. 134 p. illus., part. col. DT543.2.F7

Based on a trip made through Guinea by five East Germans with African interpreter and driver. Enthusiastic description with political overtones, and many excellent photographs.

947. GAISSEAU, PIERRE D. *The sacred forest; magic and secret rites in French Guinea*. Translated from the French by Stephen Becker. New York, Knopf, 1954. 247 p. illus. GN475.8.G313

Witch doctors and initiation rites of the Toma, a forest tribe of French Guinea, were the focus of interest of the four young Frenchmen whose expedition to make documentary films is reported in this narrative. They themselves underwent the ritual initiation of tattooing in order to be admitted to the secrets of the tribe. The story is full of primitive magic, its effects reaching white men as well as black.

948. GIGON, FERNAND. *Guinée, état-pilote*. Paris, Plon, 1959. 109 p. (Tribune libre, 51)

DT543.8.G5

A spirited and sympathetic study of the new Republic in its first year of existence, by a liberal journalist. From his reported interview with President Touré he concluded that "before thinking as a Marxist, he [Touré] thinks as an African. Before acting as a Communist, he considers the realities of his country."

An enthusiastic account of the establishment and present course of the Republic of Guinea is given by Pannikar in his general study of the new Africa (see no. 124).

949. *Guinée; prélude à l'indépendance*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1959. 175 p. DT543.G8

Contents.—Conférence des commandants de cercle.—Annexes: Discours d'ouverture de la Conférence des commandants de cercle prononcé par le gouverneur Ramadier. Allocution du président Sékou Touré. Rapport de M. le ministre des finances. Rapport de M. le commandant de cercle de Labé.—Naissance de la République de Guinée.

The Conference here reported, held in Conakry in 1957, preceded Touré's repression of the *chefferies* and led to his personal control of the country which brought about the vote of "Non" in 1958.

950. *Guinée indépendante*. Présence africaine (Paris) no. 29, déc. 1959-jan. 1960: p. 3-115. GN645.P74, no. 29

The combined issue for these two months of *Présence africaine* is devoted to Guinea, then at her most



defiant regarding France. Articles include "Impressions de voyage," by Alioune Diop; "La Guinée dans le système colonial," by Jean Suret-Canale; "Connaissance historique de la Guinée," by Diallo Ousmane; "La pensée politique de Sékou Touré," by Aimé Césaire; "Variations sur le thème guinéen," by Jacques Rabemananjara. There is a group of poems, "Chants révolutionnaires guinéens," collected by Djibril Tamsir Niane, with text in the African language and in French.

951. HOLAS, BOHUMIL. *Le culte de Zié, éléments de la religion kono* (Haute Guinée française) Dakar, IFAN, 1954. 275 p. illus. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 39) BL2480.K6H6

Important contribution to anthropological studies of Guinea.

Three volumes relating to Guinean tribes are in the French series of the International African Institute, Monographies ethnologiques africaines (see no. 270): Monique de Lestrangé, *Les Coniagui et les Bassari, Guinée française* (1955. 86 p. illus.); Viviana Paques, *Les Bambara* (1954. 123 p.); Jean Rouch, *Les Songhay* (1954. 100 p.).

952. HOUIS, MAURICE. *La Guinée française*. Paris, Éditions maritimes et coloniales, 1953. 94 p. illus. (Pays africains, 3) DT543.H66

Succinct exposition of geography, ethnic groups, their religion (mostly an eclectic animism underlying recently acquired Mohammedanism), history, political and administrative structure, social services of French and missionary groups, agriculture (rice, oil palms, and bananas being introduced as cash crops), industries (mining iron, bauxite, gold, etc.), commerce, ports, and communications. The author had formerly been Director of IFAN in Guinea. His most general conclusion was that the economic and industrial treasure of French Guinea had hardly been touched, but the "sleeping beauty" was now waking, and great possibilities lie ahead, as new enterprises and centers are developed.

953. LAYE, CAMARA. *The dark child*. New York, Noonday Press, 1954. 188 p. DT543.L313  
Translated from the French.

By a young *évolué* from French Guinea, this is the story of his childhood in a village and his school days in Conakry. The author is an aristocrat of the tribe of Malinké, descendants of the Muslim empire of Mali which ruled upper Guinea from the 13th to the 18th century. His sensitive, poetic narrative includes a revealing account of the boyhood circumcision rites.

M. Laye has become known as one of the most distinguished of French-speaking African literary men.

954. NIANE, DJIBRIL TAMSIR. *Soundjata; ou, l'épopée mandingue*. Présence africaine, 1960. 154 p. illus. DT532.2.N5

By a Guinean scholar who is doing research into the sources of early history of West Africa and the medieval kingdoms. The title is the name of the Mandingo conqueror of the 13th century. M. Niane has collaborated also with Jean Suret-Canale in a recent text prepared for Guinean schools. *Histoire de l'Afrique occidentale* (Conakry, Ministère de l'Éducation nationale, 1960). Of *Soundjata* a reviewer for *West Africa* (May 26, 1962, p. 576) said, "genuine imaginative scholarship draws unostentatiously in its train what can only be described as engines of the cold war."

955. PAULME, DENISE. *Les gens du riz, Kissi de Haute-Guinée française*. Paris, Plon, 1954. 232 p. illus. (Recherches en sciences humaines, 4) DT543.P3

Monograph examining in great detail the Kissi tribe whose peasant rice culture is centered in southern Guinea, and spreads over into Sierra Leone and even into Liberia. Mme. Paulme analyzed many factors of physical and economic setting, social life, religion, and institutions.

956. PRÉ, ROLAND. *L'avenir de la Guinée française*. Conakry, Les Éditions guinéennes, 1951. 280 p. diags. DT543.P7

Study by a governor of the former French territory. It starts with a general background sketch, then is concentrated on problems of agriculture, industry, transport, social welfare. The writer concluded with an optimistic evaluation of the importance of Guinea in the evolution of French Africa.

957. RAYAUTRA, MAMADOU TRAORE. *Connaissance de la République de Guinée*. Conakry, Ministère de l'information et du tourisme de la République de Guinée [196-] 56 p. DT543.R3

A booklet of general information for visitors to the country.

958. *Recherches africaines: Études guinéennes* [nouvelle série] no. 1+ jan. 1959+ Conakry, Institut national de recherches et de documentation, République de Guinée. quarterly. DLC

This new series, under the direction of M. Jean Suret-Canale, head of the new Institute, has superseded the former *Études guinéennes* of the Centre IFAN du Guinée, which were published irregularly from 1947-55.

959. TOURÉ, SÉKOU, President of Guinea. *Expérience guinéenne et unité africaine*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1961. 566 p. DT543.T616 1961

960. ——— *Toward full re-Africanisation; policy and principles of the Guinea Democratic Party*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1959. 108 p.

JQ3381.A98D48

In the preface of the 1961 collection of speeches of the leader of the Parti Démocratique de Guinée, first President of the only state to answer "Non" in the referendum of 1958, Aimé Césaire speaks of Touré as "l'homme africain décisif" of this era.

## Ivory Coast

961. AMON D'ABY, F. J. *La Côte d'Ivoire dans la cité africaine*. Paris, Larose, 1951. 206 p. illus. DT545.A65

The writer, Government Archivist of the Ivory Coast, and a playwright, is a notable representative of the French African elite. His book, which begins with background history and has as appendixes the texts of treaties with tribal chiefs, is an analysis of progress in the country under the French, particularly of the changes following the Conference of Brazzaville (1944) and formation of the French Union. He analyzed administrative organization, politics of the immediate postwar years (the foreword is dated 1949, though the book did not appear for 2 years), the press (p. 61-66), agriculture, industry, and other economic factors, education, work of Christian missions in conversion of the fetish-worshipping animists, and last, the African native theatre movement, in which he himself has played a conspicuous part. His general conclusion is a triumphant summary of his country's evolution toward political, cultural, and economic power, confident that the future will see blended in the Ivory Coast the best elements of Africa and of Europe.

962. ATGER, PAUL. *La France en Côte-d'Ivoire de 1843-1893, cinquante ans d'hésitations politiques et commerciales*. Dakar, Faculté des lettres et sciences humaines [Maçon, Impr. Protat-frères] 1962. 204 p. maps. (Publications de la Section d'histoire, 2) DLC

963. AVICE, EMMANUEL. *La Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1951. 94 p. illus., maps. (Pays africains, 1) DT545.A8

This is the first of a collection of booklets published as popular introductions to the African colonies for

the French public. Edited under the direction of a former colonial governor, Georges Spitz, and written by former colonial officials, they follow a regular pattern, with chapters on country, people, history, political and administrative structure, social development, economic production, equipment harbors, railways, roads, water power, etc.), and organization, tourism and hunting, selective bibliography. A short conclusion summarizes salient points and offers speculation on the future course of the territory.

964. BOUTILLIER, JEAN LOUIS. *Bongouanou, Côte d'Ivoire; étude socio-économique d'une subdivision*. Avec la collaboration de Jean Causse. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1960. 224 p. illus. (L'Homme d'outre-mer, nouv. sér., no. 2) HN810.B6B6

Includes bibliography.

Detailed examination of problems rising from the rapid transformation of a country society into a money economy. The people are the Agni, a matrilinear tribe. There is heavy immigration to work in the coffee, cocoa, and kola plantations and a notable rise in living standards. The author, a sociologist and economist, is director of research for ORSTOM (France. Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique d'Outre-Mer). He considers the Ivory Coast a pioneer state in African promotion.

965. DAVIS, HASSOLDT. *Sorcerers' village*. With photos by Ruth and Hassoldt Davis. New York, Duell, Sloan & Pearce, 1955. 334 p. illus. DT545.D39

The explorer author of this travel narrative has adventured widely in ethnologically interesting parts of Africa, the Pacific, and South America. His wife, who accompanied him in their penetration of the Ivory Coast interior, is a skilled "craftsman of jungle film."



Their particular attention was to fetish magic, which they found in sensational abundance.

966. DESANTI, DOMINIQUE. *Côte d'Ivoire*. Lausanne, Éditions Rencontre, 1962. 491 p. illus. (L'Atlas des voyages) DLC

Not yet examined. The writer is author of a number of travel books.

967. DEVELOPMENT AND RESOURCES CORPORATION. *A program for geological exploration and minerals development, January 1961-December 1963; a report to the Minister of Finance, Economic Affairs and Planning, Republic of the Ivory Coast*. New York. 1961. 1 v. (various pagings) fold. maps. QE327.I9D4

968. DUPIRE, MARGUERITE. *Planteurs autochtones et étrangers en basse Côte-d'Ivoire orientale; Edmond Bernus. Kong et sa région*. Abidjan, IFAN, Centre de Côte-d'Ivoire, 1960. 324 p. illus. (Études éburnéennes, no. 8) DT545.E8, no. 8

969. ———, and JEAN-LOUIS BOUTILLIER. *Le pays Adioukrou et sa palmeraie, Basse-Côte-d'Ivoire: étude socio-économique*. Paris, Recherche scientifique et technique outre-mer, 1958. 100 p. (Publications du Conseil supérieur des recherches sociologiques. I. L'Homme d'outre-mer, no. 4) DLC

970. EUROPE FRANCE OUTREMER. *La nouvelle Côte d'Ivoire et les autres états de l'Entente*. Paris, 1960. 64 p. JN1801.E65, no. 373

Special issue of *Europe France outremer*, no. 373, déc. 1960: 1-64.

Chiefly concerned with political and economic affairs of the Ivory Coast, but including also a short review of Dahomey, Niger, and Haute-Volta.

The large illustrated monthly *Revue encyclopédique de l'Afrique* (see no. 845n) focuses rather special attention on the Ivory Coast in its articles on economic, social, and cultural developments.

971. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République de Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris, La documentation française, 1959. 59 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2588, 7 nov. 1959) D411.F67, no. 2588

A summary survey providing background information. Another pamphlet with the same title and consisting mainly of photographs was published in the series *Documentation française illustrée* (no. 164, fév. 1961. 30 p.) There is also a booklet in English, *The*

*Republic of the Ivory Coast, Hour of Independence* (New York, 1960. 32 p. illus. (see no. 846n).

972. GRIVOT, RENÉ. *Dynamique, Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1960. 280 p. illus. (Coll. "Mondes d'outre-mer")

Description and appreciation of the newly formed state. The author was formerly an administrator in French West Africa.

973. HOLAS, BOHUMIL. *Changements sociaux en Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1961. 117 p. illus. HN810.I9H6

974. ———. *Cultures matérielles de la Côte d'Ivoire*. Préface par Félix Houphouët-Boigny. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1960. 96 p. illus. GN655.I9H6

Professor Holas, formerly with IFAN, is now Director of the Centre des Sciences Humaines, under the Ministère de l'Éducation Nationale of the Ivory Coast. These two socio-anthropological studies examine the changing customs and rites in the rural society of the country, and the artifacts and objects of material culture in trades and professions, household equipment, clothing, etc. A new study by this author appeared in 1962: *Les Toura, esquisse d'une civilisation montagnarde de Côte-d'Ivoire* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France. 237 p. illus.).

Another study of changing society is by Mme. Denise Paulme of the Musée de l'Homme, *Une Société de Côte d'Ivoire, hier et aujourd'hui: les Bété* (Paris, Mouton, 1962. 200 p. Le Monde d'outre-mer passé et présent. 2. série: Documents 8)

975. IVORY COAST. Direction de la statistique et des études économiques et démographiques. *Inventaire économique et social de la Côte-d'Ivoire, 1958*. Abidjan, Ministère des finances, des affaires économiques et du plan, Service de la statistique, 1960. 283 p. maps (part col.) col. diagrs., tables. HC547.I8A53

Previous edition issued by the Service de la statistique générale et de la mécanographie under title: *Inventaire économique de la Côte-d'Ivoire (1947 à 1956)*

An impressive publication in handsome makeup, with tables exhibiting all economic and social factors.

976. JOSEPH, GASTON. *Côte d'Ivoire*. Paris, Fayard, 1944. 254 p. DT545.J6

The Ivory Coast became a French colony by a decree of March 10, 1893. This survey, which combines history, ethnology, administration, and economic and social aspects, was written as a 50-year balance sheet.

The author, at this time Director of Political Affairs in the Ministère des Colonies, had begun his career as a colonial officer in the Ivory Coast in 1907, and had written a book on the country in 1917 which won the prize of the Société de Géographie.

977. MOUËZY, HENRI. *Histoire et coutumes du pays d'Assinie et du royaume de Krinjabo* (fondation de la Côte d'Ivoire). Paris, Larose, 1942. 225 p. DT545.M6

This book by a Catholic mission priest combines history from the beginnings of the French penetration in the 17th century with what General Gouraud, writing the preface, calls a "curious" study of manners and customs. The work is not couched in the usual anthropological terms.

978. PERSPECTIVES D'OUTRE-MER. *La République de Côte d'Ivoire*. Monaco, 1958-61. DLC

Special issues, no. 27, nov.-déc. 1958; no. 32, déc. 1959; no. 37, nov.-déc. 1960; no. 43, déc. 1961; no. 50, déc. 1962.

*Perspectives d'outre-mer* is a large illustrated magazine carrying feature articles on economics and industrial development. The separate issues, of about 100 pages each, are often devoted to a single country, no less than five in the years since independence to the Ivory Coast. The text is heavily interspersed with advertising matter.

979. ROUGERIE, GABRIEL. *Le pays agni du sud-est de la Côte d'Ivoire forestière*. Paris, Tournier, 1957. 242 p. illus.

Combination of human and physical geography by an IFAN geographer. A later book by M. Rougerie is

a technical study of hydrology and soils: *Le Façonnement actuel des modelés en Côte d'Ivoire forestière* (Dakar, IFAN, 1960. 542 p. illus., maps. Mémoires de l'IFAN, no 58).

980. ROUSSIER, PAUL, ed. *L'établissement d'Issiny, 1687-1702*. Voyages de Ducasse, Tibierge et d'Amon à la côte de Guinée, publiés pour la première fois et suivis de la Relation du voyage du royaume d'Issiny du p. Godefroy Loyer. Paris, Larose, 1935. xxxix, 241 p., 1 l. XIII pl. (incl. port., plans) fold. map. (Publications du Comité d'études historiques et scientifiques de l'Afrique occidentale française. Sér. A, n° 3) DT553.A8R6

With reproduction of original t.-p. of Relation du voyage du royaume d'Issiny . . . par le r. père Godefroy Loyer . . . Paris, 1714.

981. WALLERSTEIN, IMMANUEL M. *The emergence of two West African nations: Ghana and the Ivory Coast*. Ann Arbor, Mich., University Microfilms, 1959. Mic 59-3139

Microfilm copy (positive) of typescript. Collation of the original: SV, 341 l. tables.

Thesis—Columbia University. Abstracted in *Dissertation Abstracts*, v. 20 (1959), no. 3, p. 1091-1092.

Bibliography: leaves 300-341.

Although this doctoral dissertation has not been issued in printed form, its availability in microfilm makes it seem worth inclusion here. The extensive field research carried out by Dr. Wallerstein has established him as an American authority on French-speaking West Africa.

## Mali (former Soudan)

982. BOYER, GASTON. *Un peuple de l'Ouest soudanais, les Diawara*; par G. Boyer. Contribution à l'histoire des Songhay, par Jean Rouch. Dakar, IFAN, 1953. 259 p. illus., plates, maps, tables. (Mémoires, n° 29) DT356.B76

Ethnological studies by French specialists are in general notably clear and concise as to writing, the necessary technical and native words used sparingly and with explanation. The first of these two monographs combines history and anthropological analysis of the Diawara, a Mohammedan tribe of the Sudan who are a cross between Moorish white and Sudanese

black. Illustrations are the author's own line drawings. The second paper is a relation, based on chronicles, of the history of the Songhay [Songhai] from the earliest legends of origins before the empire, through the later invasions, to the present position within the French Union.

Jean Rouch, an anthropologist and photographer who has written several books of travel in Africa, contributed a volume on *Les Songhay* to the International African Institute French series, Monographies ethnologiques africaines (see no. 270, 914). He has also a recent study, *La Religion et la magie songhay* (Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1960. 325 p.).



983. CLOZEL, MARIE FRANÇOIS JOSEPH. *Haut-Sénégal-Niger (Soudan français)*; séries d'études, pub. sous la direction de M. le gouverneur Clozel. 1-2 sér. Paris, Larose, 1912. 5 v. illus., maps, plans. DT551.C6

1. Sér. Le pays, les peuples, les langues, l'histoire, les civilisations, par M. Delafosse. 3 v. 2. sér. Géographie économique, par J. Méniand. 2 v.

A monument in French colonial studies of the early 20th century.

984. DELAVIGNETTE, ROBERT. *Les paysans noirs*. Éd. nouvelle. Paris, Éditions Stock, 1946. 263 p. DT551.D4 1946

Fine study of village life in the French Sudan, set in semi-fictional form, and first published in 1931; a film was made from it in 1948. In his preface the author says that the question of the moment is to find out whether "the Blacks, instead of being treated as the imperfectible labor force of a primitive Africa, deserve instead to be considered the true farmers and legitimate owners of their soil, capable of founding with other men, notably with us, the French of Europe, a national community. The book, *Paysans noirs*, answers yes."

985. DIETERLEN, GERMAINE. *Essai sur la religion bambara*. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1951. 240 p. illus. (Bibliothèque de sociologie contemporaine) GN655.B3D5

Detailed anthropological treatise on the religious myths, beliefs, and practices of a Sudanese tribe, the Bambara. The writer, a student of Professor Marcel Griaule of the Sorbonne, had done fieldwork on three separate expeditions in the late forties in the region around Bamako.

986. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République du Mali*. Paris, 1961. 65 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2739, 13 jan. 1961) D411.F67 no. 2739

Summary background survey. See general note on series, no. 846.

987. GALLIENI, JOSEPH S. *Mission d'exploration du Haut-Niger: voyage au Soudan française (Haut-Niger et pays de Ségou) 1879-1881*. Paris, Hachette, 1885. 632 p. DT551.G16

988. ———. *Gallieni pacificateur, écrits coloniaux de Gallieni*. Choix de textes et notes par Hubert Deschamps et Paul Chauvet. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1949. 382 p. (Les classiques de la colonisation, 13)

DC342.8.G2A3

Classics of history of the Soudan from the French viewpoint.

989. HAMPATÉ BA, AMADOU, and JACQUES DAGET. *L'Empire peul du Macina*. I (1818-1853) Koulouba, IFAN, Centre du Soudan, 1955. 306 p. map. (Études soudanaises, no. 3) Published by Mouton, Paris, 1962. DLC

M. Hampaté Ba, now Director of the Institut Scientifique du Mali in Bamako, is one of the well-known African scholars working in the field of history and carrying on research in sources other than the European records of the colonial period.

990. KEITA, MODIBO. "The foreign policy of Mali." *International affairs*, v. 37, no. 4, Oct. 1961: 432-439. JXI.I53, v. 37

Translation of an address by the President of Mali at Chatham House, 7 June 1961. M. Keita stressed his country's policy as "positive neutralism."

991. LEM, F. H. *Sudanese sculpture*. Paris, Arts et métiers graphiques, 1949. 110 p. 64 illus., map. NB1097.S8L414

Album with 64 plates representing carvings from the French Sudan, Dogon, Mossi, Bobo, Bambara, and Senufo regions. The preliminary sketch in English is on Sudanese society and art, and includes a classified bibliography and a descriptive catalog of the illustrations. The objects are from a collection assembled by the writer in the Sudan in 1934 and 1935.

992. MAUGHAM, ROBIN. *The slaves of Timbuktu*. New York, Harper, 1961. 237 p. illus. DT553.T6M3 1961a

In the form of a travel diary Lord Maugham recorded his investigations of present-day survivals of slavery during a journey from Dakar to Timbuktu. He incorporates much past history connected with the old slave routes over which he was journeying, quoting liberally from the records of the slave trade.

993. MÉNIAUD, JACQUES. *Les pionniers du Soudan avant, avec et après Archinard, 1879-1894*. Paris, Société des publications modernes, 1931. 2 v. illus. DT551.M4

994. ———. *Sikasso; ou, L'histoire dramatique d'un royaume noir à XIX<sup>e</sup> siècle*. Paris, F. Bonchy, 1935. 208 p. illus. DT553.S5M4

Two works on the French conquest of the Sudan. The picture differs in many details from that given in new works on African history. Among the latter there might be mentioned *Samory sanglant et magnifique*, by

G. Ingold, a booklet published in 1961 by Éditions du Scorpion, Paris.

995. MINER, HORACE M. *The primitive city of Timbuctoo*. Princeton, Published for the American Philosophical Society by Princeton University Press, 1953. 297 p. illus. (Memoirs of the American Philosophical Society, v. 32) DT553.T6M53

The writer spent seven months in 1940 studying "the life-ways of a primitive city with all of the problems of acculturation and accommodation which the cultural diversity presents." His method and conclusions are those of the trained sociologist, his style an informal narrative. The town's under-10,000 inhabitants are Tuareg with their Negro slave castes, Arab, and Songhoi, in varying mixtures of Berber, Arab, and Negroid stocks; Dr. Miner had avoided the handful of French, and lived in as close contact as possible with the Africans. He described all aspects of their social structure, economy, Muslim belief and practise, superstitions, family and communal life, finding that to an ever-increasing degree the old folkways are being lost under "the urban culture of the market."

996. MISSION SOCIO-ÉCONOMIQUE DU SOUDAN. *Enquête budgétaire dans le delta central nigérien* (zone inondée, Office du Niger). Paris, Service de coopération de l'Institut national de statistique et des études économiques, 1961. 130 p. DLC

This report on living standards results from a survey begun under the French administration. It is concerned with the region being developed under the Office du Niger, formerly a French government agency, now transferred to Mali administration.

997. SPITZ, GEORGES. *Le Soudan français*. Paris, Éditions maritimes et coloniales, 1955. 111 p. illus., maps. (Pays africains, 5) DT551.S65

The French Sudan, site of the black empires of the past, Ghana, Mali, Songhaï, was "pacified" by the French over a 20-year period, 1883 to 1903, with a recurrence of revolt among the nomadic tribes of the demi-desert around the fabled city of Timbuktu in 1915-16. Since then, according to this former colonial governor, who had himself been in the Sudan as a young official during the early years, the old country followed a peaceful path of gradual development, its 3½ million Africans, 80 percent of them Negro peasant villagers, and its less than 6,000 Europeans "scorning idle discussion or controversy, working in perfect accord, with no other preoccupation than

the public good." This book follows the pattern of the "Pays africains" survey series.

998. ———. *Sansanding; les irrigations du Niger*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1949. 237 p. illus., fold. maps. HD1741.A35S6

Comprehensive account of the irrigation works undertaken by the Office of the Niger, written just after the completion in 1947 of the great dam near Sansanding in the Ségou region. Governor Spitz foresaw progress toward self-government in the Sudan, warning French readers of "the growing pains of nationalism" in French West Africa.

For listing of the archives and other publications of the Office du Niger, see the Library of Congress bibliography, *Official Publications of French West Africa* (no. 897).

999. TAUXIER, LOUIS. *Histoire des Bambara*. Paris, Librairie orientaliste Paul Geuthner, 1942. 226 p. GN652.B2T3

1000. ———. *Moeurs et histoire des Peuls*. I. Origines.—II. Les Peuls de l'Issa-ber et du Macina.—III. Les Peuls du Fouta-Djallon. Paris, Payot, 1937. illus. (map) XVI pl. on 8 l. (Bibliothèque scientifique) GN652.F9T3

1001. ———. *La religion bambara*. Paris, Geuthner, 1927 p. (*His Études soudanaises*) 4BL/839

Solid anthropological studies, based on extensive research in sources from the 16th century on, as well as on personal investigation during the writer's long career as colonial administrator in A.O.F. General Tauxier's other ethnological studies of tribes of former French West Africa included books, papers, and articles in professional journals on the Agni, Krumen, and other tribes of the Ivory Coast.

1002. ZAHAN, DOMINIQUE. *Sociétés d'initiation bambara: le n'domo, le korè*. Paris, Mouton, 1960. 438 p. illus., fold. map. (Le Monde d'outre-mer passé et présent. 1<sup>er</sup> sér. Études, 8) GN652.B2Z3

Detailed study of initiation rites in the Cercle of Ségou in the French Sudan [now Mali]. The author, a student and friend of Marcel Griaule, has done long research in West Africa, and this is the first of six projected volumes on initiation societies of the Bambara. Appendixes include geographical names of Bambara and Malinke regions, an index of animals and plants, and a subject index. There is a three-page bibliography.



# Mauritania

## Bibliography

1003. TOUPET, CHARLES. "Orientation bibliographique sur la Mauritanie." In Institut français d'Afrique noire. *Bulletin*, sér. B, t. 31, no. 1-2, 1959: 201-239. DT1.I5123, v. 31

An extensive, though categorically not exhaustive, bibliography, with 14 subject classifications—maps, bibliography, general works, six rubriques of natural sciences, archaeology and history, Islam, linguistics, way of life, techniques and art, economics, regional and tribal studies, general literature. A large proportion of the references are to articles in IFAN bulletins. The titles are almost without exception in French; a few have brief annotations.

See also under Sahara, no. 1025.

1004. DEKEYSER, P. L., and A. VILLIERS. *Notations écologiques et biogéographiques sur la faune de l'Adrar*; contribution à l'étude du peuplement de la Mauritanie. Dakar, IFAN, 1956. 222 p. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 44) QL337.A3D4

This is typical of the longer studies of the neighbor state carried out by staff members of IFAN in Senegal.

1005. DU PUIGAUDEAU, ODETTE. *Barefoot through Mauretania*. London, G. Routledge, 1937. 286 p. DT553.M2D82

1006. ———. *La route de l'Ouest, Maroc-Mauritanie*. Paris, J. Susse, 1945. 206 p. illus. DT553.M2D84

The writer, a French woman journalist, is known for a number of other travel reports on Africa. These books are informative recording her long tours by camel in the Sahara. She gave unstinted praise to the French officials and their efforts for the nomadic tribes whom they controlled, aided, and guided from their isolated desert posts. The French edition of the firstnamed won a literary prize in 1936.

1007. EUROPE FRANCE OUTREMER. *Mauritanie; un an d'indépendance*. Paris, 1962. 60 p. illus. (Its no. 384, fév. 1962: 1-60).

JV1801.E65, no. 384

Special issue of this journal concentrated on Africa, examining the political situation, the new cities, and the economics of production in Mauritania at the end of her first year as a sovereign state.

1008. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République islamique de Mauritanie*. Paris, 1960. 50 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no 2.687, 29 juillet 1960.)

D411.F67, no. 2.687

See no. 846 for general note on this introductory survey series. An illustrated booklet, *The Islamic Republic of Mauritania; Hour of Independence* (New York, 1960. 28 p.) is available for American readers.

1009. GARNIER, CHRISTINE, and PHILIPPE ERMONT. *Désert fertile, un nouvel état, la Mauritanie*. Paris, Hachette, 1960. 230 p. illus.

DT553.M2G3

Mme. Garnier is a French journalist who has written a number of distinctive studies of African countries. This hopeful picture of the new Islamic desert state is for the intelligent lay public.

1010. GOURAUD, HENRI J. E. *Mauritanie, Adrar; souvenirs d'un Africain*. Paris, Plon, 1945. 349 p. illus., ports., fold. map.

DT553.M2G6

History of French penetration and pacification of the desert tribes by an officer who commanded much of the effort.

1011. HUSSON, PHILIPPE. *La question des frontières terrestres du Maroc*. Paris, 1960. 128 p. DT305.H85

Thorough airing of the legal and political aspects of the boundaries of Morocco with the Western Sahara, both Spanish and former French (Mauritania). The writer is a French Doctor of Law. His study covers through 1958.

1012. *Le Mauritanien*; magazine illustré. no. 1+ Oct. 1962+ Nouakchott. monthly. DLC

Under the direction of the Senegalese writer S. N'Diaye, an illustrated monthly has been launched with an issue carrying a long article on the economy of Mauritania as well as other prose, verse, and pictorial features relating to Mauritanian life and thought.

1013. MEYER, JEAN D. *Desert doctor*. Translated by Mervyn Savill. London, Souvenir Press, 1960. 255 p. R507.M4A33

Account of a French military doctor's experiences in isolated desert posts in Mauritania and Tchad in the

thirties. The interesting narrative is less concerned with medicine than with the country and the adventures of army medical life among nomadic tribesmen. Published first in Munich and translated from the German.

1014. MOKHTAR OULD HAMIDOUN. *Précis sur la Mauritanie*. Saint-Louis, Sénégal, Centre IFAN-Mauritanie, 1952. 69 p. (Études mauritaniennes, no. 4) DT553.M2M6

Introduction to the country by one of its most learned historians. About half describes geography, climate, mineral resources, vegetation wild life; the rest is ethnological and historical, specifying many tribes.

1015. MOROCCO. Wizarat al-Anba' wa-al-Siyahah (Ministry of Information and Tourism) *La libération de la Province mauritanienne et l'opinion internationale*. Rabat, 1961. 144 p. DT553.M28M6

A collection of speeches at the United Nations in November 1960 by delegates supporting the Moroccan claim to Mauritania. In general, the Arab world and the Communists were on Morocco's side. A reference has been seen to a *Livre blanc sur la Mauritanie* published by the Moroccan Government in 1961; it may be this document.

1016. MUNIER, PIERRE M. *L'Assaba*; essai monographique. Saint-Louis, Sénégal, Centre IFAN (Mauritanie) 1952. 71 p. fold. maps, profiles. (Études mauritaniennes, no. 3) DT553.A75M8

Monograph by a member of a study mission in southern Mauritania in 1951, concerned particularly

with the experiment in date-palm growing which has been taking place in the "cercle" (administrative district) of Assaba during the past thirty years. The author analyzes the region in all particulars—historical background, physical character with particular stress on water supply, population (70,736, of whom 11 are Europeans), economy, labor force. About two-thirds of the inhabitants are nomad Moors, raising sheep, cattle, and camels; the sedentary Negro tribes traditionally grow millet, and there is a shortage of labor for extension of the palm plantations. Writing from Kiffa, the largest town of the *cercle*, the author urged encouragement of the date growing.

1017. NIKIPROWETZKY, TOLIA. *La musique de la Mauritanie*; communication présentée au XIVe Congrès du Conseil international de la musique populaire, Québec 1961. Paris, SORAFOM, 1961. unpag. ML3760.N54

1018. *La République islamique de Mauritanie et le royaume du Maroc*. Paris, Diloutremer, 1961. 60 p. maps.

Not available for examination.

1019. AL-SHINQĪTĪ, AHMAD IBN AL-AMĪN, d. 1912 or 13. *El Wasīt; littérature, histoire, géographie, mœurs et coutumes des habitants de la Mauritanie*, par Ahmed Lamine Ech Chenguiti. Extraits traduits de l'arabe par Mourad Teffahi. Saint-Louis, Sénégal, Centre IFAN-Mauritanie, 1953. 150 p. fold. map. (Études mauritaniennes, no. 5) DT553.M2S4

Translation of the historical and geographical parts of this 19th-century work in Arabic.

## Niger

1020. BONARDI, PIERRE. *La République du Niger: naissance d'un état*. Paris, A.P.D., 1960. 99 p. DLC

Not yet available for examination.

1021. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République du Niger*. Paris, 1960. 50 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2638, 26 fév. 1960) D411.F67, no. 2638

Summary background survey. See no. 846 for general note on this series, also for note on English-lan-

guage brochure, *The Republic of Niger: Hour of Independence* (New York, 1960).

1022. REVUE ENCYCLOPÉDIQUE DE L'AFRIQUE. *République du Niger*. Abidjan, 1960. 39 p. illus. DLC-AFR

Special supplement to issue no. 3 of this periodical, Sept.-Oct. 1960, containing a general glance at the country, analysis of the economy—agriculture, fishing, forestries, stockraising, general features—and "équipement" (roads, waterpower), towns and tourism.



1023. SÉRÉ DE RIVIÈRES, EDMOND. *Le Niger*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1952. 94 p. illus. (Pays africains, 2) DT547.S4

One of a series of booklets surveying the French African possessions. Contents cover physical and human geography, historical background, administration and government, economic and social development, etc. The author had had long experience as administrator in various "cercles" of French West Africa. He described Niger as a huge area sparsely inhabited by barely 2 million people, 1.68 to the square kilometer: in the north and east they are Tuaregs and other Arabic or Berber nomads, in the west and south primitive cultivators, Djerma, Hausa and others. The

religion is mainly Islam and the Muslim chieftaincies maintain their traditional character, though particularly among the sedentary tribes animism persists. Economic development is slight, the only cash crop peanuts. The author emphasized the strategic importance of the region in the heart of Africa.

1024. URVOY, Y. F. *Histoire des populations du Soudan central (colonie du Niger)*. Paris, Larose, 1936. 350 p. DT547.U7

A publication of the Comité d'Études Historiques et Scientifiques de l'Afrique Occidentale Française, precursor of IFAN, this book by a French officer and ethnologist is an historical narrative of the tribes to the northeast of the Niger River. Captain Urvoy traced events from the 15th century to the present.

## Sahara

### Bibliography

1025. FRANCE. Service des affaires sahariennes. *Essai de bibliographie du Sahara français, et des régions avoisinantes*, par Bernard Blaudin de Thé. [Algiers?] 1959. 277 p. Z3709.B55

By an officer in the Service des Affaires Sahariennes, this comprehensive bibliographical work combines a reprint of an earlier bibliography of the Territoires du Sud d'Algérie, prepared by Lieut. Moulias in 1923 and expanded by Lieut. Thinières in 1930 (p. 1-69, 2,372 numbered entries and index) with his own compilation, parts of which had been published before. Captain Blaudin de Thé's scope is wider than that of the first compilers which was limited to Algeria, and he has brought together almost 6,000 references to books, pamphlets, and periodical articles on the entire Saharan region. They are classified by discipline, the last 800 or 900 being "Varia," which includes means of communication, organization, economic exploitation, and miscellaneous (travel narratives, general and regional studies, tourism, etc.). There is an index of authors.

1026. BERTHELOT, ANDRÉ. *L'Afrique saharienne et soudanaise, ce qu'en ont connu les anciens*. Paris, Les Arts et le livre, 1927. 431 p. maps, diagrs. (Bibliothèque documentaire) DT24.B4

Bibliography: p. 428-431.

By a noted geographer who was one of the savants in charge of the *Grande Encyclopédie*, this impressive work is a complete survey of the recorded knowledge of the Greco-Roman world regarding the geography of Africa, from Homer to Ptolemy. The first section is on present-day geography, the second on changes within historic times.

1027. BRIGGS, LLOYD C. *The living races of the Sahara Desert*. Cambridge, Peabody Museum, 1958. 217 p. illus., 69 plates, maps. (Papers of the Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology, Harvard University, v. 28, no. 2) E51.H337, v. 28, no. 2

References: p. 203-212.

1028. ———. *Tribes of the Sahara*. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1960. xx, 295 p. illus., maps. DT337.B7

Bibliography: p. 277-285.

Two systematic anthropological studies of the peoples of the Sahara, Tuareg, Teda, Chaamba, and other tribes, by a Research Fellow at Harvard. Dr. Briggs in the second work traces the history of the tribes from the dawn of the Christian era to the present, analyzing the traditional ways of life now undergoing change under the pressure of modern contacts.

1029. CAPOT-REY, ROBERT. *L'Afrique blanche française. T. II. Le Sahara français*. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1953.

564 p. illus. maps. (Pays d'outre-mer. 4.  
série: Géographie de l'Union française, 1.)  
DT33.D38, v. 2

Extensive study of the Sahara, in a series published under the highest French academic auspices and cited as authoritative in later French works on the development of the desert. The writer, a professor of the University of Algiers, has been engaged for many years in Saharan research. His ideal was to attach the Saharan populations to France without uprooting them and wiping out their cultures by too sudden contacts with the West. The first part is a thorough presentation of physical geography, climatology, and geology, the second part human geography—the various races and tribes, ways of life, cultures of pastoral nomads, semi-nomads, and settled oasis dwellers. The third part reviews the work of France as to capital equipment and production, draws up a balance sheet of accomplishments, and discusses in detail programs for future development. Much attention is given to the success of new methods of transport by automobile and airplane and to prospects for exploitation of mineral resources. There is a long classified bibliography (p. 495–541) containing 818 numbered items in addition to maps, periodicals, and collections; also an index of proper names.

1030. CORNET, PIERRE. *Sahara, terre de demain.*  
Paris, Nouvelles éditions latines, 1956. 270 p.  
illus., maps. DT333.C715

A Councillor of the French Union here set forth in explicit terms the plans for development of the Sahara through the “prodigious modern techniques” already being applied with success in certain regions. He examined physical and human geography of the desert, and its actual and possible resources. Then he discussed projects for agriculture, through such undertakings as the irrigation works of the Office du Niger, or such means as artificially induced rain and reforestation. He explained the organizations, public and private, which were launching industrial development projects, the means of communication envisaged, including the railway from the Mediterranean to the Niger, and the hopeful picture of energy resources—the wealth in coal of Colomb-Béchar, oil, solar energy, electricity, atomic energy. He ended with consideration of the projected French Saharan Region and its strategic connection with the Fezzan. Two appendixes cite parliamentary and other official texts from 1952 to October 1956, the last being the law proposed by M. Houphouët-Boigny, then Minister from the Ivory Coast, for the “Organization Commune des

Régions Sahariennes,” to take in Mauritania, the French Sudan, Niger, and Tchad, together with Algeria. A third appendix described activities of the Compagnie des Pétroles d'Algérie.

1031. ÉTUDES SOCIALES NORD-AFRICAINES. *L'avenir humain du Sahara.* Paris, 1954. 51 p.  
illus. (Cahiers nord-africains, 41)

HC547.S3E8

1032. ———. *Le pétrole saharien et les problèmes humains.* Paris, 1960. 61 p. (Cahiers nord-africains, 76)

HD9577.A42E7

The first brochure contains two essays on the economic future of the Sahara, “Réhabilitation du Sahara,” by Jean Célérier, a noted geographer of the Centre des Hautes Études Marocaines, evaluating possibilities for mining and petroleum production; and “Réflexions sur le désert,” by Georges Mercier, concerned with the human problems that result from the “présence française” and the breakdown of the traditional nomad and semi-nomad life. The last page gives a brief selective bibliography of important French studies, mostly in learned journals. The second work is an analysis of exploration, development, and future of petroleum in the entire Saharan region. Its last section, “Chronique bibliographique,” gives a résumé of a series of articles on Organisation Commune des Régions Sahariennes and the obstacles in its path.

1033. FORBES, ROBERT H. *The expanding Sahara.*  
Tucson, University of Arizona Press, 1958.  
31 p. illus., maps. (Arizona. University.  
Physical science bulletin, no. 3) GB361.S3F6  
University of Arizona bulletin, v. 29, no. 5.

A pamphlet consisting chiefly of photographs dated from 1922 to 1958, which show the changing conditions in “shifting areas of forest, savannah and desert.” The area described is mainly around the loop of the Niger, in the Sudan (Mali and Mauritania.).

1034. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *Le cadre institutionnel du développement saharien.* Paris, 1961. 19 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2801, 31 juil. 1961)

D411.F67, no. 2801

Explanation of the Organisation Commune des Régions Sahariennes, etc.

1035. FURON, RAYMOND. *Le Sahara; géologie: ressources minérales mise en valeur.* Paris, Payot, 1958. 300 p. (Bibliothèque scientifique)

QE339.S2F8



Comprehensive survey by a French authority on overseas geology. The first part is a succinct review of physical and human geography and history, then follow a long and detailed account of geological structure, analysis of resources by region and by commodity, and discussion of conditions of development.

1036. GABUS, JEAN. *Au Sahara*. I. Les hommes et leurs outils. II. Arts et symboles. Neuchâtel, La Baconnière, 1954–58. 2 v. (106, 408 p.) illus., maps. DT337.G3

Resulting from expeditions in 1942–54 of the Musée d'Ethnographie de Neuchâtel, Switzerland, to photograph the life of the nomad peoples of the Sahara and collect art objects. The volumes are chiefly pictorial, text being subordinated to plates of the tribesmen and their tools, their arts and crafts in leatherwork, pottery, weaving, etc., and the symbolic designs used. A third volume (not yet published in 1962) will be *Bijoux et techniques*. The missions took the researchers from the southern slopes of the Atlas mountains in Morocco and Algeria to the farthest reaches of the western Sahara desert in Mauritania, Niger, Senegal, and Sudan.

1037. GERSTER, GEORG. *Sahara*. Translated by Stewart Thomson. New York, Coward-McCann, 1961. 302 p. illus. DT548.G413

By a Swiss newspaperman; comprehensive, highly informative, and very popular—almost gossipy—in style; for instance, the chapter giving a sensational account of Lhote and his expeditions to Tassili, or the last chapter called “Taming of the Shrew,” which examines the Trans-Saharan railway project, the plan for a Saharan inland sea, the plan to divert water north from the Niger near Timbuktu, and other scientific dreams for making the desert blossom.

A more sober account, factual and documented, was written in the following year by an English author, Major Nicolas Bodington, *The Awakening Sahara* (London, A Deutsch, 1961. 175 p. illus.).

1038. LHOTE, HENRI. *The search for the Tassili frescoes*; the story of the prehistoric rock-paintings of the Sahara. Translated from the French by Alan Broughton Brodrick. New York, Dutton, 1959. 236 p. illus., part col. GN799.P4L513

This bestselling book tells of Professor Lhote's expedition with a few companions to the Tassili mountains where the rock-paintings reveal prehistoric patterns of migration across northern and western Africa. The superb illustrations reproduce the copies of the paint-

ings prepared upon the site. The author is an authority on the Tuareg, his scholarly anthropological treatise, *Les Touaregs du Hoggar* (2d ed., Paris, Payot, 1955. 467 p. Bibliothèque scientifique), being one of the best known studies of this nomad Berber people who spread across the desert from the Sudan in the east to Timbuktu in the west and Zinder in the south.

1039. MONOD, THÉODORE. *Majâbat al-Koubrâ*; contribution à l'étude de l' "Empty Quarter" ouest-saharien. Dakar, IFAN, 1958. 406 p. illus., 81 plates, maps (part fold.) profiles, 4 transparencies (in pocket) (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 52) DT548.M614

Bibliography: p. 389–392.

1040. ———. *Méharées: explorations au vrai Sahara*. 2. éd. Paris, Éditions “Je sers,” 1947. 300 p. (Bibliothèque des voyages) DT548.M615 1947

Two works by French West Africa's most famous natural scientist, an authority on the desert and a writer of distinction. The *Méharées*, a charmingly informal and entertaining account of expeditions on camel-back in the Western Sahara, combining natural observation, human history, and ethnology, and illustrated with his own sketches, was published first in 1938, before Professor Monod had assumed the directorship of IFAN (see no. 913). The more technical results of the expeditions had been edited by Monod in *Contributions à l'étude du Sahara occidental* (Paris, Larose, 1938–39. 2 v.) which was issued as Publications du Comité d'Études Historiques et Scientifiques de l'A.O.F., Sér. A, no. 7, and Sér. B, no. 5. They were concerned with archaeological and geological finds, including rock paintings. The first-named book is a profound technical study of a barren region in the north of Mauritania.

1041. *Nomades et nomadisme au Sahara*. Paris, UNESCO, 1962. (Arid zone research, 19.)

A compilation of articles on specific problems, regions, and populations of the Sahara, based on first-hand research. The regional studies include analyses of nomadism in the Mauritanian Sahel, Mali, and other parts of the Western Sahara. Announced for publication in late 1962, with approximately 196 pages.

1042. PANIS, J. C. *Le chemin de fer de la Méditerranée au Niger*. Bruxelles, Editions de Vis-scher, 1956. 138 p. HE 3429.W5P3

Dissertation by a Belgian colonial administrator reviewing and analyzing the question of the trans-Saharan railway, at that time projected as the Mer-Niger, to run from Morocco into Algeria, south through Mauritania and the Sudan to meet the West African transportation system now operating under the Office du Niger, from the dam at Sansanding to the railway line at Bamako. A bibliography lists papers, articles, speeches, etc.; there are few books on the subject, though the proposal goes back many years, well before the Chemin de Fer Transsaharien study group was set up under the French Ministry of Public Works in 1928. In 1962, with independent states concerned, as well as the great increase in transport by motor truck and by air, plans seem to be in abeyance.

1043. STRASSER, DANIEL. *Réalités et promesses sahariennes*; aspects juridiques et économiques de la mise en valeur industrielle du Sahara français. Paris, Encyclopédie d'outre-mer, 1956. 236 p. illus. HC547.S3S7

Published in late 1956, this study of legal and economic organization of industrial development in the French Sahara is in two main parts. The first 90 pages explain the current status—the administrative setup of government and of private industrial projects,

and an inventory of the subsoil wealth (coal, iron, manganese, copper, lead, phosphates, oil and gas) and obstacles to their exploitation (lack of water, labor force, transport). The longer second part explains plans and policies for concerted undertakings through creation of Z.O.I.A. (Zones d'Organisation Industrielle Africaine) in which French West Africa and French Equatorial Africa were united in the common development effort with French North Africa, enlistment of private and public capital, and finally for creation of a specialized Organisation Commune des Régions Sahariennes Françaises. Appendixes of documents and tables.

A simple explanation in English was issued by the French Embassy, Service de Presse et d'Information in its series of releases, *African Affairs*, "Basic Facts on the Sahara: the Impact of French Technical Assistance" (no. 17, April 1957. 8 p.).

1044. THOMAS, MARC R. *Sahara et communauté*. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1960. 298 p. illus. JX1588.S2T5

Based on the author's dissertation, this is a treatise for a professional audience, including the legislation relating to the Organisation Commune des Régions Sahariennes, and an up-to-date bibliography.

## Senegal

1045. CHABAS, JEAN. *Le mariage et le divorce dans les coutumes des Ouolofs habitant les grands centres du Sénégal*. Paris, Librairie générale de droit et de jurisprudence, 1952. 59 p. (Institut des hautes études de Dakar, École supérieure de droit.) GN480.C5

Study of customary law with regard to marriage and divorce among the Ouolofs (Wolofs) of Senegal, a partially Islamized Sudanese tribe which is dominant in Dakar, Rufisque, and the heavily settled coastal areas of Senegal. The paper is a reprint from no. 4, 1952 of the *Revue juridique et politique de l'Union française*.

1046. CROWDER, MICHAEL. *Senegal*; a study in French assimilation policy. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. 104 p. illus. DT549.5.C7

An acute journalist's account of Senegal and its history, with as central theme the results of the long-continued French policy of assimilation. Mr. Crow-

der attempts to show that the French culture in reality reached only a small elite, the very ones who have now adopted the concept of negritude in reaction against both political and cultural association. He was optimistic over the future of Senegal under the able leaders Senghor and Mamadou Dia.

1047. DELCOURT, ANDRÉ. *La France et les Établissements français au Sénégal entre 1713 et 1763*. La Compagnie des Indes et le Sénégal. La guerre de la gomme. Dakar, Institut français d'Afrique noire, 1952. 432 p. fold. maps (Mémoires, no. 17) DT549.D4

Large scholarly study of the first French settlements in Africa. A long bibliography of published and manuscript sources precedes the first chapter (p. 27-37).

1048. THE DIPLOMATIST. *Spotlight on Senegal* on the occasion of the visit to London of H. E. President Leopold Sedar Senghor. London, 1961. 34 p. illus. DLC



A public relations pamphlet, giving an optimistic sketch of the country.

1049. EUROPE FRANCE OUTREMER. *Une décolonisation réussie: Le Sénégal*. Paris, 1961. 64 p. illus. JV1801.E65, no. 376

Useful special issue (no. 376, Mar. 1961), carrying feature articles on economic and political conditions in Senegal after independence.

1050. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République de Sénégal*. Paris, 1961. 48 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2754, 22 fév. 1961) D411.F67, no. 2754

Besides this serious background study France issued an illustrated brochure for popular consumption to celebrate the new state, with an edition in English for American readers: *The Republic of Senegal: Hour of Independence* (New York, Ambassade de France, Service de Presse et d'Information, 1960. 32 p.). On the back cover it carries a poem by Senghor, in the original and in English translation.

1051. GARNIER, CHRISTINE, and PHILIPPE ERMONT. *Sénégal: porte de l'Afrique*. Paris, Hachette, 1962. 223 p. DT549.G32

Mme. Garnier is a French journalist who has studied the African scene for some years. This book gives an objective and lucid picture of Senegal—the capital city Dakar, the country behind, its history under colonial rule, the abortive federation with Mali, the Republic and its leaders, economy, religions, and culture.

1052. HARDY, GEORGES. *La mise en valeur du Sénégal de 1817 à 1854*. Paris, Larose, 1921. xxxiii, 376 p. plates 4DT/1010

Study of the history of the oldest French colony of Africa south of the Sahara. Professor Hardy presented this as his thesis at the University of Paris; it is based on almost 20 pages of source materials ("Bibliographie," p. xv–xxxiii).

1053. INSTITUT FRANÇAIS D'AFRIQUE NOIRE. *L'agglomération dakaroise; quelques aspects sociologiques et démographiques*. Saint-Louis du Sénégal, Centre IFAN-Sénégal, 1954. 83 p. maps, diagrs., tables. (Études sénégalaises, no. 5) HN810.S4D33

Prepared by the Section de sociologie.

Contents.—Aspects de la société africaine dans l'agglomération dakaroise: groupes familiaux et unités de voisinage, par P. Mercier.—Contribution à l'étude de la nuptialité et de

la fertilité dans l'agglomération dakaroise, par L. Massé.—Les industries de transformation de la région de Dakar, par A. Hauser.

The Sociological Section of IFAN was established only in 1953, and these papers on urbanization in the chief city of French West Africa result from its first survey. No. 6 and No. 7 of the Études sénégalaises series were also sociological analyses of highly urbanized regions: *La Ville de Thiès, étude de géographie urbaine*, by G. Savonnet (Saint-Louis, 1955. 179 p.); *Budgets familiaux africains; étude chez 136 familles de salariés dans trois centres urbains du Sénégal*, by Y. Mersadier, (1957. 102 p.).

1054. INSTITUT FRANÇAIS D'AFRIQUE NOIRE. Centre Sénégal-Mauritanie, Saint Louis, Sénégal. *Connaissance du Sénégal*. Saint-Louis du Sénégal, 1960. 1 v. (Études sénégalaises, no. 9)

This scholarly series, several numbers of which are here analyzed, is being continued after independence.

1055. LY, ABDOULAYE. *L'État et la production paysanne; ou, L'État et la révolution au Sénégal, 1957–1958*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1958. 79 p. DLC

1056. ———. *La Compagnie du Sénégal*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1958. 310 p. (Enquêtes et études) HF489.S5L9

1057. ———. *Les masses africaines et l'actuelle condition humaine*. Paris, Éditions Présence africaine, 1956. 254 p. illus. (Enquêtes et études) JC359.L9

1058. ———. *Mercenaires noirs; notes sur une forme de l'exploitation des Africains*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1957. 67 p. (Collection "Le Colonialisme," 3) GN645.L9

M. Ly, a Senegalese intellectual, nationalist, and political leader, is a historian of anticolonialism. Of the four of his many works listed above, the earliest, *Les Masses africaines* . . . is a fiery political attack on the French administration; an appendix on "Commerce extérieur de l'A.O.F." is inserted as proof of exploitation of the colony by the metropole. The same theme runs through *L'Etat et la production paysanne*, and, in terms of early history, through the *Compagnie du Sénégal*. In *Mercenaires noirs* he is exposing another form of exploitation; the black soldiers who have provided a great part of the force

of French armies during the last century are generally known as "les Sénégalais." M. Ly is now an associate director of IFAN in Dakar.

1059. MERCIER, PAUL, and GEORGES BALANDIER. *Les pêcheurs Lebou du Sénégal, particularisme et évolution*. Saint-Louis, Sénégal, Centre IFAN-Sénégal, 1952. 216 p. illus. (Études sénégalaises, no. 3) DT549.M53

Anthropological study of a small tribe of fisher folk living on the Senegal coast around Dakar and Rufisque. The two authors had done their research during their first year in Africa, 1946, and the text was finished in 1948. Many translated examples of sayings and chants are included. Line sketches and the section of 26 plates are mostly of tools and equipment. Besides the account of background and tradition and analysis of personal, family, and group life, beliefs and magic practices (the tribe is Muslim), much attention is given to the tools and implements of Lebou economy, especially of the fishing craft.

1060. MILCENT, ERNEST, and STANLEY MEISLER. "Two views of Senegal." *Africa report*, v. 7, Aug. 1962: 13-19. DT1.A217, v. 7

Two brief articles. The first, a summarization of the current affairs of Senegal by the editor of *Afrique nouvelle* in Dakar is frankly enthusiastic over Senghor and his leadership. In the second article an American journalist who has a Ford Foundation area training fellowship sees the same picture from the viewpoint of the young elite, who consider Senghor "too French and too white." The coming candidate for power, Mr. Meisler suggests, is V. N'Diaye, the Minister of the Interior, one of the few university men in the Cabinet.

1061. NICOLAS, JEAN PAUL. *Bioclimatologie humaine de Saint-Louis du Sénégal; essai de méthodologie bioclimatologique*. Dakar. IFAN, 1959. 340 p. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 57) QH543.N5

1062. PERSPECTIVES D'OUTRE-MER. *Sénégal (problèmes d'aujourd'hui—avant première—enquêtes et documents)* Monaco, 1960. 132 p. illus. DLC

Special issue (mars-avr. 1960) on business and industrial development in Senegal. A portion of the text is in Arabic. The issue of January 1959 had also been devoted in large part to Senegal.

1063. *Problèmes agricoles au Sénégal: La vallée du Sénégal, agriculture traditionnelle et riziculture mécanisée*, par Louis Papy. *L'arachide au Sénégal, rationalisation et modernisation de sa culture*, par Paul Pelissier. Saint-Louis du Sénégal, Centre I.F.A.N. Sénégal, 1952. 80 p. plates, maps (Études sénégalaises, no. 2) S471.S4P7

The first of these two papers, reprinted from the journal *Cahiers d'outre-mer* (no. 16, Oct.-Dec. 1951), was by the Professor of Geography of the University of Bordeaux. He gave an ethnological account of traditional agriculture in the valley of the Senegal river—the Negro tribes, Wolof (Ouolof), Toucouleur, Sarakolé, among whom are mixed the pastoral Peuls. His particular attention was to the rice culture, which was started by a certain M. Richard in 1821, with irrigation systems in a region known as Richard-Toll. Under the development plan (see no. 458) new mechanized systems are being introduced in the delta of the Senegal. The second paper, by a geographer of IFAN in Dakar, is on the modernization of the peanut culture (from *Cahiers d'outre-mer*, no. 15, July-Sept. 1951).

1064. *Le Sénégal en marche: à l'an 1 de l'indépendance, 4 avril 1961; sur la voie africaine du socialisme*. Casablanca, Imprimeries réunies, 1961. 210 p. illus. DLC

Handsome brochure sponsored by the Ministère de l'Information, de la Radiodiffusion et de la Presse of Senegal. Contents are articles presenting political, economic, social, and cultural aspects of the new Senegal. The preface is by President Senghor, the lead article, "Réflexions sur l'indépendance du Sénégal et le socialisme africain," by Mamadou Dia.

1065. SENGHOR, LÉOPOLD SÉDAR. *Report on the principles and programme of the Party*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1959. 88 p. JQ3352.S413

The President of the Republic of Senegal, formerly a member of the French Socialist Party, has been in politics since 1945, and steadily resisted the mass inter-territorial party of the A.O.F., R.D.A. (Rassemblement Démocratique Africain), leading in the formation of other parties. In 1958 all French West African leaders outside R.D.A. combined to form the P.R.A. (Parti du Regroupement Africain), whose Senegalese branch, U.P.S. (Union Progressiste Sénégalaise) pressed for the vote of *oui* in the 1958 Referendum. In 1959, after success in the elections for the legislative as-



sembly, it was transformed into the P.F.A. (Parti Fédéraliste Africain), accomplishing the formation of the Mali Federation. This address by Senghor at the Constituent Congress of this Party voices his concept of *socialisme africain*.

1066. SÉRÉ DE RIVIÈRES, EDMOND. *Le Sénégal, Dakar*. Paris, Éditions maritimes et coloniales, 1953. 127 p. illus. (Pays africains, 4) DT549.S4

Introductory survey, giving condensed information regarding country and peoples, the long history of the oldest French colony, its government and administration, social and economic development, and education. A separate chapter is devoted to Dakar, the big city at the point of Cap Vert which during the war became one of the strategic points of the world. The writer warned that Senegal has an important development of its own and must not be considered only the backwoods of a metropolis.

1067. THOMAS, LOUIS V. *Les Diola*; essai d'analyse fonctionnelle sur une population de Basse-Casamance. Dakar, IFAN, 1959. 2 v. plates, music. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 55)

DT549.T48

Bibliography: v. 2, p. 797-809.

Complete anthropological study in interesting and leisurely style.

1068. VILLARD, ANDRÉ. *Histoire du Sénégal*. Dakar, Ars Africae, 1943. 264 p. illus., fold. maps. DT549.V5

A straightforward history dedicated to "the young Frenchmen of A.O.F., European or African." If they are bored by the text, the author suggests modestly that they may enjoy the illustrations, which are plates taken from contemporary works. The volume ends with an annotated bibliography.

## Togo

1069. BANQUE CENTRALE DES ÉTATS DE L'AFRIQUE DE L'OUEST. *Togo 1960*; faits et chiffres. Paris, 1960. 218 p. DT582.B25

Statistical survey of the newly independent republic. The Banque Centrale, which is a French government institution, was known until April 1959 as Institut d'Émission de l'A.O.F. et du Togo. Its bulletin, *Notes d'information et statistique*, is among the most useful organs for economic study of the former French West African states. The Banque issues also a monographic series of Études économiques ouest-africaines, no. 3 of which was *Comptes économiques Togo 1956-57-58* (Paris, 1961. 268 p.). Nos. 5 and 6 were, respectively, *Données actuelles de l'économie voltaïque* (déc. 1962. 32 p.), prepared by the Service du Plan of Upper Volta, and *Comptes économiques de la Mauritanie 1960 et 1961* (fév. 1963. 15 p.), prepared by the Ministère de la Planification of Mauritania.

1070. COLEMAN, JAMES S. *Togoland*. New York, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1956. 91 p. (International conciliation, Sept. 1956, no. 509)

JX1907.A8, no. 509

A political review and analysis, written between the plebiscite in British Togoland of May 1956 and the

referendum in French Togoland of October when the question of terminating a trusteeship agreement was to come up for the first time before the U.N. Professor Coleman examined historical background and the United Nations experiment in preparing a country of disparate tribes for self-government.

1071. CORNEVIN, ROBERT. *Histoire du Togo*. 2. éd. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1962. 427 p. illus., maps. DT582.5.C6

The author of *Histoire des peuples de l'Afrique noire* (see no. 54) had been commandant de cercle in Togo for 8 years. His profound scholarship and intimate knowledge of the country is shown in this brilliant history, a third of which goes back to pre-European times. The book, which was published first in 1959, was given the Grand Prix of the Académie des Sciences d'Outre-Mer in 1960. A more specialized study in his *Les Bassari du nord Togo* (Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1961). In it he makes use of much German source material.

1072. FRANCE. *Rapport du Gouvernement français à l'Assemblée générale des Nations Unies sur l'administration du Togo placé sous la tutelle de France*. Paris, illus. annual. 1947-1957. J809.N317

A lavish publication with many maps, charts, and tables of statistics. The last presented, for the year 1957, has 374 pages. Emphasis is on economic and social advances, with special attention to French aid.

1073. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République du Togo*. Paris, 1960. 48 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2705, 3 oct. 1960) D411.F67, no. 2705

Summary background survey. See note on series, no. 846.

1074. FROELICH, J. C. *La tribu Konkomba du nord Togo*. Dakar, IFAN, 1954. 253 p. illus. (Mémoires, n° 37) DT582.F76

Ethnological study of the Konkomba people, a tribe which the author explained as "a good example of population in migration, or, better, in swarm," who are pushing toward the east in northern Togoland, both British and French regions. Like many of the young French colonial officers, the writer was a trained anthropologist as well as administrator.

1075. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Report to the General Assembly of the United Nations on Togoland under United Kingdom administration*. 1920/21-1955. London, annual. J809.N15

Begun as report to the League of Nations on the Co-mandate. None issued 1939-46. The report of 1955 was the last presented, since in the referendum of March 1956 British Togoland decided on union with Ghana.

1076. KITCHEN, HELEN. "Filling the Togo vacuum." *Africa report*, v. 8, Feb. 1963: 7-10. DT1.A217, v. 8

President Sylvanus Olympio of Togo was assassinated on January 13, 1963, in a takeover of power by a military junta. He has been succeeded by a former Prime Minister under the French regime, Nicolas Grunitzky, who had been in exile in Dahomey. The reactions of the neighboring African states were expressed in an emergency session of the Council of Ministers of the Inter-African and Malagasy States Organization (the Monrovia Powers), which was hastily convened in Lagos from January 24-26. In this timely article the editor of *Africa Report* reviewed and evaluated the situation.

1077. METZGER, O. F. *Unsere alte Kolonie Togo*. Neudamm, Verlag J. Neumann, 1941. 295 p. illus., maps. HC557.T6M4

Compendium of information on the former German colony, two-thirds of it concerned with forestry, palm-oil industry, and agriculture. The writer had been governor of Togo during the First World War.

1078. PÉCHOUX, LAURENT. *Le mandat français sur le Togo*. Paris, Éditions A. Pedone, 1939. 405 p. JQ3535.P4 1939a

Politico-economic study, detailed and heavily documented.

1079. PUIG, FRANÇOIS. *Études sur les coutumes des Cabrais [Togo]*. Toulouse, Impr. toulousaine, Lion et fils, 1934. 204 p. fold. map. DLC-LL

This work, prepared by a "juge d'instruction" in Lomé as a doctoral thesis, is specially focused on customary law, but covers also mores, religion, and other anthropological aspects relating to the Kabre tribe, one of the dominant peoples of Togo.

1080. SCHRAMM, JOSEF. *Togo*. Bonn, K. Schroeder, 1959. 86 p. fold. map. (Deutsche Afrika-Gesellschaft. Die Länder Afrikas, Band 19) DT582.8.S3

Dr. Schramm, the author of this useful survey in the Länder Afrikas series (see no. 10), is a geographer who spent almost 10 years in Central Africa, the last of them as director of the Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, Centre Cameroun. His synthesis of geography, history, economics and politics is notably lucid.

1081. TOGO. *Étude démographique du pays Kabré*, 1957. Lomé, Institut de recherche du Togo, 1960. 87 p. illus., map.

One of the demographic surveys initiated under French official auspices. Reviewed in *Africa*, v. 32, January 1962, p. 80-82.

1082. TOGO. Service d'information. *Togo: une année d'indépendance, 27 avril 1960/61*. Lomé, 1961. [unpaged] illus. DLC-AFR

Brochure celebrating the first year of the Republic of Togo, with handsome and well-chosen photographs accompanied by explanatory text. The red, yellow, and green cover is an adaptation of the new national flag.

1083. UNITED NATIONS. Trusteeship Council. Visiting Mission to the Trust Territories in West Africa. *Report on Togoland under French administration* 1949, 1952, 1955. New York. 3v. maps. (U.N. [Document] T) DT582.U45



1084. ——— *Report on Togoland under United Kingdom administration.* 1949, 1952, 1955. New York. 3v. maps. (U.N. [Document] T) DT582.U453

1085. ——— *Special report on the Ewe and Togoland unification problem.* Lake Success, 1950. 46 p. (U.N. [Document] T/463) DT582.U46

Same issued from 1952+ as Supplements to the Official Records of the Trusteeship Council. The Visiting Mission to Togoland, as to the Cameroons, made three inspection trips, 1949, 1952, 1955. Their examination included also the special consideration of the Ewe people of Togoland and the Gold Coast, who were pressing for unification. The last Visiting Mission recommended prompt self-determination. A plebiscite held in British Togoland on May 9, 1956, resulted in a decision for union with Ghana (Mar. 1957). In a referendum of October 1956 (boycotted by the U.N.) French Togoland voted to end the

trusteeship status and, under provisions of the *loi-cadre*, to become an autonomous state of the Communauté. The independent Republic of Togo came into being in April 1960.

For official documentation on Togo as a trust territory of the United Nations, see the *United Nations Documents Index*, 1950–58; and for brief résumés, the *Year Book of the United Nations*.

1086. WESTERMANN, DIEDRICH. *Die Glidyi-Ewe in Togo: Züge aus ihrem Gesellschaftsleben.* Berlin, Walter de Gruyter, 1935. 332 p. (Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen an der Universität Berlin. Beiband zum Jahrgang XXXVIII) DT582.W4

Professor Westermann had begun his studies of the Ewe with a dictionary of the Ewe language published in 1905 while he was a missionary in Togoland, then a German colony. This work is a full-scale anthropological treatise on a particular tribe of the Ewe group living in the southeast corner of the territory north of Anecho.

## Upper Volta

1087. DIM DELOBSOM, A. A. *L'Empire du moghona; coutumes des Mossi de la Haute-Volta.* Paris, Éditions Domat-Montchrestien, 1932. 303 p. (Institut de droit comparé. Études de sociologie et d'ethnologie juridiques, II). DLC-LL

1088. ——— *Les secrets des sorciers noirs.* Paris, Librairie Émile Nourry, 1934. 298 p. illus. (Collections science et magie, no. 5). NN

The first work by this West African scholar is a profound and much-noticed study of customary law and other aspects of Mossi ethnology. The second more popular book won the Grand Prix de l'A.O.F. in 1934.

1089. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République de Haute-Volta.* Paris, 1960. 64 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2693, 19 août 1960) D411.F67, no. 2693

Summary background survey. For general note on this series, also for that including the English-language brochure, *The Republic of Upper Volta, Hour of Independence* (New York, 1960. 31 p.), see no. 846.

1090. IZARD-HÉRITIER, FRANÇOISE, and MICHEL IZARD. *Les Mossi du Yatenga [Upper Volta] étude de la vie économique et sociale.* Bordeaux, XX Institut des Sciences humaines appliquées de l'Université de Bordeaux, 196-. 114 p.

Not yet seen in Library of Congress. Review noticed in July 1961.

1091. KERHARO, JOSEPH, and A. BOUQUET. *Sorciers, féticheurs et guérisseurs de la Côte d'Ivoire, Haute-Volta: les hommes, les croyances, les pratiques pharmacopée et thérapeutique.* Paris, Vigot frères, 1950. 144 p. GN477.3.K4

1092. ——— *Plantes médicinales et toxiques de la Côte d'Ivoire—Haute Volta.* Mission d'étude de la pharmacopée indigène en A.O.F. Paris, Vigot frères, 1950. 295 p. QK99.K4

Two studies of magic and medicine among the tribes of the Ivory Coast and Upper Volta, resulting from an expedition made to study the pharmacopoeia of the region.

1093. LABOURET, HENRI. *Nouvelles notes sur les tribus du rameau Lobi: leurs migrations, leur évolution, leurs parlers et ceux de leurs voisins*. Dakar, IFAN, 1958. 295 p. illus. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 54) PL8222.L3

Includes bibliography.

Largely a linguistic study, including vocabularies and a long section of translated folk tales of the Lobi and other groups of tribes widespread in the Voltaic watershed (Haute Volta, Ivory Coast, Ghana). The author, a distinguished ethnologist, was for many years associated with the International African Institute.

1094. PROST, ANDRÉ. *La langue bisa, grammaire et dictionnaire*. Ouagadougou, Haute-Volta, Centre IFAN, 1950. 198 p. maps. (Études voltaïques, no. 1) PL8099.P7

A scholarly study on the language of the tribe officially known as the Boussansé (English Busansi) who live in the cercle of Tenkodogo, Upper Volta. The author was a missionary priest of the White Fathers. This monograph is the only one of the IFAN series, Études voltaïques, which the Library of Congress has been able to acquire and we have no information as to whether others were published.



# FORMER FRENCH EQUATORIAL AFRICA

## Bibliography

1095. BRUEL, GEORGES. *Bibliographie de l'Afrique équatoriale française*. Paris, Larose, 1914. 326 p. (Gouvernement général de l'A.E.F.) Z3691.B89

By the Chief Administrator for the Colonies, who had formerly been chief of the Geographic Service of the A.E.F., this is considered the authoritative bibliography of early material on French Central Africa. It contains over 7,000 references, 4,260 of which are for books, pamphlets, and signed periodical articles; the rest are content analysis of periodicals by year.

In 1949 the Service de la Statistique Général of French Equatorial Africa published a supplementary *Bibliographie ethnographique de l'A.E.F. 1914-1948* (Paris, Impr. nationale. 107 p.). It covers the field of social or "human" sciences with 549 entries in regional and subject classification with author index.

1096. *Afrique centrale; les républiques d'expression française*. [Guide établi par Gilbert Houlet] Paris, Hachette, 1962. clxxxviii, 533 p. (Les Guides bleus) DT546.A68

A handbook in baedeker style, with introductory essays by specialists: Introduction by Robert Delavignette; geography by Gilles Sauter; prehistory and archaeology by General P. Huard; precolonial history by Hubert Deschamps; colonial history to present by Robert Cornevin; also on Catholic and Protestant missions, arts and crafts, population, flora and fauna, languages. These occupy clxxxviii (188) p. Then come the travel guide sections; a general guide to transport and communications, and sections on the Republics of the Congo, Gabon, Chad, Central African Republic, and Cameroun. A large folded roadmap is inserted at back cover.

1097. AUBRÉVILLE, ANDRÉ. *Étude sur les forêts de l'Afrique équatoriale française et du Cameroun*. Paris, 1948. 131 p. (Ministère de la France d'outre-mer. Direction de l'agriculture, de l'élevage et des forêts. Bulletin scientifique no. 2) QK938.F6A83

1098. ——— *Flore forestière soudano-guinéenne*, A.O.F. Cameroun-A.E.F. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques maritimes et coloniales, 1950. 523 p. illus. QK491.F7A8

Two technical studies by the inspector-general of French colonial forests and waterways. The first is a treatise on the forests and forest industries which form a main resource of the region, the second a botanical guide. In 1948 a more general and inclusive study of his was issued by Impr. Jouve, Paris, *Richesses et misères des forêts de l'Afrique noire française; mission forestière: A.E.F., Cameroun, A.O.F., 1945-46* (250 p. illus.).

1099. BALANDIER, GEORGES. *Sociologie actuelle de l'Afrique noire; dynamique des changements sociaux en Afrique centrale*. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1955. 510 p. illus., maps, tables. (Bibliothèque de sociologie contemporaine) DT530.B3

Rev. ed., 1963. 532 p.

Professor Balandier has carried out extensive sociological research in French Africa, at first from the Institut Français d'Afrique Noire in Dakar, then in the A.E.F. This work was presented as a thesis with the subtitle: *Dynamique des changements sociaux au Gabon et au Congo*. It had been preceded by the study, with J. C. Pauvert as associate, *Les Villages gabonais* (see no. 1186). The larger volume established the author as a foremost authority on sociology of developing areas. (See also under Congo, no. 1179).

1100. BRUEL, GEORGES. *L'Afrique équatoriale française: le pays—les habitants—la colonisation—les pouvoirs publics*. Nouvelle éd. Paris, Larose, 1935. 558 p. illus., 6 fold. col. maps. DT546.B7 1935

An exhaustive geographic survey of A.E.F. by this geographer and bibliographer, epitomizing knowledge of the territory to the time of its first publication in 1918. The 1935 edition which has slight changes to update it, mainly regarding colonial administration, was subsidized by the Gouvernement Général de l'A.E.F. et du Cameroun.

1101. CHAVANNES, CHARLES DE. *Avec Brazza; souvenirs de la mission de l'Ouest-africain (mars 1883—janvier 1886)* Paris, Plon, 1936. 380 p. illus. fold. map. DT546.C5

At head of title: Les origines de l'Afrique équatoriale française.

By an officer who had participated in the early expeditions in equatorial Africa.

1102. CHEMERY, J. *Histoire de la mise en valeur minière des territoires d'Afrique centrale*. Paris, 1960. 175 p. map. (Bureau d'études géologiques et minières, Paris, Publications, 21) NNUN

Includes bibliography.

1103. DU CHAILLU, PAUL B. *Exploration and adventures in equatorial Africa*, with accounts of the manners and customs of the people, and of the chase [sic] of the gorilla, crocodile, leopard, elephant, hippopotamus, and other animals. London, T. W. Laurie, 1945. 479 p. illus., map. DT356.D823 1945

Reprint of one of the most famous of the early travel books on Africa, first published in 1861. The writer, a French anthropologist, in 1855 was commissioned by the Academy of Natural Sciences at Philadelphia to explore in equatorial Africa, where he was the first scientist to observe the anthropoid apes in their native habitat. On a later expedition, 1863–65, he discovered the pygmies living in the deep forests.

Books on hunting by European adventurers in French Equatorial Africa from Du Chaillu's time on are numerous. Most are focused on big game. Among modern works available in English there might be noted: Heinrich Oberjohann, *Komoon! Capturing the Chad Elephant*; translated from the German by Rhoda de Terra (New York, Pantheon, 1953. 219 p. illus.); Henry Geddes, *Gorilla* (London, A. Melrose, 1955. 206 p.); Ernst A. Swilling, *Jungle Fever*; translated from the German (London, Souvenir Press, 1956. 216 p. illus.), also the bestselling novel, later made into a film,

opposing the destruction of elephants, Roman Gary's *The Roots of Heaven* (New York, Simon & Schuster, 1958. 372 p.).

1104. ÉBOUÉ, FÉLIX ADOLPHE. *Native policy in French Equatorial Africa*; translation of a memorandum by M. Éboué, Governor-General, French Equatorial Africa, Nov. 1941. Lagos, 1942. 25 p. DT546.E23

English rendering of Éboué's influential statement of the changes needed in French colonial policy, later enunciated at the Brazzaville Conference. He demanded an end to the "neglect and contempt in which the native political and social system has been held," and that the colonial peoples be enriched and developed "within the framework of their own institutions." (Félix Adolphe Éboué, a native of French Guiana, had served with distinction in the French colonial administration. As Governor of Chad in August 1940 he proclaimed the adherence of the colony to the Free French. In November 1940 General de Gaulle named him Governor-General of French Equatorial Africa. He died in 1944, shortly after the Brazzaville Conference in February of that year, at which the "new policy," emphasizing the evolution of the African along the lines of his own culture, was approved for French colonial administration).

Two biographies of Éboué deserve mention. The first, by the French African writer René Maran, author of the 1921 prize novel *Batouala* (set in Ubangi-Shari, now the Central African Republic), inclines toward racism in its account of Éboué's career, triumphing over the checks imposed in the colonial service by his color: *Félix Éboué, grand comis et loyal serviteur, 1885–1944* (Paris, Les Éditions parisiennes, 1957. 128 p. fold. map). The other, in the same year, is by a French political writer known for competent country studies and biographies, Jean de la Roche: *Le Gouverneur-général Félix Éboué, 1884–1944* (Paris, Hachette, 1957. 189 p. illus.).

1105. FRENCH EQUATORIAL AFRICA. Haut commissariat. *L'A.E.F. économique et sociale, 1947–1958*. Paris. Éditions Alain, 1959. 112 p. DLC

An official balance sheet stressing French contributions to the development of the territory on the eve of independence.

1106. GIDE, ANDRÉ. *Travels in the Congo*. Translated from the French by Dorothy Bussy. Berkeley, University of California Press, 1962. 375 p. DT546.G483 1962

Reprint of 1929 edition (New York, Knopf).

The American edition comprises the two books by this distinguished French literary man, *Voyage au Congo* and *Retour du Tchad*, published in Paris in



1927 and 1928. The dedication is to Joseph Conrad, whose short novel of the Congo, *Heart of Darkness*, remains a classic of Central Africa. Gide's long trip in the French tropical colony, made by boat, car, ti-poye (carrying chair), on horse and foot, and by any other feasible means of transportation, was semiofficial in character, and he visited many government and commercial company posts and institutions, as well as native villages. His account is made up from his diary, with his comments on all that he saw and thought in this primitive part of the world, interspersed with notes on his reading of French and English classics. Gide was horrified by his findings, and presented a challenging indictment of the callous exploitation of the Africans—"Excellent people!"—by the French traders, and of the inefficiency of the long-distance administrative control and the handicaps under which the local officers had to work. The book exerted a strong influence on French opinion regarding colonial policy. In the June 10, 1950, issue of *France-Illustration* devoted to A.E.F., Gide shortly before his death expressed the belief that most of the abuses which he had criticized in 1927 had been corrected, and that present-day French policy, both public administration and private business, was sincerely and intelligently directed to the welfare of the natives.

1107. *Guid' Afrique équatoriale*. 1960/61— Paris, Diloutremer. illus., maps. DT546.98

The first edition, the only one of what is hoped to be an annual yearbook received by the Library of Congress, is a pamphlet of 161 pages, including advertising. It gives almanac-style information regarding regions and localities, administrative setup, chief industries, etc., with lists of business addresses for the chief cities, Brazzaville, Pointe Noire, Bangui, and Libreville.

1108. INSTITUT D'ÉTUDES CENTRAFRICAINES, *Brazzaville*. *Bulletin*. v. 1+ 1945. Brazzaville. DT351.I57

1109. ——— *Mémoires*. no. 1+ 1948+ Brazzaville.

Separately cataloged in DLC.

This Institute is the leading center for scientific study of French-speaking Central Africa. Its *Bulletin* (irregular; no. 19–20, 1960) is largely devoted to monograph-length studies in natural sciences. The *Mémoires* series include history, social sciences, and linguistics. Several are noted under individual authors in the present list.

1110. MARAN, RENÉ. *Savorgnan de Brazza*. Éd. définitive. Paris, Éditions du Dauphin, 1951. 246 p. illus. DC342.8.S27M37

Biography of the most sympathetic figure among the explorers and founders of French Equatorial Africa. This well-documented account covers broadly the French penetration of Central Africa from 1875, the time of Brazza's first expedition to explore the Ogooué, to his death in 1905, after conclusion of his mission to investigate charges of French cruelty to Africans in the Congo. The definitive edition supersedes a publication of 1941, with title, *Brazza et la fondation de l'A.E.F.* (Gallimard).

1111. PERSPECTIVES D'OUTRE-MER. *Réalités et projets en Afrique équatoriale*; République du Tchad, République du Gabon, République Centrafricaine, République du Congo. Monaco, P. Bory, 1961. 252 p. illus. (Its no. 42, nov. 1961) DLC

In a magazine that features articles on the economics of French-speaking Africa, this large special issue explained at length present situation and plans for development of the large natural resources of the four new republics.

1112. RÉALITÉS AFRICAINES. *La mise en valeur de l'A.E.F.* Casablanca, Éditions Fontana-Maroc, 1956. 358 p. illus., maps, plans. HC547.E62R5

Broad study of economic development of the region.

1113. RESTE, JOSEPH F. *À l'ombre de la grande forêt*. Paris, Éditions Stock, 1943. 202 p. (Les Livres de nature) DT546.R44

Poetic and evocative description of the forests of Equatorial Africa and the tribesmen living in the remote villages, by a former Governor-General of the A.E.F. Published in Paris during the Nazi occupation, it is distinctly nostalgic. M. Reste believed firmly in the possibilities of advance for the Africans.

1114. SORET, MARCEL. *Démographie et problèmes urbains en A.E.F.: Poto-Poto, Baongo, Doulis*. Montpellier, Impr. Charité, 1954. 134 p. tables. (Mémoires de l'Institut d'études centrafricaines, no. 7) HB3668.E7S6

An early study of a kind that has been made with increasing frequency during the last decade. The statistics are based on censuses, samplings, registers of hospitals, etc., in three rapidly growing centers of African urban population serving the Brazzaville area.

These villages are of much interest in regard to the pressing question of African urbanization—the majority of men over women, increase in dowries and prostitution, fall in birth rate, infant mortality, housing, unemployment, and other aspects of overpopulation. The author's research had been carried out in 1950–52.

1115. THOMPSON, VIRGINIA McLEAN, and RICHARD ADLOFF. *The emerging states of French Equatorial Africa*. Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1960. 595 p. illus.

DT546.T48

The indispensable modern work in English, providing a broad background for study of the former French Equatorial Africa and its four States, now independent Republics—Central African Republic, Chad, Congo-Brazzaville, and Gabon. The authors glance hastily at history and largely bypass any anthropological considerations, but no phase of political, economic, and present-day social life has escaped their careful and exhaustively documented analysis (with chapter notes, bibliography and index). At the time of its writing the four States were members of the Community; since 1960 they are loosely affiliated with France and members of the Afro-Malagasy Union.

1116. TRÉZENEM, ÉDOUARD. *L'Afrique équatoriale française*. 3. éd. entièrement refondue et mise à jour. Paris, Éditions maritimes et coloniales, 1955. 208 p. illus. (Collection Terres lointaines, 1)

DT546.T7 1955

Includes bibliography.

Third edition of a general survey of the A.E.F., previously published together with Bertrand Lembezat's *Cameroun*. The 1955 version is revised to meet current conditions.

A comparable survey in another series of well-planned introductions to France Overseas is by Henri Ziéglé, *Afrique équatoriale française* (Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1952. 199 p. Collection Union française). A predecessor of these books was a lavish and lucid quarto volume prepared for the International Colonial Exposition at Paris in 1931 by Julien Maigret: *Afrique équatoriale française* (Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques et maritimes, 1931. 220 p. plates). Finally, a book of handsome photographs illustrating the territory and its country and life for English-speaking readers was published by Hachette, *French Equatorial Africa* (Paris, 1957. 127 p., 63 plates). An inspirational introduction is by Robert Delavignette, and geographical, ethnological, and economic notes at the end by Jacques Vulaines.

1117. U.S. Trade and Industrial Development Mission to Middle Africa. *Business in Middle Africa: report . . . Chad, Cameroon, Congo (Brazzaville), Central African Republic, Gabon, May 6 through June 20, 1962*. Washington, 1962. 28 p. illus. HC547.W5A54

General introduction on the market for U.S. goods and capital, then systematically by country an account of general characteristics, special import interests, conditions of trade, and in some cases special considerations. The pamphlet ends with listings of trade and investment opportunities.

## Cameroon (Federal Republic)

1118. ALBERT, ANDRÉ. *Cameroun française. Au pays bamiléké. Bandjoun: croyances, coutumes, folklore*. Édition corrigée et augmentée. Montréal, Éditions de l'Arbre, 1943. 282 p. (France forever)

GN655.C3A5 1943

Ethnological study of a tribe in the French Cameroons by a Catholic missionary priest. Originally printed in Paris in 1937, this edition was brought out under the Free French, to whom the Governor of the Cameroons had declared allegiance.

1119. ARDENER, EDWIN. *Plantation and village in the Cameroons*; some economic and social studies, by Edwin Ardener, Shirley Ardener,

and W. A. Warmington. With a contribution by M. J. Ruel. London, Published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research by the Oxford University Press, 1960. 435 p. illus. HD1538.C15A75

The rich plantations of the Southern Cameroons, established under German ownership, came under the administration of the Government of Nigeria after the Second World War, and in January 1947 the Cameroons Development Corporation was set up for their management. This survey, by a socio-anthropological couple from Leeds University and an economist, sketches briefly the organization of the CDC, then studies in detail conditions of work, productivity, and life of the plantation laborers. In October 1960 the



Southern Cameroons plebiscite resulted in the decision to separate from the Nigerian Federation, of which it had been a Region, and to unite with the new Republic of Cameroun.

1120. BINET, JACQUES. *Budgets familiaux des planteurs de cacao au Cameroun*. Paris, Office de la recherche scientifique et technique outre-mer [ORSTOM] 1956. 154 p. illus. (L'Homme d'outre-mer, no. 3)

HN814.C3B5

An analysis of living costs, published in a series of authoritative socio-economic surveys.

1121. CAMEROONS, FRENCH. Laws, statutes, etc. *Code et lois du Cameroun*, par Gaston-Jean Bouvenet et René Bourdin. Yaoundé, Haut Commissariat de la République française au Cameroun, 1956-58. 5 v. DLC-LL

To be kept up to date by supplements.

1122. CAMEROUN. Service de la statistique générale. *Étude de l'économie camerounaise en 1957*. Yaoundé [1960?] 2 v. tables. DLC

Two large mimeographed volumes of statistical information, the first relating to "Activités des entreprises" (311 p.), the second to "Secteur public" (263 p.). The introduction is signed by A. Vesse, who had been chief of the Service de la Statistique of Cameroun from 1952-59.

1123. *Le Cameroun*; aspect géographique, historique, touristique, économique et administratif du territoire. Paris, Alépée, 1953. 225 p. illus., maps. (Les Documents de France)

DT564.C33

An overall survey of economics, history, and culture, including charts and tables of statistics. Published under the auspices of the Minister of Public Works, this volume features excellent illustrations, those on the art of Cameroun being particularly noteworthy.

1124. CHAZELAS, VICTOR. *Territoires africains sous mandat de la France, Cameroun et Togo*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1931. 240 p. plates.

DT564.C4

Prepared by the Administrator-in-Chief of the Colonies for the International Colonial Exposition at Paris in 1931. The quarto volume presented a significant survey of physical and human geography, history, and administration by France under the League

of Nations mandate of the two Central African colonies.

1125. DIZIAIN, ROLAND, and A. CAMBON. *Étude sur la population du quartier New-Bell à Douala*. Yaoundé, Institut de recherches scientifiques du Cameroun, 1957. 268 p.

This monograph resulting from a sociological investigation of an urbanized group in Cameroun was reviewed in *Zaire*, v. 12, no. 7, 1958.

1126. DUGAST, I. *Inventaire ethnique du Sud-Cameroun*. Douala, 1949. 159 p. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire. Centre Cameroun. Série: Populations, no. 1)

DT570.D8

Ethnological analysis in systematic outline form, published as the first volume of a series of studies on population in the Cameroons. The writer identifies divisions and subdivisions of many tribes: pygmies, Duala, Bakundu, Bakoko and Basa, Bantu, Beti and Pahouins, Maka and Kozune, Soudano-Bantu, etc.

1127. DURRELL, GERALD M. *The overloaded ark*. New York, Viking Press, 1953. 238 p. illus. QL62.D85 1953a

There are many fascinating books of travel in the Cameroons, both French and English, ranging from Mary Kingsley's paper on *Ascent of Cameroons Peak*, read to the Liverpool Geographical Society on March 19, 1896, and chapters in André Gide's famous *Voyage au Congo* (see no. 1106), to this amusing account by a young British zoologist of his collecting trips. The success of his first book, with its spirited descriptions of adventures with small animals and with the Fon of Bafut and his pidgin-speaking subjects in the Cameroons grasslands, has led to two others both brought out simultaneously in British and American editions, *The Bafut Beagles* (1954) and *Zoo in My Luggage* (1960).

1128. EGERTON, F. CLEMENT C. *African majesty: a record of Bangangté in the French Cameroons*. New York, Scribner, 1939. 348 p.

DT584.B3E3

Detailed account of travel in the French Cameroons, including a stay of several months in the village of a petty native king. The writer's interests were anthropological, reflecting his study under Malinowski. He spoke highly of the French administration, praising its realism and sympathetic attitude toward native affairs.

1129. *Ethnographic survey of Africa*. London, International African Institute.

For general note on the series, see no. 270. The following two volumes in the Western Africa series are on the Cameroons:

*Peoples of the Central Cameroons*: Tikar, by Merram McCulloch; Bamum and Bamileke, by Margaret Littlewood; Banem, Bafia and Balom, by I. Dugast. 1954. 174 p. DT570.M35

*Coastal Bantu of the Cameroons*, by Edwin Ardener. 1956. 116 p. DT570.A7

1130. EUROPE FRANCE OUTREMER. *Le Cameroun; dix-huit mois après l'indépendance*. Paris, 1961. 56 p. illus. JV1801.E65, no. 379

Special issue, no. 379, juin 1961.

Devoted to political and economic situation of Cameroun after her first steps in independence. No. 398 of this magazine, March 1963, is also devoted to *Le Cameroun fédéral* (53 p.).

1131. FRANCE. *Rapport du Gouvernement française à l'Assemblée générale des Nations Unies sur l'administration du Cameroun placé sous la tutelle de la France*. Paris. annual. illus., maps. J805.R43

Title varies slightly.

Annual publication presented to the United Nations by France as Administering Power, offering a survey of economic, political, social, and educational status and progress in the trust territory of the French Cameroons. The "Annexe statistique," containing tables and graphic charts, and the second appendix, "Répertoire des principaux textes de lois et règlements généraux," fill almost half the large, well-illustrated volumes. Begun in the 1920's under the League of Nations, the last submitted covered the year 1957.

1132. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *Le Cameroun sous tutelle britannique à l'heure de plébiscite*. Paris, 1961. 13 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2.756, 1. mars 1961) D411.F67, no. 2756

1133. ———. *La République du Cameroun*. Paris, 1961. 56 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2.746, 19 jan. 1961) D411.F67, no. 2746

1134. FROELICH, Jean C. *Cameroun, Togo: territoires sous tutelle*. Avec 18 cartes et 24 photos. hors texte. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1956. ix, 217 p. illus., maps (L'Union française) DT564.F75

Bibliography: p. 209-212.

Clear, scientific, well-balanced survey. The coverage is of country, people, administration, economy, history, and culture.

1135. GARNIER, CHRISTINE, and JEAN FRALON. *Le fétichisme en Afrique noire (Togo-Cameroun)*. Paris, Payot, 1951. 213 p. illus., maps. (Bibliothèque scientifique) GN472.G3

In this anthropological study the two writers reviewed general aspects of fetichism, public cults, tribal cults, private beliefs, social classifications, magic practices. The illustrations are not photographs but drawings, which include maps, designs and artifacts, and tribesmen in ritual poses.

1136. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *The Cameroons under United Kingdom administration; report to the General Assembly of the United Nations on the administration of the Cameroons under United Kingdom trusteeship*. 1920-21+ London, H.M. Stationery Office. illus. annual. J805.N15

The strips of territory bordering on Nigeria known as Northern Cameroons and Southern Cameroons were placed under British administration after the First World War as a Co-mandate of the League of Nations. Reports were issued annually to the League of Nations until the Second World War; after 1946 to the United Nations. The final report was that covering the year 1959 (London, 1961. 209 p. fold. maps).

1137. INSTITUT DE RECHERCHES SCIENTIFIQUES DU CAMEROUN. *Recherches et études camerounaises*. année 1960+ Yaoundé. illus., plates, maps, diagrs. semiannual. DLC

Journal of the institute succeeding the Centre IFAN du Cameroun.

1138. KABERRY, PHYLLIS M. *Women of the grass-fields; a study of the economic position of women in Bamenda, British Cameroons*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1952. 220 p. illus., fold. map. (Gt. Brit. Colonial Office. Colonial research publications no. 14) JV33.G7A52, no. 14

Comprehensive account of the social and economic life of the peoples of one division of the British Cameroons. The author, reader in anthropology in the University of London, prepared the survey at the request of the Nigerian Government under the direction of the International African Institute, spending sev-



eral years in field work among the Bamenda. Her study is focused on the position of women who, as producers of the crops, exercise the real control of land rights. She discounts the complaints frequently voiced by Europeans that under the system of polygamy the status of women is very low, and considers that in the half-pagan, half-Christian society, the position of women "cannot, without distortion, be abstracted from the context of tribal life and placed in a cultural vacuum."

1139. KUCZYNSKI, ROBERT R. *Cameroons and Togoland; a demographic study*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1939. 579 p. HB3669.K8

This comprehensive technical work by a demographer connected with the British Foreign Office was undertaken under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs at the request of Lord Hailey, Director of the African Research Survey. Kuczynski had planned to survey all Africa south of the Sahara; his work was interrupted by the war. He treated here with the utmost thoroughness all phases of population studies of the former German territories of Togoland and the Cameroons, and their continuation under French and British mandates.

1140. LECOQ, RAYMOND. *Les Bamiléké. Une civilisation africaine*. Paris, Éditions africaines, 1953. 213 p. (chiefly illus.) (Présence africaine) DT570.L36

The Bamileke live where the savannah merges into the forest in the French Cameroun, and are known traditionally for their sculpture. The author had worked among the Bamileke, developing craft centers and encouraging the revival of the tribal arts, of which this largely pictorial monograph is a study.

1141. LEMBEZAT, BERTRAND. *Le Cameroun*. 3. ed., entièrement refondue et mise à jour. Paris, Éditions maritimes et coloniales, 1954. 208 p. illus., maps. (Terres lointaines) DT564.L4 1954

Bibliography: p. 202-206.

1142. ———. *Mukulehe; un clan montagnard du Nord-Cameroun; coutumes, rites, croyances*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1952. 228 p. illus. DT570.L4

By an official of France Overseas, who at the outset of his career had served in North Cameroun. The first-named work is a general survey. The 1952

study is of one very small pagan tribe, numbering hardly over 2,000, whose individual way of life is carried out in the high mountain country. In three parts, the first section of this book describes material culture; the second, social organization; the third, "The Supernatural World," religious beliefs and cult practices. In 1950 M. Lembezat had published a comparable study of a larger tribe of the same area, *Kirdi: les populations païennes du Nord-Cameroun* ([Cahors, A. Couesland] 1950. 101 p. Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, Centre Cameroun. Série: Populations, no. 2).

1143. MIGEOD, FREDERICK W. *Through British Cameroons*. London, Heath, Cranton, 1925. 285 p. illus. DT567.M5

The writer, formerly with the British Colonial Civil Service, was a specialist in the languages of West Africa. His book is an impersonal travel narrative, stressing ethnological observations. This is an excellent example of the older informative pictures of Africa written by British Colonial Officers.

1144. NJOYA, Sultan of the Bamun. *Histoire et coutumes des Bamun*, rédigées sous la direction du Sultan Njoya. Traduction du pasteur Henri Martin. Dakar, 1952. 271 p. 5 facsim. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, Centre du Cameroun. Série: Populations, no. 5) DT570.N574

Reproduction in French translation of a manuscript text preserved in the palace of the Sultan of Bamun—"a handsome volume, in a leather case, made up of separate leaves, most of which are ornamented with drawings in many colors. The writing is in the special characters of the Mun language, known today to only a few dozen individuals." The text was transcribed into Latin script and translated literally. It tells the history and traditions of the Bamun people in the words of their elders, passing from kings to customs and back again to kings and wars. "Les Blancs" are mentioned more or less incidentally, only a few of the later chapters of history referring to French administrators. The last pages tell of the palace built by the king, a building of 41 rooms, which surpasses all other houses of Cameroun. "When White men look at this palace, they admire it greatly and say no other king has constructed such a building. They say, these White men who come to the land of the Blacks, that they have never seen a palace like this one Njoya has built in the land of the Bamun."

1145. RUDIN, HARRY R. *Germans in the Cameroons, 1884-1914; a case study in modern imperialism*. New Haven, Yale University Press, 1938. 456 p. (Yale historical publications. Studies, xii) DT572.R8

Prepared originally as a doctoral dissertation, this work combines thorough documented research in published sources with on-the-spot investigations in the Cameroons. The author defended the German administration of the territory. The publication of this book, at the height of the German claims for restoration of the colonies, called forth critical reviews in the British press. Dr. Rudin, for many years a professor of history at Yale, has continued his interest in African studies in which he is an acknowledged authority.

1146. STOECKER, HELMUTH, ed. *Kamerun unter deutscher Kolonialherrschaft; Studien*. Berlin, Rütten & Loening, 1960+ v. 1+ (Schriftenreihe des Instituts für allgemeine Geschichte an der Humboldt-Universität Berlin, Bd. 5+) DLC

1147. TARDITS, CLAUDE. *Contribution à l'étude des populations bamileké de l'ouest Cameroun*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1960. 135 p. illus. (L'Homme d'outre-mer. Nouv. sér., no. 4) GN655.C3T3

Includes bibliography.

A work resulting from a survey of the chefferies in the prosperous agricultural regions of Southern Cameroons, sponsored by the Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer (ORSTOM).

1148. UNION DES PEUPLES CAMEROUNAIS. *L'U.P.C. dénonce l'érection des tortures en système au Kamerun*. Le Caire, Impr. "Des Auteurs," 1958. 72 p. DT574.U45

Published by the Direction de l'U.P.C., the leftist opposition group in the Cameroons headed by the late Félix-R. Moumié (sometimes called Union des Populations du Cameroun). From their headquarters in Cairo this group issued a fire of propaganda material. Another example is *The U.N. and the Kamerunian Problem* (1959? 71 p.).

1149. UNITED NATIONS. Trusteeship Council. Visiting Mission to the Trust Territories in West Africa. *Report on the Cameroons under French administration. 1949-58*. New York. 4 v. maps. DT564.U5

1150. ——— *Report on the Cameroons under United Kingdom administration. 1949-58*. New York. 4 v. maps. DT561.U498

The Visiting Missions examined political, social, and economic conditions in the Cameroons on four visits, 1949, 1952, 1955, and 1958, reporting to the Trusteeship Council, which passed the reports on to the General Assembly. For discussion of reports, and for the many other U.N. documents relating to the Cameroons, including innumerable petitions, see the annual *United Nations Documents Index* under "Cameroons." In the last visit in 1958 the Mission recommended steps to immediate independence, and on January 1, 1960, the French trusteeship became the Republic of Cameroun. The British trusteeship was terminated on October 1, 1961; in a plebiscite held under U.N. supervision on February 11, 1961, the Southern Cameroons voted to join the new Republic of Cameroun, and the Northern Cameroons voted for union with Northern Nigeria.

1151. WARMINGTON, W. A. *A West African trade union: a case study of the Cameroons Development Corporation Workers' Union and its relations with the employers*. London, Published for the Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research by the Oxford University Press, 1960. 150 p. HD6869.A29W3

"The history of industrial relations in the Cameroons plantations since 1947 gives evidence of a generally responsible attitude on the part of the C.D.C. Workers Union." The writer felt it impossible to generalize about attitudes of workers to the Union, but felt that in the main it had helped them.

1152. WILBOIS, JOSEPH. *Le Cameroun: les indigènes. — les colons. — les Missions. — l'administration française*. Paris, Payot, 1934. 256 p. (Collection d'études, de documents et de témoignages pour servir à l'histoire de notre temps). DT564.W5

By the Director of the School of Administration, a former administrator in Cameroun, this work typifies colonial thought of its time. The first and longest section, while not in scholarly anthropological language, is a clear ethnological analysis of the tribes of the region. It ends with an interesting "Esquisse d'un portrait d'un Noir," finding the African's logic to be quite the opposite of that of the white man.



# Central African Republic

1153. DAIGRE, Father. *Oubangui-Chari: témoignage sur son évolution, 1900-1940*. Issoudun, Indre, Dillen, 1947. 163 p. illus., maps.

DT546.3.D3

Personal story of the development of the territory, particularly in the light of the Catholic missions.

1154. ÉBOUÉ, FÉLIX ADOLPHE. *Les peuples de l'Oubangui-Chari; essai d'ethnographie, de linguistique et d'économie sociale*. Paris, Publications du Comité de l'Afrique française, 1933. 104 p. illus., music, maps, tables.

IEN

Governor Éboué served in his earlier career as an administrator in Ubangi-Shari. This book and a dictionary of one of the tribal languages resulted from his earnest study of the people under his care. André Gide met him during his famous voyage (see no. 1106) and commented on his competence and pleasant personality.

1155. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République Centrafricaine*. Paris, 1960. 49 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2733, 19 déc. 1960)

D411.F67, no. 2733

Background survey of general conditions, political and administrative institutions, economics and financial position, cultural and social evolution. The text of the Constitution is given in an appendix. (See note on this series, no. 846.)

A much shorter and more popularized survey is presented to the American public in a booklet from the French Embassy in New York, *The Central African Republic, Hour of Independence* (1960. 28 p. illus.).

1156. GAUZE, RENÉ. *Guide touristique et cynégétique de l'Oubangui-Chari*. Caen, Impr. Ozanne, 1958. 377 p. illus. (part col.) maps.

DT546.32.G3

The cover title of this book reads "Oubangui-Chari, paradis du tourisme cynégétique"—that is, paradise for hunters. As this suggests, the work is a guide-book addressed specifically to the big game hunters who frequent the sparsely habited forest "bush" of Central Africa. It includes itineraries and detailed sketch maps. Notes on history, geography, ethnology, and other general subjects are scattered through the text.

1157. JEAN, SUZANNE. *Les Langbas* (population d'Oubangui-Chari). Paris, Bureau pour le développement de la production agricole, 1960. 83 p. maps. (République Centrafricaine: Bureau d'études et de recherches du plan)

DLC

Analysis focused on the economic life of a small tribe in the Kembe district of the Central African Republic where an attempted palm-oil plantation had failed. The anthropologist author had lived for 9 months with the Langbas, studying the whole panorama of their culture and their lackadaisical economy. The book is reviewed by Hubert Deschamps in *Africa*, v. 31, April 1961, p. 191-192.

1158. KALCK, PIERRE. *Réalités oubanguiennes*. Préf. de Barthélemy Boganda. Paris, Éditions Berger-Levrault, 1959. 356 p. illus. (Mondes d'outre-mer. Série: Nations)

DT546.3.K3

Well-balanced study of the country now known as the Central African Republic. Writing in 1958, the author uses the name of the former colony then still in use, Ubangi-Shari (French, Oubangui-Chari). The work is in three parts, first on "Precolonialism," a combination of history and anthropology. The second part treats the French colonial territory, including a table of population as of 1958, with concentration on the socio-economic balance sheet. The last part, "L'Oubangui décolonisé," is analysis of economic and social problems facing the new government of the landlocked country. The book ends with a good classified bibliography (p. 329-343). The preface was written by the late President of the Grand Conseil de l'A.E.F., the Ubangi priest who was undisputed political leader of the territory from 1942, an ardent proponent of a "United States of Latin Africa." A frontispiece shows him on the rostrum of the Council, and the following flyleaf, added while the book was in press, announced "the most tragic of Ubangi realities," the death of Boganda in an airplane accident at Easter 1959.

1159. LEBEUF, JEAN PAUL. *Bangui* (Oubangui-Chari, A.E.F.) Paris, Éditions de l'Union française, 1954. 63 p. illus. (*His Rapport d'une enquête préliminaire dans les milieux urbains de la fédération*, 2)

DT546.342.L4

At head of title: Haut-Commissariat de la République en Afrique équatoriale française.

Monograph on demography and social conditions of the capital city of what is now the Central African Republic. The author has also studied conditions in Fort Lamy (see no. 1174)

1160. RÉPUBLIQUE CENTRAFRICAINE. *Formation et caractères des centres secondaires dans le Centre Oubangui*. Paris Bureau d'études et recherches du plan, 1960. 66 p. map.

One of the series of demographic studies undertaken under French official auspices in the midfifties. This work is reviewed in *Africa*, v. 32, January 1962, p. 80-81.

1161. TISSERANT, CHARLES. *Ce que j'ai connu de l'esclavage en Oubangui-Chari*. Paris, Société antiesclavagiste de France, 1955. 112 p. HT1399.U2T5

Distributed by Plon.

Father Tisserant of the Congregation du Saint-Esprit, a missionary priest in French Equatorial Africa since 1911, is an authority on the Banda language. In this account of slavery as he had seen it in operation

in the Islamized villages of Oubangui-Chari, much of the data related to his early years; however he claimed that slavery still existed under cover, despite the official abolition. He considers that it can be stopped only through the church.

1162. VERGIAT, ANTONIN M. *Moeurs et coutumes des Manjas*. Paris, Payot, 1937. 323 p. illus. (Bibliothèque scientifique)

GN652.M3V4

1163. ——— *Les rites secrets des primitifs de l'Oubangui*. Paris, Payot, 1936. 210 p. illus. (Bibliothèque scientifique)

GN652.U2V4

Two scholarly, detailed, and interesting ethnological studies of pagan tribes of Equatorial Africa. The illustrations include drawings and plates.

A study of a particular tribe in the north of the Central African Republic, *Les Gbaya*, by John Hilbert, has been published in Sweden in the lavishly presented series from the University of Uppsala (Stockholm, 1962. 141 p. *Studia ethnographica upsaliensa*, 19).

## Chad

1164. *Annuaire du Tchad*. 1958. Casablanca, Maroc, Éditions Fontana [1958?] 161 p. illus., part col. DT546.4.A75

This presentation of Chad, "constituting a practical guide to its economy, organization and structure," was prepared by the Chambre de Commerce, d'Agriculture et d'Industrie du Tchad in Fort-Lamy. It is an updating of a similar work brought out with the same title (the *Annuaire* is misleading) in 1950-51, to celebrate the 50th anniversary of the French installation in Chad. The book is handsomely made up and illustrated, with both pictures and advertising partly in color. Coverage is general, including geography, history and archaeology, territorial organization, and economy, and with chapters on the six largest cities.

1165. CABOT, JEAN, and ROLAND DIZIAIN. *Population du Moyen Logone (Tchad et Cameroun)*. Paris, Office de la recherche scientifique et technique outre-mer, 1955. 76 p. illus., plates, maps, diagrs., tables. (L'Homme d'outre-mer, no. 1)

DT546.4.C3

Socio-demographic analysis in the ORSTOM series.

1166. CAPOT-REY, ROBERT. *Borkou et Ounianga; étude de géographie régionale*. Alger, Institut d'études sahariennes, 1961.

New study by the Director of the Institute, leading authority on the Sahara. This monograph examines the present evolution and economic and human geography of the northern desert region of Chad.

1167. COBLENTZ, ALEX. *Goranes et Toubous des confins nord du Tchad; étude anthropologique et biologique*. Paris, 1961. 113 l.

DLC

1168. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République du Tchad*. Paris, 1960. 67 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2696, 31 août, 1960) D411.F67, no. 2696

Background study. See note on series, no. 846.

1169. GOURAUD, HENRI. *Zinder-Tchad; souvenirs d'un Africain*. Paris, Plon, 1944. 305 p. DT546.G65

Recollections by a French officer who had taken part in the conquest, exploration, and extension of



the French equatorial empire in Africa in the early years of the present century. In 1900 three French forces, from Algeria, the Sudan, and the Congo, met at Lake Chad to take occupation of the country. General Gouraud saw action for 6 years, from Zinder in the demi-desert of southern Niger to the rain forests of the Congo.

1170. GRIAULE, MARCEL. *Les Sao légendaires*. Paris, Gallimard, 1943. 168 p. DT546.4.G7

The late professor at the Sorbonne, director of the Musée de l'Homme, one of France's most noted writers on African archaeology of the between-wars period, had a delightful literary style to combine with his broad knowledge of African peoples and art. This book recounts an expedition below Lake Chad and along the Chari and Logone rivers, looking for archaeological remains of a pre-Islamic civilization (10th to 16th centuries) among whose monuments are the massive walls of the city of Goulfeil, as well as bronzes, pottery, carvings, etc. The Sao were predecessors of the Kotoko. Among his companions was the young ethnologist J. P. Lebeuf (q.v.)

1171. KRONENBERG, ANDREAS. *Die Teda von Tibesti*. Horn-Wien, Verlag F. Berger, 1958. 160 p., 29 plates. (Wiener Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte und Linguistik. Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Völkerkunde der Universität Wien. Bd. GN4.W5

Anthropological study of the Teda, or Tibbu, an Islamized Negroid people of the Central Sahara, disseminated from Lake Chad into the Fezzan. The Austrian author had studied the tribes at first hand in the winter of 1953-54. He looks first at their economy, which is part nomadic with herds of camels, sheep, goats, and cattle, and partly sedentary cultivation. Then he examines rites, mores, clan structure, cultus, and culture history. His documentation includes an extensive bibliography (p. 148-154).

A notable work on the language of the Teda is *Grammaire et textes Teda-Daza* by Charles and Marguerite LeCoeur, published by the Institut Français d'Afrique Noire in 1956 (Dakar. 394 p. Mémoires, no. 46). Charles LeCoeur had also prepared a *Dictionnaire ethnographique Teda* (Dakar, IFAN. 1950, 213 p. Mémoires, no. 9).

1172. LAPIE, PIERRE O. *My travels through Chad*; tr. by Leslie Bull. London, J. Murray, 1943. 198 p. DT546.4.L32

The writer, an adherent of General de Gaulle after the fall of France, followed Éboué as governor of the

colony of Chad in French Equatorial Africa, which had declared its allegiance to Free France. This book describes Lapie's trips of inspection from the capital, Fort Lamy, through the "bush," including much that he had learned of the history, manners, economy, and racial problems of the native tribes. It is concerned in part with wartime activities in Free French Africa and the formation of Leclerc's army.

The campaigns of General Leclerc, who led the French forces to North Africa from their base in Chad, are chronicled in a number of postwar books. One detailed account is by General F. J. J. Ingold, *L'Épopée Leclerc au Sahara, 1940-1943* (Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1945, 264 p.).

1173. LEBEUF, ANNIE M. D. *Les populations du Tchad* (nord du 10<sup>e</sup> parallèle) Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1959. 130 p. illus. (International African Institute. Monographies ethnologiques africaines)

DT546.4.L38

Includes bibliography.

In the Ethnographic Survey of Africa series (see no. 270), this study covers the Saharan populations of northern Chad (Téda and Daza), those of the ancient kingdoms of Kanem, Kotoko, Boulala, Baguirmi, Wadai (Ouadaï) and regrouped peoples, whom the author classifies collectively as the Yedina, Kinga, and Dadjo.

1174. LEBEUF, JEAN PAUL, and A. MASSON DETOURBET. *La civilisation du Tchad*; suivi d'une étude sur les bronzes sao, par Raymond Lantier. Paris, Payot, 1950. 198 p.

DT546.4.L4

Account for the layman of the finds of an archaeological expedition in Chad colony. The first-named writer had published several years before a spirited travel narrative describing the same country, *Quand l'or était vivant; aventures au Tchad* (Paris, J. Susse, 1945. 216 p.).

In 1954 a sociodemographic study by Lebeuf analyzed conditions in the capital city: *Fort-Lamy, Tchad, A.E.F.: rapport d'une enquête préliminaire dans les milieux urbains de la Fédération* (Paris, Éditions de l'Union française. 64 p. illus.). This scholar is in 1962 director of research at the Centre Nationale de Recherches Scientifiques, specializing in research in Chad. He has recently published a study of the remains of ancient civilizations in that region, *Archéologie tchadienne, les Sao du Cameroun et du Tchad* (Paris, Hermann, 1962. 146 p. plates), dated to coincide with exhibits arranged in honor of the visit of the President of Chad to Paris.

1175. LE ROUVREUR, ALBERT. *Sahéliens et sahariens du Tchad*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1962. 468 p. illus., maps. (L'Homme d'outre-mer) DLC

A broad study of the peoples of northern Tchad and the neighboring semiarid regions of Niger, their country, history, ways of life, economic resources and needs, and development under French rule. The writer, a marine officer, had served for 12 years as administrator in the Chad. The book is issued in a series sponsored by the Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer and the Conseil Supérieur des Recherches Sociologiques d'Outre-Mer.

1176. "Le Livre d'or d'Afrique: Le Tchad." *Afrique, revue mensuelle*, no. 10, mar. 1962: 15-65.

DLC

In this feature section there are offered 10 articles on the country "in the very heart of Africa," its past, its leadership and evolution, beginnings of modernization, economy, and prospects for the future. An-

nounced as Chapter 1 of "Le Livre d'or," this is presumably the first of a series of country studies.

1177. TILHO, A. J. M. *Le Tchad et la capture du Logone par le Niger*. Paris, Gauthier-Villars, 1947. 202 p. illus., maps. GB1668.C5T5

Scientific group of geography and geology of the Chad in the Logone and Shari river basins.

1178. URVOY, YVES F. *Histoire de l'empire du Bornou*. Paris, Larose, 1949. 166 p. (Mémoires de l'Institut français d'Afrique noire, no. 7) DT515.U7

Posthumously published monograph by a profound student of the past civilizations of the western Sudanic region. His many sources are named in footnote references, and he includes a 12-page index of peoples and tribes mentioned, many of them in the present boundaries of Chad. An earlier work by this scholar, *Les Bassins du Niger, étude de géographie physique et de paléogéographie* (Paris, Larose, 1942, 139 p. illus.) is also an authoritative study of the past of Sudanic Africa.

## Congo (Brazzaville)

1179. BALANDIER, GEORGES. *Sociologie des Brazzavilles noires*. Paris, A. Colin, 1955. 274 p. (Cahiers de la Fondation nationale des sciences politiques, 67) H31.F6, no. 67

Analysis of central African urbanization in the two centers which have grown up around the small European capital city of the former A.E.F. (In this connection, see also Professor Balandier's general work, no. 1099, and Soret, no. 1114.)

A study of the capital itself, less technical in style but authoritatively informative was by Roger Frey, *Brazzaville, capitale de l'A.E.F.* (Paris Encyclopédie mensuelle d'Outre-Mer, 1954. 155 p. illus., maps).

1180. BALLIF, NOEL. *Dancers of God*. Translated from the French by James Cameron. London, Sidgwick & Jackson, 1955. 213 p.

DT570.B33

Account of an expedition of French ethnologists and archaeologists who went into the deep forest of the Central Congo, their purpose being to film and record the life and particularly the dances of the shy pygmy people. M. Ballif writes of these primitive nomad hunters who live in encampments of leaf shelters, and of other tribes encountered along the

way. The "Ogowe-Congo Mission" brought back many articles of scientific value to the Musée de l'Homme as well as a large collection of recordings, and completed three documentary films.

Another French expedition to look for and photograph the pygmies in the Congo and Central African Republic was recorded by Lucien Demesse: *Quest for the Babingas; the World's Most Primitive Tribe* (translated by E. Noel Bowman. London, Souvenir Press, 1958. 187 p. illus.).

1181. CONGO (Brazzaville) *Un lustre d'action municipale; préfecture du Djoué, commune de Brazzaville de novembre 1956 à novembre 1961*. Brazzaville, 1961. 80 p.

DT546.29.A54

Typical of promotional publications now being issued by the new government. Another is *La République du Congo a trois ans* (1961. 60 p. illus.).

1182. DEVAUGES, ROLAND. *Le chômage à Brazzaville en 1957; étude sociologique*. Paris, Office de la recherche scientifique et technique outre-mer [ORSTOM] 1958. 258 p. (Documents du Conseil supérieur des recherches sociologiques outre-mer) DLC



Report on neighborhoods of Poto-Poto. Part 1, manpower, living conditions of unemployed, and summary of their reactions; Part 2, "internal" description analyzing groups of unemployed, their means of survival, their education; Part 3, possibilities of reclassing the unemployed. Based on questionnaires and interviews. A conclusion summarizes results.

1183. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La République du Congo*. Paris, 1960. 38 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2732, 17 déc. 1960). D411.F67, no. 2732  
Background study, See series note, no. 846.

1184. SAINTOYANT, JULES F. *L'affaire du Congo 1905*. Paris, Éditions de l'Épi, 1960. 162 p. DT546.S3

Reminiscences based on the writer's manuscript report when as a young officer he accompanied General Savorgnan de Brazza in a mission of inquiry into conditions in the French Congo. The mission had

been prompted by a furore in Paris over stories of French atrocities.

1185. SORET, MARCEL. *Les Kongo nord-occidentaux*, avec la collaboration d'André Jacquot pour les questions de linguistique. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1959. 144 p. illus. (Monographies ethnologiques africaines)

DT639.S6

Includes bibliography.

One of the French series of the International African Institute's Ethnographical Survey of Africa, this study is by a specialist on demography and ethnology of equatorial Africa. The peoples surveyed in the monograph (following the pattern of the series, for which see no. 270) are on both banks of the Congo, chiefly in the former A.E.F. While the sources in the long bibliography (p. 117-139) include Belgian studies, those of the French regions predominate. M. Soret has published also several ethnic maps of A.E.F. (Brazzaville, Secrétariat général de l'A.E.F., 1957).

## Gabon

1186. BALANDIER, GEORGES, and J.-CL. PAUVERT. *Les villages gabonais*, aspects démographiques, économiques, sociologiques, projets de modernisation. Brazzaville, 1952. 86 p. 2 plates, maps, diags. (Mémoires de l'Institut d'études centrafricaines, no. 5)

HN810.G3B3

Socio-demographic analysis of the Bapounou and Fang villages of Gabon. The Institut d'Études Centrafricaines was established under the auspices of the Office de la Recherche Scientifique Outre-Mer (later ORSTOM) to undertake scientific studies of the human and material resources of the territories of A.E.F.

1187. BRIAULT, MAURICE. *Sur les pistes de l'A.E.F.* Paris, Éditions Alsatia, 1945. 285 p. DT546.1.B7

1188. ———. *Dans la forêt du Gabon; études et scènes africaines*. Paris, B. Grasset, 1930. 195 p. DT546.B65

By an anthropologist priest of long experience in Central Africa, these two charmingly written books give revealing pictures of the country and its inhabitants.

1189. CHARBONNIER, FRANÇOIS, ed. *Gabon, terre d'avenir*. Paris, Encyclopédie d'outremer, 1957. 151 p. illus. DT546.1.C5

Includes bibliographies.

An informative popular survey. Following each descriptive chapter (history, surface and vegetation, wild life, depopulation, etc.) there is given a well-chosen excerpt from one of the important source works.

1190. DESCHAMPS, HUBERT J. *Traditions orales et archives au Gabon; contribution à l'ethno-histoire*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1962. 172 p. illus. (L'Homme d'outre-mer. Nouv. sér. no. 6) DT546.142.D4

Systematic review of the ethno-history of the various peoples and groups of Gabon according to the oral traditions given the author by informants of each tribe. Insofar as possible the factors explained are name and linguistic relationships, origins, slavery and commerce, crafts, social institutions (a very sketchy outline), religion and magic. Other features are mentioned where and as available. This survey fills 140 pages; then a second part (p. 143-155) contains a listing of archives. An appendix (p. 161-167) is a biobibliography of the

grand old man of Gabonese literature, the Abbé Raponda-Walker (his books, papers in the vernacular, articles).

1191. FRANCE. DIRECTION DE LA DOCUMENTATION. *La République gabonaise*. Paris, 1961. 56 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2795, 10 juillet 1961) D411.F67, no. 2795

Background survey in this official documentation series. A popular presentation for American readers is offered in an illustrated brochure put out by the French Embassy in New York: *The Gabonese Republic: Hour of Independence* (1961. 31 p. illus.).

1192. GABON. Chambre de commerce, d'agriculture, de l'industrie et des mines. *Flash on Gabon*. Libreville, 1962. 50 p. illus. DLC-AFR

Informative booklet picturing Gabon's policy and economy, issued in an English edition.

1193. GABON. Direction de l'information. *Réalités gabonaises*. Paris, Diloutremer, 1960. 188 p. fig. DLC

Brochure explaining present economic and social aspects and administrative organization.

1194. "Le Gabon devient l'un des grands producteurs mondiaux de manganèse." *Europe France outremer*, v. 40, oct. 1962: 17-59.

JV1801.E65, v.40

This issue of the Paris review is devoted in major part to articles describing the economic advance of Gabon, which, in addition to its great wealth in forest products, is now developing important mineral resources.

1195. HOWE, RUSSELL W. *Theirs the darkness*. London, H. Jenkins, 1956. 190 p. illus.

DT546.1.H6

Narrative of a journalist who traveled into the interior of Gabon, the "forest of eternal twilight," in which he found an old-style French colony, the Africans "pleasantly lazy and untouched by ambition." He varied his accounts of native fetishist villages and ways with admiring comment on the French colonials, officials, priests, traders, prospectors, etc., who coped effectively with difficult circumstances. He went to Dr. Schweitzer's hospital at Lambarene, of which he gave a critical account as "deliberately old-fashioned," even dirty. An interesting feature is a description of the "Christ M'Bouti," an African sect which parodies the Catholic faith. For Mr. Howe's later work, see no. 486.

1196. LASSERRE, GUY. *Libreville, la ville et sa région (Gabon, A.E.F.)*; étude de géographie humaine. Paris, A. Colin, 1958. 346 p. illus., maps, diagr., tables. (Cahiers de la Fondation nationale des sciences politiques, 98)

H31.F6, no. 98

Includes bibliography.

This valuable study is in three parts. First, "Présentation de Libreville," with geographical description of the area, the European city, and African villages, and an historical account of the city's growth. The second part is on economic activities—communications and links with the surrounding regions and their rural societies, Libreville as the capital and port, and the exploitation of the forests and wood industries. Last are chapters on the European and African populations and life of Libreville and culture contacts therein.

1197. "Le Livre d'or d'Afrique: Le Gabon." *Afrique, revue mensuelle*, no. 15, août 1962: 10-55.

DLC

Feature section on Gabon, which the editors call a "modern Eldorado" because of its great potential wealth in tropical woods, the newly discovered oil, and mineral deposits. Articles cover these aspects, also sketch ethnology, history, vital statistics, communications, and industrialization.

1198. SCHWEITZER, ALBERT. *On the edge of the primeval forest, and More from the primeval forest*; experiences and observations of a doctor in equatorial Africa. New York, Macmillan, 1948. 222 p. BV3625.G3S363

1199. ———. *African notebook*; tr. by Mrs. C. E. B. Russell. New York, Holt, 1939. 144 p.

DT546.1.S42

1200. ———. *The animal world of Albert Schweitzer*; jungle insights into reverence for life, tr. and ed. with an introduction by Charles R. Joy. Boston, Beacon Press, 1950. 207 p.

QL50.S367

One of the acknowledged great thinkers of the modern world, Dr. Schweitzer left his post as professor of theology in the University of Strasbourg to go in 1913 as a missionary doctor to the forests of Gabon, where he founded a hospital with the proceeds of his celebrated organ recitals and his authoritative book on Johann Sebastian Bach. His first narrative of his hospital and the primitive people to whom he gave his dedicated work was published in 1921 (English edition, London, 1922). The second, of which the first



English edition was called *Forest Hospital at Lambarene*, came in 1931; these two are published in the 1948 single edition. Like the third, *African Notebook*, they are classics of tropical Africa: deeply understanding and tender interpretation through the eyes of a scientist, philosopher, and lover of mankind. Also a lover of animals, as is shown in the third title, a compilation of extracts from Dr. Schweitzer's books in which animals are mentioned.

It is worth noting that Dr. Schweitzer does not subscribe to the view that the white man by exploitation has brought about disaster to the native. When the Africans commented to him on European misrule, his answer was that without the help of the white man, they would all be dead, from their senseless intertribal wars, their superstition and diseases.

Of the many books on Dr. Schweitzer that have appeared of recent years, we mention one only, a matter-of-fact story by Frederick Franck, *Days with Albert Schweitzer: A Lambarene Landscape* (New York, Holt, 1959. 178 p.). The writer, a dentist and artist (see his general picture of Africa, no. 33), had gone under MEDICO sponsorship to spend some months working at the Lambarene Hospital, and his straightforward account is illustrated with his own line drawings.

1201. TRILLES, H. *Les pygmées de la forêt équatoriale*. Paris, Bloud & Gay, 1932. 530 p. (Anthropos; collection internationale de monographie ethnologiques . . . t. 3, fasc. 4) GN1.A72, t.3

The text of a course given at the Institut Catholique de Paris by the missionary anthropologist, Father Trilles. This is one of the largest and most renowned

studies of the Negrillos among whom the author had worked in Gabon.

1202. WALKER, ANDRÉ RAPONDA. *Notes d'histoire du Gabon*; avec une introduction, des cartes et des notes de Marcel Soret. Montpellier, Impr. Charité, 1960. 158 p. illus. (Mémoires de Institut d'Études Centrafricaines, Brazzaville, no. 9) DT546.15.W3

The author, "the venerable abbé Walker, descendant of the Mpongwe kings of Gabon," has made valuable contributions to the collection of oral tradition in Gabon. This book is reviewed in *Africa*, v. 31, April 1961, p. 192-193.

1203. ——— and ROGER SILLANS. *Les plantes utiles du Gabon*. Paris, Lechevalier, 1961. 614 p. illus., plates, map. (Collection "Encyclopédie biologique," 56) DLC

Monumental inventory comprising all plants of the rich forests of Gabon, over 8,000 species, with vernacular names as well as full scientific descriptions, bibliography, tables, and indexes.

The first Mémoire published by the Institut d'Études Centrafricaines was on this subject, *Les Légumineuses du Gabon*, by Fr. Pellegrin (Brazzaville, 1948. 284 p.).

1204. ——— *Rites et croyances des peuples du Gabon*, essai sur les pratiques religieuses d'autrefois et d'aujourd'hui. Paris, Présence africaine, 1962. 379 p. illus. (Enquêtes et études.) DLC

# MALAGASY REPUBLIC

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1205. DUIGNAN, PETER. *Madagascar* (the Malagasy Republic), a list of materials in the African collections of Stanford University and the Hoover Institution on War, Revolution, and Peace. Stanford, Calif., Hoover Institution on War, Revolution and Peace, Stanford University, 1962. 25 p. (*Its Bibliographic series*, 9) Z3701.D8

Despite its limitation to works in the Stanford University libraries, this provides a helpful guide to the significant literature on Madagascar, including French and Malagasy government documents and serials.

1206. GRANDIDIER, GUILLAUME. *Bibliographie de Madagascar*. Paris, Comité de Madagascar, etc. 1906-57. 3 v. Z3701.G85

The first comprehensive listing in Volume 1 of this bibliography by a French specialist on Madagascar covered the literature from the earliest Portuguese records in 1500 to 1904. It is in two parts, the first alphabetical by author, the second of anonymous works and periodicals. Volume 2, issued as a volume of the *Bibliographie générale des colonies françaises* by G. Grandidier and E. Joucla, was published in 1935 by the Société d'Éditions Géographiques, Maritimes et Coloniales and covered writings from 1904-33. A third volume, published in 1957 by the Institut de Recherche Scientifique de Madagascar and covering writings from 1934-55, opens with a tribute to the author, who died in 1956. Volume 2 is arranged like Volume 1, but in Volume 3onyms and authors' names are together in alphabetical arrangement. All have author and subject indexes, referring to the consecutively numbered references, which amount in the 3 volumes to 23,003 items.

## GENERAL

(including Anthropology, History, and Political Development)

1207. ACADÉMIE MALGACHE, Tananarive. *Mémoires*. fasc. 1+ 1926+ Tananarive, G. Pitot de la Beaujardière. irregular. DT469.M21A4

The monographic *Mémoires* series of the Académie deal variously with history, sociology, anthropology, archeology, natural sciences, and other disciplines relating to Madagascar. The inside cover pages of each number carry the full list of titles in the series. A typical contribution is Fasc. no. 40, by Louis Michel, *Moeurs et coutumes des Bara* (1957. 192 p.).

Another series being published by the Académie since 1939 is *Collection de documents concernant Madagascar et les pays voisins*, the first volume of which was edited by M. Raymond Decary.

1208. ANDRIAMANJATO, RICHARD. *Le tsiny et le tody dans la pensée malgache*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1957. 100 p. (Collection Présence africaine) GN490.A5

' Ethnological monograph about two concepts of Malagasy thought which are related to inherited customs and responsibility. "Tsiny" the author defines as something like a sense of blame, exterior and more particularly interior, resulting from violation of one of the innumerable rules of traditional society. "Tody" he explains as a word used with the adjective "good," to signify arrival, presumably through dangers, and with divine aid.

1209. *Annuaire national de la République malgache 1961-62*. Tananarive, Paris, Inf-Europe, 1962. 260 p. illus., maps.

Yearbook including official organization, political history, economic and touristic registers.

Perhaps better known is the time-honored commercial directory, *Annuaire Noria Océan Indien: Madagascar, la Réunion, Maurice, guide économique* (Paris, Maisonneuve et Larose. 1962 ed., 364 p. illus., maps, plans).



1210. BOITEAU, PIERRE. *Contribution à l'histoire de la Nation malgache*. Paris, Éditions sociales, 1958. 431 p. maps. (La Culture et les hommes) DT469.M27B6

A history in which the focus, in the precolonial period, under French rule, and in the struggle for independence, is on the Malagasy rather than the European, from a Marxist viewpoint. The author, a scientist and former director of the Botanical and Zoological Park of Tananarive, expressed the hope that his book might be read by the people of the Malagasy Republic themselves.

1211. BOUDRY, ROBERT. *Jean Joseph Rabearivelo et la mort*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1958. 84 p. PQ3989.R23Z6

Pamphlet biography of a Malagasy poet and nationalist leader of the thirties who committed suicide in 1937.

1212. CONDOMINAS, GEORGES. *Fokon'olona et collectivités rurales en Imerina*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1961. 234 p. (L'Homme d'outre-mer. Nouv. sér. no. 4) DT469.M37T34

Prepared under the auspices of ORSTOM (Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer). The ancient system of the clan community in the Malagasy villages had been largely broken up by the Merina despotism of the late 18th and 19th centuries, and was being revived by the French authorities as cooperatives (CAR, Collectivités autochtones rurales, and CRAM, Communautés rurales autochtones modernisées), following the Constitution of 1946 and the *loi-cadre* of 1957. M. Condominas had been commissioned by Governor Deschamps to make this intensive sociological study in 1955. Approximately half the text is devoted to background history, the second half to present-day Merina society. The work is basic for the renovation of local life now being undertaken by the Republic.

1213. DECARY, RAYMOND. *Moëurs et coutumes des Malgaches*. Paris, Payot, 1951. 280 p. illus. (Collection de documents et de témoignages pour servir à l'histoire de notre temps) DT469.M26D33

M. Decary, former chief colonial administrator in Madagascar, is an authority on history, geography, and anthropology of the country. In this book he explained many aspects of Malagasy ways and manners, illustrating them with his own drawings. His first chapter recited names and estimated numbers

and possible origins of the many clans—he uses this term rather than tribes. Several chapters follow describing family and social life of the Malagasy, their material culture, methods of work, industry and trade, games and amusements, customary law. Then come accounts of the omnipresent sorcery and witch doctor medicine, of religious ideas, and the prominent cult of the dead. The last chapter touched on social “evolution” in the half-century of European influence.

Among other works by M. Decary are:

- L'Androy (Extrême sud de Madagascar) Essai de monographie régionale*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1930–1933. 2 v.

A comprehensive study of the physical and human geography, history, and civilization of the extreme south of the island, where live the most primitive of the cattle-raising tribes, the last to come under French control.

- La Faune malgache: son rôle dans les croyances et les usages indigènes*. Paris, Payot, 1950. 236 p. illus. (Bibliothèque scientifique).

An interesting combination of natural history and folklore.

- L'habitat à Madagascar*. Pau, Impr. Marrimpouey jeune, 1958. 80 p. illus.

A study of Malagasy house structure.

- L'Île Nosy Bé de Madagascar; histoire d'une colonisation*. Paris, Éditions maritimes et d'outre-mer, 1960. 225 p.

A chapter in the early history of French occupation, written largely from study of unpublished documents in the archives of Madagascar and Paris.

1214. DESCHAMPS, HUBERT J. *Les Antaisaka*. Tananarive, Pilot de la Beaujardièrre, 1936. 220 p. illus., maps. GN661.M2D4

Technical ethnological study of the Antaisaka, the most numerous people of the southeast coast of Madagascar, analyzing human geography, rites and customs, and history of this tribe of primitive fishers, hunters, and rice farmers. The writer, who had already been a colonial administrator in Madagascar for ten years (later governor), presented this book as a thesis for the degree of *docteur es lettres* at the École Nationale de la France d'Outre-Mer (since 1959 Institut des Hautes Études d'Outre-Mer), where he now teaches the history and sociology of Madagascar.

1215. ———. *Histoire de Madagascar*. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1960. 348 p. illus. (Mondes d'outre-mer) DT469.M27D4

Up-to-date and authoritative history from the obscure origins of the island to the immediate present of the Malagasy Republic.

1216. ——— *Les pirates à Madagascar au XVII<sup>e</sup> et XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècles.* Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1949. 244 p. (Histoires d'outre-mer, 1)  
DT469.M31D48

Interesting account of one of the picturesque episodes in the history of Madagascar, the pirate settlements of the 17th and 18th centuries. M. Deschamps included some account of the activities and fates of the pirates beyond the island; a startling illustration, taken like the other plates from old engravings, appears as one opens the book in the middle, "le capitaine Kid" hanging in chains on the shore of the Thames.

Among the more recent of Professor Deschamps' many writings on Madagascar is *Les Migrations intérieures passées et présentes à Madagascar* (Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1959. 278 p.).

1217. FAUBLÉE, JACQUES. *La cohésion des sociétés bara.* Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1954. 158 p.  
DT469.M264F3

1218. ——— *Les esprits de la vie à Madagascar.* Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1954. 139 p.  
4BL/466

These two monographs were presented as socio-anthropological papers at the Institut d'Ethnologie in Paris. This author's earlier résumé of *Ethnographie de Madagascar* (Paris, La Nouvelle Édition, 1946, 169 p.) was published in the Catholic series of introductory books, *La France d'outre-mer*. The writer had done fieldwork among the Bara of Madagascar, and offered a collection of *Récits bara* with text in the Bara language and French translation as his thesis at the Institut d'Ethnologie in Paris in 1947.

1219. FRANCE. Ambassade. New York. Service de la presse et d'information. *The Comoro islands.* New York, 1962. 15 p. illus. (part col.)  
DLC-AFR

Pictures and basic description of these islands which are governed as a dependency of Madagascar.

1220. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *Les investissements et les problèmes de développement dans l'économie de la République malgache.* Paris, 1960. 66 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2707, 13 oct. 1960)  
D411.F67, no. 2707

1221. ——— *La République malgache.* Paris, 1960. 61 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2737, 23 déc. 1960).  
D411.F67, no. 2737

Background surveys. See general note on series, no. 846.

1222. FRÈRE, SUZANNE. *Madagascar, panorama de l'Androy.* Paris, Éditions Aframpe, 1958. 200 p. illus.  
DT469.M37A55

In spite of its handsome appearance, with large, clear type, fine plates including several in color, easy untechnical style, this work is a serious socio-economic study of the farthest south region of Madagascar and its peoples. It includes many tabulated vital statistics.

1223. GALLIENI, JOSEPH S. *Gallieni pacificateur; écrits coloniaux de Gallieni, choix de textes et notes, par Hubert Deschamps et Paul Chauvet.* Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1949. 379 p.  
DC342.8.G2A3

Reports, papers, and speeches of the great general whose career in subduing, reconciling, and administering France's colonial empire included Senegal and Sudan (1876–88), Tonkin (1892–96), and most notably, Madagascar (1896–1905). The material on Madagascar takes up more than half the text (p. 169–373).

A good account of Gallieni's work in Madagascar is that of General Jean Charbonneau, *Gallieni à Madagascar* (Paris, Nouvelles éditions latines, 1950. 189 p. Bibliothèque de l'Union française), based on documents and unpublished material gathered by Gallieni's daughter-in-law.

1224. GRANDIDIER, ALFRED, ed. *Collection des ouvrages anciens concernant Madagascar, édité par Alfred et Guillaume Grandidier.* Paris, Comité de Madagascar, 1903–20. 9 v.  
DT469.M22G7

1225. ——— *Histoire physique, naturelle et politique de Madagascar, par Alfred Grandidier [and others]* Paris, Impr. nationale, 1875 [v. 39, 1955]  
QH195.M2G7

Great names connected with the study of Madagascar are those of the Grandidiers, *pere et fils*. Alfred Grandidier, geographer and traveler, pioneered in explorations and mapping in the center and south of the Grand Island in 1865–70, read its ancient history, and studied its people. The monumental series of the *Histoire physique*, carried on for many years after his death in 1921 with the cooperation of the leading natural scientists, was edited with the aid of his son, Guillaume. The first volume, *Histoire de la géographie* (1875–1892, 1 v. of text, 2 v. of maps) was by Alfred; Volume 4, *Ethnographie*, was by Alfred and Guillaume (2 v. in 1908, v. 3 in 1917, v. 4, by Guillaume, in 1928). Volume 5, *Histoire politique et coloniale*, was by Guillaume. The *Collection des ouvrages anciens*, in the editing of which father and



son collaborated, brought together texts of European travelers relative to Madagascar from 1500 to 1800.

1226. GRANDIDIER, GUILLAUME. *Le Myre de Vilers, Duchesne, Gallieni; quarante années de l'histoire de Madagascar, 1880-1920*. Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1923. 252 p. DC342.8.L4G7

Authoritative account of the French conquest, pacification, and organization of Madagascar.

This same subject was treated in more popular style by two prominent travel writers and interpreters of the French colonial empire, the brothers Marius and Ary Leblond: *Madagascar, création française* (Paris, Plon, 1934). Their literary essay in ethnography, *La Grande Ile de Madagascar: les régions et les races, les mœurs, les fêtes, la poésie, l'art du boeuf et du riz, les ressources naturelles*, was published first in 1907; a new edition was brought out in 1946 (Paris, Éditions de Flore. 270 p. Collection "Ici, l'empire."). Another notable work on Madagascar of the interwar period was by the French literary man Maurice Martin du Gard: *Voyage de Madagascar, suivi de Une escale à la Réunion et Visite volante à Maurice* (Paris, Flammarion, 1934. 281 p.).

1227. HARDYMAN, J. T. *Madagascar on the move*. London, Livingstone Press, 1950. 224 p. BV3625.M2H26

Mr. Hardyman, who was born in Madagascar and had worked there as a Protestant missionary for many years, was among the few who wrote in English about the revolt of 1947-48. This book is primarily concerned with the work of the church in the Madagascar mission field, but includes background description of Malagasy life and social structure and some account of the rebellion and its effects, as well as a plea for economic and spiritual aid.

1228. HOWE, SONIA E. *The drama of Madagascar*. London, Methuen, 1938. 359 p. DT469.M2H6 1938

The Russian-born writer was a student of French colonial history and biographer of Lyautey. Her scholarly account of Madagascar from the 18th century to the conclusion of its pacification by Gallieni is less a historical narrative than a study of the interrelations between Europe and the Great Island. She gave much attention to Anglo-French diplomacy in the second half of the 19th century when rivalry was intense between the British missionaries and the French for influence at the Hova court; her admiration for the work and policy of Gallieni was intense—the right man in the right place. The book was published first in French and honored by the Académie Française.

1229. KENT, RAYMOND K. *From Madagascar to the Malagasy Republic*. New York, Praeger, 1962. 182 p. (Books that matter)

DT469.M34K4

This is the only comprehensive modern study of Madagascar in the English language, and a work for which students must be profoundly grateful. Mr. Kent considers Madagascar "an Africa in miniature, with a similar history and similar problems." He outlines geography and demography, then gives in short "profiles" the history, of the various racial groups and their kingdoms, culminating in the 19th century with the highly organized Merina state, whose sway over much of the island extended from its absolute monarchy down to its characterising village communal organization, the fokon'olona. Following the French conquest in the 1880's, the colonial period is examined from the notable administration of the great General Gallieni through the two world wars, the rise of nationalism, and the revolt of 1947. The third section, "Madagascar and France: The New Phase—1948-60," records the progress of the country to independent status, with economic problems not completely solved by the ten-year plan subsidized by FIDES in 1949. In his general conclusions the author comments on the virtues of the decentralized system which differentiates the Malagasy Republic from most of the other new African states, and on the beneficial influence the country has come to exert on the other French-speaking states. In Mr. Kent's notes on sources (p. 160-180), much of the useful literature on Madagascar is cited.

1230. LINTON, RALPH. *The Tanala, a hill tribe of Madagascar*. Chicago, Field Museum of Natural History, 1933. 334 p. (Publication 317. Anthropological series, v. 22) GN661.M2L5

Ethnological survey by a prominent American anthropologist, a specialist in Malayan cultures, who had been a member of a Marshall Field Expedition to Madagascar in 1926. His monograph is a study of an Eastern Madagascar mountain tribe whose name means "People of the Forest," and whose archaic culture offers interesting evidences of the interaction of Malayan and African influences.

1231. MALAGASY REPUBLIC. Service de l'information. *Madagascar*. [Tananarive?] unpagged. illus. 32 cm. DLC

The first public relations offering of the new Government to reach the Library of Congress, this is a

handsome brochure with articles by leading authorities, Decary, Faublée, etc.

The Service de l'Information publishes also the lavishly illustrated quarterly magazine of general coverage, *Revue de Madagascar*, begun in 1933 by the Service de l'Information Générale of the French Administration.

1232. MANNONI, DOMINIQUE O. *Prospero and Caliban*; the psychology of colonization. Translated by Pamela Powesland. New York, Praeger, 1956. 218 p. (Books that matter) DT469.M264M313

Bibliography: p. 210-214.

In this book, the French original of which appeared in 1950 under the title *Psychologie de la colonisation*, the writer studied the Malagasy from the viewpoint of the psychoanalyst. Using the Prospero-Caliban and Crusoe-Man Friday relationships as symbols, M. Mannoni argued that the primitive emerging from the security of the old static, ancestor-worshipping society, attaches himself as a dependent to the European; the latter, like Prospero, finds his own "inferiority complex" reassured by the colonial situation. The phases of this dependence as exemplified in Malagasy society are interestingly explored, as well as the effect of paternal authority on the French colonists. The writer explained the revolution of 1947-48 as ultimately due to the threat of abandonment which the Malagasy felt in the postwar gestures toward fuller self-government initiated in the French Union. M. Mannoni's study has been widely commented on in subsequent French works regarding colonialism in general and Madagascar in particular.

1233. *Le Peuple malgache*; monographies ethnologiques, dirigées par Hubert Deschamps. Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1959+  
DLC

No. 1 Les Malgaches du sud-est; Antemoro, Antesaika, Antambajoaka, peuples de Farafangana (Antefasi, Zafisoro, Sahavoai, Sahafatra), par Hubert Deschamps et Suzanne Vianes. 118 p.

The first volume of a new series complementary to the Monographies ethnologiques africaines of the International African Institute. It is written more in essay style than the Ethnographic Survey volumes, but covers the same ground. Sketch maps show the distribution and migrations of peoples in southeastern Madagascar.

1234. PIDOUX, EDMOND. *Madagascar, maître à son bord*. Lausanne, Éditions du Soc, 1962. 243 p. illus.

Not available for examination. Announced in *Schweitzer Buch*, Nov. 1962.

1235. PROSPERI, FRANCO. *Vanished continent*; an Italian expedition to the Comoro Islands. Translated by David Moore. London, Hutchinson, 1957. 232 p. illus. QL5.S653  
Translation of *Gran Comora*.

Until 1946 the Comoro Archipelago was attached to the Government General of Madagascar. Since that time it has been an overseas department of France. This account of an Italian zoological expedition is the only full-length work available in English regarding the Comoro islands. In most French studies it is treated conjointly with Madagascar and Réunion.

1236. RABEMANANJARA, JACQUES. *Nationalisme et problèmes malgaches*. Paris, Présence africaine, 1959. 219 p. DT469.M26R3

The author, a distinguished French-educated poet and writer, was one of the three Malagasy elected as Deputies to the French Assembly after promulgation of the 1946 Constitution, and a founder of the Mouvement Démocratique de la Renovation Malgache which sparked the rebellion of 1947. Exiled to France, M. Rabemananjara worked with Alioune Diop on *Présence africaine*. In 1960, after independence, he returned to Madagascar and was named Minister of State for the National Economy. In this volume he discusses his country and its aims, political, cultural, and religious—he is a devout Catholic. A long final section, "Rythmes malgaches: chants et danses folkloriques," contains his poems used in radio programs. M. Rabemananjara's short poems appear in most anthologies of African literature. Of his longer works, the poetic drama, *Boutriers de l'aurore*, (Boatmen of the Dawn), a tragedy of Malagasy history, is perhaps the best known (published by Présence africaine, Paris, 1957. 231 p.).

1237. RABEMANANJARA, RAYMOND W. *Madagascar sous la Renovation malgache*. Paris, Tananarive, 1953. 211 p. DT469.M34R3

Account of the MDRM and its platform, which is set forth as an expression of the ideals of the French Union, by the brother of Jacques Rabemananjara. It is propaganda writing, as is also an earlier book by this author, *Madagascar: histoire de la nation malgache* (Paris, P. Lachaud, 1952. 237 p. illus.).

The Malagasy leaders of the rebellion of 1947-48 were represented in their trial by the lawyer Pierre Stibbe. His brochure, *Justice pour les Malgaches* (Paris, Éditions du Seuil, 1954. 142 p. Coll. Esprit), is sympathetic with nationalist aims.



1238. ROBEQUAIN, CHARLES. *Madagascar et les bases dispersées de l'Union française; Comores, Réunion, Antilles et Guyane, Terres Océaniques, Côte des Somalis, Saint-Pierre et Miquelon, Îles Australes, Terre Adélie.* Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1958. 586 p. illus. (Pays d'outre-mer; colonies, empires, pays autonomes, 4. ser.; Géographie de l'Union française, 3) DT469.M28R6

Comprehensive work in an authoritative series of physical and economic geographies.

1239. RUUD, JÖRGEN. *Taboo; a study of the Malagasy fady.* Oslo, Oslo University Press, 1959. 313 p. illus., map. GN494.R85

London edition, G. Allen & Unwin, 1960, has subtitle: "A Study of Malagasy Customs and Beliefs."

Reviewed in *Africa*, April 1961.

1240. SIBREE, JAMES. *Fifty years in Madagascar; personal experiences of mission life and work.* London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1924. 359 p. BV3625.M2S5

Writing in English on Madagascar was for long almost the exclusive province of the Protestant missionaries. British interest in the island began with the missions of the London Missionary Society in 1820, which had remarkable success in the early years and a spectacular period of martyrdom during the persecutions of Queen Ranavalona from 1835 to 1861. Mr. Sibree himself went out to Madagascar in 1863, after the country had been opened again to Christians, with the assignment of building four "Martyr Memorial Churches," for which the money had been raised in England through the efforts of the pioneer missionary, the Rev. William Ellis, whose *History of Madagascar* (1838) and *Three Visits to Madagascar* (1859) introduced the country to the English public. Mr. Sibree devoted his life to the Madagascar mission field, and wrote a number of books on the history and natural history of the island in the 1890's. This narrative, originally planned to be called "Lights and Shadows on Church Life in Madagascar," pictures the country from a churchman's viewpoint over fifty years.

One of the few exceptions in English writing to the virtual monopoly of the missionaries regarding Madagascar during its first century of contact with the West was the thorough two-volume work of Captain Samuel Pasfield Oliver, *Madagascar: An Historical and Descriptive Account of the Island and Its Former Dependencies* (London, Macmillan, 1886. 569, 562 p.). It included history, topography, natural history, economy, administration, a long bibliography of writings in French and English from the earliest travels to con-

temporary documents (v. 2, p. 223-259), and a full account of the Franco-Malagasy war of 1885 by which the French took over the island in 1886.

A French missionary history explaining the Catholic side of Christian effort in Madagascar is by R. P. Pierre Lhande: *Madagascar* (Paris, Plon, 1932, 265 p.).

1241. TANANARIVE, MALAGASY REPUBLIC. Institut de recherche scientifique de la République malgache. *Mémoires. Série C. Sciences humaines.* t. 1+ 1952+ [Paris] AS657.T3

This series of *Mémoires* of the prominent Institute (formerly Institut Scientifique de Madagascar) whose other series are concerned with natural sciences, began with a careful statistical study of the capital city, *Tananarive, étude d'économie urbaine*, by H. Fournier (t. 1, fasc. 1, 1952, p. 29-157. illus.).

1242. THIOUT, MICHEL. *Madagascar et l'âme malgache.* Paris, Horizons de France, 1961. 157 p. illus. (Visages du monde) DT469.M26T5

A popular study of Madagascar, published after independence and prefaced by the President Philibert Tsiranana. Handsomely illustrated, sympathetic, and charmingly written, the work presents the island in the favorable light of public relations.

Another attractive new account is a little book in the Collections Microcosme, *Madagascar*, by Solange Thierry (Paris, Éditions du Seuil, 1961. 189 p. illus. Petit planète, 28).

## ECONOMICS

1243. BÉHIER, JEAN. *Contribution à la minéralogie de Madagascar.* Tananarive, Impr. officielle, 1960. 78 p. (Annales géologiques de Madagascar, fasc., no. 29) QE330.A3, fasc. 29

1244. BESAIRIE, HENRI. *Les ressources minérales de Madagascar.* Tananarive, Impr. nationale, 1961. 116 p. (Annales géologiques de Madagascar, fasc., no. 30)

QE330.A3, fasc. 30

1245. CHEVALIER, LOUIS. *Madagascar; populations et ressources.* Paris, Presses universitaires de France, 1952. 212 p. maps, tables (Institut national d'études démographiques. Travaux et documents, cahier n° 15) HB3668.M3C45

Bibliography: p. 208-212.

Much-quoted study by a population expert who had gone to Madagascar with a mission sent to consider the island as a possible place for settlement of European refugees. Use was made of local records of adminis-

trative districts and other unpublished sources in a careful and comprehensive assessment of demographic factors, resources, and agricultural techniques and limitations. Although still underpopulated, Madagascar had started a vigorous upswing in vital statistics, due to scientific medical advances—particularly spraying with DDT for malarial mosquito control and consequent reduction of mortality figures. Native agriculture had been notoriously wasteful of soil, and large-scale provision of capital equipment and basic public services were essential if an equilibrium was to be maintained between population and resources. Mr. Chevalier advised against immigration of European peasant settlers, but recommended intensified efforts in the modernization and development plan and controlled immigration of technical agriculturalists. This study is abstracted in the *Geographical Review*, v. 43, October 1953, p. 566–567.

1246. GASSE, VICTOR. *Le régime foncier a Madagascar et en Afrique*. Paris, Librairie autonome, 1959. 351 p. DLC

Study of land usage. Not yet available for examination.

1247. GENDARME, RENÉ. *L'économie de Madagascar; diagnostic et perspectives de développement*. Paris, Éditions Cujas, 1960. 209 p. (Études malgaches, 1) HC547.M2G4

Survey by a professor of the Institut des Hautes Études de Tananarive, providing a scientific basis for the work of the Centre d'Études Économiques which is planning for the economic development of the new Republic. The work, fortified with many statistical

tables and charts, presents first the Malagasy position in world economy, features of underdevelopment, and fundamental handicaps, including those of sociocultural and political nature. The second part analyzes plans for development along all lines.

1248. *Madagascar à travers ses provinces: aspect géographique, historique, touristique, économique et administratif du territoire*. Paris, Alépée, 1954. 402 p. illus. (Les Documents de France) DT469.M28M2

Systematic survey from official sources of geography, history, economy, and administration of the five provinces, Tananarive, Fianarantsoa, Tamatave, Majunga, and Tulear.

A more technical study in physical, human, and economic geography was written as a text for advanced study by a professor at the University of Marseilles, Hildebert Isnard: *Madagascar* (Paris, Colin, 1955. 215 p. illus. Collection Armand Colin, no. 301. Section de géographie). The last part of the text considered Madagascar as a colony for French settlement and economic development.

1249. MINELLE, JEAN. *L'agriculture à Madagascar; géographie, climatologie, géologie, conditions d'exploitation des sols, botanique malgache, productions agricoles, colonisation et paysan-nat autochtone, possibilités agricoles, conjoncture et économie agricole, statistiques agricoles*. Paris, Librairie M. Rivière, 1959. 233 p. tables. S471.M23M5

Bibliography: p. 371–375.

Basic study by a specialist in tropical agriculture who had worked in Madagascar for 25 years as an agronomist, and had firsthand knowledge of all regions.

## Réunion

1250. *Annuaire statistique de la Réunion, 1955–58*. Paris, 1959.

This yearbook, which does not seem to have reached American libraries or French bibliographies, is noted as a reference for Réunion in the *Statesman's Year Book* of 1962–63. It is presumably published by or for the Service de la Statistique of Réunion.

1251. BRUNET, AUGUSTE. *Trois cents ans de colonisation française à l'Île Bourbon, La Réunion*. Paris, Éditions de l'Empire français, 1948. 178 p. illus., maps. (Bibliothèque des connaissances coloniales, 1) DT469.R43B7

By a former colonial governor, this concise little book is concerned entirely with French colonial history, from the taking possession of the uninhabited island in the mid-17th century to the adherence of Réunion to the Free French cause in 1940.

1252. BUSSIÈRE, PIERRE. *Étude géologique de l'Île de la Réunion, campagne 1957*. Travaux du Plan d'équipement, opérations nouvelles. Tananarive, Service géologique, 1958. 64 p. (Territoire de Madagascar. Travaux du Bureau géologique, no. 84)

QE330.A25, no. 84



1253. DESCHAMPS, HUBERT J. *Côte des Somalis, Réunion, Inde*, par Hubert Deschamps, Raymond Decary, et André Ménard. Paris, Berger-Levrault, 1948. 209 p. plates, maps. (L'Union française) DT411.D48

Bibliographies at end of each section.

This general study of outlying French possessions is considered among the most authoritative of recent works. Professor Deschamps was for some years governor of French Somaliland, and is thoroughly intimate with the country. M. Decary, an authority on Madagascar, is also an expert on Réunion.

1254. LEBLOND, MARIUS. *L'Île enchantée, la Réunion*, par Marius et Ary Leblond. Paris, Librairie de la Revue française, A. Redier, 1931. 156 p. illus. (Toutes nos colonies, no. 7) DT469.R4L4

1255. ———. *Les Îles soeurs; ou, Le paradis retrouvé. La Réunion-Maurice, "Éden de la Mer des Indes."* Paris, Éditions Alsatia, 1946. 251 p. illus. DT469.R4L43

The brothers Ary and Marius Leblond were prominent interpreters of the colonial empire in the between-war years. The first of these two books, written jointly, combines description with history and general survey in a charming narrative. The second, by Marius Leblond alone, goes at some length into the history of the two islands, both settled and held by the French and their followers until England took over Mauritius by the Treaty of Paris in 1814.

1256. LOUGNON, ALBERT. *L'Île Bourbon pendant la Régence; Desforges-Boucher, les débuts du café.* Paris, Larose, 1957. 371 p. maps,

plans. (Bibliothèque d'histoire des Mascareignes) DT469.R45L6 1957

Bibliography: p. 29–55.

Study of the 18th century history of Réunion, based on exhaustive research in manuscript archives. After a short introduction on his general theme the author gives a chapter to a long classified bibliography of writings on Réunion, to which, however, he says his work owes little.

1257. MONFREID, HENRI DE. *Mon aventure à l'île des forbans.* Paris, B. Grasset, 1958. 158 p. illus. DT469.R4M6

The adventurer of the Red Sea, who has his home at Obock near Djibuti (see under Côte des Somalis) visited his son in Réunion, and in this account gave some attention to description of the island and its past (he naturally took delight in its having been a haunt of pirates as well as in his own adventures). The work is not scholarly.

1258. PERSPECTIVES D'OUTRE MER. *Océan Indien: Madagascar, île de la Réunion, île Maurice, Côte française des Somalis.* Monaco, 1959–1962. DLC

Special issues no. 30, août–sept. 1959, no. 36, oct. 1960, no. 46–47, juill.–août 1962.

Three special numbers of this illustrated review have been devoted since independence to the former and present French possessions in the Indian Ocean. Fully half of each issue consists of feature articles on Madagascar, but both carry also useful economic and descriptive surveys of Réunion, since 1946 an overseas département of France, and the territory of the Somali Coast. For the latter, the 1959 issue ends with a hopeful article on "Tourisme en Côte française des Somalis."

## French Somaliland

1259. AUBERT DE LA RUE, EDGAR. *La Somalie française.* Paris, Gallimard, 1939. illus. 162 p. (Géographie humaine . . . t. 14) DT411.A8

The author, a literary man and expert photographer as well as a geographer, was interested in meteorology, natural history, and other physical sciences connected with country studies as well as with description. This is one of the few books of general coverage dealing exclusively with French Somaliland.

1260. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *La Côte française des Somalis.* Paris, 1961. 52 p. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 2774, 29 avr. 1961) D411.F67, no. 2774

Basic background survey. For note on this series, see no. 846.

1261. ———. *Djibouti et le chemin de fer franco-éthiopien.* Paris, 1945. (Notes et études documentaires, no. 112) D411.F67, no. 112

Official background on the Italo-French contest for control of the railroad from Djibouti to Addis Ababa. In the less restrained account by Henri de Monfreid (see below), the first paragraph explains that the Coast of the Somalis, so called because no Somalis live there [the tribes he says, are Danakil and Issa], "is reduced in actuality to Djibouti. This territory has in fact no other resources than those which it draws from its port, designed solely for the commerce of a landlocked country which does not belong to it."

1262. *La France de l'Océan Indien: Madagascar, les Comores, la Réunion, la Côte française des Somalis, l'Inde française* [par Raymond Decary et al.] Paris, Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1952. 314 p. illus., maps. (Collection Terres lointaines, 8) DT469.M26F7

In this volume of a popular series describing French overseas possessions, 21 pages (277–297) are given to an account of French Somaliland by a colonial official, Robert Lemoyne. The 23,000 square km. area of desert and rock that constitutes the territory, he says, "in spite of the proverbial severity of its climate and the hostility of its nature—or perhaps even because of these traits—presents the striking epitome of French colonial experience." The 50,000-odd nomadic tribesmen, Danakil and Somali, who are the native inhabitants, were until the French arrival almost entirely pastoral; now a few have become sedentary. The only industry of the country is salt production, though interest is shown in possible oil. The strategic port of Djibouti, on the Gulf of Aden commanding the approaches to the Red Sea, is of importance also as terminus of the railway to the center of Ethiopia. Established in 1888 and made the seat of government of the new colony in 1892, it was credited by this writer with a settled population in 1950 of 2,500 Europeans, 10,000 Somali, 1,200 Danakil, 3,000 Arab citizens, and a floating population of Somalis and Arabs of 6,000 or more.

1263. *Guide-annuaire de la Côte des Somalis. Djibouti, Djibouti-Publicité*, 1959.

This work, probably a business directory, is listed as a reference source on French Somaliland in the

*Statesmen's Year Book* of 1962–63. It does not appear in the *Bibliographie de la France* for 1959–61, and does not seem to be available in American libraries.

1264. LIPPMANN, ALPHONSE. *Guerriers et sorciers en Somalie*. Paris, Hachette, 1953. 256 p. (Choses vues, aventures vécues) DT411.L5

Personal adventures of a young colonial officer in the tribal wars of Issa and Danakil in French Somaliland during the twenties, Mr. Lippmann arrived in 1921 in "le Djibouti de Monfreid" (see below). His narrative is concerned with the interior and the border strife between tribes in Somaliland, Ethiopia, and Eritrea.

1265. *Mer Rouge, Afrique orientale: études sociologiques et linguistiques—préhistoire—explorations—perspectives d'avenir*. Paris, Peyronnet, 1959. 342 p. illus. (Cahiers de l'Afrique et l'Asie, 5) DT365.M42

This scholarly work, the preface of which is written by Professor Hubert J. Deschamps, contains three chapters on French Somaliland: "Les Populations de la Côte française des Somalis," by R. Muller (p. 45–102); "Les Danakil du Cercle de Tadjoura," by M. Albospeyre (p. 103–162); "Le Destin des Somalis," by R. Lamy (p. 163–212). A bibliography of some length includes Somalia and the former British Somaliland as well as French Somaliland (p. 336–339).

A short section of official documents relating to French Somaliland is included in the Library of Congress list (see under Somalia, no. 1423).

1266. MONFREID, HENRI DE. *Le radeau de la Méduse: ou, Comment fut sauvé Djibouti*. Paris, B. Grasset, 1958. 187 p. DT411.M6

M. de Monfreid began his adventures of sailing and exploration along the coasts of the Red Sea in 1910, and in 1931 started publication of the long series of his sensational adventures, many of which took place in and around Djibouti. The first two of his gory books are available in English translation: *Secrets of the Red Sea* (London, Faber & Faber, 1934. 317 p.), and *Hashish* (Harmondsworth, Penguin Books, 1946. 285 p.). The present work is an account, only partially in the first person, of strife between Italy and France over Djibouti before, during, and after the Italo-Ethiopian War.



# EAST AFRICA

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1267. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *East Africa: general, ethnography, sociology, linguistics*, compiled by Ruth Jones, librarian, with the assistance of a panel of consultants. London, 1960. 62 l. (Africa bibliography series: ethnography, sociology, linguistics, and related subjects). Z3516.I47

See note on series, no. 262.

1268. U.S. Library of Congress. African Section. *Official publications of British East Africa*. Washington, General Reference and Bibliography Division, Reference Dept., Library of Congress, 1960+ 4 v. Z3582.U5

Pt. 1. *The East Africa High Commission and other regional documents*, compiled by Helen F. Conover. 1960. 67 p.

Pt. 2. *Tanganyika*, compiled by Audrey A. Walker. 1962. 134 p.

Pt. 3. *Kenya and Zanzibar*, compiled by Audrey A. Walker. 1963. 162 p.

Pt. 4. *Uganda*, compiled by Audrey A. Walker. 1963. 100 p.

This group of lists in the Library of Congress series of official publications of African governments covers as extensively as possible from printed reference sources the publications of the national governments and British documents directly relating to these countries; also, in the case of Tanganyika, documents of the United Nations. In view of the availability of these lists, official publications for East Africa are in general omitted from the present bibliography.

## GENERAL

(including History, etc.)

1269. COLE, SONIA M. *The prehistory of East Africa*. Harmondsworth, Middlesex, Penguin Books, 1954. 301 p. illus., maps. (Pelican books, A 316) GN776.A15C6

Bibliography: p. 286-294.

Summarization of archeological knowledge regarding early man and prehistoric cultures of Kenya, Uganda, Tanganyika, Somaliland, and Ethiopia. One chapter describes the East African rock paintings. Some brief account is given of climatic conditions and of modern inhabitants. An abbreviated and simplified version was published by Macmillan for the East African Literature Bureau in their pamphlet series for African readers: *Early Man in East Africa* (London, 1958. 104 p.).

1270. COUPLAND, Sir REGINALD. *East Africa and its invaders*, from the earliest times to the death of Seyyid Said in 1856. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1938. 584 p. DT365.C58

1271. ———. *The exploitation of East Africa, 1856-1890; the slave trade and the scramble*. London, Faber & Faber, 1939. 507 p.

DT365.C6

Two standard histories of the Arab and Portuguese empires in East Africa, the final suppression of the Arab slave traffic in the late 19th century following the great discoveries, the rivalry between France and Britain, and the partition of East Africa between the European powers. Coupland's other works on the history of Southern and Eastern Africa are mentioned in the section on history of Rhodesia and Nyasaland.

1272. DUNDAS, Sir CHARLES. *African crossroads*. London, Macmillan; New York, St. Martin's Press, 1955. 242 p. illus. DT431.D8

The writer, who retired from his post as wartime governor of Uganda in 1945, had gone out to Kenya in 1908 and had spent 37 years in the Colonial Service, in East Africa and in the Bahamas. His great interest was in development of the African tribes, notably in Tanganyika, where he helped lay the foundations of native administration after the British acquired the trusteeship of the former German territory. This book of reminiscences expresses the typical colonial officer's deep sense of responsibility for the primitive peoples emerging into the modern world under British guardianship.

1273. HICKMAN, GLADYS M., and W. H. G. DICKINS. *The lands and peoples of East Africa; a school certificate geography.* London, Longmans, Green, 1960. 232 p. illus.

DT365.H5

This textbook ends with questions from the Cambridge Oversea School Certificate Examination papers for East Africa. It is designed for teachers and students, and commented on as "indispensable."

1274. HOLLINGSWORTH, LAWRENCE W. *The Asians of East Africa.* London, Macmillan, 1960. 174 p. illus.

DT429.H68

Concise historical survey of the Indian population of East Africa, in a small book designed for African schools.

A paper on the same subject, *Asians in East Africa*, by George Delf, is published in 1963 by the Oxford University Press (London, New York. 73 p.).

1275. HUXLEY, ELSPETH. *The sorcerer's apprentice; a journey through East Africa.* London, Chatto & Windus, 1948. 366 p. illus.

DT365.H89

Mrs. Huxley, who was born and brought up in Kenya and is one of East Africa's leading European writers, recorded in this book a long trip made in 1947 to observe changes since the war. The title, taken from the fable of the apprentice unable to control the magic he had partially learned, expresses her anxiety over whether the Africans may not be overwhelmed by too sudden contact with modern civilization.

The impressions of a sympathetic and observant traveler over a decade later are set down in Father Paul Foster's *White to Move? A Portrait of East Africa Today* (London, Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1961. 199 p. illus.). The author, a Roman Catholic priest, has taught history at Makerere College since 1955, traveling through the territories in vacation time. He ends with a warning that the main object of the new African culture is power, whereas the aim of education should be perception, in which he finds Africans lacking.

1276. INGHAM, KENNETH. *A history of East Africa.* New York, Praeger, 1963. 470 p. illus., maps. London edition, Longmans, Green, 1962.

DT365.I5

By the author of a notable study of Uganda, this is the most comprehensive modern history of the entire region of East Africa. It was reviewed in *Africa Report* of October 1962.

In 1963 the first volume of a new *History of East Africa*, edited by Roland Oliver and Gervase Mathew, has been published by the Clarendon Press, Oxford.

1277. JACKSON, Sir FREDERICK J. *Early days in East Africa.* London, E. Arnold, 1930. 399 p. plates, map.

DT12.J3

Published the year after the death of the author, who had been in East Africa from 1884 to 1917, going out first with Rider Haggard for hunting, exploration, and naturalist studies, and becoming an official and administrator, in a career that ended as Governor of Uganda from 1911-17. His reminiscences are full of first contacts of black men with white.

1278. LUGARD, FREDERICK J. D., baron. *The diaries of Lord Lugard.* Edited by Margery Perham; assistant editor: Mary Bull. Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Press, 1959. 3 v. ports., maps, facsim. (Northwestern University [Evanston, Ill.] African studies, no. 3)

DT433.L8A3 1959

Contents.—v. 1. East Africa, November, 1889 to December 1890.—v. 2. East Africa, December 1890 to December 1891.—v. 3. East Africa, January 1892 to August 1892.

See also Miss Perham's biography, *Lugard* (no. 81). Lord Lugard's own narrative of his campaigns as representative of the Imperial East African Company in suppression of the slave trade is a primary source for the history of this period: *The Rise of Our East African Empire; Early Efforts in Nyasaland and Uganda* (Edinburgh, London, Blackwood, 1893. 2 v. illus.)

1279. MACMILLAN, MONA. *Introducing East Africa.* 2d rev. ed. London, Faber & Faber, 1955. 314 p. illus.

DT365.M15 1955

Mrs. Macmillan, the wife of the former Director of Colonial Studies at the University of St. Andrews, had accompanied him on trips to East Africa in 1949 and 1950. The first edition of her travel narrative—on the first trip Uganda and Kenya, the second Tanganyika—appeared in 1952. It gives a fluent description of the country and people, interwoven with facts of geography and history, "setting the stage," as she said in her introduction to the new edition, for the drama to come. She attempted little political or economic analysis or speculation.

1280. MARSH, ZOË, and G. W. KINGSNORTH. *An introduction to the history of East Africa.* 2d ed. Cambridge, University Press, 1961. 273 p. illus.

DT365.M35 1961

A history by specialists, couched in simple style for use by African students preparing for school certificate examinations. The first edition was in 1957.



Another historical text also published by the Cambridge University Press is a selection by Miss Marsh of extracts from primary sources, *East Africa, through Contemporary Records* (1961. 214 p.). A prelude is Dr. Leakey's announcement in 1959 of the finding of the skull of *Zinjanthropus*, considered the oldest human skull yet found. Then comes the first written reference, in Herodotus, and so on through Arabic sources, Portuguese voyages of the 16th century, etc., etc., up to the Kenya Land Commission in 1932.

1281. MITCHELL, Sir PHILIP E. *African afterthoughts*. London, Hutchinson, 1954. 287 p. illus. DT432.M55

Sir Philip Mitchell retired from the governorship of Kenya in June 1952, after 40 years in the Colonial Service, almost entirely spent in East Africa. His reminiscences of his career in Nyasaland, Tanganyika, Uganda, and Kenya cover much of the development of colonial government in East Africa.

1282. MOOREHEAD, ALAN. *The White Nile*. New York, Harper, 1960. 385 p. illus., maps. DT117.M6

Retelling of the history of exploration in East and Central Africa in a vivid narrative that is concentrated on, but goes well beyond, the quest for the sources of the Nile from the expedition of Burton and Speke in 1856 until the end of the century. Mr. Moorehead, who won his reputation with his reporting of the war in the Mediterranean and North African theaters, has turned to Africa in the latest of his many well-regarded books: *No Room in the Ark* (see no. 455), the present work, and in 1962 a complementary history, *The Blue Nile* (see under Ethiopia, no. 1528).

1283. MÜLLER, FRITZ F. *Deutschland, Zanzibar, Ostafrika; Geschichte einer deutschen Kolonialeroberung, 1884-1890*. Berlin, Rütten & Loening, 1959. 581 p. illus. DT445.M8  
Bibliography, p. 555-567.

History of the German conquest in East Africa, chiefly through the instrumentation of Carl Peters and the Deutsche Ost-Afrikanische Gesellschaft, under whose charter he carried out expeditions and operations on the coast and in the interior. The well-documented study covers diplomatic moves in Berlin and London as well as the detailed account of actions in East Africa. Of Peters the writer says forthrightly, he "was a psychopath." Events are carried up to the establishment in 1891 of the crown colony of German East Africa (Tanganyika).

1284. RICHARDS, CHARLES G., ed. *East African explorers*. Selected and introduced by Charles Richards and James Place. London, Oxford University Press, 1960. 356 p. illus. (The World's classics, 572) DT365.R5

Compilation in a pocket-size volume of outstanding passages from the books and journals of the 19th century explorers of East Africa: Krapf and Rebmann, Charles New, Livingstone and Stanley, Burton, Speke, and Grant, Samuel W. Baker, Joseph Thomson, Gaetano Casati, Count Teleki and L. von Höhnelt, J. W. Gregory, Lord Lugard, J. R. L. Macdonald, Herbert Austin. The works from which the extracts are taken are noted, but there is no combined listing of the well-known sources, most of which are available in large American libraries in the original editions or as reprints: e.g., Sir Samuel W. Baker, *The Albert N'Yanza, Great Basin of the Nile and Explorations of the Nile Sources*, and Sir Richard F. Burton, *The Lake Regions of Central Africa, A Picture of Exploration*, both reprinted in two-volume editions by Horizon Press, New York, in 1962.

The East African Literature Bureau has been active in publishing or in associating with other publishers in the production of books on the explorers and other important figures in East African history. Several are in a series, *Early Travelers in East Africa*; this includes Dr. Richards' *Krapf: Missionary and Explorer, Burton and Lake Tanganyika, Count Teleki and the Discovery of Lakes Rudolf and Stefani*, and by E. A. Loftus, *Speke and the Nile Source, Baker and Lake Albert, Thomson through Masailand, Gregory and the Great Rift Valley*. These and other works on East African history, customs, and languages are listed in the Catalogue of the Bureau (Box 30022, Nairobi).

1285. VERE-HODGE, EDWARD R. *Imperial British East Africa Company*. London, Published in association with the East African Literature Bureau by Macmillan, 1960. 95 p. map. HF3508.A3V4

When the Imperial British East Africa Company was established and given a concession by the Sultan of Zanzibar, Barghash, in 1887, the chartered companies were still considered "a useful instrument of colonial expansion." The taking over of Uganda for the Company by Lugard forms the central theme of this brief historical account. The writer explains that he has used mainly published sources which include, besides Volume I of Miss Perham's *Lugard* and Sir Reginald Coupland's *The Exploitation of East Africa*, the history by a company official—apologist—P. L. McDermott, *British East Africa, or IBEA: A History of the Formation and Work of the Imperial British*

*East Africa Company* (London, Chapman & Hall, 1893. 382 p.).

1286. *The Year book and guide to East Africa*. 1950+ London, S. Low, Marston. annual. Edited by A. Gordon-Brown and issued by the Union-Castle Mail Steamship Co. 1962 ed. 340 p., 16 maps, 80 p. advertising.

DT365.A1Y4

Handy volume of general information for travelers, with historical sections, handbook analysis by territories, chapters on safari and mountaineering, travel sections in baedeker style, and various chapters of miscellaneous information. Separately indexed notes on fauna were discontinued after 1957. There are indexes of geographical names and subjects at the beginning of the book.

The leading conservative organ of news and political and economic content is *East Africa and Rhodesia*, a weekly published in London. The editor, F. S. Joelson, is known for a number of books on East Africa. The chief daily of Nairobi, which often represents the white settlers' viewpoint, is the well-known *East African Standard*.

## POLITICS AND ECONOMICS

1287. THE ECONOMIST, London. *The economy of East Africa*: a study of trends, prepared by the Economist Intelligence Unit for the East African Railways and Harbours Administration. Nairobi, East African Railways and Harbours Administration, 1955. 237 p.

HC517.E2E34

Requested as an independent opinion from skilled investigators to aid future planning with regard to prospects for large capital investments. The General Manager of the Railways and Harbours Administration spoke in his foreword of a program entailing loan expenditures of between 40 and 50 million pounds sterling over the next 5 years. The report reviewed the activities of the Railways and Harbours Administration during over a half century, then studied likely trends in trade, agriculture, and industry, analyzing them by specific products and aspects of development. The editors summarized the main conclusions as to changes to be expected in exports, imports, international and interterritorial traffic, emphasizing that the economy is chiefly agricultural; they ended with a concise restatement of the principal argument, that the big opportunities for industrial investment would probably occur between 1955 and 1960, with investment thereafter geared to the advance of agricultural production.

An interesting paper in this connection was by Irene S. Van Dongen, *The British East African Transport Complex* (Chicago, 1954. 172 p.) (University of Chicago. Dept. of Geography. Research paper no. 38).

1288. FORD, VICTOR C. R. *The trade of Lake Victoria*: a geographical study. Kampala, East African Institute of Social Research, 1955. 65 p. maps, tables. (East African studies, no. 3)

HF3899.V5F6

Based on a 1950 thesis, this economic study used as source material the records of the railways and harbors and other documentary files of Lake Victoria as well as its author's firsthand investigations. Mr. Ford gave an account of the geographical setting and the geographical history of the trade, including the dhow trade which is now in eclipse, and analyzed present trade by specific commodities. He was concerned to show that there is little local interchange, but that traffic is with the world outside, and no common culture has developed in the various regions around the shores of the big lake.

1289. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Future of East Africa High Commission services*. Report of the London discussions, June, 1961. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1961. 18 p. (Cmnd 1433)

JQ2945.A55 1961

Known also as the White Paper on the East African Common Services Organization, this report outlined the change in name and functions decided on for the former intraterritorial body as Tanganyika and Uganda neared independence.

1290. GT. BRIT. East Africa Royal Commission. *Report [1953-1955]* London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1955. 482 p. (Cmd. 9475) Sir Hugh Dow, chairman.

HN792.5.A55

This report was presented by a Commission appointed at the request of the Governors of East Africa to inquire into measures to increase national income and to raise the standards of living of the populations of the East African territories, Africans, Europeans, and Indians alike. Criticized in some quarters as being so strongly against collective action and for individual enterprise that it was called by commentators "Adam Smith in East Africa," its central thesis was that restrictions to free competition of the races as to goods, services, and land must be done away with, notably as regards rights of African landholders outside tribal areas. The Commissioners recommended that barriers to the free exchange of land be progressively removed, and called for establishment of Development Boards



to plan the use of land and the rehabilitation of overcrowded areas.

A summarization of the main points made by the Royal Commission and an explanation of their implications were given in a brochure by Philip Mason, *A New Deal in East Africa*, published by the Royal Institute of International Affairs (London, 1955. 37 p.). Mr. Mason declared that the Report marked a revolution in colonial history, offering to "a people who have so far felt themselves rejected a real share in that form of property-owning democracy now current in Western Europe."

Among official papers published in connection with the report, the following demand special note:

GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Despatches from the Governors of Kenya, Uganda and Tanganyika and from the Administrator, East Africa High Commission*, commenting on the East Africa Royal Commission, 1953-1955, report. London, H. M. Stationery Off., 1956. 196 p. tables. (Cmd. 9801)

HN792.5.A553

——— *Commentary on the despatches from the Governors of Kenya, Uganda and Tanganyika and the Administrator, East Africa High Commission*, on the East Africa Royal Commission, 1953-1955, report. London, 1956. 6 p. (Cmd. 9804)

HN792.5.A552

A Conference on African Land Tenure in East and Central Africa which stemmed from the Royal Commission Report was held at Arusha, Tanganyika, in February 1956; its report was published for the Colonial Office by H. M. Stationery Office, *African Land Tenure: Report . . .* (London, 1956. 44 p.).

1291. GT. BRIT. East African Economic and Fiscal Commission. *East Africa; report*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1961. 83 p. J. Raisman, chairman. DLC

Prepared in connection with the discussions of the future of the East African Common Services Organisation, this document is concerned chiefly with arrangements for a common market area in East Africa.

1292. HILL, MERVYN F. *Permanent way; the story of the Kenya and Uganda Railway, being the official history of the development of the transport system in Kenya and Uganda*. Nairobi, East African Railways and Harbours, 1950. xii, 582 p. plates, maps.

HE3420.K45H5

1293. ——— *The story of the Tanganyika railways*. Nairobi, East African Railways and Harbours, 1960. 295 p. (Permanent way, vol. 2)

The author is editor of the *Kenya Weekly News*. His comprehensive history was commissioned by the East African Railways and Harbours and prepared largely from their official records. The building of the railways opened up East Africa to commerce and

to the influence of British civilization, and, incidentally, first brought an Indian population to East Africa.

A famous book connected with the building of the Kenya and Uganda Railway is *The Man-Eaters of Tsavo and Other East African Adventures*, by John H. Patterson (London, Macmillan, 1947. 351 p.). The book was first published in 1907; its author was the engineer who in 1898 succeeded in killing the two lions that had so terrorized the Indian gangs working on the railroad that work stopped for 3 weeks.

1294. MATHESON, J. K., and E. W. BOVILL, eds. *East African agriculture: a short survey of the agriculture of Kenya, Uganda, Tanganyika, and Zanzibar, and of its principal products*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1950. 332 p. S517.A44M3

Lucid and still useful description by a number of specialists. The first 60 pages, by Mr. Matheson, give a general geographical introduction explaining land, population, land tenure, white settlement, native labor, native welfare, soil conservation problems, agricultural research institutes. The second part describes in detail the agriculture of the European settlers, explaining practices and conditions regarding the chief crops—cereals, coffee, essential oils, fruit, groundnuts (there is a chapter explaining the groundnut scheme, which had not yet been abandoned at the time, and giving the reasons for its inevitable failure), livestock, pyrethrum, sisal, sugar, tea, etc. The third part is on African agriculture, considered by territorial division. Appendixes tabulate statistics.

1295. MOYSE-BARTLETT, HUBERT. *The King's African Rifles: a study in the military history of East and Central Africa, 1890-1945*. Aldershot, Gale & Polden, 1956. 727 p. illus., maps. DT351.M6

By a former officer of the regiment, who at the time of writing was Secretary of the School of Oriental and African Studies at the University of London. The King's African Rifles began as local guard forces enlisted by the chartered companies in East and Central Africa, then were taken over by the governments of the colonies, and in 1902 combined in the single force whose function was to protect the frontiers and maintain order. The chapters relate stirring events, starting with the Slavers' War of 1888-96, and including campaigns against the Mad Mullah of Somalia, many punitive expeditions against turbulent tribes, the East African campaign of 1914-18, and in the Second World War the defense of Kenya and British Somaliland, the Abyssinian campaign, and fighting overseas in Madagascar and Burma.

According to Coleman and Brice, in their *Role of the Military in Sub-Saharan Africa* (no. 111), the future of the KAR is dependent upon relations between the new African governments and the United Kingdom, but as of 1961 the regiment had only a handful of African officers.

1296. ORDE-BROWN, G. ST. J. *Labour conditions in East Africa*. London, H.M. Stationery Office, 1946. 94 p. (Colonial no. 193)

HD8799.E4O7

Report of the Labor Advisor to the Colonial Office, who in 1933 had prepared for the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures the authoritative survey, *The African Labourer* (Oxford University Press. 240 p.) Major Orde-Brown in this paper considered first the general situation, then separately the four territories, Tanganyika, Kenya, Uganda, Zanzibar (the last very briefly). He was concerned with labor shortages, wartime labor questions, low efficiency and possibilities for its improvement, industrialization and training, the question of migrant labor from Ruanda-Urundi, prospects for trade unions, labor departments, etc.

1297. WORTHINGTON, STELLA, and E. B. WORTHINGTON. *Inland waters of Africa: the result of two expeditions to the great lakes of Kenya and Uganda, with accounts of their biology, native tribes and development*. London, New York, Macmillan, 1933. 253 p.

DT361.W6

Dr. Worthington, who was Scientific Secretary of CSA from 1951-55, had been Scientific Adviser for Lord Hailey's African Survey and in 1946 was Development Adviser for Uganda. This book records expeditions made with his wife to the African lakes in 1927 to 1931, with much geographical and biological information and data on fisheries.

1298. WRAITH, RONALD E. *East African citizen*. London, Oxford University Press, 1959. 238 p.

JQ2945.A5W7

Prepared as a text for Makerere College students, members of local councils, etc., this informative work on the political and social structure of British East Africa is an excellent example of British efforts to help Africanization of cadres.

## ANTHROPOLOGY, LINGUISTICS, SOCIOLOGY, ETC.

1299. ASHTON, ETHEL O. *Swahili grammar, including intonation*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1944. 398 p.

PL8072.A7

The Swahili language, spoken by the mixed Arab-Negro Swahilis of Zanzibar, has become the lingua franca of the East African coast, and some knowledge of it is helpful to anyone having to do with Africans. Miss Ashton's grammar is the authoritative work. The standard dictionaries are those of the Inter-Territorial Language (Swahili) Committee, *Standard Swahili-English Dictionary*, and *Standard English-Swahili Dictionary* (London, Oxford University Press, 1939, 2 v., 538, 635 p.).

The East African Inter-Territorial Language Committee had issued its first Report in 1930, its headquarters then in Arusha, Tanganyika. In 1948 it came under the East Africa High Commission, and in 1952 was transferred to Makerere College, the name being changed to East African Swahili Committee. In 1962 it was transferred again to the new University College in Dar es Salaam. The Committee sponsors a number of publications in Swahili, including its journal, *Swahili*, and *A Linguistic Bibliography of East Africa*, compiled by W. H. Whiteley and A. E. Gutkind (Kampala, 1958). A useful little volume in the English Universities Press series of Teach Yourself Language Books is by an associate of the Committee, Daisy V. Perrott: *Teach Yourself Swahili* (2d ed., London, English Universities Press, 1957. 194, 30 p.). See also note on the volume for Swahili in the Basic Course Series published by the U.S. Foreign Service Institute (no. 307n).

1300. EAST AFRICAN INSTITUTE OF SOCIAL RESEARCH, Makerere College, Kampala, Uganda. *East African studies*. 1953+

The East African Institute of Social Research was established in 1950 under the auspices of Colonial Development and Welfare as one of the research institutes of Makerere College. A leaflet published in 1956, *The East African Institute of Social Research, 1950-1955* (19 p., illus.), explains its organization and functions, and its program of publication. The East African Studies series, published in Kampala by the Institute (or for the Institute by the Eagle Press) are pamphlets of varying length resulting from field research carried out by the Fellows. Most of them are noted individually by author in this and the following sections. The first, by A. B. Mukwaya (see no. 1396) was published in 1953; no. 12, *Crops and Wealth in Uganda*, by C. C. Wrigley, appeared in 1959. A number of full-length books by scholars working under sponsorship of the Institute has been brought out by English publishers: e.g., Low & Pratt (no. 1393).

1301. ETHNOGRAPHIC SURVEY OF AFRICA. *East Central Africa*. London, International African Institute. [series]

For general note on this series, see no. 270. The following volumes relate to the peoples of Kenya, Tanganyika, and Uganda:



3. *The Coastal tribes of the North-eastern Bantu: Pokomo, Nykia and Teita*, by A. H. J. Prins. 1952. 138 p. DT429.P7
  4. *The Nilotes of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan and Uganda*, by Audrey J. Butt. 1952. 198 p. DT132.B8
  5. *The Kikuyu and Kamba of Kenya*, by John Middleton. 1953. 107 p. DT434.E2M5
  6. *The Northern Nilo-Hamites*, by G. W. B. Huntingford. 1953. 106 p. [Mainly in the Sudan] GN659.N5H78
  7. *The Central Nilo-Hamites*, by Pamela and P. H. Gulliver. 1953. 106 p. GN659.N5G8
  8. *The Southern Nilo-Hamites*, by G. W. B. Huntingford. 1953. 152 p. GN659.N5H8
  10. *The Gisu of Uganda*, by J. S. La Fontaine. 1959. 68 p. DT434.U2L2
  11. *The Eastern Lacustrine Bantu* (Ganda, Soga, etc.) by Margaret Chave Fallers. 1960. 86 p. DT361.F3
  12. *The Swahili-speaking peoples*, by A. H. J. Prins. 1961. 143 p. GN659.Z3P7
  13. *The Western Lacustrine Bantu* (Nyoro, Toro, etc.) by Brian Taylor. 1962. 159 p. DT361.T3
1302. GULLIVER, P. H. *The family herds; a study of two pastoral tribes in East Africa, the Jie and Turkana*. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1955. 271 p. (International library of sociology and social reconstruction) GN426.G8

The author, a Government sociologist in Tanganyika, did his fieldwork in Kenya and Uganda between 1948 and 1951. This book and a previous study, *Preliminary Survey of the Turkana: a Report Compiled for the Government of Kenya* (Cape Town, University of Cape Town, 1951, 281 p.), embody his findings as to social behavior and institutions of the two tribes. The Jie of Uganda, with a mixed economy of animal husbandry and millet farming, and the Turkana, nomadic herds-people of Kenya, are closely related in history and culture.

1303. HARRIES, LYNDON. *Islam in East Africa*. London, Universities' Mission to Central Africa, 1954. 92 p. BP64.E3H3

Includes bibliography.

Brief explanation of Islam in relation to the work of the Mission in East Africa. The author comments on the ease with which the African can become a Muslim, but points out that Islam is the enemy of progress for him.

1304. ———. *Swahili poetry*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1962. 326 p. PL8704.A2H3

Swahili poetry, which is still written in the traditional prosodic forms, is meaningful in the culture of East Africa. Obviously of close connection with

Arabic poetry (it was written in the Swahili-Arabic script), its chief purpose up to the end of the 19th century was to express the spirit and practice of Islam. This volume is a broad selection of texts from the manuscripts in the Library of the School of Oriental and African Studies, where Dr. Harries is a lecturer in Swahili. The representative poems are given in parallel transliteration from the script and English translation on facing pages, each explained in full scholarly commentary.

1305. RICHARDS, AUDREY I., ed. *East African chiefs: a study of political development in some Uganda and Tanganyika tribes*. New York, Praeger, 1960, 419 p. illus. (Books that matter) JQ2951.A34R5

Includes bibliography.

A comparative study of political development begun in 1952 under the auspices of the East African Institute of Social Research and carried out by anthropologists on its staff and other researchers. A collection was made of career histories of over 1,100 chiefs of varying types, kings, paramount chiefs, clan elders, and so on, with data about their age, education, religion, service, outside training, descent, genealogy, and economic position within the community.

1306. THURNWALD, RICHARD. *Black and white in East Africa: the fabric of a new civilization; a study in social contact and adaptation of life in East Africa; with a chapter on women by Hilde Thurnwald*. London, Routledge, 1935. 419 p. DT429.T5

The result of a trip in 1930-31 by two anthropologists, made under the auspices of the International African Institute. Dr. Thurnwald and his wife studied political, social, and educational changes of the native Africans of Kenya, Nyasaland, and Tanganyika under European influences.

1307. WELBOURN, FREDERICK B. *East African rebels; a study of some independent churches*. London, SCM Press, 1961. 258 p. BR1440.W4

By a Warden at Makerere College, this study, according to the author, "falls on the boundary between Church History and Social Psychology." His theme explaining three separatist church movements in Buganda is "From Religion to Politics." The controversial question of the Kikuyu independent church movement as a precursor of Mau Mau is discussed as "From Politics to Religion." The last section is a thought-provoking analysis of the African response to Christian missions.

# Kenya

1308. ALTRINCHAM, EDWARD W. M. G., baron. *Kenya's opportunity; memories, hopes, and ideas.* London, Faber & Faber, 1955. 308 p. DT434.E2A66 1955

The late Lord Altrincham had been Governor of Kenya from 1925 to 1931. In this book, which combined his reminiscences of the country he loved with his views on what British policy should be for Kenya and East Africa, he contended that it is unrealistic to try to mold tribal Africans into a form of British parliamentary government. He offered as solution a multiracial society on the model of the Swiss Confederacy, with the races separately managing their own concerns, the Africans in autonomous tribal communities—"with even stronger emphasis than before on African self-government on traditional African foundations."

1309. BENNETT, GEORGE, and CARL G. ROSBERG. *The Kenyatta election; Kenya 1960-1961.* London, New York, Published on behalf of the Institute of Commonwealth Studies by Oxford University Press, 1961. 230 p. illus. JQ2947.A95B4

Timely study by a British Commonwealth historian and an American political scientist, who examine the background of Kenya's constitutional and electoral history and analyze the campaigns. Although the election was general, the writers observe that the separateness of the different races and communities made it appear "sometimes as at least five different elections." The aftermath and post-election maneuvers by which the first Government was formed with KADU in control and Mboya and KANU in opposition are also described.

1310. BERNARDI, BERNARDO. *The Mugwe, a failing prophet; a study of a religious and public dignitary of the Meru of Kenya.* With a foreword by Daryll Forde. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1959. 211 p. illus., map. GN495.5.B46

Ethnological study of the Meru tribe and their religious leader. The author is a Catholic priest.

1311. BLIXEN, KAREN. *Out of Africa*, by Isak Dinesen. New York, Modern Library, 1952. 389 p. (Modern library of the world's best books, 23). DT434.E2B6

This sensitive personal narrative of the White Highlands of Kenya before the European settlement became a cause for conflict was first published in 1938, and has joined Olive Schreiner's *Story of an African Farm* as a classic of a way of life now gone. The late Danish writer Baroness Blixen, who used the pen name Isak Dinesen, had gone to Kenya before the First World War, where she had a coffee farm near Nairobi. In an autobiographical note in *Twentieth Century Authors* (1942), she said: "To my mind the life of a farmer in the East African highlands is near to an ideal existence."

1312. BOLTON, KENNETH. *The lion and the lily; a guide to Kenya.* With specialist contributors. London, G. Bles, 1962. 241 p.

DT434.E22B6

Although entitled "a guide," this is rather a general description for the prospective visitor, with chapters on land, peoples, economy, life in country and town, transport, "Internal and External Defence," etc. The specialist contributions are on the attractions of nature and wild life.

1313. CAROTHERS, JOHN C. *The psychology of Mau Mau.* Nairobi, Govt. Printer, 1954. 35 p.

DT434.E2C35

At head of title: Colony and Protectorate of Kenya.

Semitechnical study prepared at the request of the Government of Kenya by a psychiatrist of note, author of *The African Mind in Health and Disease* (no. 468). He emphasized the point that there is a close parallel between Mau Mau oaths and rituals and those of European witchcraft, and was convinced that the Mau Mau rites were devised by "sophisticated persons." He considered the old Kikuyu culture largely defunct, and saw the answer to their chief psychological problems in "villagization," which might counteract their personal insecurity and give them a chance to develop new allegiances. He was insistent that urban workers must have their families live with them.

1314. CORFIELD, F. D. *Historical survey of the origins and growth of Mau Mau.* London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1960. 321 p. (Cmd. 1030) DT434.E2C64

The official study resulting from the trial of Kenyatta and presenting what appeared to be complete



proof of his responsibility for the Mau Mau "emergency." According to most critics, by the time of publication the work was outdated, much of the evidence had been disproved, and Delf (below) speaks of it as "history composed by the patient himself," though he admits that it was a reliable chronicle of government information at the time it was being written.

The Kenyatta trial, resulting in the conviction of his guilt as leader of Mau Mau, was held in 1952-53 at Kapenguria in the Northern Province of Kenya, the defense being directed by the English lawyer D. N. Pritt, and comprising an international team. A book by an English literary man, Montagu Slater, *The Trial of Jomo Kenyatta* (London, Secker & Warburg, 1955. 225 p.), does not conceal the writer's sympathies with the African leaders, but claims to be a fair and true account.

1315. DELF, GEORGE. *Jomo Kenyatta; towards truth about "The Light of Kenya."* London, V. Gollancz, 1961. 223 p. illus.

DT434.E26K43

An attempt to trace Kenyatta's career as the future and logical leader of Kenya. The writer alludes to the widespread belief among Africans that the trial of Kenyatta for association with Mau Mau was "rigged." His argument is that Mau Mau was "the inexorable product of a seriously distorted social system," and could have been prevented by less weak British government.

1316. ECONOMIC SURVEY MISSION TO KENYA. *The economic development of Kenya.* Batimore, Published for The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development by the Johns Hopkins Press, 1963. 380 p. HC517.K415

This study, published in the spring of 1963, is comparable to those prepared by other Economic Survey Missions for the World Bank (see, e.g., under Nigeria, no. 740, and under Tanganyika no. 1348). It has not been available for examination.

1317. FEARN, HUGH. *An African economy; a study of the economic development of the Nyanza Province of Kenya, 1903-1953.* London, New York, Published on behalf of East African Institute of Social Research by Oxford University Press, 1961. xviii, 284 p. illus., maps, tables. HC517.K4F4

Bibliography: p. 267-277.

Detailed case studies of the modern commercial economy of a region bordering on Lake Victoria.

1318. FORRESTER, MARION W. *Kenya today: social prerequisites for economic development.* The Hague, Mouton, 1962. 179 p. diags., tables. American ed. New York, Humanities Press. DLC

A doctoral thesis based on field research into living conditions of Africans in Nairobi, carried out under the auspices of the World Council of Churches. The scope of the monograph takes in many aspects of financing, economic development, labor, income, and social welfare.

1319. GICARU, MUGA. *Land of sunshine; scenes of life in Kenya before Mau Mau.* London, Lawrence & Wishart, 1958. 175 p. illus.

DT434.E2G5

Bitter expression of African resentment of European settler policy and the color bar in Kenya, told in semi-autobiographical form by a young Kikuyu. The foreword by Father Trevor Huddleston describes the book as "the authentic African voice."

1320. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Report on the colony and protectorate of Kenya.* 1948+ London, H.M. Stationery Off. annual. 1960 ed. issued in 1963. DT434.E2A36

For note on general series, see no. 95.

1321. HENDERSON, IAN. *Man hunt in Kenya,* by Ian Henderson with Philip Goodhart. Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 1958. 240 p. illus. DT434.E2H39 1958a

London ed. (Hamilton) has title: *The Hunt for Kimathi.*

Personal account of the expedition during the emergency that succeeded in capturing the Mau Mau militant leader, Dedan Kimathi. The writer, a Kenya-born police officer, has intimate knowledge of the Kikuyu.

1322. HOBLEY, CHARLES W. *Kenya, from chartered colony to crown colony: thirty years of exploration and administration in British East Africa.* London, Witherby, 1929. 256 p. DT434.E2H6

The author of this historical, descriptive, and anthropological narrative of the early years of the colony had gone out to Kenya in the nineties and worked as surveyor and geologist. He was fairly little concerned with political questions, believing the Indian problem to be overstressed and that the white settlers would in time come to feel responsibility for African interests.

1323. HOLLIS, Sir ALFRED CLAUD. *The Masai, their language and folklore*. London, Oxford University Press, 1905. 2d ed., 1911. 359 p. PL8501.H6

The writer was Chief Secretary to the Administration of the East African Protectorate. This study, which includes grammar of the Masai language, with text in the vernacular, translation of traditional literature, notes on customs, and other ethnological material, still stands as the main published anthropological work in English on this much talked-of tribe. The famous travel narrative of Joseph Thomson, *Through Masai-land* (London, 1885; new ed., abridged by Roland Young, Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Press, 1962. 218 p.) had been the first European account. A German ethnographical monograph by M. Merker, *Die Masai*, appeared in 1904 (Berlin, D. Reimer. 421 p.). There have been several popular books, and it is understood that intensive study of the Masai is currently in progress, but as of late 1962 there has been no full-scale anthropological treatise.

1324. ———. *The Nandi, their language and folklore*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1909. 328 p. plates. PL8545.H6

The old standard study, supplemented in recent years by Huntingford (below).

1325. HUNTINGFORD, GEORGE W. B. *The Nandi of Kenya: tribal control in a pastoral society*. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1953. 169 p. GN659.N3H8

Monograph on the tribal political life of the Nandi by a social anthropologist who had spent 20 years in close contact with the tribe (1921 to the end of the Second World War). It was prepared for the Government of Kenya under the auspices of the Colonial Social Science Research Council, as the first part of a full ethnological report on the Nandi. The last two parts were published in 1951 by the Colonial Office, *Nandi Work and Culture* (London, H.M. Stationery Off. 126 p. Colonial research studies, no. 4). Mr. Huntingford is also author of the volumes on Northern Nilo-Hamites and Southern Nilo-Hamites in the Ethnographic Survey series (no. 270).

Another anthropological study of this tribe from the legal angle by an administrative officer in Kenya, Geoffrey S. Snell, *Nandi Customary Law* (London, Macmillan, 1954. 154 p. Custom and tradition in East Africa), is one of a series sponsored by the East African Literature Bureau. In the simplest language possible the author explained the background of Nandi religious and ethical thought, the institutions of the tribe, then the traditional laws, and penalties for infringement.

The third part commented on recent changes under the influence of contact with Europeans.

1326. HUXLEY, ELSPETH. *White man's country: Lord Delamere and the making of Kenya*. London, New York, Macmillan, 1935. 2 v. DT434.E2H8

Lord Delamere, who came to Kenya for big game hunting in the late 1890's and took up his home there in 1903, was largely responsible for attracting Europeans to the colony for permanent residence as farmers in the Highlands, and was their leader and representative until his death in 1933. This biography, which is also a history of white settlement in Kenya, established Mrs. Huxley as an authority on the European in East Africa. She herself had been born and raised in Kenya; her loving personal interpretation of the country in earlier years is being recorded in a series of autobiographical books: *The Flame Trees of Thika*, *Memories of an African Childhood*, and *The Mottled Lizard* (London, Chatto & Windus, 1959, 1962. 288, 335 p.), and *On the Edge of the Rift; Memories of Kenya* (New York, Morrow, 1962. 409 p.). A striking debate between Mrs. Huxley, representing the European settlers, and Miss Margery Perham, speaking for the primary interests of the Africans, was published in 1944 as a series of letters: *Race and Politics in Kenya: A Correspondence* (London, Faber & Faber. 247 p.). A new edition was brought out after the Mau Mau emergency (1956. 302 p.), with two postscripts, "1955 Assessments," written by the two authors stating each her view of the situation in a country "buzzing with reforms as well as conflict."

There might be mentioned among other books by Mrs. Huxley, the novel *Red Strangers* (New York and London, Harper, 1939. 405 p.), which is an attempt to describe the coming of the white men through the eyes of two generations of a Kikuyu family. *A New Earth; An Experiment in Colonialism* (London, Chatto & Windus, 1960. 279 p.) is a study of agrarian reform in African farming, and *No Easy Way* (Nairobi, 1960. 225 p.) is a history of the Kenya Farmers' Association and Unga Ltd., Lord Delamere's firm for wheatgrowing.

1327. KENYA COLONY AND PROTECTORATE. *Survey of Kenya. Atlas of Kenya*; a comprehensive series of new and authentic maps prepared from the national survey and other governmental sources, with gazetteer and notes on pronunciation and spelling. Nairobi, Printed by the Survey of Kenya, 1959. ix 1., 44 1. of maps (part col.) G2530.K4 1959

Text on verso of a few maps.



1328. KENYATTA, JOMO. *Facing Mount Kenya: the tribal life of the Kikuyu*. London, Secker & Warburg, 1938. xxv, 339 p. DT434.E2K45  
Reprint, New York, Vintage Books, 1962. 326 p.

Professor Malinowski, under whom Kenyatta had studied at the London School of Economics during his 15-year stay in England (1931–46, including travel in Europe and study at Moscow University), wrote the introduction of this detailed study of the writer's people. As General Secretary of the Kikuyu Central Association in the twenties, Kenyatta had led the agitation against European settlement in the Kenya Highlands, which the Kikuyu claimed as their land. In this book he attempted to show the evil effects of culture contact for the Kikuyu. A pamphlet by Kenyatta, *Kenya, the Land of Conflict* (Manchester, Eng., Panaf Service, 1945. 23 p. International African Service Bureau), an outspokenly leftist demand for land and rights for Africans, was edited by George Padmore and distributed at the Socialist Book Center. It came out at about the time that Kenyatta was instrumental, with Padmore, Nkrumah, and others, in organizing the Fifth Pan-African Congress in Manchester (1945). A reprint was issued in 1953 by T. K. Menon of the Indian Council for Africa in New Delhi.

1329. LAMBERT, H. E. *Kikuyu social and political institutions*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1956. 149 p.  
DT429.L3

Part of a much longer anthropological study of the tribes of the Kikuyu Land Unit, by a former Administrative Officer in Kenya, which was issued in advance because of current interest in Kikuyu affairs. The four closely related tribal groups of Kikuyu, Meru, Chuka, and Embu in this Unit have in common the political organization of grouping according to age—age-sets for the boys at the time of initiation, regiments of the young men, generations of the elders. The writer explains in great detail these systems and their social and political functions, giving terms in the tribal languages. His account is of traditional society, though at the end he includes some orders issued during the thirties. The entire study is pre-Mau Mau.

1330. LEAKEY, LOUIS S. B. *Kenya, contrasts and problems*. London, Methuen, 1936. 189 p.  
DT434.E2L32

1331. ——— *Mau Mau and the Kikuyu*. London, Methuen, 1952. 114 p. illus. American edition, New York, John Day, 1954.  
DT429.L4

1332. ——— *Defeating Mau Mau*. London, Methuen, 1954. 151 p. DT429.L39

Dr. Leakey, the archeologist and Director of the Coryndon Museum of Nairobi, is the son of missionaries, born and bred among the Kikuyu people, and one of the few Europeans who speak the Kikuyu language with full understanding. His prewar book was a simply presented analysis of the country and the dangers of the culture contacts for the African tribesmen. With the outbreak of Mau Mau, his *Mau Mau and the Kikuyu* was hailed as giving the best interpretation available of Kikuyu custom, ceremonies, and mentality, and the dissatisfactions—economic, religious, social, and political—which led to the outbreak. The later book, written at the height of the Emergency, is largely an analysis of the Mau Mau doctrines, the “hymns” parodying Christian hymns and using the name of Kenyatta instead of Christ, the oath ceremonies, and the religious character of the movement. His last chapters discuss the handicaps of the security forces, and the hoped-for reforms. Among the needs to which he gives special emphasis are a change in mission teaching from the doctrinal approach to a simple faith based on the teachings of Christ, and a common language.

Of the spate of books that appeared from 1953 to 1956 in connection with Mau Mau, there might be mentioned, in addition to Carothers and the Corfield Report (nos. 1313, 1314) J. F. Lipscomb's *White Africans and We Built a Country* (London, Faber & Faber, 1955. 172 p., 214 p.), which voice the white settler position, and four which stress African interests: Mbiyu Koinange, *The People of Kenya Speak for Themselves* (Detroit, Kenya Publication Fund, 1955. 115 p.); Peter Evans, *Law and Disorder; or, Scenes of Life in Kenya* (London, Secker & Warburg, 1956. 296 p.), by an Irish lawyer who had attended the trial of Kenyatta and had been evicted from the country following his investigations of European “atrocities”; and a journalistic analysis by Donovan H. Rawcliffe, *The Struggle for Kenya* (London, Gollancz, 1954. 189 p.).

1333. LEYS, NORMAN. *The colour bar in East Africa*. London, Hogarth Press, 1941. 160 p.  
DT429.L45

Dr. Leys, a physician who had spent many years in East Africa, wrote several controversial books expressing his opposition to white settlement and development

of Kenya. His first, *Kenya* (London, L. & V. Woolf, 1924. 409 p.), was semihistorical; *A Last Chance in Kenya* (Hogarth Press, 1931. 173 p.) developed further his conviction that the contact of European with native cultures is detrimental to the African; the 1941 work, which had considerable influence on Fabian opinion in England, argued that the racial injustice being wrought by the small white minority was akin to Nazi doctrine.

1334. MBOYA, TOM. *The Kenya question: an African answer*. Foreword by Margery Perham. London, Fabian Colonial Bureau, 1956. 48 p. (Fabian tract 302)

HX11.F25, no. 302

A pamphlet written by Mboya when for 3 years he had been General Secretary of the Kenya Federation of Labour, traveling abroad as a trade union representative, and in 1956 holding a labor scholarship for study at Oxford. He here examined the Emergency and the political situation from the viewpoint of the educated and responsible African. The foreword by Margery Perham stated forcefully requirements for a new British approach to the problems of Kenya.

1335. ORDE-BROWN, G. ST. J. *The vanishing tribes of Kenya*. London, Seeley, Service, 1925. 284 p. DT429.08

Major Orde-Brown based this book on his administrative experiences in Kenya from 1909-16, often among Africans who had never before seen a white man. The subtitle reads "A description of the manners and customs of some of the primitive and interesting tribes dwelling on the vast southern slopes of Mount Kenya, and their fast disappearing native methods of life." His study is impersonal, comprehensive, and interesting, covering among other tribes the aboriginal Chuka, the Embu, Mwimbe, Kikuyu, and Akamba.

1336. RAKE, ALAN. *Tom Mboya: young man of new Africa*. Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 1962. 264 p. illus. DT434.E26M36

Laudatory biography of the Kenya labor leader, constituting a history of recent Kenya politics. The presentation by the East African correspondent for *Drum* is journalistic. Chronological appendix and glossary of political parties, trade unions, and other organizations.

1337. ROSS, WILLIAM MACGREGOR. *Kenya from within; a short political history*. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1927. 486 p.

DT434.E2R6

One of the most interesting of the older books on the history of Kenya and its development into a "white man's country." The writer, an engineer for over 20 years in East Africa, had for most of this time been Director of Public Works in the East Africa Protectorate, later Kenya Colony. His narrative is from a diary, newspaper files, and other firsthand information. His sympathies were with the Africans rather than the colonists, in accordance with his understanding of his role: "It should not be beyond the wit of Britain, with centuries of colonizing effort behind her, to ensure the emergence of happy families of Africans in Kenya. It is with that end in view that Britain's servants are there." This and Dr. Norman Leys' book (see 1333) are often cited by African nationalist writers.

1338. WAGNER, GÜNTER. *The Bantu of North Kavirondo*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1949-56. 2 v. plates, maps. DT434.E2W3

Broadly conceived ethnological survey of the Bantu tribes living among Nilotes and Nilo-Hamitic tribes in the North Kavirondo District of Nyanza Province of southwestern Kenya, northeast of Lake Victoria between the Gulf of Kavirondo and Mount Elgon. The first volume (1949. 511 p.) examines general aspects, then analyzes in detail kinship structures, magico-religious rites, "The Rites of Passage" (birth, childhood, initiation, courtship and marriage, death). The second volume, published posthumously, was edited by Lucy P. Mair (1956. 184 p.). It concludes the cultural analysis of these tribes, Logoli, Vugusu, and others, who are considered the most northerly representatives of the Bantu.

1339. WOOD, SUSAN BUXTON. *Kenya: the tensions of progress*. 2d ed. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. 135 p. illus. DT434.E2W58 1962

A survey of modern history and analysis of present political forces, prepared for the Institute of Race Relations. The first edition came out in 1960; the second edition has added material bringing the picture up through 1961.



# Tanganyika

1340. BROWN, G. GORDON, and A. McD. BRUCE HUTT. *Anthropology in action: an experiment in the Iringa District of the Iringa Province, Tanganyika Territory*. London, Published for the International Institute of African Languages & Cultures by the Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1935. 272 p. map. DT449.I7B8

Joint study by an anthropologist and an administrator, attempting to find how far anthropological knowledge could be used in settling administrative problems among the Hehe tribe.

1341. CAMERON, Sir DONALD. *My Tanganyika service and some Nigeria*. London, G. Allen & Unwin. 1939. 293 p. DT444.C3

The author was Governor of the Mandated Territory of Tanganyika from 1925 to 1931, then returned to Nigeria, where he had previously served for seventeen years, as Governor for 4 years. This book, written as a personal experience narrative, is essentially a study of the British practice of Native Administration.

1342. CHIDZERO, BERNARD T. G. *Tanganyika and international trusteeship*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1961. 286 p. maps. JQ3513.1961.C47

Bibliography: p. 277-282.

History and analysis of the part played by the United Nations trusteeship in the progress of Tanganyika to independence. This scholarly and comprehensive study had been prepared by the Rhodesian author for his doctoral thesis at McGill University in 1958, and was subsequently worked on at Nuffield College, Oxford, for 2 years, being published just before the Tanganyika Constitutional Conference of March 1961. Dr. Chidzero is now a member of the United Nations Economic Commission for Africa.

1343. CORY, HANS. *The Ntemi; traditional rites in connection with the burial, election, enthronement and magic powers of a Sukuma chief*. London, Macmillan, 1951. 83 p. (Custom and tradition in East Africa) GN495.5.C6

1344. ———. *Sukuma law and custom*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1953. 194 p. DLC-LL

By the Government Sociologist of Tanganyika Territory, these two studies attempt to record the rites and customary law of the Sukuma, a Bantu tribe of north-western Tanganyika, in the traditional form and changes under British administration. They are based on extensive researches and conferences with Sukuma chieftains. Another analysis of this tribe included suggestions for measures that might bring more democracy into the Native Authority system: *The Indigenous Political System of the Sukuma and Proposals for Political Reform* (Nairobi, Published for the East African Institute of Social Research by the Eagle Press, 1954. 130 p. East African studies no. 2). An earlier work by Mr. Cory in collaboration with M. M. Hartnoll had been of the same character, *Customary Law of the Haya Tribe (Tanganyika Territory)* (London, Published for the International African Institute by P. Lund, Humphries, 1945. 299 p., 45 fold. tables).

Other intensive studies by Mr. Cory have been on the art of the Sukuma and other tribes. An album of photographs and watercolor drawings, *Wall-Paintings by Snake Charmers in Tanganyika* (New York, Grove Press, 1953. 99 p.), has a short introductory text explaining a secret society of the Sukuma with comments on the plates. In 1956 a work was brought out in handsome format, *African Figurines, Their Ceremonial Use in Puberty Rites in Tanganyika* (London, Faber & Faber, 176 p.). The author explained that he had concentrated rather on the little clay figures than on the initiation ceremonies of the four tribes from which he had collected these models, and that the work is consequently "an illustrated catalogue rather than a treatise."

1345. CULWICK, ARTHUR T., and G. M. CULWICK. *Ubena of the Rivers*, with a chapter by Mtema Towegale Kiwanga. London, Allen & Unwin, 1935. 444 p. DT443.C8

A study of the Bena tribe (the people are the Wabena) in the land of Ubena in Tanganyika, written not as academic anthropology but as a picture of the life and outlook of a typical Bantu people. The authors were English anthropologists who did long fieldwork for their interesting book. It includes a historical chapter written by a chief, "The Kingdom of the Wakinimanga."

1346. DUNDAS, ANNE. *Beneath African glaciers*. London, H. F. & G. Witherby, 1924. 238 p. DT440.D8

"The humours, tragedies and demands of an East African government station as experienced by an official's wife; with some personal views on native life and customs." This book, now almost 40 years old,

is still among the most informative and interesting descriptions of life in the interior of Tanganyika. The writer was wife of the Chief Commissioner of Tanganyika whose anthropological study was published in the same year.

1347. DUNDAS, CHARLES. *Kilimanjaro and its people*. London, Witherby, 1924. 349 p.

DT449.K4D8

The late Sir Charles Dundas, who retired after a distinguished career in the Colonial Service in 1945, had gone out as an assistant District Commissioner to the East African Protectorate in 1908. In 1920 he became Chief Commissioner in Tanganyika. He was also a Fellow of the Royal Anthropological Institute. This book has as subtitle, "A history of the Wachagga, their laws, customs and legends, together with some account of the highest mountain in Africa." It is written in informal style, including history of the Chagga people, their religion, magic, mores, legends, and proverbs.

The Wachaga tribe were studied in several early German works, also in one presented as a doctoral thesis in English: Otto F. Raum, *Chaga Childhood: A Description of Indigenous Education in an East African Tribe* (London, New York, Published for the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures by the Oxford University Press, 1940. 422 p.)

1348. ECONOMIC SURVEY MISSION TO TANGANYIKA. *The economic development of Tanganyika; report*. Baltimore, Published for the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development by the Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore, 1961. xxviii, 548 p. fold. maps, diagrs., tables. HC557.T3E25

This volume results from a Mission organized at the request of the Tanganyika and British Governments, charged to assess resources and make recommendations regarding the development of Tanganyika and to indicate the financial implications thereof. The field survey was carried out in the summer of 1959 and the study prepared during that winter, with additional data gathered in Tanganyika in the summer of 1960. The extended report begins with general and budgetary examination of the Tanganyika economy. Eight chapters, the bulk of the text, deal with agricultural and livestock development; three chapters consider manufacturing, power, mining, transport and communications, and the expanding tourist trade, and a long section is devoted to educational policy. Final chapters on the monetary system and the techniques (mechanics) of planning are followed by several annexes of background information, supplementary

statistical tables, and last a summary of the recommendations made by the Mission. There is a full subject index.

1349. FREEMAN-GRENVILLE, G. S. P. *The medieval history of the coast of Tanganyika*. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 238 p. illus. DT444.F7

Includes bibliography.

1350.—, ed. *The East African coast: select documents from the first to the earlier 19th century*. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 314 p. DT365.F7

"The arrival of two good books about the ancient and exciting history of the East African seaboard will be a welcome event to everyone who is interested in Africa . . ." (Review by Basil Davidson in *West Africa*, no. 2387, Mar. 2, 1963, p. 243).

1351. GEORGE, BETTY. *Education for Africans in Tanganyika: a preliminary survey*. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1961. 97 p. (U.S. Office of Education. Bulletin 1960, no. 19). L111.A6 1960, no. 19

A monograph by the specialist on Africa in the Division of International Education of the U.S. Office of Education. The scope of her survey includes background and full details of organization of education, its administration and finance, the current systems of primary, middle and secondary, vocational and technical training, teacher training, and higher education.

1352. GEORGE, JOHN B. "How stable is Tanganyika?" *Africa report*, v. 8, Mar. 1963: 3-9, 12. DT1.A217, v. 8

A meaningful analysis of the organization and effectiveness of TANU in the administration of independent Tanganyika. The author writes from recent first-hand observation.

1353. GRAY, ROBERT F. *The Sonjo of Tanganyika; an anthropological study of an irrigation-based society*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1963. 181p. GN659.S6G7

Not yet available for examination.

1354. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Report . . . to the General Assembly of the United Nations on the administration of Tanganyika*. 1920-60. London, H.M. Stationery off. illus., fold. maps, annual J801.N15



The Report published each year by the Colonial Office as Administering Authority for the Trust Territory of Tanganyika ended with the 1960 edition (London, 1961). It was in two volumes, the first the *General Report*, the second *Statistics* (170, 142 p.). For other British and United Nations documents regarding Tanganyika, see the Library of Congress bibliography, *Official Publications of East Africa. II. Tanganyika* (no. 1268).

1355. GULLIVER, P. H. *Labour migration in a rural economy*. Kampala, East African Institute of Social Research, 1955. 48 p. (East African studies, no. 6) HD8799.T3G8

1356. ——— *Land tenure and social change among the Nyakyusa: an essay in applied anthropology in South-west Tanganyika*. Kampala, East African Institute of Social Research, 1958. 47 p. illus. (East African studies, no. 11) GN489.1.G8

As Government Sociologist of Tanganyika the author was concerned with administrative application of sociological findings regarding the tribes he studied. The first of these two papers is on the Ngoni and Ndendeuli of Southern Tanganyika, whose men work within the territory, living at or near home, but whose absences, if only for a few months at a time, seriously affect tribal life and rural economy. The second paper analyzes changing conditions with special reference to land shortages among the Nyakyusa of the Lake Plains. The last chapter draws conclusions and offers suggestions for future agricultural policy. A full-scale work by Dr. Gulliver, *Social Control in an African Society: A Study of the Arusha, Agricultural Masai of Northern Tanganyika*, is published in 1963 (London, Routledge & Kegan Paul. 306 p.).

1357. *Handbook of Tanganyika* (second edition) Edited by J. P. Moffett. Dar es Salaam, Govt. Printer, 1958. 703 p. illus., maps. DT438.H3 1958

Completely superseding a first edition of the *Handbook of Tanganyika* published in 1930, this work complements the 1955 *Tanganyika: A Review of Its Resources and Their Developments* (no. 1362) and like it is edited by the Government Printer, but is not an official publication. The first 150 pages are devoted to an outline of history from paleolithic times to the midfifties. There follow detailed description of the country province by province, and chapters on

peoples, government, economic and social services, natural history, sport, and miscellaneous information for visitors.

1358. LEUBUSCHER, CHARLOTTE. *Tanganyika; a study of economic policy under mandate*. London, New York, Printed for the Royal Institute of International Affairs by Oxford University Press, 1944. 217 p.

HC557.G5L45

Study of the League of Nations mandatory system and its application in Tanganyika, then a B-mandate (i.e., a country not yet close to political independence, to be developed for the welfare primarily of the native, with equal opportunity given to all nations insofar as trade and settlement were concerned). In Part 1, Dr. Leubuscher, a British political economist, gave background and framework of the League of Nations mandates in Africa; in Part 2, she analyzed in detail the working of British administration and economic development of Tanganyika, formerly German East Africa. The final part examined and evaluated results and future prospects for effective operation of the mandates system (changed under the United Nations to trusteeship).

1359. MALCOLM, DONALD W. *Sukumaland: an African people and their country; a study of land use in Tanganyika*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1953. 224 p. illus., fold. maps. HD1004.T3M3

Survey of the Sukuma region of Tanganyika by a Colonial Officer whose intensive study of land utilization in one of the four districts of Sukumaland had led to a first edition of this work in 1938, embodying recommendations that were followed by the Sukuma Development Organization. In the present edition Mr. Malcolm examined the geographical and ethnological background of the Sukuma, land ownership and use, cattle rights, local government, and the chief problems connected with land. There are extensive appendixes, including data regarding ground-water, soils, and vegetation.

1360. MUSTAFA, SOPHIA. *The Tanganyika way*. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 139 p. illus. DT447.M8 1962

Firsthand account of the achievement of independence. The author is in 1963 M.P. for Arusha, and the first non-African to become a full member of TANU.

1361. STAHL, KATHLEEN M. *Tanganyika: sail in the wilderness*. S'Gravenhage, Netherlands, Mouton & Co., 1962. 160 p. illus., map. DLC  
A picture of Tanganyika on the eve of independence by an economist known for several studies of British colonial policy.
1362. TANGANYIKA. *Tanganyika, a review of its resources and their development*. Prepared under the direction of J. F. R. Hill; edited by J. P. Moffett. Dar es Salaam, Govt. Printer, 1955. 924 p. HC517.T3A47  
Bibliography: p. 861-868.  
Edited by the Commissioner for Social Development of Tanganyika, this big volume surveyed resources and requirements of the territory in close detail. The Development Plan, drafted in 1946, had been revised in 1950 (dropping the unfortunate groundnuts scheme) and was kept under constant review to determine priorities. Sections of this reference work, which covers widely the land, people, political structure, social services, communications, and all phases of production and economic life, were prepared largely by the heads of departments concerned. There are maps and tables throughout, a select bibliography, listing mainly documentary sources, and an extensive index.
1363. TANGANYIKA. Ministry of Commerce and Industry. *Commerce and industry in Tanganyika*. Dar es Salaam, 1961. 127 p. illus. DLC  
Prepared to coincide with independence, this well-illustrated pamphlet is addressed to prospective investors and others interested in the economic future of the new nation.
1364. TAYLOR, J. CLAGETT. *The political development of Tanganyika*. Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1963. 254 p. DT444.T3  
Coverage of political history before and under the British mandate and trusteeship and the achievement of independence. The author is a sincere admirer of Nyerere and his "moderate and peaceful method of leadership."
1365. WILSON, MONICA HUNTER. *Communal rituals of the Nyakyusa*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1959. 228 p. illus., maps, geneal. tables, plan. DT443.W5
1366. ———. *Good company: a study of Nyakyusa age-villages*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1951. 278 p. illus. GN490.W5  
Mrs. Wilson and her husband, the late Godfrey Wilson, collected ethnological data on the Nyakyusa and the Ngonde of the region north of Lake Nyasa in the Nyasaland-Tanganyika border between 1934 and 1938. These two thorough anthropological studies result from that research.
1367. ———. *The peoples of the Nyasa-Tanganyika corridor*. Cape Town, University of Cape Town, 1958. 75 p. (Communications from the School of African Studies, n.s. no. 29) DT856.W5
1368. WINANS, EDGAR V. *Shambala: the constitution of a traditional state*. Berkeley and Los Angeles, University of California Press, 1962. 180 p. DT443.W53 1962  
By an American anthropologist, this is a specialized study of the traditional political organization of a state in northwestern Tanganyika. The author cites other analyses of African states, giving the work value as a text. He outlines the general setting in an introductory chapter. Professor Goldschmidt reviews the state of political theory in anthropological literature in a long foreword, characterizing this book as an important U.S. contribution to the series of studies of African politics begun by British and South African anthropologists.
1369. WOOD, ALAN. *The groundnut affair*. London, Bodley Head, 1950. 264 p. HD9235.P32G78  
In this book, which went to press in the early summer of 1950, when the bold experiment in Tanganyika was on its last legs under savage attack in Parliament and press, a British journalist told in detail the story of how the Government adopted a scheme proposed by the United Africa Company for a huge enterprise of clearing and planting unused land and by mechanized production reaping vast crops of peanuts as a substantial contribution to world shortages of essential oils and fats, at the same time raising African standards of living by giving thousands of natives opportunity for well-paid labor, good living conditions, education, health, and other social services. The difficulties proved insurmountable for a short-term project, nearly all the funds allocated for a 6-year program having



been used up in the first 2 years, and bitter criticism was aroused. About the time of publication of Mr. Wood's book it was announced by the Minister of Food that the attempt would be abandoned.

The scheme was officially announced in *A Plan for the Mechanized Production of Groundnuts in East and Central Africa* (Gt. Brit. Ministry of Food, Feb. 1947, 48 p. Cmd. 7030), the so-called Wakefield Report. Progress reports were issued. The British Information Services in New York explained it to the American public in a brochure, *Not Just Peanuts* (1948. 28 p.). In 1948 a government-sponsored public corporation, the Overseas Food Corporation, was created to administer the job; its *Report and Accounts* were published by H. M. Stationery Office from 1949 to 1955. The final disposition of the groundnut plan, later converted to a much smaller-scale program of experiment in land clearance and mechanized agriculture, was explained in 1951 and 1954 by the Ministry of Food in two Command Papers, *Future of the Overseas Food Corporation* (19, 10 p. Cmd. 8125, 9185). The scheme was taken over in 1955 by the Tanganyika Agricultural Corporation. For further details see Freitag, no. 423).

1370. WRIGHT, FERGUS C. *African consumers in Nyasaland and Tanganyika*; an inquiry into the distribution and consumption of commodities among Africans carried out in 1952-53. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1955. 116 p. tables. maps. (Colonial Office. Colonial research studies, no. 17) JV33.G7A48, no. 17

This investigation covered consumers' cash expenditures and cash resources (seldom enough to afford a bicycle, often "hoarded"), the commodities the Afri-

cans are offered, the control of trade, and the traders, Arab, Indian, and African. Among conclusions it is observed that the peasant Africans are more tempted by "consumer services," transportation, medical and educational services, etc., than by trade goods. Appendixes give various types of consumer statistics.

1371. YOUNG, ROLAND A., and HENRY FOSBROOKE. *Smoke in the hills*; political tension in the Morogoro District of Tanganyika. Evanston, Northwestern University Press, 1960. 212 p. illus. (Northwestern University [Evanston, Ill.] African studies, no. 4) DT449.M6Y6

Study of the Luguru, a mountain people of the Morogoro District of east central Tanganyika, with special reference to political change. The title refers to the trouble that developed in connection with attempted government improvements in land use; riots resulted from a program of soil conservation which called for the construction of bench terraces, and a struggle arose between rival groups around the Native Authority and the old hereditary rainmaker leader. Although this episode forms the central theme, it is treated in a single chapter, the rest of the book being analysis of evolving social and political patterns of Luguru life. The authors are respectively a political scientist and a sociologist formerly connected with the Tanganyika Government. The English edition was published with the title, *Land and Politics among the Luguru of Tanganyika*.

## Uganda

1372. APTER, DAVID E. *The political kingdom in Uganda*; a study in bureaucratic nationalism. Princeton, N.J., Princeton University Press, 1961. 498 p. illus., maps. DT434.U25A6

A case study in political theory. Dr. Apter in a book of 1955 had examined the development of national government in Ghana (see no. 588) through a system based on charisma though mobilized in terms of British parliamentary democracy. Here he analyzes in depth the very different pattern of the course toward self-government in Uganda, where the stubborn traditionalism of the kingdom of Buganda is the chief political factor. This traditionalism, he shows, has made modernization and change its characteristic, but clings to the autocratic authority. Dr. Apter traces the rise and development of the conflicts which

culminated in the deportation of the Kabaka and are now impeding progress toward unified independent state. The book is reviewed at some length in *Africa Report* of October 1961.

The opposition in Britain to the banishment of Mutesa II was voiced in the first half of a book by the *Observer* Africanist, Colin Legum: *Must We Lose Africa?* (London, W. H. Allen, 1954. 264 p.). In the second half the author stressed his fears regarding the newly established Central African Federation.

1373. BEATTIE, JOHN. *Bunyoro, an African kingdom*. New York, Holt, 1960. 86 p. illus. (Case studies in cultural anthropology)

DT434.U2B4

Concise and comprehensive summary of the life of this tribe of Western Uganda. The author, a British

anthropologist who had at one time been an administrative officer in Tanganyika, designed his clear presentation as background reading for courses in African ethnology.

1374. COOK, Sir ALBERT R. *Uganda memories (1897–1940)*. Kampala, The Uganda Society, 1945. 415 p.

Reminiscences of a doctor who had given his life to missionary work in Uganda, where in 1897 he opened a pioneer mission hospital from which has grown the Mengo Hospital, a world center for the study of tropical medicine. Much of the narrative is concerned with the exciting and terrible events of the early days, including the Sudanese Mutiny of 1897–98, and the first appearance of the tsetse-fly in Uganda, where between 1901 and 1906, 200,000 natives died of sleeping sickness.

1375. COTT, HUGH BAMFORD. *Uganda in black and white*. With a foreword by Sir Andrew Cohen. London, Macmillan, 1959. 231 p. 109 illus. DT434.U2C6

Full-page pen-and-ink drawings of people, scenes, carvings, etc., with interpretative captions on facing pages. The whole forms a vividly descriptive journey through the country, revealing typical features of culture of chief tribal groups.

1376. THE ECONOMIST, London. *Power in Uganda, 1957–1970*; a study of economic growth prospects for Uganda with special reference to the potential demand for electricity. Prepared by the Economist Intelligence Unit. London, 1957. 197 p. illus. HD9685.U3E3

1377. ———. *Uganda: the background to investment*. Prepared for the Uganda Government, by the Economist Intelligence Unit. London, 1962. 63 p.

1378. ELKAN, WALTER. *An African labour force*; two case studies in East African factory employment. Kampala, East African Institute of Social Research, 1956. 60 p. tables. (East African studies, no. 7) HD8039.T62U353

Social survey of employees of two factories of the East African Tobacco Company in Kampala and Jinja, Uganda. Labor turnover, absenteeism, working conditions, wages, employment of women, consultations of workers and management in the absence of trade

unions are among aspects treated. A number of the 24 statistical tables include breakdown by tribal composition. The writer, a social scientist, had done his research as a Fellow of the Institute. In the same series Dr. Elkan edited the posthumously published monograph of a colleague, Philip G. Powesland, who had taught economics at Makerere College: *Economic Policy and Labour: A Study in Uganda's Economic History* (Kampala, 1957. 81 p. East African studies, no. 10). A later monograph by Dr. Elkan is also an analysis of labor trends and problems in Uganda: *Migrants and Proletarians: Urban Labour in the Economic Development of Uganda* (London, New York, Nairobi, Published on behalf of the East African Institute of Social Research by Oxford University Press, 1960. 149 p.).

1379. FALLERS, LLOYD A. *Bantu bureaucracy; a study of integration and conflict in the political institutions of an East African people*. Cambridge [Eng.] Published for the East African Institute of Social Research by W. Heffer, 1956. 283 p. JS7533.A6N3

Study in the field of social anthropology by an American scholar who had worked at the East African Institute of Social Research under a Fulbright grant. The people he discussed are the Soga, in the Busoga District of the Eastern Province of Uganda, a society of small peasant farmers whose political system has changed in the past half-century to "an amalgam of traditional indigenous structures and modern Western ones." The book was reviewed by Lucy P. Mair in *Africa* of April 1959 as a brilliant contribution to politico-social analysis, although she considered his conclusions veiled in "a smoke screen of terminology," typical of "the new scholasticism."

1380. GIRLING, F. K. *The Acholi of Uganda*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1960. 238 p. ([Gt. Brit.] Colonial Office. Colonial research studies, no. 30) JV33.G7A48

Based on a doctoral thesis in social anthropology, this is a study in semitechnical style of a Nilotic tribe, over 200,000 of whom live in Uganda, in separate development from the much smaller group over the border in the Sudan. Appendixes include explanation of "The Map of Acholiland" from Emin Pasha in 1882 to the present, samples of villages, lineages, and genealogies.



1381. GT. BRIT. *Uganda*; report of the Uganda Constitutional Conference, 1961, and text of the agreed draft of a new Buganda agreement initialed in London on 9th October, 1961. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1961. 73 p. (Cmnd. 1523) DLC

1382. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Report on Uganda*. 1946-60. London, H.M. Stationery Off. illus., map. annual. (*Its Colonial annual reports*) DT434.U2G57

The last issue of the annual report prepared by the Information Department of Uganda for the Colonial Office was that for 1960, published in 1961, the year before Britain turned over the reins of government to the newly independent country. Like earlier reports, this volume includes an extensive classified reading list, with a separate section for official documents. For other reports and papers of Uganda, many of which will presumably continue to appear in much the same form, see the Library of Congress list of official publications of Uganda (no. 1268).

1383. HAWKINS, EDWARD K. *Roads and road transport in an underdeveloped country: a case study of Uganda*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1962. 263 p. (Colonial research studies, no. 32) fold. map, diagrs. JV33.G7A48, no. 32

A thorough technical study.

1384. HAYDON, E. S. *Law and justice in Buganda*. London, Butterworth, 1960. 342 p. (Butterworth's African law series, no. 2) DLC-LL

1385. INGHAM, KENNETH. *The making of modern Uganda*. London, G. Allen & Unwin 1958. 303 p. illus. DT434.U2I5

Straightforward history of Uganda from the first European penetration in the 1860's to the present. The author is a history professor at Makerere.

1386. INGRAMS, WILLIAM HAROLD. *Uganda; a crisis of nationhood*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1960. 365 p. illus. (The Corona library) DT434.U2I52

Includes bibliography.

One of a series prepared under Colonial Office auspices as authoritative popular presentations of specific countries. Mr. Ingrams had gathered the material during long visits to what he speaks of as "the

Uganda of Cohen," during the years (1952-57) when Governor Sir Andrew Cohen, the former head of the African Division of the Colonial Office, was directing vigorous advances in educational, economic, and political development of the colony. The first part, "Learning about Uganda," is descriptive and historical, in the nature of a regional guide. Part 2, "Thinking about Uganda," discusses the progress of the country toward nationhood. Much of the problem is shown as centering around Buganda's political obduracy; the Cohen period had included the exile and return of the Kabaka.

1387. INTERNATIONAL BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT. *The economic development of Uganda*. Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Press, 1962. 475 p. maps, charts, tables. HC517.U2I5

The report of a mission which was requested by the Uganda and British Governments and organized by the World Bank, and which surveyed and analyzed the economy of Uganda, making recommendations for a 5-year development program, 1961/62-1965/66, with particular attention to priorities for expenditure. The nine-man team was headed by Professor Edward S. Mason of Harvard University and included expert advisers from five nations on economics, health, industry, transport, agriculture, and education. Except for a 10-page introduction, the entire focus is on present economic conditions, priorities, and approaches for development. In three parts, the first a general report; the second a program for agriculture aimed at diversifying the two-crop production of cotton and coffee by improvement of livestock, fisheries, and forestry. Part 3 sets forth programs in other sectors—mining, manufacture, and the tourist trade, transport, communications and electric power, education and manpower, health, housing and community development. There are statistical annexes.

1388. JABAVU, NONI. *Drawn in colour; African contrasts*. London, J. Murray, 1960. 208 p. DT761.J25

A personal narrative by a South African writer of a distinguished Xhosa family, now living in England, who after a sad return to her home in the Transkei, visited a sister married to a Ugandan. Her distressed impressions of life in Uganda show differences of outlook between Africans. The book has been on best-seller lists.

1389. JOHNSTON, Sir HARRY H. *The Uganda protectorate*; an attempt to give some description of the physical geography, botany, zoology, anthropology, languages, and history of the territories under British protection in East Central Africa, between the Congo Free State and the Rift Valley and between the first degree of south latitude and the fifth degree of north latitude. 2d ed., with prefatory chapter giving additional matter. With 510 illustrations from drawings and photographs by the author and others, 48 full-page colored plates by the author, and 9 maps by J. G. Bartholomew and the author. New York, Dodd, Mead, 1904. 2 v. col. front., illus., col. plates, ports., fold. maps. (Paged continuously) DT434.U2J72

Appendix to Chapter XIII, "Anthropology," and to chapter XIV, "Pygmies and Forest Negroes," by Dr. F. Shrubsall.

Old standard work on Uganda by the explorer, naturalist, and empire-building administrator who served as Special Commissioner to the Uganda Protectorate from 1899 to 1902. Sir Harry Johnston negotiated the Agreement of 1900 with Buganda which provided for the kingdom's administrative autonomy.

1390. KENDALL, HENRY. *Town planning in Uganda*; a brief description of the efforts made by government to control development of urban areas from 1915 to 1955. London, Published by the Crown Agents for Overseas Governments and Administrations, 1955. 90 p. NA9277.U35H4

Explanation of town planning schemes for the new urban areas into which African workers are crowding, by the Director of Town Planning for the Protectorate. The quarto volume is handsomely printed, with drawings, maps, plans, and diagrams reproduced in color, and a section of photographs. A related survey by an official of the Economic Commission for Africa, V. L. Griffith, was brought out as a United Nations document: *Enquiry into Community Development in Uganda* (New York, 1960. 86 p. E/CN.14/81).

1391. KYAGAMBIDWA, JOSEPH. *African music from the source of the Nile*. New York, Praeger, 1955. 255 p. illus. (Books that matter) ML3760.K9

Includes music.

By an African Catholic scholar from Uganda who had been studying and working in the United States. He begins with short notes on African history and an

explanation of Ganda music (the music of the Baganda). Then about 200 pages of the big photoprinted volume give examples of Ganda songs, with music, the shorter ones with words in the vernacular, poetic translations in English, and explanation.

The language of the Baganda, spoken in Buganda, is explained for English students in a textbook, *A Luganda Grammar*, by Ethel O. Ashton and others (London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1954. 516 p. PL8201.A8).

1392. LAWRENCE, J. C. D. *The Iteso*; fifty years of change in a Nilo-Hamitic tribe of Uganda. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1957. xx, 280 p. illus., maps. DT434.U2L35

Includes melodies with words in the Teso language and English translation.

Bibliography: p. 272-275.

Study of the Iteso, the second largest tribe of Uganda, who live in Teso District of the Eastern Province and across the border in Nyanza Province of Kenya. The writer, who disclaims any knowledge of anthropology, had been District Commissioner of Teso for 5 years and began the book as a record of customary law, based on the cases that had come before him. It was gradually expanded to include a history of the district, and an attempt at a comparative survey of present-day and pre-British Teso life and culture. Although the seminomadic life of pastoralists typical of the Nilo-Hamitic family has largely changed to a semiagricultural society, the author found that "The rapid assimilation of European learning, techniques and living fashions have had virtually no effect on the culture of the tribe."

1393. LOW, DONALD ANTHONY, and R. CRANFORD PRATT. *Buganda and British overrule, 1900-1955*; two studies. London, New York, Published on behalf of East African Institute of Social Research by Oxford University Press, 1960. 373 p. JQ2951.B8L6

In this two-part work an Australian historian (Low) and a Canadian professor of political science joined forces under a Carnegie Corporation grant to the East African Institute of Social Research. The first part by Dr. Low is the history of the Uganda Agreement of 1900 (text in App. II) made by Sir Harry H. Johnston with the Regent and leading chiefs of Buganda. The second part, by Professor Pratt, studies analytically the evolution of the policy of indirect rule in Uganda. Appendix I reviews the "major drama" of the deportation and return of the Kabaka in 1953-55. Documentation largely from official papers is shown in footnotes. A paper by Dr. Low, *Political Parties in Uganda, 1949-62*, is published by the Institute of



Commonwealth Studies of the University of London (London, Athlone Press, 1962. 58 p. Commonwealth Papers, 8). The author had spent most of the fifties lecturing at Makerere College and simultaneously writing as correspondent for *The Times*. Thus much of his information had been collected at firsthand.

1394. MAIR, LUCY P. *An African people in the twentieth century*. London, G. Routledge. 1934. xvi, 300 p. illus.

DT434.U2M3 1934

Ethnological study of the Baganda, prepared by Dr. Mair as her thesis at the University of London. She had carried out her studies as a pupil of Malinowski.

1395. MIDDLETON, JOHN. *Lugbara religion: ritual and authority among an East African people*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1960. 276 p. illus. GN470.M5

A "sociological analysis of the place of ritual and belief in Lugbara social life." The Lugbara, a Sudanic-speaking people, live in the West Nile District of Uganda and across the Nile-Congo divide in the Belgian Congo. They worship the dead; ancestors, ghosts, oracles, and witches form the stuff of Dr. Middleton's analysis of a representative family cluster, which, though the subject of a scholarly review by I. M. Lewis in *Africa* of July 1961 (p. 290), makes interesting reading understandable to the layman.

1396. MUKWAYA, A. B. *Land tenure in Buganda; present-day tendencies*. Nairobi, Published for the East African Institute of Social Research by the Eagle Press, 1953. 79 p. (East African studies, no. 1) HD990.U43B87

This paper is based on a study of 98 estates in Buganda, illustrating the special system of land tenure through the history of their subdivision by inheritance, gift, and sale.

1397. MUNGER, EDWIN S. *Relational patterns of Kampala, Uganda*. Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1951. 165 p. (Dept. of Geography. Research paper no. 21)

H31.C514, no. 21

Monograph for which fieldwork was done on a Fulbright Research grant, the first given for study in a British colony. Dr. Munger's headquarters in Uganda were at Makerere College, the leading educational institution in East Africa, located on the outskirts of the capital of Buganda, Kampala, the most important

town of Uganda, which forms the subject of this detailed analysis. Dr. Munger examined physical, politico-economic, and social background of the city, and its relationships with the rest of Uganda, with Kenya and Tanganyika, and with the other neighboring countries of Africa.

1398. RICHARDS, AUDREY I., ed. *Economic development and tribal change; a study of immigrant labour in Buganda*. Cambridge, Published for the East African Institute of Social Research by W. Heffer. [1952?] 301 p. illus., maps. HD8799.U4R5

Bibliography: p. 292-294.

Dr. Richards, Director of the East African Institute of Social Research, edited this volume resulting from research carried out in 1950 and 1951 and utilizing material from earlier surveys as well as new field investigations. It covers the history and extent of immigration from the neighboring countries—chiefly Ruanda-Urundi, where the poorer tribes are attracted by the prospects of working for the comparatively wealthy cotton and coffee-producing Ganda farmers. In particular, the study was focused on the sociological aspects of absorption of these immigrants into different tribal areas of Uganda. The contributors are sociologists and economists, J. M. Fortt, A. B. Mukwaya, P. Powesland, Dr. Richards, and A. W. Southall.

1399. SOFER, CYRIL, and RHONA SOFER. *Jinja transformed; a social survey of a multiracial township*. Kampala, East African Institute of Social Research, 1955. 120 p. (East African studies no. 4) HN800.J5S6

Jinja, at the source of the Nile in the Eastern Province of Uganda, mushroomed after the Second World War because of the great hydroelectric power scheme of the Owens Falls Dam, and was in 1952 a modern manufacturing town of over 20,000—Africans, Asians, and Europeans. The focus of attention in this study by two sociologists trained in Cape Town is the conflict of interests of the three races. In their analysis they have used standard sampling statistical methods. They emphasize that a satisfactory municipal administration cannot be worked out until the society "has achieved a workable level of social solidarity."

A more generalized study of the problems of urbanism in Uganda is by an American geographer, Ann E. Larimore: *The Alien Town: Patterns of Settlement in Busoga, Uganda; An Essay in Cultural Geography* (Chicago, 1959. 208 p. illus., maps. Photolith. University of Chicago. Department of Geography. Research paper no. 55).

1400. SOUTHALL, AIDAN W. *Alur society; a study in processes and types of domination*. Cambridge [Eng.] W. Heffer, 1956. xviii, 397 p. illus., maps, geneal. tables. GN659.A4S6

Bibliography: p. 383-390. Bibliographical footnotes.

This study resulting from fieldwork among the Alur people and their neighbors, the Lendu and Okebo in Uganda and the Belgian Congo, is focused on the position of the chief in the traditional and evolving society. The author, while analyzing fully kinship and lineage patterns and other ethnographical considerations, has managed to avoid or explain technical language in a readable presentation. He has been a member of the staff of the East African Institute of Social Research since 1951. Another monograph in which Dr. Southall collaborated with the sociologist Peter C. W. Gutkind, *Townsmen in the Making; Kampala and Its Suburbs* (Kampala, 1956. 272 p. Processed), was published by the Institute as its East African Studies No. 9. Like the first-named work, this volume, consisting largely of individual case histories, makes interesting reading for layman and specialist alike.

1401. TAYLOR, JOHN VERNON. *The growth of the church in Buganda; an attempt at understanding*. London, SCM Press, 1958. 288 p. illus. (World mission studies) BR1443.B8T3

The first of a series being launched by the International Missionary Society to study "in depth" the new churches in Asia, Africa, and Latin America. Mr. Taylor of the Church Missionary Society has divided his work in three parts; history, descriptive, and "The Future." In the first he relates the stirring story of the early missionary successes, the period of persecution, the notable growth under Bishop A. R. Tucker from 1890 to 1910. (Bishop Tucker's own *Eighteen Years in Uganda and East Africa*, London, Arnold, 1908. 2 v. 60 plates, is one of the important sources.) Next he discusses moves of more recent years toward establishing an indigenous clergy. In the descriptive part he concentrates on churches in the rural areas. The last section is on pastoral matters and theological concepts. An appendix is "A Partial Who's Who of the Early Christians of Buganda."

1402. THOMAS, HAROLD B., and ROBERT SCOTT. *Uganda*. London, Oxford University Press, 1935. 559 p. DT434.U2J5

Comprehensive reference work on Uganda by two administrative officers, published by authority of the Government of the Protectorate. The frontispiece re-

produces the famous cartoon from *Punch*, 1894, of the prim and dismayed butler, John Bull, looking at the black foundling in a basket on his doorstep—in Mrs. Huxley's phrase, Britain's "reluctant imperialism." The historical chapter which opens the handbook is prefaced by a chronology of 50 guiding dates, from Speke's discovery of Lake Victoria to the first regular airmail from London in 1931. There follow in the usual order well-written expositions of all aspects of Uganda's country, life, administration, economy. A short final chapter on 19th-century writing about Uganda precedes a select list of references and statistical appendixes.

1403. TOTHILL, J. D., ed. *Agriculture in Uganda*, by the Staff of the Department of Agriculture of Uganda. London, Oxford University Press, 1940. 551 p. DA

Officially sponsored specialist work beginning with an account of Uganda agriculture in general aspects, then covering climate, native agriculture and land tenure, crop rotation, ploughing, soils and soil erosion problems, manures, experiment stations, native food crops, and long analysis of the export crops, cotton, coffee, sugar, etc.

1404. TROWELL, MARGARET, and K. P. WACHSMANN. *Tribal crafts of Uganda*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1953. 422 p. illus. DT434.U2T75

Ethnological survey of the material culture of the tribes of Uganda, including drawings and appendix with tabulation of objects described. The book is based on studies at the Uganda Museum, of which Mrs. Trowell was Curator from 1941 to 1946, and during her work in her post as Head of the School of Art of Makerere College. She contributed two-thirds of the text, covering domestic and cultural arts and crafts—implements of all sorts, household objects, clothing and adornment, weapons, and visual arts. Her collaborator, Dr. Wachsmann, then Curator of the Uganda Museum, wrote the section on sound instruments, including percussion idiophones, rattles, bells, sticks, rubbing boards, as well as such more strictly musical devices as drums, bows, and zithers. The volume ends with a section of plates—drawings of the instruments and photographs of the musicians in action. There are separate indexes for the two parts. Mrs. Trowell has written also an interesting personal story of social life and customs of Uganda, *African Tapestry* (London, Faber & Faber, 1957. 164 p. illus.).



1405. *Uganda becomes independent*. London, East Africa and Rhodesia, October 1962. 72 p. illus. DLC

A special feature supplement, carrying contributions from present and past leaders, career sketches of Uganda ministers, and articles on various aspects of interest with regard to the new nation.

1406. *The Uganda journal*; the journal of the Uganda Society. Speke centenary number. Kampala, The Uganda Society, March 1962. 117 p. fold. maps. DT434.U2U3

An issue devoted to articles on the exploration of the Nile, including pieces on Sir John Speke, Emin Pasha, Grant, and other early travelers; one contribution includes a chronological list of travelers in Uganda from 1860 to 1913. The semiannual *Uganda Journal* is an organ for historical, literary, and scientific material of local interest.

1407. WINTER, EDWARD H. *Bwamba*; a structural-functional analysis of a patrilineal society. Cambridge, Published for the East African Institute of Social Research by W. Heffer, 1956. 264 p. DT434.U2W72

Detailed sociological study of a traditional lineage-structured village society, that of the Amba of Bwamba, an 80-mile square area in western Uganda on the Belgian Congo border beyond the Ruwenzori range. The 30,000-odd tribesmen in their small scattered villages have had little contact with European culture, and the writer, who did fieldwork among them as a Research Fellow of the East African Institute of Social Research, was able to get a comparatively clear picture of the social system. In the last chapter he considers changes now taking place as the villages are being opened to administrative councils, missions, and development of a money economy of coffee and cotton crops.

An earlier paper on this tribe had been published by Mr. Winter as No. 5 of the East African Studies, *Bwamba Economy; the Development of a Primitive Subsistence Economy in Uganda* (Kampala, East African Institute of Social Research, 1955. 43 p.). A later book written as an effort at popular anthropology is a collection of life histories of two men and two women of the Amba: *Beyond the Mountains of the Moon: The Lives of Four Africans* (Urbana, University of Illinois Press, 1959. 276 p.).

1408. WORTHINGTON, EDGAR B. *A development plan for Uganda*. With a foreword by the Governor of Uganda, and the 1948 revision of the plan by Sir Douglas Harris. Entebbe, Govt. Printer, 1949. 112, 146 p. col. maps, diagrs., tables. HC517.U2W6

Dr. Worthington in 1928 and 1932 had published reports on the fisheries of Uganda (cited in *Official Publications of Uganda*, no. 1268). He drew up this comprehensive plan, which was published first in 1947. It covers "Productive Services" (including geology and mining, hydrology water supplies, and swamp development, agriculture and animal industry, tsetse control, forestry, fisheries, etc.); "Social Services" (most importantly education); and "Common Services" (administrative, etc.); then certain pilot development schemes. With the revisions by Sir Douglas Harris, it has formed the basis for the extensive development of Uganda during the past decade.

1409. WRIGLEY, C. C. *Crops and wealth in Uganda*. Kampala, East African Institute of Social Research, 1959. (East African studies, no. 12) HD2130.U5W7

A useful monograph on agriculture in Uganda. Another valuable paper, "Agricultural Change in Uganda, 1945-1960," by Geoffrey B. Masefield, was issued as a separate by Stanford University Press in 1962.

## Zanzibar

1410. BRADY, CYRUS TOWNSEND, Jr. *Commerce and conquest in East Africa*, with particular reference to the Salem trade with Zanzibar. Salem, Essex Institute, 1950. 245 p. DT365.B785

The American writer, who spent some time on business in Southern and Eastern Africa, approached the history of the East African coast, its native peoples and its invaders, Arabs, Portuguese and the other European powers, from a usually neglected angle, that

of American contacts. As noted in the subtitle, emphasis is placed on the connections of the clipper ship trade out of the New England ports with Zanzibar. One chapter is entitled "Amerikani"; in 1838 American cotton manufacturers were supplying "Massachusetts sheeting" to East Africa, and the word still used in Swahili for the calico that makes many African garments is "amerikani." Mr. Brady's narrative is not confined to the 19th century, but begins with commercial relations between East Africa and

the Asiatic countries in ancient times and carries through to the present era.

1411. CAMPBELL, JANE. "Multiracialism and politics in Zanzibar." *Political science quarterly*, v. 77, March 1962: 72-87. H1.P8, v. 77

The author, a member of the staff of the African-American Institute, has firsthand knowledge of the situation in Zanzibar. This timely article examines Zanzibar politics "as the forces of nationalism propel it toward self-government and independence." She explains the racial communities—Arabs, Indians, Shirazi who are part Arab, part African, and African ex-slaves and recent immigrants—the political parties and leaders which follow racial lines, the Arab ZNP (Zanzibar National Party), the ASP (Afro-Shirazi Party), and the smaller ZPPP (Zanzibar and Pemba People's Party), which in December 1959 split from the ASP. She recounts the results of the election and accompanying riots in January 1961 and the later election of June 1961 which led to the situation of early 1962—a "tenuous" truce between ASP and the alliance of ZNP and APPP which formed the current government. She ends with a consideration of the overriding problem of racialism.

1412. GRAY, Sir JOHN MILNER. *History of Zanzibar, from the Middle Ages to 1856*. London, Oxford University Press, 1962. 314 p.

DT435.G7

"Authorities" (chapter notes): p. 281-299; bibliography, p. 300-309.

The writer, late Master of Jesus College, is a barrister who closed his long career in the Colonial Service as Chief Justice of Zanzibar from 1943 to 1952. He is also a historian (see his *History of the Gambia*, no. 551) and in East Africa has specialized in studies making heavy use of Portuguese sources. In this interesting narrative history he gives a full account of Zanzibar and Pemba from the earliest archeological evidences through the death of Seyyid Said. Another study by Sir John Gray based in part on Portuguese sources is *The British in Mombasa, 1824-1826; Being the History of Captain Owen's Protectorate* (London, Macmillan; New York, St. Martin's Press, 1957. 216 p. illus. Kenya History Society. Transactions, v. 1).

1413. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Report on Zanzibar*. 1948+ London, H.M. Stationery Off. biennial. DT434.Z3G7

The Zanzibar report, which is printed for the Colonial Office by the Government Printer in Zanzibar, has been issued every 2 years; the number for

1959-60 was released in January 1963 (86 p. maps). For description, see general note on the Colonial Office reports, no. 94. Its short reading list includes a number of official documents; for others, see Library of Congress list (no. 1268).

1414. GT. BRIT. Commission on the Financial and Economic Position of Zanzibar. *Report on the financial and economic position of the Zanzibar Government in relation to its economic reserves*, by Alan W. Pim, commissioner. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1932, 108 p.

This report is one of the basic documents relating to the economy of Zanzibar.

1415. HOLLINGSWORTH, LAWRENCE W. *Zanzibar under the Foreign Office, 1890-1913*. London, Macmillan, 1953. 232 p. illus.

DT434.Z3H6

In February 1890 the Sultan Seyyid Ali, last of the sons of the creator of the modern state of Zanzibar, Scyyid Said, came to the throne, and in July of the same year signed the agreement by which the Sultanate became a British Protectorate. This work covers the 23 years of Foreign Office control, before the difficulties of administration brought about transfer of the jurisdiction to the Colonial Office. The introductory chapters outline the 19th-century background (the standard account of which was written by Coupland; see no. 1271). Mr. Hollingsworth, who had been for over 20 years a member of the Education Department in Zanzibar, presented his well-documented study as a doctoral thesis at the School of Oriental and African Studies of the University of London.

The period following the transfer of the Protectorate from the Foreign Office control to that of the Colonial Office is the subject of a book by another British official long resident in Zanzibar, Richard H. Crofton: *Zanzibar Affairs, 1914-1933* (London, F. Edwards, 1953. 164 p. illus.). This is not a historical narrative, but a picture of the country seen through various sketches—"A Naval Engagement," "The Maternity Association," "The Museum," "Currency," etc., including biographical and descriptive chapters. Mr. Crofton is author also of a brief historical monograph, *The Old Consulate at Zanzibar [1841-73]* (London, Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1935. 60 p.) and a book on cloves, which includes a chapter on the Zanzibar clove industry: *A Pageant of the Spice Islands* (London, J. Bale & Sons, Danielsson, 1936. 131 p.).

1416. INGRAMS, WILLIAM HAROLD. *Zanzibar, its history and people*. London, Witherby, 1931. 527 p. DT435.I5

The most complete, authoritative history of Zanzibar. The writer, a British expert on the Arab World,



had been an official at Zanzibar from 1919 to 1927. His interesting book begins with geography and people, covers the history from early times, and devotes its major part to ethnology, surveying the Arabs, the detribalized and mixed blood Swahilis, and the natives, in a well-rounded anthropological study. A long bibliography of sources is given, p. 515-519. Mr. Ingrams' career from 1934 to 1945 was in Southern Arabia, Aden, and the Hadramaut. His *Arabia and the Isles* (see no. 1566), includes a chapter of his experiences in Zanzibar (p. 47-62).

Of the older general accounts of Zanzibar, there might be mentioned the description by the explorer Sir Richard F. Burton, *Zanzibar; City, Island and Coast* (London, Tinsley, 1872. 2 v.), which includes some history and ethnological speculation with description and personal narrative, and *Zanzibar, the Island Metropolis of Eastern Africa*, by Major F. B. Pearce, who for some years was British Resident in Zanzibar (London, T. F. Unwin, 1920. 431 p.).

1417. LYNE, ROBERT N. *An apostle of empire; being the life of Sir Lloyd William Mathews, D.C.M.G., lieutenant Royal Navy, first minister of the Zanzibar government.* London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1936. 247 p. illus. fold. map. DT435.L9

The subject of this biography is the British officer who in 1874 was sent out to Zanzibar to take part in the patrol established to stop the slave trade, and subsequently entered the Sultan's service as Commander of the forces. General Sir Lloyd Mathews until his death in 1901 was one of the most powerful influences in the suppression of the slave trade and the establishment of British government in Zanzibar. Except for a short chapter of introduction, the whole of Mr. Lyne's work is concerned with Mathews' career in Zanzibar.

Another biographical work dealing with a British officer instrumental in suppression of the slave trade is a life story with only a portion concerned with Zanzibar, where Christopher P. Rigby was political agent from 1858-61: *General Rigby, Zanzibar and the Slave Trade; With Journals, Dispatches, etc.*, edited by his daughter, Mrs. Charles E. B. Russell (London, Allen & Unwin, 1935. 404 p.).

1418. MIDDLETON, JOHN. *Land tenure in Zanzibar.* London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1961. 88 p. (Gt. Brit. Colonial Office. Colonial research studies, no. 33) JV33.G7A48 No. 33

This report attempts to present "an overall picture of various systems of land tenure [in Zanzibar and Pemba] which are all variants of a traditional tenure based upon subsistence farming and which has been adapted to changes in a social and economic situation brought about by Arab colonization and clove grow-

ing." The author includes an outline of Shirazi kinship and local organization.

1419. OMMANNEY, FRANCIS D. *Isle of cloves; a view of Zanzibar.* London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1955. 230 p. illus. American ed. Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1956.

DT434.Z3O5 1955

Personal narrative by a British Colonial official who was stationed in East Africa for fisheries research. Dr. Ommanney described and interpreted Zanzibar, its history, scenery, ways and manners of life in an evocative picture.

1420. PRINS, ADRIAAN H. J. *The Swahili-speaking peoples of Zanzibar and the East African Coast* (Arabs, Shirazi and Swahili) London, International African Institute, 1961. 143 p. (Ethnographic Survey of Africa. East Central Africa, pt. 12) GN659.Z3P7

See general note on the series (no. 270). The author includes an exceptionally comprehensive bibliography, noting many historical and descriptive works and official documents in addition to ethnographical studies.

1421. SHELSWELL-WHITE, GEOFFREY H. *Guide to Zanzibar.* New ed. Zanzibar, Government Printer, 1949. 109 p. and maps.

DT435.S67

A handbook for tourists that had been prepared by an administrative officer and "private secretary to His Highness the Sultan" in 1932, with additions by other hands. It contains general articles and practical information on miscellaneous topics, a baedeker of tours of the town and surrounding country, and appendixes on such special features of Zanzibar as fishing, bullfighting, the carved Arab doorways, Arab chests. There have been several revisions. The Colonial Office report on Zanzibar for 1955 and 1956 cites an edition of 1952.

1422. WHITELEY, W. H. *The dialects and verse of Pemba; an introduction.* Kampala, East African Swahili Committee, Makerere College, 1958. 61 p. map. (Studies in Swahili dialect, 4) PL8704.Z9P4

The author had visited the island of Pemba in behalf of the East African Swahili Committee (see no. 1299n), and collected linguistic materials, which are exemplified in this brochure. The introduction discusses the main features of dialectic differences; the selections of verse are in the dialect, without translation but with notes and a word list.

# Somalia

## Bibliography

1423. U.S. Library of Congress. General Reference and Bibliography Division. *Official publications of Somaliland, 1941-1959; a guide*, compiled by Helen F. Conover. Washington, 1960. 41 p. Z3516.U5

This bibliography is out of print, but a positive microfilm can be obtained for \$2.25 from the Photoduplication Service of the Library of Congress. It will be useful for anyone doing serious research on Somalia and on the former British and French Somalilands. The first seven items, descriptively annotated, name published bibliographies in which unofficial literature regarding the Horn of Africa is exhaustively covered. Most of this literature is in Italian, but the older writings in English and French are usually included in the Italian bibliographies.

Because of the extent of the bibliographical leads provided through this list, the present selection on Somalia is limited to notable recent books and articles, and to a selection of the entries analyzed at greater length in the section on Somaliland of the Library's 1958 publication, *North and Northeast Africa*.

1424. BAYNE, E. A. *Somalia on the Horn: a counterpoint of problems confronting one of Africa's new nations*. New York, American Universities Field Staff, 1960. 7 pts. (Reports service. Northeast Africa series, v. 7, no. 5-6, 8-12, Mar. 1-22, 1960). DLC-AFR
1425. ———. *Birthday for Somalia: continuing problems but progress also mark an adventurous first year of independence*. August 1961. 18 p. (Reports Service. Northeast Africa series, v. 8, no. 1) DLC-AFR

The author of this series of well-informed confidential reports was formerly an economic adviser to the governments of Nationalist China and Iran, and writes for the AUFS on Italy and the Near East. His seven papers of 1960 offered keen analysis of the situation in the trust territory of Somalia as it approached its independence date of July 1960. The separate parts were: 1. "The Policeman"; 2. "The Economy"; 3. "Politics"; 4. "The Ethiopians"; 5. "The Italians"; 6. "The Americans"; 7. "Theme and Variations." The 1961 paper was an evaluation of the first year's progress for both the former Italian colony and former British Somaliland, which had joined in forming the new nation. The series has been continued in 1963

with Mr. Bayne's reports, *Brinkmanship on the Horn* (v. 10, no. 1), and *From Clan to Nation* (v. 10, no. 2).

Another assessment of coming difficulties was made by A. S. Reyner, "Somalia: The Problems of Underdevelopment," in the *Middle East Journal* of Summer 1960 (v. 14, p. 247-255).

A thesis on Somali nationalism presented at Harvard University by Saadia Touval is due for publication in early 1963.

1426. BELL, CHRISTOPHER R. V. *The Somali language*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1953. 185 p. PJ2531.B4

By the former Director of Education of the Somaliland Protectorate, now in Uganda, this is a useful little book, with Somali grammar presented in the simplest possible style. Includes exercises, key to answers, and vocabularies. One of the difficulties of Somali is that it has had no written alphabet, and no traditionally accepted form among its many dialects.

See also A. N. Tucker and M. A. Bryan, *The Non-Bantu Languages of North-Eastern Africa* (no. 301).

1427. CASTAGNO, ALPHONSO A. *Somalia*. New York, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1959. 339-400 p. (International conciliation, no. 522) JX1907.A8, no. 522

Concentrated review of the stages of political, educational, and economic development of the Trust Territory of Somalia during the decade after the United Nations decision in 1949 to give the country its independence in 1960. "For the first time in the history of the United Nations a target date was imposed on a Trusteeship Power." Emphasis is on relations of the Amministrazione Fiduciaria Italiana della Somalia [AFIS] with the United Nations, the author giving Italy credit for substantial contributions. A chapter on "International Problems" discusses the boundary dispute with Ethiopia and the "Greater Somalia" issue. It is understood that Dr. Castagno has in preparation (1963) a full-scale study of Somali politics.

An earlier monograph on the same theme, *Somaliland under Italian Administration: A Case Study in United Nations Trusteeship*, by Lawrence S. Finkelstein, was published by the Woodrow Wilson Foundation in 1955 (New York. 48 p.).

1428. CERULLI, ENRICO. *Somalia: scritti vari editi ed inediti*. Roma, Published for the Amministrazione Fiduciaria Italiana della Somalia by Istituto Poligrafico dello Stato, 1957-59. 2 v. DT401.C4



The author, whose long civil service career in Italian Africa included a term as Director of Political Affairs in Somaliland in the twenties, and who has represented Italy with regard to Africa in the United Nations since 1948, is also a scholar noted for his studies of North-eastern African peoples and letters. These two volumes bring together writings on many aspects of Somalia. In the first volume are essays on history and legend, Islam, religious literature and astronomy, and the Arab text and translation in Italian of a Somali chronicle, "The Book of Zengi." The second volume is on customary law, ethnography, linguistics, and the tribal way of life.

1429. CORNI, GUIDO, ed. *Somalia italiana*. Milano, Editoriale Arte e Storia, 1937. 2 v. illus. (part col.) maps. DT416.C6

A large general survey of Italian Somaliland under the Fascist government, lavishly produced in two volumes of articles by Italian specialists. The first volume has a general sketch and papers on history, geology, flora and fauna, peoples, primitive agriculture, stock-raising and diseases, fishing. The second volume is on the Fascist administration and its measures of physical and economic development.

1430. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Report on the Somaliland Protectorate*. 1948-59. London, H.M. Stationery Off. biennial. plates, map. (Its Colonial reports) DT406.A14

The last biennial report of the British Government on its administration of the Somali Protectorate, covering the years 1958 and 1959, was published in 1960 as the small territory on the Gulf of Aden joined its larger neighbor, Somalia, in an independent state. The nomadic tribesmen still engage in feudal fighting over grazing and watering rights, have such "a strong aversion" to close Government supervision that no census can be taken, and feel "a traditional antipathy toward agriculture."

A novel by an English writer familiar with conditions in Somaliland gave a vivid presentation of the feuding tribes and the difficulties encountered by British Colonial Officers in dealing with them: Gerald Hanley, *The Consul at Sunset* (New York, Macmillan, 1951. 254 p.). The scene is laid in the country taken over from the Italians during the war and administered by the British.

1431. HALL, Sir DOUGLAS. "Somaliland's last year as a Protectorate." *African affairs*, v. 59, January 1961: 26-37. DT1.R62, v. 59

A lecture before the Royal African Society in December 1960, followed by discussion. The speaker,

who had been in the Civil Service in Northern Rhodesia, was transferred as Governor to the British Protectorate of Somaliland in 1959, to preside over its last few months before union with Somalia on July 1, 1960. In his talk he gave a résumé of immediate steps leading to independence.

1432. HOLM, HENRIETTA M. *The agricultural resources of Somalia*. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off. 1956. 20 p. map. (U.S. Foreign Agricultural Service. FAS-M-13)

DLC

Brief outline of the topography and climate of Somalia and methods and products of its nomadic stock-grazing and limited settled farming. In the dry, hot country the herds are the chief wealth, and 45 percent of the Somalis are pastoral tribesmen who migrate with the rains. Native crops are almost entirely cereals; chief export crops come from a few Italian farms on irrigated concession lands producing cotton and bananas.

1433. HUNT, JOHN A. *A general survey of the Somaliland Protectorate 1944-1950*; final report on "An economic survey and reconnaissance of the British Somaliland Protectorate 1944-1950," Colonial Development and Welfare Scheme D. 484. Hargeisa, To be purchased from the Chief Secretary, 1951. 203 p. maps, tables. DT406.H8

Publication recording the results of the 7-year geographical survey carried out under a Colonial Development and Welfare scheme costing about £56,000, under the direction of the writer, a geologist and "keen scientist." Special attention is given to topography, meteorology, geology, and the ecology of the nomadic stock-herding tribesmen. Recommendations are made for various lines of development, including exploration of oil possibilities (considered the chief hope, as yet unfulfilled, for establishing a viable economy), attempts at coffee and tobacco cultivation, efforts at controlled grazing, new roads. The text, printed on folio pages and illustrated with sketch maps, is divided between expository paragraphs and tables of many varieties, among which are a gazetteer of place names, tables of road mileages, rainfall records, temperatures, genealogies, and summaries of the tribes. A long bibliography compiled by N. M. Viney in 1947 was revised by the author in 1950 (p. 180-201).

1434. INTERNATIONAL BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT. *The economy of the Trust Territory of Somaliland*; report of a mission organized at the request of the Government of Italy. Washington, 1957. 99 l. maps, diagrs., tables. HC567.S7I5

A report issued as "a working paper . . . for those who will have to determine what has to be done" in economic development to prepare Somalia for independence. The character of the economy, recent plans, prospects, and problems are analyzed, and conclusions presented stressing the need for continuing financial aid in the foreseeable future.

1435. ITALY. Ministero degli Affari Esteri. *Rapport du gouvernement italien à l'Assemblée générale des Nations Unies sur l'administration de tutelle de la Somalie*. 1950+ Roma, illus., maps. annual. JQ3858.A3

Title varies slightly.

The annual reports of AFIS (Amministrazione Fiduciaria Italiana della Somalia) to the U.N. General Assembly were published for the years 1950-58 in French and in very limited editions—large, well-illustrated volumes of from 300 to 500 pages. Summary articles usually appeared in the *United Nations Review*.

The official gazette of Somalia was published as follows:  
SOMALILAND, ITALIAN. *Bollettino ufficiale dell'Amministrazione fiduciaria italiana della Somalia*. anno 1+ apr. 1950+ Mogadiscio. monthly.

DLC-LL

Supplements accompany most numbers.

Administrative news appeared also in the Italian language daily newspaper of Mogadiscio, *Corriere della Somalia*.

1436. JARDINE, DOUGLAS. *The Mad Mullah of Somaliland*. London, H. Jenkins, 1923. 336 p. DT406.J3

Standard account of the long-drawn-out struggle with the fanatic religious leader known as the "Mad Mullah," who led his dervishes in a 21-year revolt against British rule, a "holy war" which required five expeditions before he was put down and the wholesale banditry and looting of his ruthless followers checked. The Mullah died in 1921 in Ethiopia where he had fled after his final defeat. Mr. Jardine, who was Secretary of the Protectorate during the last campaigns, began his book with a slight general account of British Somaliland.

1437. KARP, MARK. *The economics of trusteeship in Somalia*. Boston, Boston University Press, 1960. x, 185 p. illus., map. (Boston University. African research studies, no. 2)

HC567.S7K3

Analysis of the economic situation and unfavorable prospects of the Italian trust territory, which under the United Nations dictate of 1949 had been given just over a decade to evolve to independence. Based on a doctoral dissertation, the book is "a case study of economic problems to which anticolonialism in its present form can and often does give rise in Africa."

1438. LAURENCE, MARGARET, ed. *A tree for poverty; Somali poetry and prose*. Nairobi, Published for the Somaliland Protectorate by the Eagle Press, 1954. 146 p. PJ2534.Z95E5 1954

In her introductory essay the writer who has collected these translations and adaptations of Somali poems and folk stories explains the various styles of the very rich unwritten folk literature of this nomad people. She characterizes the Somali, "an extremely excitable people who express emotions readily," as natural poets and storytellers; having almost no crafts, their only creative outlets is in words—"a tree for poverty to shelter under." A few young Somalis who have gone to government schools are now beginning, she says, to write down the traditional poetry and tales, which under the rapid evolution of all African society may well be lost before the century is over. Each of the selections is followed by an explanatory note.

1439. LEWIS, I. M. *A pastoral democracy; a study of pastoralism and politics among the northern Somali of the Horn of Africa*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1961. 320 p. illus., maps. DT403.L38

Bibliography: p. 307-312.

The writer is today one of the few English-speaking authorities on Somaliland. This study in "pastoral habits and political institutions" is mostly confined to the northern Somali, the tribes of the former British Protectorate, nomads with herds of camel, sheep and goats, whose political system "lacks to a remarkable degree all the machinery of centralized government." Mr. Lewis focuses his work on the political organization, which lies in kinship and lineage, but includes enough material on economy, ecology, and residence patterns to give a basis. In his last chapter he reviews the modern political scene in Somalia and its repercussions in the Protectorate. His long bibliography covers material on the entire Horn.



1440. ———. *Peoples of the Horn of Africa: Somali, Afar, and Saho*. London, International African Institute, 1955. 200 p. maps. tables. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: North Eastern Africa, pt. 1) DT403.L4

Bibliography: p. 177–194.

In this volume of the Ethnographic Survey of Africa, the summary of available information, which follows the pattern set for the entire series, is given at somewhat greater length than in the numbers dealing with more studied peoples. The Somali, Afar (Danakil), and Saho, closely related nomadic peoples of camel culture and Mohammedan faith, are spread through the three countries (former) of the Horn of Africa, Somalia (Italian Somaliland), the British Somaliland Protectorate, and French Somaliland. The Afar and Saho are distributed also across the borders in Eritrea and Ethiopia, and the Somali in Ethiopia and Northern Kenya. The Somali are much the largest grouping, numbering in the three territories approximately 2½ million, whereas the total Afar population is estimated at not over 250,000, and the Saho under 50,000. For his survey made from library sources the writer used many Italian and French works as well as English, which are listed in the bibliography.

1441. PANKHURST, ESTELLE SYLVIA. *Ex-Italian Somaliland*. London, Walls & Co., 1951. 460 p. (New York, Philosophical Library, 1951). DT416.P27 1951a

The late author, of a famous suffragette family, was a propagandist for Ethiopia. In this turgid work, which is definitely partisan, she told at great length the history of the Italian acquisition and control of the colony, their use of it as a base in the Ethiopian war, and the details of the trusteeship decision by the United Nations regarding the territory. Miss Pankhurst stated a case against Italy and indicted the U.N. action; she promoted as alternatives for Somaliland Ethiopian or joint Ethiopian-British trusteeship.

1442. SOMALIA. Information Services. *The Somali Peninsula; a new light on imperial motives*. Mogadishu, 1962. 137 p. DT401.A53

Printed by Staples, St. Albans, Herts.

An official publication summarizing Somali history to justify the claim to the Ogaden District of Ethiopia and the Somali pocket in the Northern Frontier of Kenya as "Greater Somalia." Many government documents are cited in the text; these and books consulted are listed in a bibliography, p. 131–134. The book

was reviewed by I. M. Lewis in *International Affairs*, October 1962 (p. 516).

In early 1963 the issue of secession of the Somali group in the Northern Frontier District of Kenya is currently in the news, with agitation and riots following publication of the Reports of the Kenya Regional Boundaries Commission and the Northern Frontier District Commission on Dec. 20, 1962. A résumé of the Commissions' Reports appears in *Africa Digest* of February 1963, p. 129–130.

1443. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE MISSION TO THE TRUST TERRITORY OF SOMALILAND UNDER ITALIAN ADMINISTRATION. *The Trust Territory of Somaliland under Italian administration*; report prepared jointly for the Government of Italy by an expert appointed by the United Nations Technical Assistance Administration and by experts appointed respectively by the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization, and the World Health Organization. New York, 1952. 343 p. illus., maps, tables. (United Nations. [Document] ST/TAA/K Somaliland/1) HC567.S7T4

Processed publication of the United Nations. Six experts had spent 3 months making an extended survey of the economic needs of the territory, touring the country widely, talking with local officials and representatives on all levels, visiting all institutions. They reported in great detail, offering advice on many points. Their impressions were not optimistic: "The economy has not been viable, even at a low level, since the advent of European administration; and though directions and specific measures needed for progress may be indicated, the Mission does not pretend to foresee rapid improvement in the fundamentally deficitary character of the economy."

1444. UNITED NATIONS. Advisory Council for the Trust Territory of Somaliland under Italian Administration. *Report*. 1950/51–1958/59. annual. (United Nations. [Document] T DT416.U48

This Council was set up by the same United Nations Resolution (No. 289 (IV), Nov. 21, 1949) that decided on the Italian trusteeship for Somalia pending independence. It consisted of three members, representatives of Colombia, Egypt, and the Philippines, its functions to aid and advise the Administering Authority. They sat in Mogadishu, and, according to Mr. I. M. Lewis (*World Today*, July 1960), were "not always well-informed but always concerned."

1445. UNITED NATIONS. Trusteeship Council. Visiting Mission to Trust Territories in East Africa, 1954. *Report on Somaliland under Italian administration*, together with related documents. New York, 1952-58. 3 v. maps. (United Nations. Trusteeship Council. Official records, Supplement no. 2)

JX4021.U385  
Suppl., no. 2

The Visiting Missions made three inspection trips to Somalia in 1951, 1954, and 1957, and submitted reports; these were characterized by Dr. Castagno as "especially perceptive." For details, see *Official Publications of Somalia* (no. 1423).

1446. U.S. Economic Cooperation Administration. Special Mission to Italy. *A reconnaissance ground-water survey of Somalia, East Africa*; report of an E. R. P. Technical Assistance Mission under the auspices of the Italian Government (Comitato Interministeriale per la Ricostruzione) [by] Thomas P. Ahrens. Rome, 1951. 270 p. illus., maps, tables.

GB1173.S6U52

A geologist of the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, was sent with three Italian geologists to survey the possibility of providing adequate wells for the nomadic population of Somaliland. The survey, drawn up by the American, outlines ground-water resources, but offers only general statements regarding development possibilities, as the experts felt that each project would present a different problem. The report begins with conclusions and recommendations—a formidable list of debits regarding character of the country and its inhabitants.

The Italian Government went ahead with the plans outlined, to dig 220 mechanical wells and 440 ordinary wells between 1954 and 1960, at a cost of \$4 million, the United States paying half, and in 1954 150 wells were dug at a cost of \$560,000. According to one observer: "The idea is to draw the tribes together, decrease tribal warfare, and encourage the nomads to become settled farmers. However, some wells need to be enclosed behind barbed wire with a 24-hour guard; for experience has taught that the nomads, despite their need for water, may destroy the source rather than let another tribe gain control of it. Such is the type of sociological problem with which the Italians are faced."

1447. U.S. Operations Mission to Italy. *Reports*. Rome, 1950+

This Mission, later under International Cooperation Administration, began operations in 1950 as the ECA Special Mission to Italy. In that year the United

States suggested to the Italian Foreign Office that Somaliland be included in the Dependent Overseas Territory Program, and visits of inspection to Somaliland by American technicians were undertaken at once. The first ECA preliminary report on *Somalia Agricultural Projects* was presented in September 1950. By early 1954, according to the historical account in the U.N. Advisory Council Report (no. 340), "14 basic studies had been completed by technical teams of the United States, Italy, the United Nations and AFIS, and 4 more were in progress. In the agricultural field, studies were made of grains, grain storage, agricultural mechanization and seed improvement. In water resources and animal husbandry, a ground-water survey was carried out and modern well drilling equipment purchased; a well master driller had been sent to the Territory to instruct Somalis in the use of the drilling equipment. Furthermore, two other studies had been completed regarding respectively the excavation of shallow wells and livestock genetics. Finally, in the general economic field, surveys had been made of the Somali ports and roads, and an interim report had been published on an economic development program." These reports were brought out as mimeographed pamphlets, in limited editions. Among them are the following:

- U.S. Economic Cooperation Administration. Special Mission to Italy. *Somalia agricultural projects*, by W. E. Corfitzen and Grover Kinsey. Rome, September 1950. 36 l.

——— *A reconnaissance ground-water survey of Somalia, East Africa*, by Thomas P. Ahrens. Rome, 1951. 270 p. illus. See no. 1446 above.

- U.S. Operations Mission to Italy. [International Cooperation Administration] *Road study in Somalia, East Africa*, by H. A. Van Dyke. Rome, Dec. 31, 1953. 105 l.

——— *Port survey in Somalia, East Africa*, by Frederick G. Reinicke. Rome, Jan. 10, 1954. 40 l.

——— *Plans and schedules for Somalia economic development*, by W. E. Corfitzen. Rome, June 28, 1954. 34 p.

——— *The mineral deposits of Somalia*, by Ralph J. Holmes. Rome, March 1954. 56 l. illus.

——— *Proposed program for agricultural technical assistance for Somalia*, by W. W. Worzella and A. L. Musson. Rome, Aug. 9, 1954. 17 l.

——— *A fisheries reconnaissance, Somalia, East Africa*, by Ralph L. Johnson. Rome, June 18, 1956. 29 l.

——— *Livestock survey, Somalia, East Africa*, by C. L. McCulloch. Rome, Feb. 1, 1957. 15 l.

——— *Forestry and range management survey, Somalia, East Africa*, by Marvin Klemme. Rome, Feb. 28, 1957. 23 l. map.

SD242.S55U5



1448. U.S. Operations Mission to the Somali Republic. *The Somali Republic; inter-river economic exploration*. Washington, 1961. 347 p. HC567.S7U55

The Mission has continued under the new name after the independence date of Somalia, through 1961 under the International Cooperation Administration, from 1962 under AID (Agency for International Development). This big report contains economic data and estimates for development by irrigation and other measures of the land between the Giuba and Uebi Scebeli Rivers (these names have varied spellings) in

southern Somalia. There are somewhat optimistic forecasts of what might be accomplished in a 20-year program with large investment. Other reports are submitted, often in working paper form. One more paper of 1961 available for distribution is *Twenty Questions and Answers Regarding the Somali Republic* (18 p.).

1449. ZÖHRER, LUDWIG G. A. *Somaliländer*. Bonn, K. Schroeder, 1959. 194 p. illus. (Die Länder Afrikas, Bd. 17) DT401.Z6

For general note on this series, see no. 10.

## Sudan

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

1450. HILL, RICHARD LESLIE. *A bibliography of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*, from the earliest times to 1937. London, Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1939. 213 p. Z3711.H64

A justly celebrated area bibliography by an officer of the Sudan Civil Service. The list, covering books, periodical articles, and documents in Western languages and Arabic from Herodotus, ca. 457 B.C., to the year of its completion, is classified under disciplines and subdisciplines according to a five-page table of contents. Within the subsections the entries, set down in the briefest identifiable form, are arranged in chronological order. There are indexes of persons and subjects.

A comprehensive "Sudan Bibliography" was carried regularly in the semiannual journal, *Sudan Notes and Records* (1921-56), publication of the Sudan Philosophical Society and organ for many professional articles by members of the highly trained members of the Sudan Civil Service.

1451. EL-NASRI, ABDEL RAHMAN. *A bibliography of the Sudan, 1938-1958*. London, Published on behalf of the University of Khartoum by Oxford University Press, November 1962. 171 p. Z3711.N3

Compiled by the Librarian of the University of Khartoum, this updates Hill's work.

### GENERAL AND MISCELLANEOUS

1452. BARBOUR, KENNETH M. *The Republic of the Sudan; a regional geography*. London, University of London Press, 1961. 292 p. illus., maps. DT124.B28

Physical and economic geography, emphasizing regional variation in agriculture and animal husbandry and the spread of cash economy. The valuable study is by a geographer who had taught for a time at the University of Khartoum.

1453. DAVIES, REGINALD. *The camel's back; service in the rural Sudan*. London, J. Murray, 1957. 209 p. illus. JS819.S8D3

Personal reminiscences of the British Sudan Service in the early years, from 1911 through the twenties in both Southern and Northern Sudan. Revealing as to manners of the tribes, the narrative is pleasant reading.

1454. *Directory of the Republic of the Sudan*. London, The Diplomatic Press and Publishing Co. annual. DT118.5.D5

Like the other directories issued for African countries (Nigeria, Ghana) by the Diplomatic Press, this volume, in its 4th edition in 1961/62 (216 p.), is prepared with cooperation from the Information Services of the Sudan Government. Besides encyclopedic information on all phases of the Government and the economic and cultural life of the country, it includes a trade index, a biographical section, and indexes of subjects and advertisers. The Diplomatic Press & Publishing Co. has issued also a smaller *Sudan Trade and Investment Guide* (1960. 84 p.).

1455. FAWZI, SAAD ED DIN. *The labour movement in the Sudan, 1946-1955*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1957. 175 p. (Middle Eastern monographs, v. 1). HD8831.S8F3

An objective technical study of the problems of the new labor movement which arose, "virtually out of

nothing," as the industrialization of the Sudan began after the war. An appendix lists registered trade unions and employers' organizations. The book is based on a doctoral thesis at the University of London.

1456. HAMILTON, J. A. DE C., ed. *The Anglo-Egyptian Sudan from within*. London, Faber & Faber, 1935. 367 p. DT121.H3

Intended to complement the standard history by MacMichael (below), this handbook for officials of the Sudan services or others seriously involved in the work of the country consisted of a set of still useful articles by different specialists, many of them, like the compiler, in the Sudan Political Service. The subjects covered include archaeology, history, ethnology (by Dr. Evans-Pritchard), the nomad Arab camel-breeding tribes of the South, the Baggara tribes, the Beja tribes of the Red Sea hinterland, the Northern Provinces, the workings of "devolutionary principles" in native administration (i.e., indirect rule), religion, folklore, and fables, "Karama," the ritual slaughter of animals, then economics, trade and commerce, social welfare. The writing is nonacademic.

1457. JACKSON, HENRY C. *Behind the modern Sudan*. London, Macmillan; New York, St. Martin's Press, 1955. 226 p. illus. DT121.J3

1458. ——— *The fighting Sudanese*. London, Macmillan; New York, St. Martin's Press, 1954. 84 p. illus. D766.99.S8J3

1459. ——— *Sudan days and ways*. London, Macmillan; New York, St. Martin's Press, 1954. 261 p. illus. DT108.6.J3

Mr. Jackson had gone out to the Sudan in 1907 and retired after a long career as a British administrator in 1931. His writing is in anecdotal style. Of these three books, the first to appear was *Sudan Days and Ways*, largely the account of his personal experiences and those of his colleagues in many parts of the huge country, north and south, and in contact with many tribes. He had known Slatin and other survivors of the Mahdist wars, and gives interesting bits of history from those turbulent times. (Earlier books of his are on Gordon and the leader of the Dervish "Fuzzy-Wuzzies," Osman Digna.) In the second book Mr. Jackson recounts with many fascinating human interest stories the prowess of the Sudanese as warriors, including their notable service during the Second World War. The third book is particularly an interpretation of the problems that had faced the British ad-

ministrators in the Sudan of the Condominium, also told largely through what Sir Harold MacMichael, writing the foreword, calls "personal reminiscences and incidental sidelights."

1460. SQUIRES, H. C. *The Sudan medical service, an experiment in social medicine*. London, W. Heinemann, Medical Books, 1958. 138 p. RA552.S62S8

Record of one of the more notable of the many British contributions to development of the Sudan. Dr. Squires begins by saying that the average term of a British technical official in the Sudan was between 20 and 25 years, but that his service, including that of medical representative and consulting physician for the Sudan Government in London, had covered 43 years. The style varies between technical report and personal reminiscence.

1461. SUDAN. *Commission of Inquiry into the Disturbances in the Southern Sudan. Southern Sudan disturbances, August 1955; report*. [Khartoum] 1956. 127 p. fold. maps. DT108.6.A52 1962a

The mistrust of the tribes in the Southern Sudan for policies of the Northern Sudan leaders and parties came to a head a few months before the independence date with "incidents of mutiny and disorder," particularly in Equatoria Province and among the Southern Police Corps. This is the detailed report of the Commission of Inquiry, which was submitted to the new Minister of the Interior of the Sudan Republic.

1462. TRIMINGHAM, J. SPENCER. *Islam in the Sudan*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1949. 280 p. BP65.E5T7

Useful background study of the entire country, its history and culture, by the former Secretary of the Church Mission Society in the Sudan. The writer's aim was to give a composite picture of the people both as Moslems and as Sudanese, with emphasis on the role of Islam in shaping present-day society. In the same year Mr. Trimmingham published *The Christian Church in the Post-War Sudan* (London, World Dominion Press, 1949. 44 p.), a survey of the educational work of the Christian missions in this country of fanatical Moslems, a large section of whom are animated by Pan-Arabism. Another of his works is a useful grammar and phrase book, *Sudan Colloquial Arabic* (London, Oxford University Press, 1946. 176 p.).



## HISTORY

1463. ABBAS, MEKKI. *The Sudan question; the dispute over the Anglo-Egyptian condominium, 1884-1951*. London, Faber & Faber, 1952. xix, 201 p., maps. (Colonial and comparative studies) DT108.A48 1952

According to Miss Margery Perham in her preface, this is the first scholarly work by a Sudanese author to be published in English, also the first full-scale study of the "major international issue" of the Sudan in relations between Egypt and Great Britain. The author, formerly an official of the Education Department and later a member of the Advisory Council for the Northern Sudan set up by Sir Douglas Newbold in 1944, and of the Sudan Administration Conference in 1946, himself played a vigorous part in the first political movements of the Sudan toward self-government. This work was the result of a Rhodes scholarship at Oxford between 1948 and 1951; at the time of its publication Mr. Abbas had returned to the Sudan as Director of the new Sudan Gezira Board.

A book by a Nigerian student of international relations, L.A. Fabumni, *The Sudan in Anglo-Egyptian Relations; A Case Study in Power Politics, 1800-1956* (London, Longmans, 1960. 466 p. maps), covers both background and the dispute that culminated with the British withdrawal from the Sudan and Suez, with abundant citation of documents. The author takes a nationalist view of British policy, and feels that a weak Sudan will inevitably fall under Egyptian domination. The book was prepared as a thesis at the University of London.

1464. ALLEN, BERNARD M. *Gordon and the Sudan*. London, Macmillan, 1931. 485 p. DT108.3.A4

An authoritative modern history of General Gordon's 7 years in the Sudan, his fight against slavery, and the rise of the Mahdi, climaxed by the long siege of Khartoum, its fall, and Gordon's death. Prepared from public records and private papers.

Hill's bibliography of the Sudan (no. 1450) lists at least 300 entries on Gordon. Among recent biographies of the renowned hero is Lord Elton's *Gordon of Khartoum: The Life of General Charles George Gordon* (New York, Knopf, 1955. 376 p.). Kitchener's expedition of 1896-98, which finally shattered the Dervish power in the battle of Ondurman, was chronicled by a young subaltern participant, Winston S. Churchill, *The River War, an Account of the Reconquest of the Sudan*, 1899. There is a modern edition, Eyre & Spottiswoode (1940. 381 p.).

A particular but crucial episode of Kitchener's expedition, when Anglo-French rivalry in the interior of Africa reached a danger point, is described in a well-documented study of diplomatic history by an American scholar, M. B. Giffen:

*Fashoda; the Incident and its Diplomatic Setting* (Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1930. 230 p.).

1465. ARKELL, ANTHONY J. *A history of the Sudan: from the earliest times to 1821*. 2d ed., rev. London, University of London, Athlone Press, 1961. 252 p. illus. DT108.1.A7 1961

This work, first published in 1954, is by an archeologist who after being Commissioner for Archaeology and Anthropology in the Sudan went as lecturer in Egyptology to University College, London. The second edition incorporates results of later research in archeology, ancient and medieval history. The book is concerned largely with Nubia and the early Christian and later Moslem kingdoms, Dongola and Sennar. It ends with the conquest by the Turkish rulers of Egypt under Mohammed Ali in 1820.

1466. COLLINS, ROBERT C. *The Southern Sudan, 1883-1898, a struggle for control*. New Haven, Yale University Press, 1962. 212 p. (Yale historical publications. Miscellany 76) DT108.3.C6

By an American scholar who has done exhaustive work in the Sudanese archives at Khartoum among the documents of the Mahdist State. He examines in detail all actions of the Mahdiya in the Southern Sudan from the first appearance of the agents in the Bahr el Ghazal in 1882 to raise the tribes for the "holy war," to Kitchener's defeat of the Khalifa and the end of the era.

1467. CRAWFORD, OSBERT G. S. *The Fung kingdom of Sennar; with a geographical account of the middle Nile region*. Gloucester [Eng.] J. Bellows, 1951. 359 p. illus. DT135.S4C7

The Fung empire of Sennar, founded in 1504, a federation of petty kingdoms extending from the third cataract above Dongola in the north to the Red Sea on the east and the Abyssinian frontier, endured till the Turkish invasion in 1821. This scholarly study by a noted archeologist, editor of the journal *Antiquity*, is basic to future work on the history of the Northern Sudan.

1468. DUNCAN, J. S. R. *The Sudan; a record of achievement*. Edinburgh, Blackwood, 1952. 283 p. DT108.D8

1469. ———. *The Sudan's path to independence*. Edinburgh, Blackwood, 1957. 231 p. DT108.6.D8

The writer went to the Sudan in 1943 and ended

his career in the British Sudan Service as Deputy Adviser to the Governor-General on constitutional and external affairs, staying to see the lowering of the Condominium flags and hoisting of the Sudanese tricolor on January 1, 1956. The first of these books is a history of the country under the British administration, including account of nationalist political parties and politics in the rapid postwar evolution toward self-government against the background of troubled diplomatic exchanges between Britain and Egypt. In the second book Mr. Duncan combined personal experience of administration in the Southern Sudan with a lucid explanation of the steps toward achievement of independence.

1470. GRAY, RICHARD. *A history of the Southern Sudan, 1839–1889*. London, Oxford University Press, 1961. 219 p. maps.

DT108.G7 1961

Bibliography: p. 204–211.

According to the reviewer in *Africa Report* (April 1962), "Professor Gray has filled a much lamented gap in the published history of the Republic of the Sudan with this excellent work." The chapters are "The Discovery" (background and first Egyptian expeditions, 1839–41); "Missionaries and Merchants" (the contest and deadlock between European ivory traders, slave traders, and the first Christian missionaries); "Egypt and Equatoria" (administration for the Khedive Isma'il by Baker and Gordon); "Ordeal and Survival" (the fight against the slave trade); "The Destruction" (The Mahdiya); and "British Interests and the Southern Sudan."

1471. HILL, RICHARD L. *Egypt in the Sudan, 1820–1881*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1959. 188 p. fold. map. (Middle Eastern monographs, 2) DT108.2.H5

Issued under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs.

Bibliography: p. 171–177.

Mr. Hill's concentrated history, beginning where Arkell left off, covers the period of Turko-Egyptian conquest and rule (or misrule) of the Sudan, up to the beginning of the Mahdist rebellion. Another book by Mr. Hill, which, like his bibliography (no. 1450), shows his profound acquaintance with the Sudan and its history, is *A Biographical Dictionary of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan* (Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1951. 392 p.). A large proportion of the names are Sudanese.

1472. HOLT, PETER M. *The Mahdist state in the Sudan, 1881–1898*; a study of its origins, development, and overthrow. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1958. 264 p. illus.

DT108.3.H6

1473. ———. *A modern history of the Sudan, from Funj Sultanate to the present day*. New York, Grove Press, 1961. 241 p. illus.

DT108.H72

The first of these two books by a specialist in Sudanese studies who was formerly Archivist of the Sudanese Government, then a professor at the University of Khartoum, examines the history of the Mahdiya less from the "romantic" reporting on the European side than from the archives of the Mahdist State, to which he had access. I. Cunnison, reviewing it in *Africa* of July 1959 (p. 319–320), calls it "an excellent start to a cool appraisal of the period." Dr. Holt's second history, covering as it does the Turco-Egyptian period, the Mahdist Revolution, the Condominium, and first years of the Republic, is necessarily highly compressed. The theme is the interplay in the Sudan of Arab-African indigenous tradition, Egyptian, and British influence. Sketch maps, notes, a select bibliography (p. 221–227) and an index add to the usefulness of the work.

1474. MACMICHAEL, Sir HAROLD A. *The Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*. London, Faber & Faber, 1934. 288 p.

DT108.M3

The author served with distinction in the Sudan from 1905–1933, then went as Governor to Tanganyika Territory, later as commander in chief of Palestine. In this comprehensive standard work he told the story of the Sudan from Gordon's death—the Kitchener campaign, the final British conquest, the establishment of the Condominium which gave Britain charge of government, and the development of the savage and war-torn country into what he considered a near model of peaceful administration and agricultural experimentation.

1475. ———. *History of the Arabs in the Sudan and some account of the people who preceded them and of the tribes inhabiting Darfur*. Cambridge, University Press, 1922. 2 v.

GN652.A7M3

A scholarly study, going deeply into classical authorities and technical anthropology. The entire second volume is devoted to native manuscripts, which are for the most part genealogies.



1476. NEWBOLD, Sir DOUGLAS. *The making of the modern Sudan; the life and letters of Sir Douglas Newbold, K. B. E., of the Sudan Political Service, Governor of Kordofan, 1932–1938, Civil Secretary, 1939–1945.* By K. D. D. Henderson, with an introd. by Margery Perham. London, Faber & Faber, 1953. xlii, 601 p. illus. (Colonial and comparative studies) DT108.6.N4 1953

Newbold, who joined the Sudan Political Service in 1920 and served in it until his death from overwork in 1945, had been Chief Executive Officer of the Sudan during the Second World War and when the Advisory Councils for the Northern Sudan were set up in 1944, giving the Sudanese direct participation in government. Miss Margery Perham of Oxford wrote the preface of what she called a “biographical study of colonial administration”; she characterized Newbold, her friend and correspondent, as an outstanding example of the colonial District Commissioner, who by winning the full confidence of his charges has been “the ultimate point of civilizing contact between Britain and the people.” The volume is in two parts, the first mostly letters (from and to Newbold), the second part lectures and articles, interspersed with narrative by the editor. Emphasis is on Newbold’s unceasing effort for education of the Sudanese and their preparation for self-government.

1477. PAUL, ANDREW. *A history of the Beja tribes of the Sudan.* Cambridge [Eng.] University Press, 1954. 163 p. illus. DT132.P3

The Beja tribes, who have been described since dynastic Egyptian times and by the present writer as “primitive and bloodthirsty desert toughs,” are the peoples of the eastern Sudan, back from the Red Sea coast. The most aggressive of them, the Hadendowa, were made famous as “Fuzzy-Wuzzies” in Kipling’s ballad during the Dervish campaigns of the Mahdia. Their great service to the Allied cause during the late war was, this former administrator claims, no evidence of British popularity but a continuation of their ancient feud with the Italian-led Beni Amer of Eritrea. “When it was all over they were extremely annoyed to find themselves deprived of the fruits of victory which for them meant unlimited loot of Beni Amer cattle, and a general and enjoyable harrying of the tribe as a whole.” Mr. Paul’s spirited narrative of the warlike history of the Beja from Egyptian antiquity to the present is affectionate in tone. Unattractive as he may make the Beja fighting men appear, “there are few

who have served among them who have left them without regret.”

1478. SHIBEIKA, MEKKI. *British policy in the Sudan, 1882–1902.* London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1952. 439 p. maps.

DT108.3.S4

A thorough study of documentary sources underlay this account of the British role in the suppression of the Mahdi and steps leading to establishment of the Condominium. The writer, a Sudanese scholar and professor of history at the University of Khartoum, had presented a preliminary version as a doctoral thesis at the University of London. Dr. Shibeika published in 1959 another history, *The Independent Sudan* (New York, R. Speller. 506 p.), which carries events up to the dawn of independence.

A more popular account of the period, Alan B. Theobald’s *The Mahdiya: A History of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1881–1889* (London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1951. 273 p.), was written by another professor at what was then Gordon Memorial College, now the University of Khartoum.

1479. *The Unity of the Nile Valley*, its geographical bases and its manifestations in history. Contributions by Abbas Ammar and others. Cairo, Government Press, 1947. 98 p.

DT115.U5

Written as the Anglo-Egyptian dispute was rising to its climax, this group of articles presented the Egyptian argument for control of the Sudan. Issued under the auspices of the Presidency of the Egyptian Council of Ministers.

1480. WINGATE, Sir RONALD, bart. *Wingate of the Sudan; the life and times of General Sir Reginald Wingate, maker of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan.* London, Murray, 1955. 274 p. illus. DT108.05.W5W5

Biography by the son of the British officer whose direction of military intelligence in Egypt led to the overthrow of the Khalifa and reconquest of the Sudan in 1898, and who within a year succeeded Lord Kitchener as Sirdar of the Egyptian Army and Governor-General of the Sudan. General Wingate remained in this post until December 1916, through the period of pacification and the formative years of the British administrative system under the Condominium. He was transferred to Egypt as High Commissioner during the First World War, and came in for criticism as having encouraged Egyptian nationalism which led to an anti-British uprising in 1919. Sir Ronald’s book is in part a vindication of his father’s policy.

# ECONOMICS

(including Nile Waters Question)

1481. GAITSKELL, ARTHUR. *Gezira; a story of development in the Sudan*. London, Faber and Faber, 1959. 372 p. illus., ports., maps. (Colonial and comparative studies)

HD1741.S85G54

References: p. 358-368.

By the first Chairman and Managing Director of the Sudan Gezira Board, this is the account of the great irrigation scheme in the area called the Gezira, below the confluence of the Blue and White Nile at Khartoum, by which there have been brought into production a million acres of the long staple cotton that is the Sudan's chief export crop. The book is reviewed by Harvey Glickman in *Africa Report* of February 1961.

1482. HURST, HAROLD E. *The Nile; a general account of the river and the utilization of its waters*. London, Constable, 1952. 326 p. illus. TC119.N5H8

This book, by a leading scientist concerned with control of the Nile, is a basic work for layman and specialist alike. Dr. Hurst's account of the river, its history and irrigation systems follows the Nile from Egypt through its entire course—the main Nile in the Northern Sudan, the Blue Nile in the Central Sudan and Ethiopia, the White Nile in Central and Southern Sudan, and to its sources in the Great Lakes, Lakes Albert, Edward, and Victoria. Climate, health and vegetation, history of the peoples of the Nile Basin and their origin, exploration in modern times, are given attention before he turns to more specific hydrology, outlining the major Nile projects undertaken and proposed.

For technical studies of the Nile, essential sources are the *Papers* of the Egyptian Physical Department published by the Ministry of Public Works (1920+). These include the important series entitled *The Nile Basin* by Dr. Hurst and P. Phillips and others (Cairo, Govt. Press, 1931+), which contain all the measurements of the discharge of the river and its tributaries, its levels, and the rainfall in its basin.

1483. ITALY. Istituto Nazionale per il Commercio Estero. *Sudan*. Roma, 1960. 175 p. illus., maps. HC591.S8I8

Detailed study of production and trade of the Sudan Republic, resulting from a survey mission carried out for the Institute by Dr. Ricardo Galli in early 1960.

1484. McLoughlin, Peter F. "Economic development and the heritage of slavery in the Sudan Republic." *Africa*, v. 32, October 1962: 355-391. PL8000.I6, v. 32

A monograph-length article by an industrial relations expert who had taught economics at the University of Khartoum in 1959-60. He reviews the history of the slave trade in the Sudan and the present-day vestiges of slavery (it is contended that there are still some 200,000 domestic slaves in the Northern Sudan). He then analyzes the effects on the modern economy. His heavy documentation is given in footnotes.

1485. SCHLIPPE, PIERRE DE. *Shifting cultivation in Africa; the Zande system of agriculture*. London, Routledge & Paul, 1956. 304 p. illus., map. S471.A365S4

Bibliography included in "Notes," p. 245-291.

The Zande Scheme, outlined in 1943 by Dr. John D. Tothill, Director of the Sudan Department of Agriculture and Forests, and launched by the Sudan Government in Equatoria Province, was a pilot project for the social and economic development of a seminomadic primitive tribe through economic self-sufficiency. The core of the project is a home cotton industry, the Azande being taught to grow, spin, weave, and wear their own cotton, with enough over for export; this is bringing them into settled communities, including one industrial township, introducing a money economy, and evolving new forms of democratic local government. In his analysis this author, a Senior Research Officer of an experimental station in the Southern Sudan, is concerned with ways and means of adapting modern agricultural practice to the environment of the wet tropics and the traditional agriculture of the African. The work contains anthropological background, agronomy, and details of the system, with much of the technical matter in chapter notes, also indexes of terms in the vernacular, geographical and proper names, a general index, and a section of diagrams and photographs.

1486. SUDAN. *The Nile Waters question: the case for the Sudan; the case for Egypt and the Sudan's reply*. Khartoum, 1955. 54 p. map.

The question of the Nile Waters in international relations involves not only Egypt and the Sudan, but also Ethiopia and Uganda. No decisions have been reached as of early 1963.



1487. SUDAN. Jonglei Investigation Team. *The equatorial Nile project and its effect in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*; being the report of the Jonglei Investigation Team. [Khartoum? 1954] 5 v. (v. 1-3, p. 1-1077; v. 4, 8 maps, ca. 240 fig.; v. 5, lxix p.)

TC518.N6S8

Includes bibliographies.

Report on effects to be expected from the project for drainage of the *sudd*—the great swamp areas of the Southern Sudan. This had been outlined by Dr. Harold E. Hurst and his colleagues of the Egyptian Physical Department in one volume of their series of papers on *The Nile Basin* (Cairo, Govt. Press, 1931+: vol. 7, *The Future Conservation of the Nile*). Modifications were made in 1948. The Jonglei Investigation Team of engineers, agricultural specialists, and other officials of the Sudan Political Service was appointed in 1946 to study the White Nile system in detail, ignoring political concerns, in order to determine the best form of river control for the benefit of all inhabitants of the Nile Valley. The Report, issued following interim reports in 1946, 1947, and 1948, was prepared under the chairmanship of P. P. Howell. It is in five volumes: 1. *A Survey of the Area Affected*; 2. *The Equatorial Nile Project: Its Effects and Remedies*; 3. *Special Investigations and Experimental Data*; 4. *Maps and Diagrams*; 5. *Introduction and Summary*. The recommendations in the final volume call for a revised operation of the Egyptian-sponsored project to reduce the losses in riverain pasture and fisheries which would seriously affect the way of life of the 660,000 pastoral tribesmen of the area.

1488. SUDAN. Southern Development Investigation Team. *Natural resources and development potential in the southern provinces of the Sudan*; a preliminary report, 1954. London, Sudan Govt., 1955. 262 p. tables.

HC591.S8A5

Includes bibliographies.

This group, under the chairmanship of Dr. P. P. Howell of the Sudan Political Service and comprising officials of various branches of the Service in the Southern Sudan, functioned in the spring of 1954. Their report is far wider in scope than that of the Jonglei Investigation Team, on which a number of the same specialists, including the chairman, had served; it covers the entire physical and economic picture, present and possible future, of the three provinces of the Southern Sudan (Upper Nile, Bahr el Ghazal, Equatoria). The 32-page introduction is a summari-

zation of the development problems, under the same headings as the following technical appendixes (p. 35-262), which are in two groups, "The Present Position" and "Potential Development." Aspects covered in factual text and tables are physical environment, ecology, inhabitants, crop husbandry, animal husbandry, fisheries, water resources, communications and trade, and other services. In the second group there are examined also the potential development of forestry, big game hunting and tourist trade, and possible exploitation of the estimated (exaggeratedly, they say) 5,000 square miles of papyrus.

1489. TOTHILL, JOHN D. *Agriculture in the Sudan*; being a handbook of agriculture as practised in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan; by numerous authors. London, Oxford University Press, 1948. 973 p.

S338.S8T6

This volume, edited by a scientist who from 1939 to 1944 was director of the Sudan Department of Agriculture and Forests, was addressed to readers "from the Intelligent Tourist to the Professional Agriculturist." The articles are by a group of high-ranking specialists. The general chapters cover historical background, Egyptian connections, vegetation, climate, geology, soils, transport, land tenure, revenue from lands and crops, the problem of "land fractionization," education, nutrition. More particularized chapters are concerned with all phases of agriculture, stock raising, locust control, irrigation, research and experimental work. The experimental farms centering around the Gezira scheme and the large-scale cotton raising made possible by the building of the Sennar Dam, 1919-25, which provides irrigation for the country between the Blue and White Niles, are described in a specially interesting section.

Evidence of the impressive British contribution to the development of the Sudan is given in a long bibliographical work by R. L. Knight and B. M. Boyns, *Agricultural Science in the Sudan: A Bibliography with Abstracts* (Arbroath, Scotland, T. Bunch, 1950. 251 p.). It represents a survey of all publications in the field of agricultural science having direct relation to the Sudan, bringing together the research carried out in the country over 50 years, much of which had been published in obscure journals. Abstracts are included of the less readily accessible papers. The emphasis is largely on cotton growing, particularly the Gezira Scheme.

1490. WARREN, CLINE. *The agricultural economy of the Sudan*. Washington, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, April 1962. 28 p. (ERS-Foreign 26)

DLC

For general note on this series, see no. 445.

1491. YVEDYAK, ed. *Sudan today: the economic survey of the Sudan*. Alexandria, Egypt, The Middle East Observer, 1958. various paging. HC591.S8Y9

A special issue of an Egyptian magazine of business opportunities, containing separately paged sections of from 5 to 56 pages, with advertising interspersed. A general picture of the country and people is followed by a long analysis of agriculture and shorter articles on irrigation, finance, industry, communications, and commerce.

## ANTHROPOLOGY, ETC.

1492. CRAZZOLARA, J. PASQUALE. *The Lwoo*. Verona, Istituto Missioni Africane, 1950-54. 3 v. illus. (Museum Combonianum; collana di studi africani, n. 3, 6, 8) GN650.C7

Contents.—pt. 1. Lwoo migrations.—pt. 2. Lwoo traditions.—pt. 3. Clans.

1493. ——— *Zur Gesellschaft und Religion der Nueer*. Mödling-Wien, Verlag der Druckerei Mission St. Gabriel, 1953. 221 p. Studia Instituti Missionsdruckerei Anthropos, v. 5) 4DT SUDAN

Father Crazzolara, a missionary priest in the Southern Sudan, is an authority on the Nilotic tribes. The comprehensive study of the Luo (the author's spelling is determinedly un-English) is the standard account of this tribe, and the book on the Nuer supplements the earlier study by Evans-Pritchard (below). Among Father Crazzolara's other books, the most important are his linguistic studies. The first of these, all in English, was *Outlines of a Nuer Grammar* published in 1932 as T. 13 of the Anthropos Linguistische Bibliothek (Mödling-Wien, Mission St. Gabriel. 218 p.). His *Study of the Acooli Language; Grammar and Vocabulary* was published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press (London, 1938. 426 p.), as was also his most recent *Study of the Logbara (Ma'di) Language; Grammar and Vocabulary* (London, 1959. 384 p.).

1494. EVANS-PRITCHARD, EDWARD E. *Witchcraft, oracles and magic among the Azande*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1937. 558 p. GN475.8.E9

Professor Evans-Pritchard studied anthropology under Dr. Seligman and began his research into the ethnology of Northeast Africa with the encouragement of that pioneer scholar. His early career included six

major and several minor expeditions to Central, East, and North Africa, 1926-39, and three years as professor of sociology in Cairo. Since 1935, with the exception of the war years, when he was on active service in Africa, he has been teaching at Oxford, having been Professor of Social Anthropology since 1946. From 1949-51 he was President of the Royal Anthropological Institute. His first full-length book was this celebrated study of the Azande.

1495. ——— *The Nuer: a description of the modes of livelihood and political institutions of a Nilotic people*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1940. 271 p. DT132.E8

1496. ——— *Kinship and marriage among the Nuer*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1951. 83 p. illus. GN480.E78

1497. ——— *Nuer religion*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1956. 336 p. BL2480.N7E9

These three extended studies of the Nilotic tribe among whom Dr. Evans-Pritchard had done long field-work are among the most substantial of his many contributions to African anthropology.

1498. HOWELL, P. P. *A manual of Nuer law*, being an account of customary law, its evolution and development in the courts established by the Sudan Government. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1954. 256 p. illus. DLC-LL

By an anthropologist who had followed the regular pattern of the Sudan Political Service in devoting his leisure time to study of the peoples in his charge. Professor Evans-Pritchard in the preface points out that during the 20 years since his own observations of Nuer society were made, the European administration had taken effect in Nuerland; consequently Mr. Howell's study reflects the beginnings of the codification of primitive law. The book is reviewed at some length by Godfrey Lienhardt in *African Affairs*, v. 54, July 1955, p. 235-236.

1499. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *Ethnographic survey of Africa* [East Central Africa series] London.

For general note on this series, see no. 270. The following volumes relate to tribes of the Sudan:

4. *The Nilotes of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan and Uganda*, by Audrey J. Butt. 1952. 198 p. DT132.B8



6. *The Northern Nilo-Hamites*, by G. W. B. Huntingford. 1953. 106 p. GN659.N5H78  
Includes Bari, Lotuko, Lokoya.

9. *The Azande and related peoples of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan and Belgian Congo*, by P. T. W. Baxter and Audrey Butt. 1953. 152 p. DT132.B3

1500. LIENHARDT, GODFREY. *Divinity and experience; the religion of the Dinka*. New York, Oxford University Press, 1961. 319 p. illus. BL2480.D5L5

The author based this thorough anthropological analysis on 2 years of firsthand experience among the Western Dinka of the Bahr el Ghazal Province of the Southern Sudan. The Dinka are a typical Nilotic Negro tribe whose culture centers around their cattle, and whose religious leaders are called "masters of the fishing-spear."

1501. SELIGMAN, CHARLES G., and BRENDA Z. SELIGMAN. *Pagan tribes of the Nilotic Sudan*. London, Routledge, 1932. xxiv, 565 p. illus. lx pl., maps, fold. geneal. tab. (The Ethnology of Africa) DT132.S4

This pioneering work resulted from surveys conducted between 1910 and 1921 and laid the founda-

tion for much further anthropological research in the southern portion of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan.

1502. TESCAROLI, LIVIO. *Poesia sudanese*. Bologna, Editrice Nigrizia, 1961. 117 p. (Museum Combonianum, no. 12)

An anthology of 101 poems from the Nilotic tribes of the Southern Sudan, Shilluk, Dinka, Zande and others. Introduction, text in vernacular with translations and notes; for some, music, transcriptions. Reviewed in *Africa*, January 1962.

1503. WESTERMANN, DIEDRICH. *The Shilluk people, their language and folklore*. Philadelphia, Pa., The Board of Foreign Missions of the United Presbyterian Church of N.A.; Berlin, D. Reimer (Ernst Vohsen) 1912. lxiii, 312 p. illus., maps. PL8671.W4

The 40-odd page introduction of Dr. Westermann's primarily linguistic study is a general description of the country and its people. Then 94 pages are straight grammar and linguistics, followed by over 140 pages of folklore and traditions, in Shilluk text with translation. The work ends with Shilluk English and English-Shilluk vocabularies.

## Ethiopia

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

1504. LESLAU, WOLF. *Bibliography of the Semitic languages of Ethiopia*. New York, New York Public Library, 1946. 94 p. Z7049.S5L4

The author is well known as a philologist specializing in Ethiopian and Middle Eastern languages. In this bibliography he lists linguistic studies and texts of the various Semitic languages of Ethiopia, Ge'ez, Tigré, Tigrña, Amharic, Argobba, Gafat, Guragué, ancient and modern Harari. He omits texts of religious character. In his introduction he mentions the more important published bibliographies of Ethiopia, most of which are by Italian scholars. Typical of his own contributions is a monograph, *The Verb in Harari (South Ethiopia)*, published in the series of University of California Publications in Semitic Philology (Berkeley. 1958. 86 p.).

A bibliography by a scholar at the University College of Addis Ababa was published in 1961: Pierre Comba, *Inventaire des livres amhariques figurant dans la collection éthiopienne à la Bibliothèque de l'University College d'Addis*

*Ababa, avril 1959. List of books in Amharic . . .* (Addis Ababa, 1961. 133 p. 33 cm). It is an annotated list of 529 works, original and translated. The title is printed first in Amharic characters. Beginning with an index of authors, section 1 lists publications by authors; section 2 by titles of anonymous works; section 3, Bible texts.

### GENERAL

1505. ABDUL-HAGGAG, Y. A contribution to the physiography of northern Ethiopia. London, University of London, Athlone Press, 1961. xiv, 153 p. illus., maps. GB343.A6 1961

Bibliography: p. 144-148.

A technical monograph in geomorphology. The writer is a lecturer in geography in Cairo.

1506. ADDIS ABABA. Chamber of Commerce. *Guide book of Ethiopia*. Addis Ababa, 1954. 443 p. illus., ports. maps. DT378.A52

Text in English and Amharic.

A volume of useful factual information about Ethiopia. The contents are divided into parts on govern-

ment, people, culture; physiography, climate and geology; agriculture; commerce, industry and finance, tourist interest and general information. A short final section lists Amharic literature published in Ethiopia, followed by a 17-page bibliography of literature on Ethiopia in Western languages. Except for statistical data and the section on economic life, the material is largely valid almost a decade later.

1507. BUCHHOLZER, JOHN. *The land of burnt faces*; translated from the Danish by Maurice Michael. London, A. Barker, 1955. 159 p. illus. DT378.B782 1955

The author of this account of modern Ethiopia had lived in Addis Ababa and traveled extensively about the country. His story brings warmly to life the many individuals and groups of Ethiopian society with whom he came into friendly contact—dignitaries of the Government, neighbors in the town, villagers and tribesmen, Galla, Danakil, Shakalla. Glimpses of history are woven into his narrative, and revealing descriptions of festivals, ceremonies, and everyday life.

Notable among a number of European travel accounts of Ethiopia is a broad picture of the awakening land drawn by a German writer, Dr. Hans Jenny: *Land im Aufbruch* (Stuttgart, Deutsche Verlags-Anstalt, 1957. 268 p. illus.).

1508. BUXTON, DAVID. *Travels in Ethiopia*. 2d ed. London, Ernest Benn, 1957. 176 p. illus. DT378.B8 1957

The writer, an official concerned with locust control and interested in architecture, traveled through much of Ethiopia in 1942 to 1945, covering the country by lorry or on muleback, noticing thatched roofs in preference to the corrugated iron favored by progressive Ethiopians. In his text of impressions accompanying interesting photographs, he summarized geography and history, then concentrated on description of "the more attractive aspects of the Ethiopian scene" as he saw them on the Shoan plateau, among the Galla and other Hamitic tribes of South and West, in the old Eastern capital of Aksum, on the Eritrean desert border, and finally, the famous rock churches of Lalibela. The book was published first in 1949 (New York, M. McBride), and reprinted with slight alterations for the second edition.

1509. CHEESMAN, ROBERT E. *Lake Tana and the Blue Nile: an Abyssinian quest*. London, Macmillan, 1936. 400 p. DT390.B5C5 1936

Major Cheesman had been Consul in Northwest Ethiopia from 1925 to 1934. His book recorded a journey made to map the upper waters of the river,

where at Lake Tana the large-scale dam projects were under consideration. In a careful and well-informed narrative, free of the sensationalism of most accounts of travel in this wild country, he explained much of the natural conditions and the customs and culture of the natives, whom he found courteous and under fairly good administrative control. Completed in 1934, the manuscript was stolen and had to be rewritten; its publication date does not imply concern with the Italian war.

1510. THE DIPLOMATIST. *Spotlight on Ethiopia* on the occasion of the 30th anniversary of the coronation of H.I.M. Haile Selassie I. London, 1960. 38 p. illus. DT387.9.D57

A public relations brochure in magazine form, carrying feature articles on the Emperor and his family, Ethiopian history, political affairs, economy, language, etc.

1511. ETHIOPIA. Press and Information Department. *Ethiopia: general background information*. Addis Ababa, 1958. 85 p. DT373.E8 1958

Second edition (1st in 1957) of a booklet presenting salient facts of Ethiopian history and life. It begins with biographical sections on Haile Selassie and the Imperial Family.

1512. *Ethiopia observer*; journal of independent opinion, economics, history and the arts. v. 1, no. 1+ Dec. 1956+ Addis Ababa. quarterly. Edited by Richard and Rita Pankhurst. DLC

The *New Times and Ethiopia News*, which had been edited by Miss E. Sylvia Pankhurst since May 5, 1936, was terminated on May 5, 1956, and succeeded by this larger illustrated magazine published monthly during the editor's life, and revived as a quarterly after her death in 1960 under the editorship of her son. Articles on a wide range of topics concerned with Ethiopia are sometimes of monograph length. A chronology, "Ethiopian Record," occupies the last pages.

Among the most important organs for study of Ethiopian culture and Ethiopia in the journal founded by the late Italian Ethiopist, Carlo Conti Rossini, *Rassegna di studi etiopici*, 1941+ (published by Centro di Studi Etiopici e Cristiano-Orientali, Università di Roma, Istituto Studi Orientali).

1513. HOTTEN, JOHN CAMDEN, ed. *Abyssinia and its people*; or, Life in the land of Prester John. London, John Camden Hotten, 1868. 384 p. DT377.H33

In 1864 the Emperor of Abyssinia, Theodore, angered because the British Foreign Office had not re-



plied promptly to a letter he had written Queen Victoria, imprisoned the British Consul and other Europeans. A punitive expedition was clearly indicated and duly dispatched in 1867 under Sir Robert Napier, to win a quick victory, bring about the suicide of Theodore, and come home, leaving the country to its next emperor, John. In October 1867, the *Times* commented that even a dull book on Abyssinia, if it reported correctly, would be eagerly received. The well-known publisher and rare book dealer, John Camden Hotten, who was a Fellow of the Ethnological Society, instantly took up the challenge and put together this famous and fascinating work, based on the accounts of earlier travelers. The book is not so much extracts as résumés, arranged to give an exciting picture of a barbaric country. Hotten closed with chapters on the British captives and various suggestions for the rescue expedition.

1514. LIPSKY, GEORGE A. *Ethiopia; its people, its society, its culture*, by George A. Lipsky, in collaboration with Wendall Blanchard, Abraham M. Hirsch, and Bela C. Maday. New Haven, HRAF Press, 1962. 376 p. (Survey of world cultures, 9) DT373.L56

Intended to meet the need for a "comprehensive reliable volume" synthesizing the most authoritative materials on Ethiopia in all aspects of behavioral sciences. The presentation is encyclopedic, with chapters divided into sections with subheadings, the writing in easy narrative style. The book is concluded with tabulated statistical data, a 14-page selected bibliography, and a full index.

1515. LUTHER, ERNEST W. *Ethiopia today*. Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 1958. 158 p. illus. DT373.L8

By an American economist who had spent over 6 years (1950–56) working in Ethiopia, this is a useful appraisal of a backward country whose ruler is trying to bring her into the modern world within the somewhat hampering limits of his own absolute authority. Mr. Luther's emphasis is on economic aspects, including many details of the foreign aid, FAO, point 4, etc., which has been given generously in the past decade.

1516. REY, CHARLES F. *The real Abyssinia*. Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1935. 281 p. DT373.R44

The writer, a British colonial officer and specialist on economic questions (knighted in 1938), went to Abyssinia first in 1919 on an expedition connected with geological reconnaissance, and by 1927 had made four expeditions to the little-known country, on which he

became a recognized authority. His writings on Abyssinia began with *Unconquered Abyssinia as It Is Today*, 1923; in 1927 he published *In the Country of the Blue Nile*; and in 1929, *The Romance of the Portuguese in Africa*. He wrote the article on Abyssinia for the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* in 1929. His 1935 book was a general description and survey including a long chapter on slavery and serfdom ("the situation cannot be regarded as satisfactory").

1517. TALBOT, DAVID A. *Contemporary Ethiopia*. New York, Philosophical Library, 1952. 267 p. DT373.T3

1518. ——— *Haile Selassie I; silver jubilee*. The Hague, W. P. van Stockum, 1955. 489 p. DT387.7.T3

The author, an American Negro journalist, was editor of the English-language weekly published by the Ethiopian Press and Information Department, *The Ethiopian Herald*. His 1952 book was an unfailingly laudatory survey of the country and of the career of the Emperor, with much stress laid on Ethiopian progress toward western standards. In the last chapter Mr. Talbot spoke warmly of bonds between Negro-Americans and Ethiopians. His second book, celebrating the Emperor's "twenty-five years of reign, twenty-five years of building," omitted the background of geography and history with which he had begun *Contemporary Ethiopia*, and concentrated enthusiastically on the accomplishments of "the Haile Selassie I era."

## HISTORY AND ARCHEOLOGY

1519. BECKINGHAM, CHARLES F., and G. W. B. HUNTINGFORD, eds. and trs. *Some records of Ethiopia, 1593–1646*; being extracts from the History of High Ethiopia or Abassia, by Manoel de Almeida, together with Bahrey's History of the Galla. London, Printed for the Hakluyt Society, 1954. xcvi, 267 p. illus., maps (Works issued by the Hakluyt Society, 2d ser., no. 107)

G161.H2 2d ser., no. 107

Translations from two source works for the medieval history of Abyssinia—that is, the central highlands which formed the ancient Semitic and Christian country, in contrast to the present extended empire of Ethiopia. The editors have contributed useful notes. This supplements the monumental work of Budge (below).

1520. BERKELEY, G. F. H. *The campaign of Adowa and the rise of Menelik*. New ed. London, Constable, 1935. 403 p. DT387.3.B5

The first edition of this account of the campaign in which the Italians suffered a severe reverse at the hands of Menelik in 1896 was published in 1902. The writer, a British expert on modern Italy, in his new introduction explained that it "may be considered to favor the Italians," as it was prepared largely from Italian sources, the only books on the Abyssinian side then available to him being a few works by travelers and the study by A. B. Wylde, *Modern Abyssinia* (London, Methuen, 1901, 506 p.), at that time considered the authoritative account of Abyssinia. "To-day," he commented in 1935, "it is no longer possible to sympathize with the Italians. They are initiating a war, and one which is unnecessary, about to enslave a whole people and wreck the League of Nations." The new introduction contained a brief sketch of Abyssinian history up to the Italian campaign of 1895-96, which is studied in military detail in the text.

1521. BIDDER, IRMGARD. *Lalibela; the monolithic churches of Ethiopia*. Translated from the German by Rita Grabham-Hortmann. Drawings by Elfriede Fulda. New York, Praeger, 1960. 137 p. illus. (part col., part mounted) maps. (Books that matter) NA6097.E8B53

A monograph with succinct text and excellent pictures.

*St. George for Ethiopia*, by Beatrice Playne (London, Constable, 1954. 200 p. illus.), the personal narrative of a mural painter who toured the northern Ethiopian highlands in search of early Christian art, also is focused on the rock churches of Lalibela.

1522. BRUCE, JAMES, 1730-1794. *Travels to discover the sources of the Nile* in the years 1768, 1769, 1770, 1771, 1772, and 1773. By James Bruce of Kinnaird. Edinburgh, G. G. J. & J. Robinson, 1790. 5 v., plates, maps. DT377.B88

The most famous of early accounts in English of Abyssinia, used as a source by all later writers (see, e.g., Moorehead, below). The last volume is devoted to "selected specimens of natural history." The Laird of Kinnaird is reported to have dictated his travel reminiscences some years after the events, when his memory was not as precise as that of a younger man. It might be noted that in 1792 there was published in London an anonymous *Sequel to the Adventures of Baron Munchausen* . . . "humbly dedicated to Mr. Bruce, the Abyssinian Traveller." However, for many

years Bruce was the English world's authority on Abyssinia.

The comparable French authority was Arnauld d'Abbadie, whose *Douze ans de séjour dans la haute Éthiopie* (Tome I. Paris, Hachette, 1868. 621 p.) is an understanding description. This writer is not to be confused with a slightly later French Ethiopicist, Antoine Thompson d'Abbadie, who published several linguistic studies. The work that opened the medieval Abyssinia to European acquaintance was that of the Portuguese priest, Canon Francisco Alvares, *Verdadeira informação das terras do preste João*, published in 1560. A modern translation in English, *Narrative of the Portuguese Embassy to Abyssinia during the Years 1520-1527*, with notes and introduction by Lord Stanley of Alderley, was published for the Hakluyt Society in 1881 (London. xxvii, 416 p., map. Hakluyt Society. Works, no. LXIV). A reprint in Portuguese was issued by the Agência Geral das Colônias in Lisbon in 1943. Of this book, Jean Doresse comments that it is "so devoid of fabrication that it remains a classic."

1523. BUDGE, Sir E. A. WALLIS. *A history of Ethiopia, Nubia and Abyssinia* (according to the hieroglyphic inscriptions of Egypt and Nubia, and the Ethiopian chronicles). London, Methuen, 1928. 2 v. DT381.B8

In this monumental work the Keeper of Egyptian and Assyrian Antiquities of the British Museum brought together the results of scholarship in translations of classical inscriptions and medieval and modern Ethiopic chronicles regarding the legends and facts of history of Ethiopia from the time of the Pharaohs to the 20th century. The first section is on Nubia which by the ancients was described vaguely, along with the rest of the land from Egypt to India, as "Ethiopia." (The Nubian desert, through which the Nile flows into Egypt, is a loose geographical term, like Sahara. Nubia proper lies in the northeastern Sudan, the desert stretching into Egypt.) Works extant in Ethiopic, dating from the beginning of the Christian era, have been much studied by philologists and Orientalists, and copies of over 1200 MSS are to be found in the great European libraries, the largest collection being that of the British Museum. The Royal Chronicles, of which the earliest part is the Axum chronicle recording the wars of Amda Sion (1314-44) against the Muslims, form the basis of Abyssinian history.

A later portion, the *Royal Chronicle of Abyssinia, 1769-1840*, was published with translation and notes by H. Weld Blundell (Cambridge, University Press, 1922. 548 p.). This is an impressive work of scholarship, giving the text in Ge'ez (or Ethiopic, the literary language of Ethiopia) and following it with a complete translation and appendixes containing explanatory notes on chronology, church ritual, geographical index, etc. The chronicle by court historians is in the epic style, to the glory of the Negus.



An Italian work on the early period is Conti Rossini's *Storia d'Etiopia* (see no. 1548).

1524. DORESSE, JEAN. *Ethiopia*. Translated from the French by Elsa Coult. London, Elek Books; New York, Putnam, 1959. 239 p. illus. DT379.5.D613

1525. ———. *L'empire du Prêtre-Jean*. Paris, Plon, 1957. 2 v. illus. (D'un monde à l'autre; la collection des découvertes) DT383.D65

Bibliographies: v. 1, p. 283-296; v. 2, p. 333-351.

The archeological treasures of Ethiopia have been the subject of intensive study by this French specialist in Coptic literature, who has been in the country as director of archeological research. His *Ethiopia* was published in Paris in 1956, with the title *Au pays de la reine de Saba: L'Éthiopie, antique et moderne* (A. Guillot. 171 p. illus. Les Hauts lieux de l'histoire, 7). It is a descriptive, historical, and interpretive sketch of the country, containing many photographs and other illustrations in which interest is divided between Ethiopian scenes and types and monuments of art and literature. M. Doresse's *Empire du Prêtre Jean* is a history of ancient and medieval Ethiopia, based on study of the many existent manuscripts of Ethiopic literature. He includes long bibliographies at the end of each volume.

1526. JEŚMAN, CZESLAW. *The Russians in Ethiopia; an essay in futility*. London, Chatto and Windus, 1958. 159 p. illus. DT387.J4

Includes bibliography.

An historical study of Russian attempts to gain a position of influence in Ethiopia, beginning with the so-called Ashimov expedition of 1888-89, which tried and failed to establish a colony and a port on the Somali coast. This had been followed for a decade by Russian efforts at penetration. The author had had access to Western sources only, being unable to use archives in Russia, and those in Ethiopia having been largely destroyed.

The continued Russian interest in Ethiopia and sympathy following the Italian conquest was evidenced in a big volume edited by the leading Soviet Africanist D. A. Ol'derogge, *Abissiniā (Efīopiā)*, published by the Institut Etnografii of the Academy of Sciences in Moscow (1936. 582 p.). It is a symposium following an Abyssinian exhibition in Leningrad, and contains a variety of essays, illustrations, and maps.

An article by Dr. Sergius Yakobson, "The Soviet Union and Ethiopia: A Case of Traditional Behavior," is scheduled for publication in the July 1963 issue of *The Review of Politics*.

1527. JONES, A. H. M., and ELIZABETH MONROE. *A history of Ethiopia*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1955. 196 p. DT381.J6 1955

Standard history of Ethiopia, first published as *History of Abyssinia* in 1935. In the revised edition there is an added chapter summarizing the period of the Italian Occupation, the Second World War, and the Restoration.

1528. MOOREHEAD, ALAN. *The Blue Nile*. New York, Harper & Row, 1962. 308 p. DT115.M6

Following the popular success of his *White Nile* (no. 1282), Mr. Moorehead, whom a reviewer in the *London Times Literary Supplement* (July 13, 1962, p. 503) calls "the most readable of living historians," has chronicled in somewhat the same manner the Blue Nile. He goes beyond and above the source of the river in the Abyssinian highlands and its early explorers, from James Bruce on, to Egyptian history—the Napoleonic invasion, the Mameluke conquest, Napier, the Samuel Bakers, and many others whose stories are somewhat indirectly connected with his main theme.

1529. PANKHURST, ESTELLE SYLVIA. *Ethiopia, a cultural history*. Essex [Eng.] Lalibela House, 1955. 747 p. illus. (part col.)

DT381.P35

Ponderous tome presenting a "comprehensive" survey of Ethiopian history and culture. Based on careful study and including much good archeological and artistic material, as exemplified in the plates, it is overweighted by the mass of detail, especially of long quotations from Ethiopian records, papers, and documents testifying to the glories of the past and the virtuous accomplishments of the present. Miss Pankhurst's villains throughout are the Italians.

## POLITICS AND ECONOMICS

1530. DUBOIS, HUBERT P. *Cheminot de Djibouti à Addis-Abeba, le chemin de fer franco-éthiopien*. Paris, Librairie académique Perrin, 1959. 252 p. DLC

This work on the railway from Djibouti in French Somaliland, which is the only approach by rail to Addis Ababa, has not been available for examination.

1531. ETHIOPIA. *Code civil de l'Empire d'Éthiopie*. Paris, Librairie générale de droit et de jurisprudence, 1962. 534 p. DLC-LL

1532. *Ethiopian economic review*. no. 1+ Dec. 1959+ Addis Ababa. tables. irregular. Issued by the Imperial Ethiopian Government Ministry of Commerce and Industry.

DLC

Official journal reviewing the economic life of Ethiopia. A large, well-printed magazine, its text is equally divided between articles on general and specific aspects of economic life and statistical tables of external trade, industry, finances, etc. In No. 5, February 1962, an inserted green paper section lists businesses in the Empire of Ethiopia. The periodical follows and supersedes an *Economic Handbook*, Dec. 1958 (93, 119 p.), published by the Ministry of Commerce and Industry, which in turn superseded an illustrated volume, *Economic Progress of Ethiopia* (Addis Ababa, 1955. 171 p.).

1533. FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION OF THE UNITED NATIONS. *Agriculture in Ethiopia*. Compiled by H. P. Huffnagel, consultant to FAO. Rome, 1961, xv, 484 p. illus., maps (part fold.) tables. S325.F6

An exhaustive survey of Ethiopian agriculture. Coverage includes physical characteristics, economic conditions, agricultural practices, production of specific crops, animal husbandry, marketing and processing, forestry, fisheries, agricultural administration, research and education, and agricultural credit.

1534. HAILE SELASSIE I, Emperor of Ethiopia. *Speeches delivered on various occasions*, May 1957-December 1959. Addis Ababa, Ministry of Information, 1960. 183 p.

DT387.9.H3

Of the 50-odd addresses by the Emperor brought together in this collection, over a third are concerned with education, and almost as many with the economic progress of his country. Several others involve international relations.

1535. HOLM, HENRIETTA M. *The agricultural economy of Ethiopia*. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1956. 44 p. maps, tables. (U.S. Foreign Agricultural Service. FAS-M-13) S21.Z2383, no. 13

One of a series of brochures on agricultural questions abroad, based on official statistics and reports of U.S. Foreign Service officers. The areas in which technical aid is being given by the United States, the Food and Agriculture Organization, and other international agencies come in for attention in regard to plans for development.

1536. MAREIN, NATHAN. *The Ethiopian Empire; federation and laws*. Rotterdam, Royal Netherlands Print. & Lithographing Co., 1955. 456 p. DLC-LL

A compendium for the use of Ethiopian lawyers and judges and for foreigners concerned with laws relating to Ethiopian commerce and finance, by the Advocate General and General Adviser to the Imperial Ethiopian Government. This 1955 volume superseded two earlier guides, *Handbook to the Laws of Ethiopia* (Addis Ababa, 1949. 207 p.) and *The Judicial System and the Laws of Ethiopia* (Rotterdam, Royal Netherlands Print. & Lithographing Co., 1951. 288 p.).

1537. PANKHURST, ESTELLE SYLVIA. *Eritrea on the eve; the past and future of Italy's "firstborn" colony, Ethiopia's ancient sea province*. Woodford Green, Essex, "New Times and Ethiopia News" Books, 1952. 72 p. illus. DT395.P28

1538. ——— and RICHARD K. P. PANKHURST. *Ethiopia and Eritrea; the last phase of the reunion struggle, 1941-1952*. Woodford Green, Essex, Lalibela House, 1953. 360 p. illus. D821.E7P3

The late Miss Pankhurst, of the famous suffragette family, was devoted spokesman for Ethiopian interests, to further which she worked for a quarter century; her journal, *New Times and Ethiopia News*, was begun during the Italian campaign in 1936 (see *Ethiopia Observer*, above). *Eritrea on the Eve* is largely in terms of indictment, both of the 60 years of Italian rule of her "first-born" colony, and of the 10 years of British caretaker government. The author did not understate her case against the "oppressors" of Eritrea. In the second book, written in collaboration with her son, she rehearsed at great length the stages of the British wartime and postwar administration and the United Nations actions by which the seacoast country was at last to be reunited with "the Ethiopian Motherland." She quoted copiously from official and unofficial documents, of greater or lesser pertinence.

1539. PANKHURST, RICHARD. *An introduction to the economic history of Ethiopia from early times to 1800*. London, Sidgwick & Jackson, 1961. 454 p. DLC

This book by "an impassioned defender of values and institutions Amharan" is reviewed in the *Middle*



*East Journal*, Spring 1962, by William H. Lewis. The reviewer speaks of it as one of a series, and states that Mr. Pankhurst is now preparing a companion volume to cover the contemporary scene. There are frequent articles on economic themes of past and present in *Ethiopia Observer*, edited by this writer.

1540. PERHAM, MARGERY. *The government of Ethiopia*. London, Faber & Faber, 1948. 481 p.  
JQ3754.P4

Standard work on Ethiopian government and political history up to the postwar Restoration. In her introduction Miss Perham commented that the book was designed to offset the distortions of propaganda regarding Ethiopia, which since the Italian aggression had become the subject for an emotional approach little backed by "serious information." Her skillful, far-ranging study was reviewed at digest length in *African Affairs*, v. 47, July 1948, p. 169-173.

1541. QUARANTA DI SAN SEVERINO, FERDINANDO, barone. *Ethiopia, an empire in the making*. London, P. S. King, 1939. 120 p.  
DG571.A2I8, ser. 4, no. 7

Recital of economic and social developments begun and achieved in Ethiopia during the first 3 years of Italian civil administration, by an official of the Ministry of Italian Africa.

A technical analysis of the administrative organization set up by the Italian conquerors in Ethiopia was presented in an article by an American political scientist, Arthur H. Steiner, "The Government of Italian East Africa" (*American Political Science Review*, v. 30, Oct. 1936, p. 884-902). Despite his dislike of the aggression, the writer believed that the Italians were planning a good government which would be to the advantage of the country and its inhabitants.

1542. SCHAEFER, LUDWIG F. *The Ethiopian crisis, touchstone of appeasement?* Edited with an introd. by Ludwig F. Schaefer. Boston, Heath, 1961. 101 p. (Problems in European civilization)  
DT387.8.S36

A selection of extracts from authoritative writers regarding the Italo-Ethiopian conflict as a prelude to the Second World War. Among those represented are G. M. Gathorne-Hardy, from his *Short History of International Affairs 1920-1939* (1950); Arnold J. Toynbee, *Survey of International Affairs, 1935* (1948); Sir Winston Churchill, *The Gathering Storm* (1948); the anti-Fascist Gaetano Salvemini, *Prelude to World War II* (1954); the Fascist spokesman Luigi Villari, *Italian Foreign Policy under Mussolini* (1956). Other readily

available works in English are listed in "Suggestions for Further Reading," p. 99-101.

1543. TREVASKIS, G. K. N. *Eritrea; a colony in transition: 1941-1952*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. viii, 137 p. maps.  
DT395.T7

Issued under the auspices of the Royal Institute of International Affairs.

A study of the wartime and postwar history and political development of Eritrea up to the federation with Ethiopia in 1952. The writer had been in the British administrative service during most of the Occupation, and observed at first hand this "period of rapid transition from the narrow colonialism of Fascist Italian rule to quasi-independence within the Ethiopian Federation."

On Nov. 14, 1962, the Legislative Assembly of the federated state of Eritrea voted unanimously to give up its semi-autonomous status with separate legislature and judiciary and unite with Ethiopia. "The Eritrean Assembly, meeting in Asmara, declared that the federation system caused misunderstanding between Eritrean and Ethiopian brothers." (*African Diary*, Nov. 24-30, 1962).

1544. UNITED NATIONS. Department of Public Information. *Shaping a people's destiny*; the story of Eritrea and the United Nations. New York, 1953. 32 p. illus. maps. (United Nations publications: 1953.1.18.)  
DT395.U5

Booklet explaining the 1950 resolution of the General Assembly that Eritrea should be federated with Ethiopia, the transition period under the United Kingdom as Administering Authority, the preparation of a draft Eritrean Constitution under the direction of the United Nations Commissioner Dr. Eduardo Anze Matienzo, and the ceremony of federation in Addis Ababa on August 11, 1952.

1545. USONI, LUIGI. *Risorse minerarie dell'Africa Orientale*; Eritrea, Etiopia, Somalia. Roma, Jandi Sapi, 1952. 553 p. illus. (part col.) maps.  
TN119.E2U8

Bibliography: p. 521-532.

Comprehensive and heavily statistical study, arranged by types of minerals—metals, nonmetallic substances (including oil), materials for construction and cement, mineral waters and hot mineral springs. Many references and authorities, mainly Italian, are cited. Good plates and a full index are included.

## ANTHROPOLOGY, ETC.

1546. CERULLI, ERNESTA. *Peoples of south-west Ethiopia and its borderland*. London, International African Institute, 1956. 148 p. (Ethnographic survey of Africa. North Eastern Africa, pt. 3) DT380.C4

Handbook on the odd groups of hill peoples, mainly negroid, of the country where Ethiopia borders on the Sudan. According to E. E. Hurst (*The Nile*, no. 1482), 70 languages are spoken in Ethiopia; a good many of them are accounted for by these tribes, Insasna-Mao, Suri-Surma-Mekan, Burji-Konso, Sidama, etc., etc. A long bibliography ends this volume, which follows the pattern of the series (see no. 270). Many of the references are to Italian sources.

1547. CONTI ROSSINI, CARLO. *Etiopia e genti di Etiopia*. Firenze, R. Bemporad, 1937. 402 p. plates, maps. DT380.C6

1548. ———. *Storia d'Etiopia*. Milano, A. Lucini, 1928. (Africa italiana, 3) DT373.C63

Vol. 1. Delle origini all'avvento della dinastia salomonide.

The late Professor Conti Rossini of the Accademia dei Lincei at the University of Rome had begun his publications on languages and literature of Northeast Africa before the turn of the century, and was considered the leading Italian exponent of Ethiopian studies. The first of the two books here mentioned is a broad ethnological survey. The first volume only of the history is available; it covers the Ethiopian past from Biblical times to the reestablishment of the Solomonic dynasty in 1270. Many of the writer's other articles on Ethiopian linguistics and texts are cited by Jean Doresse in the bibliographies of his two-volume history (no. 1525). A large compilation by Conti Rossini is *Proverbi, tradizioni e canzoni tigrine* (Verbania, A. Airoldi, 1942. 322 p. Collezione scientifica e documentaria dell' Africa italiana, 5). The texts of the proverbs and songs in Tigriña are accompanied by translation and notes in Italian.

1549. DAVIS, RUSSELL, and BRENT ASHABRANNER, comps. *The lion's whiskers; tales of high Africa*. With illus. by James G. Teason. Boston, Little, Brown, 1959. 191 p. illus. GR360.E8D37

An unusual book of stories from the Ethiopian highlands. The two authors had been working in the Ethiopian Ministry of Education, preparing reading materials for the schools, and these legends and tales

for young readers from all over the country are placed in a framework describing the special place, tribe, and individual where and by whom the story had been told.

1550. HUNTINGFORD, GEORGE W. B. *The Galla of Ethiopia; the Kingdoms of Kafa and Janjero*. London, International African Institute, 1955. 156 p. (Ethnographic survey of Africa. North-Eastern Africa, pt. 2) DT390.G2H8

The Galla, a pastoral Hamitic people whose original home was in British Somaliland, invaded and have spread widely over southern and eastern Ethiopia during the past 400 years, and now form one of the more important racial stocks of that country. For this handbook the main sources were the important older works of French, German, and Italian authorities. The author readily admitted that because of the difficult nature of the Galla country and the lack of recent studies, it was impossible to say whether the mores he described were still prevalent.

1551. LESLAU, WOLF. *Coutumes et croyances des Falachas; Juifs d'Abyssinie*, publié avec le concours du Centre national de la recherche scientifique. Paris, Institut d'ethnologie, 1957. 98 p. (Université de Paris. Travaux et mémoires de l'Institut d'ethnologie, 61) DS135.E75L4

1552. ———, ed. *Falasha anthology*; translated from Ethiopic sources, with an introduction. New Haven, Yale University Press, 1952. 222 p. (Yale Judaica series, v. 6) BM40.L37

Professor Leslau has specialised in studies of the so-called "Black Jews" of Ethiopia. These two works are among a number of his writings on this interesting group.

1553. SIMOONS, FREDERICK J. *Northwest Ethiopia; peoples and economy*. Madison, University of Wisconsin Press, 1960. xvii, 250 p. illus., maps. DT380.S5

Bibliography: p. 221–230.

A study expanded from a thesis for which the writer had done eight months' fieldwork in Northwest Ethiopia, much of it around Gondar. After background and definition of the eight ethnic groups, the dominant Amhara, the Jewish Falasha and lesser peoples, he turns to examination of the ways and means of life—the types of settlement and houses, the characteristics



and methods of agriculture, plants cultivated, animal husbandry, arts and crafts, industries and other human activities. His emphasis, he says, is that of "the historically oriented cultural geographer," concerned with "culture as an intermediary between man and the earth."

1554. TRIMINGHAM, JOHN S. *The Christian Church and missions in Ethiopia* (including Eritrea and the Somalilands). London, New York, World Dominion Press, 1950 [i.e., 1951] 73 p. fold. maps. (Survey series)

BV3560.T7

This booklet in a Church Missionary Society series contains a short statement of the general religious background and of the National Church of Ethiopia, which since 1951 has been distinct from the Coptic Church in Egypt, with an Ethiopian Copt archbishop. Then comes a systematic examination of missions and their work in the Horn of Africa before, during, and since the Italian occupation, their connection with the Ethiopian National Church, and their proselytizing efforts among pagans and Muslims.

1555. ———. *Islam in Ethiopia*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1952. 299 p. maps.

BP65.E8T7

A major contribution to Islamic studies surveying Mohammedanism, its history and extent in the entire region of the Horn of Africa, including Eritrea and the Somalilands as well as the highland kingdom, which is designated as Abyssinia. Canon Trimmingham began with account of the region, its peoples, and distribution of religions, then considers in historic terms the centuries-old conflict of Islam with the Christian religion that had been brought to Abyssinia in the days of the Early Church. His third part is detailed analysis of the tribal distribution of Islam in Ethiopia—Beni Amir, Danakil, Galla, Somali, and many minor groups, including Negroid tribes. Last, the special character-

istics of Islam in Ethiopia were examined, and the interplay of influence with paganism and westernism.

1556. ULLENDORFF, EDWARD. *The Ethiopians; an introduction to country and people*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. 232 p. illus.

DT379.5.U4

Professor Ullendorff of St. Andrews University is an Ethiopicist who has spent twenty years in the study of Ethiopian languages and civilizations. He wrote this work as a short introduction "to summarize . . . between two covers . . . the present state of our knowledge of historical and modern Ethiopia." His survey begins with a review of explorations and studies, then background of country and people, followed by an outline of history. His focus is on cultural factors, explained in chapters on religion, languages, literature, art and music, daily life and customs. Only the last chapter, "Ethiopia Today," touches on modern politico-economic matters. The work is dedicated to Haile Selassie, by whose "high example . . . no one living in Ethiopia can fail to be inspired . . ."

1557. ———. *The Semitic languages of Ethiopia; a comparative phonology*. London, Taylor's (Foreign) Press, 1955. 273 p. map.

PJ8999.U4

Bibliographical notes: p. 233–239.

Study of the modern languages of Ethiopia: Tigrīña, Amharic, and Tigre, with which the author had familiarized himself during the war years. He had collected and brought back extensive materials for a doctoral study on the relations of these languages to classical Ethiopic (Ge'ez) and other Semitic languages. He began with an introduction on historical background, the languages now spoken, and the traditional pronunciation of Ge'ez, then examined consonants, vowels, accents, and combinatory effects of sounds. There are bibliographical notes and several indexes.

## Mauritius

### Bibliography

1558. TOUSSAINT, AUGUSTE. *Bibliographie de Maurice, 1502–1954*. Port Louis, Esclapon, 1956. 884 p.

Z3703.M3A5

1559. ———. *Select bibliography of Mauritius*. Port Louis, Mauritius, Printed by Henry, 1951. 60 p. (Société de l'histoire de l'île Maurice. Publication.)

DT469.M4S6, v. 4

The French history of Mauritius, the former Île de France, goes back to 1715. Bernardin de Saint-Pierre's *Voyage à l'Île de France* (1773, 2 v.), and still more his famous Rousseauian novel, *Paul et Virginie* (1789), established its reputation as an earthly paradise, and there is a large body of literature, mostly in French. This has been recorded exhaustively by the Chief Archivist of Mauritius, M. Tous-saint. His huge bibliography of 1956 covers printed works, manuscripts, archivalia, and cartographic materials.

---

1560. AUSTEN, H. C. M. *Sea fights and corsairs of the Indian Ocean; being the naval history of Mauritius from 1715 to 1810.* Port Louis, M. R. W. Brooks, Govt. Printer, 1935. 231 p. illus. DT469.M4A8 1935

1561. BARNWELL, PATRICK J., and AUGUSTE TOUS-SAINT. *A short history of Mauritius.* London, New York, Published for the Govern-ment of Mauritius by Longmans, Green, 1949. 268 p. illus. DT469.M4B27

1562. BENEDICT, BURTON. *Indians in the plural so-ciety; a report on Mauritius.* London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1961. 168 p. plates. (Colo-nial research studies, no. 34) JV33.G7A48, no. 34

Full socioanthropological study of the Muslim and Hindu groups who form two-thirds of the population of Mauritius, to which they immigrated from 1835 to 1907. The author outlines their history, their social groupings, way of life, customs and rites, religious organization, and political structure.

1563. D'UNIENVILLE, J. R. M. *Last years of the Isle of France (1800-1814) through texts.* Port Louis, Printed by Claude M. d'Unienville, The Mauritius Printing Co., 1959. 244 p. illus. DT469.M4D8

A history assembled from primary texts and docu-ments in the British Public Record Office and else-where. The author, a Mauritian who had studied law in London, bears the family name of the Colonial Archivist of Mauritius, the baron d'Unienville, who in 1838 wrote *Statistique de l'île Maurice et ses dé-pendances, suivie d'une notice historique sur cette colo-nie et d'un essai sur l'île de Madagascar* (Paris, G. Barba, 3 v., 74 tables). The extracts are given indif-ferently in English or French, the writer commenting that both himself and his readers are bilingual.

1564. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Annual report on Mauritius.* 1946+ London, H.M. Stationery Off., illus., maps. (*Its Colonial annual re-ports*) DT469.M4A14

1959 ed. published in 1961, 160 p. Includes bibliography. See general note on this series, no. 94.

1565. HAZAREESINGH, K. *The story of the 1945 cy-clones.* Port Louis, J. E. Felix, Govt. Printer, 1948. 51 p. illus. DT469.M4H3

The island is susceptible to storms. A cyclone in 1960 was discussed in the London *Economist* (v. 194, Mar. 5, 1960, p. 887) and photographed for the *Illus-trated London News*: "Mauritius after the Worst Cy-clones ever Recorded" (v. 236, Mar. 12, 1960, p. 443).

1566. INGRAMS, WILLIAM HAROLD. *Arabia and the isles.* 2d ed. London, J. Murray, 1954. 399 p. illus. DS207.I65

Includes accounts of Mauritius and Zanzibar.

Other descriptive books that include Mauritius with other islands are by Marius Leblond, *Les Îles Soeurs* (no. 1255), and Maurice Martin du Gard, *Le Voyage de Madagascar* (no. 1226n).

1567. MALIM, MICHAEL. *Island of the Swan; Mauri-tius.* London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1952. 232 p. illus. DT469.M4M3

One of the few travel books in English.

1568. MAURITIUS. Dept. of Education. *The histor-ical monuments of Mauritius.* Port Louis, J. E. Felix, Govt. Printer, 1958. 12 p. DT460.M4A53

1569. MAURITIUS CHAMBER OF AGRICULTURE. *The Mauritius Chamber of Agriculture, 1853-1953.* Port Louis, General Printing & Sta-tionery Co., 1953. 377 p. illus. S471.M37M4

1570. MAURITIUS SUGAR INDUSTRY RESEARCH INSTI-TUTE, Réduit. *Report.* 1st+ 1953+ Ré-duit, Mauritius. annual. SB215.M35

The primary place of the sugar industry in Mauritius is witnessed in the handsomely presented centenary volume of the Chamber of Agriculture and in the an-nual report of the research institute. The difficulties attending the industry were discussed in a long article by H. C. Brookfield, "Problems of Monoculture and Diversification in a Sugar Island—Mauritius" (*Eco-nomic Geography*, v. 35, January 1959, p. 25-40).



1571. MEADE, JAMES, ed. *The economic and social structure of Mauritius*; a report to the Governor of Mauritius. London, Methuen, 1961. 264 p. tables, maps, diagrs. (Mauritius. Legislative Council. Sessional papers no. 7, 1961) DLC

By several writers, these papers uniformly warn of critical conditions in the economy due to the rate of population increase. Papers are included on education and governmental structure. A short summary stresses that the only answer to the problems of Mauritius is birth control. The views of the editor were summed up in an article that followed shortly after publication of the report, "Mauritius; A Case Study in Malthusian Economics" (*Economic Journal*, v. 71, September 1961: 521-534).

1572. SCOTT, Sir ROBERT. *Limuria; the lesser dependencies of Mauritius*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1961. 308 p. DT468.S25

The author was Governor of Mauritius from 1954 to 1959. He gives a full account here of the islands in the Indian Ocean to the north and northeast of Mauritius, from 245 to almost 1,200 miles away, which are known as the Lesser Dependencies: St. Brandon (a fishing fleet island, where women are not allowed), Agalega, the Chagos Archipelago. "Their total land area including both inhabited and uninhabited islands and islets, is about forty-seven square miles." The book is in two parts, first geography and history, then island-by-island description. The inhabitants are

mostly descendants of slaves brought from the East African coast or the larger islands.

1573. SORNAY, PIERRE DE. *Île de France, Île Maurice*; sa géographie, son histoire, son agriculture, ses industries, ses institutions. Port Louis, General Printing & Stationery Co., 1950. 550 p. illus. maps. DT469.M4S65

Bibliography: p. 547-550.

1574. TITMUSS, RICHARD MORRIS, BRIAN ABEL-SMITH, and TONY LYNES. *Social policies and population growth in Mauritius*; a report to the Governor of Mauritius. London, Methuen, 1961. 308 p., tables, diagrs. DLC

The authors are British population experts. They warn that under present policies the island faces disaster from overpopulation, and that the Government must back a campaign for family planning, as well as economic plans for higher employment. See also report by Meade (above).

1575. TOUSSAINT, AUGUSTE, ed. *Early American trade in Mauritius*. Port Louis, Esclapon, 1954. 86 p. (Mauritius Archives publication No. 2) HF3134.M3T6

1576. WHEELER, J. F. G. *Report on the Mauritius-Seychelles fisheries survey, 1948-1949*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1953. 145 p. illus., maps. (Colonial Office. Fishery publications, v. 1, no. 3) SH69.A32, v. 1, no. 3

Technical contributions by Dr. Wheeler and Dr. F. D. Ommanney.

# RHODESIA AND NYASALAND (FEDERATION)

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1577. RHODESIA AND NYASALAND. Central African Archives. *A select bibliography of recent publications concerning the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland*. Salisbury, Federal Information Dept., 1960. 13 p.

DLC-AFR

Useful classified listing of 300 to 400 titles of books, pamphlets, documents, and periodicals, most of them published during the fifties. The categories are: General and descriptive; history and biography; politics and economic farming; geology, flora and fauna; anthropology and ethnography (including papers of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute); some newspapers, periodicals and journals; official periodical publications; government publications on special topics. A more complete list of the two last-named categories is given in the *Catalogue of Official Publications* issued by the Federal Information Department (1959. 40 p.). Later editions will presumably be available from the Department.

*Note:* For the *Who's Who of the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland* and the *Union-Castle Year Book & Guide*, see in section on South Africa, nos. 1779, 1780.

## GENERAL

(including History, Anthropology, etc.)

1578. CENTRAL AFRICAN COUNCIL. Commission on Higher Education for Africans in Central Africa. *Report*. Salisbury, 1953. 93 p.

LC2808.C4C44

This Commission, Chairman Sir Alexander Carr-Saunders, was appointed in September 1952, succeeding other commissions. The members made a thorough field survey of the educational system, studying all statistics and approving the emphasis on technical and industrial training. In accordance with the British colonial policy of creating universities to serve each

area, they recommended the immediate foundation of a university college as a first step toward a full university. They advised on its constitution, curriculum, site (Salisbury), buildings, finance, etc. (The University College of Rhodesia and Nyasaland was incorporated in 1955 as an affiliate of the University of London, and began classes in March 1957 with 71 full-time students, 8 of whom were African. Both number of students and the African proportion are steadily increasing. The first graduating class in January, 1960 included 3 Africans.)

1579. CLEMENTS, FRANK. *Kariba, the struggle with the river god*. London, Methuen, 1959. 222 p. TC558.R45K3

History of the building of the Kariba Dam, the great enterprise of the Federation, for which in 1958 a huge area on both sides of the Zambezi was flooded, creating perhaps the largest manmade lake of the world—"to the Batonka and a hundred other tribes . . . a clear manifestation of divine displeasure."

The anthropological studies of the Tonga tribes displaced by the creation of Kariba Lake are discussed under Northern Rhodesia (see Colson). Two well illustrated popular books describe the much-featured rescue of the animals caught by the floods: Eric Robins and Ronald Legge, *Animal Dunkirk* (New York, Taplinger Pub. Co., 1961. 188 p.), and Charles Lagos, *Operation Noah* (New York, Coward McCann, 1960. 176 p.).

1580. COLSON, ELIZABETH, and MAX GLUCKMAN, eds. *Seven tribes of British Central Africa*. Reprinted with minor corrections. Manchester, Eng. Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, Northern Rhodesia by Manchester University Press, 1959. xix, 409 p. illus., maps, geneal. table.

DT429.C6 1959

Includes bibliographies.

This symposium, an early result of the expanded research program of the Institute, was published first in 1951 by the Oxford University Press. Dr. Colson,



an American social anthropologist, edited it in conjunction with Dr. Gluckman, whom she had succeeded as Director of the Institute in 1947 when the latter left to accept a lectureship at Oxford. The volume contains seven studies: "The Lozi of Barotseland," by Dr. Gluckman; "The Plateau Tonga," by Dr. Colson; "The Bamba of North-Eastern Rhodesia," by Audrey I. Richards; "The Fort Jameson Ngoni," by J. A. Barnes; "The Nyakyusa of South-Western Tanganyika," by the late Godfrey Wilson, first Director of the Institute; "The Yao of Southern Nyasaland," by J. C. Mitchell; "Some Shona Tribes of Southern Rhodesia," by J. F. Holleman.

1581. COUPLAND, Sir REGINALD. *Kirk on the Zambesi*; a chapter of African history. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1928. 286 p.

DT776.K5C6

The writer from 1920 to 1948 held the Beit Chair of Colonial History at Oxford, being knighted for his contributions in 1944. *Kirk on the Zambesi* tells the exciting story of Livingstone's second expedition of 1858-63 into Central Africa, on which he was accompanied by the Scottish surgeon John Kirk, later British representative in Zanzibar and a leading figure in the campaign against the Arab slave trade. The climax of this expedition, which discovered Lake Nyasa, was the attempt to establish a mission and the death of its pioneer leader, Bishop Mackenzie. Professor Coupland supplemented this with *Livingstone's Last Journey* (American edition, Macmillan, 1947. 271 p.). For his other works, see under East Africa.

1582. FORTUNE, G. *A preliminary survey of the Bantu languages of the Federation*. Lusaka, Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, 1959. 59 p. map. (*Its Communications*, no. 14)

DT15.R52, no. 14

Father Fortune, S.J., here attempts to name all language groups and dialect clusters of the Rhodesias and Nyasaland, giving data regarding distribution, number of speakers, etc. The monograph is reviewed in *Africa*, Apr. 1960, v. 30, p. 208.

1583. FRAENKEL, P. J. *Wayaleshi* (radio in Central Africa) London, Weidenfeld & Nicholson, 1959. 224 p. illus. PN1991.3.R5F7

Out of his experience as a broadcaster for the Central African Broadcasting Station in Lusaka the author gives a spirited account of radio news and its effects upon the African audiences. He includes many human interest narratives and political sidelights.

1584. GOODALL, ELIZABETH. *Prehistoric rock art of the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland*; paintings and descriptions by Elizabeth Goodall, C. K. Cooke, J. Desmond Clark. Edited by Roger Summers. Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia, National Publications Trust Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1959. 267 p. illus., maps N5310.G6

Folio volume describing and illustrating in color reproduction the Stone Age rock art found in about 1,100 painted sites and 30 engravings in the Federation. Mrs. Goodall wrote the first and longest part, on the rock paintings of Mashonaland, Mr. Cooke on Matabeleland, Mr. Clark on Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland, where only within the last two decades have rock paintings been coming to light. In the chapter on rock engravings the editor collaborated with the authors on their individual regions. The conclusion contains maps showing locations of the rock paintings in the Federation and in general south of the Equator.

1585. GREEN, JOHN E. S. *Rhodes goes north*. London, G. Bell, 1936. xv, 391 p. maps.

DT776.R4G7

Authorities: p. 377-380.

History of the Concessions, the Chartered Company, the Matabele Rebellion, the railways, the raid, the Mashonaland gold bubble, and the many colorful episodes in the creation of Great Britain's Central African colonies. Appendixes give text of various agreements and treaties.

1586. HANNA, A. J. *The beginnings of Nyasaland and Northeastern Rhodesia, 1859-95*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1956. 281 p.

DT858.H3 1956

Bibliography: p. 270-273.

1587. ———. *The story of the Rhodesias and Nyasaland*. London, Faber & Faber, 1960. 288 p.

DT853.5.H35

Dr. Hanna is a historian at Southampton University who has specialized on Central and East Africa. The first of the above-mentioned works, a carefully documented and scholarly study of British interests and activities, missionary, chartered company and official, instate-building, was expanded from the author's doctoral thesis at the University of London. The second book is a spirited recital of Central African history in a series for the general public.

1588. HARDING, COLIN. *Frontier patrols: a history of the British South African police and other Rhodesian forces.* London, G. Bell, 1938. 372 p. DT948.H26

Historical sketch of this celebrated force which participated in the events of early days, the Jameson Raid, the Matabele Rebellion, the Mashonaland Rebellion, the Boer War, and later in the First World War campaigns in South-West Africa and German East Africa. The author was a former administrator in Barotseland.

1589. HOLE, HUGH MARSHALL. *The making of Rhodesia.* London, Macmillan, 1926. 414 p. DT948.H6

1590. ———. *Old Rhodesian days.* London, Macmillan, 1928. 140 p. DT958.H6

1591. ———. *Lobengula.* London, P. Allan, 1929. 211 p.

1592. ———. *The Jameson raid.* London, P. Allan, 1930. 306 p. DT929.H7

1593. ———. *The passing of the black kings.* London, P. Allan, 1932. 322 p. DT763.H6

Colonel Marshall Hole went out as a youth to South Africa in 1888 and joined Cecil Rhodes' office staff just as the great empire builder was given the Royal Charter to carry his pioneering expeditions into Mashonaland; he was involved in the historic events which he has chronicled in these five narratives of Southern and Central African history. He declared at the beginning of his first narrative, which treats the history of the South Africa Company up to the turning point of 1905, when the railroad reached Victoria Falls: "It is perhaps impossible for one who has served the Company from its inception to escape altogether the imputation of partiality"; but his effort was toward impartiality, from the viewpoint of a confirmed "colonial." The second volume is a set of reminiscences taken from the days when he was Civil Commissioner of Bulawayo in Southern Rhodesia. *Lobengula* is a fictionalized biography. With the two later books, Colonel Hole returned to straight historical narrative; *The Passing of the Black Kings* begins with a brief description of the Great Trek and the native migrations as background to the struggles of the warrior kings, Mziligazi, Lobengula, Khama, and Lewanika, set against the missionary trail of Moffat, Livingstone and John Mackenzie, and the inexorable advance of the dominant figure of Rhodes.

1594. JOHNSTON, Sir HARRY H. *British Central Africa; an attempt to give some account of a portion of the territories under British influence north of the Zambesi.* With 6 maps and 223 illustrations reproduced from the author's drawings or from photographs. 2d ed. London, Methuen, 1898. xix, 544 p. illus., plates, maps. DT858.J73

This famous scholar-administrator who led the expeditions of the eighties into Central Africa and laid the foundations for British control in Nyasaland, Uganda, and elsewhere, served as Commissioner in British Central Africa (Nyasaland and Northern Rhodesia) from 1891 to 1896. His book, the old standard work on the region, takes in geography, history, botany, zoology, anthropology, and languages. Incidentally, Johnston originated the "Cape-to-Cairo" phrase, before the British abandoned Tanganyika to Germany.

1595. LOVEDAY, ARTHUR F. *Three stages of history in Rhodesia.* Cape Town, A. A. Balkema [1960?] 109 p. DT948.L6

Three historical papers. The first is on the controversial theories regarding Bantu origins, ancient gold mining, and the Great Zimbabwe ruins. The second, from Portuguese sources, is on the martyred "Father Gonçalo da Silveira and the Monomotapas," and the third on "Frederick Courtney Selous, The Greatest of Hunters." Selous himself wrote many books, beginning with *A Hunter's Wanderings in Africa* (London, 1881) and *Travel and Adventure in South-East Africa* (1881) as well as articles and lectures.

1596. MILLIN, SARAH GERTRUDE. *Rhodes.* New and rev. ed. London, Chatto & Windus, 1952. 406 p. DT776.R4M72 1952

Bibliography: p. 375-389.

By a leading South African writer, this authoritative biography of Cecil Rhodes was published first in 1933 (American edition, Harper).

The longest of more recent biographies is by Felix Gross, *Rhodes of Africa* (New York, Praeger, 1957. 433 p. illus.).

1597. RHODES-LIVINGSTONE INSTITUTE, Lusaka, Northern Rhodesia. *Communications.* v. 1+ Lusaka, 1943+ irregular.

DT15.R52

1598. ———. *Rhodes-Livingstone papers.* no. 1+ Livingstone, Lusaka, 1938+

Monographs given separate cataloging in Library of Congress collections.

The Rhodes-Livingstone Institute is among the major centers of Africa for research in the social sciences.



Its original site was at Livingstone in Northern Rhodesia, from whence it moved in 1953 to Lusaka. Besides the two series cited above, the Institute issues the *Rhodes-Livingstone Journal*, called also *Human Problems in British Central Africa* (Manchester, Manchester University Press). It also publishes the proceedings of its annual conferences, e.g.:

11th Conference, Lusaka, 14-17 Jan. 1958. *Present interrelations in central African rural and urban life*. Edited by R. J. Apthorpe. Lusaka, 1958. 175 p.

12th Conference, Bulawayo, 1958. *Social relations in Central African industry*; proceedings. Edited by David Matthews and Raymond Apthorpe. Lusaka, 1958. 135 p. HD8792.A4R5 1958

13th Conference, Lusaka, 1959. *From tribal rule to modern government*. Edited by Raymond Apthorpe. Lusaka, 1959. 216 p. JQ1872.R53 1959

14th Conference, 1960. *Myth in modern Africa*. Edited by Allie Dubb. Lusaka, 1960. 156 p.

16th Conference. 1962. *The multitribal society*. Edited by Allie Dubb. Lusaka, 1962. 147 p. tables.

The titles of papers and other publications are usually listed on inserted leaves and inside cover pages of the monographs. For instance, Paper No. 31, by Turner (see no. 1653), has a front fly-leaf describing the journal, *Human Problems in British Central Africa*, and giving contents of recent issues, and several fly-leaves at the back listing the papers and books published for the Institute. On the back cover pages are given titles of the Communications and the Occasional Papers of the Rhodes-Livingstone Museum.

1599. SMITH, EDWIN W. *The way of the white fields in Rhodesia*; a survey of Christian enterprise in Northern and Southern Rhodesia. London, World Dominion Press, 1928. 172, 20 p. tables, fold. maps. BV3625.R5S5

This volume in the World Dominion Survey series is of special interest because of the significant part played by missionary enterprise in the Rhodesias since the pioneer missionary of Bechuanaland, Robert Moffat, father-in-law of Livingstone, went in 1854 to visit the Matabele chieftains in what is now Southern Rhodesia, where in 1859 he led the first party of white missionary settlers. Dr. Smith devoted the first pages to a general account of the country and a brief historical sketch, then described each mission station and the work done by them, ending with twenty pages of tabular statistics.

1600. WILSON, GODFREY, and MONICA HUNTER WILSON. *The analysis of social change*, based on observations in central Africa. Cambridge [Eng.] The University Press, 1945. 177 p. GN651.W5

Statement of the ideas which the writers say are current in sociological theory regarding the native society in its change from primitive to civilized, with inevitable maladjustments and oppositions. This involves the change in scale of relationships from the intense interdependence of the small primitive tribe or village group to the wider circle of the civilized world. The Wilsons examined lucidly the social elements of this new civilization, its culture, structure, mobility, "control of the material environment and non-magicality," and other aspects evident in Central Africa, evaluating the resulting disequilibrium and choices possible to restore stability. They laid emphasis on the fact that much of the imbalance is due to the outrunning in scale of the religious by the material elements of society, and stated in unvarnished terms the ultimate implications of racialism and nonracialism, the "inescapable choice" before white and black society in Central and South Africa. The "brilliant" essay was reviewed at length by Daryll Forde in *Africa* of July 1946 (v. 16, p. 196-198). At the time of writing Dr. Godfrey Wilson was Director of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute to the papers of which he contributed several numbers. Other works by Monica Hunter Wilson are noted in the section on Tanganyika.

## POLITICS AND ECONOMICS

1601. BARBER, WILLIAM J. *The economy of British Central Africa*; a case study of economic development in a dualistic society. Stanford, Stanford University Press, 1961. 271 p. HC517.R4B28 1961

Study of the dichotomy of Rhodesian and Nyasaland economy, where the cash and money crop system of the settlers exists beside rather than in fusion with the subsistence agricultural economy of African tribesmen. The chief point of interaction in the labor market has meant, the author shows, below-subsistence wages for African workers.

The progress of transition from subsistence to money economy in the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland has been studied also by Phyllis Deane (below) and in a document prepared by the United Nations Department of Economic and Social Affairs, *Structure and Growth of Selected African Economies* (New York, 1958. 201 p. tables). Besides the Federation, economies of Morocco and the Sudan are examined.

1602. CAPRICORN AFRICA SOCIETY. *The Capricorn declarations*; a statement of principles and aims for East and Central Africa. Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia, 1952. 10 p. DT431.C3

The Capricorn Africa Society was founded in 1949 by Col. David Stirling of Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia, and is understood to have gained a considerable membership among moderates of all races in Central and East Africa. Begun as a plan for federation of East and Central Africa, its aim changed to that of creation of an integrated multiracial society, without discrimination and with equal opportunity for all. It calls for a multiple vote system to insure responsible control, with a common roll for all races, having 15 categories of specific qualifications, under which people with additional qualifications are given extra votes. It advocates progressive establishment of interracial education, and other forms of interracial cooperation.

An enthusiastic analysis of the multiracial proposals of the Capricorn African Society was written by a former Secretary of the International Missionary Council who for many years had been closely concerned with colonial policy in Africa: Joseph H. Oldham, *New Hope in Africa* (London, Longmans, Green, 1955. 102 p.).

In June 1956 a convention held by the Society at Salima, Nyasaland, was attended by almost 200 people, and the Capricorn Contract, based on the Declarations, was signed by African, European, Indian, and Arab delegates. Attempts to form political parties to campaign for the Contract in Kenya and Northern Rhodesia were not fruitful. Mr. Colin Leys in his *European Politics in Southern Rhodesia* (no. 1679) comments that in spite of its claims of large membership, the Society seems to have no permanent base as an independent political organization.

1603. CLEGG, EDWARD M. *Race and politics; partnership in the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. 280 p. maps.

DT856.C58

Study carried out under the auspices of the Institute of Race Relations by a soil scientist formerly in the Colonial Research Service in Northern Rhodesia. His account of the European impact on the African way of life includes penetrating analysis of the problems of the projected "partnership." The appendixes include documents showing the stages of African political advance under federation from 1953 to 1959.

1604. CREIGHTON, THOMAS R. M. *The anatomy of partnership; Southern Rhodesia and the Central African Federation*. London, Faber & Faber, 1960. 257 p. illus. DT962.C7

The writer states forthrightly in his preface his hope that the present Government "will have the clear-sightedness and courage to recognize the impossibility of continuing Federation in anything like its present form." His book, an argument for this impossibility, is

reviewed by C. B. Richardson in *Africa Report*, January 1962.

1605. DEANE, PHYLLIS. *Colonial social accounting*. Cambridge, University Press, 1953. xv, 360 p. plates. (National Institute of Economic and Social Research. Economic and social studies, 11) HC517.R4D4

Bibliography: p. 338-342.

Study by a specialist in surveys of colonial economies, analyzing the standards of living of Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland, particularly as to rural communities. Miss Deane emphasized that village economy in which the living standards cannot be interpreted in terms of European exchange is the background against which the urban activities of African communities should be set. Tables of income, output, expenditures, and many other statistics are included and appendixes appraising sources of statistics.

1606. DUNN, CYRIL. *Central African witness*. London, V. Gollancz, 1959. 254 p. illus.

DT856.D8

By a former correspondent for the *Observer*. "After living for some time in the Federation and listening carefully to what all sorts of people say, one may set out a synopsis of basic white aims which is not likely to provoke much denial. In outline it is much the same as the concept of a great experiment. But the emphasis is not where oversea liberals seem anxious to locate it." Mr. Dunn concludes, after analysis of a series of events through Garfield Todd's defeat, that "Federation cannot be held together peaceably and profitably on the present terms." Harvey Glickman in a review (*African Report*, March 1960), speaks of this, together with Colin Leys (below) as "required reading."

1607. GRAY, RICHARD. *The two nations: aspects of the development of race relations in the Rhodesias and Nyasaland*. Issued under the auspices of the Institute of Race Relations. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. xvii, 373 p. maps. DT856.G72

Bibliography: p. 356-361.

Study covering the history of Central Africa with regard to contacts of the British settlers and Government with the African tribes and political development from the end of the First World War to the beginning of the Federation in 1953. This book is reviewed, together with the two works by Philip Mason with which



it forms a trilogy, in *Africa* of October 1961 (v. 31, p. 383).

1608. GT. BRIT. Advisory Commission on the Review of the Constitution of the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland. *Report*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1960. 4 v. tables, map. (Cmnd. 1148-1151) Chairman, Lord Monckton. DLC-LL

Contents: v. 1. (175 p. Cmnd. 1148) Introduction and survey. Summary of conclusions and recommendations. Reservations. Minority report by Mr. Chirwa and Mr. Habanyama. Appendixes: 1. Itinerary; 2. Staff and liaison officers; 3. Communal primary elections and the single transferable vote; 4. List of functions; 5. Probable redistribution of expenditure. v. 2. (513 p. Cmnd. 1149) Appendix 6. Survey of developments since 1953 (Report of Committee officials) v. 3. (87 p. Cmnd. 1150) Appendix 7. Possible constitutional changes. v. 4. Appendix 8. Evidence.

Analyzed in several articles in *Central African Examiner*, v. 4, Oct. 22, 1960.

1609. GT. BRIT. Central Office of Information. Reference Division. *The Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland*. London, November 1959. 33 p. DLC-AFR

Booklet of basic information, with sections on political evolution of the Territories before federation, political development since federation, economic and social development, and appendix of factual data. Short reading list.

1610. IRVINE, ALEXANDER G. *The balance of payments of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1945-1954*. London, Oxford University Press, 1959. xiii, 643 p. fold. map, tables. HG3883.R5I7

Bibliography: p. 631-634.

Detailed technical study, classifying and analyzing the statistics of trade of the three separate territories and of the Federation. A final chapter discusses the significance of the balance of payments for the economy of the Federation. The author, an officer in the Federal Treasury of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, presented 9 of the 10 chapters as a doctoral dissertation at the University of London.

1611. JONES, ARTHUR CREECH. *African challenge; the fallacy of federation*. London, Africa Bureau, 1952. 36 p. JQ2815 1952.J6

Argument against the federation of the Rhodesias and Nyasaland, which was put through the following year in spite of the opposition from Labor and African groups of which this is typical. The author, former

Secretary of State for the Colonies under the Labor Government, was also former Chairman of the Fabian Colonial Bureau, and one of the Executive Committee of the Africa Bureau, which was founded in March 1952 "to be a well-informed and impartial mediary between Britain and Africa," providing a channel for African views to be given to Britain and the United Nations. The Africa Bureau does not present the opinion of Labor or Conservative, but is sponsored by "eminent figures in the Churches and Universities and by members of the three political parties."

The Africa Bureau published in 1953 a document presented to Her Majesty by a delegation of eight African leaders whose trip to London had been financed by a fund raised by over 400,000 Africans, under the inspiration of the African National Congress: Nyasaland, Delegation of Chiefs and Citizens, *A Petition to Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II against Federation* (London, 1953. 20 p.). In another pamphlet 7 years later, *Britain's Dilemma in Central Africa: The Africa Bureau's Evidence to the Monckton Commission* (London, 1960. 23 p.), there were included many statements of Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland leaders. The Bureau stressed the "fundamental incompatibility" between Britain's obligations to the Protectorates and the powers of the Federation Government.

1612. LEYS, COLIN, and CRANFORD PRATT, eds. *A new deal in Central Africa*. New York, Praeger, 1960. 226 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT856.L4

Includes bibliography.

This volume resulted from an Oxford conference in April 1959 following issuance of the Devlin Report (no. 1660). The papers by the editors, William J. Barber, Guy Clutton-Brock, Bernard Chidzero, T. S. L. Pitt, and William Watson, argue that "partnership" will not work and that the present form of the Federation must be changed. Mr. Leys had published in the previous year his study of *European Politics in Southern Rhodesia* (no. 1679).

1613. MASON, PHILIP. *The birth of a dilemma; the conquest and settlement of Rhodesia*. Issued under the auspices of the Institute of Race Relations. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1958. 366 p. illus. DT948.M28

1614. ———. *Year of decision; Rhodesia and Nyasaland in 1960*. Issued under the auspices of the Institute of Race Relations. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. 282 p. illus. DT856.M3

In the first of these two books the Director of the Institute of Race Relations presents the bloodthirsty

history of Rhodesia from the earliest European contacts to the 20th century—"an attempt to describe the impact on each other of peoples profoundly different and the results of that impact." This is the first part of a trilogy completed by Richard Gray's *The Two Nations* (no. 1607) and Mr. Mason's second work, which is a history of the Federation, 1953-60, and an examination of the current position. A review of the three works in *Africa* (v. 31, October 1961, p. 383) comments that these books will give all the information anyone requires, "but that is not to say that the answers will be made any easier."

1615. RHODESIA AND NYASALAND. Federal Information Dept. *Handbook to the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland*. Edited by W. V. Brelsford, Director of Information. London, Cassell, 1960. 803 p. plates (part col.) maps, charts, coat of arms, diagrs., tables.

DT856.A47

Includes bibliographies.

The 45 chapters of this fat volume, many of them contributed by recognized experts, cover all phases of land, life, and affairs of the 3 countries comprising the Federation. The longest essays, those on prehistory, history, and anthropology, occupy 150 pages. Chapters on agriculture, industries, and other economic aspects include extensive tabulated data. Lists of institutions and organizations appear in the chapters on education, social welfare, culture, etc., and similarly full and useful data in those on administrative organization. Appendixes include a chronology from 1498-1959, tables of statistics of population and income, lists of newspapers and periodicals, learned societies, and other miscellaneous information.

1616. RHODESIA AND NYASALAND. Office for Rhodesia and Nyasaland Affairs. *The Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland*, basic information for the potential investor. [American ed.] Washington, 1959. 123 p.

HC517.R44A54 1959a

In two parts, first a general survey in terms of economic geography, then detailed information on specific subjects. The pamphlet ends with a list of United States companies operating in the Federation.

1617. SANGER, CLYDE. *Central African emergency*. London, Heinemann, 1960. 342 p.

DT856.S3

A correspondent's analysis of the last few years of racial and political developments in the Federation. In his chapter on "The Future" the writer pleads for

"flexibility." The book was reviewed by Harvey Glickman in *Africa Report* of March 1961, together with the books by Mason and Gray.

A picture of present-day Rhodesia and Nyasaland expressing the hope of the Capricorn Society for an eventual multiracial society is by a resident of 25 years, Peter Gibbs: *Avalanche in Central Africa* (London, Barker, 1961. 169 p.).

A British army officer who had spent several months touring the Federation specially to form his own evaluation of the problem, expressed the general viewpoint of the white settlers. Brigadier C. E. Lucas Phillips' *The Vision Splendid* (London, Heinemann, 1960. 384 p.) was reviewed in the *Times Literary Supplement* of Feb. 17, 1961, p. 99.

The Book by Gann and Duignan, *White Settlers in the Tropics*, which is analyzed in the General section on the Race Question (no. 136), relates in large part to the place of the European in Rhodesia and Nyasaland.

1618. THOMPSON, CECIL H., and HARRY W. WOODRUFF. *Economic development in Rhodesia and Nyasaland*. London, D. Dobson, 1954. 205 p. illus.

HC517.R4T5

The writers, Government economists in Salisbury, datelined their book to coincide with the establishment of the Federation of the Rhodesias and Nyasaland. It is a study of the past economic history of the three territories and an assessment of the present position, with three themes constantly recurring—"the need for capital, the need for immigrant skill and experience, and the need to raise the low productivity of the African." The text includes many statistics, and an appendix contains tables. The authors considered that Federation would not bring short-run improvements, but would aid in long-term development through Government finance.

1619. U.S. Bureau of Foreign Commerce. Near Eastern and African Division. *Investment in Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland*; basic information for United States businessmen. Washington, U.S. Govt. Print. Off., 1956. 158 p. illus., maps, charts.

HC517.R4U5

One of a series of handbooks bringing together basic data for investors and traders which the Bureau plans to keep up to date through its World Trade Information Service reports and *Foreign Commerce Weekly*. Much of the text was prepared by Dr. George H. T. Kimble of the Twentieth Century Fund. The first chapter appraised the Federation as a field for investment, and succeeding chapters constituted a general survey of land, people, government, and especially of all economic activities and socioeconomic conditions. A number of appendixes contain business data, texts of business legislation, etc.



# Northern Rhodesia

## GENERAL

(including History)

1620. BRADLEY, KENNETH. *Copper venture; the discovery and development of Roan Antelope and Mufulira*. London, Mufulira Copper Mines, Roan Antelope Copper Mines, 1952. 112 p. TN447.R45

At the time of writing, Mr. Bradley was editor of the Colonial Service journal, *Corona*. His career had begun with 14 years as District Officer in Northern Rhodesia, so that his personal memory goes back to parts of this interesting story of the prehistory, birth, and growth of the industry which is the chief source of the territory's wealth. The book is illustrated with photographs and eight full-page drawings by Margaret Ross.

An earlier book by Mr. Bradley told of the country and entertainingly of his own experiences: *The Diary of a District Officer* (London, T. Nelson, 1947. 205 p.).

1621. CLIFFORD, W. *Crime in Northern Rhodesia*. Lusaka, Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, 1960. 130 p. (Rhodes-Livingstone Institute Communications, 18) DT15.R52 no. 18
1622. DARLING, FRANK F. *Wild life in an African territory; a study made for the Game and Tsetse Control Dept. of Northern Rhodesia*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. viii, 160 p. col. illus., 3 fold. maps. SK575.R4D3

By a prominent British naturalist, now Director of Research of the Conservation Foundation, this is a specialist study which includes ecological descriptions of habitats and ecology of communities of game, as well as analysis of measures for conservation.

1623. GANN, L. H. *The birth of a plural society; the development of Northern Rhodesia under the British South Africa Company, 1894-1914*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, Northern Rhodesia, by Manchester University Press, 1958. xxi, 230 p. illus., map. DT963.G3

Bibliography: p. 192-210.

The writer was appointed by the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute to provide a historical background to its major research program. According to Professor Gluckman who wrote the foreword, Mr. Gann went far beyond

their design, using not only the European and political source materials but also the works of the anthropologists to show "the African political systems and cultures . . . as contributing in varying detail to the building of Northern Rhodesia, in the same way as varied types of European." The work covers background as of 1894, the coming of the missionaries following Livingstone, the beginnings of government and establishment of administration, the arrival of the settlers and their part in determining the political patterns. The Northern Rhodesian plural society of 1914 which he analyzes in his last chapter reveals the complex interaction between the differing types of both European and African societies.

Mr. Gann is now Director of the National Archives of Rhodesia and Nyasaland. The Cape Town bookdealer Struik has announced (May 1962) that he now has in preparation a detailed *History of Northern Rhodesia: 1891-1953*.

1624. GELFAND, MICHAEL. *Northern Rhodesia in the days of the Charter*. Oxford, Blackwell, 1961. 291 p. illus. DT963.G4

Medical and social study of the life and health of the early missionaries and pioneers. Dr. Gelfand's other works include *Livingstone the Doctor, His Life and Travels: A Study in Medical History* (Oxford, Blackwell, 1957. 333 p.), and books on Southern Rhodesia.

1625. HOWARTH, DAVID. *Shadow of the dam*. London, Collins, 1961. 191 p. DT948.H65

Popular account of the forced migration of the 35,000 Tonga tribesmen displaced to make room for the Kariba Dam, including the unhappy "battle" when the Tonga resisted. For the isolated and "unspoiled" tribe, to whom the dam showed no prospects of being of any use, "Nobody could right the wrong; all that anyone could do was patch the damage."

1626. LAWMAN, TONY. *The long grass*. London, R. Hale, 1958. 185 p. illus. DT963.L37

Personal narrative of a District Officer, including bits on local history and conditions among many anecdotes of wild life and African ways.

1627. WATSON, Sir MALCOLM. *African highway; the battle for health in Central Africa*. London, Murray, 1953. 294 p. illus., maps. RA552.C4W3

The Director of the Ross Institute and the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine tells the story of work against malaria and other tropical dis-

eases in the Copper Belt of Northern Rhodesia. Chapters are contributed by drainage specialists who explain techniques used. The second part, "African Village," describes the advances in hygiene being made through drainage systems, "dambos" (dams at head of swamps) and water development. The Ross Institute, which was founded by Sir Ronald Ross in 1928, had been asked to help by Mr. A. C. Beatty and his colleagues of the Northern Rhodesia Copper Mines.

## POLITICS AND ECONOMICS

1628. BANCROFT, JOSEPH A. *Mining in Northern Rhodesia*: a chronicle of mineral exploration and mining development; arranged and prepared by T. D. Guernsey. London, British South Africa Co., 1961. 174 p. illus. DLC

Available for free distribution from the company. The author is a geologist who has carried out surveys for the Canadian government.

1629. DAVIDSON, JAMES W. *The Northern Rhodesian Legislative Council*. London, Faber & Faber, 1948. 150 p. map. (Studies in colonial legislatures, v. 3) JQ2854.D3

A study in the Nuffield College series edited by Margery Perham, examining in detail the constitutional evolution of Northern Rhodesia after 1924 when the British South Africa Company turned its administration over to the Colonial Office. The writer's particular attention was to the comparative degree of representation of African interests, white settlers, and officials in the Legislative Council.

1630. GT. BRIT. Commission on Financial and Economic Position of Northern Rhodesia. *Report of the Commission appointed to enquire into the financial and economic position of Northern Rhodesia*. A. Pim and S. Milligan, commissioners. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1938. 394 p. maps, tables. (Colonial no. 145) HC517.R42A5

During the thirties extensive economic surveys of colonial territories were carried out by special Commissions for the Colonial Office. Sir Alan W. Pim, who had retired from the Indian Civil Service in 1930, headed a number of these, including the surveys of Zanzibar and the High Commission Territories, Kenya, and last, in 1937, Northern Rhodesia. The detailed report is basic to later British surveys, including the so-called Bledisloe Report (Gt. Brit. Rhodesia-Nyasa-

land Royal Commission. *Report*, London, 1939. 283 p. Comd. 5949), which examined the proposals for uniting the three territories. Its recommendations, like those of an earlier Commission in 1927, were against political union but for a larger measure of economic federation, with creation of an Inter-Territorial Council (which was set up in March 1945).

In 1938 Sir Alan Pim summarized *The Financial and Economic History of the African Tropical Territories* in the Beit lecture series at Oxford, published by the Clarendon Press (1940. 234 p.).

1631. KAUNDA, KENNETH. *Zambia shall be free*; an autobiography. New York, Praeger, 1963. 202 p. (Books that matter) DT963.K3

The leader of the United National Independence Party (UNIP) of Northern Rhodesia, who in early 1963 is Minister of Local Government, has followed the example of other African statesmen and written his autobiography. It is concomitantly the history of Northern Rhodesia's political and constitutional development.

1632. MORRIS, COLIN M. *The hour after midnight*; a missionary's experiences of the racial and political struggle in Northern Rhodesia. London, Longmans, Green, 1961. 168 p.

By a Methodist minister of the Free Church in Chin-gola, Northern Rhodesia, a strong advocate of African rights. In his earlier *Out of Africa's Crucible; Sermons from Central Africa* (London, Lutterworth Press, 1960. 128 p.), he spoke out forthrightly in several sermons against any doctrine of white supremacy. *The Hour after Midnight* was reviewed in the *Times Literary Supplement*, Nov. 24, 1961, p. 848.

1633. RHODESIA, NORTHERN. Dept. of Agriculture. *Report of a soil and land-use survey, Copper-belt, Northern Rhodesia*. Lusaka, 1956. xii, 190 p. illus., maps, tables. S471.R48A54

An extensive study of European agriculture in the area which, with its commercial center at Ndola, contains four of the largest copper mines in the world. The work begins with geographical background, reports on soil, and vegetation surveys. Then comes an economic survey of European farming with notes on market prospects. Section 5 analyzes in detail possibilities for agricultural development, and the last section summarizes conclusions and recommendations. There are appendixes of statistical and other tabulated data, and several folded maps. The introduction is signed by A. T. Wilson, Agricultural Officer-in-Charge.



1634. WOOD, ANTHONY ST. JOHN. *Northern Rhodesia; the human background*. London, Pall Mall Press, 1961. 164 p. DT963.W6

By a colonial officer with long experience in India and other parts of Africa, who found his 3 years in Northern Rhodesia tiring because of the "atmosphere of partly concealed strife, with occasional open conflict." He is sympathetic with the African nationalist cause in his analysis of the "crisis"—the deadlock between Welensky and the UNIP (United National Independence Party).

## ANTHROPOLOGY AND SOCIOLOGY

1635. BARNES, JAMES A. *Politics in a changing society; a political history of the Fort Jameson Ngoni*. Cape Town, New York, Published for the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Oxford University Press, 1954. 220 p. illus., maps, geneal. table. DT864.B3

By a Cambridge-trained anthropologist, this book tells the story over 130 years of one group in Northern Rhodesia of the Ngoni (Angoni), a migrant branch of the Nguni people of Southeastern Africa, which includes also Zulu and Swazi. In the early 19th century the Ngoni fled from the Zulu conqueror Shaka and migrated north across the Zambezi, forming a state which from 1821 to 1898 was "an armed nation on the march." The writer studied its organization and political evolution under colonial administration. Though written from the anthropologist's angle, the work reads as an interesting history. It ends with a long annotated bibliography, p. 173-209.

An earlier monograph by Mr. Barnes was on the modifications of family institutions of the tribe under the impact of the new age, *Marriage in a Changing Society; a Study in Structural Change among the Fort Jameson Ngoni* (Cape Town, New York, Published for the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Oxford University Press, 1951. 136 p. illus. The Rhodes-Livingstone Papers, no. 20).

1636. BRELSFORD, WILLIAM V. *The tribes of Northern Rhodesia*. Lusaka, Govt. Printer, 1957. 128 p. map. DT963.B74

The writer, at the time Director of the National Archives of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, had formerly been a District Commissioner in Northern Rhodesia. This guide was prepared to replace the long out-of-print *Memorandum on the Native Tribes and Tribal Areas of Northern Rhodesia* written in 1934 by J. Moffat Thomson, then Secretary of Native Affairs.

Mr. Brelsford has made use of the extensive research and writing on many tribes since that time. His 22 chapters cover a great variety of tribes and tribal groups, going summarily into their history, ethnic composition, and tribal origins. A large folded map in brilliant colors shows tribes and language groups. Mr. Brelsford has written also a number of studies of individual tribes, some of them published as Papers of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute. The most substantial is *Fishermen of the Bangweulu Swamps; A Study of the Fishing Activities of the Unga Tribe* (Livingstone, 1946. 169 p. illus. R.-L. Papers no. 12).

1637. CARTER, HAZEL. Notes on the tonal system of *Northern Rhodesian plateau Tonga*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1962. 109 p. (Colonial research study no. 35) DLC

One of the series of studies of the tribes displaced by the Kariba Dam project.

1638. CLARK, JOHN DESMOND. *The stone age cultures of Northern Rhodesia*, with particular reference to the cultural and climatic succession in the upper Zambezi Valley and its tributaries. With a chapter on the geology by F. Dixey and appendixes by H. B. S. Cooke, L. H. Wells, and Geoffrey Bond. Claremont, Cape, South African Archaeological Society, 1950. 157 p. illus., maps. GN776.R5C47

See also Mr. Clark's contribution to *Prehistoric Rock Art of the Federation* (no. 1584).

1639. COLSON, ELIZABETH. *Life among the cattle-owning plateau Tonga; the material culture of a Northern Rhodesian native tribe*. Livingstone, Rhodes-Livingstone Museum, 1949. 40 p. illus. (Occasional papers of the Rhodes-Livingstone Museum, n.s. no. 6) GN657.T5C6

1640. ———. *Marriage and family among the plateau Tonga of Northern Rhodesia*. Manchester, Eng., Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Manchester University Press, 1958. 379 p. illus. GN657.T5C63

1641. ———. *The plateau Tonga of Northern Rhodesia: social and religious studies*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Manchester University Press, 1962. 237 p. GN657.T5C64

1642. ———. *Social organization of the Gwembe Tonga*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Manchester University Press, 1960. 243 p. (Human problems of Kariba, v. 1.)

GN657.T5C64

Dr. Colson is recognized as an authority on the Tonga of Northern Rhodesia. (The Tonga of the Thonga group of Central Africa Bantu are also in Mozambique and neighboring regions.) She is currently engaged in studies of the Tonga tribes displaced by the Kariba project.

A second volume of Human Problems of Kariba is published by Manchester University Press, *Ecology of the Gwembe Tonga*, by Thayer Scudder (Manchester, 1962. 274 p. illus., maps.)

1643. CUNNISON, IAN G. *The Luapula peoples of Northern Rhodesia*, custom and history in tribal politics. Manchester, Eng., Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, Northern Rhodesia, by Manchester University Press, 1959. xiii, 258 p. illus., maps, geneal. tables, tables. DT963.C83

Bibliography: p. 244-247.

Study in informal style, with much attention to particular histories and politics as well as to strictly anthropological aspects. Based on fieldwork done by the author as a research officer of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute in 1948-51. The Luapula peoples, a part of the large Bemba-speaking group of Bantu of Central Africa, are in Northeastern Rhodesia, extending over into Southeastern Katanga. The dominant tribe is the Lunda of the Kazembe kingdom.

1644. EPSTEIN, ARNOLD L. *The administration of justice and the urban African*, a study of urban native courts in Northern Rhodesia. London, H. M. Stationery Off., 1953. 124 p. forms. (Colonial research studies, no. 7)

JV33.G7A48, no. 7

1645. ———. *Politics in an urban African community*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Manchester University Press, 1958. 254 p. illus.

HN800.R6E6

Two analyses of urbanization in the Luanshya area, the region of the Roan Antelope Copper Mine. The author, a sociologist from Manchester University, was doing field research with the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute.

1646. GLUCKMAN, MAX. *The judicial process among the Barotse of Northern Rhodesia*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, Northern Rhodesia, by Manchester University Press, 1955. 386 p. illus. DLC-LL

In contrast to the study by Epstein (above), this book by the former Director of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, now Professor of Social Anthropology at the University of Manchester, is on the Lozi courts "at work in the still uncomplicated polity and economy of their homeland." Primarily a study for specialists in the field, there is a story quality in his reports of cases, which have such distinctive titles as "The Case of the Biassed Father," "The Case of the Violent Councillor," "The Case of the Prudish Wife," "The Case of the Underpaid Prostitute," "The Case of the Prince's Gardens." Where possible he draws comparisons with Roman and South African law.

Among Professor Gluckman's other contributions to study of the Barotse was the Rhodes-Livingstone Paper No. 7, *The Economy of the Central Barotse Plain* (1941. 130 p.).

1647. INTERNATIONAL AFRICAN INSTITUTE. *Ethnographic survey of Africa* [series]. London.

No. 2 of the series on East Central Africa, *Bemba and Related Peoples of Northern Rhodesia*, by W. Whitehead and J. Slaski (1951. 100 p.), and nos. 3 and 4 of the West Central Africa series, *The Lozi Peoples of North-Western Rhodesia*, by V. W. Turner (1952. 60 p.), and *The Ila-Tonga Peoples of North-Western Rhodesia*, by M. A. Jaspán (1953. 72 p.), relate to tribes of Northern Rhodesia. For description, see general entry on the series, no. 270. Because of the comparatively early date of these monographs, and particularly because of the important contributions to anthropological study of the territory made in the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute Papers, later material is available.

1648. JONES, A. M., and L. KOMBE. *The Icila dance, old style*; a study in African music and dance of the Lala tribe of Northern Rhodesia. Roo-depoort, Longmans, Green for African Music Society, 1952. 49 p. illus. ML3760.J6

A pioneer study. ". . . Anyone who has attempted to transcribe African music will realise the importance of Mr. Jones' analysis. Here for the first time is exposed with great clarity the structure of the fascinating counterpoint of rhythms which is indeed the heart of African music" (Raymond Clausen in *Man*, v. 53, Sept. 1953, p. 139).



1649. POWDERMAKER, HORTENSE. *Copper town: changing Africa; the human situation on the Rhodesian Copperbelt*. New York, Harper & Row, 1962. 391 p. illus. HN800.R6P6

This American anthropologist spent most of 1953–54 in the newly formed Federation, studying the processes of social change. She was mostly at Luanshya, site of the Roan Antelope Copper Mine, where with student assistants she carried out a survey of daily life and leisure activities. Through the students she was provided with records of conversations around such affairs as a strike, a case of true love, a women's fight. Several chapters analyze leisure time—listening to radio, going to movies, and reading. The book is reviewed in the November 1962 issue of *Africa Report*, also by Gwendolen Carter in *New York Times Book Review* of Nov. 18, 1962.

1650. RICHARDS, AUDREY I. *Chisungu; a girls' initiation ceremony among the Bemba of Northern Rhodesia*. New York, Grove Press, 1956. 224 p. illus. GN483.R46 1956a

The author, a former pupil of Malinowski to whom she dedicated this book, had done anthropological research among the Bemba, the dominant tribe in Northeastern Rhodesia, in 1931 and 1933–34. Her essay on *Bemba Marriage and Present Economic Conditions* was published as the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute Paper No. 4 (Livingstone, 1940. 123 p.). After holding lectureships at the London School of Economics and the University of the Witwatersrand, Dr. Richards has more recently been Director of the East African Institute of Social Research. This study of the girls' puberty rites which she had witnessed a quarter century before is written to interest specialist and layman alike.

1651. ———. *Land, labour and diet in Northern Rhodesia*. London, New York, Published for the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures by Oxford University Press, 1939. 415 p. tables, maps. Reprint 1961. GN652.B4R5

This study and Dr. Richards' paper on *Bemba Marriage* served, according to the late Godfrey Wilson, at that time Director of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, "to make the present social organization of the Bemba better understood than that of any other tribe of Central Africa." Like the later *Chisungu*, they are written in a style both comprehensible and interesting to the layman. *Land, Labour and Diet in Northern*

*Rhodesia* was reprinted with an additional introduction in 1961.

1652. SMITH, EDWIN W., and ANDREW MURRAY DALE. *The Ila-speaking people of Northern Rhodesia*. London, Macmillan, 1920. 2 v. GN657.I4S56

The Rev. Dr. Smith went in 1902 from missionary work in South Africa to Northern Rhodesia, where he pioneered at the Kasenga Mission among the tribes whom he describes in this anthropological study. His collaborator was a magistrate in the South Africa Company, which controlled the territory till 1924, when it was taken over by the British Crown. During the course of his missionary work, Dr. Smith had reduced the Ila language to writing.

1653. TURNER, V.W. *Schism and continuity in an African society; a study of Ndembu village life*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, Northern Rhodesia, by Manchester University Press, 1957. xxiii, 348 p. plates, maps, geneal. tables, tables.

Bibliography: p. 332–335.

Reviewed by A. I. Richards in *Africa*, January 1960 (p. 88–90), as "of considerable interest to the professional anthropologist, both as an expression of some current trends in anthropological thinking and as a new experiment in the handling of ethnographic data." Two earlier studies by this scholar were of monograph length: *Lunda Rites and Ceremonies* (Livingstone, Rhodes-Livingstone Museum, 1953. 56 p. Occasional papers, n.s. no. 10); and *Ndembu Divination; Its Symbolism and Techniques* (Manchester, Manchester University Press, 1961. 85 p. Rhodes-Livingstone Papers, no. 31).

1654. WATSON, WILLIAM. *Tribal cohesion in a money economy; a study of the Mambwe people of Northern Rhodesia*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, Northern Rhodesia by Manchester University Press, 1958. xxiii, 246 p. plates, diags., tables. GN657.M16W3

Bibliography: p. 229–233.

1655. WHITE, CHARLES M. N. *An outline of Luvala social and political organization*. Manchester, Published on behalf of Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Manchester University Press, 1960. 51 p. illus. (The Rhodes-Livingstone papers, no. 30)

GN657.R4W48 1960

# Nyasaland

1656. CHADWICK, OWEN. *Mackenzie's grave*. London, Hodder & Stoughton, 1959. 254 p.  
BV3625.N82C5

Study of the great bishop of Nyasaland who pioneered with Livingstone. Heavily based on archival records.

1657. CLUTTON-BROCK, GUY. *Dawn in Nyasaland*. London, Hodder & Stoughton, 1959. 192 p.  
map. DT862.C55

Mr. Clutton-Brock, an agricultural missionary and a vigorous fighter for African rights in a multiracial society, established and was until its suppression in 1959 director of the experimental interracial farm, St. Faith's Mission, in Southern Rhodesia. This book is an account of awakening African nationalism.

1658. DEBENHAM, FRANK. *Nyasaland, the Land of the Lake*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1955. 239 p. illus. (The Corona library 3)  
DT858.D4

One of a series sponsored by the Colonial Office, "to be authoritative and readable, and to give a vivid yet accurate picture." This descriptive survey of Nyasaland is by a noted Cambridge geographer. For many years an authority on polar research, Professor Debenham in 1948 turned to the tropics and prepared a report on the water resources of East and Central Africa. His book has as background four trips to Nyasaland. The writer envisioned the future of the territory, with its tremendous water resources, as another TVA.

A more technical publication by Professor Debenham covering the results of one of his trips was his *Study of an African Swamp; Report of the Cambridge University Expedition to the Bangweulu Swamps, Northern Rhodesia, 1949* (London, Pub. for the Govt. of Northern Rhodesia by H.M. Stationery Off., 1952. 88 p. illus.).

1659. GT. BRIT. Colonial Office. *Nyasaland: report for the year . . .* London, H.M. Stationery Office, annual. DT862.A55

The 1960 Report on Nyasaland, published in mid-1961, has 199 pages. It begins with a chronology and general review of the year's events, then carries systematic surveys of political and economic aspects, geography, history, and administrative organization. A long reading list, classified by discipline, fills almost 20 pages, 4 of which are devoted to official publications of Nyasaland, the Federation, and the British Government.

1660. GT. BRIT. Nyasaland Commission of Inquiry. *Report*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1959. 146 p. maps. (Cmnd 814).

DT862.G75

The "Devlin Report," by the Commission appointed to inquire into causes of the riots of January and February 1959.

1661. HAZLEWOOD, ARTHUR, and P. D. HENDERSON. *Nyasaland: the economics of federation*. Oxford, Blackwell, 1960. 91 p.

Reprinted from the *Bulletin* of the Oxford University of Statistics, v. 22, no. 1. HC10.085, v. 22

A short statistical survey by two Oxford economists. The conclusion they reach is the opposite of that of the Monckton Report (no. 1608); they find that federation has not accomplished the economic advantages claimed.

1662. KAMBALAME, JOHN, C. P. CHIDZALO, and J. W. M. CHADANGALARA. *Our African way of life*. Tr. and edited with preface by Cullen Young and Hastings Banda. London, United Society for Christian Literature, 1946. 152 p.

DT864.K3

The International African Institute for some years offered prizes for native writing, and this set of essays won the awards for 1943-44. The writers are from Nyasaland, their language Nyanja (the language of the people of the Lake). The first, who sent his manuscript from Ceylon where he was in a Nyasaland regiment, gave a general description of life of the Chewa people, who, with the Ngoni, live about the Great Lake. The second, a clerk in a District Commissioner's Office, described "Getting Married," the third, a villager, told stories of native life in anecdotal form. The preface described in general terms the country and its culture. Dr. Banda, the President of the Malawi Congress Party and leader of the Nyasaland independence movement, was at that time practicing medicine in England and had become an Elder of the Church of Scotland.

An earlier prize award for biography was given to Samuel Ntara for his life-story of an African villager, *Man of Africa*, which was translated and arranged from the original Nyanja by Cullen Young and published by the Religious Tract Society (London, 1934, 181 p.). The writer, a Nyasaland teacher, set his tale in Southern Rhodesia.



1663. MACKENZIE, DUNCAN R. *The spirit-ridden Konde: a record of the interesting but steadily vanishing customs and ideas gathered during 24 years' residence amongst these shy inhabitants of the Lake Nyasa region, from witch-doctors, diviners, hunters, fishers and every native source.* London, Seeley, Service, 1925. 318 p. illus., map. DT864.M3

A famous study by a missionary anthropologist.

1664. MAIR, LUCY P. *The Nyasaland elections of 1961.* London, University of London, Athlone Press, published for the Institute of Commonwealth Studies, 1962. 86 p. (University of London, Institute of Commonwealth Studies. Commonwealth papers, 7)

JQ2941.A956M2

Reviewed in *West Africa* (May 26, 1962, p. 575) as "fascinating reading."

1665. MITCHELL, J. CLYDE. *The Yao village; a study in the social structure of a Nyasaland tribe.* Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, by Manchester University Press, 1956. xviii, 235 p. illus., maps, diagrs., tables. DT429.M5

Bibliography: p. 224-227.

Based on field work by this sociologist as a research officer of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute in 1946-49 among this tribe of southern Nyasaland.

1666. NYASALAND. *The Southworth Commission report, 1960.* Zomba, Govt. Printer, 1960. 126 p. DT865.B5A55

Frederick Southworth was Commissioner for this inquiry into the "incident" in Blantyre on Jan. 26, 1960, when a demonstration by the African National Congress for the visiting British Prime Minister, Mr. Macmillan, was broken up by police and reported in London newspapers as a riot.

1667. NYASALAND. Committee of Inquiry into African Education. *Report.* Zomba, Govt. Printer, 1962. 362 p. LC2808.N9A49

Not yet available for examination.

1668. READ, MARGARET. *Children of their fathers; growing up among the Ngoni of Nyasaland.* New Haven, Yale University Press, 1960. 176 p. GN482.R4 1960

1669. ———. *The Ngoni of Nyasaland.* London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1956. 212 p. DT864.R4

Before heading the Department of Education in Tropical Areas in the London University Institute of Education (1940-55), Dr. Read had done field work as a Research Fellow of the International African Institute in Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland. These two interpretations of Ngoni life are written with a minimum of technical language.

1670. RHODESIA AND NYASALAND. *The issue of Nyasaland's secession.* Salisbury, Federal Govt. Printer, 1962. 67 p. (C. Fed. 231)

Federal Government White Paper containing a summary of the documents given by the Federal Ministers to the advisers sent by the British Secretary of State to help in determining the issue. It is summarized in *East Africa and Rhodesia* of Jan. 3, 1963.

1671. RHODESIA AND NYASALAND. Ministry of Economic Affairs. *Report on an economic survey of Nyasaland, 1958-1959.* Salisbury, [1959?] 300 p. maps, charts, diagrs, tables, (Rhodesia and Nyasaland. C. Fed. 132)

J725.R82, no. 132

Survey by a joint Federation and Nyasaland team under the British economist Daniel T. Jack with Mr. R. J. Randall acting as his deputy. The writers of the solid study found evidence conclusive that Nyasaland economic development was being aided by federation. Political considerations do not enter the report. A summary of its conclusions and recommendations was issued by the Nyasaland Government (Zomba, 1960. 49 p.).

1672. SHEPPERSON, GEORGE, and THOMAS PRICE. *Independent African; John Chilembwe and the origins, setting, and significance of the Nyasaland native rising of 1915.* Edinburgh, University Press, 1958. x, 564 p. illus., maps. (Edinburgh University Publications; history, philosophy and economics, no. 8) DT862.S4

Notes and references: p. 439-504. Sources: p. 505-526.

History of the clash of an African church separatist movement with the missions. Reviewed as "magnificent history" by Ian Cunnison in *Africa*, Jan. 1960, v. 30, p. 88-90.

1673. TEW, MARY. *Peoples of the Lake Nyasa region.* London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1950. x, 131 p. maps (Ethnographic survey of Africa: East central Africa, pt. 1) DT864.T4

Bibliography: p. 118-131.

For general note on the series, see no. 270.

1674. VAN DER POST, LAURENS. *Venture to the interior*. New York, Morrow, 1951. 253 p. DT862.V3

This book, which recounts the author's own trip of exploration into the almost unknown mountains and high plateau of Nyasaland, has been highly praised as an inspirational interpretation of Africa.

1675. WILSON, GODFREY. *The constitution of Ngonde*. Livingstone, The Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, 1939. 86 p. (The Rhodes-Livingstone papers, no. 3) GN659.N45W5

Analysis of the traditional and changing political system of this Bantu tribe of the extreme north of Nyasaland.

## Southern Rhodesia

### GENERAL

(including Politics and Economics)

1676. BROWN, KEN. *Land in Southern Rhodesia*. London, Africa Bureau, 1959. 32 p. HD990.R7B7

By a former officer of the Native Agriculture Department of Southern Rhodesia, this analysis condemns the Land Apportionment Act of 1930 as "unjust and indiscriminate . . . in need of urgent change and reform." The Native Land Husbandry Act of 1951 is also discussed as "denying to the African population certain basic human rights."

The Land Apportionment Act was amended in 1960, transferring over a fourth of the land in the European areas to the various areas available for African use (*Statesman's Year Book*, 1962-63). See no. 1684.

1677. CHATER, PATRICIA. *Grass roots: the story of Saint Faith's farm in Southern Rhodesia*. London, Hodder & Stoughton, 1962. 192 p. illus. HD1491.S6C45

Account of the nonracial settlement established by Guy Clutton-Brock, where Europeans and Africans worked together under an African farm manager. Mr. Clutton-Brock was arrested in 1959 at the time of the Emergency, and the farm raided under the accusation of inciting revolt. The venture has since been abandoned.

1678. KANE, NORA S. *The world's view; the story of Southern Rhodesia*. London, Cassell, 1954. 294 p. illus. DT962.K3 1954

Picturesque retelling of history, full of anecdotes and personal stories quoted from memoirs. After the narrative of the Matabele wars and the beginnings of British rule, chapters are given to biographical sketches of Rhodes and other founders. A short final chapter outlines political developments of recent years, end-

ing with the formation of the Central African Federation.

1679. LEYS, COLIN. *European politics in Southern Rhodesia*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1959. 323 p. maps, diags., tables. DT962.L48

Bibliography: p. 313-316. Bibliographical footnotes.

Study by a Fellow of Balliol College who has since been teaching in East African universities. He examined the foundations of European politics, structure of government, composition and living standards of the European population, interests and pressure groups, and the part played by political parties. The work was completed before the election of June 1958, which eliminated the liberal Prime Minister Garfield Todd and assured European control of the franchise, leading directly to the Emergencies of 1959. The results of the election are summarized in a short appendix. The bibliography includes a listing of the more notable constitutional and political documents. A review by Harvey Glickman in *Africa Report* of March 1960 speaks of this book as "a first-rate piece of political scholarship."

The British Socialist viewpoint of the riots and the repressive measures taken by the Governments of the Federation and the states was expressed in a Fabian Society pamphlet by Terence Ranger: *Crisis in Southern Rhodesia* (London, Fabian Commonwealth Bureau, 1960. 39 p. Research series, 217).

1680. NADA; Southern Rhodesia Native Affairs Department annual. Salisbury, 193- DT962.A25

Annual magazine carrying a wide variety of articles relating to the work and experiences of the Native Affairs Department and its charges.

1681. PARKER, FRANKLIN. *African development and education in Southern Rhodesia*. Columbus, Ohio State University Press, 1960. 165 p. (International education monographs, no. 2) DT962.P28



By an American educationalist who had studied at first hand conditions in Southern Rhodesia. He begins with a sketch of history focused on African development, then gives an historical review of African education and a discussion of its problems. Appendixes analyze the present educational structure. Each section is followed by bibliographical notes.

1682. RAYNER, WILLIAM. *The tribe and its successors*; an account of African traditional life and European settlement in Southern Rhodesia. New York, Praeger, 1962. 239 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT962.R3

A combined historical and anthropological study, the first and longest part picturing the former life and culture of the Mashona tribes, the second part a rapid account of European conquest and settlement. The short chapter entitled "Since 1923" is concerned with legislation affecting the Africans (Land Apportionment Act, Land Husbandry Act, Plewman Commission Report), and comes up to 1958. The writer ends with a "Personal View," in which he foresees the passing of power to African hands, to whom the settlers will have brought a new industrialized and eventually prosperous world.

1683. RHODESIA, SOUTHERN. Advisory Committee on the Development of Economic Resources. *The development of the economic resources of Southern Rhodesia* with particular reference to the role of African agriculture. Salisbury, Govt. Printer, 1962. 480 p., maps, diags. DLC

The so-called Phillips Report, by a Committee under the chairmanship of Dr. John Phillips, is announced in the Oct. 25, 1962 issue of *East Africa and Rhodesia*. Extracts from the report appear in this and succeeding issues. The Committee proposed a £34 million plan "for the saving of the natural resources, their amelioration and their steady development."

1684. RHODESIA, SOUTHERN. Select Committee on the Resettlement of Natives. *Second report*. Salisbury, Govt. Printer, 1960.

This report, which recommended amendment of the Land Apportionment Act of 1930 to give a far larger share to the Africans, was analyzed by L. Branney in the *Journal of African Administration* (v. 13, no. 3, July 1961, p. 184-187).

1685. RHODESIA, SOUTHERN. Urban African Affairs Commission. *Report*. Salisbury, Govt. Printer, 1958. 200 p. tables. HD7374.R5A55

This body, under the chairmanship of Robert P. Plewman, studied the housing, wages, finance, and future land tenure of Africans in Southern Rhodesia. There was one African member of the Commission, Mr. Herbert W. Chitepo.

1686. ROGALY, JOE. *Rhodesia: Britain's Deep South*. London, Economist and Economist Intelligence Unit, 1962. 25 p. maps, tables, diags. (Brief booklets, no. 1). DLC

Not available for examination.

1687. ROGERS, CYRIL A., and C. FRANTZ. *Racial themes in Southern Rhodesia*: the attitudes and behavior of the white population. With a foreword by Sir Robert C. Tredgold. New Haven, Yale University Press, 1962. 427 p. DT962.R6

The authors of this study in applied sociology measured and analyzed by advanced techniques the attitudes of Europeans in the multiracial society of Southern Rhodesia. Their findings were that the European population is conservative and would prefer a "bicultural to a uniracial or unicultural society"—according to a reviewer in the *London Times Literary Supplement*, "exactly what you would expect."

The traditional attitude of Europeans in Southern Rhodesia toward the African was given forceful expression in a novel by a well-known writer, Doris Lessing: *The Grass is Singing* (New York, Crowell, 1950. 245 p.). In this connection see also Gann & Duignan, *White Settlers in Tropical Africa* (no. 136).

1688. TOW, LEONARD. *The manufacturing economy of Southern Rhodesia*: problems and prospects. Washington, National Academy of Sciences—National Research Council, 1960. 141 p. tables (Foreign field research program, sponsored by Office of Naval Research. Report no. 10) HD9737.R5T6

Bibliography: p. 135-141.

## HISTORY AND ARCHEOLOGY

1689. CATON-THOMPSON, GERTRUDE. *The Zimbabwe culture*; ruins and reactions. Oxford, The Clarendon Press, 1931. xxiv, 299 p. illus., LXIII pl. on 48 l. (part fold.; incl. map, plans) DT965.Z5C3

Bibliography: p. xix-xxii.

A celebrated study which has set the standard for recent scholarship regarding Zimbabwe. In this connection, see comparative comment by Paver (below).

1690. NORTHCOTT, WILLIAM C. *Robert Moffat: pioneer in Africa 1817-1880*. London, Lutterworth Press, 1961. 357 p.

BV3557.M7N6 1961

Biography of the great missionary of Southern Africa, whom the writer characterizes as "the representative man of the movement of missions which developed out of the religious life and swelling industrial prosperity of nineteenth-century Britain." Less known than his famous son-in-law, David Livingstone, Moffat from his pioneer mission at Kuruman in Bechuanaland launched the missions of Matabeleland which were the first white settlements in Rhodesia.

1691. PAVER, B. G. *Zimbabwe cavalcade; Rhodesia's romance*. With a foreword by Sir Roy Welensky. Completely rev. London, Cassell, 1957. 217 p. DT952.P3 1957

Full account of the famous Zimbabwe ruins, including description, history of their discovery, and review of the theories advanced to date the still mysterious culture. The bibliography (p. 199-205) distinguishes the books and papers supporting the theory of ancient builders and miners from those believing in a medieval Bantu origin. The first theory was advanced by early missionaries and other pioneers from the 1870's on, and most scientifically enunciated by R. N. Hall at the turn of the century. The medieval theory was first stated by David Randall-MacIver in 1906, and adjusted by Miss G. Caton-Thompson. Radiocarbon tests carried out in the fifties suggest confirmation of Miss Caton-Thompson's conclusions, but investigation is still continuing. According to Basil Davidson (*Ruined Cities of Africa*, p. 213), fresh excavations were being carried on by Summers and Robinson (below) in 1958.

Mr. Paver, a longtime resident of Southern Africa who over a 25-year period had founded and directed companies publishing 15 or more African newspapers in South Africa and the Federation, has written recently a study of African and European society and the hoped-for multiracial partnership in the Federation: *His Own Oppressor* (London, Peter Davies, 1958. 235 p.).

1692. RHODESIA AND NYASALAND. Central African Archives. *A guide to the public records of Southern Rhodesia under the regime of the British South Africa Company, 1890-1923*. Salisbury, 1956. xxxviii, 282 p. illus. (part col.) CD2355.R5A55

1693. ——— *Oppenheimer series*. Edited by J. P. R. Wallis [and others] London, Chatto & Windus, 1945+ illus., maps, plans, etc.

A series of reprints of the manuscript journals and other primary source materials relating to the early missionaries and other pioneers in Southern Rhodesia. Unless otherwise specified, they are edited by Mr. Wallis.

1. *Matabele journals of Robert Moffat, 1829-1860*. 1945. DT964.M4M6

2. *The Matabele mission*, a selection from the correspondence of John and Emily Moffat, David Livingstone, and others, 1858-1878. 1945. 268 p.

BV3625.M32M3

3. *The Northern goldfields diaries of Thomas Baines*. 1946. 3 v. DT964.M4B3

4. *Gold and the gospel in Mashonaland*, 1888, being the journals of: 1. The Mashonaland mission of Bishop Knight-Bruce; 2. The concession journey of Charles Dunnell Rudd. Edited respectively by Constance E. Fripp and V. W. Hiller. 1949. 246 p. DT964.M3K5

5. *Apprenticeship at Kuruman*, being the journals and letters of Robert and Mary Moffat, 1820-1828. Ed. by I. Schapera. 1951. 308 p. BV3557.M7A33

6. *The Zambezi journal of James Stewart, 1862-1863*, with a selection from his correspondence. 1952. 276 p. DT861.S8

7. *The Barotseland journal of James Stevenson-Hamilton, 1898-1899*. 1953. 246 p. DT964.B3S68

8. *Southern African diaries of Thomas Leask, 1865-1880*. 1954. 253 p. DT756.L4

9. *The Zambezi expedition of David Livingstone, 1858-1863*. 1956. 2 v. (lvi, 462 p.).

DT731.L773 1956

1694. SUMMERS, ROGER. *Inyanga; prehistoric settlements in Southern Rhodesia*. With contributions by H. B. S. Cooke [and others] Cambridge [Eng.] Published for the Inyanga Research Fund at the University Press, 1958. xviii, 335 p. illus., maps, plans. DT964.I5S8

Includes bibliographies.

Technical report of archaeological investigations of the stone age ruins and terraces in the Inyanga District on the eastern border of Southern Rhodesia. The Research Fund was inspired by the late Dr. Neville Jones, one of the pioneers of Rhodesian archaeology, and financed by subscription. The work was under direction of the author, Curator of the National Museum, and Keith Robinson, Inspector for the Monuments Commission. Sections were contributed by several scholars.



1695. TABLER, EDWARD C. *The far interior*; chronicles of pioneering in the Matabele and Mashona countries, 1847–1879. Capetown, A. A. Balkema, 1955. 443 p. illus., maps.

DT958.T3

Bibliography: p. 429–439.

Story of the pioneers who “unwittingly prepared the way for white dominion in Southern Rhodesia” before 1880—the missionaries, explorers, gold hunters, etc. The chronological account is paraphrased from a great variety of sources, which the author details in an eleven-page bibliography as well as in chapter notes and references. In this connection see also Oppenheimer series (above).

1696. ———, ed. *Zambezia and Matabeleland in the seventies*. The narrative of Frederick Hugh Barber, 1875 and 1877–78, and the journal of Richard Frewen, 1877–1878. London, Chatto & Windus, 1960. 212 p., plates, maps. (Robins series, no. 1)

DT958.T32

First volume of another series based on the archives of the Rhodesian pioneers.

## ANTHROPOLOGY AND SOCIOLOGY

1697. GELFAND, MICHAEL. *Medicine and magic of the Mashona*. Cape Town, Juta, 1956. 266 p. illus.

GN477.3.G4

1698. ———. *Shona ritual*, with special reference to the Chaminuka cult. Cape Town, Juta, 1959. 217 p.

BL2480.M3G4

The author of these two accounts of the rapidly disappearing traditional culture of the Shona is a medical doctor who studied the people of Mashonaland and their *Nganga*, or medicine men, at widely scattered points within a radius of 80 miles from Salisbury. He recorded his facts using, he says, “the same technique that is used in the investigation of a sick patient,” first consulting all around, then making thorough examination of the subject himself, with interpreters who had enough medical training to be interested and appreciative of his approach.

1699. HOLLEMAN, J. F. *Accommodating the spirit amongst some north-eastern Shona tribes*. Cape Town, New York, Published for the

Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by Oxford University Press, 1953. 40 p. illus. (The Rhodes-Livingstone papers, no. 22)

GN486.H6

1700. ———. *Shona customary law*, with reference to kinship, marriage, the family and the estate. Cape Town, New York, Oxford University Press, 1952. 401 p.

DLC-LL

Bibliography: p. 378–379.

Two treatises in the field of comparative anthropological theory. The writer is concerned with the domestic life and ritual of the tribes in the Mtoko district of Mashonaland, Southern Rhodesia.

1701. HUGHES, A. J. B. *Kin, caste and nation among the Rhodesia Ndebele*. Manchester, Published on behalf of the Rhodes-Livingstone Institute by the Manchester University Press, 1956. 86 p. (The Rhodes-Livingstone papers, no. 25)

DT955.H8

Anthropological study of the people better known as the Matabele, including a glance at past history and analysis of groupings, rules, and customs of the nation which still maintains its distinct character.

1702. KUPER, HILDA. *The Shona and Ndebele of Southern Rhodesia*: The Shona, by Hilda Kuper; the Ndebele, by A. J. B. Hughes and J. van Velsen. London, International African Institute, 1954. 131 p. fold. map, tables. (Ethnographic survey of Africa. Southern Africa, pt. 4)

DT955.K8

For general note on this series, see no. 270.

1703. MITCHELL, JAMES CLYDE. *An outline of the sociological background to African labour*. Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia, Ensign Publishers, 1961. 95 p. map.

DT764.B2M5

Series of articles on Bantu life and work, first published in the *Chamber of Mines Journal* (Salisbury), Dec. 1960–Sept. 1961. The accompanying map shows tribal distribution in the Federation. The author, a social anthropologist, is Director of African Studies at the University College of Rhodesia and Nyasaland. His inaugural lecture as Vice-Chancellor in 1959 was on *Tribalism and the Plural Society* (London, Oxford University Press, 1960. 36 p.).

# High Commission Territories

1704. BARCLAYS BANK (Dominion, Colonial and Overseas) *Basutoland, Bechuanaland and Swaziland*. London, 1962. 43 p. DLC  
Slight but useful economic background survey.

1705. DUNDAS, Sir CHARLES C. F., and HUGH ASHTON. *Problem territories of southern Africa: Basutoland, Bechuanaland Protectorate, Swaziland*. Cape Town, South African Institute of International Affairs, 1952. 79 p. (South Africa and the world series)  
DT782.D75

Two colonial officers, Sir Charles Dundas, the former governor of Uganda, and Dr. Ashton, former District Commissioner in Bechuanaland and in 1952 a member of the Native Affairs Department of Southern Rhodesia, here presented succinctly the case for maintaining the High Commission territories under the Colonial Office rather than transferring their jurisdiction to South Africa. Sir Charles examined the history and politics of the three territories, Dr. Ashton factors of population, administration, native authorities and native representation.

1706. GT. BRIT. High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland. *Basutoland, Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland*; report of an economic survey mission. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1960. 555 p. fold. maps, tables. HC511.A4 1960

Includes bibliographies.

By a mission appointed by the High Commissioner in consultation with the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, this is a significant document. The three countries are treated systematically, with chapters for each on political, administrative, and fiscal background, analysis of the economic situation in regard to its chief factors, then a set of technical papers and statistical appendixes. The conclusions and recommendations are given in a short summary that precedes each country section.

1707. GT. BRIT. Office of Commonwealth Relations. *Annual report on Basutoland*. 1946+ London, H.M. Stationery Off. illus. map. (Colonial annual reports) 1959 ed. in 1961. 113 p. DT781.A35

1708. ——— *Annual report on the Bechuanaland Protectorate*. 1946+ London, H.M. Stationery Off. map. (Colonial annual reports) 1959 ed., in 1961. 122 p. DT791.A55

1709. ——— *Annual report on Swaziland*. 1946+ London, H.M. Stationery Off. map. (Colonial annual reports). 1960 ed. in 1961. 107 p. DT971.A33

Until December 1961 the annual reports of the three High Commission Territories were submitted to the Office of Commonwealth Relations by the High Commissioner, who was also High Commissioner of the Union of South Africa. After the Republic of South Africa withdrew from the Commonwealth, the office in South Africa was changed to that of Ambassador, responsible as High Commissioner of the Territories to the Colonial Office. The annual reports will henceforth be published by the Colonial Office. They are in systematic style, containing short summaries of the chief events of the past year, and handbook and statistical information on the territories. They include reading lists citing official publications as well as unofficial writings.

1710. ——— Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland; history of discussions with the Union of South Africa, 1909–1939. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1952. 135 p. map. (Cmd. 8707) DT786.G72

Historical review of the consistent and oft-repeated refusal of the United Kingdom to consider yielding its charge of the High Commission Territories for incorporation in South Africa, “except with the full consent of the peoples concerned.”

In March 1954 Dr. Malan introduced a motion in the South African House of Assembly that negotiations, dropped since 1939, be resumed with Great Britain regarding transfer of the High Commission Territories. In April 1954 Sir Winston Churchill, then Prime Minister, expressed the British position to the House of Commons—that Britain was pledged not to transfer the Protectorates to South Africa until the inhabitants of the territories had been consulted and until the Parliament of the United Kingdom had expressed its views. In 1956, at the Commonwealth Conference, the South African Ministers broached the subject again and received the same answer. Among papers on the question, the following deserve note:

- GREAVES, LIONEL B. *The High Commission territories: Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate, and Swaziland*. London, Edinburgh House Press, 1954. 23 p. DT786.G75

Missionary review of the 40-year debate between the U.K. and South Africa.

- PERHAM, MARGERY F., and LIONEL CURTIS. *The Protectorates of South Africa*; the question of their transfer to the Union. London, Oxford University Press, 1935. 119 p. DT770.P4



The U.K. case presented by Miss Perham, that of the Union by a colonial historian from the Transvaal. TSHEKEDI KHAMA. *Bechuanaland and South Africa*; with an introduction by Margery Perham. London, Africa Bureau, 1955. 20 p. illus. JQ2760.A3T8

Brochure by the African leader, approving the British refusal, but wanting more rights for his people.

ROYAL INSTITUTE OF INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS. Information Dept. *The High Commission Territories and the Union of South Africa*. rev. London, 1956. 36 p. (Its memoranda) JQ1915.R6 1956

1711. HAILEY, WILLIAM M. H., baron. *Native administration in the British African territories. Pt. 5. The High Commission Territories: Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland*. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1953. 447 p. tables. JQ1890.H28, v. 5  
For comment, see no. 96.

## BASUTOLAND

1712. ASHTON, EDMUND H. *The Basuto*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1952. 355 p. plates, map. DT782.A8

Originally presented as a doctoral thesis at the University of Cape Town in 1939, this book was delayed by the war, and subsequently modified and extended to include results of additional field work—notably material gathered in 1949 having to do with the “ritual murders,” which is incorporated in the last chapter on magic and medicine. Dr. Ashton wrote for a general reading public, attempting “an all-round picture of the Basuto as they are to-day.” In studying the culture he had the advantage of having been born and brought up in Basutoland and of speaking the language (Sesuto). He synthesized previous studies, of which he gives a full bibliography (p. 346–349), combining the conclusions of other writers with his own observations during considerable periods of life among the tribesmen.

1713. BASUTOLAND. Government Geologist. *Report on the geology of Basutoland*, by G. M. Stockley. Maseru, Published by the authority of the Basutoland Government, 1947. 114 p. illus., fold. map. QE327.B3A5 1947

Reference to mineral deposits had been omitted in the Pim report (below), and this reconnaissance geological survey was undertaken to repair the omission in 1938–40, although the report, by a geologist seconded from the Tanganyika Geological Service, was not published until after the war. General

conclusions were that possibilities for economic development were strictly limited, the rumors of coal and diamonds inaccurate.

1714. DOUGLAS, A. J. A., and R. K. TENNANT. *Basutoland agricultural survey, 1949–50*. Maseru, 1952. 115 p. illus., fold. maps. S471.B35D6

This investigation, undertaken at the request of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations as the Territorial contribution to the World Census of Agriculture, and welcomed by the Basutoland Administration as a basis for agriculture development plans, was a sampling survey, carefully worked out with expert advice. Part 1 of the report (p. 1–71), is an analysis of design and execution, and has a set of appendixes, photographs emphasizing anti-erosion measures, methodological tables, etc. Part 2, p. 73–115, presents results, largely in statistical tables.

1715. DUNCAN, PATRICK. *Sotho laws and customs*; a handbook based on decided cases in Basutoland together with the laws of Lerotholi. Cape Town, Oxford University Press, 1960. 169 p. DLC–LL

Mr. Duncan, a South African who is known as a Liberal Party leader in the struggle against apartheid, had served as Judicial Commissioner in Basutoland from 1950–52. This study of customary law reflects his experience. Lerotholi was Paramount Chief of the Basuto from 1891–1905, and largely responsible for the establishment of a National Council for the Basuto.

1716. GT. BRIT. Commission on Financial and Economic Position of Basutoland. *Report*. January 1935. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1935. 225 p. tables, map. (Cmd. 4907) HC517.B3A5 1935

The so-called Pim Reports (see also under Bechuanaland and Swaziland) were carried out under a Commission appointed by the Secretary of State for Dominion Affairs, with Sir Alan W. Pim as Commissioner. Their far from favorable findings and conclusions were briefly stated in a five-page aide-mémoire, *High Commission Territories in South Africa* (Cmd. 4948), given to the Prime Minister of the Union, General Hertzog, in May 1935, in connection with the latter's proposals for transfer of the territories to South African jurisdiction.

1717. GT. BRIT. Office of Commonwealth Relations. *Basuto medicine murder*; a report on the recent outbreak of “diretlo” murders in Basutoland, by G. I. Jones. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1951. 104 p.

An anthropologist's study of the case, much cited by the European advocates of "gradualism" in the advancement of Africans, of murders in which various Basuto leaders were implicated. A number of them were "educated," a number were Christian. The purpose of the ritual murders was to obtain human ingredients for witch doctor medicine.

A moving novel, *Blanket Boy*, by Peter Lanham, pseudonym of C. J. L. Parker (New York, Crowell, 1953. 309 p.), is based on an original story by A. S. Mopeli-Paulus; the co-author is a Basuto chieftain, and the story is told in an approximation of his language. It concerns a tribesman who passes through many adventures after he leaves his home for the city, and is finally involved in the ritual murders. Despite its melodramatic character, the tale is convincing.

1718. LAGDEN, Sir GODFREY. *The Basutos: the mountaineers and their country; being a narrative of events relating to the tribe from its formation early in the 19th century to the present day.* London, Hutchinson, 1909. 2 v. illus., map. DT782.L2

Long and informative political history from British sources by a former Resident Commissioner, which was for many years a standard work.

Outlines of Basuto history are included with sketches of present-day conditions in a popular book by the South African journalist Eric Rosenthal, *African Switzerland: Basutoland of Today* (London, Cape Town, Hutchinson, 1949. 255 p. illus.).

1719. SHEDDICK, VERNON G. J. *Land tenure in Basutoland.* London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1954. 196 p. illus., fold. maps. (Colonial research studies, no. 13) JV33.G7A48, no. 13

Under Colonial Social Science Research Council auspices, Dr. Sheddick conducted a full field survey of the historical and current position of land tenure in Basutoland, the Paramount Chief having assented on the understanding that no immediate changes would be made. The technical paper covered social aspects, practices in settlement, agriculture, and animal husbandry, administrative and legal considerations. The conclusion analyzed land shortage in Basutoland, with suggestions as to remedies. The High Commission Administration cooperated with Dr. Sheddick in his investigations, but inserted at the end of the report their disapproval of certain of the conclusions which they felt to be adverse reflections on their work.

1720. ——— *The Southern Sotho.* London, International African Institute, 1953. 87 p. map. (Ethnographic survey of Africa. Southern Africa, pt. 2) DT786.S515

See general note on the series, no. 270.

1721. TYLDEN, G. *The rise of the Basuto.* Cape Town, Juta, 1950. 270 p. illus., maps.

DT782.T9

Bibliography: p. 241–246.

The most extensive modern history available of the Basuto nation and its welding together by the great chief Moshoeshoe (or Moshesh). The author has made use of many 19th-century journals and other sources, including the three volumes of *Basutoland Records* collected and published by George McC. Theal (Cape Town, 1883).

Interest in the older records is being shown recently in the issuance of several items by the Library of the University of Cape Town in the Willem Hiddingh Reprint Series: e.g., no. 8, *History of the Basutos of South Africa*, by the Special Commissioner of the Cape Argus (Cape Town, Cape Argus Office, 1857. 143 p.), and no. 12, James C. Macgregor, *Basuto Traditions; Being a Record of the Traditional History of the more Important of the Tribes which Form the Basuto Nation of To-Day up to the Time of Their being Absorbed* (Cape Town, 1905. 67 p.).

## BECHUANALAND

1722. BENSON, MARY. *Tshekedi Khama.* London, Faber & Faber, 1960. 318 p. illus.

DT795.T75B4

Full and admiring biography of the distinguished African statesman of the Bamangwato royal family, who acted as regent during the minority of his nephew Seretse and for the term of the latter's exile after his marriage to an English girl. The book was reviewed by Colin Legum as "the finest biography of an African leader that has yet been written" (*International Affairs*, v. 38, January 1962, p. 89).

A biographical sketch relying heavily on quotations from Tshekedi's own speeches was written shortly after his death by one of his countrymen, S. M. Gabatshwana: *Tshekedi Khama of Bechuanaland; Great Statesman and Politician* (Cape Town, Oxford University Press, 1961. 69 p.). A biography in more popular style about the father of Tshekedi, who became a Christian, resisted attacks of the Matabele and incursions of the Boers, and brought his kingdom under the protection of the British Empire, was written by the South African journalist Julian Mockford: *Khama, King of the Bamangwato* (London, J. Cape, 1931. 322 p.). In 1950, after the exile of Chief Seretse, Mr. Mockford incorporated this in another book, with additional chapters to give the later story of the dynasty: *Seretse Khama and the Bamangwato* (London, New York, Staples Press, 1950. 231 p.). A more sensational account of the Seretse case was written in 1955, before the chief's return to his country: John Redfern, *Ruth and Seretse: A Very Disreputable Transaction* (London, Gollancz, 1955. 224 p.).



1723. BENT, R. ALAN R. *Ten thousand men of Africa*; the story of the Bechuanaland pioneers and gunners, 1941-46. London, Published for the Bechuanaland Govt. by H.M. Stationery Off., 1952. 128 p. illus.

DT766.99.B4B4

The tribesmen of Bechuanaland and Basutoland volunteered on a proportionately large scale during the Second World War, and did notable service in many theatres. This official publication is the relation for the Bechuanaland forces.

A comparable pamphlet by Brian Gray, *Basuto Soldiers in Hitler's War*, was published by the Basutoland Government (Maseru, 1953. 98 p.).

1724. BROWN, JOHN TOM. *Among the Bantu nomads*: a record of 40 years spent among the Bechuana, a numerous and famous branch of the central South African Bantu, with the first full description of their ancient customs, manners and beliefs. London, Seeley, Service, 1926. 272 p. illus., map. DT791.B7

The writer was a missionary among the Bechuana from 1885 until 1924, dying the year before his book was published. The anthropologist A. R. Radcliffe-Brown, writing the preface, paid him tribute as one of those missionaries who have collected "by far the greatest part of the information about native life that we now possess."

1725. DEBENHAM, FRANK. *Kalahari sand*. London, Bell, 1953. 189 p. illus. DT995.K2D4

Narrative of journeying in the Kalahari Desert of Bechuanaland and Southwest Africa, the home of the remaining tribes of Bushmen and Berg Damara. Professor Debenham described the strange natural scene and the ways and manners of the shy peoples, bringing in notes of past and present history together with his personal record of incidents. In the last chapter he made observations regarding water resources, the study of which had occasioned his expedition.

1726. GT. BRIT. Commission on Financial and Economic Position of Bechuanaland Protectorate. *Report*. March 1933. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1933. 194 p. tables, map. (Cmd. 4368) HC517.B4A5 1933

Sir Alan W. Pim, chairman.

For note on the so-called Pim Reports, see under Basutoland, no. 1716.

1727. MACKENZIE, LEONARD A. *Report on the Kalahari expedition 1945*. Being a further investigation into the water resources of the Kalahari and their relationship to the climate of South Africa. Pretoria, Govt. Printer, 1946. 35 p. fold. maps.

GB1365.M3

This expedition conducted under the Ministry of Lands and with participation of South African Members of Parliament was an attempt by hydrographic engineers to prove or disprove the much-discussed theory of Professor E. H. L. Schwarz, who in 1919 published a treatise, *The Kalahari, or Thirstland Redemption* (Oxford University Press, 1920), in which he suggested that restoration of the Kalahari lakes would check erosion and bring back fertility to the desiccated region. An earlier reconnaissance made in 1925 had reached the same conclusions, that the "Schwarz Scheme" was incapable of fulfillment, and that development of the Kalahari water resources would have little or no effect on the climate. The only solutions the investigators saw would be in extensive and very costly irrigation and afforestation projects, possibilities for which they analyzed. The report is accompanied by technical photographs and sketch maps in folded page spreads.

1728. SCHAPER, ISAAC. *The ethnic composition of the Tswana tribes*. London, London School of Economics and Political Science, 1952. 133 p. (Monographs on social anthropology, 11) DT797.S33

1729. ——— *Handbook of Tswana law and custom*. 2d ed. London, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1955. 328 p. map. geneal. tables. DLC-LL

1730. ——— *Married life in an African tribe* [the Bakgatla] London, Faber & Faber, 1940. 364 p. GN478.S35 1940

1731. ——— *Migrant labour and tribal life*, a study of conditions in the Bechuanaland Protectorate. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1947. 248 p. map. HD5856.B4S3

1732. ——— *Native land tenure in the Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Lovedale, South Africa, Lovedale Press, 1943. 283 p. illus., maps. HD988.B4S35

1733. ——— *The Tswana*. London, International African Institute, 1953. 80 p. map. (Ethnographic survey of Africa. Southern Africa, pt. 3) DT797.S37

Of the many reports and papers on the Tswana, the Bakgatla, and other tribes, and ethnographical studies of the Bechuanaland Protectorate by Professor Schapera, the books cited above are among the most substantial. Longer lists of his writings will be found in his *Select Bibliography of Native Life and Problems* (no. 1766) and in the reading list in the *British Annual Report* (no. 1708).

1734. SILLERY, A. *The Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Cape Town, New York, Oxford University Press, 1952. 236 p. maps, tables. DT791.S5

Bibliography: p. 219–222.

1735. ——— *Sechele; the story of an African chief*. Oxford, G. Ronald, 1954. 224 p. illus. DT795.S35S5

The author, who retired in 1950 after 4 years as Resident Commissioner in Bechuanaland, says he wrote his first book because he had been unable to find a full account of the history of the Protectorate in a single work. He had made a careful study of many sources. His somewhat pedestrian text is in three parts, first an overall historical sketch from the beginning of the 19th century through the Second World War, then the history, “part traditional and part factual,” of the separate tribes. Part 3 describes the present state of the Protectorate. The second work, *Sechele*, is the life story of the Kwenā chief whose 80 years spanned the chief events of this history, in which he had played a not inconspicuous part. (In the earlier volume, Mr. Sillery gave the chief’s name as Setšhele.)

1736. SMITH, EDWIN W. *Great lion of Bechuana-land; the life and times of Roger Price, missionary*. London, Published for the London Missionary Society by Independent Press, 1957. 444 p. illus., maps. BV3625.B5536

Life of the Welsh missionary who pioneered in Bechuanaland, arriving at Moffat’s Kuruman station in 1858. The title is from the name given Price by the Africans, “first for his shaggy beard but chiefly for his courage and strength of character.” Dr. Smith has made liberal use of extracts from the primary sources—narratives, journals, and diaries of John

Campbell, Andrew Smith, Livingstone, Mackenzie, Moffat, and others. The book is essentially a history of the opening of the country to European influence.

1737. THOMAS, ELIZABETH MARSHALL. *The harmless people*. New York, Knopf, 1959. 266 p. illus. DT764.B8T4

Narrative of an expedition to study the Bushmen in the Kalahari desert in Bechuanaland and the Nyae Nyae desert in South West Africa. The writer was accompanying her mother, an anthropologist, and her brother, who was making documentary films of the few groups of Bushmen whom they were able to find and to spend time with. Although Mrs. Thomas was not herself trained in ethnography, her detailed account of Bushman life is a valued addition to the literature on these elusive primitive hunters, as well as having been on American bestseller lists.

Much of available knowledge regarding the Bushmen is brought together by Dr. Schapera in his *Khoisan Peoples* (no. 1843). Of the older studies, classic works were by Dr. Wilhelm Bleek, a German philologist who came to Cape Town in the 1850’s and began the study of Bushmen languages, and compiled a dictionary, which was completed by his daughter, Dorothea, and Miss L. C. Lloyd. His *Specimens of Bushman Folklore*, edited by Miss Lloyd, was published with original Bushman text and accompanying English translation (London, G. Allen, 1911. 468 p.). *The Bushman Dictionary*, by Dorothea F. Bleek, was brought out after her death by the American Oriental Society (New Haven, 1956. 773 p. American Oriental Series, v. 41).

1738. VAN DER POST, LAURENS. *The lost world of the Kalahari*. New York, Morrow, 1958. 279 p. illus. DT995.K2V3

1739. ——— *The heart of the hunter*. New York, Morrow, 1961. 268 p.

DT764.B8V3 1961

The high literary quality of Colonel Van der Post’s writing, signally recognized in his book on Nyasaland, *Venture to the Interior* (no. 1674), is maintained in these two books concerning an expedition into the Kalahari Desert, mostly in Bechuanaland, to look for, film, and study the few remaining Bushmen. The first is an account of the trip; the second concludes the journey and contains the author’s somewhat mystic interpretation of the Bushman’s soul (Van der Post was a friend and follower of C. G. Jung, to whom the book is dedicated), through Bushman stories, for the telling of which he draws on what he had heard in the desert, on childhood memories, and on the collection of Bushman folklore by Bleek.



## SWAZILAND

1740. COWEN, DENIS V. *Swaziland; report on constitutional reform*. Made on behalf of the Swaziland Progressive Party and the Euraf-  
[Colored] Welfare Association. [?] Swaziland Progressive Party, 1961. 34 p.

DLC

Not available for examination. The author, an eminent South African constitutional lawyer, had been asked to help frame a constitution for Swaziland. His suggestions were rejected by the Paramount Chief and the Swazi National Council.

1741. GT. BRIT. Commission on Financial and Economic Situation of Swaziland. *Report*, January 1932. London, H.M. Stationery Off., 1932. 148 p. tables, map. (Cmd. 4114)

HC517.S9A5 1932

Sir Alan W. Pim, chairman.

For note on the so-called Pim Reports, see under Basutoland, no. 1716.

1742. KUPER, HILDA. *An African aristocracy; rank among the Swazi*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1947. 251 p. plates, map. GN495.5.K8

1743. ——— *The uniform of colour; a study of white-black relationships in Swaziland*. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1947. 160 p. 32 p. of plates.

DT971.K8

1744. ——— *The Swazi*. London, International African Institute, 1952. 89 p. map. (Ethnographic survey of Africa. Southern Africa, pt. 1) DT971.K79

At the time of publication of the first two studies of the people with whom Dr. Kuper had spent 2 years of ethnographical fieldwork, she had been lecturer in social anthropology at the University of the Witwatersrand. (She has since been on the staff of the University of Natal.) *African Aristocracy* is an account of a well-organized society with hierarchy of rank based on birth, evolved by military clans who had taken over and settled a country isolated by mountains. The *Uniform of Colour* is a study of the social evolution of the Swazi under European contact. In the volume for the Ethnographic Survey (see general note on series, no. 270), she has brought together available anthropological data, and includes appendixes of genealogy of Swazi kings and list of chiefs.

1745. MARWICK, BRIAN A. *The Swazi; an ethnological account of the natives of the Swaziland Protectorate*. Cambridge, University Press, 1940. 320 p. DT971.M3

The writer of this study of Swazi culture was not an anthropologist by profession, but an administrator in the Protectorate. His interest was focused on the violence of the changes resulting from the culture contact and the breakup in tribal life and economy that follows when practically all healthy men leave Swaziland to work in the mines.

1746. POTT, DOUGLAS. *Swaziland: a general survey*. Johannesburg, South African Institute of Race Relations, 1955. 44 p. map.

DT971.P6

This pamphlet was the revision of an article that had appeared in the *Race Relations Journal* of 1951 (v. 18, no. 2). It was issued as the first of a series of analyses of the High Commission Territories in the light of South African racial policy. A second pamphlet in 1957 was by Tshekedi Khama: *Bechuanaland, a General Survey* (Johannesburg. 36 p.).

## SOUTH WEST AFRICA

### Bibliography

1747. ROUKENS DE LANGE, E. J., comp. *South West Africa, 1946-1960; a selective bibliography*. Cape Town, University of Cape Town, School of Librarianship, 1961. 51 p.

Z3771.R6

This compilation of 332 references to books, pamphlets, and substantial periodical articles relating in whole or major part to South West Africa complements an earlier publication of the University of Cape Town School of Librarianship, Floretta J. Welch's *South-West Africa; A Bibliography* (Cape Town, 1946. 33 l.), which covered comparable literature from 1919 to 1946.

1748. BALLINGER, RONALD B. *South-West Africa; the case against the Union*. Johannesburg, South African Institute of Race Relations, 1961. 58 p. DLC

1749. DUNDAS, Sir CHARLES. *South-West Africa, the factual background*. Cape Town, South African Institute of International Affairs, 1946. 52 p. (South Africa and the world series)

Writing on the issue of transfer of the South West Africa mandate to the United Nations, which was to

come up at the first General Assembly of U.N. (and was not accepted by the administering power, South Africa), the former Governor of Uganda presented a brief survey of the history, politics, and economic conditions and prospects of the territory, with analysis of the alternatives of the mandate question. Much of his paper is based on reports, especially the so-called van Zyl Commission Report of 1936.

1750. GOLDBLATT, ISIDOR. *The mandated territory of South West Africa in relation to the United Nations*. Cape Town, C. Struik, 1961. 67 p. JX1977.2.A45G6

Essay by a Windhoek lawyer, examining objectively the question of South West Africa from 1919, when it was made a C-Mandate under the League of Nations under the trusteeship of South Africa. He reviews South Africa's *de facto* annexation of the territory and refusal to submit reports to the Trusteeship Council, as well as United Nations action through the October–November session of 1949.

1751. GREEN, LAWRENCE G. *Lords of the last frontier; the story of South West Africa and its people of all races*. London, New York, S. Paul, 1953. 237 p. DT703.G734

By a popular and prolific South African travel writer, this anecdotal book tells about many aspects of South West Africa, its German and post-German explorers and rulers, its strange tribes, its coastal desert, plains, mountains with their Bushman rock engravings, its wild life, its tradition of wars, hunters, heroes, and villains.

Scenes of country and life in South West Africa have been photographed in an album from the Atlantis-Verlag of Zürich, Erna and Helmut Blenck's *Südwest Afrika* (1958. 52 p. 124 plates). Some of the full-page pictures are in color. There are brief introductory notes in English and Afrikaans, and a travel sketch in German.

1752. HINTRAGER, OSCAR. *Südwestafrika in der deutschen Zeit*. München, R. Oldenbourg, 1955. 261 p. DT711.H5

Popular narrative account of the German period in South West Africa, told largely in chapters on individual leaders. Includes chronology, 1841–1915, a long bibliography (p. 240–255), an index of personal and place names.

1753. LEGENDRE, SIDNEY J. *Okovango, desert river*. New York, J. Messner, 1939. 300 p. DT703.L4

This is the account of an expedition into the deserts of South West Africa (the Kalahari region) made by the author for the Academy of Natural Sciences of

Philadelphia. His narrative is on a personal tone, including glimpses of history and of the ways of life of the sparse remaining tribes, interspersed with adventures with lions, and other interesting fauna and flora.

1754. LOWENSTEIN, ALLARD K. *Brutal mandate; a journey to South West Africa*. Foreword by Mrs. Franklin D. Roosevelt. New York, Macmillan, 1962. 257 p. DT714.L6

The personal report of an American who with two companions managed to go into the "closed" area of South West Africa and obtain evidence of conditions and tape recordings of appeals from leaders of the Herero, Nama, and other tribes to the United Nations. In October 1959 they presented the testimony before the Fourth Committee of U.N., together with two Africans from the territory, and the Rev. Michael Scott, who made the formal presentation for the petitioners. The book is addressed to the lay reader.

1755. *The Native tribes of South West Africa*. Cape Town, Cape Times, 1928. 211 p. Plates. GN656.N3

Foreword signed: H. P. Smit, Secretary for South West Africa. Contains bibliographies.

Volume prepared for submission to the League of Nations as a sketch of the tribes in the territory administered by South Africa as a C-mandate. The five main tribal divisions are briefly sketched as to history, customs, beliefs, and manners. Mr. C. H. L. Hahn, representative of the Administration in Ovamboland, wrote the first essay on the Ovambo. The Bushmen were analyzed by Dr. L. Fourie, Medical Officer for South West Africa, and the Berg Damara, the Nama, a branch of the Hottentots, and the Herero by Dr. Heinrich Vedder, a missionary who had lived among and was known as an authority on this tribe. Each section is followed by bibliography.

The standard anthropological work on Bushmen and Hottentots of Cape Province and Bechuanaland as well as South West Africa, is Dr. Isaac Schapera's *The Khoisan Peoples of South Africa* (see no. 1843).

See also studies of the Bushmen of the Kalahari Desert in section on Bechuanaland.

1756. SCOTT, MICHAEL. *The orphans' heritage; the story of the South West African mandate*. London, Africa Bureau, 1958. 24 p. JQ3543 1958 S3

1757. ———. *A time to speak*. Garden City, N.Y. Doubleday, 1958. 358 p. DT779.8.S35A3

The Rev. Michael Scott became known internationally as spokesman before the United Nations for



the native peoples of South West Africa, but he has championed the African cause also in South Africa, the High Commission territories, and the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland. His pamphlet explains the case for bringing South West Africa under the trusteeship system of U.N. His book is autobiographical, and concerned with experiences in all of Southern Africa.

A vigorous account of Mr. Scott's appeal to U.N. for the Herero and Nama in 1947 and his hearing before the Fourth (Trusteeship) Committee in 1949 was written by Freda Troup: *In Face of Fear: Michael Scott's Challenge to South Africa* (London, Faber & Faber, 1950. 227 p.) Mr. Scott's most recent appearance before the Fourth Committee as a petitioner for Southern Rhodesia's leading African party, ZAPU (Zimbabwe African People's Union) on Oct. 3-4, 1962, is recorded in an article on "Southern Rhodesia at the United Nations," by William A. Payne in *Africa Report*, Nov. 1962.

1758. TINDALL, JOSEPH. *The Journal of Joseph Tindall*, missionary in South West Africa, 1839-55. Edited with introd., footnotes and sketch-map by B. A. Tindall. Cape Town, Van Riebeeck Society, 1959. 221 p. illus., ports., map. (V.R.S. 40) DT821.V3, no. 40

1759. UNITED NATIONS. General Assembly. Committee on South West Africa. *Report*. 1st+ New York, 1954+ Issued as Supplements to the Official Records of the General Assembly (GAOR). DT701.V52

After fruitless discussions of the question of South West Africa, both in the Trusteeship Council and

before the General Assembly from 1946 on, this seven-member Committee was established in 1953 to study the question of the area considered by U.N. a trusteeship, but by South Africa a territory under its sole administration, "until such time as an agreement is reached . . ." Year after year the reports present petitions and recommendations including the request that the case be referred to the International Court. For extended summaries of discussions and resolutions relating to South West Africa in the Fourth (Trusteeship) Committee and the General Assembly of U.N., see the annual volumes of the *United Nations Year Book*.

1760. VEDDER, HEINRICH. *South-West Africa in early times*; being the story of South-West Africa up to the date of Maharero's death in 1890; translated and edited by Cyril G. Hall. London, Oxford University Press, 1938. 525 p.

DT711.V42 1938

A standard work on history and ethnology of South West Africa. Maharero was the chief whose death closes the narrative of the resistance of the warlike and almost exterminated Herero tribe against the German colonists who in 1884 had taken possession of the country which the Hereros in their turn had won from the primitive Bushmen and Hottentots.

A two-volume ethnological study, *Die Bergdama*, by Dr. Vedder, was published in German in 1923 (Hamburg, L. Friederichsen. Hamburgische Universität. Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiet der Auslands-Kunde. Bd. 11. Reihe B. Völkerkunde, Kulturgeschichte und Sprachen, Bd. 7).

# SOUTH AFRICA

*Note:* The Republic of South Africa, with its three centuries of white settlement and nearly 20 percent European population, is, regarding its literature, more akin to Western nations than to the rest of Africa. The body of writing in English and Afrikaans is very large, and for many years there have been available bibliographical tools and library guides on the pattern of those of other industrialized countries. Consequently our treatment of South Africa is unlike that for other African countries. The titles here chosen to illustrate certain fields of study with particular reference to the African population are ones that stand out as landmarks in the long lists of writing on South Africa. The bibliographies first described will lead the student to a wealth of sources that we feel make further references here unnecessary. In the same sense, we limit our annotations to the most needed explanation, chiefly with regard to bibliography.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1761. *Africana nova*; a quarterly bibliography of books currently published in and about the Union of South Africa. v. 1, no. 1+ Mar. 1958+ Cape Town, South African Public Library. quarterly. Z3603.A65

"Based on the accessions in the Africana Department, South African Public Library (including material received by legal deposit)."

A national bibliographical serial which supersedes a classified bibliography carried from 1946-57 in the *Quarterly Bulletin* of the South African Public Library. It includes official publications separately listed.

Another national bibliography, *SANB. Suid-Afrikaanse Nasionale Bibliografie. South African National Bibliography*, was initiated by the State Library in Pretoria with a volume covering the year 1959, published in 1960, as an outgrowth of monthly lists of material received by the Library on legal deposit. It is somewhat more comprehensive in coverage than *Africana Nova*.

1762. CAPE TOWN. UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN. School of Librarianship. *Bibliographical series*. 1945+.

Bibliographies prepared as theses by the students on special subjects relating to South Africa, issued in stenciled form and containing a minimum of 150 entries. On many subjects they are the only bibliographies available. A complete list of titles is availa-

ble from the School. The following are typical examples:

- KIERSEN, S. *English and Afrikaans novels on South African history*; a bibliography. 1958. 47 p.  
SAUL, C. D. *South African periodical publications, 1800-1875*. 1949. 210 entries.  
TOWERT, A. M. F. *Constitutional development in South Africa, 1946-1959*; a bibliography. 1959. 36 p.  
USHPOL, ROWSE. *A select bibliography of South African autobiographies*. 1958. 48 p.

Among other publications of the School of Librarianship is a Booklist Series which includes the useful annotated *Guide to South African Reference Books* by Reuben Musiker (2d ed., 1958. 43 p.). A Varia Series has also been begun with a *Preliminary Finding-List of Southern African Pamphlets in the University of Cape Town Library*, compiled by E. S. Roberts (1959. 203 p.).

1763. *Index to South African periodicals*. v. 1+ 1940+ Johannesburg. 1941+ annual. AI3.I65

Issued by the South African Library Association from 1940-42, since then by the Johannesburg Public Library. Format is a fat mimeographed folio volume. Vol. 20, 1960 was published in mid-1961 (413 p.).

1764. MENDELSSOHN, SIDNEY. *Mendelssohn's South African bibliography*; being the catalogue raisonné of the Mendelssohn Library of works relating to South Africa . . . Together with notices of a large number of important works not as yet included in the collection . . . a bibliography of South African periodical literature, and of articles on South African subjects in periodical literature. . . . Also a complete list of the British parliamentary blue-books on South Africa, a cartography of South Africa, etc. London, K. Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1910. 2 v.

Z3518.M4

Reprint. Boston, Canner, 1957. 2 v.

1765. ———. *Annual list of Africana received* (in the Mendelssohn Library) no. 1-9; 1938-1946. Cape Town, Published by the Union of South Africa, Library of Parliament, 1938-48.



1766. SCHAPER, ISAAC, ed. *Select bibliography of South African native life and problems*. Compiled for the Inter-University Committee for African Studies under the direction of I. Schapera. London, Oxford University Press, 1941. xii, 249 p. Z5113.S3.

Supplements 1-2. Cape Town, University of Cape Town. School of Librarianship, 1950-58. 4 pts. in 2 v.

1767. SOUTH AFRICAN PUBLIC LIBRARY. *Quarterly bulletin. Kwartaalblad*. v. 1+ Sept. 1946+ Cape Town. illus. Z965.S767

Journal carrying news notes and articles of library interest, and a long bibliographical section. This comprised a national bibliography until 1958, when it was replaced by the separate serial, *Africana Nova*. The section now carries lists of government publications and supplements to three bibliographies previously published in the Library's series of Grey Bibliographies: *Handlist of South African Periodicals* (1951; edited by C. D. Saul. 54 p.), *Classified List of South African Annual Publications* (1951), as well as the general list for Africa South of the Sahara, *Bibliography of African Bibliographies*.

1768. *Suid-Afrikaanse katalogus van boeke*. South African catalogue of books. 4th complete edition; books published 1900-1950. Editor, N. S. Coetzee. Johannesburg, 195- 2 v. Mimeographed. Z3601.S8

Supplemented by monthly issues and annual cumulation.

## GENERAL

1769. *Africa south in exile* (formerly *Africa south*). Cape Town, London, Oct./Dec. 1956-Apr./June 1961. quarterly. DT751.A28

A magazine of broad general coverage regarding life in South Africa, edited by Ronald Segal. The first three volumes, 1956-59, were published in Cape Town with the title, *Africa South*. It was then banned, but started again by Mr. Segal in London, with the new title. After the third issue of Vol. 5 it was discontinued.

1770. COLE, MONICA M. *South Africa*. New York, Dutton, 1961. xxx, 696 p. illus., maps, diagrs. DT733.C6 1961a

Includes bibliographies.

Contents.—Physical Backgrounds.—The Occupation of Southern Africa.—Water Supply and Irrigation—Agriculture, Forestry, and Fishing.—Mineral Resources and Exploita-

tion.—Power Resources and Manufacturing Industries.—Communications and Trade.—The Bantu Economy and the Bantu Territories.—The Major Regions.—The Population and the Future.

1771. COLVIN, IAN DUNCAN. *Cape of adventure: being strange and notable discoveries, perils, shipwrecks, battles upon sea and land, with pleasant and interesting observations upon the country and the natives of the Cape of Good Hope; extracted from the writings of early travellers*. London, Jack, 1921. 459 p. illus. DT823.C7

1772. MILLIN, SARAH GERTRUDE. *The people of South Africa*. New York, Knopf, 1954. 337 p. DT766.M48 1954

Based on the author's *The South Africans*, which first appeared in 1926.

1773. ROSENTHAL, ERIC, comp. *Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa*. London and New York, F. Warne, 1961. 600 p. illus., part col.

DT752.R59.

Compendium of information, with almost 5,000 items in alphabetical arrangement.

1774. SOUTH AFRICA. Bureau of Census and Statistics. *Official yearbook of the Republic of South Africa and of Basutoland, Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland*. Pretoria, Govt. Printer. DT752.A3

Latest ed. in 1962 is that of 1960, with title, *Official Yearbook of the Union of South Africa* (713 p. maps, tables).

1775. STEVENSON-HAMILTON, JAMES. *Wild life in South Africa*. London, Cassell, 1947. 364 p. maps. QL337.S65S8

1776. TALBOT, A.M., and W. J. TALBOT. *Atlas of the Union of South Africa*; prepared in collaboration with the Trigonometrical Survey Office, and under the aegis of the National Council for Social Research. Pretoria, Govt. Printer, 1960. lxiv, 178 p. maps (part col.) diagrs., tables. G2561.G1T3 1960

English and Afrikaans; added t.p. in Afrikaans.

1777. WELLINGTON, JOHN H. *Southern Africa; a geographical study*. Cambridge, University Press, 1955. 2 v. illus., maps, tables.

DT732.W4

Contents.—v. 1. Physical geography (528 p.)—v. 2. Economic and human geography (283 p.).

1778. *Who's who of southern Africa* (incorporating South Africa who's who and the Who's who of the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, Central and East Africa). 1st ed. 1907+ Johannesburg, Wootton & Gibson. irreg. illus., ports. DT752.S5

Formerly published by Kenneth Donaldson, with title, *South African Who's Who*; title changed with 43d edition, 1959. 1962 edition, 1084 p. (the last 220 pages also separately numbered for Rhodesia and Nyasaland).

1779. *Year book & guide to Southern Africa: Republic of South Africa, Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, South West Africa, etc.* With many colored route maps, town plans and two large folding maps. 1st ed. + 1893+ London, R. Hale. annual.

DT752.Y4

Edited by A. Gordon-Brown for the Union-Castle Mail Steamship Co. 1962 ed. has lii, 736 pages of text, 118 pages of advertising. The introductory pages include indexes of geographical names, subjects, and advertisements.

## HISTORY

(including Archaeology)

1780. AGAR-HAMILTON, JAMES A. I. *The native policy of the voortrekkers*, an essay in the history of the interior of South Africa, 1836–1858. Cape Town, M. Miller, 1928. 228 p. DT731.A35
1781. ———. *The road to the north: South Africa, 1852–1886.* London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1937. 458 p. DT775.A35

1782. AXELSON, ERIC V., ed. *South African explorers*; selected and introduced by Eric Axelsson. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1954. xxv, 346 p. fold. map. (The World's classics, 538) DT731.A79

Dr. Axelsson's other works, concerned chiefly with Portuguese East Africa, are noted under Mozambique.

1783. BREUIL, HENRI. *The rock paintings of southern Africa.* [With the collaboration of Mary Boyle and R. E. Scherz.] London, Published by the Trianon Press for the Abbé Breuil Trust, 1955–1959. [3] v. illus., col. plates, map. GN799.P4B65

Contents.—v. 1. *The white lady of the Brandberg.*—v. 2. *Philipp Cave.*—v. 3. *The Tsiasab Ravine and other Brandberg sites.*

1784. CLARK, JOHN DESMOND. *The prehistory of southern Africa.* Harmondsworth, Middlesex, Penguin Books, 1959. 341 p. (Pelican books, A458) GN865.S5C5
1785. DE KIEWIET, CORNELIUS W. *A history of South Africa, social & economic.* Oxford, The Clarendon Press, 1941. xii, 292 p. diagr. HC517.S7D4
1786. ———. *The imperial factor in South Africa; a study in politics and economics.* Cambridge [Eng.] The University Press, 1937. 341 p. DT775.D4
1787. HANCOCK, Sir W. KEITH. *Smuts: the sanguine years, 1870–1919.* Cambridge [Eng.] The University Press, 1962. 619 p. DT779.8.S6H28

The first volume of a "massive" biography of the great South African statesman who, "the hero of his people in the Anglo-Boer War . . . is now looked upon by many of their descendants as little better than a traitor." The lead review article in the *London Times Literary Supplement* of Nov. 2, 1962, is devoted to this work.

1788. HOFMEYR, JAN HENDRICK. *South Africa.* 2d rev. [and reset] ed. by J. P. Cope. London, Benn, 1952. 253 p. illus. (Nations of the modern world) DT732.H6 1952
1789. KEPPEL-JONES, ARTHUR. *South Africa; a short history.* New York, Hillary House. 3d rev. ed. London, Hutchinson University Library, 1962. 232 p. (Commonwealth history) DT766.K4 1962

Includes bibliography.

1790. ———. *When Smuts goes; a history of South Africa from 1952 to 2010, first published in 2015.* London, V. Gollancz, 1947. 232 p. DT779.7.K46 1947
1791. KRUGER, RAYNE. *Goodbye Dolly Gray, the story of the Boer war.* London, Cassell, 1960. 507 p. illus. American edition, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott. DT930.K8
1792. MARAIS, JOHANNES S. *The fall of Kruger's Republic.* Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1961. 345 p. DT929.M3

Includes bibliography.



1793. MILLIN, SARAH GERTRUDE. *General Smuts*.  
Boston, Little, Brown, 1936. 2 v.

DT779.8.S6M5

Includes bibliographies and reference notes.

1794. REITZ, DENEYS. *Commando; a Boer journal of the Boer war, with a preface by General J. C. Smuts*. New York, C. Boni, 1930. 313 p. (Paper books) DT932.R4 1930

1795. RIEBEECK, JAN VAN, 1619–1677. *Journal; edited and with an introd. and footnotes by H. B. Thom. [Translated from the original Dutch by W. P. L. van Zyl; translation rev. by the editor with the assistance of Victor de Kock and others]* Cape Town, Published by A. A. Balkema for the Van Riebeeck Society, 1952+ illus., maps, facsims. DT843.R513

Contents.—v. 1. 1651–1655.

The Van Riebeeck Society, named for the first Dutch commander on the Cape, has issued its Publications since 1918. The series of substantial volumes reproduce manuscript records. No. 1, 1918, was *Nederlandsche Oost-Indische Compagnie. The reports of Chavannes and his council, and of Van Imhoff, on the Cape*. No. 40, 1959, was *The Journal of Joseph Tindall* (see under South West Africa, no. 1758).

1796. THEAL, GEORGE MCCALL. *Ethnography and condition of South Africa before A.D. 1505; being a description of the inhabitants of the country south of the Zambesi and Kunene rivers in A.D. 1505, together with all that can be learned from ancient books and modern research of the condition of South Africa from the earliest time until its discovery by Europeans*. 2d ed. in the present form (illustrated), enl. and improved. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1919. xx, 466 p. illus.

DT763.T5 1919

1797. ———. *History of Africa south of the Zambesi from the settlement of the Portuguese at Sofala in September 1505 to the conquest of the Cape Colony by the British in September 1795*. 3d ed., carefully rev. and enl. London, G. Allen & Unwin [1916–22] 3 v. plates, maps (part fold.) DT766.T384

Volumes 2 and 3 have title: *History and Ethnography of Africa South of the Zambesi* . . .

Manuscript records of the colony: v. 3, p. 411–418.

1798. ———. *History of South Africa, from 1795 to 1872 . . . with 15 maps and charts . . .* London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1915–16. 3 v. maps (part fold.) DT766.T375

1799. ———. *History of South Africa from 1873 to 1884; 12 eventful years*. London, G. Allen & Unwin, 1919. 2 v. DT766.T377

1800. THOMPSON, LEONARD M. *The unification of South Africa, 1902–1910*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1960. 549 p. map. DT779.T5  
Bibliography: p. 513–527.

1801. VULLIAMY, COLWYN E. *Outlanders, a study of imperial expansion in South Africa, 1877–1902*. London, J. Cape, 1938. 380 p. maps. DT775.V8  
Bibliography: p. 365–372.

1802. WALKER, ERIC ANDERSON. *The great trek*. London, A. & C. Black, 1934. 388 p. 3 maps (2 fold.) (The pioneer histories, edited by V. T. Harlow and J. A. Williamson) DT773.W3

1803. ———. *A history of southern Africa*. 3d ed. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1957. xxiv, 973 p. maps. DT732.W3 1957

Previous editions published under title: *A History of South Africa*.

Bibliography: p. 925–945.

## POLITICS AND RACE RELATIONS

1804. BROOKES, EDGAR H., and J. B. MACAULAY. *Civil liberty in South Africa*. Cape Town, New York, Oxford University Press, 1958. 175 p. JC599.A4B7

1805. CALPIN, GEORGE H. *There are no South Africans*. London, New York, T. Nelson, 1941. 412 p. DT779.6.C34

1806. CARTER, GWENDOLEN M. *The politics of inequality; South Africa since 1948*. New York, F. A. Praeger, 1958. 535 p. maps, diagrs. (Books that matter) DT779.7.C3

Bibliography: p. 491–518.

1807. DE KIEWIET, CORNELIUS W. *The anatomy of South African misery*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1956. 88 p. (The Whidden lectures, 1956) DT763.D4

1808. GANDHI, MOHANDAS K. *Satyagraha in South Africa; translated from the Gujarati by Valji Govindji Desai*. Madras, S. Ganesan, 1928. 511, vii p. DT764.E3G3

1809. HAHLO, H. R. *The Union of South Africa; the development of its laws and constitution*, by H. R. Hahlo and Ellison Kahn with specialist contributors. London, Stevens, 1960. 900 p. (The British Commonwealth, v. 5) DLC-LL
1810. ——— *The new constitution*; with comparative tables of the Republic of South Africa Constitution Act, 1961 and the South Africa Act and earlier provisions and the text of the Republic of South Africa Constitution Act, no. 32 of 1932; being a supplement to "South Africa; the development of its laws and constitution," by H. R. Hahlo and Ellison Kahn. London, Stevens: Cape Town, Juta, 1962. 69 p. DLC-LL
1811. HELLMANN, ELLEN, ed. *Handbook on race relations in South Africa*. Edited by Ellen Hellman, assisted by Leah Abrahams. Pub. for the South African Institute of Race Relations. Cape Town, New York, Oxford University Press, 1949. 778 p. fold. map, diagrs., tables. DT763.H4
1812. HOERNLÉ, REINHOLD F. *Race and reason*; being mainly a selection of contributions to the race problem in South Africa, by the late Professor R. F. Alfred Hoernlé. Edited with a memoir by Professor I. D. MacCrone. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1945. xxxvi, 182 p. DT763.H56
- Should be regarded as a companion volume to Professor Hoernlé's *South African Policy and the Liberal Spirit* published in 1939.—Pref.
1813. KEET, B. B. *Whither, South Africa?* Translated by N. J. Marquard. Stellenbosch, University Publishers and Booksellers, 1956. 96 p.
- Translation of *Suid-Afrika-waarheen?*
- Dr. Keet is a leader of a group in the Netherlands Reformed Church who oppose apartheid as unchristian.
1814. KUPER, LEO. *Passive resistance in South Africa*. New Haven, Yale University Press, 1957. 256 p. illus. DT763.K8 1957
1815. LUTHULI, ALBERT J. *Let my people go*; an autobiography. (Prepared for publication by Charles and Sheila Hooper). New York, McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1962. 255 p. illus. DT779.8.L8H3
1816. MACCRONE, IAN D. *Race attitudes in South Africa*; historical, experimental, and psychological studies. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1957. 328 p. illus. DT763.M26 1957
1817. MARQUARD, LEOPOLD. *The peoples and policies of South Africa*. 3d ed. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. 284 p. (Oxford paperbacks, no. 56) DT753.M37 1962
- "I have borrowed some of my historical material from *The Black Man's Burden*, which I wrote under the pseudonym of 'John Burger' and which was published by Victor Gollancz in 1943." (Preface)
1818. PIENAAR, S., and ANTHONY SAMPSON. *South Africa; two views of separate development*: Safeguarding the nations of South Africa, by S. Pienaar. Old fallacies with a new look; ignoring the Africans, by Anthony Sampson. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. 81 p. illus. DT779.7.P5
- The first writer states the Nationalist case for the Bantustans; the second, the opposition.
1819. REEVES, RICHARD AMBROSE, Bp. *Shooting at Sharpeville*; the agony of South Africa. With a foreword by Chief Luthuli. London, V. Gollancz, 1960. 159 p. illus. DT944.S5R4 1960
1820. ROUX, EDWARD. *Time longer than rope*; a history of the black man's struggle for freedom in South Africa. London, V. Gollancz, 1949. 398 p. front. maps. DT763.R6 1948
- Includes bibliographical references.
1821. SMUTS, JAN CHRISTIAAN. *Toward a better world*. New York, World Book Co., distributed by Duell, Sloan & Pearce, 1944. xxxvi, 308 p. D829.A33S6 1944
- Speeches. London edition, 1942 (Hodder & Stoughton, Ltd.) has title: *Plans for a Better World*.
1822. SOUTH AFRICAN INSTITUTE OF RACE RELATIONS. *Survey of race relations in South Africa, 1951-1952+* Compiled by Muriel Horrell. Johannesburg. 1955+ DT763.S67
- Summary review of developments and trends in legislation, Government action, and opposition. Survey for 1961, published in 1962, 311 p., tables.
- The many publications of the South African Institute of Race Relations include the monthly *Race Relations News* and the quarterly *Race Relations Journal*, as well as printed and mimeographed pamphlet series. The pamphlets vary widely



in size; except for the 1959-60 *Survey of Race Relations* (\$2), the price range is from 10 cents to \$1.00, according to a 1962 Publications Price List. The following are typical pamphlets:

GRUCHY, JOY DE. *The cost of living for urban Africans, Johannesburg, 1959.* 1960. 68 p.

HORRELL, MURIEL. *African taxation—its relation to African social services.* 1958. (Institute fact papers, no. 4. Mimeographed)

——— *Race classification in South Africa: its effect on human beings.* 1959. 79 p.

HOUGHTON, D. HOBART. *Life in the Ciskei.* 1955. 72 p.

Digest of a four-volume research study of a Native reserve, *The Keiskammahoek Rural Survey*, directed by R. Lindsay Robb (Pietermaritzburg, Shuter & Shooter, 1952).

## ECONOMICS AND URBAN SOCIOLOGY

1823. CARNEGIE COMMISSION OF INVESTIGATION ON THE POOR WHITE QUESTION IN SOUTH AFRICA. *The poor white problem in South Africa.* Report of the Carnegie Commission. Stellenbosch, Pro Ecclesia-Drukkery, 1932. 5 v. plates, fold. maps, diagrs. HN800.C3

Includes bibliographies.

Contents.—1. Economic report: Rural impoverishment and rural exodus, by J. F. W. Grosskopf.—2. Psychological report: The poor white, by R. W. Wilcocks.—3. Educational report: Education and the poor white, by E. G. Malherbe.—4. Health report: Health factors in the poor white problem, by W. A. Murray.—5. Sociological report: The poor white and society, by J. R. Albertyn. The mother and daughter of the poor family, by M. E. Rothmann.

1824. FRANKLIN, NORTON N. *Economics in South Africa.* Cape Town, Oxford University Press, 1948. 253 p. diagrs. HC517.S7F74

1825. HOUGHTON, D. HOBART, ed. *Economic development in a plural society; studies in the border region of the Cape Province.* Cape Town, Oxford University Press, 1960. xv, 401 p. illus., maps. HC517.S72C34

Published on behalf of the Institute of Social and Economic Research, Rhodes University. Includes bibliographical references.

1826. HUDDLESTON, TREVOR. *Naught for your comfort.* Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 1956. 253 p. DT763.H8 1956a

1827. LONGMORE, LAURA. *The dispossessed; a study of the sex-life of Bantu women in urban areas in and around Johannesburg.* London, J.

Cape, 1959. 334 p. illus. Paperback ed. New English Library, Mar. 1962. 364 p. (Ace books) HQ18.S6L6

Includes bibliography.

1828. MARAIS, JOHANNES S. *The Cape coloured people, 1652-1937.* Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1957. xxi, 296 p. fold. map. DT834.M35 1957

Notes on sources: p. 287-290. Bibliographical footnotes.

1829. *Natal regional survey.* Cape Town, New York, Published for the University of Natal by Oxford University Press, 1951+ illus., maps, diagrs., tables. HN800.N3N34

General series edited by H. R. Burrows. The following volumes are in print in 1962:

1. *Archaeology and natural resources of Natal.* 1951. 140 p.
2. ALSOP, M. H. *The population of Natal.* 1953. 144 p.
3. FAIR, J. D. *The distribution of population in Natal.* 1955. 99 p.
5. *Electricity undertakings in Natal.* 1954. 100 p.
6. *Baumannville: a study of an urban African community*, edited by the Institute for Social Research. 1959. 79 p.
7. BROOKES, EDGAR H., and NATHANIEL HURWITZ. *The Native reserves of Natal.* 1957. 195 p.
9. WOODS, C. A. *The Indian community of Natal.* 1954. 102 p.
10. PALMER, MABEL. *The history of the Indians in Natal.* 1958. 197 p.
11. *Studies of Indian employment in Natal.* 1961. 167 p.
12. HURWITZ, NATHANIEL. *Agriculture in Natal, 1860-1950.* 1957. 123 p.
13. *Agriculture in Natal: recent developments.* 1957. 205 p.

The Oxford University Press publishes also a series of numbered reports for various departments of the University of Natal, e.g.:

PIETERMARITZBURG. University of Natal. Dept. of Economics. *The African factory worker; a sample study of the life and labour of the urban African worker.* 1950. 221 p. illus., maps, tables. (Durham Economic Research Committee. Report no. 2) HC517.N3D8, no. 2

A comparable series is now being undertaken by the Institute of Social and Economic Research of Rhodes University, Grahamstown, with the title, *Xhosa in Town*. The first two volumes are now in print as follows:

1. READER, D. H. *The black man's portion; history, demography and living conditions in the native locations of East London, Cape Province.* Cape Town, Oxford University Press, 1961. 180 p. HN800.E15R4

2. MAYER, PHILIP.—*Townsmen or tribesmen; conservation and the process of urbanization in a South African city.* Cape Town, Oxford University Press, 1961. 306 p. GN657.X6M3

1830. PATTERSON SHEILA. *Colour and culture in South Africa; a study of the status of the Cape colored people within the social structure of the Union of South Africa.* London, Routledge & Paul, 1953. 402 p. (International library of sociology and social reconstruction) DT763.P35 1953

Bibliography: p. 341–347.

1831. PHILLIPS, RAY E. *The Bantu in the city; a study of cultural adjustment on the Witwatersrand.* Lovedale, South Africa, The Lovedale Press, 1938. xxix, 452 p. 2 fold. tables. DT764.B2P5 1937

Bibliography: p. 394–406.

1832. SOUTH AFRICA. Commission for the Socio-Economic Development of the Bantu Areas. *Summary of the Report.* Pretoria, Govt. Printer, 1955. xviii, 213 p. maps, diagrs. (U.G. 61/1955.) DT990.A52

The original was not printed but presented in type-script on Oct. 1, 1954. Some chapters are in English, some in Afrikaans; the work consisted of 51 chapters comprising 3,755 pages, 598 tables, and an atlas of 66 large-scale maps. A photostatic reproduction is held by the Library of Congress.

1833. SOUTH AFRICA. Geological Survey. *The mineral resources of the Union of South Africa.* 4th ed. Pretoria, Govt. Printer, 1959. 622 p. illus., fold. maps, tables, diagrs. TN119.S7A426

The standard source for geological and statistical information about minerals and mining in South Africa. A narrative account of the discoveries and pioneers of the country's most famous industry is *The Gold Miners*, by Alan P. Cartwright (Cape Town, Purnell, 1962. 340 p. illus.).

1834. VAN DER HORST, SHEILA T. *Native labour in South Africa.* . . . London, Oxford University Press, H. Milford, 1942. 340 p. diagr. HD8799.S7V3 1942

Bibliography: p. 327–331.

## ANTHROPOLOGY, ETC.

1835. *African studies.* 1+ Mar. 1942+ Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1942+ maps, diagrs. quarterly. DT751.A4

Issued by the Dept. of Bantu Studies, University of the Witwatersrand. Supersedes *Bantu Studies*.

1836. BRYANT, ALFRED T. *The Zulu people, as they were before the white men came.* Pietermaritzburg, Shuter & Shooter, 1949. 769 p. illus. DT878.Z9B72

1837. DUGGAN-CRONIN, ALFRED M. [and others] *The Bantu tribes of South Africa; reproduction of photographic studies.* Cambridge [Eng.] Deighton, Bell, 1928+ 4 v. GN657.B2D8

Contents.—v. 1. section 1. The Vavenda, by G. P. Lestrade. 1928.—v. 2. section 1–3. The Suto-Chuana tribes: subgroup 1. The Bechuana, by G. P. Lestrade. 1929.—Subgroup 2. The Bapedi (Transvaal Basotho) by W. Eiselen. 1931.—Subgroup 3. The southern Basotho, by G. P. Lestrade. 1933.—v. 3. The Nguni: section 1. Introductory article on the Nguni, by N. J. Van Warmelo. The Ciskei and southern Transkei tribes (Xhosa and Thembu) by W. G. Bennie. 1939.—section 2. The Mpondo and Mpondomise, by M. Wilson. 1949.—section 3. The Zulu, by D. McK. Malcolm. 1938.—section 4. The Swazi, by H. Beemer. 1941.—section 5. Baza, Hlubi Xesibe, by W. D. Hammond-Tooke. 1954.—v. 4. The Vathonga-Shangaan people): section 1. An introductory article on the Vathonga, by H. P. Junod. 1935.

1838. DU PLESSIS, IZAK D. *The Cape Malays.* . . . With twenty illustrations in color and monochrome after paintings and photographs. Cape Town, M. Miller, 1944. 94 p. col. front., plates (part col.) DT848.C5D8

1839. JUNOD, HENRI A. *Life of a South African tribe.* Second revised ed. London, 1927. Reprint with foreword by Keith Irvine. New York, Hyde Park, New York University Books, 1962. 2 v. illus. GN567.T5J82

1840. KRIGE, EILEEN (JENSEN). *The social system of the Zulus.* London, New York, Longmans, Green; Johannesburg, University of the Witwatersrand, 1936. xix, 420 p. illus., plates, maps. DT878.Z9K7

Bibliography: p. xvii–xix.



1841. ———. and J. D. KRIGE. *The realm of a rain queen: a study of the pattern of Lovedu society*. London, New York. Printed for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1943. 335 p. illus. Reprint 1947. GN657.L6K7

1842. SCHAPER, ISAAC. *Government and politics in tribal societies*. London, Watts, 1956. 238 p. illus. (Josiah Mason lectures) JC29.A32S35

1843. ———. *The Khoisan peoples of South Africa; Bushmen and Hottentots*. London, G. Routledge, 1930. 450 p. xv pl., fold. maps. (The Ethnology of Africa) DT15.8.S3  
Bibliography: p. 439-445.

1844. ———, ed. *The Bantu-speaking tribes of South Africa; an ethnographical survey*, edited for the (South African) Inter-University Committee for African Studies by I. Schapera. Contributors: Raymond A. Dart, Clement M. Doke and others. London, G. Routledge, 1937. xv, 453 p. illus. (music) xxiv plates, double map. DT764.B2S39  
Bibliography: p. 435-444.

Contents.—Racial origins, by R. A. Dart.—Habitat, by A. J. H. Goodwin.—Grouping and ethnic history, by N. J. van Warmelo.—Social organization, by A. Winifred Hoernlé.—Individual development, by Eileen J. Krige.—Domestic and communal life, by G. P. Lestrade.—Work and wealth, by I. Schapera and A. J. H. Goodwin.—Political institutions, by I. Schapera.—Law and justice, by I. Schapera.—Magic and medicine, by A. Winifred Hoernlé.—Religious beliefs and practices, by W. M. Eiselen and I. Schapera.—The musical practices of the native races of South Africa, by P. R. Kirby.—Traditional literature, by G. P. Lestrade.—Language, by C. M. Doke.—The imposition and nature of European control, by J. S. Marais.—Cultural changes in tribal life, by I. Schapera.—The Bantu on European-owned farms, by Monica Hunter.—The native in the towns, by Ellen P. Hellmann.—Index of tribal names.

1845. SOGA, JOHN HENDERSON. *The Ama-Xosa, life and customs*. Lovedale, Cape Province, Lovedale Press; London, K. Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1932. 431 p. illus. DT764.K2S6

1846. ———. *The South-Eastern Bantu* (Abe-Nguni, Aba-Mbo, Ama-Lala). Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1930. 490 p. port., geneal. tables. DT764.B2S6

Special number of *Bantu Studies*. Prefatory pages include a "Biographical Note on the Author," a de-

scendant of Gaika chiefs, educated at Edinburgh, and a missionary in Griqualand. This work is translated from the Isi-Xhosa in which it was written—"the first considerable attempt made by an educated man of Bantu descent and in touch with Bantu tradition, to present the history of his people in one of the most widely spoken Native languages" (Editor's Introduction).

1847. SUNDKLER, BENGT G. M. *Bantu prophets in South Africa*. 2d ed. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1961. 381 p. illus. BR1367.Z8S8  
Includes bibliography.

1848. WILSON, MONICA HUNTER. *Reaction to conquest; effects of contact with Europeans on the Pondo of South Africa*. With an introd. by J. C. Smuts. 2d ed. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1961. xxiii, 582 p. illus., maps. DT764.P6W5  
Reprint of original edition, 1936.

1849. ZIERVOGEL, D. *The Eastern Sotho: a tribal, historical, and linguistic survey* (with ethnographic notes) of the Pai, Kutswe, and Pulana Bantu tribes in the Pilgrim's Rest District of the Transvaal Province, Union of South Africa. Pretoria, J. L. van Schaik, 1954. 215 p. fold map. DT920.Z5

## ARTS AND LETTERS

1850. ABRAHAM, PETER. *Mine boy*. London, Faber & Faber, 1946. 1st American ed., New York, Knopf, 1955. 252 p. PZ3.A1576Mi3

One of the most noted of this African writer's novels. Among the others widely read abroad are *Wild Conquest* (1951); the autobiographical story, *Tell Freedom* (1954); and *A Wreath for Udomo* (1956).

1851. BIESHEUVEL, SIMON. *African intelligence*. Johannesburg, South African Institute of Race Relations, 1943. 225 p. BF432.N5B5  
References at ends of most chapters.

Study of intelligence levels of the native races as shown in education of Africans.

1852. KIRBY, PERCIVAL R. *The musical instruments of the native races of South Africa*. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1953. 285 p. 75 plates, map, music. ML544.K5 1953

Bibliographical footnotes.

1853. MPHAHLELE, EZEKIEL. *Down Second Avenue*. London, Faber & Faber, 1959. 222 p.

Autobiographical.

Reprinted by Seven Seas Books, Glinkastrasse 13-15 Berlin W. 8, German Democratic Republic. Distributor in United States, Jefferson Book Store, 100 East 16th St., New York.

1854. NYEMBEZI, C. L. *Zulu proverbs*. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1954. 238 p. PN6519.Z8N9 1954

1855. PATON, ALAN. *Cry, the beloved country*. New York, Scribner 1960 [c1950] 283 p. (Modern standard authors) PZ3.P2738Cr5

1856. SAMPSON, ANTHONY. *Drum; a venture into the new Africa*. London, Collins, 1956. 256 p. illus. PN5480.D7S3 1956

*Drum* is the magazine for African readers published in Johannesburg, of which Mr. Sampson was editor in its beginnings in the early fifties. This book recounts the experience. Another book in late 1962, *In the Fiery Continent*, by Tom Hopkinson (London, Gol-

lancz, 376 p.), is the story of a later editor who had begun his work in the *Drum* branch offices in Ghana and Nigeria, then went on to South Africa.

1857. SCHREINER, OLIVE. *The story of an African farm*. New York, The Modern Library, 1927. 375 p. (The Modern Library of the world's best books) PZ3.S378St17

1858. TRACEY, HUGH. *African dances of the Witwatersrand gold mines*. Photos. by Marlyn Severn. Johannesburg, African Music Society, 1952. 156 p. illus. GV1707.T7

1859. ———, comp. and tr. *Lalela Zulu; 100 Zulu lyrics*. With illus. by Eric Byrd. Foreword by A. W. Hoernle. Johannesburg, African Music Society [pref. 1948] xi, 121 p. illus. (African Music Society. Publications Book no. 1.) PL8844.A2T7

English and Zulu. Without music.

Index of gramophone records: p. 114-118.



# CONGO (LEOPOLDVILLE)

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1860. ACADÉMIE ROYALE DES SCIENCES D'OUTRE-MER.  
*Catalogue*. 1. oct. 1961. Bruxelles, Librairie africaine Hubaut. 36 p. DLC-AFR

Title also in Dutch.

The Institut Royal Colonial Belge was established in 1929; in 1954 its name was changed by royal decree to Académie Royale des Sciences Coloniales, and in December 1959 to the present form. Its many publications, new series of which are dated from 1954, are listed in this periodically revised catalog which includes items out of print as well as those in stock. They begin with the *Bulletin des séances*, the annual volumes of which, published in varying numbers of fascicles, range from under 500 to over 1,700 pages. Ten-year indexes have been issued, 1930-39, 1940-49, 1950-59. The Mémoires, the titles of which fill 26 pages, are in 3 classes, Classe des sciences morales et politiques, Classe des sciences naturelles et médicales, and Classe des sciences techniques. For each class there are two forms of publication, Collection in-4° and Collection in-8°. The so-called "sciences humaines"—anthropology, linguistics, political, economic, and cultural history—are in the Sciences morales et politiques. The broad sciences of geology and meteorology, as well as botany, zoology, and medicine, are in the second class; and the third includes mines and mining, hydrography, and anything else involving applied sciences. A set of Publications hors-série includes five volumes of *Biographie de l'A.R.S.O.M.* and the various subject maps of the *Atlas général du Congo*. The writings are uniformly of high scholarship. These publications are included also in the official Belgian government list, below.

1861. BELGIUM. Ministère des affaires africaines. (Until 1960 Ministère du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi) *Liste des publications*; lijst der uitgaven. Bruxelles. Latest received, juin 1959. 135 p. DLC-AFR

This periodically revised list covers official publications on the former Belgian colonies, including the many distinguished contributions in the fields of natu-

ral and human sciences appearing in the journals and monographic series of the government-sponsored organizations concerned with the Congo and Ruanda-Urundi. They are listed by agency or institution: the Direction de l'Agriculture of the Ministry with explanation of its serials, the outstanding *Bulletin agricole du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi* and the related *Bulletin d'information de l'INEAC*, then almost 30 pages of separate monograph titles; publications of other branches of the Ministry, including *Bulletin officiel* and *Bulletin administratif*, annual reports on administration, mapping services, etc.; publications of the Institut National pour l'Étude Agronomique du Congo Belge (INEAC), of the Institut des Parcs Nationaux du Congo Belge; the more general works issued by the Office de l'Information et des Relations Publiques pour le Congo Belge et le Ruanda-Urundi (INFORCONGO); the vast list of scientific publications of the Musée Royal du Congo Belge (now Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale); and the above-mentioned list of the Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer.

1862. HEYSE, THÉODORE. *Bibliographie du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi* [Series] 1939+ Bruxelles, G. van Campenhout, 1946-53. Cahiers belges et congolais, no. 4-7, 9-12, 16-22)

Separately cataloged in DLC.

Pamphlets of from 40 to 70 pages (except no. 7, *Agriculture*, which has 160 p.) listing by subject field writings on the Congo from 1939 to the date of publication. An article by Professor Heyse in *Zaire* of June 1948, "Le Travail bibliographique colonial belge de 1876 jusqu'en 1933" (reprint, Bruxelles, Éditions universitaires, 1948. 20 p.), explains sources for earlier writings.

1863. ———. *Documentation générale sur le Congo et le Ruanda Urundi, 1950-53*. Bruxelles, Commission belge de bibliographie, 1954. 31 p. (Bibliographia belgica, 4)

Z2407.B5, no. 4

1864. ——— 1953–1955. Bruxelles, G. van Campenhout, 1956. 56 p. (Cahiers belges et congolais, no. 26) Z3631.H43
1865. ——— 1955–1958; avec la coopération de Jean Berlage. Bruxelles, Commission belge de bibliographie, 1959. 84 p. (Bibliographia belgica, 39) DLC
1866. ——— 1958–1960. Bruxelles, G. van Campenhout, 1961. 96 p. (Cahiers belges et congolais, no. 34) DLC

These general listings of literature on the Belgian overseas possessions supplemented the earlier series of subject lists. The last two were compiled by Professor Heyse with the assistance of M. Jean Berlage, whose own big compilation, *Répertoire de la presse du Congo belge (1884–1958) et du Ruanda-Urundi (1920–1958)* was issued as *Bibliographia Belgica*, 43 (Bruxelles, Van Campenhout, 1959. 193 p.).

1867. LEMARCHAND, RENÉ. "Selective bibliographical survey for the study of politics in the former Belgian Congo." *American political science review*, v. 54, September 1960: 715–728. JAl.A6, v. 54

A bibliographical essay by a political scientist of the University of Lovanium in Leopoldville. Professor Lemarchand includes in his survey important titles for geographical and historical background, the main official publications, works on traditional political systems and customary law, transitional political developments, and the modern political scene, ending with comment on the press. Many of his references are to articles in leading periodicals and in the *Encyclopédie du Congo belge* (see no. 1875).

1868. *Zaire*; revue congolaise; congoleesch tijdschrift. 1947–1960. Bruxelles, Éditions universitaires illus. monthly (except August and September) DT641.Z3

This journal superseded *Congo; revue générale de la colonie belge*, which had been published from 1920 to the outbreak of the Second World War. In addition to notable articles, both reviews contained a regular bibliographical section, carrying extensive classified listings of books and periodical material relating to the Congo. The section was also issued as a separate "Bibliographie courante" by the Ministère du Congo Belge. *Zaire* was terminated in 1960.

A *List of Materials on the Belgian Congo and Ruanda-Urundi* is in preparation by Dr. Philippe Leurquin of the Food Research Institute, Stanford University in 1962–63,

to be issued in the Hoover Institution's Bibliographical Series.

*Note:* The bibliographical guides listed above give indication of the almost inexhaustible wealth of material available for research on the former Belgian Congo and Ruanda-Urundi. In the following sections the references in French represent not so much a studied choice as a sampling of this rich literature, especially as to that which is available in the Library of Congress.

## GENERAL

- ✓1869. AMERICAN UNIVERSITY. Foreign areas Studies Division. *U.S. Army area handbook for the Republic of the Congo (Léopoldville)* Prepared by Foreign Areas Studies Division, Special Operations Research Office, the American University. Washington, 1962. 657 p. maps, tables. DT658.A78

One of a series of country studies being prepared to provide basic factual background for American officers and others having to do with the area. The comprehensive information is presented objectively and concisely, in short paragraphs. The first and longest section, "Sociological Background," covers historical setting, geography, population, ethnological and social aspects, religion, arts, and education. The section on "Political Background" recites events through 1961. "Economic Background" includes labor questions, agriculture, industry, trade, and financial matters. The last section, "National Security," describes the institutions of public order before and since independence and analyzes the character of the armed forces. Each section is followed by a long bibliography.

1870. BELGIUM. Office de l'information et des relations publiques pour le Congo belge et le Ruanda-Urundi [INFORCONGO] *Belgian Congo*. [Translated from the French by F. H. and C. Heldt] Brussels, 1959–60. 2 v. (547, 187 p.) illus., maps. DT644.A4853

This publication of INFORCONGO came out in the original French edition in 1958. The English edition is a faithful translation. Volume 1 is a digest of information on country and people, history, political institutions, judiciary, military, special services, economic life, industry, social development and welfare, etc. Volume 2 contains statistics of every sort; it was forecast that this part would be revised periodically.



1871. ———. *Guide du voyageur*. 4<sup>e</sup> édition, 1958.  
Bruxelles, 1958. 798 p. illus., maps.

DT646.A53 1958

An impressive formal guidebook in which itineraries and detailed regional descriptions are preceded by a valuable set of general articles on history, tribal groups, economic development, administrative setup, and many other phases of life and enterprise in the Belgian colonies. The first edition in 1949 and subsequent editions until 1956 were issued by the Belgian Office du Tourisme du Congo Belge et du Ruanda-Urundi. There have been two editions in English: *Traveller's Guide for the Belgian Congo and Ruanda-Urundi*, 1951 and 1956.

1872. CAHEN, LUCIEN. *Géologie du Congo belge*.  
Liège, Impr. H. Vaillant-Carmanne, 1954.  
577 p. illus., maps, diags., profiles.

QE335.C3

Scientific study by a geologist connected with the Musée Royal du Congo Belge. In the introduction it is spoken of as synthesizing the data published in over 2,000 papers, books, and articles by the first generations of geologists of the Congo. It has no formal bibliography, but each chapter is followed by references to sources.

1873. *Le Congo*. Paris, La Revue française, 1960.  
unpaged. illus.

DLC

Large illustrated pamphlet prepared by this distinguished review, presenting the Belgian accomplishment in the Congo. Published to coincide with independence, much of the material was supplied by INFORCONGO.

1874. DAVIDSON, BASIL. *The African awakening*.  
London, Cape, 1955. 262 p. illus.

DT639.D35

Mr. Davidson's many writings on Africa have been consistently from an anticolonial viewpoint. This work was based on impressions of a visit to the Belgian Congo and Angola. The author dwelt on the background of exploitation of the inhabitants of central Africa from the time of the first Portuguese settlements in the 16th and 17th centuries, through the years of the slave trade and of Leopold's Congo Free State, to the modern Belgian system which he branded as repressive paternalism. He was enthusiastic over the progress in urbanization and industrialization, predicting a social and political revolution to end colonialism.

1875. *Encyclopédie du Congo belge*. Bruxelles, Bielefeld [1950?]-1952. 3 v. illus.

DT643.E5

The Administrator General of the Colonies in his preface spoke of this monumental work as the sum of colonial scientific documentation for a general public. About 50 specialists collaborated to offer a synthesis of all available knowledge about the Congo. The format is handsome, with many photographs and inset color plates. Volume 1 takes in history, ethnology, geology, climate and soils, botany, colonial agricultural industries. Volume 2 covers forestry, fauna, animal husbandry (including domestication of the elephant), mines and mining, in general and by specific mineral products. In Volume 3 the first part is on colonial hygiene, diseases of animals, phytopathology, applied entomology. Then economic life is reviewed in all aspects, and finally political institutions and education. The alphabetical index at the end of Volume 3 abounds in technical names and terms. There is also an index of the 60-odd maps scattered through the work.

1876. FLAVIN, MARTIN. *Black and white, from the Cape to the Congo*. New York, Harper, 1950.  
332 p.

DT732.F6

An American novelist and playwright who traveled from Johannesburg north through Bechuanaland and widely in the Congo and Ruanda-Urundi put down here his observations in striking vignettes, interspersed with historical and speculative comment. Most of the book (p. 82-332) was on his impressions of the Congo, which "physically, historically, politically and spiritually" he found different from the British regions—a unique colonial undertaking, the "thrilling spectacle" of a nation being born under enlightened trusteeship. Mr. Flavin's narrative has been considered a conspicuous contribution to African travel literature.

1877. *Folia scientifica Africae centralis*. v. 1, no. 1 +  
Mar. 1955 + Bakavu, Congo, IRSAC.  
quarterly.

DLC

French and Flemish, summaries in English.

Bulletin of information on current activities of the Institut pour la Recherche Scientifique en Afrique Centrale (IRSAC) with sections on biological, human, and physical sciences, giving brief accounts of work done and titles of new publications.

1878. *Institut national pour l'étude agronomique du Congo belge* [INEAC]—son but—son programme—ses réalisations. 4. éd. Oct. 1957.  
Bruxelles, 1957. 156 p. illus., maps.

S5.I47 1957

Other editions, 1954 and 1956.

INEAC is still issuing bulletins from Brussels in late 1962.

1879. MARVEL, TOM. *The new Congo*. New York, Duell, Sloan & Pearce, 1948. 395 p.  
DT652.M314

One of the few traveler's accounts of the Congo in English published in the postwar decade, this is by a writer whose war service had taken him to the territory. The picture he gives is the typical one of English-speaking observers whose views were not inclined to the left—unstinting in praise of the emergent economy and development of the African population, their health, education and social adjustment, and of the “farsighted” Belgian colonial policy.

✓ 1880. MICHIELS, ALBERT. *Congo belge et Ruanda-Urundi; géographie et notice historique* [par] A. Michiels et N. Laude. 18. éd. rev. et augm. de “Notre colonie.” Bruxelles, Édition universelle, 1957. 370 p. illus., maps.  
DT644.M5 1957

This handbook was originally published in the early twenties, and has been revised to include later statistics. It is a comprehensive survey, clearly written and interesting, profusely illustrated. The arrangement follows the usual order: physical geography, anthropology, economics, and politics and administration. Ruanda-Urundi is treated in a separate section following the same order, and the very brief outline of chief historical events takes up the last 30 pages. There are chapter bibliographies with references mostly in French.

1881. ROBERT, MAURICE. *Le Congo physique*. 3. éd., rev. et complété. Liège, H. Vaillant-Carmanne, 1946. 449 p. illus., maps.  
QE335.R6 1946

Bibliography: p. 417–427.

*Compléments*. 1948. 83 p.; 1954. 15 p.

By a professor of geology at the Université Libre of Brussels, author of many studies of Central Africa, this work was first published in 1919 and brought up to date with synthesis of existing information in two later editions and two supplements. Its coverage includes geology, mineralogy, climatology, hydrology, soils, biogeography.

1882. ROUCK, RENÉ DE. *Atlas géographique et historique du Congo belge et des territoires sous mandat du Ruanda-Urundi*. 4. éd. 195–11 p. 13 col. maps. 36 cm. DLC

Forty-five maps and plans on 12 plates, with an alphabetic index of 5,972 names. The maps include physical geography, political and administrative divisions, history, economy, and plans of the 7 chief cities.

1883. YDEWALLE, CHARLES D'. *Le Congo du fétiche à l'uranium*. Bruxelles, L. Cuypers, 1953. 277 p.  
DT652.Y3

Travel impressions and historical interpretation by a Belgian literary man.

## HISTORY

1884. ANSTEY, ROGER. *Britain and the Congo in the nineteenth century*. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1962. 260 p.  
DT655.A7

Not yet available for examination.

1885. CEULEMANS, P. *La question arabe et le Congo, 1883–1892*. Bruxelles, 1959. 396 p. maps. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°. n.s., t. 22, fasc. 1.)  
DT641.A27 n.s., t. 22, fasc. 1

Bibliography: p. 368–380.

By a Catholic historian, the director of a missionary college in Kasai, this is a study of relations between Leopold's Congo Free State and Tippu Tib and the other merchant princes of the Arab slave trade which ended in an armed clash in 1892. It was reviewed in *Africa*, October 1960.

1886. CONRAD, JOSEPH. *Heart of darkness; backgrounds and criticisms*, edited by Leonard F. Dean. Englewood Cliffs, N.J., Prentice-Hall, 1960. 184 p.  
PZ3.C764He6

This famous story set in the deep forest of the Upper Congo in the early years of the Free State is presented here with a collection of interpretive material reflecting, on the one hand, literary criticism, on the other, Conrad's own experience in the Congo and contemporary writing. There is included, for instance, a long extract from Stanley's *Through the Dark Continent*.

1887. CORNET, RENÉ J. *La bataille du rail*. 4. éd. rév. et aug. Bruxelles, L. Cuypers, 1958. 413 p.  
TF119.C6C6

This work, which was awarded the Prix International Chatrian in 1953 by the Société des Gens de Lettres du Paris, recounts the history of building the railroad from Matadi to Stanley Pool which opened up commerce and navigation on the upper Congo. The line, conceived by Stanley in 1878, and built under the direction of Lieutenant Albert Thys, was opened in 1898.



1888. CROWE, SYBIL E. *The Berlin West Africa Conference, 1884-1885*. London, New York, Published for the Royal Empire Society by Longmans, Green, 1942. 249 p. (Imperial studies, no. 19) DT652.C87

Note on sources: p. 224-231; bibliography: p. 232-237.

Monograph on the first big colonial conference of modern times, in which Leopold II's diplomacy, carried on through his International Association of the Congo, led to the relinquishment of claims by the other Powers, and the establishment of his Congo Free State. The work is in two parts, the first covering events leading up to the Conference; the second, the Conference itself.

An older authoritative study by the British historian Arthur Berriedale Keith appeared in 1919: *The Belgian Congo and the Berlin Act* (Oxford, Clarendon Press. 344 p.). Like Miss Crowe's work, it is concerned more with diplomatic moves in Europe than with the territory in Africa.

1889. CUVELIER, JEAN, Bp. *L'ancien royaume de Congo: fondation, découverte, première évangélisation de l'ancien royaume de Congo. Règne du Grand Roi Affonso Mvemba Nzinga (d. 1541)* Bruges, Paris, Desclée de Brouwer, 1946. 361 p. illus., maps. DT655.C85

Bishop Cuvelier was the Apostolic Vicar in Matadi. This historical study related to the first period of Portuguese discovery and establishment in the Lower Congo Basin in what is now the Congo Province of Angola and the southwestern part of Leopoldville Province in the Congo.

1890. HENNESSY, MAURICE N. *Congo; a brief history and appraisal*. London, Pall Mall Press, 1961. 148 p. illus. DT652.H4 1961a

In under 150 pages the author, a British journalist, has compressed the entire course of Congolese history to a useful résumé. More than half the text deals with events since the Second World War, "The Congo in Transition," "The Death of Paternalism," and then independence and its consequences through 1960. Appendixes are a chart of U.N. organization in the Congo, a chronology of events in 1960, and selected correspondence, mostly to and from Lumumba. A postscript noting the death of Lumumba is dated 13 February 1961.

1891. JOHNSTON, Sir HARRY H. *George Grenfell and the Congo; a history and description of the Congo Independent State and adjoining districts . . . diaries and researches of the*

late Rev. George Grenfell and records of the British Baptist Missionary Society. London, Hutchinson, 1908. 2 v. illus., maps.

DT644.J7

A classic of Congolese history in English writing. For a more recent study of this material, see Ruth Slade's *English-Speaking Missions . . .* (below).

1892. LICHTERVELDE, LOUIS DE, *comte*. Leopold of the Belgians; tr. by Thomas H. Reed. New York, Century Co., 1929. 366 p.

DH671.L52

Biography by a Royalist Belgian historian, who essays to clear the character and establish the greatness of the bitterly criticized king of the Belgians who laid the chief foundations of his country's wealth in his creation of the rich Congo colony.

Among the more important contemporary writings concerning the history of the Congo from Leopold's formation of the Association Internationale Africaine at the Brussels Conference of 1876 to the annexation of the Congo Free State by Belgium in 1908, there might be mentioned: Henry Morton Stanley's *Congo and the Foundation of its Free State: A Story of Work and Exploration* (New York, Harper, 1885. 2 v.); the British Foreign Office publication of the *Correspondence and Report respecting the Administration of the Independent State of the Congo* by Roger Casement, consul at Boma (London, 1904-05. 3 v. Cd. 1933, 2097, 2333); and the even more savage indictments of autocratic control voiced by Edmund D. Morel in *King Leopold's Rule in Africa* (London, Heinemann, 1904) and *Red Rubber: the Story of the Rubber Slave Trade Flourishing on the Congo in the Year of Grace 1906* (London, Unwin, 1906; reprint, Manchester, National Labor Press, 1919).

1893. MARTELLI, GEORGE. *Leopold to Lumumba: a history of the Belgian Congo, 1877-1960*. London, Chapman & Hall, 1962. 259 p. illus., maps.

This new recounting of history of Belgian government in the Congo was reviewed in the *London Times Literary Supplement* of Nov. 16, 1962, as "a well-informed and deeply partisan defence of European colonialism in general and of Leopold II of Belgium in particular—an honest lament for the good old days."

A French account of Congolese history which also appeared in mid-1962 has not been available for examination: Michel Merlier, *Le Congo, de la colonisation belge à l'indépendance* (Paris, F. Maspero. 352 p. Cahiers libres, nos. 32-33).

1894. MENDIAUX, ÉDOUARD. *Histoire du Congo*. Bruxelles, C. Dessart, 1961. 245 p.

DT652.M38

Includes bibliography.

Popular synthesis of history of the Congo in pre-colonial times, taken from all known sources and leaning heavily on the account of early explorers of Central Africa. It begins with prehistory and classical antiquity and ends with the creation of the Congo Free State. Appendixes are on religion and magic, arts and crafts.

1895. ROEYKENS, A. *Léopold II et l'Afrique, 1855-1880; essai de synthèse et de mise au point*. Bruxelles, 1958. 411 p. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classes des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, n.s. t. 14, fasc. 2) DT641.A27, n.s., t. 14, fasc. 2

One of the more recent works of historic scholarship, this study of the beginnings of Leopold's interests in the Congo is by a Catholic Father at a mission in Ubangi.

1896. SLADE, RUTH N. *English-speaking missions in the Congo Independent State (1878-1908)*. Bruxelles, 1959. 432 p. maps. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in 8°, nouv. sér., t. 16, fasc. 2)

DT641.A27 n.s., t. 16, fasc. 2

1897. ——— *King Leopold's Congo; aspects of the development of race relations in the Congo Independent State*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1962. xi, 230 p. illus. maps. DT655.S55

Bibliography: p. 215-219.

By an English scholar who had done extensive research in archival material, particularly that relating to the missionary activities which she examined in detail in the first-mentioned work. This monograph, accepted by the Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer in its authoritative Mémoires series, was submitted as a thesis at the University of London. In her 1962 book, which was issued under the auspices of the Institute of Race Relations, Dr. Slade examined the first European contacts with the Congo, the acquisition and rule of the Congo by Leopold II—which she says “has long been obscured by polemic”—and the founding of the Congo Free State. Her account is carried through the annexation by Belgium in 1908 and up to the First World War. (In an introductory note it is stated that a work in progress by Dr. Roger Anstey will bring the story up to 1960.) This work lays the historic background for the analysis of more recent developments, which this writer offered in her booklet of 1960 (no. 1927).

1898. STENMANS, ALAIN. *La reprise du Congo par la Belgique; essai d'histoire parlementaire et diplomatique*. Bruxelles, Éditions techniques et scientifiques R. Louis, 1949. 492 p.

DT652.S8

A Belgian historian's study of the end of Leopold II's one-man rule of the Independent State of the Congo and the taking over of the territory by Belgium in 1908. The last chapters quote and comment on the “Charte coloniale,” the *Projet de loi sur le Congo belge*, which remained in force as the constitution of the colony until independence in 1960.

A longer history of the Congo Free State in more popular style is by Baron Pierre van Zuylen, *L'Échiquier congolais, ou, Le secret du roi* (Bruxelles, C. Dessart, 1959. 515 p.).

## POLITICS

1899. ARTIGUE, PIERRE. *Qui sont les leaders congolais?* 2. ed. Bruxelles, Editions Europe-Afrique, 1961. 377 p. (Collection “Carrefours africains”) DT663.A2A7

Biographical sketches of Congolese personalities. A preliminary edition came out in 1960 (139 p. “Carrefours africains,” 3). The greatly enlarged revision contains more than 800 biographies. They vary in length from 20 to several hundred words including for many individuals account of education and pre-independence activities, all carefully dated.

1900. BIEBUYCK, DANIEL, and MARY DOUGLAS. *Congo: tribes & parties*. London, Royal Anthropological Institute, 1961. 49 p. (Royal Anthropological Institute. Pamphlets no. 1).

GN2.R65, no.1

A pamphlet setting forth clearly and concisely the political situation of the tribal groups in the Congo. Mrs. Douglas of the University of London first analyzed results of the 1960 elections, sketching the background of tribal history, conflicts and loyalties (three dominant groups, Ba-Kongo, Ba-Luba, Ba-Lunda, among 200 distinct tribes) and linguistic groupings and influences (of the four “commercial” languages, Lingala, Lumumba's medium, is dominant in centre and north). Then Professor Biebuyck of Lovanium University analyzed and tabulated the parties, their tribal affiliations, and political objectives. A brief conclusion pointed toward hope for a future federal state. Reviewed in *Africa Report* of May 1962.

1901. BILSEN, A. A. J. VAN. *L'indépendance du Congo*. Tournai, Casterman, 1962. 236 p.

DT657.B48



Dr. van Bilsen, Professor at the Institut Universitaire des Territoires d'Outre-Mer, is considered one of the most impartial of Belgian specialists on problems of the Congo. In 1960 he acted as adviser to Kasavubu at the Brussels Round Table Conference and afterward in Leopoldville. This is a compilation of articles and documents during the last period of hurried preparation for independence, including writings to the spring of 1961, after Lumumba's downfall and death. It supplements an earlier work, *Vers l'indépendance du Congo Belge et du Ruanda-Urundi: réflexions sur les devoirs et l'avenir de la Belgique en Afrique centrale* (Kraainem? 1958. 295 p.). In July 1961 Dr. van Bilsen addressed an audience at Chatham House on "Some Aspects of the Congo Problem." The speech, published in the January 1962 issue of *International Affairs* (v. 38, p. 41-51), is a notably clear and calm review. The speaker ended with the hope that the Congo, once decolonization (i.e., separation from Belgian administrative aid) is completely over, will quickly establish sufficient government responsibility to progress with international assistance.

1902. BRAUSCH, GEORGES. *Belgian administration in the Congo*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1961. 92 p. DT657.B7

Analysis of the preindependence government by a former Belgian administrator. It was reviewed in *Africa Report* of May 1962.

1903. CALDER, RITCHIE. *Agony of the Congo*. London, Gollancz, 1961. 160 p. maps. DT658.C3

The writer had been in the Congo on a factfinding mission for the World Health Organization, and witnessed the events of the postindependence crisis in the summer of 1960.

A longer and even more sensational account, much of it in dialogue and personal interviews, is by a Danish journalist and African traveler, John L. Brom, who was in the Congo in 1960. His spirited narrative was translated by his wife into German: *Mit schwarzem Blut geschrieben; die Kongo-Tragödie*. (München, Doremersche Verlagsanstalt T. Knaur Nachf., 1961. 312 p.)

1904. CENTRE DE RECHERCHE ET D'INFORMATION SOCIO-POLITIQUES. *Congo, 1959; documents belges et africains*. Bruxelles, 1960. 319 p. (Les Dossiers du C.R.I.S.P.) DT652.C43

Bibliographie politique sur le Congo en 1959: p. 303-309.

1905. ——— *Congo 1960*, par J. Gérard-Libois et Benoît Verhaegen. Bruxelles, [1961?] 2 v. map. (Its Dossiers) DT658.C4

Bibliographical footnotes.

1906. ——— ——— *Annexes et biographies*. Bruxelles, 1961. 132 p. (Its Dossiers) DT658.C4 Suppl.

1907. ——— *Congo 1961* [par] Benoît Verhaegen. Bruxelles, 1962. 691 p. tables (Its Dossiers) DLC

C.R.I.S.P., a group of Belgian scholars, journalists and economists, has undertaken this valuable series of documents relating to the Congo, which are printed with slight connecting text. In *Congo 1959* the arrangement was chronological. *Congo 1960* provides a minutely detailed chronological account of events, with interpretative comment and text of documents, through the first weeks of July. The second volume contains 600 biographical sketches and additional documents, to complete the picture of the year. The volume for 1961 concerns mainly the regime in Stanleyville; the material regarding the United Nations and the Katanga is less full.

1908. CHOMÉ, JULES. *La crise congolaise; de l'indépendance à l'intervention militaire belge* (30 juin-9 juillet) Bruxelles, Éditions de Remarques congolaises, 1960. 174 p. (Collection "Études congolaises," no. 4) DT657.C45

1909. ——— *Le gouvernement congolais et l'O.N.U.; un paradoxe tragique*. Bruxelles, Éditions de Remarques congolaises [c1961]. 207 p. Collection "Études congolaises," no. 6) JX1977.2.C57C5

1910. ——— *Indépendance congolaise, pacifique conquête; texte de la conférence prononcée à la tribune du Cercle d'éducation populaire de Bruxelles, le 22 février 1960*. Bruxelles, Éditions de Remarques congolaises, 1960. 52 p. (Collection "Études congolaises," no. 3) DT658.C45

1911. ——— *La passion de Simon Kimbangu, 1921-1951*. Bruxelles, Les Amis de Présence africaine, 1959. 131 p. DT663.K5C5

Four pamphlets by a spokesman for the Belgian supporters of Congolese independence. See also M. Chomé's pamphlet regarding Lumumba (no. 1921n).

1912. CHRONIQUE DE POLITIQUE ÉTRANGÈRE. *La crise congolaise: janvier 1959-août 1960*. Bruxelles, Institut royal des relations internationales, 1960. (ca. 500 p.) (Its v. 13, 1960, no. 4-6) D839.C82, v. 13, no. 4-6

Three combined issues of this leading Belgian journal of international affairs, with documentation on the background and beginning of the Congo's plunge into independence. Besides the texts of documents the volume includes an essay by Fernand van Langenhove, former Belgian delegate to the United Nations: "Le Congo et les problèmes de la décolonisation" (available also in English translation as a separate).

1913. ———. *L'évolution de la crise congolaise de septembre 1960 à avril 1961*. Bruxelles, Institut royal des relations internationales, 1961. (Its v. 14, 1961, no. 5-6)

D839.C82, v. 14, no. 5-6

A second set of combined issues containing documents of the course of events in the Congo.

1914. CONGO, BELGIAN. Force publique. *Force publique, Congo Belge, 1886-1956*. [Leopoldville, 1957] unpag. illus. UA869.C6A54

Pictorial pamphlet of about 50 pages on the Congolese troops who were considered "an eminent factor of domestic order and peace . . . a magnificent tool of civil formation and social progress." A brief historical note is followed by photographs with captions, showing daily life, training, etc. "At the present time the officer cadre, from sergeant major up, is still entirely European, drawn from the metropolitan army."

1915. DURIEUX, ANDRÉ. *Institutions politiques, administratives et judiciaires du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi*. 2. éd. Bruxelles, Éditions Bieleveld, 1955. 108 p. DLC-LL

This is a second edition of the "Exposé descriptif des institutions . . ." included in the *Encyclopédie du Congo belge* which had been published in 1952 as a separate offprint and quickly exhausted. The author, a professor at the Catholic University of Louvain and specialist in colonial legislation, made a number of additions to bring up to date the texts of laws and decrees regarding the constitutional and administrative setup and judicial system of the Congo.

1916. GOOD, ROBERT C. "Congo crisis: the role of the new States." In *Neutrality*. Washington, Washington Center of Foreign Policy Research, 1961; p. 1-46. D842.W34

A review of the Congo crisis from July 1960 through April 1961, with emphasis on the attitudes of the new African and Asian States in the United Nations. The author, who is director of the African branch in the Department of State Division of Intelligence Research,

gave his public sources, largely newspapers and U.N. documentation.

1917. GORDON, KING. *The United Nations in the Congo; a quest for peace*. New York, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1962. 184 p. illus. DT658.G6

Not available for examination.

1918. KANZA, THOMAS. *Congo 196-? (tôt ou tard—Ata n'dele)*. Bruxelles, 1962. 79 p. (Collection "Études congolaises") DLC

Mr. Kanza was the first Congolese other than those training for the clergy to receive a university degree in Europe. He has been the representative of the Congo Republic at the United Nations, and in 1963 has gone as Ambassador to London. In 1959 three pamphlets of his were published in Brussels: *Propos d'un Congolais naïf; discours sur la vocation coloniale dans l'Afrique de demain* (Les Amis de "Présence africaine," 43 p.); *Le Congo à la veille de son indépendance; ou, Propos d'un Congolais désillusionné* (81 p.); and *Tôt ou tard—(Ata n'dele)* (Le Livre africain. 87 p.). The present work, of which the announcement appears in the organ of Amis de Présence Africaine, *Le Livre africain*, of November-December 1962, is presumably an updating of the earlier paper, which had been his comment following the riots of January 1959.

1919. LANGENHOVE, FERNAND VAN. *Consciences tribales et nationales en Afrique noire*. Bruxelles, Institut royal des relations internationales, 1960. 465 p. illus. DT353.L3

By the Director of the influential Institute, a political scientist who was a former representative of Belgium to the United Nations. In this study of nationalism and the politics of the emerging states of Black Africa he analyzes the interplay of surviving traditional values with new cultural standards as background to the situation in the Congo and Ruanda-Urundi.

1920. LEGUM, COLIN. *Congo disaster*. Baltimore, Penguin Books, 1961. 174 p. (A Penguin special, S191) DT657.L1

Written in the late summer of 1960 as a background to the Congo crisis, and updated to the beginning of fighting between the United Nations and the Congo National Army in November.

1921. LUMUMBA, PATRICE. *Congo, my country*. With a foreword by Colin Legum. New York, Praeger, 1962. 195 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT657.L813 1962



Lumumba's book was written in 1956-57, and published posthumously in Belgium in 1961 with the title, *Le Congo, terre d'avenir, est-il menacé?* Mr. Legum's long preface is an interesting effort to separate truth from propaganda in the controversy over Lumumba and Lumumbaism. The book, "a historical document," is characteristic of the attitude of the Congolese "moderate" nationalist elite before the climax. According to Mr. Legum, Lumumba's "detailed plans for social and political reforms" here stated are valid today, a blueprint for the builders of the new Congo.

Among the profusion of books and pamphlets on the Congo crisis, the following journalistic works are directly focused on Lumumba, all except those of M. Houart being in part at least sympathetic:

CHOMÉ, JULES. *M. Lumumba et le communisme; variations à partir du livre de M. P. Houart.* Bruxelles, Éditions de Remarques congolaises, 1961. 79 p. (Études congolaises, no. 5)

Written in reply to Pierre Houart's *La pénétration communiste au Congo; commentaires et documents sur les événements de juin-novembre, 1960* (Bruxelles, Centre de documentation internationale, 1960. 117 p.).

HOUART, PIERRE. *Les événements du Congo; précisions et documents nouveaux sur l'attitude politique des leaders congolais et sur les tentatives néo-colonialistes.* Réponse à la brochure "M. Lumumba et le communisme." Bruxelles, Centre de documentation internationale, 1961. 41 l. DT658.H6

MICHEL, SERGE. *Uhuru Lumumba.* Paris, H. Julliard, 1962. 269 p. DT663.L8M5

ROUCH, JANE. *En cage avec Lumumba.* Paris, Les Éditions du temps, 1961. 189 p. illus. DT658.R6

SOIUZ ZHURNALISTOV SSSR. *Patris Lumumba; pravda o chudovitsnom prestudlenii kolonizatorov.* Moskva, 1961. 205 p. illus. DT663.L8S6

VOS, PIERRE DE. *Vie et mort de Lumumba.* Paris, Calmann-Lévy, 1961. 259 p. illus. (Questions d'actualité). DT663.L8V63

A study by Robert E. Bartlett, *Communist Penetration and Subversion of the Belgian Congo, 1946-1960* (Berkeley, Calif., Acarn Press, 1962. 42 p.), has not been available for examination.

1922. MERRIAM, ALAN P. *Congo, background of conflict.* Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Press, 1961. 368 p. illus. (Northwestern University African studies, no. 6)

DT657.M4

Includes bibliography.

An informative and detailed study of the development of the national movement in the Congo, the parties and their leaders, and the Belgian background for relinquishing authority. This book is reviewed, together with those of Legum, Hennessey, and the Bel-

gian Royal Institute of International Relations in *Africa Report* of June 1961.

1923. PAULUS, JEAN P. *Droit public du Congo belge.* Bruxelles, Université libre, Institut de sociologie Solvay, 1959. 519 p. (Études coloniales, 6) DLC-LL

"Annexes" (p. 439-485) consist of documents and legislation. Includes bibliographies. This writer has published also a review of legislative and political affairs in the last years of the Belgian administration, *Congo, 1959-1960* (Bruxelles, Éditions "Terre d'Europe" [1961?] 279 p.).

1924. PERIN, FRANÇOIS. *Les institutions politiques du Congo indépendant au 30 juin 1960.* Léopoldville, Institut politique congolais, 1960. 151 p. JQ3603.1960.P4

Annexes (p. 85-151) consist of documents.

1925. PÉTILLON, LÉON. *Belgium's policy in the Belgian Congo; address to the Council of the Government of the Belgian Congo, in Leopoldville on July 18, 1955.* New York, Belgian Govt. Information Center, 1956. 43 p. (Art, life and science in Belgium, 2d ser., no. 5) DT652.P4

Address by the Governor-General of the Congo to the Council of Government in Leopoldville on July 18, 1955. The theme was the future Belgo-Congolese community—the Belgian solution of the problem of race relations, through association implying reciprocal rights and privileges. The Governor outlined in simple and forthright terms attitudes to be expected of Europeans and Congolese and the new institutions planned for communal organization, native participation in public life, higher education for the African elite, peasant farm communities and cooperatives, land policy, individual credit, and social legislation.

Governor Pétillon in his 1956 speech again stressed relations of "association" between Europeans and Congolese, but without defining positive action. A few days later a Leopoldville periodical, *Conscience africaine*, brought out a special issue voicing publicly for the first time the political aspirations of the évolués in a blueprint for self-government in thirty years. This "Manifesto" was promptly followed by the more demanding manifesto of ABAKO. For details, see work by Slade, below).

1926. RYCKMANS, PIERRE. "Belgian colonialism." *Foreign affairs*, v. 34, Oct. 1955: 89-101.

D410.F6, v. 34

A defense of the Belgian system of government independent territories, which the writer, former Governor-General of the Belgian Congo and in 1955 Bel-

gian representative on the Trusteeship Council, had formulated earlier in a classic statement, *Dominer pour servir* (1931; nouvelle édition rév. et augmentée, Bruxelles, Édition universelle, 1948. 189 p.).

1927. SLADE, RUTH M. *The Belgian Congo: some recent changes*. Issued under the auspices of the Institute of Race Relations. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1960. 55 p. illus. DT652.S5

Dr. Slade's booklet, which appeared in early 1960 before the granting of the promised independence, was the first, and for several months the only, analytical review in English of the background of Belgium's sudden relinquishment of her three decades of benevolent paternalism.

## ECONOMICS

(including Population)

1928. BELGIUM. Ministère des affaires africaines. Direction de l'agriculture, des forêts et de l'élevage. *Volume jubilaire du Bulletin agricole du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi, 1910-1960*. Bruxelles, 1960. 226 p. illus. S471.C75A48

Published by the Ministry under its earlier name, Ministère du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi.

Fiftieth anniversary volume of the official journal which has been the main source of current information on Congolese agriculture. The work, setting forth the history and accomplishments of Belgian agricultural endeavor in the Congo, appeared almost simultaneously with the independence proclamation. "Beyond the inquietude and disorder of today, Belgium leaves to the Congo all the elements of a prodigious agricultural treasure—a universally admired research institution [INEAC], agronomic doctrine and agricultural experiments ripened and brought to perfection in efficient plantations, model stockraising, well-equipped forest or industrial enterprises, *paysannats* which prefigure the modern agriculture of tomorrow."

1929. BELGIUM. Ministère des affaires africaines. Direction des études économiques. *La situation économique au Congo belge et Ruanda-Urundi, 1950-1959*. Bruxelles, 1951-60. tables, charts, annual. 1959 ed., 272 p. 84 tables. HC591.C6A32

Yearly survey of the economy, relating to the Congo only from 1950-54, then including Ruanda-Urundi.

All features of economic life are thoroughly covered in tabulated data from official and private sources. For some years editions were issued also in English.

1930. BÉZY, F. *Problèmes structurels de l'économie congolaise*. Louvain, Institut de recherches économiques et sociales, 1957. 285 p., tables, charts. HC591.C6B49

In this review of the economic structure of the Belgian Congo and Ruanda-Urundi (the latter in an appendix) a professor at Lovanium University found the keyword to be stability under the "mission civilisatrice," pursued in serenity. His analysis, however, pointed out problem areas in the promising picture.

1931. BRUSSELS. UNIVERSITÉ LIBRE. Institut de sociologie Solvay. *Vers le promotion de l'économie indigène; compte rendu du Colloque colonial sur l'économie indigène; 9-13 jan. 1956*. Bruxelles, 1956. 600 p. (*Its Études coloniales*, fasc. 3) HC591.C6B7

Text in French or English.

Papers at an international conference organized in collaboration with the Centre Scientifique et Médicale de l'Université Libre de Bruxelles en Afrique Centrale. The contributions by eminent spokesmen were mostly concerned with the Congo, though a few were on British or French territories. Among topics aired were socioeconomic aspects of development, traditional economies, the role of rice in nutrition in the Congo, modernization of agricultural methods, allotments to *paysannats*, agricultural products, cooperative movements, handicrafts, electrification, social welfare funds, African land rights, etc.

1932. FABRI, MARCEL, and JEAN MAYER. *La population future du Congo, perspectives démographiques*. Bruxelles, Centre d'étude des problèmes sociaux et professionnels de la technique, 1959. 55 p. diagrs., tables. HB3670.5.F3

Basic technical monograph on demographic problems.

1933. FÉDÉRATION DES ENTREPRISES CONGOLAISES. *The Congolese economy on the eve of independence*. Brussels, Federation of Congolese Enterprises, 1960. 84 p. tables. DLC

A large processed brochure issued in English translation by this organization, which groups most of the major companies in the Congo. It comprises an opti-



mistic review of the expansion of the Congolese economy during the fifties, frankly stressing successes. The last chapter cites statistical sources.

1934. GOUROU, PIERRE. *La densité de la population rurale au Congo belge*. Bruxelles, 1955. 168 p. map. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences naturelles et médicales. Mémoires in-8°, n.s. t. 1, fasc. 2) Q111.B78, n.s. t. 1, fasc. 2

Monograph by an economist known for many studies of Africa, professor at the Collège de France and the Université Libre of Brussels.

1935. JOURNÉES D'ÉTUDES COLONIALES, Institut universitaire de territoires d'outre-mer, Antwerp, 1957. *Promotion de la société rurale du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi*; rapport général . . . Bruxelles, Direction de l'agriculture, des forêts et de l'élevage, 1958. 282 p. tables. HN819.J6

The report of this conference includes papers and syntheses of communications on many aspects of agricultural society and development—the *paysannats*, social action, handicrafts, cooperatives, stockraising, fisheries, industrialization, purchasing power, education, etc. In the conclusions the first “indisputable” principle is named as the stability of the functionaries, the Belgian administrators.

1936. LEFEBVRE, JACQUES. *Structures économiques du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi*. Bruxelles, Éditions du Treurenberg, 1955. 142 p. maps. HC591.C6L4

By a professor at the Institut Catholique des Hautes Études Commerciales in Brussels, this is a concise survey of population, production, transport, energy, social services, finances, foreign trade, and other aspects of economic development.

1937. PINXTEN, KAREL. *De inlandse landbouwbedrijven in Belgisch-Kongo en Ruanda-Urundi*. Brussel, Ministerie van Kolonien, Landbouw-directie, 1954. 2 v. illus. maps. HD2140.P5

Authoritative scholarly study of agronomic and economic aspects of the systems of intensified agriculture being adopted after the Second World War in rural areas of the Congo—the so-called *paysannats indigènes*.

1938. SKINNER, SNIDER W. *The agricultural economy of the Belgian Congo and Ruanda-*

*Urundi*. Reissue. Washington, U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Mar. 1962. 52 p. (ERS-Foreign-22) DLC

Previously issued in Foreign Agricultural Service, FAS-M-88, 1960.

For general note on this series, see no. 445.

1939. TREWARTHA, GLENN T., and WILBUR ZELINSKY. “Population geography of Belgian Africa.” In Association of American Geographers, *Annals*, v. 44, June 1954: 163–193.

G3.A7, v. 44

Technical paper by two geographers at the University of Wisconsin, analyzing general patterns of population and numbers distribution. The authors treated the Belgian dependencies as a test case of such a study for an area in which sources of data and field experience are deficient compared with those available for more advanced nations. This article immediately succeeds a comparable paper of broader regional application by the same scholars, “Population Patterns in Tropical Africa” (*ibid.*, p. 135–162). Both papers have footnote references, and the first is followed by bibliographical appendixes listing maps and statistical sources.

1940. WIGNY, PIERRE. *A ten year plan for the economic and social development of the Belgian Congo*. New York, Belgian Government Information Center, 1950. 72 p. (Art, life and science in Belgium, no. 10)

HC591.C6W5

A summarization of the ideals and purposes of the Belgian plan for development of the Congo economy, which was designed to raise the standard of living of the Congolese. The writer, who was Minister for the Colonies, emphasized throughout that the future depended on the Congolese, that the primary consideration must be their welfare and education: “Improvement in the natives’ living conditions is the justification of our presence and the moral reward of our efforts. But . . . this policy is imperative for economic reasons as well,” that is, for an internal market of consumers. The program allocated to public services—agricultural development, native housing, drinking water, education and training for the natives—a large portion of its budget.

The official publication here summarized by the Minister was issued in 1949, *Plan décennal pour le développement économique et social du Congo belge* (Printed for the Ministère des Colonies by De Visscher, Brussels, 1949. 2 v., xxxiii, 601 p.).

## SOCIAL SCIENCES

1941. ANNAERT, JEAN. *Contribution à l'étude géographique de l'habitat et de l'habitation indigènes en milieu rural dans les provinces Orientale et du Kivu*. Bruxelles, 1960. 162 p. (Académie royale des sciences d'outremer. Classe des sciences naturelles et médicales. Mémoires in-8°, n.s., t. 10, fasc. 3) DLC

1942. BAUMER, GUY. *Centres indigènes extra-coutumiers au Congo belge*. Paris, Domat-Monchrestien, 1939. 239 p. (Paris. Université. Institut de droit comparé. Études de sociologie et d'ethnologie juridiques, 30).

DLC-LL

Presented as a thesis for a degree in law, this study is often cited as an authoritative examination of relations between the hereditary chiefs and those appointed by the European administration.

1943. CAPRASSE, PIERRE. *Leaders africains en milieu urbain, Elisabethville*. Bruxelles, Impr. Amibel, 1959. 171 p. illus. (L'Université catholique de Louvain. Collection de l'École des sciences politiques et sociales, no. 162)

HN819.C25

Based on a study carried out in the Centre extra-coutumier d'Elisabethville in 1956-57, this is a theoretical analysis of types of leaders. No names are used, the typical leaders being designated as A, B, C, etc.

1944. CENTRE D'INFORMATION ET DE DOCUMENTATION DU CONGO BELGE ET DU RUANDA-URUNDI. *Social action in the Belgian Congo and Ruanda-Urundi*. New York, Belgian Government Information Center, 1954. 128 p. illus. HV460.C42

Orientation booklet reviewing in simple terms the principles, objectives, and instruments of Belgian social policy in the Congo. Among aspects treated are the missions, social centers, conditions of labor, medical and health services, social services, teaching and education. Statistics are of 1952.

Publications in French and Flemish of the former Centre d'Information et de Documentation (later INFORCONGO) were for orientation purposes, including general reports, commercial statistics, maps, customs, requirements, directories, etc. A useful directory was the *Liste des sociétés et institutions coloniales ayant un siège en Belgique et au Congo belge ou au Ruanda-Urundi* (Bruxelles, 1954. 74 p.). A series of informative brochures was "Pour connaître le Congo"; its first two parts were *L'Économie du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi* (2. éd. Bruxelles, 1955. 67 p.) and *L'Exploitation*

*des richesses minières du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi* (1955, 163 p.).

1945. DENIS, JACQUES. *Le phénomène urbain en Afrique centrale*. Bruxelles, 1958. 407 p. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°. n.s., t. 19, fasc. 1)

DT641.A27, n.s., t. 19, fasc. 1

Bibliography: p. 371-394.

Study of the cities and city life that have sprung into being with rapid industrialization. The writer, a Jesuit priest and geographer, is concerned particularly with the Congolese centers, although he includes in his analysis the cities of Equatorial Africa, Angola and Mozambique, Rhodesia, and Uganda. He has used material from over 400 sources listed in his bibliography. The work is critically reviewed in *Africa*, April 1961.

In this connection, the bibliography by P. Verhaegen, *L'Urbanisation de l'Afrique noire*, in the CIDESA series (no. 226) will be useful.

1946. DOUCY, ARTHUR, and PIERRE FELDHEIM. *Problèmes du travail et politique sociale au Congo belge*. Bruxelles, Librairie encyclopédique, 1952. 156 p. HD8819.D68

The authors spent several months in the Katanga mining communities under the auspices of the Institut pour la Recherche Scientifique en Afrique Centrale and an institute of the University of Brussels, studying the social economy of the Congolese peoples and evaluating methods and results of official policy of social and cultural development. They reviewed social legislation, discussed African participation in the European industrial enterprises demographically and as to reasons for the stability—or rather, the extreme instability—of the labor force and its low level of productivity, and considered African labor unions, housing, and the problem of assimilation. They ended by examining changes in the forms of paternalism, suggesting that it should begin to give way to a new social policy.

1947. ———. *Travailleurs indigènes et productivité du travail au Congo belge*. Bruxelles, Université libre de Bruxelles, Institut de sociologie Solvay, 1958. 234 p. (Études coloniales, 5) DLC

Not available for examination.

1948. LAMBERT, PIERRE. *Traité élémentaire de législation sociale du Congo belge*. Bruxelles, F. Larcier, 1956. 143 p. DLC-LL



A legal treatise explaining provisions of social legislation affecting both Europeans and Congolese under the Belgian administration.

1949. PERIN-HOCKERS, MARYSE. *L'absentéisme des travailleurs africains et l'instabilité dans les entreprises de la région d'Elisabethville, 1957-1958*; enquête préliminaire réalisée pour le Centre d'étude des problèmes sociaux indigènes. Bruxelles, Université libre de Bruxelles, Institut de sociologie Solvay, 1959. 256 p. (Études coloniales, 7) DLC

1950. POUPART, ROBERT. *Première esquisse de l'évolution du syndicalisme au Congo*. Bruxelles, Éditions de l'Institut de sociologie Solvay, Université libre, 1960. 234 p. (Centre d'étude des problèmes sociaux de l'industrialisation en Afrique noire. Études.)

DLC

Not examined.

1951. TURNBULL, COLIN M. *The lonely African*. New York, Simon & Schuster, 1962. 251 p. illus. DT647.T8

The author of *The Forest People* (no. 1968) in this book presents the dilemma of Africans in the transition from tribal society to the modern world through the interesting device of personal testimonies of selected individuals in rural regions of the Congo.

1952. U.S. Public Health Service. *Republic of the Congo (formerly the Belgian Congo) a study of health problems and resources*, by Jane H. Priest. Washington, U.S. Dept. of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service, Division of International Health, 1960. 115 p. tables. (Publication no. 806) RA407.5.C75U6

Thorough survey in great detail regarding diseases, health resources, medical supplies, etc. Appendix A is a full list of hospitals in operation Jan. 1, 1956.

## ETHNOLOGY AND LINGUISTICS

### Bibliography

1953. *Bibliographie ethnographique de l'Afrique sud-saharienne* [formerly . . . du Congo belge et des régions avoisinantes]. Tervuren, Musée royal de l'Afrique centrale, 1932+ annual. Z5113.T33

This extensive annotated bibliography of books and periodical articles in ethnological fields relating not only to the Congo but to most of sub-Saharan Africa has appeared annually since 1932. The first volume covered literature from 1925-30. Until 1960 it appeared under authorship of the Musée Royal du Congo Belge; with the volume in 1961, covering literature of 1959, the adjective *Belge* was dropped from both author and title, and now the volume for 1960, published in 1962, appears under the new style. For some years the bibliography has been edited by Olga Boone. In the 1960 volume there are 355 pages, with about 5 annotated entries to the page. The arrangement is alphabetical by author, with indexes of subjects, names of peoples, and countries. Increasingly over the years attention has been given to writings on the "neighboring regions" as well as to the very thoroughly covered literature on the former Belgian territories.

1954. BULCK, G. VAN. *Les recherches linguistiques au Congo belge*; résultats acquis, nouvelles enquêtes à entreprendre. Bruxelles, Van Campenhout, 1948. 767 p. (Institut royale colonial belge. Section des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, t. 16).

DT641.A25, v. 16

The author is a foremost authority on Congolese linguistics, and this big volume brings together the results of studies to the date of its publication. The following year Father van Bulck's *Manuel de linguistique bantoue* was published as No. 3 of Tome 17 of this series. He and other Belgian scholars have published in this series several papers on language maps of the Congo (G. Hulstaert, *Carte linguistique du Congo belge*. t. 19, no. 5, 1950. 67 p., map; G. van Bulck, *Les deux cartes linguistiques du Congo belge*, t. 25, no. 2, 1952. 68 p.; L. de Boeck, *Contribution à l'atlas linguistique du Congo belge*. t. 29, no. 3, 1953. 82 p., 6 maps; G. van Bulck, *Mission linguistique 1949-1951*. t. 31, no. 5, 1954. 77 p.; G. Hulstaert, *Au sujet de deux cartes linguistiques du Congo belge*, t. 37, pt. 1, 1954. 55 p.).

1955. BURSSSENS, H. *Les peuplades de l'entre Congo-Ubangi* (Ngbandi, Ngbaka, Mbandja, Ngombe, et Gens d'Eau) London, International African Institute, 1958. 219 p. fold. map. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: Central Africa, Belgian Congo, pt. 4)

GN654.B85

Published also in the series of Annales du Musée Royal du Congo belge. Sciences de l'homme. Monographies ethnographiques, 4.

Reviewed in *Africa*, January 1960.

1956. BURTON, W. F. P. *Luba religion and magic in custom and belief*. Tervuren, Musée royal d'Afrique centrale, 1961. 193 p. illus., map. (Annales, Ser. no.-8°, Sciences humaines, 35) GN654.T4, no. 35

1957. CAENEGHEM, R. *La notion de Dieu chez les baLuba du Kasai*. Bruxelles, 1956. 204 p. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales, Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires. Collection in-8°. n.s.: Ethnographie, t. 9, fasc. 2) DT641.A25, n.s. t. 9, fasc. 2

This and the preceding monograph, both on the religion of the dominant tribe of Kasai Province, typify a theme often studied in the Mémoires ethnologiques series. It was given notable expression in the fundamental work on the soil of the Bantu by Father Tempels (see no. 291).

1958. CLEENE, N. DE. *Introduction à l'ethnographie du Congo belge et du Rwanda-Burundi*. 2. éd. complétée. Anvers, Éditions de Sikkel, 1957. 159 p. illus. (Kongo-Overzee bibliotheek, 9) DT650.C55 1957

Includes bibliographies.

Concentrated basic work by a professor at the Institut Universitaire des Territoires d'Outre-Mer. After a general discussion of ethnology and its aims he examines the populations of the Belgian territories in three classes: pygmies, agricultural peoples, and pastoral peoples. For each he summarizes information on their material, social, spiritual, and political life. For the agricultural peoples there are separate chapters on such aspects as intellectual life and esthetics. Bibliographies follow each chapter. Many of the references are to the Mémoires of the Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer.

A companion volume in this orientation series is by Amaat F. S. Burssens, *Introduction à l'étude des langues bantoues du Congo belge* (Anvers, Éditions de Sikkel, 1954. 152 p. Kongo-Overzee bibliotheek, 8)

1959. GELUWE, H. VAN. *Les Bali et les peuplades apparentées* (Ndaka, Mbo, Beke, Lika, Budu, Nyari) Tervuren, 1960. ix, 130 p. fold. map. (Annales du Musée royal du Congo belge, Tervuren (Belgique) Série in-8°.

Sciences de l'homme. Monographies ethnographiques, v. 5) DT650.G38 1960a

Issued also as: Ethnographic Survey of Africa: Central Africa, Belgian Congo, pt. 5. Bibliography: p. 115-122.

1960. ——— *Les Bira et les peuplades limitrophes*. Tervuren, 1956. ix, 165 p. fold. map. (Annales du Musée royal du Congo belge. Série in-8°. Sciences de l'homme. Monographies ethnographiques, v. 2) DLC

Issued also as Ethnographic Survey of Africa: Central Africa, Belgian Congo. pt. 2. Bibliography: p. 155-161.

1961. ——— *Mamvu-Mangutu et Balese-Mvuba*. London, International African Institute, 1957. xv, 195 p. fold. map. (Ethnographic survey of Africa. Central Africa: Belgian Congo, pt. 3) GN655.M25G4 1957

Issued also as Annales du Musée royal du Congo Belge. Sciences de l'homme: monographies ethnographiques, 3. Bibliography: p. 175-182.

1962. MAES, JOSEPH, and OLGA BOONE. *Les peuplades du Congo belge: nom et situation géographique*. Bruxelles, Impr. Veuve Monnom, 1935. 379 p. (Musée royal du Congo belge. Publications du Bureau de documentation ethnographique. Série 2— Monographies idéologiques, v. 1) DT650.M3

Inventory of tribes and groupings, with geographic locations, variant names, etc. Index of place and tribal names.

1963. PANETTA, ESTER. *I pigmei e i pigmoidi africani*; etnologia, poesia e canti. Parma, Guanda, 1959. 169 p. illus. (Collana di etnologia, n. 1) GN660.P9P3

Includes music.

1964. SCHEBESTA, PAUL. *Among Congo pygmies*; tr. from the German by Gerald Griffin. London, Hutchinson, 1932. 287 p. DT650.S32

1965. ——— *My pygmy and Negro hosts*. London, Hutchinson, 1936. 287 p. DT650.S35

1966. ——— *Revisiting my pygmy hosts*. London, Hutchinson, 1936. 288 p. DT650.S332

The German anthropologist Father Schebesta was an authority on Negritos, his work on the pygmies of Africa constituting a part only of his *Pygmäenvölker der Erde*. The studies of the Ituri Forest pygmies, first issued in German editions and brought out by Hutchinson in English, were given definitive publication in the Mémoires of the Académie Royale du



Congo Belge (*Die Bambuti-Pygmäen von Ituri: Ergebnisse zweier Forschungsreisen zu den zentral-afrikanischen Pygmäen*. Bruxelles, Hayez, 1938-50. 2 v. in 4. illus. Mémoires. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Coll. in-4°. t. 1, 2, 4, 5). The first volume covered history, geography, environment, demography, and anthropology. The second volume, published in three parts, was a detailed ethnological study of two groups of the pygmies.

1967. SOHIER, ANTOINE. *Traité élémentaire de droit coutumier du Congo belge*. 2. éd. rév. et augm. Bruxelles, F. Larcier, 1954. 206 p. DLC-LL

Customary law is treated also in the general compilation by Jean Sohier, *Répertoire général de la jurisprudence et de la doctrine coutumières du Congo et du Ruanda-Urundi jusqu'au 31 décembre 1953*. (Bruxelles, Maison F. Larcier, 1957. 975 p.)

1968. TURNBULL, COLIN M. *The forest people*. New York, Simon & Schuster, 1961. 288 p. illus. DT650.T8

Personal experience with the pygmies of the Congo forest, setting scholarly ethnological data on the social life of this people, uniquely adjusted to their environment, in the frame of a readable narrative which has reached bestseller lists. The author, an Oxford-trained anthropologist, had begun his interest in the pygmies while working in the Ituri forest establishment of Patrick Putnam, longtime friend of the pygmies. Camp Putnam was described after Putnam's death by his wife, Anne E. Putnam, in her *Madami; My Eight Years of Adventure with the Congo Pigmies* (New York, Prentice-Hall, 1954. 303 p.).

1969. VANDEWOUDE, EMIEL J. L. M. *Documents pour servir à la connaissance des populations du Congo belge*. Aperçu historique (1886-1933) de l'étude des populations autochtones, par les fonctionnaires et agents du Service territorial, suivi de l'inventaire des études historiques, ethnographiques et linguistiques conservées aux Archives du Congo belge. Léopoldville, Section Documentation des Archives du Congo belge, 1958. 245 p. (Archives du Congo belge, no. 2) Z3631.V3

Beginning with an essay on the studies carried out by the agents of the Administration in the Congo during the years from the creation of the Free State to 1933, this large processed volume lists 563 papers preserved in the Archives. Many of them are notes of two or three pages, others reports of considerable size. There

are indexes of personal names, places, ethnic and linguistic terms, and appendixes explaining official instructions for collecting and preserving the material.

1970. VANSINA, JAN. *Les tribus Ba-Kuba et les peuplades apparentées*. London, International African Institute, 1954. 64 p. fold. map. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: Central Africa, Belgian Congo, pt. 1) DT650.V3

Published also as: Annales du Musée royal du Congo belge. Sciences de l'homme. Monographies ethnographiques, 1. Bibliography: p. 57-62.

1971. WING, JOSEPH VAN. *Études Bakongo; sociologie, religion et magie*. 2. éd. Bruges, Desclée, De Brouwer, 1959. 512 p. illus. (Museum Lessianum. Section missiologique, no. 39) GN654.W5 1959

Includes bibliography.

A celebrated study by a Jesuit priest who had been a missionary in Kisantu; published first in 1930-37. The revision has a number of changes and additions. Other studies by Father van Wing appear in the list of publishers of the Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer.

1972. WOLFE, ALVIN W. *In the Ngombe tradition; continuity and change in the Congo*. Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Press, 1961. 167 p. illus., map, table. (Northwestern University, Evanston, Ill., African studies, no. 7). DT650.W6

Based on field research in the early fifties, this is a careful study, in part technical, of two branches of the Ngombe people: The Gonji Ngombe of the Congo forest in the northwest part of Equatorial Province, and the Moswea Ngombe of the grassland region near the Ubangi river. The author gives ethnographic data analyzing the cultural traditions and changes between the two systems. Reviewed in *Africa Report*, October 1962.

## MISSIONS, EDUCATION, AND ARTS

1973. ANDERSSON, EFRAIM. *Messianic popular movements in the Lower Congo*. Uppsala, Almqvist & Wiksells boktr. 1958. xiii, 287 p. illus., plates (part col.) (Studia ethnographica Upsaliensia, 14) GN654.A7

Distributed by W. S. Heineman, New York. Bibliography: p. xi-xiii.

The most comprehensive account in English of Simon Kimbangu and his cult of Ngunzism, with background and examination of other "prophet movements" in French Equatorial Africa. The writer, a former missionary, whose experience in the Congo ranged over 20 years, during his last term (1945-49) had collected all possible material on Kimbangu. He was unable to gain access to official archives in Leopoldville and Brazzaville, but in addition to printed sources he was able to make use of firsthand information from other missionaries and many African collaborators.

1974. *Annuaire des missions catholiques au Congo belge et au Ruanda-Urundi*. Bruxelles, L'Édition universelle, 1949. 671 p. maps. BV3625.C6A5

Edited by the Rev. J. van Wing, S.J., and V. Goemé, S.J. Includes history, current organization, locations, number of converts, directory of priests, etc. The 1949 volume is the 3d edition, the 2d edition having been in 1935.

1975. BOL, JEAN M. VAN. *La presse quotidienne au Congo belge*. Bruxelles, Pensée catholique, 1959. 112 p. (Études sociales, 3. sér. 23-24) PN5499.C6B6

Academic study of the African press in the Congo, based on analysis of the dailies. The author sketches the history of early missionary presses and examines present-day conditions, liberty of press, etc. Part 2, page 59-105, is a systematic study of nine individual dailies, beginning with *Courrier d'Afrique*.

A comprehensive listing, *Répertoire de la presse du Congo belge (1884-1958) et du Ruanda-Urundi (1920-1958)*, by Jean Berlage (Bruxelles, Commission belge de bibliographie, 1959. 193 p. Bibliographia belgica 43) names 662 periodicals and newspapers, with beginning, and where appropriate, closing dates for practically all.

1976. BRAEKMAN, E. M. *Histoire du protestantisme au Congo*. Bruxelles, Librairie des éclaireurs unionistes, 1961. 391 p. 4BX1788

(Collection "Histoire du protestantisme en Belgique et au Congo belge," t. 5)

Not available for examination. See also work by Ruth Slade in section on History (no. 1896).

1977. GORISSEN, PIERRE. "Public libraries and reading in the Congo"; tr. by Evelyn Gelber. *Wilson library bulletin*, v. 37, September 1962: 49-56. Z1217.W75, v. 32

A somewhat discouraging review of the situation of public libraries in the Congo, which were begun for

African readers only in 1946, and after an initial spurt have stagnated or declined. This article appeared too late to be included in the Library of Congress bibliography, *African Libraries, Book Production, and Archives*, in which there were no recent entries for the section on the Congo.

1978. JADOT, JOSEPH M. *Les écrivains africains du Congo belge et du Ruanda-Urundi; une histoire, un bilan, des problèmes*. Bruxelles, 1959. 166 p. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, n.s., t. 17, fasc. 2) DT641.A27 n.s., t. 17, fasc. 2

Includes bibliography.

By the President of the Belgian Association of Colonial Writers and Artists, a staff member of the Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer. His history of African writing in the Congo goes back to the foundation of the Free State and includes names of periodicals and books, poems, etc., by Africans. The "bilan" gives more exact data on the authors. Among the problems M. Jadot discusses is that which prompted his study, the need for some professional organization and promotion of education. There is a five-page bibliography.

1979. KOCHNITZKY, LÉON. *Negro art in Belgian Congo*. 3d rev. ed. New York, Belgian Government Information Center, 1952. 83 p. illus. (Art, life and science of Belgium, no. 10) N7397.C6K6 1952

Descriptive essay and 40 pages of plates. This booklet is one of a conspicuous series issued to inform the American reading public about Belgian affairs. The Belgian Congo is one of the important art regions of Africa, and many specimens of carving from the Congo will be found in the general books on art in Africa.

Another official booklet, by G. D. Périer, *Les arts populaires du Congo belge*, published by the Office de Publicité in Brussels (Collection nationale, 1948. 77 p.), analyzed native rhythm, music and dance, weaving, architecture, as well as pottery, painting, and sculpture.

1980. MAISTRIAUX, ROBERT. *Les méthodes actives en terre d'Afrique; une expérience pédagogique pilote au Congo*. Bruxelles, EDITEST, 1960. 142 p. illus. LB1027.M316

By the author of *L'Intelligence noire et son destin*, this monograph explains and draws conclusions from the data resulting from an experiment in an "activity program" carried out in teaching Bantu children. The writer repeats his thesis that African children need 3 or



4 years of special teaching to catch up to their European counterparts.

1981. MEEUS, FRANCISCUS DE, and R. STEENBERGHEEN. *Les missions religieuses au Congo belge*. Anvers, Éditions Zaire, 1947. 209 p. BV3625.C6M4

Useful sketch of the history, work, and status of missions—mainly Catholic but also touching on Protestant—in the Congo. There are included several tables of congregations, missionary societies, etc. A long bibliography (p. 199–207) cites an extensive literature studied. The authors are two Benedictine monks.

1982. OLBRECHTS, FRANS M. *Les arts plastiques du Congo belge*. [Illus. de J. Van Noten] Bruxelles, Éditions Erasme, 1959. 161 p. plates. NB1097.C7504

Scholarly treatise on the sculpture, ceramics, and other works of plastic art of the Ba-Congo, Ba-Kuba, Ba-Luba, northeast and northwest Congo. Fine plates. This French version, posthumously published, is translated from the Dutch original of 1946. Sources

are indicated in "Bibliography and Notes," p. 131–140.

1983. PEVÉE, ALBERT. *Place aux noirs*. Bruxelles, Éditions Europe-Afrique, 1960. 105 p. (Collection "Carrefours africains," 4) LC2808.C6P4

Written before independence by an author who had had experience in the Congo in 1957–59. He is discussing education, with special reference to training for government services and the coming Africanization of the administrative cadres.

1984. *Teaching and education in Belgian Congo and in Ruanda-Urundi*. [New York, Belgian Government Information Center] 1958. 48 p. illus. LA1911.T4

A message from the Minister of Colonies opens this pamphlet prepared for International World's Exhibition, Brussels, 1958. In it he says, "I think that it is not useless to stress again how important [the Belgian] effort is on the level of primary and basic education. We have drawn the largest part of the population from its age-long ignorance, and we have started it on the way towards a better life."

## Katanga

### Bibliography

1985. WALRAET, MARCEL. *Bibliographie du Katanga*. Bruxelles, 1954–60. 3 v. maps. (Publications du Comité spécial du Katanga. Sér. C. Bibliographie, t. 14, fasc. 1–2) Z3693.K3W3

In addition to this comprehensive coverage of literature on the Katanga for recent years, a third fascicle, covering the years 1925–49, was published by the Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer (Mémoires, Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Série in-8°, n.s., t. 23, fasc. 4).

1986. CONGO REPUBLIC (Leopoldville) Ministry of Foreign Affairs. Document Division. *The province of Katanga and Congolese independence*. Leopoldville, 1962. 62 p. (Its Publication no. 1). MBU

1987. CORNET, RENÉ J. *Terre katangaise; cinquantième anniversaire du Comité spécial du Katanga, 1900–1950*. [Bruxelles?] 1950. 317 p. illus., maps. DT665.K3C63

Deluxe volume published for the 50th anniversary of the Special Committee of Katanga, which was established in 1900. The writer, whose father, a geologist, had been one of the pioneers in the exploration of this district famous for its mineral wealth, had published an earlier history on the same subject, *Katanga* (3d ed., Brussels, Cuypers, 1946). In the present work he described graphically the early expeditions, the formation of the country, and the development of its great mining industries and other economic progress. The book is handsomely illustrated with photographs and drawings. Mr. Cornet was at the time editor of the leading popular journal devoted to the Belgian Congo, the *Revue coloniale belge*.

1988. DAVISTER, PIERRE. *Katanga enjeu du monde; récits et documents*. Bruxelles, Éditions Europe-Afrique [c1960] 315 p. (Collection "Carrefours africains," 5) DT665.K3D3

A journalist's eyewitness account of events in and involving Katanga immediately before and after independence, to the end of 1960. The attempt is at strict objectivity.

1989. *Elisabethville, 1911–1961*. Bruxelles, L. Cuypers, 1961. 265 p. DT665.E4E4

A luxury volume prepared for an International Fair in Elisabethville in July 1961. The frontispiece is a portrait of President Tshombé. Contents are mostly a historical account from missionary records and documents of the Comité Spécial du Katanga, INFORCONGO, Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale, Union Minière, etc. Appendixes are by chiefs of provinces and Belgian officials. There is a short bibliography.

1990. HEMPSTONE, SMITH. *Rebels, mercenaries, and dividends; the Katanga story*. New York, Praeger, 1962. 250 p. illus. (Books that matter) DT665.K3H4

A spirited and full account of the secession of Katanga from the Congo Republic after independence, with sufficient background to give an interpretation of the region and particularly of the Union Minière (which is not, says the journalist author, "a particular friend of mine"). Mr. Hempstone deplored the U.S. involvement in complete support of the United Nations in the Congo and Katanga as carried out until the end of his story in December 1961. The book is critically reviewed by L. Gray Cowan in *Africa Report*, December 1962.

1991. KALANDA, MABIKA. *Baluba et Lulua, une ethnie à la recherche d'un nouvel équilibre*. Bruxelles, Éditions de Remarques congolaises, 1959. 106 p. (Coll. "Études congolaises," no. 2). DT640.K3

Historical account of the traditional antagonism between these two tribes of the Kasai and Katanga.

1992. KATANGA, Congo (Province). *Livre blanc du Gouvernement katangais sur les événements de septembre et décembre 1961*. The Katangese Government's White Paper on the events of September and December 1961. Elisabethville, 1962. 111 p. plates. DT665.K3A52

1993. ———. *Livre blanc du Gouvernement katangais sur les activités des hors-la-loi dans certains territoires baluba*. White book of the Katanga Government about the outlaw activities in some Baluba areas. [Elisabethville, 1962] 67 p. plates. DT665.K3A5

Two documents carrying atrocity stories and pictures, the first anti-U.N., the second anti-Balubakat

(party of Jason Sendwe). Text in French and English.

1994. LEBLANC, MARIA. *Personnalité de la femme katangaise; contribution à l'étude de son acculturation*. Louvain, Publications universitaires, 1960. 403 p. (Studia psychologica) GN654.L37

Bibliography: p. 369–397.

Technical study based on intensive research carried out in the Centre de Psychologie et de Pédagogie de l'Union Minière at Elisabethville. Published posthumously; the foreword is a tribute to the brilliant young scholar who was its author. Much of the content is concerned with results of intelligence testing.

1995. O'BRIEN, CONOR CRUISE. *To Katanga and back, U.N. case history*. New York, Simon & Schuster, 1963. 370 p. DLC

By the controversial Irish officer who was United Nations representative in Katanga from June to November 1961, and resigned in protest at U.N. policy. The book is reviewed as "sensationalist" in the *London Times Literary Supplement* of Nov. 16, 1962.

1996. ROBERT, MAURICE. *Géologie et géographie du Katanga, y compris l'étude des ressources et de la mise en valeur*. Bruxelles, 1956. 620 p. fold. maps. Published under auspices of the Union Minière du Haut-Katanga. QE335.R62

Bibliography: p. 589–601.

Folio volume prepared in honor of the 50th anniversary of the founding of the Union Minière. The author, an authority on development of Central Africa, describes it as a synthesis of available knowledge about this territory which was perhaps the largest single contributor to Belgian prosperity. (He is himself responsible for about 30 of the studies recorded in the bibliography.) The first part is on physical and biological geography of the area; Part 2 tells briefly the history of European penetration; and Part 3 (p. 359–588) covers in detail the development of resources of the Katanga, mineral, vegetable and animal, and "sources of energy," including hydro-electric power and communications.

1997. UNION MINIERE DU HAUT KATANGA, Elisabethville, Belgian Congo. *Union Minière du Haut Katanga, 1906–1956. Évolution des*



techniques et des activités sociales. Bruxelles, L. Cuypers, 1957. 355 p. plates, col. maps, col. diagrs., tables. DLC

An anniversary volume, containing papers by members of the Union, some of them presented at scientific congresses. The *Rapports du Conseil d'administration* of Union Minière are issued annually in Brussels. L.C. has been receiving them since 1940.

1998. YDEWALLE, CHARLES D'. *L'Union Minière du Haut Katanga; de l'âge colonial à l'indépendance*. Paris, Plon, 1960. 174 p. illus. (Histoire des grandes entreprises, 3)

HD9539.C7U43

An enthusiastic account of the great mining enterprise by a Belgian journalist who has written extensively on the Congo.

## Rwanda and Burundi

*Note:* The Republic of Rwanda and the Kingdom of Burundi on July 1, 1962, replaced the former combined Trust Territory of Ruanda-Urundi under Belgian administration. Publications of the two countries will presumably henceforth be separate. The existent literature, however, relates so largely to the two countries together that they are here treated under a single heading.

1999. BAECK, L. *Étude socio-économique du centre extra-coutumier d'Usumbura*. Bruxelles, 1957. 156 p. tables. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, n.s., t. 6, fasc. 5) DT641.A27, n.s., t. 6, fasc. 5

This study, carried out through research for IRSAC, received a prize in an annual competition in 1956. The author, who had taken an M.A. in economics at Berkeley, studied in great detail the conditions of life in the urbanized society of Usumbura. He includes tabulated statistics of population and employment, income, cost of living, etc., and lists of household possessions.

2000. BELGIUM. Ministère des affaires africaines. *Rapport de l'administration belge du Ruanda-Urundi*. Bruxelles, 1921-[60] annual. J814.R8N13

The report submitted each year to the General Assembly of the United Nations by Belgium as trustee for Ruanda-Urundi (before 1939 to League of Nations), was issued by this Ministry as Ministère des Colonies from 1921-57, in 1958 and 1959 as Ministère du Congo Belge et du Ruanda-Urundi.

2001. BELGIUM. Ministère des colonies (now Ministère des affaires africaines). *The handbook of the Ruanda-Urundi ten year plan*. Brussels, Les Éditions de Visscher, 1952. 91 p. illus. HC557.R8A54 1952a

Translation of a brief summary of the plan for economic and social development of Ruanda-Urundi

promulgated by the Ministry of Colonies in 1951. (Full text in English, De Visscher, 1951. 600 p. 21 inset maps.)

2002. BELGIUM. Office de l'information et des relations publiques pour le Congo belge et le Ruanda-Urundi. *Le Ruanda-Urundi*. Bruxelles, 1959. 377 p. 18 col. maps (6 in pocket) diagrs., tables. DT449.R8A55

An attempted synthesis, a "descriptive essay of the past and of the present-day evolution of the Territory placed under the trusteeship of Belgium, an inventory of its institutions and daily life. . . . at once a work of popularization and a document to consult" for all concerned with Ruanda-Urundi. Prepared by specialists, a number of them connected with IRSAC. The five parts treat geography, history, governmental organization, economic life, social life. A translation into English by Goldie Blankoff-Scarr was issued in parts by this office in 1960: *Rwanda-Urundi: Economy* (2 v.); *Ruanda-Urunda: Social Achievements* (79 p.); *Ruanda-Urundi: Geography and History* (79 p.).

2003. BOURGEOIS, R. *Banyarwanda et Barundi*. Bruxelles, 1954+ illus., maps. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°) DT641.A27

Bibliographies included.

The Banyarwanda are the peoples of Rwanda, the Barundi those of Burundi. Four volumes have been published of this exhaustive anthropological study in the Mémoires series. The first volume, *Ethnographie*, was issued last, in 1957 (790 p. n.s., t. 15). The earlier volumes were: Vol. 2, *La Coutume* (1954. 472 p. t. 35); Vol. 3, *Religion et magie* (1956. 376 p. n.s., t. 4); Vol. 4, *L'Évolution du contrat de bail à cheptel au Ruanda-Urundi* (1958. 60 p. n.s., t. 9, fasc. 4).

2004. BURUNDI. Office national de presse du Burundi. *Infor Burundi*. Usumbura, 1962+ weekly. DLC

A weekly information bulletin published by the new government and begun some months before the independence date. It is a primary source for current data on the Kingdom of Burundi.

A bimonthly journal, *Burundi chrétien*, of which the Library of Congress has received a few issues, is published under the auspices of the Archbishopric of Kitega in Burundi. The only monographic work cataloged in the Library of Congress collections giving separate treatment to this country is an account of the White Fathers missions, *Urundi* (Namur, Éditions "Grands lacs," 1949. 144 p. illus.).

2005. CENTRE DE RECHERCHE ET D'INFORMATION SOCIO-POLITIQUES. *Rwanda politique (1956-1961)*. Bruxelles, 1961. 420 p. (Les Dossiers du C.R.I.S.P.) DT449.R9C4

The first complete assemblage of facts and documents (many unpublished) relating to the political changes as the Batutsi-dominated feudal society broke down under the voting weight of the formerly suppressed Bahutu majority.

2006. JENTGEN, PIERRE. *Les frontières du Ruanda-Urundi et le régime international de tutelle*. Bruxelles, 1957. 155 p. maps. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, n.s., t. 13. fasc. 2)

DT641.A27 n.s., t. 13, fasc. 2

2007. KAGAME, ALEXIS. *La divine pastorale*. Traduction française, par l'auteur, de la première veillée d'une épopée écrite en langue ruandaise. Dix lino d'Ant. de Vinck. Commentés par Jean-Marie Habig. Bruxelles, Éditions du Marais, 1952. 109 p. illus. PL8608.Z77K3

Abbé Kagame, himself a Tutsi, is the best known interpreter of Ruanda traditional history and linguistics. This volume is a poetic translation of the epic of his people. A number of other studies by his hand are listed in the catalog of the Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer (no. 1860). They include extracts from the work presented as his thesis at the Université Pontificale Grégorienne in Rome, *La Philosophie bantu-rwandaise de l'Être* (Bruxelles, 1955. 64 p. maps. ARSC. Mémoires. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Coll. in-8°, n.s., t. 6, fasc. 1). The most recent is a military history: *L'histoire des armées-bovines dans l'ancien Rwanda*.

1961. 147 p. (ARSOM. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, n.s., t. 25, fasc. 4).

2008. LEURQUIN, PHILIPPE. *Le niveau de vie des populations rurales du Ruanda-Urundi*. Louvain, Institut de recherches économiques et sociales, 1960. 420 p. (Publications de l'Université Lovanium de Léopoldville, 6) DLC

2009. LIÈGE. UNIVERSITÉ. Fondation pour les recherches scientifiques au Congo belge et au Ruanda-Urundi. *Le problème de l'enseignement dans le Ruanda-Urundi*. Elisabethville, C.E.P.S.I., 1958. 125 p. (Centre d'étude des problèmes sociaux indigènes. Collection de mémoires) LA2090.R8L5

Report of a study mission on educational problems conducted by Mme Dubuisson-Brouha, E. Natalis, and J. Paulus.

2010. MAQUET, JACQUES J. *The premise of inequality in Ruanda*; a study of political relations in a central African kingdom. London, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1961. vii, 199 p. illus. maps. GN654.M3

Bibliography: p. 186-194.

Professor Maquet, a highly trained social anthropologist, was Director of IRSAC (Institut de Recherches Scientifiques en Afrique Centrale) in Elisabethville. This book is a synthesis of research carried out over some years; it was published in part at Tervueren (Musée du Congo Belge) in 1954 as *Le Système des relations sociales dans le Ruanda ancien*. It is reviewed in *Africa Report* of July 1962 with the comment that it will stand as an authoritative analysis of the respective roles of the ruling Batutsi and the subject Bahutu in the former society of Ruanda-Urundi.

A photograph album, *Ruanda; essai photographique sur une société africaine en transition* (Bruxelles, Elsevier, 1957. 192 p.), was prepared by Professor Maquet in collaboration with Denyse Hiernaux-l'Hoest. The pictures of the photogenic Batutsi, their servants the Bahutu, their country, cattle, arts, and culture, are accompanied by annotations of anthropological significance. In 1962 Professor Maquet has extended his socioanthropological analysis to much of sub-Saharan Africa in *Afrique, les civilisations noires*, prepared in collaboration with Jean-Claude Schalhli (Paris, Horizons de France. 288 p. illus.).

2011. ——— and MARCEL D'HERTEFELT. *Élections en société féodale; une étude sur l'introduction du vote populaire au Ruanda-Urundi*. Bruxelles, 1959. 231 p. (Académie royale



des sciences coloniales; Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°. n.s., t. 21, fasc. 2) DT641.A27, n.s., t. 21, fasc. 2

Reflecting the changes in the society of Ruanda-Urundi as shown in the elections even several years before the voters of Ruanda, some 84 percent of the population, abolished the already overthrown Batutsi monarchy in the U.N.-supervised elections of September 1961, the year before independence of the now separated countries.

2012. MUNYANGAJU, ALOYS. *L'actualité politique au Ruanda*. 1959. 52 p. HN814.R8M8

A political booklet by a member of the "groupe démocrate progressiste," which includes elements of both Hutu and Tutsi.

2013. PAUWELS, M. *Imana et le culte des mânes au Rwanda*. Bruxelles, 1958. 263 p. illus., maps. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, n.s., t. 17, fasc. 1) DT641.A27, n.s., t. 17, fasc. 1

Bibliography: p. 255-259.

A study of ancestor-worship among the Batutsi and Bahutu.

2014. *Ruanda Urundi*. Pref. by Jean-Paul Harroy. Illus. by Claude Lyr. Map by Yves Dupuis. Designed by Robert Geerts. Brussels, INFORCONGO, 1958. 147 p. illus. DT449.R8L9

Picture album prepared for the Brussels World Fair in 1958. 147 plates, mostly full page, with separate section of captions. The preface is by the Governor of Ruanda-Urundi.

2015. *Le Ruanda-Urundi; ses ressources naturelles, ses populations*. Par J. P. Harroy [et al.] Bruxelles, Les Naturalistes belges, 1956. 153 p. illus., maps, tables. HC557.R8R8  
Includes bibliographies.

Contents.—La lutte contre la dissipation des ressources naturelles au Ruanda-Urundi, par J. P. Harroy.—La végétation et les territoires botaniques du Ruanda-Urundi, par J. Lebrun.—Les cultures d'altitude du Ruanda-Urundi, par V. G. Philemotte.—Problème de l'élevage du bétail au Ruanda-Urundi, par Y. Biche.—Esquisse d'une faune herpétologique du Ruanda-Urundi, par R. F. Laurent.—Le lac Tanganyika, par J. J. Symoens.—Les populations du Ruanda et de l'Urundi, par H. Guillaume.

The first contribution was by the Governor of Ruanda-Urundi, former Director of IRSAC. His collaborators were specialists in their fields, Professor Lebrun, Secretary General of INEAC, the others officials in the Ruanda-Urundi administration.

2016. UNITED NATIONS. Secretariat. *Study of population, land utilization, and land system in Ruanda-Urundi*. New York, 1957. 130 p. (United Nations. [Document] T/AC.36/L.60) HB3669.R8U5

This study is one of the more substantial documents relating to Ruanda-Urundi as they are listed in the United Nations Documents Index. Other papers of significance, besides the annual report (no. 2000), are the reports of the Trusteeship Council Visiting Mission to East Africa. The Mission inspected Ruanda-Urundi in 1948, 1951, 1954, and 1957, their reports being published by the United Nations in New York in 1949, 1952, 1955, and 1958, as Supplements to the *Official Records*.

2017. VANSINA, JAN. *L'évolution du royaume Rwanda des origines à 1900*. Bruxelles, 1962. 100 p. (Académie royale des sciences d'outre-mer. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-8°, n.s., t. 26 (histoire), fasc. 2 et dernier) DT641.A27, n.s., t. 26, fasc. 2

The author has been teaching in 1961-62 at the University of Wisconsin.

# PORTUGUESE AFRICA

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

2018. "Bibliografia sobre economia ultramarina portuguesa." *Estudos ultramarinos*, no. 4, 1959: 255-281. JV4201.E8 1959

This issue of the quarterly review published by the Instituto Superior de Estudos Ultramarinos in Lisbon has not been available for examination. The periodical, begun in 1948 as *Estudos coloniais*, is a valuable source for material on Portuguese Africa.

2019. GONÇALVES, JOSÉ JÚLIO. "Bibliografia antropológica do Ultramar Português." In Portugal. Agência Geral do Ultramar. *Boletim geral do ultramar*, ano 37, março-abril-out.-dez. 1961, *passim*. JV4201.A33 1961

A set of references printed in the form of cards that might be clipped for use in a file, though not on one side of the page only. The bibliography started in the combined issues of March-April and was concluded in the combined volume for issues of October-December.

2020. PORTUGAL. Centro de Documentação Científica Ultramarina. *Instituições portuguesas de interesse ultramarino*. Ed. provisória. Lisboa, 1960. 109 p. AS298.A53
2021. ———. *Periódicos portugueses de interesse ultramarino actualmente em publicação*. Lisboa, 1959. 89 p. DLC

These two comprehensive listings of Portuguese institutions and periodicals concerned with overseas development were published also in nos. 2-5 of the international journal *Informations EURAFDOC* (Paris, Union Eurafricaine de Documentation, February-May 1960). The list of periodicals includes official and unofficial serials published in Portugal and overseas. Many items from this list are included in the Library of Congress list of *Serials for African Studies*.

2022. PORTUGAL. Junta das Missões Geográficas e de Investigações do Ultramar. Centro de Documentação Científica Ultramarina. *Bibliografia científica da Junta de Investigações do Ultramar*. Lisboa, 1960. 371 p. Z2731.C7P63 1960

As complete as possible a list of studies and papers, including articles, prepared under the auspices of the Junta. Entries are classed by Universal Decimal Classification, mainly in the social sciences, pure and applied sciences, and geography. Auxiliary number at the right of each entry indicates place. Entries are on one side of page only, ready to be clipped for files. There is an author index. The material dates from the twenties to 1959. This bibliography is to be revised periodically. The Library of Congress has also the first edition, 1958.

A price list of official publications in print is available from the Agência Geral do Ultramar in Lisbon.

## GENERAL

(including History)

2023. BOXER, CHARLES R. *Four centuries of Portuguese expansion, 1415-1825; a succinct survey*. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1961. 102 p. illus. JV4211.B68

(Publications of the Ernest Oppenheimer Institute of Portuguese Studies of the University of the Witwatersrand, 3)

Professor Boxer holds the Camoens chair for Portuguese studies at King's College of the University of London, and has written extensively on the history of the Portuguese in Africa, the Far East, and Brazil. This booklet is a popular thumbnail sketch, delightfully illustrated with contemporary pictures. The focus of interest is Portugal rather than Africa.

2024. BRÁSIO, ANTÔNIO D. *Monumenta missionaria africana; África Ocidental*. Coligida e anotada pelo padre Antônio Brásio. 2. sér. Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, 1958+ v. 1 (746 p.) BV3500.B671



A collection of source accounts for Portuguese missions, in Latin and Portuguese. The first series was published in four volumes, 1952–54. The first volume of the second series covers the earliest years, 1342–1499.

2025. DUFFY, JAMES. *Portugal in Africa*. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1962. 240 p. DT36.D79

Bibliography: p. 230–232.

Published also in paperback edition by Penguin Books, Harmondsworth, Middlesex (Penguin African library, AP3).

2026. ———. *Portugal's African territories: present realities*. New York, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1962. 39 p. (Occasional papers for limited distribution, 1) DLC–AFR

2027. ———. *Portuguese Africa*. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1959. 389 p. illus. DT36.D8

Professor Duffy of Brandeis University is America's foremost expert on Portuguese Africa, and his 1959 book of that title is the most comprehensive and balanced work in English on the subject. Covering politico-economic history from the earliest times to the late fifties, it is an indispensable source for English-speaking students. His short book in 1962 outlines the past and analyzes more fully the "theory and reality" of contemporary Portuguese Africa under the Salazar Government, ending with consideration of the changes of the last decade and the beginning of the nationalist revolt. The Portuguese proposals of 1961, he says, "reveal an apparently sublime faith in the policy of integration for the African territories." He foresees no easy answer. His paper published by the Carnegie Endowment for International Peace is an examination of the "very fluid" situation in 1960–61, with analysis of the opposition groups, the National Liberation Movement, the Union of Angolan Peoples, etc. A concluding short bibliography of available works on Portuguese Africa lists less than 20 books and papers in English.

2028. *Garcia de Orta*; revista da Junta das Missões Geográficas e de Investigações do Ultramar. v. 1+ Lisboa, 1953+ illus. quarterly. JV4201.G3

The journal of this scholarly official body, carrying monograph-length articles on natural and human sciences. The last pages give the impressive list of publications of the Junta, including contents of earlier volumes of *Garcia de Orta*.

2029. GERSDORFF, RALPH VON. *Angola, Portugiesisch-Guinea, São Tomé und Príncipe, Kap Verde-Inseln, Spanish-Guinea*. Bonn, K. Schroeder, 1960. 165 p. illus. (Die Länder Afrikas, Bd. 23) DT611.G4

See general note on this series, no. 10. An announcement has been received in Jan. 1963 of a new work by this consulting economist, *Wirtschaftsprobleme Portugiesisch Afrikas* (Bielefeld, West Germany, 1962. 372 p.). It is reviewed as giving a full presentation of the Portuguese case for their administration in Africa.

2030. PATTEE, RICHARD. *Portugal na África contemporânea*. Coimbra, 1959. 793 p. tables. DT36.P3

Bibliography: p. 765–781.

By an American Catholic history professor, who presented the big, impressively documented study as a dissertation at the University of Coimbra. He begins with a general picture of Africa, mainly since the Second World War, then a chapter of sections on other countries, "Panorama da África contemporânea" (p. 113–220), before his 450-page analysis of the Portuguese colonies and their place in the new Africa. He defends the official Portuguese policy as legally and historically justified and considers attacks on it are by the "professional anticolonial bloc," presenting a danger to all Europe. In a final added chapter he examines the African world with special attention to Communist infiltration.

Professor Pattee has specialized in the study of Spanish, Latin American, and Portuguese contemporary history. His *Portugal and the Portuguese World* (Milwaukee, Bruce Pub. Co., 1958. 350 p.) won the Camões prize as the best book on Portugal published abroad. In 1959 a travel report from his pen, *Portugal em África: impressões de viagem pela África Portuguesa* (Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar. 163 p. illus., part col.) gave an optimistic picture of the territories, in which he felt Portugal had the right to be proud of her work.

2031. PORTUGAL. Agência Geral do Ultramar. *Boletim geral do Ultramar*. ano 1, no. 1+ Julho 1925+ illus., fold. col. maps. monthly. JV4201.A33

This official journal is of first importance for study of administrative matters relating to the overseas territories. It contains also specialist articles of general coverage, a regular review of missionary activity, a section of news and notes, a review of the press, and other features, including summary sections in English and French. Many issues include bibliographies which in some cases are complete listings of publications of

the Agency and records of books received, in other cases specialized bibliographical entries, "Fichas bibliográficas," printed in form to be cut for files.

2032. PORTUGAL. Junta das Missões Geográficas e de Investigações do Ultramar. *Atlas missionário português*. Lisboa, 1962. 175 p. maps. DLC-Map

2033. REGO, ANTÔNIO DA SILVA. *Portuguese colonization in the sixteenth century; a study of the Royal ordinances, Regimentos*. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1959. 116 p. (University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg. Publications of the Ernest Oppenheimer Institute of Portuguese Studies, 1) JV4214.R4

## POLITICS AND ECONOMICS

2034. ANDRADE, ANTÔNIO ALBERTO DE. *Many races—one nation; racial nondiscrimination always the cornerstone of Portugal's oversea policy*. Lisbon, 1961. 48 p. illus. JV4237.A6 1961

A short essay followed by a selection of citations from documents of Portuguese colonial policy, 1755, 1761, 1763, 1928, all to prove that racial discrimination does not exist. This pamphlet had been issued in slightly different form in 1954.

2035. *Anuário estatístico do ultramar; annuaire statistique d'outre-mer*. [1945?+] Lisboa, Tipografia Portuguesa. Prepared by the Portuguese Instituto Nacional de Estatística. HA1577.A2A55

Annual volume covering in detailed tables all aspects of population and economic life in the Portuguese overseas territories. There is a full index with subject breakdown under each country.

2036. AZEVEDO, ÁVILA DE. *Política de ensino em África*. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais, 1958. 198 p. illus. (Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais, 13) LA1501.A9

A treatise on the Portuguese educational policy in overseas territories.

2037. BELCHIOR, MANUEL DIAS. *A missão de Portugal em África*. v. 1. As autoridades administrativas ao serviço da amizade interracial. Lisboa, 1960+ DT36.B4

First volume of a study by an official of the Overseas administration who expresses the idealistic Portuguese concept of her mission to her African subjects, for whom he expresses sympathetic understanding. An earlier work, which had received a prize award from the Académia de Ciências of Lisbon, was *Compreendamos os negros!* (Lisboa, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, Agência Geral das Colónias, 1951. 185 p.). In both works the author stresses that the Portuguese rule rests on friendship between Black and White. He does not admit nationalism as a force for more than a tiny scattering of elites.

Two earlier books expressing forcefully the Portuguese policy of assimilation of the overseas possessions with the mother country and describing the administrative setup and opportunities for African development were by a former Governor General of Angola, José M. R. Norton de Matos: *África nossa; o que queremos e o que não queremos nas nossas terra de África* (Porto, Edições Marânus, 1953. 199 p.), and *A Nação una; organização política e administrativa dos territórios do ultramar português* (Lisboa, P. Ferreira, 1953. 335 p.).

2038. CAETANO, MARCELLO. *Os nativos na economia africana*. Coimbra, Coimbra Editora, 1954. 144 p. HC577.C3

Study of the question of African labor in Angola and Mozambique by a distinguished professor of law and late Minister of the Colonies. Professor Caetano discussed first demographic aspects, disapproving of large-scale colonization from Portugal, and migration of African workers from the Portuguese territories to South Africa and Rhodesia. Then he examined the relative productivity of African farmers and of those who work under European supervision on the big plantations, concluding that efforts must be made to improve both the quantity and quality of African labor, but that it should not be displaced by peasant immigrants. He advocated development of cooperatives.

An official statement of Portuguese colonial policy by Professor Caetano was published in English translation: *Colonizing Traditions, Principles and Methods of the Portuguese* (Lisbon, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, Agência Geral das Colónias, 1951. 54 p. illus.)

2039. CUNHA, JOAQUIM MOREIRA DA SILVA. *O trabalho indígena, estudo de actualizada*. Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, 1960. 305 p. DLC-LL

The first edition of this comprehensive study of labor law was published in 1949. The second edition is updated through 1959.



2040. DURIEUX, ANDRÉ. *Essai sur le statut des indigènes portugais de la Guinée, de l'Angola et du Mozambique*. Bruxelles, 1955. 70 p. (Académie royale des sciences coloniales. Classe des sciences morales et politiques. Mémoires in-4°, n.s., t. 5, fasc. 3)

DT641.A25, n.s., t. 5, fasc. 3

In this short essay a Belgian professor of administrative law examined recent legislation on the legal status of natives in the three Portuguese African territories, especially an act of May 1954, drawing comparisons with practice in the then Belgian Congo. He outlined the application of customary law and of general law to African affairs, the laws applicable to transactions between Europeans and Africans, and the procedure whereby the outstanding African may obtain the grant of Portuguese citizenship.

2041. EVANGELISTA, JÚLIO. *Portugal vis-a-vis the United Nations; the report by the Six and Convention 107*. Lisbon, 1961. 78 p.

JX4023.P638

By a Portuguese representative to the United Nations, this brochure voices his country's protest against the 1960 Report of the Special Committee of Six on the Transmission of Information regarding non-self-governing territories (U.N. Doc. A/4526, 3 Oct. 1960). Portugal claims that her territories are provinces, hence do not come under the provisions of the U.N. Convention.

2042. FIGUEIREDO, ANTÔNIO DE. *Portugal and its empire: the truth*. London, Gollancz, 1961. 159 p. illus.

DP680.F5

An outspoken indictment of the Salazar régime in its administration of the overseas territories. The author advocates a Pan-Portuguese Conference with African leaders represented. The book was reviewed in *West Africa*, August 19, 1961.

In the January 1963 issue of *Africa Report*, Ronald H. Chilcote reviews a "controversial paperback" by Manuel J. Homen de Mello, *Portugal, o ultramar e o futuro* (Lisboa, Gráfica Imperial, 1962. 133 p.), which has been distributed without interference from the Portuguese security police. The writer criticizes the Salazar dictatorship and advocates self-government for Angola and Mozambique.

2043. HAMMOND, RICHARD J. *Portugal's African problem: some economic facets*. New York, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 1962. 39 p. (Occasional paper no. 2)

DLC

This, like Professor Duffy's paper published by the Carnegie Endowment, is a processed pamphlet issued in a limited edition. The writer, an economic historian, is with the Food Research Institute at Stanford University. He writes here of historic Portuguese economic interests, the hindrances to development, the pre- and post-World War II development policies, and the possible consequences of separation. Four added leaves cite 41 references, mainly to works in Portuguese.

It is announced by the Hoover Institution Library at Stanford that a bibliography on Portuguese Africa by Professor Hammond will be issued in their Bibliographical Series in 1963.

2044. LUPI, LUIS C. *Quem incendiou o Congo?* [Crônicas y entrevistas] Um depoimento antecipado para o julgamento da história, no qual o "depoente" defende a causa de Portugal, apontandolhe alguns perigos, internos e externos, que urge combater. Lisboa, 1960. 174 p.

DT36.L8

The writer is a longtime Portuguese journalist and director of information services. This volume is a collection of his papers and speeches, voicing the official policy of Portugal in Africa. The last address is of April 2, 1960, "Angola and Mozambique—how and why the Portuguese settled . . . why and how they will remain there." According to Senhor Lupi, the Portuguese have a mission to save Africa from the Eastern menace; their slow advance is "inspired by humanitarian motives and a true sense of reality." Another speech by this officer, *Portugal in Africa; The Significance of the Visit of the President of the Republic to the Overseas Provinces* (published by the Agência Geral do Ultramar, Lisboa, 1957. 40 p.), had been delivered before the British Institute in Lisbon. He repeated his statement of official policy in a pamphlet in English, *Portugal and Her Overseas Provinces* (Lisbon, 1961. 45 p.).

2045. MOREIRA, ADRIANO. *Portugal's stand in Africa*. New York, University Publishers, 1962. 265 p.

DT36.M63

Addresses by the Portuguese Overseas Minister delivered from 1958 to 1961, with texts of major colonial decrees of 1961 that were supposed to ameliorate conditions. They include repeal of the Natives Statute, Provincial Settlement Boards for white emigrants, and establishment of municipal units of local government in "civilized" areas. The Portuguese defense of her policy is based on the multiracial concept. Senhor Moreira's enunciation and analysis of government

policy, *Política ultramarina*, was in its 4th edition in 1961 (Lisboa. Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais. Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais, no. 1).

2046. OLIVEIRA, JORGE E. DA COSTA. *Aplicação de capitais nas províncias ultramarinas*. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais, 1961. 374 p. ([Portugal] Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais. Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais, n.º 50) DLC

2047. PORTUGAL. Comissão para o Estudo da Produtividade em Africa. *Estudo sobre o absentismo e a instabilidade da mão-de-obra africana*. Lisboa. 1959-60. 3 v. illus. (Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais, 20) HD5837.A6P6

The first report of a study commission set up in accordance with a recommendation of CCTA for a broad study of productivity in Africa. This document is an extensive statistical survey of absenteeism and instability of the African labor force. Parts of it are general for all Africa south of the Sahara, but the bulk of the questionnaires analyzed were directed to Angola and Mozambique. The Commission was headed by Dr. Antônio Jorge Motta Veiga.

2048. UNITED NATIONS. General Assembly. Special Committee on Territories under Portuguese Administration. *Report*. 15 Aug. 1962. New York, 1962. 144 p. annexes. (Document A/5160) JV4227.U55

The Committee, consisting of representatives from Bulgaria, Ceylon, Colombia, Cyprus, Guatemala, Guinea, and Nigeria, had received no cooperation from the Portuguese Government, which had supplied no reports as directed for Administering Power in the Charter. After obtaining all possible information from sources outside the territories, they concluded that the situation "warrants the serious concern of the international community in every respect," and called for United Nations action against Portugal.

2049. U.S. Mutual Security Agency. Special Mission to Portugal for Economic Cooperation. *Preliminary report on reclamation projects in Angola and Mozambique*, by W. E. Corfitzen, reclamation specialist. Lisbon, 1952. 50 l. maps, tables. HD2142.U5

By a reclamation specialist invited to examine and comment on intended agricultural development schemes, particularly irrigation and drainage projects, and to make suggestions as to the appropriate type of technical assistance.

## ANTHROPOLOGY, SOCIOLOGY, AND CULTURE

2050. DIAS, JORGE. Portuguese contribution to cultural anthropology. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1961. 112 p. (Publications of the Ernest Oppenheimer Institute of Portuguese Studies of the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, 2)

DP532.7.D5

Lectures at the Witwatersrand University on the general subject of Portuguese cultural anthropology, and specifically on the Makonde, a Central Bantu people of Mozambique.

2051. *Estudos sobre antropologia física do Ultramar Português* [por] A. A. Mendes Correia [et al.] Lisboa, 1959. 153 p. (Memórias da Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 2. sér., 13)

DLC

2052. FAGG, WILLIAM B. *Afro-Portuguese ivories*. London, Batchworth Press, 1959. xxiii p., 47 illus. NK5987.F295

Plates of a collection of small art objects in ivory carved by craftsmen from Portuguese Africa. The short introduction is by the Deputy Keeper of the Department of Ethnography of the British Museum. Many of the plates picture salt cellars with lids. They are accompanied by one-sentence notes on facing pages.

2053. MACEDO, DIOGO DE. *Arte indígena portuguesa*. Lisboa, Editorial Ática, 1934. 46 p. 70 pl. (1 double) on 39 l. (República Portuguesa. Ministério das Colónias. [Publicações] da Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca. Agência Geral das Colónias. n.º 1) N7380.M23

List of plates in Portuguese, French and Italian.

Catalog of an exhibit of art and sculpture from Portuguese Africa.

2054. OLIVEIRA, ANTÔNIO DE. *Mahamba; tentativa de interpretação artística e psicológica de documentos de arte dos negros africanos*. Lisboa, 1959. 150 p. 76 plates, maps. (Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Estudos, ensaios e documentos, 57) N7380.064



In this theoretical study of the Negro art of Guinea, Angola, and Mozambique, the author, "when analyzing their artless statuettes, penetrating the soul of their idols which speak of a distant past, has . . . felt the laments of a people enslaved to its deities . . . moanings, changed in inert matter into true temples of mystic anxiety" (Summary in English, p. 143).

2055. PORTUGAL. Junta das Missões Geográficas e de Investigações do Ultramar. *Estudos sobre a etnologia do Ultramar Português*. v. 1. Lisboa, 1960. 188 p. plates. (*Its Estudos, ensaios e documentos*, no. 81)  
GN590.P6, v. 1

A collection of scholarly papers on ethnology in Portuguese Africa. This first volume contains essays on the Angolares of São Tomé, the Quioca of Angola, Angolan concepts of death, medicine of tribes of Por-

tuguese Guinea. Each paper is followed by a résumé in French and English.

2056. ———. *Estudos sobre antropologia física do Ultramar Português*, by A. A. Mendes Correia, L. Ferreira Paulo [and others]. Lisboa, 1959. 153 p. (*Its Memórias*, 2 sér. 13)  
GN62.P6

Physical anthropology, with anthropometric data on natives of São Tomé, Portuguese Guinea, and Angola, also of Macao. The writers are well-known Portuguese anthropologists and Africanists.

2057. REGO, ANTÔNIO DA SILVA. *Alguns problemas sociológico-missionários da África negra*. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais, 1960. 137 p. (*Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais*, no. 32)  
BV2063.R43

## Angola

### GENERAL

(including History and Economics)

2058. AMARAL, ILÍDIO DO. *Aspectos do povoamento branco de Angola*. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1960. 83 p. (*Estudos, ensaios e documentos*, no. 74) DLC

Not available for examination.

2059. ANGOLA. Direcção dos Serviços de Economia. *Angola, província de Portugal em África*. Realização gráfica de Publicações Unidade. Luanda, 1953. 209 p. illus., part col.  
DT611.A3A53

An attractive volume setting forth in a favorable light the Portuguese accomplishments in economic and social development of Angola.

2060. ASSOCIAÇÃO INDUSTRIAL DE ANGOLA. *Guia industrial de Angola*; edição única comemorativa do 30.º aniversário da Associação Industrial de Angola. Luanda, Angola, 1960. 740 p.  
HF3929.A6A8

A big volume of business addresses.

2061. AZEVEDO, JOÃO MARIA CERQUEIRA DE. *Angola, exemplo de trabalho*. Luanda, Angola, 1958. 529 p.  
HC578.A5A89

Study of the development of the economy of Angola, its waterways, communications, towns, etc. The fac-

tual survey, including many statistical tables, covers economic history up to the turn of the 20th century.

2062. BARNS, T. ALEXANDER. *Angolan sketches*. London, Methuen, 1928. 206 p.  
DT611.B3

By an explorer of the Congo, this informative book included simple statements of historical background and systematic description by regions—the Cabinda enclave to the north between the French Congo and Belgian Congo, the Ba-Congo, the three main regions of Luanda, Benguela and Mossamedes, each with coastal lowlands, increasingly dry as they run south toward the Kalahari desert of Southwest Africa, and pleasant, well-watered highlands in the interior. There is also a description of a trip up the Benguela railway line, then in process of construction (opened in 1929).

In February 1928 Mr. Barns read a paper before the Royal Geographical Society, "In Portuguese West Africa: Angola and the Isles of the Guinea Gulf," which was published in the *Geographical Journal* (v. 72, July 1928, p. 18–37). In this he gives some geographical description of Angola, including comment on the new railway and its course, and speaks at greater length about the islands of São Tomé and Príncipe, where he had collected natural history specimens and visited the cacao plantations. He was much impressed with management of native labor on the plantations which 20 years before had been the subject of the slavery controversy; regarding labor conditions, he declared that "I can say with certainty that the comfort and welfare of the natives are studied to a degree that could scarcely be equalled in any other part of the world."

2063. BOXER, CHARLES R. *Salvador de Sá and the struggle for Brazil and Angola, 1602-1686*. London, University of London, 1952. 444 p. illus. F2528.C67B6

Historical biography of a colonial governor of Brazil and General of the Brazil fleets. Salvador de Sá was described in a 17th-century letter quoted by Dr. Boxer in the dedication as "a notable old Stickler that formerly had recovered Angola from the Hollanders." In the early 17th century, slaves were being exported at the rate of 15,000 a year from the Congo and Angola to Spanish and Portuguese America; they were baptized by boatloads before embarkation. Professor Boxer called his chapter on the slave trade and the war with the Dutch for Luanda and Benguela "Angola, 'the Black Mother.'" He commented that to a Marxist historian this struggle for Angola would seem merely a fight for the most lucrative slave market of West Africa, but that the Portuguese, despite their cruelty to the natives, "sincerely believed that they were fighting God's battles and saving Negro souls from the fatal infection of heresy."

2064. COMPANHIA DO CAMINHO DE FERRO DE BENGUELA. *Benguela railway*. [Benguela, Angola?] 1960. 34 p. DLC

A short statement for English readers regarding the railway which runs from Lobito Bay in the central province of Angola, Benguela, to the border of the Katanga and connects the Atlantic coast with the rail lines through Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland into Mozambique. It was built largely through British private enterprise.

2065. DAVIDSON, BASIL. *The African awakening*. New York, Macmillan, 1955. 262 p. illus. DT639.D35 1955a

In this British Labor writer's book inveighing against colonialism in central Africa (see under Congo, no. 1874), the four chapters on Angola were done at the commission of *Harper's Magazine*, which in 1904 had sent another reporter, Henry Nevinson, to bring back evidences of genuine slavery in that Portuguese colony. Mr. Davidson reports conditions which he considers hardly changed in practice, though in theory the contract labor system of the Portuguese administration is well furnished with safeguards for native workers. Two of the chapter titles suggest his theme—"A Modern Slavery" and "Coast of Sorrow." Another chapter is on São Tomé, the island to the north which he claims is still a penal settlement for

African political troublemakers ("average of five a month"), its cocoa plantations still receiving 5,000 contract laborers a year. He is scornful of the "sop" given the "civilized" African *assimilados*, and declares that the current exportation of poor whites from Portugal to Angola will inevitably lead to the racial discrimination of which the Portuguese have vaunted themselves as free. A part of this section of *The African Awakening* was published in *Harper's Magazine* in July 1954, with the title, "A Modern Slavery" (v. 209:56-63).

2066. EGERTON, F. CLEMENT C. *Angola in perspective; endeavour and achievement in Portuguese West Africa*. London, Routledge & K. Paul, 1957. 272 p. illus. DT611.E3

The writer, an enthusiastic student of Portuguese colonial history, is also an apologist for the Portuguese system of colonization. In an earlier work, *Angola without Prejudice* (Lisbon, Agency General for the Overseas Territories, 1955. 30 p.), he had offered a rejoinder to "the misrepresentation of a remarkably hasty investigator," which sought to disprove the criticisms leveled by Basil Davidson in his *African Awakening* (above). The present full-length country study has as prologue an introductory sketch, then a section on Angolan history, and a long section describing the country and administration as he had seen them in 1951.

2067. GRAHAM, R. H. CARSON. *Under seven Congo kings*. London, Carey Press, 1931. 293 p. illus., maps. BV3625.K6G7

Missionary work including a little general history, but concentrated mainly on the pioneer work of the Protestant missions in the Portuguese Congo (Ba-Congo), northern province of Angola, centering around the San Salvador station, which was founded at the ancient capital of the region in 1887 by the Baptist Missionary Societies. The writer, whose own experience covered many years, gave some account of native life and customs and discussed the strained relations between the Portuguese administration and the missionaries, particularly the great deterrent to mission educational work presented by the Portuguese language. A long annotated bibliography of the Congo compiled by Mercier Gamble (p. 256-293) cites French and Belgian studies as well as Portuguese.

2068. LASZLO, ANDREAS E. *Doctors, drums, and dances*. Garden City, N.Y., Hanover House, 1955. 284 p. illus. DT611.L3



Interest in this physician's narrative of an expedition into the remote interior of Angola is focused on primitive tribal life, rites, and ceremonies, particularly as to medical aspects. In his foreword the author comments that the natives are little touched by white man's culture; the slow and patient teaching of the missions is given the primitive, "improving his health and living standard only as he is able to absorb it," and without much friction. Except for admiring accounts of a few missions and occasional references to the language and individual officials, Dr. Laszlo had little concern with Portuguese influences in Angola.

2069. MARTINS, MANUEL ALFREDO DE MORAIS. *Contacto de culturas no Congo Português*; achegas para o seu estudo. [Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar] 1958. 166 p. (Ministério do Ultramar. Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais, 11) DT650.M32

A study of the Portuguese influence on the peoples of the lower Congo, from the 16th-century kingdoms on to the present. The author considers the effects in economy, material life, techniques, religion, language, etc.

2070. MENDES, AFONSO. *A Huíla e Moçâmedes*; considerações sobre o trabalho indígena. [Lisboa] Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1958. 208 p. (Ministério do Ultramar. Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais, 12) HD8829.A52M4

Not examined.

2071. REBELO, HORACIO DE SÁ VIANA. *Angola na África deste tempo*; pensamento e acção no governo da província. Lisboa, 1961. 296 p. illus. DT611.7.R4

Reminiscences of a former Governor of Angola, quoting lavishly from official documents. He was much concerned with questions of urbanization, education of Africans and Europeans, roads, poor whites, relations with neighboring states, etc. His term of office had been from 1955–59.

2072. SANTOS, AUGUSTO L. FERREIRA DO, and V. M. RABAÇA GASPAS. *Estrutura do comércio externo de Angola*; alguns aspectos. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais, 1959. 114 p. 44 tables, part fold. HF3929.A6S24

Extensive statistical analysis of many aspects of Angolan commerce.

2073. SOUSA DIAS, GASTÃO. *Os Portugueses em Angola*. Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, 1959. 329 p. illus. DT602.S6

Posthumously edited and published history of Portuguese discovery, exploration, and settlement of Angola, covering from 1482 to 1815. The author, a former officer in the Angolan service, had died in 1942. The long list of his other books and papers regarding Angolan history is given on flyleaves.

## POLITICS (Nationalist Revolt)

2074. ABRANCHES, ESTHER. *Afrique, dernier problème*. Luanda, 1960. 133 p. DT600.A2

An expression of the viewpoint of Europeans in Angola regarding relations between Angolans and Portuguese. It is the author's contention that there is friendship and trust when the Angolans are not corrupted by Western—especially American—civilization.

2075. ADDICOTT, LEN E. *Cry Angola!* London, SCM Press, 1962. 144 p. map. (Living church books) DLC

Presenting the revolt as seen by Protestant missionaries, with sympathy for the nationalists.

2076. *Angola : a symposium*. London, Published for the Institute of Race Relations by Oxford University Press, 1962. 160 p. DT611.8.A6

A collection of views regarding the revolt in Angola in the spring of 1961, including the official Portuguese statement, the impressions of Protestant missionaries, reports from the Catholic press, etc. A review in the *London Times Literary Supplement* of May 18, 1962, says ". . . this publication goes a fair way towards filling the gaps in public knowledge of what has happened and is happening."

2077. FELGAS, HELIO A. ESTEVES. *Guerra em Angola*. Lisboa, Livraria Clássica Editora A. M. Teixeira, 1961. 227 p. DT611.7.F4

By a former Governor of the Portuguese Congo and prolific writer on the affairs of Portuguese Africa, this is a survey of antecedents as well as events of the revolt of 1961 and their international implications. The "barbarities which were thought impossible in this century" of the first terrorist actions are discussed in detail, as well as Portuguese measures of repression. The United Nations role is shown as villainous, and Holden Roberto is "a ferocious assassin of hundreds of women and children."

The views of Senhor Felgas are typical of those generally expressed in the Portuguese press. Among other publications of the same character reaching the Library of Congress are: Gonçalves Cotta, *Grito de Angola; carta aos senhores Kennedy e Khrushchchev* (Lisboa, 1961. 123 p.); Alfredo Diogo, *Angola perante uma conspiração internacional* (Luanda, Instituto de Angola, 1961. 75 p.); Almeida Santos, *Angola mártir; reportagens dos jornais de Luanda de 20 de março a 19 de julho de 1961* (Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, 1961. 85 p.).

The extreme opposite viewpoint of militant African nationalism is represented in a special issue on Angola of *Présence africaine* (no. 42/43, 3d quarter 1962). Among contributors are Mario de Andrade, head of the MPLA (Popular Movement for the Liberation of Angola) and Nkrumah. Extracts are included from speeches of African delegates during the United Nations debate on Angola in January 1962.

2078. GALVÃO, HENRIQUE. *Santa Maria: my crusade for Portugal*. Cleveland, New York, World Pub. Co., 1961. 246 p. DP680.G35

The Portuguese writer and former colonial officer whose spectacular seizure of the Portuguese liner *Santa Maria* in January 1961 was a gesture of rebellion against the Salazar dictatorship, had been governor of Huila Province in Angola and Inspector Superior of Colonial Administration. As Angolan delegate to the National Assembly in 1948, he submitted to the Ministry of the Colonies a report on conditions in Angola which was a violent denunciation of the Government. It was promptly suppressed and despite Captain Galvão's efforts had not been made public until he printed portions of it in his own account of the *Santa Maria* incident: "Report on Native Problems in the Portuguese Colonies," p. 57-71. As Appendix II of the book, he added a paper on "Colonialism, Anticolonialism, Self-Determination," which represented his views on the current political situation in the Portuguese colonies. For Angola he advocated autonomy rather than immediate independence, with proclamation of the right of self-determination.

2079. JACK, HOMER A. *Angola; repression and revolt in Portuguese Africa*. New York, American Committee on Africa, 1960. 28 p. DT611.7.J3

This pamphlet foreshadowing the 1961 revolt in Angola was written before the *Santa Maria* episode, and quotes the suppressed report of Galvão (above) and other protests against Portuguese rule.

2080. OKUMA, THOMAS MASAJI. *Angola in ferment; the background and prospects of Angolan nationalism*. Boston, Beacon Press, 1962. 137 p. DT611.7.04

The writer had been for a decade a missionary in Angola and depends in part on his personal knowledge and observations for this study of the forces which gave birth to Angolan nationalism. He analyzes Portuguese policy in damning terms, and gives a dispassionate account of events of early 1961. Professor Rupert Emerson comments in a preface: "Five hundred years is a long time [for the Portuguese] in which to have accomplished so shockingly little."

2081. PANIKKAR, KAVALAM M. *Angola in flames*. New York, Asia Pub. House, 1962. 127 p. DT611.5.P3 1962a

By the author of *Revolution in Africa* (no. 124), this pamphlet for Indian readers analyzes the current situation in Angola and describes Portuguese policy in no friendly terms. Mr. Panikkar's picture of the oppressive Portuguese rule includes comment on Mozambique and Goa.

2082. UNITED NATIONS. General Assembly. Subcommittee on the Situation in Angola. *Report*. New York, 1961. 144 p. fold. map. (Document A/4978) DT611.7.U5

2083. WESTWOOD, ANDREW. "The politics of revolt in Angola." *Africa report*, v. 7, November 1962: 7-10, 31. DT1.A217, v. 7

By a political analyst now with Brookings Institution, this review of the contest for political power by the two major parties working for the liberation of Angola carries the tale of events into August 1962. Holden Roberto's UPA (União das Populações de Angola) and MPLA (Movimento Popular de Liberação de Angola), led by Andrade and Cruz, are explained with notable clarity.

## ANTHROPOLOGY, ETC.

2084. CHATELAIN, HELI. *Folk-tales of Angola*. Boston and New York, Published for the American Folk-Lore Society by Houghton, Mifflin, 1894. 315 p. GR1.A5, v. 1

Fifty tales from Angola, with Ki-mbundu text, literal English translation, introduction, and notes, collected and edited by an American Africanist, formerly U.S. commercial agent at Luanda, and before that a linguist for Protestant missions in Africa. This collection, which was published as the first volume of the *Memoirs* of the American Folk-Lore Society, is referred to constantly as a landmark in Negro folk tale studies.



2085. CHILDS, GLADWYN M. *Umbundu kinship and character*. London, New York, Oxford University Press, 1949. 245 p. illus., maps.

DT611.C5

Anthropological study, "being a description of the social structure and individual development of the Ovimbundu of Angola, with observations concerning the bearing on the enterprise of Christian missions of certain phases of the life and culture described." The writer explained the habitat of the tribe, which is extended widely over the highlands of Angola, their political and social life, system of kinship, social structure, and the development of the individual from babyhood through education and working life, both in tribal patterns and in contact with white culture. Comprehensive bibliographies are given for each section, noting scholarly sources in English, Portuguese and other languages. The title, "Umbundu," is the adjective form of the plural proper name of the tribe, "Ovimbundu," which means "people of the mist."

2086. EDWARDS, ADRIAN C. *The Ovimbundu under two sovereignties; a study of social control and social change among a people of Angola*. London, Published for the International African Institute by the Oxford University Press, 1962. xvii, 169 p. map, diagrs.

DT611.42.E3

Bibliography: p. 163-166.

2087. ENNIS, MERLIN. *Umbundu folk tales from Angola*. Collected and translated by Merlin Ennis. Comparative analysis by Albert B. Lord. Boston, Beacon Press, 1962. 316 p.

GR360.A5E5

The writer had collected these stories during 40 years of missionary service in Angola, many of them having been transcribed by a native teacher in a village school. In the introductory essay, patterns of repetition in the various types of stories are examined.

2088. ESTERMANN, CARLOS. *Etnografia do sudoeste de Angola*. 2. ed., corr. Lisboa, 1960+ illus., fold. col. map. (Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Memórias. Série antropológica e etnológica, 4-5)

DT611.42.E82

Includes bibliographies.

Contents.—v. 1. Os povos não-bantos e o grupo étnico dos Ambós.—v. 2. Grupo étnico nhaneca-humbe.

These comprehensive scholarly volumes are the first two of a trilogy concerned with peoples of south-eastern Angola. Vol. 1 takes in the Bushmen and

kindred tribes and the ethnic group of the Ambo (Ovambo). In Vol. 2 Father Estermann studies the Nhaneca-Humbe group, covering all phases of history, tribal and family life, mores, art, religious beliefs and practises. The third volume, according to a review in *Africa* of April 1959, will deal with the northern Herero. A 15-page list of the writings of this anthropologist, *Bibliografia do etnólogo Padre Carlos Estermann, S. Sp.*, compiled by Afonso Costa, was published by the Instituto de Angola in Luanda in 1961.

2089. FELGAS, HELIO A. ESTEVES. *As populações nativas do Congo Português*. Luanda, 1960. 136 p. illus., fold. maps, tables.

GN655.A5F4

Bibliography: p. 133-136.

Anthropological study of the Bacongo and related tribes of the northernmost province of Angola.

2090. HAMBLY, WILFRID D. *The Ovimbundu of Angola*. Chicago. 1934. 362 p. 92 plates. maps. (Field Museum of Natural History, Publication 329. Anthropological series, v. 21, no. 2)

GN655.08H3

The author, assistant curator of African ethnology of the Field Museum, had conducted the Frederick H. Rawson-Field Museum expedition to West Africa in 1929-30, making investigations in Angola and Nigeria. His Angolan work was conducted from headquarters at the Elende Mission Station, with journeys totaling 5,000 miles in the southwest, northwest, and eastern parts of the country. The book is a comprehensive cultural survey, including a seven-page bibliography of scholarly sources, a full index, and many excellent plates showing artifacts and life.

2091. McCULLOCH, MERRAN. *The Ovimbundu of Angola*. London, International African Institute, 1952. 50 p. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: West Central Africa, pt. 2)

DT611.M17

2092. ———. *The southern Lunda and related peoples* (Northern Rhodesia, Belgian Congo, Angola) London, International African Institute, 1951. 110 p. (Ethnographic survey of Africa: West Central Africa, pt. 1)

DT639.M3

Two monographs in this authoritative series, synthesizing existent studies. The Southern Lunda and related peoples occupy most of the eastern half of Angola, spreading over its borders into northwestern Rhodesia and the Katanga Province of the Belgian

Congo. Their numbers are estimated altogether at around 63,000, of whom 10,000 live in Angola, 10,000 in the Congo, and the rest in 2 districts of Northern Rhodesia. The Ovimbundu are the dominant autochthonous race of Angola, their homeland the Benguela Highland in the west-central part of the country, though they are found as far as the coast. It is estimated that more than a third of the total population of about 4 million are Ovimbundu. Both studies follow the general pattern of the series, giving in outline form essential data of grouping and demography, physical environment, traditions and history, language, physical appearance and dress, main features of economy, social organization and political structure, religion and magic, family rites and customs. Both end with full bibliographies of sources.

2093. REDINHA, JOSÉ. *Etnosociologia de nordeste de Angola*. Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, 1958. 247 p. DT611.R4

The author is Director of the Museum of Luanda. His study of Central Bantu tribes of the Lunda cluster in Northeast Angola (Luena, Quicos, Tutchokwe, etc.) won a prize when presented in 1956.

2094. SANTOS, EDUARDO DOS. *Sobre a 'medicina' e magia dos Quicos*. Lisboa, 1960. 226 p. illus. (Portugal. Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Estudos, ensaios e documentos, no. 80) DLC

Ethnological study of the people known in English as the Chokewa Bantu.

## Cape Verde Islands and Portuguese Guinea

2095. AUGUSTO DE SILVA, ARTUR. *Usos e costumes jurídicos dos Fulas da Guiné Portuguesa*; ensaio. Bissau, Centro de Estudos da Guiné Portuguesa, 1958. 139 p. (Centro de Estudos da Guiné Portuguesa. Publicações, no. 20) DLC

Not available for examination. The foreword is by Professor Marcello Caetano.

2096. *Boletim cultural da Guiné Portuguesa*. v. 1+ 1946+ Bissau, Centro de Estudos da Guiné Portuguesa. illus. quarterly. DT613.B6

The organ of the prominent Center for study and research on Portuguese Guinea, edited at its headquarters in the Museu Guiné Portuguesa in Bissau. The numbers carry substantial articles on "what is considered of interest . . . of an historical, ethnographic, scientific, literary, or artistic character." There are also regular sections of chronicle of the Province, economic statistics, notes and news, and list of books and publications received at the Museum. On the back cover, titles are given of the monographic publications of the Center, cited as Memórias, several examples of which are mentioned below (see Augusto da Silva, Carreira, Lima).

2097. CAPE VERDE ISLANDS. *25 anos de actividade: 28 de Maio de 1926-28 de Maio de 1951*. Praia, Edições Propaganda, 1951. 92 p. illus. HD4365.C3A55

Official review of recent advances in public works, agricultural production, communications, public

health, education, etc. Photographs in black and white and many statistics.

2098. CARREIRA, ANTÔNIO. *Mandingas da Guiné Portuguesa*. Publicação comemorativa do v centenário da descoberta da Guiné. Lisboa, 1947. 324 p. (Centro de Estudos da Guiné Portuguesa. Publicações, no. 4) DT613.C27

2099. ———. *Vida social dos Manjacos*. Publicação comemorativa do v centenário da descoberta da Guiné. Lisboa, 1947. 185 p. illus. (Centro de Estudos da Guiné Portuguesa. Publicações, no. 1) GN655.M3C3

Two ethnological studies by a colonial administrator in Portuguese Guinea. The Mandingo and Manjaco are tribes of the Mende-speaking peoples who are spread widely in western Sudanic Africa.

2100. *Colóquios cabo-verdianos*. Lisboa, 1959. 182 p. (Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Centro de Estudos Políticos e Sociais. Estudos de ciências políticas e sociais, 22) DLC

2101. CORRÊA, ANTÔNIO A. MENDES. *Ultramar Português. II. Ilhas de Cabo Verde*. Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, 1954. 262 p. illus., maps. JV4227.E587

Second volume of a notable series of surveys of the Portuguese overseas possessions. Volume I, 1949, was *Síntese da África*, a general study of geography and



ethnology of the continent as a whole. This work covers in great detail physical and human geography of the Cape Verde Islands, the first eight chapters being on natural science, the remaining seven on ethnology, demography, social conditions, languages, culture and education, politics and government, economy. Each chapter is followed by *résumés* in French and English. An earlier work by Professor Mendes Corrêa (anthropology, University of Porto) is concerned with ethnology of the tribes of Guinea; *Uma Jornada científica na Guiné Portuguesa* (Lisboa, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, Agência Geral das Colónias, 1947. 193 p.).

2102. DINIS, ANTÔNIO J. DIAS. *1446-1946. O V centenária do descobrimento da Guiné Portuguesa á luz de crítica histórica.* Braga, 1946. 155 p., illus., maps. DT613.D55

Study of the disputed question of the first discovery of Guinea by the Portuguese, analyzing the evidence regarding the early chronicles.

2103. FERREIRA, MANUEL. *Morabeza, contos de Cabo Verde.* Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, 1958. 106 p. DLC

2104. FERREIRA PAULO, LEOPOLDINA. *Impressões digitais nos indígenas da Guiné Portuguesa.* Lisboa, Ministério do Ultramar, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1957. 109 p. (Étudos, ensaios e documentos, 37) GN192.P35

Summary in French and English.

This monograph in the branch of anthropometry known as dermatoglyphics is an example of the detailed scientific studies issued under authority of the Portuguese Government.

2105. GONÇALVES, JOSÉ JÚLIO. *O Islamismo na Guiné Portuguesa (ensaio sociomissionológico)* Lisboa, 1961. 222 p. fold. map. illus. BP64.G8G6

By a scholar connected with the Instituto Superior de Estudos Ultramarinos who examines the modern proselytizing efforts of Islam in Portuguese Guinea. His conclusions are alarming to the Catholic Government. Besides the incursions of Islam, Professor Gonçalves finds that the elites are returning to paganism.

2106. GT. BRIT. Foreign Office. Historical Section. *Cape Verde Islands.* London, H.M. Sta-

tionery Office, 1920. 41 p. (Handbooks, no. 117) DT671.C2G7

2107. ——— *Portuguese Guinea.* London, H.M. Stationery Office, 1920. 41 p. (Handbooks, no. 118) DT613.G7

This conspicuous series of handbooks was prepared by the British Foreign Office before the Versailles Peace Conference with the particular purpose of supplying the representatives with "information in the most convenient form, geographical, economic, historical, social, religious and political," on all regions with which there might be any concern. In fact, the only subject which is treated in more than a few short paragraphs is the then current politico-economic aspect. Thirty years after their publication they are naturally out of date, but for such colonies as the Cape Verde Islands and Portuguese Guinea, which have hardly been touched in English writing, they may still have use as supplementing standard reference books, encyclopedias and general geographies.

2108. LESSA, ALMERINDO. *Seroantropologia das Ilhas de Cabo Verde.* Mesa redonda sobre o homen cabo-verdiano, por Almerindo Lessa e Jacques Ruffie. Lisboa, 1957. 153 p. (Ministério do Ultramar. Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Estudos, ensaios e documentos, 32) DLC

2109. LIMA, AUGUSTO J. SANTOS. *Organização económica e social dos Bijagós.* Publicação comemorativa do V centenário da descoberta da Guiné. Bissau, 1947. 154 p. (Centro de Estudos da Guiné Portuguesa, no. 2) DLC

2110. LYALL, ARCHIBALD. *Black and white make brown; an account of a journey to the Cape Verde Islands and Portuguese Guinea.* London, Wm. Heinemann, 1938. 303 p. illus., maps. DT671.C2L9

This British writer and linguist, who is known as a specialist on the Balkans, in the midthirties visited the little known Portuguese colonies of the West African bulge. His book is comprehensive, informative, and very interesting reading. The title is explained in the figures he gives for the population of Cape Verde, about 6,000 whites, 40,000 blacks, and 104,605 of mixed blood. He includes a good historical sketch of Prince Henry the Navigator who inspired the Portuguese discoveries in the 15th century, a vivid

account of the "cinder-heap," St. Vincent in the Cape Verde Islands, which as a coaling station is the only part of the colony known to the outside world, a critique of the Creole poetry of the Islands, and in continental Guinea descriptions of the life and relations of Portuguese and natives, the pagan tribes of the coast, the Muslims of the interior, and the untamed Bissagos of the islands off the southern coast. He speaks with sympathy of the Portuguese colonizers who have the secret of getting on with the natives.

The first 120 pages of Anne Morrow Lindbergh's inspirational flying log, *Listen! the Wind* (Harcourt, 1938), are concerned with a stay at Praia, capital of the Cape Verde Islands. Though her story is a personal one, she conveys with some intensity the impression of the dismal island, the languor of its racial mixture of inhabitants, and its isolation.

2111. MOTA, AVELINO TEIXEIRA DA. *Guiné Portuguesa*. Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, 1954. 2 v. (Monografias dos territórios do Ultramar) DT613.M6

Official geographical survey giving wide coverage to physical features—geology, hydrography, climate, flora and fauna, etc., and to ethnological aspects in Portuguese Guinea and the islands of São Tomé and Príncipe, as well as to economic and social development under the Portuguese administration. Chapters

are followed by summaries in French and English, some by bibliographies.

A well-presented illustrated brochure offering a short factual survey was published by the Agência Geral do Ultramar in 1961: *Guiné; pequena monografia* (Lisbon. 53 p.). A companion brochure treats the Cape Verde Islands: *Cabo Verde; pequena monografia* (Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, 1961. 53 p.).

2112. MUNNO, SETTIMIO, ed. *In terra d'Africa*. Milano, Pontificio Istituto missioni estere, 1958. 156 p. plates, map. (Oltremare, collana di pubblicazioni missionarie, 14) BV3625.G817M8

A collection of papers by Italian missionaries in Portuguese Guinea, depicting phases of their work with the primitive tribesmen. They admit sadly that Islam is far more effective in making converts than the Catholic Church; 180,000 Muslims, 19,000 Catholics, after 5 centuries.

2113. TEIXEIRA, ANTÔNIO JOSÉ DA SILVA, and LUIS AUGUSTO GRANDVAUX. *A agricultura do arquipélago de Cabo Verde*; cartas agrícolas, problemas agrários, Barbosa. Lisboa, 1958. 178 p. fold. maps. ([Portugal] Ministério do Ultramar. Memórias da Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. 2. ser., 2) S471.C215T4

Summary in English and French.

## São Tomé and Príncipe

2114. GT. BRIT. Foreign Office. Historical Section. *San Thomé and Príncipe*. London, H.M. Stationery Office, 1920. 41 p. (Handbooks, no. 119) DT615.G7

One of the few survey accounts available in English of the Portuguese islands in the Gulf of Guinea known largely in connection with the slave trade, for which they were a center in the early days, and for the notorious controversy in the first decade of the 20th century regarding the system of contract labor brought from Angola and elsewhere to work on the cacao plantations. The brochure touches on this labor history in barest outline, its largest concern being with economic conditions. Its list of sources includes the main reports of the labor controversy.

Among these sources there might be noted two British "exposures," *A Modern Slavery*, by Henry W. Nevinson (London, New York, Harper, 1906. 216 p.), and W. A.

Cadbury's *Labour in Portuguese West Africa* (London, 2d ed., 1910); the Portuguese answer was prepared in English by Eduardo Mantero and published in a large volume in London in 1913. The conspicuous medical reforms performed by the Portuguese, who in a few years rid the islands of sleeping sickness, are recorded in English by Dr. Bruto da Costa and others, *Sleeping Sickness: a Record of Four Years' War against it in Príncipe* (London, 1916).

The slavery issue of the *serviços* (contract laborers) who were brought from Angola to São Tomé and Príncipe and not sent back was brought up again before the League of Nations in the midtwenties, in a *Report on Employment of Native Labor in Portuguese Africa* (1925), presented to the Temporary Slavery Commission by an American sociologist, Edward Alsworth Ross, who had made a trip of investigation in Angola with the backing of Protestant missions, and American humanitarian groups. It was answered in a report prepared by Dr. Oliveira Santos, the Minister of Colonies (*Reply to the Accusation addressed to the League of Nations*, Lisbon, 1930, 91 p.). Dr. Santos attempted to show that Mr. Ross' examination had been extremely superficial and misinformed; however, the charges resulted in further improvement in conditions of imported labor on the islands.



2115. SILVA, HÉLDER LAINS E. *São Tomé e Príncipe e a cultura do café*, por Helder Lains e Silva, com a colaboração no estudo dos solos, de José Carvalho Cardoso. Lisboa, Ministério do Ultramar, 1958. 499 p. plates, tables, fold. map. (in pocket) (Memórias da Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 2. sér., no. 1).  
SB270.S3S5

An impressive ecological study beginning with a general account of the province in geographical, geological, climatological, and economic aspects, then analyzing in detail its agriculture in general, and specifically the coffee culture. A summary in English is given on pages 353–387.

2116. TENREIRO, FRANCISCO. *A ilha de São Tomé*. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1961. 279 p. 73 plates, maps, diagrs. (Memórias da Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. 2. sér., no. 24) DT615.T4

A comprehensive geographical survey, with chapters on climate and soils, colonization and agriculture, the isle and its peoples, socioeconomics, and economic position with particular reference to the export crops of coffee and cocoa. There is a long classified bibliography, largely of articles in Portuguese journals, but including a handful of writings in English. A section of 73 plates concludes the volume.

## Mozambique

2117. *Annuário da Província de Moçambique*. Lourenço Marques, A. W. Bayly & Co., annual. 43a edição, 1962. 1268, 84 p., maps, plans.  
DT465.L3D4

English edition begun as *Delagoa Directory* (10th year, 1908+; 44th ed., 1943 to 46th ed., 1945, with title, *Lourenço Marques Directory*. Since 1945 the Library of Congress has acquired only the Portuguese edition, and we are not sure whether the English edition is still published). The big annual tome is a comprehensive business register of the city of Lourenço Marques and other districts of Mozambique, including an encyclopedic survey of the colony as well as directory by towns and districts. The pages in roman numerals are indexes of subjects, addresses of government offices, business and industries, local names, economic activities (the latter in English translation also). Then come the 1,268 pages of print, including folded maps, town plans, etc., and interspersed with advertisements. The separately numbered pages at the end are an index of advertisers. Many business enterprises and investments in Mozambique are British owned or financed, and exports from the port of Lourenço Marques, which is one of the best harbors on the East African coast, are largely from British South and Central Africa.

2118. AXELSON, ERIC V. *Portuguese in south-east Africa, 1600–1700*. Johannesburg, Witwatersrand University Press, 1960. 226 p. illus.  
DT459.A93 1960

Includes bibliography.

2119. ———. *South-east Africa, 1488–1530*. London, New York, Longmans, Green, 1940. 306 p. illus., maps, facsimis. DT773.A9

*South-East Africa* was prepared by this historian as his doctoral dissertation at the University of the Witwatersrand. It is concerned with the Portuguese acquisition of the Arab States along the southeast African coast after Vasco da Gama's landing at Mozambique in 1488. The book of 1960 continues the history through the 17th century.

2120. BOXER, C. R., and CARLOS DE AZEVEDO. *Fort Jesus and the Portuguese in Mombasa, 1593–1729*. London, Hollis & Carter, 1960. 144 p. DT434.M7B6

Like the preceding works of Professor Axelson, this is a recent example of studies by English historians working primarily with Portuguese source materials. The narrative gives the history of the fort at Mombasa in Kenya and its troubled relations with the Portuguese on the east coast of Africa.

2121. EARTHY, EMILY D. *Valenge women: the social and economic life of the Valenge women of Portuguese East Africa*. London, for the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures, by Oxford University Press, 1933. 251 p. illus., maps. DT458.E2

Technical study of the culture of a Bantu tribe of Mozambique by a missionary anthropologist, with attention focused on the role of women in a fetishistic society. The book was prepared in connection with studies for a doctorate.

2122. FREITAS, ANTÔNIO JOAQUIM DE. *A geologia e o desenvolvimento económico e social de Moçambique*. Lourenço Marques, Impr. Nacional de Moçambique, 1959. 396 p. illus., fold. maps, tables. QE337.F72  
Includes bibliographies.  
An extended economic and technical survey of geology and mining developments in Mozambique. The author was formerly Chief of the Services of Industry and Geology of the province.
2123. GERSDORFF, RALPH VON. *Moçambique*. Bonn, K. Schroeder, 1958. 136 p. illus. (Die Länder Afrikas, Bd. 14) DT456.G4  
Includes bibliography.  
See general note on this series, no. 10.
2124. HARRIS, MARVIN. *Portugal's African wards: a firsthand report on labor and education in Moçambique*. New York, American Committee on Africa, 1958. 36 p. (Africa today pamphlets, 2) DLC-AFR  
A pamphlet attacking Portuguese policy as involving forced labor.
2125. ISTITUTO NAZIONALE PER IL COMMERCIO ESTERO. *Mozambico*. Roma, 1959. 183 p. fold. col. map. MC578.M618  
A concise survey of the economy of Mozambique, of a type not presently available in English or French. The first 60 pages describe economic and industrial resources, communications and transport, and development programs in general terms. The next part of about equal length analyzes foreign trade with special attention to the import of Italian materials, the third part discusses markets for particular products.
2126. KNOPFLI, JOSUE, ed. *Sinopse das matérias oficiais publicadas no "Boletim oficial" da Província de Moçambique*, referida ao ano de 1960. Lourenço Marques, Impr. Nacional de Moçambique, 1961. 233 p. Z3882.K6  
This continues a legal series begun in 1923 and published annually from 1929-37 and 1942 to date.
2127. LOBATO, ALEXANDRE. *Evolução administrativa e económica de Moçambique, 1752-1763*. Com um prefacio do antigo ministro do Ultramar, M. M. Sarmiento Rodrigues. Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, 1957+ v. 1. (Estudos moçambicanos) JQ3671.M6L6
2128. ———. *Quatro estudos e uma evocação para a história de Lourenço Marques*. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1961. 167 p. (Estudos moçambicanos) DLC  
Two works by a historian of Mozambique, in a series which has included a number of other studies of the Portuguese in East Africa. Senhor Lobato has written several other books, including a two-volume history, *A Expansão portuguesa em Moçambique de 1498 à 1530* (Lisboa, Agência Geral do Ultramar, 1954).
2129. MAUGHAM, R. C. F. *Portuguese East Africa: the history, scenery and great game of Manica and Sofala*. London, John Murray; New York, Dutton, 1906. 340 p. 32 plates, map. DT465.M17M3  
One of the few full-length books in English describing the country, written by the British Consul for the districts of Mozambique and Zambesia, and the territories of Manica and Sofala. The writer was well informed regarding history and had many observations on native life and customs, in which, however, his interest seemed secondary to that in elephants, rhinoceros, and equipment for big game hunting.
2130. MOREIRA, EDUARDO. *Portuguese East Africa: a study of its religious needs*. London, New York, World Dominion Press, 1936. 104 p. BV3625.M65M6  
This volume, one of a long series of surveys of world mission fields, was written by the liaison officer of the Protestant missions and the Portuguese Government, who had recently visited the Portuguese African colonies. He gave a historical account of the rise and development of evangelical missions in Mozambique, with special emphasis on the tension between the missionaries and the Portuguese authorities who had for long claimed that the missions were a denationalizing force, working against the religious "homogeneity" which the Catholic power felt should be the basis of national unity. He considered that of recent years relations had improved, and that the best missionaries (for instance, Dr. Tucker) were collaborating fully with the Portuguese in acceptance of the assimilation policy.
2131. MOZAMBIQUE. *Moçambique, documentário trimestral*. Lourenço Marques. 1935+ illus., plates (part col.) maps, music. DT453.M6



This official quarterly which carries distinguished articles of general coverage is a valuable source for information on Mozambique. The issues include regular bibliographies of works published in Mozambique and received on legal deposit by the Arquivo Histórico.

2132. MOZAMBIQUE. Direcção dos Serviços de Agromensura. *Atlas de Moçambique*. Lourenço Marques, Empresa Moderna, 1960. 43 p. (chiefly col. maps. part fold.)

G2550.M6 1960

Scale of maps 1: 1,000,000 or 1: 6,000,000.

2133. OLIVEIRA BOLEO, JOSÉ DE. *Moçambique*. Lisboa, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, Agência Geral do Ultramar, 1951. 562 p. plates, maps (Monografias dos territórios do ultramar)

DT453.04

Bibliography: p. 539-558.

Like others of its series, this study surveys factors of physical geography, geology, climate, flora and fauna, anthropogeography, history, politics, and social welfare under the Portuguese, and economic development. Chapters are followed by résumés in French and English. In conclusion there is a long bibliography, classified by subject field, and including writings in various languages.

2134. PORTUGAL. Laws, statutes, etc. *Principal legislação aplicável aos indígenas da Província de Moçambique*. Lourenço Marques, Imprensa Nacional de Moçambique, 1960. 385 p.

DLC-LL

2135. RITA-FERREIRA, ANTÔNIO. *Agrupamento e caracterização étnica dos indígenas de Moçambique*. Lisboa, Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1958. 133 p. illus., maps (in color). (Estudos, ensaios e documentos, 50)

DT458.R5

A useful ethnological handbook in two parts, each preceded by a many-colored map. The first shows the tribal groups of Mozambique, the second the larger linguistic groupings. The text explains chief characteristics of each group. The book includes a section of plates, résumés in French and English, and a short bibliography, the 77 references in which are about equally divided between Portuguese and English. A list of 49 other titles in this official series is given on a preliminary flyleaf.

2136. RODRIGUES, JÚNIOR. *Colonização; contribuição para o seu estudo em Moçambique*. [Lourenço Marques?] Africa Editora, 1959. 211 p.

DT459.R6

Journalistic study including statistical material. The writer, a Lourenço Marques newspaperman, is author of essays and reports on Mozambique and novels in the Mozambique setting.

2137. RODRIGUES DOS SANTOS, JOAQUIM. *Contribuição para o estudo da antropologia de Moçambique; algumas tribos do distrito de Tete*. Pôrto, Tip. Mendonça, 1944. 412 p. illus., maps. (República Portuguesa. Ministério das Colónias. Junta das Missões Geográficas e de Investigações do Ultramar. Memórias. Série antropológica, 2)

DT465.T4R6

This scholar, a professor at the University of Pôrto, was a noted anthropologist and author of many works relating to East Africa. In 1936-37 he conducted Portuguese expeditions studying and photographing tribes of Mozambique, an account of which was published by the Agência Geral das Colónias in 1940 (Portugal. *Missão Antropológica de Moçambique ... 2a. campanha, agosto de 1937 a janeiro de 1938*, por J. R. dos Santos, Júnior. Lisbon, 1940. 91 p. xcv plates on 48 l.). The present book is a large study of the physical anthropology of tribes of Zambesia, particularly of the district of Tete. It ends with anthropometric tables and almost 40 pages of bibliographical notes, in which the author's own contributions are entered under the name Santos Júnior (J. R. dos).

2138. SANTOS, MANUEL PIMENTEL PEREIRA DOS. *A indústria em Moçambique*. Lourenço Marques, 1956. 122 p. tables.

HC578.M6S28

Published under the auspices of the Junta de Comércio Externo da Província de Moçambique, this is a thorough examination of all aspects of industries and foreign trade as of 1946, their development from 1947-54, their structure in that year, and plans and legislation for future development.

2139. SANTOS, RUI MARTINS DOS. *Uma contribuição para a análise da economia de Moçambique*. Lisboa, Companhia de Cimentos de Moçambique, 1959. 373 p. tables, diagrs.

HC578.M6S33

Full-scale statistical study of all phases of economic life in Mozambique.

2140. SILVA, CARLOS A. VIEIRA DA, ed. *The city of Lourenço Marques guide*. Lourenço Marques, 1956. 221 p. illus. DT465.L3S5

The port city of Lourenço Marques on Delagoa Bay (Baia da Lagoa, Bay of the Lagoon) is a favorite spot for the British residents of the interior of Southern Africa. This guidebook, illustrated with many photographs of landscape, architecture, and monuments, devotes equal space to museums, bullfights, and other institutions for entertainment of the visitor's mind, and facilities for his physical comfort.

2141. TRACEY, HUGH. *Chopi musicians, their music, poetry and instruments*. London, New York, Published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press, 1948. 180 p. illus., maps, music. ML 3760.T7

Detailed study of the music of a tribe in Portuguese East Africa who are famous for their large orchestras of xylophones and "timbila" and orchestral dances. Mr. Tracey discussed their melody, lyrics, dancers and dances, players and leaders, commenting that they are considered to present the most advanced example of artistic endeavor in the southern part of the continent.



# SPANISH GUINEA

(Rio Muni and Fernando Poo)

*Note:* The Spanish possessions in the Gulf of Guinea form the only foothold of Spain south of the Sahara. The region, known until 1958 as Territorios Españoles del Golfo de Guinea, and presently as Región Ecuatorial: Provincias de Fernando Poo y Rio Muni, consists of two administrative districts: the big island of Fernando Poo, lying well out in the Atlantic to the northwest of the Cameroons (2,017 square kilometers); continental Spanish Guinea, which consists of the mainland area known also as Rio Muni (26,000 square kilometers on the coast between the Cameroons and Gabon), three small islands off the southern coast, Corisco and two Elobeyes, Grande and Chico, and farther to the south the slightly larger island of Annobón. The seat of government for the territory is at Santa Isabel on Fernando Poo. Continental Guinea in particular is relatively undeveloped. Although there is a large body of literature on Spanish Guinea in Spanish, much of it published under official auspices, writing in English is so scant as to be almost nonexistent. The following references in Spanish are offered as a sampling of material received by the Library of Congress.

## Bibliography

2142. BERMAN, SANFORD. *Spanish Guinea: an annotated bibliography*. Washington, 1961. 597 l. DLC-AFR

Prepared as a dissertation for the master's degree in library science at the Catholic University of America. Microfilm copies of the big volume in typescript may be obtained from the university. This work is a unique contribution to African studies, and anyone doing research on Spanish Guinea will find it invaluable. After an introductory essay on the literature relating to the region, the bibliography proper, occupying over 330 pages, is arranged under alphabetical subject headings from "Agriculture" to "Zoology," with a preliminary section of "General Works"; the subject schema is explained on p. 14-16 of the Introduction. Mr. Berman has read and analyzed practically all entries in evaluative annotations, often of several hundred words. (With the exception of two or three titles dated after 1960, all books named in the present section are thus described.) He follows this list, which he speaks of as "a representative core of current and retrospective Guineana," with a supplementary bibliography of works useful for African studies, then with

titles for "A Basic Library of Guineana" (p. 430-433). Next are provided an extended glossary (p. 434-490), a chronology (p. 491-527), a directory of publishers, periodicals, and institutions, and finally a full index of authors and subject matter.

- 
2143. *África* [revista de acción española] v. 1+ January 1942+ Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Africanos [IDEA] illus., maps. monthly. DT37.A1A4

IDEA is one of the institutes of the official Spanish Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas. It took over publication of this review from a nongovernmental organization, the Instituto de Estudios Políticos, in 1950. In 1960 the subtitle has been dropped, to fit with wider Spanish interest in other parts of Africa. The journal is the most ready source of information about the remaining Spanish possessions in Africa, now limited to Spanish West Africa (Spanish Sahara and Ifni) and Spanish Guinea. Besides articles and news notes, *África* carries a regular section on "Actividades comunistas en el mundo afroasiático," a press review, a list of new publications including contents of periodicals, and a section of laws and decrees.

2144. ALVAREZ GARCÍA, HERIBERTO R. *Historia de la acción cultural en la Guinea española*, con notas sobre la enseñanza en el África negra. Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1948. 557 p. illus., maps, diags. LC2808.S72A6

Study of Spanish educational work in West Africa by the Chief Inspector of Education of these tropical colonies. The account is largely historical. It was reviewed at some length in English in the quarterly journal of the International African Institute, *Africa*, of January 1951, p. 70-71. The reviewer concluded that there was no attempt, past or present, to relate education of the natives to African culture; "the educational aim is to produce at once good Spaniards and good Catholic Christians."

2145. ARBELO CURBELO, A., and R. VILLARINO ULLOA. *Contribución al estudio de la despoblación indígena en los territorios españoles del Golfo de Guinea*, con particularidad en Fernando Poo. Campaña sanitaria de 1939-1940. Madrid, 1942. 103 p. illus.

RA352.G8A7

At head of title: Territorios Españoles del Golfo de Guinea. Servicio Sanitario Colonial.

Study by two doctors connected with health services in Santa Isabel. Their analysis was based on data obtained by a sampling examination of African women on Fernando Poo regarding sterility, abortions, infant mortality and the prevalence of venereal diseases.

The current efforts of the Government regarding improvement of health conditions are illustrated in a pictorial booklet published by IDEA in 1961, *Labor sanitaria en las Provincias de la Región Ecuatorial* (Madrid. 16 p. of text, 5 plates, 24 p. of photographs).

2146. BASILIO, AURELIO. *La vida animal en la Guinea Española*. Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, 1952. 146 p. illus.

QL731.B27

New enlarged edition 1962. 190 p.

This zoological study of Spanish Guinea is by a priest who is a professor of natural history in the Native Seminary of Nuestra Señora del Pilar in Santa Isabel. It is semitechnical in style, and includes a systematic list of the orders of mammals as one of its appendixes.

A more popular book on the wild life of the territory is by a big game hunter, Ramón Tatay, *La caza en Guinea* (Madrid, Espasa-Calpe, 1955. 278 p. illus.).

The natural sciences of Spanish Guinea were illustrated as to botanical aspects in two books by Emilio Guinea López, both published by IDEA, *En el país de los Bubis, relato ilustrado de mi primer viaje á Fernando Poo* (Madrid, 1949, 287 p. illus.), and *En el país de los Pámues (relato ilustrado de mi primer viaje á la Guinea Española)* (Madrid, 1947. 156 p. illus.). In the latter, besides plants, there are many photographs of ethnological interest.

2147. BERMAN, SANFORD. "Spanish Guinea: enclave empire." *Phylon*, v. 17, Dec. 1956: 349-364.

E185.5.P5, v. 17

2148. ———. "Spanish Guinea, profile of an African enigma." *Africa report*, v. 6, Jan. 1961: 3-4.

DT1.A217, v. 6

Except for chapters or sections in general works on West Africa, and rare newspaper features, these articles are the only recent writings on Spanish Guinea available in English. The first and longer is divided

between a general account of the territory and discussion of Spanish policies and practices. ("The development of the colony—socially, politically, economically—will be with reference to peninsular needs and resources, largely ignoring African continental evolution.") In the second Mr. Berman examines the current serenity of Spanish Guinea, considering that it results from Spanish paternalism, the policy of "limited assimilation" which gives the evolved African full civil rights, and the nonexistence of labor unions or other elements of opposition. He points out, however, a few elements that "represent potential sources of discontent and political activation."

2149. CRESPO GIL-DELGADO, CARLOS, conde de Castillo Fiel. *Notas para un estudio antropológico y etnológico del Bubi de Fernando Poo*. Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Africanos y Instituto Bernardino de Sahagún, de Antropología y Etnología, 1949. 290 p. illus.

DT671.F4C74

Comprehensive ethnological and anthropometrical treatise on the Bubi, based on 2 years of field research and presented as a doctoral thesis. The work was published jointly by two institutes of the Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas.

2150. FONT TULLOT, INOCENCIO. *El clima de las posesiones españolas del Golfo de Guinea*. Madrid, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1951. 71 p. illus.

QC991.G8F6

By a geophysicist who has studied also the climate of Spanish West Africa. In contrast to the desert of the Atlantic Sahara, Fernando Poo and Continental Guinea are in the tropical rain belt. They have a 4-month dry season, a short in-between season called *sequilla*, and a longer rainy season. Interestingly, the dry season on Fernando Poo runs from November to February, while on the mainland it is in the summer months. Bad climate and depopulation resulting in part therefrom are major problems of the region.

2151. FRANCE. Direction de la documentation. *Les territoires espagnols d'Afrique* par René Pelissier. Paris, La Documentation française, 1963. 40 p. (Notes et études documentaires, n° 2.951, 3 janvier 1963).

D411.F67, no. 2951

In the official French series of background documentation, this brochure gives a concise survey of the three remaining territories in Africa held by Spain: Ifni (p. 7-12); Le Sahara espagnol (p. 13-19); La Guinée



espagnole (p. 20–37). A short reading list is given on p. 38–39. Aspects of Guinea considered are general conditions with outline of geography, history, and people, evolution of political and administrative institutions, economic and financial evolution, cultural and social evolution. The two short paragraphs of conclusions speak hopefully of equality of civil rights officially recognized since 1959–60, of active efforts toward literacy, and improvement of conditions of life; less hopefully of the climate, depopulation, and the unfortunate dependence on cocoa, coffee, and tropical wood as exports requiring price supports from the metropole.

2152. GT. BRIT. Foreign Office. Historical Section. *Spanish Guinea*. London, H.M. Stationery Office, 1920. 60 p. (Handbooks, no. 125) DT619.G7

This survey is one of a conspicuous series of handbooks prepared shortly after the First World War specially to document world conditions at that period. Much of its text is devoted to the outline of physical geography, political history, and basic social and economic conditions, which have not changed too radically since its publication. No later comparable work is available in English.

2153. GUINEA, SPANISH. Delegación Colonial de Estadística. *Resúmenes estadísticos del censo general de población del Gobierno General de los Territorios Españoles del Golfo de Guinea* al 31 de diciembre de 1950. Madrid, 1952. 166 p. maps. HA2237.G8A52 1950

At head of title: Dirección General de Marruecos y Colonias. Instituto de Estudios Africanos. Gobierno General de los Territorios de Guinea.

According to the 1950 census, the population of the entire region is about 200,000, including almost 4,000 Europeans.

2154. GUINEA, SPANISH. Gobierno General de los Territorios del Golfo de Guinea. *Memoria de la labor realizada en el período 1949–1955*. Madrid, 1956. 175 p. illus., maps, tables, diagrs. DLC

Survey containing chapters on population, Christianization, education, libraries, radio, press, health, justice, labor questions, and other government administrative and economic activities. Many charts, graphs, and statistical tables illustrate the ascending march of the colonial economy.

2155. GUINEA, SPANISH. Laws, statutes, etc. *Leyes coloniales*. Madrid, Imprenta Sucesores de Rivadeneyra, 1945. 1,462 p. DLC–LL

Compilation in chronological order of all legislation of the Territorios Españoles del Golfo de Guinea from the acquisition by Spain in 1778 through the year 1944. Edited by Agustín Miranda Junco, whose name appears at head of title.

2156. MAJÓ FRAMIS, RICARDO. *Las generosas y primitivas empresas de Manuel Iradier Bulfy en la Guinea Española; el hombre y sus hechos*. Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1954. 213 p. DT619.I7M3

Account of one of the most celebrated Spanish explorers. Iradier y Bulfy's own narrative of his explorations in the Guinea hinterland was published in 1887 (*Africa; viajes y trabajos de la asociación eúskara La Exploradora Vitoria*, 2 v.; modern edition, Vitoria, Consejo de Cultura de la Excelentísima Diputación Foral de Alava, 1958+ illus.). The first voyage, 1875–77, was “exploración del país de Muni, 1875–1877”; the second, which includes treaties of accession to Spanish authority, was “adquisición del país del Muni, 1884.”

2157. MORENO MORENO, JOSÉ A. *Reseña histórica de la presencia de España en el Golfo de Guinea*. Madrid, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas. Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1952. 101 p. illus., maps. DT619.M6

Short sketch of the history of Portuguese, English, and Spanish in Fernando Poo and the Gulf of Guinea from the original discovery by the Portuguese Fernando Poo between 1469 and 1474 to 1901, when the present southern boundaries were set between the Spanish territory and French Equatorial Africa. The last ten pages give a chronological résumé.

2158. NOSTI, JAIME. *Notas geográficas, físicas e económicas sobre los territorios españoles del Golfo de Guinea*. Madrid, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1947. 116 p. illus., part. col., maps. DT619.N6 1947

This work and a companion study, *Climatología de los Territorios Españoles del Golfo de Guinea* (67 p.), were issued by Espasa-Calpe in Madrid in 1942 for the Dirección de Agricultura of the Government of Spanish Guinea. The author, an agricultural engineer in the colonial service, laid special emphasis on vegetation and agriculture in the *Notas*, going into detail regarding the cacao and coffee culture. A shorter paper of his, *Agricultura de Guinea promesa para*

*España*, published by IDEA in 1948 (90 p.), estimated prospects of agricultural exploitation of the colony.

2159. PANYELLA, AUGUSTO. *Esquema de etnología de los Fang Ntumu de la Guinea Española*. Madrid, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1959. 77 p. illus. GN655.F3P3

Lectures by a professor of anthropology in the Chair of Primitive History of Man of the University of Madrid.

2160. REY STOLLE, ALEJANDRO. *España en África, ayer y hoy* [por] Adro Xavier [pseud.] Con fotografías inéditas del autor. Barcelona, Exclusivas Ferma, 1962. 324 p. (Biblioteca Ferma universal) DT619.R44

A journalistic account of Spanish Guinea. The author, a Spanish literary man, has written a number of travel books and popular biographies. He includes here several folk tales of the Bubi.

2161. RÍOS, MATEO. *La España ignorada*. Barcelona, Editorial Hispano Europea, 1959. 125 p. illus. (Colección Herakles) DT619.R5

Pocket-size book describing Spanish Guinea, partly through guidebook information, partly personal travel narrative.

2162. SILVEIRA, LUÍS. *Descripción de la Isla de Fernando Poo en visperas del tratado de San Ildefonso*. Madrid, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, 1959. 39 p. fold. map. DT671.F4S5

Text of a description of the island of Fernando Poo, taken from a manuscript in the Portuguese archives dated Mar. 3, 1772. At that time the island was a Portuguese colony; it was ceded to Spain, together with Annobón, by the treaties of San Ildefonso in 1777 and El Pardo in 1778.

2163. SPAIN. Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas. Instituto de Estudios Africanos. *Archivos*. año 1+ (no. 1+); junio 1947+ Madrid. illus., maps. quarterly. DT1.S75

The catalog of publications of IDEA, the leading governmental institution for African studies, is re-issued periodically. It lists under broad subject headings the 300-odd monographs published by the Institute since its establishment in the early forties. This list is also printed in each number of the *Archivos*, scholarly review of IDEA, together with contents of

earlier issues of the magazine from the first in 1947. Among the latter there appear titles of many articles on Spanish Guinea in varied fields of human and physical sciences.

Besides the entries separately analyzed in this section, the following titles of studies of Guinea which appear in the catalog of IDEA might be noted:

- ARANZADI, IÑIGO DE. *La adivinanza en la zona de los Ntumu*. Tradiciones orales del bosque Fang. Madrid, 1962. 311 p. DLC
- BEATO GONZÁLEZ, VINCENTE, and RAMON VILLARINO ULLOA. *Capacidad mental del negro*. 2. ed. Madrid, 1953. 116 p. illus. BF432.N5B4
- At head of title: Política sanitaria colonial.
- Subtitle: Los métodos de Binet-Bobartag y de Yerkes, para determinar la edad y coeficiente mental, aplicados al negro.
- CAPUZ BONILLA, RAFAEL. *Guía meteorológico de las provincias de Guinea*. Madrid, 1961. 65 p. illus., diags. DLC
- FUSTER CASAS, JOSÉ M. *Estudio petrogenético de los volcanes del Golfo de Guinea*. Madrid, 1954. 152 p. illus. QE461.F85
- . *Estudio petrográfico de la Guinea Continental Española*. Madrid, 1951. 355 p. illus. QE455.G8F8
- GONZALEZ ECHEGARAY, CARLOS. *Estudios guineos*. v. 1: Filología. Madrid, 1959. 125 p. illus. DLC
- . *Morfología y sintaxis de la lengua Bujeba*. Madrid, 1960. 191 p. illus. DLC
- LAREA PALACÍN, ARCADIO DE, and CARLOS GONZALEZ ECHEGARAY. *Leyendas y cuentos Bujebas de la Guinea Española. Transcripción del idioma original, traducción y notas*. Madrid, 1955. 280 p. GR350.L3
- MARTINEZ DOMINGUEZ, VICTOR. *Estudio epidemiológico y clínico de la endemia de lepra en la Guinea Española*. Madrid, 1954. 113 p. illus. DLC
- OLESA MUÑIDO, FRANCISCO F. *Derecho penal aplicable a indígenas en los territorios españoles del Golfo de Guinea*. Madrid, 1953. 448 p. DLC-LL
- RAMÓN ALVAREZ, HERIBERTO. *Leyendas y mitos de Guinea*. Madrid, 1951. 272 p. illus. GR360.G8R2
- SERNA BURGALETO, JESÚS DE LA. *El niño guineano, estudio antropométrico y psicotécnico del niño negro*. Madrid, 1956. 163 p. GN58.G85S4
- Results of intelligence tests of 424 Guinea children.
2164. SPAIN. Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas. Instituto de Estudios Africanos. *La Guinea de hoy*. Madrid, 1958. 40 p. illus. DT619.A5 1958

Booklet introducing Spanish Guinea in an attractive presentation of geographic conditions, peoples, economic and social conditions. The last section describes means of mass communication, including the



Public Library in Santa Isabel; three radio stations; a Santa Isabel daily, *Ebano*; a Bata weekly, *Potopoto*; a Catholic mission journal; a magazine, *Bantu*; and several governmental serials.

2165. ——— *Resúmenes estadísticos del gobierno general de la Región Ecuatorial, provincias de Fernando Poo y Rio Muni*. Madrid. maps, diags. (*Its Publicaciones*)

HA2237.G8S65

A joint publication of IDEA and the Dirección General de Plazas y Provincias Africanas, which in 1956 superseded the earlier Dirección General de Marruecos y Colonias. This is a separate from the overall *Resumen estadística del África española*, which has appeared periodically since 1954 (1959–60, Madrid, 1962. 479 p); until 1958 this section was entitled *Resúmenes . . . de los territorios del Golfo de Guinea*. The overall volume includes official data relating to Ifni, the Spanish Sahara, and the “plazas” of Ceuta and Melilla, as well as the two provinces of Spanish Guinea, Fernando Poo and Rio Muni. Subjects treated include climatology, population, industry, commerce, transportation, public and private finance, labor and social activities, health, charity, culture, justice, and religion.

2166. SPAIN. Dirección General de Marruecos y Colonias. *Atlas histórico y geográfico de África española*. Madrid, 1955. 197 p. maps. G2454.S7 1955

At head of title: Dirección General de Marruecos y Colonias e Instituto de Estudios Africanos. Since 1958 the first agency has been Dirección General de Plazas y Provincias Africanas.

The preface of this folio atlas is signed by J. Dias de Villegas, Director General of both the organizations responsible for its preparation and publication. It is in two parts, historical (p. 13–67) and geographical. In the first section 31 maps in color showing stages of the history of Spain in Africa are interspersed with explanatory text. In the geographical atlas the maps, physical, geological, political-administrative, on double-page spreads with following section of explanatory text, cover practically all details of geographical information about Spanish African possessions. There is a comprehensive index of place names.

2167. UNZUETA Y YUSTE, ABELARDO DE. *Geografía histórica de la Isla de Fernando Poo*. Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1947. 494 p. illus., maps. DT671.F4U55

Bibliography: p. 435–462.

2168. ——— *Guinea Continental Española*. Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Políticos, 1944. 394 p. illus., maps. DT619.U5

Bibliography: p. 381–384.

2169. ——— *Islas del Golfo de Guinea* (Elobeyes, Corisco, Annobón, Príncipe y Santo Tomé). Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Políticos, 1945. 386 p. illus., maps. DT669.U5

Bibliography: p. 373–378.

Standard encyclopedic surveys of the Spanish possessions in West Africa by an authority on colonial trade, professor of economic geography at the Institute of Political Studies. The coverage includes historical, physical, and human geography and ethnology, social welfare, political administration, and economy.

2170. VECIANA VILALDACH, ANTONIO DE. *Los Bujeba (Bisió) de la Guinea Española*; contribución al estudio del negro africano. Madrid, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1956. 166 p. illus., maps, diags. GN57.B3V4

Bibliography: p. 169–173.

2171. ——— *La secta del Bwiti en la Guinea Española*. Madrid, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, 1958. 63 p. illus. BL2465.V37

Includes bibliographies.

The first-named work of this ethnologist is an exhaustive study of the tribe, including much anthropometric material. The second is a monograph on a religious cult widely prevalent among the peoples of Spanish Guinea. The author discusses the legends, cosmology, rites and practices of the sect.

2172. YGLESIAS DE LA RIVA, A. *Política indígena en Guinea*. Madrid, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1947. 366 p. DT619.Y45

This work is not a study of tribal organization, but an explanation of Spanish policy and laws relating to the African population of the colony.

2173. ZAMORA LOBOC, MIGUEL. *Noticia de Annobón: su geografía, historia y costumbres*. Fernando Poo, 1962. 90 p. illus.

Reviewed in *Africa* (Madrid), no. 247, July 1962, p. 357. The author, a Spanish writer and artist, was brought up and lives in Annobón, where he directs an educational center.





# Index

*Note:* Numbers refer to items, with a few exceptions in which pages are specified for works mentioned in notes unrelated to individual entries. An "n" following the number indicates reference not in the entry but in the annotation or related note. In the subject analysis a country breakdown has been made for the more heavily studied subjects. Cross references are held to a minimum; thus for the specific, there is no cross reference to the general—e.g., "Divination" is not cross referenced to the general discipline of "Anthropology," which is broadly covering for all branches of physical and social anthropology, anthropometry, ethnology and ethnography, primitive religion, magic, rites and customs, etc.; also, Nigeria is not cross referenced to West Africa, or Katanga to Congo. Names of tribes are given in accordance with the author's spelling, and geographically located in the country under study.

## A

- A. E. F., *see* French Equatorial Africa (former)
- A. O. F., *see* French West Africa
- Abbadie, Arnauld d', 1522n
- Abbas, Mekki, 3, 154, 1463
- Abdul-Haggag, Y., 1505
- Abel-Smith, Brian, 1574
- Abrahams, Peter, 1850
- Abranches, Esther, 2074
- Académie Malgache, 1207
- Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer, 1860
- Classe des sciences morales et politiques. *Mémoires*, 207, 1885, 1896, 1945, 1954, 1957, 1978, 1999, 2003, 2006, 2011, 2013, 2017, 2040
- Classe des sciences naturelles et médicales. *Mémoires*, 1934, 1941
- Accra, Ghana, 609, 621
- Achebe, Chinua, 791–2
- Acholi (tribe, Uganda and Sudan), 1380
- language, 1493n
- Acquah, Ioné, 621
- Adam, Pierre, 933
- Adam, Thomas R., 105
- Adamafo, Twia, 595
- Adamawa (province, Nigeria), 712, 772
- Adams, David Thickens, 568n
- Adamson, Joy, 452n
- Addicott, Len E., 2075
- Addis Ababa. Chamber of Commerce, 1506
- Ademola, Adenekan, *ed.*, 508
- Adetoro, J. E., *ed.*, 793
- Adioukrou (region, Ivory Coast), 969
- Adloff, Richard, 925, 1115
- Administration et diplomatie d'Afrique noire et de Madagascar*, 853
- Adu, Omotayo, 799
- Advertising and Press Annual of All Africa*, 359n
- Ady, Peter, 203
- ed.*, 193
- Afar (people, Somalia and Ethiopia), 1440
- Africa* (London), 1n
- África* (Madrid), Note on Bibliography, p. 1, 179n, 2143
- Africa* (Rome), Note on Bibliography, p. 1
- Africa and International Organization*, 146
- Africa Bureau, 1611n
- Africa Digest* (London), 1n
- Africa, Its Problems and Prospects*, Note, p. 1
- Africa League, 156
- Africa Report* (Washington), 1
- See also* Note on Bibliography, p. 1
- Africa Seen by American Negroes*, 2
- Africa South in Exile*, 1769
- Africa Today* (New York), 1n
- African Abstracts* (London), 262
- African Affairs* (London) 1n
- See also* Note on Bibliography, p. 1
- African-American Institute (Washington), *see Africa Report*
- Women's Africa Committee, 228
- African Conference on the Rule of Law, 184, 189
- African Education Commission, 367–8
- African Folktales and Sculpture*, 315
- African Music Society, 338
- African One-Party States*, 106
- African personality, 289n, 356
- African students abroad, 375
- exchange, 379
- fellowships, 386
- in Britain, 380
- in France, 894, 895n
- in Russia, 175–6
- African Studies* (Johannesburg), 1835
- African Studies Association, *see African Studies Bulletin; Social Research in Africa*
- African Studies Bulletin*, 314
- African Women* (London), 381n
- Africana Nova* (Cape Town), 1761
- Africanization of civil service, 97, 104
- training programs, 385
- Congo, 1983
- Nigeria, 728
- Afrika: priroda; narody* (etc.), 4n
- Afrika heute*, 3
- Afrika-Instituut (Netherlands), 185
- Afrika und Ubersee*, Note, p. 59
- Afrika-Verein* (Hamburg), 197
- Afrique; revue mensuelle* (Paris), 358, 1176, 1197
- Afrique centrale; les républiques d'expression française*, 1096
- Afrique Occidentale Française. Togo*, 898
- Afro-Asian Organisation for Economic Co-operation, 198
- Agar-Hamilton, James A. I., 1780–1
- Aggrey, James E. K., *about*, 412
- Agni (tribe, Ivory Coast), 964, 979
- Agricultural Economics Bulletin for Africa*, 424

- Agriculture, 423–46  
   bibliography, 423  
 Angola, 445n  
 Basutoland, 1714  
 Cape Verde Islands, 2113  
 Congo (Leopoldville), 1878  
 East Africa, 445n, 1294  
 Ethiopia, 1533, 1535  
 French-speaking Africa, 877–8  
 French West Africa, 915, 928  
 Gambia, 554  
 Ghana, 617, 619  
 Kenya, 1326  
 Madagascar, 1249  
 Mauritania, 1016  
 Mauritius, 1569  
 Nigeria, 738, 763  
 Northern Rhodesia, 1633  
 Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Fed.), 445n  
 Senegal, 1063  
 Somalia, 1432, 1447  
 Spanish Guinea, 2158  
 Sudan, 1481, 1485, 1489–90  
   bibliography, 1489n  
 Uganda, 1403, 1409  
 West Africa, 435  
 Zanzibar, 445n  
 Aguessy, Cyrille, 930–1  
 Ahrens, Thomas P., 1446  
 Aid, economic and technical, 151, 156–9,  
   163–4, 166, 170–2, 200  
   bibliography, 163  
   British, 215  
   French, 874, 877, 880, 1043n  
   Italian, 250  
   U.N., 154, 1443  
   U.S., 158, 163–4, 170–2, 678, 1446–8  
 Ainslie, Rosalynde, 127  
 Ajao, Aderogba, 175  
 Ajayi, F. A., 185  
 Ajuluchuku, M. C. K., 715  
 Akademiâ nauk SSSR (Moscow)  
   Institut Afrika, 176  
   Institut Etnografi, 4  
   Institut Iazykai Myshleniâ, 294  
   Institut Vostokovedeniâ, 132  
 Akamba (tribe, Kenya), 1335  
 Akan (people, Ghana), 526, 623–4, 636,  
   639–43, 648n  
 Akiga, 760  
 Akindélé, Adolphe, 930–1  
 Akinsowon, Akindélé, 930n  
 Akpan, Ntieyong U., 87  
 Akwawuah, Kwadwo Asojo, 601  
 Albert, André, 1118  
 Albertyn, J. R., 1823n  
 Albospeyre, M., 1265  
 Alexandre, P., 914n  
 Alimen, Henriette, 53  
 All-Africa Church Conference, *Ibadan*,  
   1958, 391  
 Allen, Bernard M., 1464  
 Allen, S. W., *tr.*, 316  
 Allott, Antony N., 186  
   *ed.*, 187  
 Almagià, Roberto, *ed.*, 23n  
 Almond, Gabriel A., *ed.*, 110  
 Alsop, M. H., 1829n  
 Altrincham, Edward W. M. G., *baron*,  
   1308  
 Alur (tribe, Uganda and Congo), 1400  
 Alvares, Canon Francisco, 1522n  
 Alvarez García, Heriberto R., 2144  
 Amamoo, J. Godson, 566  
 Amaral, Ilídio do, 2058  
 Ama-Xosa (tribe, South Africa), 1845  
 Amba, *see* Bwamba  
 American Academy of Political and So-  
   cial Science (Philadelphia), 5  
 American Assembly, 157  
 American Colonization Society, 675  
   *See also* Liberia, history  
 American Historical Association, *see*  
   *Guide to Historical Literature*  
 American Negroes and Africa, 2, 139,  
   145  
 American organizations concerned with  
   Africa, 169, 173–4  
 American Society of African Culture, 6  
 American trade, early, with Mauritius,  
   1575  
   with Zanzibar, 1410  
 American Universities Field Staff, *see*  
   Munger, Edwin S.  
 American University (Washington,  
   D.C.) Foreign Areas Studies Divi-  
   sion, 567, 1869  
 Amharic languages, 1557  
   literature, bibliography, 1504n  
 Ammar, Abbas, 1479  
 Amministrazione Fiduciaria Italiana  
   della Somalia, 1427, 1435  
 Amon d'Aby, F. J., 961  
 Amponsah-Awhaitey conspiracy, 593  
 Anderson, James N. D., 185, 188  
 Anderson, Robert E., 652  
 Andersson, Efraim, 392, 1973  
 Andrade, António Alberto de, 2034  
 Andrade, Mario de, 2077n  
 Andriamanjato, Richard, 1208  
 Androy (region, Madagascar), 1213n,  
   1222  
 Anglican church, Sierra Leone, 817, 826  
 ANGOLA, 445n, 1889, 2029, 2058–94  
   bibliography, 1067  
 Angola. Direcção dos Serviços de Eco-  
   nomia, 2059  
*Angola: a Symposium*, 2076  
 Angolares (tribe, São Tomé), 2055  
 Animal husbandry, 444n  
   *See also* Cattle  
 Animism, *see* Religion, traditional  
 Annaert, Jean, 1941  
 Annis, Fred V., 678n  
 Annobón, 2169, 2173  
   *See also* Spanish Guinea  
*Annuaire des missions catholiques au*  
*Congo belge*, 1974  
*Annuaire des républiques de l'ouest*  
*africain*, 899  
*Annuaire du Tchad*, 1164  
*Annuaire national de la République*  
*Malgache*, 1209  
*Annuaire Noria*, 1209n  
*Annuaire statistique de la Réunion*, 1250  
 Ansprenger, Franz, 3, 854  
 Anstey, Roger, 1884  
 Anstruther, Ian, 74n  
 Antaisaka (tribe, Madagascar), 1214  
*L'Anthropologie* (Paris), 53  
 Anthropology, 262–85  
   bibliography, 262–3, 270, 280  
   Angola, 2068, 2084–94  
   Basutoland, 1712, 1717, 1720  
   Bechuanaland, 1724–25, 1728–33,  
     1737  
   Burundi, 2003  
   Cameroon, 1118, 1126, 1129, 1140,  
     1142  
   Central African Republic, 1154, 1157,  
     1162–3  
   Chad, 1167, 1170–1, 1173  
   Congo (Brazzaville), 1180, 1185  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1955–72  
     bibliography, 1953  
   Dahomey, 936, 940–2  
   East Africa, 1301–2, 1305–6  
     bibliography, 262  
   Ethiopia, 1546–8, 1550–1  
   French Equatorial Africa, bibliogra-  
     phy, 1095n  
   French-speaking Africa, 891, 893  
     bibliography, 893  
   French West Africa, 911–4, 927  
   Gabon, 1187–8, 1190, 1201, 1204  
   Gambia, 550, 554  
   Ghana, 569, 622–4, 626–33, 636–49  
   Guinea, 947, 951, 955  
   Ivory Coast, 965, 973–4, 1091  
   Kenya, 1310, 1323–5, 1328, 1335,  
     1338  
   Liberia, 656n, 658–62, 672–3  
   Madagascar, 1208, 1213–4, 1217–8,  
     1226n, 1230, 1233, 1239  
     bibliography, 262  
   Mali, 982, 985, 999–1002  
   Mauritania, 1019  
   Mauritius, 1562  
   Mozambique, 2121, 2137  
   Nigeria, 752, 760–90  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1580, 1635–6,  
     1639–43, 1647, 1650–5, 2092  
   Nyasaland, 1663, 1665, 1673  
   Portuguese Guinea, 2095, 2098–9,  
     2101, 2104, 2109



## Anthropology—Continued

- Portuguese Territories, 2050–1, 2055–6  
 bibliography, 2019  
 Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1580  
 Rwanda, 2003, 2013  
 Sahara, 1027–8, 1036, 1038  
 Senegal, 1059, 1067  
 Sierra Leone, 829–30  
 Somalia, 1428, 1440  
 Somaliland, British, 1439  
 South Africa, 1796, 1835–49  
   bibliography, 1766, 1843–4  
 South West Africa, 1755, 1760  
 Southern Rhodesia, 1682, 1697–703  
 Spanish Guinea, 2146n, 2159, 2163n, 2170–1  
 Sudan, 1475, 1492–7, 1499–501, 1503  
 Swaziland, 1742–5  
 Tanganyika, 1340, 1343–5, 1347, 1353, 1365–8  
 Togo, 1071, 1074, 1079, 1081, 1086, 1135  
 Uganda, 1373, 1379–80, 1392, 1394–5, 1400, 1407  
 Upper Volta, 1087–8, 1090–3  
 West Africa, 520–3, 530  
   bibliography, 262  
 Zanzibar, 1416, 1420  
 Anthropometry, *see* Physical anthropology  
 Anti-colonialism, 112, 118, 124, 145, 147, 255, 596–7, 730, 858, 872, 895, 1055–8  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1918, 1921n  
   Madagascar, 1210  
   West Africa, 509  
   *See also* Nationalism  
 Anti-imperialism, 78n, 83n, 132, 182, 577, 669, 852, 859, 1921n  
*Anuário da Província de Moçambique*, 2117  
*Anuário Estatístico do Ultramar*, 2035  
 Apter, David E., 125, 156, 588, 1372  
 Apthorpe, R. J., *ed.*, 102, 1598n  
 Arab-African relations, 107  
 Arabic language (Sudan), 1462  
 Arabs, Sudan, 1475  
   Zanzibar, 1420  
 Aranzadi, Iñigo de, 2163n  
 Arbelo Curbelo, A., 2145  
 Arboussier, Gabriel d', 855  
 Archaeology, 53, 55, 66–8, 70, 281  
   Chad, 1170, 1174, 1178  
   East Africa, 1269  
   Ethiopia, 1523–5  
   Ghana, 579  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1637  
   Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1584  
   Sahara, 1035  
   South Africa, 1783–4  
   Southern Rhodesia, 1689, 1691, 1694

## Anthropology—Continued

- Sudan, 1465, 1467  
 West Africa, 502  
 Archer, Francis B., 545  
 Archives, Central Africa, 1692–3  
   African, in Belgium and Holland, 498  
 Ardener, Edwin W., 274, 736, 1119, 1129n  
 Ardener, Shirley, 1119  
 Ardrey, Robert, 55n  
 Arkell, Anthony J., 1465  
 Armed forces, 111  
   Basutoland (World War II), 1723n  
   Bechuanaland (World War II), 1723  
   British South African Police (Rhodesia), 1588  
   Congo, Force Publique, 1914  
   East Africa, 1295  
   Senegalese, 1058  
   Somali (World War II), 1477  
   Sudanese (World War II), 1458  
 Armstrong, Robert G., 771n  
*L'Art nègre*, 316  
 Arthur, John, 598n  
 Artigue, Pierre, 1899  
 Arts, 6, 314–35  
   bibliography, 314  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1979, 1982  
   French-speaking Africa, 848  
   Ghana, 646  
   Mali, 991  
   Nigeria, 794–5, 806  
   Portuguese Territories, 2052–4  
   Tanganyika, 1344  
   Uganda, 1404  
   West Africa, 534, 536–8  
 Arts Council of Great Britain, 794  
 Ashabranner, Brent. *comp.*, 1549  
 Ashby Report, 802  
 Ashanti (nation, Ghana), 284, 578, 583, 586, 591, 635, 645–8  
 Ashton, Edmund H., 1712  
 Ashton, Ethel O., 1299, 1391n  
 Ashton, Hugh, 1705  
 Asian Peoples' Anti-Communist League, Republic of China, 177  
 Assaba (district, Mauritania), 1016  
 Associação Industrial de Angola, 2060  
 Association pour l'Étude Taxonomique de la Flore d'Afrique Tropicale, 425  
 Atger, Paul, 962  
 Atlantic Charter, 160  
 Atlases and maps, 44–5, 48–51  
   bibliography, 42  
   climate, 49n, 426  
   history, 60  
   population, 612  
   vegetation, 425, 428  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1882  
   Ghana, 612  
   Kenya, 1327  
   Mozambique, 2132

## Atlases and maps—Continued

- South Africa, 1776  
 Spanish Guinea, 2166  
 Aubert de la Rue, Edgar, 1259  
 Aubréville, André, 426, 1097–8  
   *tr.*, 425  
 Augusto de Silva, Artur, 2095  
 Aujoulat, Louis, 839  
 Austen, H. C. M., 1560  
 Austria, Bundeskammer der Gewerblichen Wirtschaft, 225n  
 Automobile Association of South Africa, 43  
 Autret, M., 478n  
 Avice, Emmanuel, 963  
 Awolowo, Obafemi, 716–7  
 Axelson, Eric V., 2118–9  
   *ed.*, 1782  
 Ayih-Dosseh, Michel, 175n  
 Azande (tribe, Sudan), 341, 1485, 1494, 1499n  
 Azevedo, Ávila de, 369, 2036  
 Azevedo, Carlos de, 2120  
 Azevedo, João Maria Cerqueira de, 2061  
 Azevedo, Warren L. d', *comp.*, 651  
 Azikiwe, Nnamdi, 653, 718

## B

- Baba of Karo, 761  
 Babinga (tribe, Congo), 1180n  
   *See also* Pygmies  
 Bacongo (tribe, Angola), 2089  
   *See also* Bakongo  
 Baeck, L., 1999  
 Baganda (tribe, Uganda), 1301n, 1391, 1394  
   language (Luganda), 1391n  
 Bagatta (tribe, Bechuanaland), 1730  
 Bahutu (people), *see* Rwanda  
 Baines, Thomas, 1693n  
 Baker, Sir Samuel W., 1284n  
 Baker, Tanya, 527  
 Bakongo (tribe, Congo), 1900, 1971  
 al Bakri, 61  
 Bakuba (tribe, Congo), 1970  
 Balandier, Georges, 241, 316, 840, 1059, 1099, 1179, 1186  
 Baldwin, K. D. S., 737–8, 746  
 Bali (tribe, Congo), 1959  
 Ballif, Noël, 1180  
 Ballinger, Ronald B., 1748  
 Baluba (tribe, Congo), 1900, 1956–7, 1991–3  
 Balunda (tribe, Congo), 1900  
 Bambara (tribe, Mali), 985, 999, 1001–2  
   (tribe, Guinea), 951n  
 Bamenda (tribe, Cameroon), 1138  
 Bamiléké (tribe, Cameroon), 1118, 1129, 1140, 1147  
 Bamun (tribe, Cameroon), 1144

- Bananas, 444n  
 Somalia, 1432  
 Bancroft, Joseph A., 1628  
 Banda, Hastings, *ed.*, 1662  
 Bandung Conference, 147–8  
 Banem (tribe, Cameroon), 1129  
 Bangui, Central African Republic, 1159  
 Bangweulu Swamps (Northern Rhodesia), 1658n  
 Bannerman, David A., 447  
 Banque Centrale des États de l'Afrique de l'Ouest, 1069  
 Banton, Michael P., 811  
 Bantu languages, 1582  
 Bapounou (tribe, Gabon), 1186  
 Bara (tribe, Madagascar), 1217–8  
 Barber, Frederick Hugh, 1696  
 Barber, William J., 1601, 1612  
 Barbour, Kenneth M., 257, 1452  
 Barclays Bank, 812, 1704  
 Bari (tribe, Sudan), 1499n  
 Barnes, J. A., 1580, 1635  
 Barns, T. Alexander, 2062  
 Barnwell, Patrick J., 1561  
 Barotse (tribe, Northern Rhodesia), 1646  
 Barth, Heinrich, 701  
 Bartholomew, John, *ed.*, 50  
 Bartlett, Vernon, Note, p. 23  
 Bascom, William, 527  
*ed.*, 264  
 Basden, George T., 790n  
 Basilio, Aurelio, 2146  
 Bassa (tribe, Liberia), 657  
 Bassari (tribe, Guinea), 951n  
 (tribe, Togo), 1071n  
 Basset, André, 301n  
 Bassir, Olumbe, *comp.*, 531  
 Basuto (people, Southern Africa), 1712  
 BASUTOLAND, 1707, 1712–21, 1774  
 Basutoland. Government Geologist, 1713  
 Bates, Margaret L., 106  
 Batten, Thomas R., 199, 229  
 Batutsi (people), *see* Rwanda  
 Bauer, Pèter Tamàs, 504  
 Baulin, Jacques, 107  
 Bauman, Ione L., 445n  
 Baumann, Hermann, 265  
 Baumer, Guy, 1942  
 Baxter, P. T. W., 1499n  
 Bayne, E. A., 1424–5  
 Béart, Charles, 266–7  
 Beato González, Vicente, 2163n  
 Beattie, John, 1373  
 Bechuana (tribe, Southern Africa), 1837n  
 BECHUANALAND, 1708, 1710n, 1722–39, 1746n, 1774  
 Beckingham, Charles F., 1519  
 Beekeeping, 444n  
 Beemer, H., 1837n  
 Béhier, Jean, 1243  
 Beier, Ulli, 795, 798  
*ed.*, 796  
 Beja (tribes, Sudan), 1477  
 Belchior, Manuel Dias, 2037  
 Belgian administration in Congo, 1874, 1902, 1915  
 in Ruanda-Urundi, 2000  
*See also* Colonial policies  
 Belgium. Ministère des Affaires Africaines, 1861, 2000–1  
 Direction de l'Agriculture . . ., 1928  
 Direction des Études Économiques, 1929  
 Ministère des Colonies, *see* Ministère des Affaires Africaines  
 Ministère du Congo Belge et du Ruanda-Urundi, *see* Ministère des Affaires Africaines  
 Office de l'Information et des Relations Publiques pour le Congo Belge et le Ruanda-Urundi [INFORCONGO], 1870–1, 1944, 2002  
 Bell, Christopher R. V., 1426  
 Bell, Walter D., 455n  
 Bello, *Sir* Ahmadu, 719  
 Bemba (group, Northern Rhodesia), 271, 1580, 1647, 1650–1  
 Benedict, Burton, 1562  
 Benguela Railway, 2064  
 Benin, Nigeria, 709  
 Bennett, George, 1309  
 Bennie, W. G., 1837n  
 Bennion, Francis A. R., 589  
 Benson, Mary, 1722  
 Bent, R. Alan R., 1723  
 Benveniste, Guy, 200  
 Berg, Elliot, 156  
 Berg Damara (people, South West Africa, etc.), 1725, 1755, 1760n  
 Berkeley, G. F. H., 1520  
 Berlage, Jean, 1865–6, 1975n  
 Berlin Conference, 1888  
 Berman, Sanford, 2142, 2147–8  
 Bernard, Augustin, 23n  
 Bernardi, Bernardo, 1310  
 Bernus, Edmond, 968  
 Berry, Jack, *ed.*, 304  
 Berthelot, André, 1026  
 Besairie, Henri, 1244  
 Bété (tribe, Ivory Coast) 974n  
 Beti (tribe, Cameroun-Gabon), 914n  
 Bézy, F., 1930  
 Biasutti, Renato, 268  
*Bibliographie ethnographique de l'A. E. F.*, 1095n  
*Bibliographie ethnographique de l'Afrique sud-saharienne*, 1953  
*Bibliographie sélective des publications officielles françaises*, 882n  
 Bibliography:  
 Note, p. 1+; 1–3, 7  
 Angola, 2067  
 Congo (Leopoldville), 1860–8, 1922, 1953  
 East Africa, 1267–8  
 Ethiopia, 1506, 1514  
 French Equatorial Africa, 1095  
 French-speaking Africa, 838, 852, 882  
 French West Africa, 896–7, 925  
 Gambia, 544  
 Ghana, 564–5, 567  
 High Commission Territories, 1706  
 Katanga, 1985  
 Kenya, 1268  
 Liberia, 651, 662–3  
 Madagascar, 262, 1205–6  
 Mauritania, 1003, 1025  
 Mauritius, 1558–9  
 Mozambique, 2122, 2131  
 Nigeria, 684–8  
 Northeast Africa, 262  
 Portuguese Guinea, 2111  
 Portuguese Territories, 2018–22, 2043n  
 Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1577, 1615  
 Sahara, 1025, 1029  
 São Tomé and Príncipe, 2116  
 Sierra Leone, 809–10  
 Somalia, 1423, 1439–40  
 Somaliland, British, 1433  
 South Africa, 1761–8, 1770, 1803, 1806  
 South West Africa, 1747  
 Spanish Guinea, 2142, 2163  
 Sudan, 1450–1, 1473  
 Tanganyika, 1268, 1342, 1362  
 Uganda, 1268n, 1382, 1386  
 West Africa, 262, 479–80  
 Zanzibar, 1268, 1412, 1416, 1420  
*See also* under subjects; e.g., Agriculture  
*Bibliography of African Bibliographies South of the Sahara*, *see* Note on Bibliography, p. 1  
*Bibliography of African Law*, 187n  
 Bidder, Irmgard, 1521  
 Biebuyck, Daniel, 1900  
 Biesheuvel, Simon, 1851  
 Bigelow, Karl W., 371n, 376  
 Biggers, John, 481  
 Bijago (tribe, Portuguese Guinea), 2109  
 Bilsen, A. A. J. van, 1901  
 Binet, Jacques, 230, 1120  
 Binns, A. L., 372  
 Biobaku, Saburi Oladeni, 702  
*A Biographical Dictionary of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*, 1471  
 Bira (tribe, Congo), 1960  
 Birch, Lionel, 566n  
 Bird, Christopher, 241  
 Bird, Mary, 527



- Birds, 447, 454  
 Bisa language (Upper Volta), 1094  
*Black Orpheus* (Ibadan), 796  
 Blackmer, Donald L. M., *ed.*, 163  
 Blake, John W., 494  
 Blanc, Robert, 258  
 Blanchet, André, 856  
 Blankenheimer, Bernard, 225n, 748n  
 Blardone, Gilbert, 857  
 Blandin de Thé, Bernard, 1025  
 Bledisloe Report, 1630  
 Bleek, Dorothea F., 1737n  
 Bleek, Wilhelm, 1737n  
 Blenck, Erna, 1751n  
 Blenck, Helmut, 1751n  
 Blindness, 473  
 Blixen, Karen, 1311  
 Blond, Georges, 455n  
 Blondel, F., 457, 879  
 Blooah, Charles G., 672  
 Blood, Sir Hilary, *comp.*, 703  
 Blundell, H. Weld, 1523n  
 Boateng, E. A., 568  
 Bodington, Nicolas, 1037n  
 Boeck, L. de, 1954n  
 Boganda, Barthélemy, 1158  
 Bohannan, Laura, 278, 771n  
 Bohannan, Paul J., 762–3, 771n  
     *ed.*, 201, 269  
 Boisdon, D., 185  
 Boiteau, Pierre, 1210  
 Bol, Jean M. van., 1975  
*Boletim cultural da Guiné Portuguesa*  
     (Bissau), 2096  
*Boletim geral do Ultramar* (Lisbon),  
     2031  
 Bolton, Frances P., 172n  
 Bolton, Kenneth, 1312  
 Bonardi, Pierre, 1020  
 Bond, Horace Mann, 376  
 Bongouanou, Ivory Coast, 964  
 Boone, Olga, 1962  
     *ed.*, 1953  
 Borkou (region, Chad), 1166  
 Bornu (region, Chad and Nigeria), 1178  
*Bottin d’Outre-Mer*, 885n  
 Botzaris, Alejandro, 178  
 Bouchaud, Joseph L., 393  
 Boudry, Robert, 1211  
 Boulnois, Jean, 891  
 Boulou (tribe, Cameroun-Gabon), 914n  
 Boundaries:  
     Gambia-Senegal, 554  
     Somalia—Ethiopia and Kenya, 1427,  
     1442  
 Bouquet, A., 1091–2  
 Bourdin, René, 1121  
 Bourgeois, R., 2003  
 Bourret, F. M., 590  
 Bousquet, G. H., 185  
 Boutillier, Jean Louis, 964, 969  
 Bouvenet, Gaston-Jean, 1121  
 Bovill, E. W., 495  
     *ed.*, 1294  
 Bowen, Elenore S., 520  
 Bower, Penelope, 752n  
 Bowles, Chester, 158  
 Boxer, Charles R., 56n, 2023, 2063, 2120  
 Boyd, Andrew, 44  
 Boyer, Gaston, 982  
 Boyns, B. M., 1489n  
 Bradbury, R. E., 771n  
 Bradley, Kenneth, 1620  
 Brady, Cyrus Townsend, *Jr.*, 1410  
 Braekman, E. M., 1976  
 Braithwaite, Edward R., 482  
 Brandel, Rose, 339  
 Branney, L., 1684n  
 Brasio, Antônio D., 2024  
 Brasseur, G., 930n  
 Brasseur-Marion, Paule, 930n  
 Brausch, Georges, 1902  
 Brazil, Africans in, 530  
 Brazza, Savorgnan de, *about*, 1101, 1110,  
     1184  
 Brazzaville, Congo, 1179  
 Brelsford, William V., 1636  
     *ed.*, 1615  
 Bretton, Henry L., 720  
 Breuil, Henri, 1783  
 Briault, Maurice, 1187–8  
 Brice, Belmont, *Jr.*, 111  
 Brice, W. C., *ed.*, 11  
 Briggs, Lloyd C., 1027–8  
 British Central Office of Information.  
     Reference Division, 566n  
 British colonial administration, 93–9,  
     101  
     East Africa, 1272, 1277, 1281  
     Gambia, 545  
     Gold Coast, 572  
     High Commission Territories, 1707–  
     10  
     Kenya, 1308, 1320  
     Nigeria, *see* Native administration  
     Northern Rhodesia, 1626  
     Nyasaland, 1659  
     Somaliland, British, 1430–1  
     Sudan, 1453, 1457, 1468–9, 1474,  
     1476, 1480  
     Tanganyika, 1272, 1341, 1354  
     Uganda, 1382, 1386, 1402  
     West Africa, 505–6  
     Zanzibar, 1413–5  
 British East Africa Company, 1285  
 British South Africa Company, 1589,  
     1623–4, 1692  
 British West Africa (former), 506,  
     513–4, 533  
 Brock, J. F., 478n  
 Brodie, John G., *ed.*, 307n  
 Brodrick, Alan H., *tr.*, 53, 67, 1038  
 Brom, John L., 455n, 1903n  
 Bromage, W. H., 44  
 Bronzes, 538, 1174  
     *See also* Sculpture  
 Brookes, Edgar H., 1804, 1829n  
 Brookfield, H. C., 1570  
 Broomfield, Gerald W., 133  
 Brosse, Jacques, 327  
 Brown, A. J., 752n  
 Brown, G. Gordon, 1340  
 Brown, George W., 654  
 Brown, John Tom, 1724  
 Brown, Ken, 1676  
 Brown, Paul, 771n  
 Brown, William O., 157  
     *ed.*, 5, Note, p. 23  
 Bruce, James, 1522  
 Bruel, Georges, 1095, 1100  
 Brunet, Auguste, 1251  
 Brunschwig, Henri, 841  
 Brussels. Université Libre. Institut de  
     Sociologie Solvay, 1931  
 Bruto da Costa, *Dr.*, 2114n  
 Bryan, G. McLeod, 394  
 Bryan, M. A., 301n, 1426n  
 Bryant, Alfred T., 1836  
 Bubi (tribe, Fernando Poo), 2146n,  
     2149, 2160  
 Buchanan, Keith M., 689  
 Buchholzer, John, 1507  
 Budge, *Sir* E. A. Wallis, 1523  
 Buell, Raymond Leslie, 7, 655  
 Buganda (kingdom, Uganda), 1372,  
     1393, 1396  
 Bujeba (tribe, Spanish Guinea), 2163n,  
     2170  
 Bulck, G. van, 301n, 1954  
 Bulfy, Manuel Iradier, 2156  
 Bulk-buying, British, 219  
*Bulletin agricole du Congo Belge et du*  
*Ruanda-Urundi* (Bruxelles), 1861,  
     1928  
 Bunyoro (tribe, Uganda), 1373  
 Burger, John, 1817n  
 Burke, Joseph H., 445n  
 Burnor, Duane R., 375  
 Burns, *Sir* Alan C., 134, 704  
 Burrows, H. R., 1829  
 Burssens, Amaat F. S., 1958n  
 Burssens, H., 1955  
 Burton, *Sir* Richard F., 932, 1284n,  
     1416n  
 Burton, W. F. P., 1956  
 BURUNDI, 1999–2004, 2006, 2008,  
     2011, 2014–6  
*Burundi chrétien*, 2004n  
 Burundi. Office National de Presse,  
     2004  
 Busansi (tribe, Upper Volta), 1094  
 Bushmen (people, Southern Africa),  
     1725, 1937–9, 1755, 1843  
     language, 1737n  
 Busia, Kofi A., 591  
 Busoga, Uganda, 1399n

Bussière, Pierre, 1252  
 Butt, Audrey J., 1301n, 1499n  
 Buxton, David, 1508  
 Buxton, Jean, 278  
 Bwamba (tribe, Uganda), 278, 1407  
 Bwiti (sect, Spanish Guinea), 2171

## C

CCTA, *see* Commission for Technical Cooperation in Africa  
 CIDESA, *see* Centre International de Documentation Économique et Sociale Africaine  
*The C. M. B. Newsletter* (Accra), 611n  
 C. M. S. Niger Mission, 707  
 CRISP, *see* Centre de Recherche et d'Information Socio-Politiques  
 CSA, *see* Scientific Council for Africa  
 Cabot, Jean, 1165  
 Cadbury, W. A., 2114n  
 Caeneghem, R., 1957  
 Caetano, Marcello, 2038  
 Cahen, Lucien, 1872  
*Cahiers d'études africaines* (Paris), 119, 873  
 Caisse Centrale de Coopération Économique, 874  
 Calabar, Nigeria, 697n, 764  
 Calame-Griaule, Geneviève, 351  
 Calder, Ritchie, 1903  
 Calpin, George H., 1805  
 Cambon, A., 1125  
 Cameron, Sir Donald, 1341  
 Cameron, Ian D., 505  
 Cameron, James, 8  
 CAMEROON, Federal Republic of, 1118–52  
 Cameroons Development Corporation, 1119, 1151  
 Cameroons, French. Laws, statutes, etc., 1121  
 Cameroons, Southern, 691, 758, 1119, 1126, 1136, 1138, 1143, 1150–1  
 Cameroun (former French), 1120, 1121–6, 1128, 1141, 1149, 1152  
 Cameroun. Service de la Statistique Générale, 1122  
*Le Cameroun; aspect géographique*, 1123  
 Campbell, Alexander, 135  
 Campbell, Jane, 1411  
 Campbell, John McLeod, 372n  
 Campbell, Olwen W., 489n  
 Cansdale, George S., 539–40  
 Cape Colored (South Africa), 1828, 1830  
 Cape Malays (South Africa), 1838  
 Cape Town. University of Cape Town. School of Librarianship, 1762  
 CAPE VERDE ISLANDS, 2029, 2097, 2100–1, 2103, 2107, 2110, 2111n

Capelle, Jean, 893n  
 Capet, Marcel F., 900  
 Capot-Rey, Robert, 1029, 1166  
 Caprasse, Pierre, 1943  
 Capricorn Africa Society, 1602  
 Capuz Bonilla, Rafael, 2163n  
 Cardaire, Marcel, 395  
 Cardinall, Allan W., 564, 569  
 Cardoso, José Carvalho, 2115  
 Carnegie Commission of Investigation on the Poor White Question in South Africa, 1823  
 Carney, David E., 506  
 Carothers, John C., 468, 1313  
 Carpenter, George W., 396  
 Carr-Saunders, Sir Alexander, 370, 371n, 1578  
 Carreira, Antônio, 2098–9  
 Carrington, C. E., 117  
 Carrington, John F., 340  
 Carrington, Richard, 448  
 Carson, Patricia, 498n  
 Carter, Gwendolen M., 108, 117, 1806  
*ed.*, 106, Note, p. 23  
 reviews by, 405n, 596n, 1649n  
 Carter, Hazel, 1637  
 Cartwright, Alan P., 1833n  
 Casement, Roger, 1892n  
 Castagno, Alphonso A., 1427  
 Caton-Thompson, Gertrude, 1689  
 Catrice, Paul, 857  
 Catroux, Georges, 844n  
 Cattle, 431–2, 438  
 cattle culture, Ruanda-Urundi, 2007, 2015  
 Causse, Jean, 964  
 Célérier, Jean, 1031  
 Central African Council. Commission on Higher Education for Africans . . ., 1578  
 CENTRAL AFRICAN REPUBLIC, 1153–63  
 Central Asian Research Centre, 4n  
 Centre de Recherche et d'Information Socio-Politiques [CRISP], 1904–7, 2005  
 Centre d'Information et de Documentation du Congo Belge, 1944  
 Centre International de Documentation Économique et Sociale Africaine [CIDESA], 193n, 226  
 Cerulli, Enrico, 1428  
 Cerulli, Ernesta, 268, 1546  
 Césaire, Aimé, 858, 950  
 Ceulemans, P., 1885  
 Chaamba (tribe, Sahara), 1027–8  
 Chabas, Jean, 1045  
 CHAD, 1164–78  
 Chad. Chambre de Commerce, d'Agriculture et d'Industrie, 1164  
 Chadangalara, J. W. M., 1662  
 Chadwick, Owen, 1656

Chagga (tribe, Tanganyika), 1347  
 Chailley, Marcel, 901  
*Changing Africa and the Christian Dynamic*, 398  
 Charbonneau, Jean, 875, 1223n  
 Charbonneau, René, 875  
 Charbonnier, François, *ed.*, 1189  
 Chartered companies:  
 East Africa, 1285  
 Nigeria, 710, 714  
 Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1589, 1623–4, 1692  
 Senegal, 1047, 1056  
 West Africa, 501  
 Chatelain, Heli, 2084  
 Chater, Patricia, 1677  
 Chauvet, Paul, *ed.*, 988  
 Chavannes, Charles de, 1101  
 Chazelas, Victor, 1124  
 Cheesman, Robert E., 1509  
 Chemery, J., 1102  
 Chevalier, Louis, 1245  
 Chidzalo, C. P., 1662  
 Chidzero, B. T. G., 117, 1342, 1612  
 Children, 231, 236  
 health services, 472  
 Ghana, 634  
 Nyasaland, 1668  
 Spanish Guinea, 2163n  
 Childs, Gladwyn M., 2085  
 Chilembwe, John, *about*, 1672  
 Chilkovsky, Nadia, 314  
 China, Communist, and Africa, 177, 181, 183  
 Chinese-African People's Friendship Association, 183n  
 Chisiza, Dunduzu Kaluli, 109  
 Chomé, Jules, 1908–11, 1921n  
 Chopi (tribe, Mozambique), 346, 2141  
 Christensen, James B., 622  
 Christianity, 391–4, 396–415, 421  
 Ethiopia, 1554  
 Nigeria, 783  
 Sierra Leone, 817  
 Sudan, 1462  
 Uganda, 1401  
 West Africa, 528  
*See also* Missions and missionaries;  
 Separatist churches  
*Chronique de politique étrangère* (Paris), 1912–3  
*Chronologie politique africaine* (Paris), 146n  
 Chuka (tribe, Kenya), 1335  
 Church, Frank, 172  
 Church, Marguerite S., 172n  
 Church, Ronald J. H., 49, 483, 527  
 Churchill, Winston S., 1464n, 1542n  
 Citrus industry, 445n  
 Claridge, William W., 578  
 Clark, J. Desmond, 1584, 1638, 1784  
*ed.*, 70



- Cleene, N. de, 1958  
 Clegg, Edward M., 1603  
 Clément, P., 235  
 Clements, Frank, 1579  
 Clemes, Gene Phillips, 469  
 Clerc, Joseph, 933  
 Clergy, African, training of, 414  
 Clifford, W., 1621  
 Climate, 426, 1061, 2150, 2158  
   atlas, 49n  
 Cloete, Stuart, 29  
   *about*, 9, 142  
 Clove industry, Zanzibar, 1415n  
 Clozel, Marie François Joseph, 983  
 Clutton-Brock, Guy, 1612, 1657  
   *about*, 1677  
 Coblentz, Alex, 1167  
 Cocoa, 444n, 542n, 606, 611, 737, 746,  
   1120, 2158  
 Coetzee, N. S., *ed.*, 1768  
 Coffee culture, 2115, 2158  
 Cohen, Sir Andrew, 88, 117, 152  
 Coker, G. B. A., 721  
 Cole, Desmond T., 295  
 Cole, Henry B., *comp.* and *ed.*, 668  
 Cole, Monica M., 1770  
 Cole, Robert W., 813  
 Cole, Sonia M., 1269  
   *ed.*, 70  
 Cole, Taylor, *ed.*, 733  
 Coleman, James S., 110–1, 157, 159,  
   722, 1070  
 Collins, G. R., 833  
 Collins, Robert C., 1466  
 Collins, W. B., 602  
 Collis, William R. F., 690  
 Colloque sur le projet d'un Marché  
   Commun Afro-Asiatique, 202  
 Collyer, Pamela, 667  
*Colonial Administration by European*  
*Powers*, 89n  
 Colonial legislatures, 600, 735, 1629  
 Colonial policies, 7, 13, 76, 89, 99, 103,  
   399  
   Belgian, 1874, 1893, 1898, 1902, 1915,  
     1925–6, 1940  
   British, 88, 92, 99, 101  
   French, 841, 843–4, 848, 851n, 857–8,  
     864, 872, 904, 988, 1046, 1057,  
     1104, 1106, 1232  
   German, 32, 86n, 1145–6, 1283, 1752  
   Portuguese, 2034, 2036, 2038n, 2042,  
     2044–5, 2065  
   Spanish, 2143, 2155, 2172  
*Colonial Review*, *see Oversea Quarterly*  
 Colonial Service, British, *see* British  
   colonial administration  
 Colonization, *see* European settlement  
*Colóquios cabo-verdianos*, 2100  
 Color discrimination, *see* Race relations  
 Colson, Elizabeth, 1639–42  
   *ed.*, 1580  
 Colvin, Ian Duncan, *ed.*, 1771  
 Comba, Pierre, 1504n  
 Comhaire, J. L. L., *comp.*, 227  
 Comité d'Études Historiques et Scienti-  
   fiques de l'A.O.F., 902, 905, 1024,  
   1040n  
 Commission for Technical Cooperation  
   in Africa [CCTA], 49n, 193, 203,  
   236n, 248, 463, 467  
   *See also* Scientific Council for  
   Africa  
 Committee on Africa, the War and Peace  
   Aims, 160  
 Common Market, 218  
   *See also* European Economic Com-  
   munity  
 Communications media, 352, 354  
   *See also* Press  
 Communism in Africa, 175–83, 394,  
   1921n, 2143  
 Community (French), 861, 864, 887  
 Community development, 229, 381  
   Ghana, 625  
   Nigeria, 741  
   Uganda, 1390  
*Community Development Bulletin*  
   (London), 381n  
 Comoro Islands, 1219, 1235, 1238, 1262  
 Companhia do Caminho de Férro de  
   Benguela, 2064  
 Conant, F. P., 771n  
 Condominas, Georges, 1212  
 Conference of African States on the  
   Development of Education, 371  
 Conference on African Education, *Cam-*  
*bridge*, 1952, 372  
 Conference on Educational and Occu-  
   pational Selection in West Africa,  
   532  
 Conferences, international, 139, 146–8,  
   463, 511  
   bibliography, 146  
   child welfare, 231, 236  
   church, 391  
   education, 371–2, 390n, 532  
   labor, 248  
   population, 261  
   social sciences, 234  
   women, 228, 246  
 CONGO (BRAZZAVILLE), 1179–85  
 CONGO (LEOPOLDVILLE), 1860–  
   998  
   bibliography, 1860–8, 1922, 1953  
 Congo, Belgian. Force Publique, 1914  
 Congo Free State, *see* Congo, history;  
   Leopold II  
 Congo Republic (Leopoldville) Minis-  
   try of Foreign Affairs, 1986  
 Congrès International des Écrivains et  
   Artistes Noirs, 348–9  
 Coniagui (tribe, Guinea), 951n  
 Conover, Helen F., *comp.*, 688, 897,  
   1268n, 1423  
   *See also Serials for African Studies*  
 Conrad, Joseph, 1886  
*Conscience africaine* (Leopoldville),  
   1925n  
 Considine, John J., 30  
 Constitutions, 189  
   French-speaking Africa, 864, 866  
   Gambia, 548  
   Ghana, 589, 592, 599  
   Nigeria, 725  
   Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1608  
   Sierra Leone, 592  
   South Africa, 1809–10  
   Swaziland, 1740  
   Uganda, 1381  
 Consumers, African, 1370  
 Conti Rossini, Carlo, 1512n, 1547–8  
 Conton, William, 496  
 Contract labor, 2065, 2114  
 Cook, Sir Albert R., 1374  
 Cook, Mercer, *tr.*, 206, 871  
 Cooke, C. K., 1584  
 Cooke, H. B. S., 1694  
 Cooper, T. B. K., 505  
 Cooperative movement, 212, 225n, 510,  
   876n  
 Copley, Hugh, 449  
 Corfield, F. D., 1314  
 Corfitzen, W. E., 1447n, 2049  
 Cornet, Pierre, 1030  
 Cornet, René J., 1887, 1987  
 Cornevin, Robert, 54, 934, 1071  
 Corni, Guido, *ed.*, 1429  
 Corrêa, Antônio A. Mendes, 2051, 2056,  
   2101  
*Corriere della Somalia* (Mogadiscio),  
   1435n  
 Cory, Hans, 1343–4  
 Costumes, Nigerian, 696  
 Cott, Hugh Bamford, 1375  
 Cotta, Gonçalves, 2077n  
 Cotton, 445n  
   culture, Sudan, 1481, 1489  
 Couch, Margaret, *comp.*, 364  
 Council of Europe, Consultative Assem-  
   bly, 204  
 "Country-by-Country Guide to Africa",  
   1n  
 Coupland, Sir Reginald, 1270–1, 1285n,  
   1581  
 Courcier, M., 203  
*Coutumiers juridiques de l'A.O.F.* 902  
 Couste, Pierre-Bernard, 205  
 Cowan, L. Gray, 106, 507  
 Cowen, Denis V., 1740  
 Cox, Edward G., 61  
 Cox-George, N. A. 814–5  
 Crawford, Osbert G. S., 1467  
 Crazzolaria, J. Pasquale, 1492–3  
 Creighton, Thomas R. M., 1604

Crespo Gil-Delgado, Carlos, 2149  
 Crocker, Walter Russell, 89  
 Crocodiles, 455n  
 Crofton, Richard H., 1415n  
 Crooks, John J., 816  
 Crossroads Africa, 162, 167  
 Crowder, Michael, 484, 705, 1046  
*ed.*, 697  
 Crowe, Sybil E., 1888  
 Crowley, Daniel J., 314  
 Culture contact and change, 16, 240,  
 264, 276, 284  
   Angola, 2069  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1897  
   Dahomey, 944  
   East Africa, 1275, 1277, 1306  
   French-speaking Africa, 840, 893  
   Ghana, 575, 577, 633  
   Ivory Coast, 973-4  
   Nigeria, 791-2, 797, 803  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1649, 1654  
   Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1600  
   Sahara, 1031-2  
   Sierra Leone, 813  
   Swaziland, 1743  
   Tanganyika, 1356  
   Uganda, 1379, 1400  
   West Africa, 487  
   *See also* Urbanization  
 Culwick, Arthur T., 1345  
 Culwick, G. M., 1345  
 Cunha, Joaquin Moreira da Silva, 2039  
 Cunnison, Ian G., 1643  
*Current History*, special issue, 117n  
 Curtis, Lionel, 1710n  
 Cust, Robert Needham, 296  
 Customary law, 185-6, 191  
   bibliography, 185, 187n  
   Bechuanaland, 1729  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1967  
   French West Africa, 902, 923  
   Ghana, 623, 644, 647  
   Kenya, 1325n  
   Nigeria, 721, 724, 762, 775, 779  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1646  
   Portuguese Guinea, 2095  
   Senegal, 1045  
   Somalia, 1428  
   Southern Rhodesia, 1700  
   Sudan, 1498  
   Tanganyika, 1344  
   Togo, 1079  
   Uganda, 1392  
   Upper Volta, 1087  
   *See also* Anthropology  
 Cuvelier, Jean, *Bp.*, 1889  
 Cyclones, Mauritius, 1565  
 Cypriani, Liddio, 268

## D

Dadzie, K. E. W., 388  
 Daget, Jacques, 989

Dahlberg, Richard E., 42  
 DAHOMEY, 930-44, 970  
 Daigre, *Father*, 1153  
 Dakar, Senegal, 1053  
 Dakar. Chambre de Commerce, 903  
 Dale, Andrew Murray, 1652  
 Dalton, George, *ed.*, 201  
 Dan (tribe, Liberia), 660-1  
 Danakil (people), *see* Afar  
 Dance, 486n  
   bibliography, 314  
   Congo (Brazzaville), 1180  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1648  
   South Africa, 1858  
 Danford, John, 696  
 Danquah, Joseph B., 623  
 Darling, Frank F., 1622  
 Dart, Raymond A., 55, 1844n  
 Date-palm growing, Mauritania, 1016  
 Davidson, Basil, 9, 56-7, 508, 1691n,  
 1874, 2065  
*ed.*, 508  
   review by, 701, 775, 1350  
 Davidson, James W., 1629  
 Davies, H. O., 723  
 Davies, Kenneth G., 57n  
 Davies, Oliver, 579  
 Davies, Reginald, 1453  
 Davis, Griffith J., 678n  
 Davis, Hassoldt, 965  
 Davis, James M., 375  
 Davis, John A., 2  
 Davis, Russell, *comp.*, 1549  
 Davister, Pierre, 1988  
 Dean, Leonard F., *ed.*, 1886  
 Dean, Vera Micheles, 598n  
 Deane, Phyllis, 1605  
 Debenham, Frank, 77n, 1658, 1725  
 Debrunner, H., 624  
 Decary, M. Raymond, 1213, 1253, 1262  
*ed.*, 1207n  
 Decraene, Philippe, 123n  
 Deffontaines, Pierre, *ed.*, 23n  
 De Graft-Johnson, John C., 58, 509  
 Dei-Anang, Michael, 350  
 Dekeyser, P. L., 662, 842, 1004  
 De Kiewiet, Cornelius W., 1785-6,  
 1807  
 Delafosse, Maurice, 285n, 983n  
*Delagoa Directory, see* *Annuário da Pro-  
 víncia de Moçambique*  
 De La Rue, Sidney, 680n  
 Delavignette, Robert L., 399, 904, 984,  
 1116n  
 Delamere, *Lord, about*, 1326  
 Delcourt, André, 1047  
 Delf, George, 1274n, 1315  
 Demesse, Lucien, 1180n  
 De Mestral, Claude, 400  
 Denis, Jacques, 1945  
 Denman, Earl, 451n  
 Demographic studies, *see* Population

Dermatoglyphics, 2104  
*Des Africanistes russes parlent de l'Afri-  
 que*, 9  
 Desanti, Dominique, 966  
 Desanti, Hyacinthe, 935  
 Deschamps, Hubert J., 351, 843, 1190,  
 1214-6, 1233, 1253  
*ed.*, 988, 1233  
 Desertification, 543n  
   Chad, 1166  
   Kalahari, 1727  
   Sahara, 1033  
   *See also* Irrigation  
 Deshler, Walter, 423  
 Dessarre, Eve, 393n  
 Dethine, P., 226n  
 Detourbet, A. Masson, 1174  
 Deutsche Afrika Gesellschaft, 10, 361  
   *See also* *Afrika heute; Die Länder  
 Afrikas*  
*Deutsche Aussenpolitik* (Berlin), special  
 issue, 182n  
 Devaues, Roland, 1182  
 Development and Resources Corpora-  
 tion, 967  
 Devèze, Michel, 844  
 Devlin Commission, 1660  
 Dia, Mamadou, 206, 876, 1064  
 Diamond, Stanley, 936  
 Diamonds, Sierra Leone, 835  
 Dias, Jorge, 2050  
 Dias de Villegas, J., 2166  
 Diawara (tribe, Mali), 982  
 Dick-Read, Grantley, 470  
 Dickins, W. H. G., 1273  
 Dickson, Mora, 691  
 Dieterlen, Germaine, 985  
 Dike, Kenneth Onwuka, 706-8  
 Dim Delobsom, A. A., 1087-8  
 Dina, I. O., 746  
 Dinis, Antônio J. Dias, 2102  
 Dinka (tribes, Southern Sudan), 278,  
 1500  
*Diogenes*, special issue, 351  
 Diogo, Alfredo, 2077n  
 Diola (tribe, Senegal), 1067  
 Diop, Alioune, 316, 950  
*ed.*, 348-9, 895  
 Diop, Cheikh Anta, 59  
 Diop, Majhemout, 859  
*Diplomatic Press Directory of Ghana*,  
 570  
*Diplomatic Press Directory of the Fed-  
 eration of Nigeria*, 692  
*Diplomatist* (London), 1048, 1510  
*Directory of the Republic of the Sudan*,  
 1454  
 Divination, 1653n  
 Dizian, Roland, 1125, 1165  
 Djibouti, French Somaliland, 1261, 1266  
 Dogon (tribe, Mali, etc.), 914  
 Doke, Clement M., 297-8, 301n, 1844n



Dolan, Eleanor F., *comp.*, 365  
 Donaldson, Kenneth, *ed.*, 1778  
 Doob, Leonard W., 352  
 Doresse, Jean, 1524–5  
*Dossier on Tropical Africa*, 127n  
 Douala, Cameroon, 1125  
 Doucy, Arthur, 1946–7  
 Douglas, A. J. A., 1714  
 Douglas, Mary, 1900  
 Dow Report, East Africa, 1290  
 Dowson, Sir Ernest, 90  
 Drachler, Jacob, *ed.*, 360n  
 Drachoussoff, V., 207  
 Drake, Howard, *comp.*, 366  
 Drake, St. Clair, 2  
     review by, 128  
 Drums, 340, 343  
 Dubb, Allie, *ed.*, 1598n  
 Dubois, Hubert P., 1530  
 DuBois, W. E. Burghardt, 2, 89n  
 Du Chaillu, Paul B., 1103  
 Duffy, James, 2025–7  
     *ed.*, 112  
 Dugast, I., 1126, 1129n  
 Duggan-Cronin, Alfred M., 1837  
 Dugué, Gil, 860  
 Duignan, Peter, 136, 1205, 1617n  
 Du Jonchay, Ivan, 208  
 Dumon, Frédéric, 861  
 Dumont, René, 877–8  
 Duncan, J. S. R., 1468–9  
 Duncan, Patrick, 1715  
 Duncan, Peter, 401  
 Duncan, Sylvia, 401  
 Dundas, Anne, 1346  
 Dundas, Sir Charles, 1272, 1347, 1705,  
     1749  
 D'Unienville, J. R. M., 1563  
 Dunn, Cyril, 1606  
 Dupire, Marguerite, 968–9  
 Du Plessis, Izak D., 1838  
 Du Puigaudeau, Odette, 1005–6  
 Durieux, André, 1915, 2040  
 Durrell, Gerald M., 1127  
 Du Sautoy, Peter, 625

## E

Earthy, Emily D., 2121  
 East, Rupert, *tr.*, 760  
 EAST AFRICA, 126, 254, 262, 388,  
     445n, 1267–1307  
     bibliography, 1267–8  
*East Africa and Rhodesia* (London),  
     1286n, 1405  
 East Africa Royal Commission, *see under*  
     Gt. Brit.  
 East African Common Services Organi-  
     zation, 1289, 1291  
 East African Institute of Social Re-  
     search, 1288, 1300, 1305, 1317,  
     1355–6, 1378–9, 1393, 1396, 1398–  
     400, 1407, 1409

East African Literature Bureau, 1284n  
 East African Railways and Harbours,  
     1287, 1292–3  
*East African Standard* (Nairobi), 1286n  
 East African Swahili Committee, 1299n,  
     1422  
     Note, p. 59  
 Eastern Nigeria, 87, 715, 741, 758n  
 Eastman, Ernest, 656  
 Éboué, Félix Adolphe, 1104, 1154  
*Economic Bulletin for Africa*, (Addis  
     Ababa), 224  
 Economic Survey Mission to Kenya,  
     1316  
 Economic Survey Mission to Tangan-  
     yika, 1348  
 Economics, 151, 197–225  
     bibliography, 193–6, 221n  
     Angola, 2058–61, 2064, 2072  
     Basutoland, 1716  
     Bechuanaland, 1726  
     British West Africa (former), 506,  
     513–4  
     Burundi, 2001  
     Cameroon, 1119, 1122  
     Congo (Leopoldville), 1928–40  
     Dahomey, 930n, 933  
     East Africa, 1287, 1290  
     Ethiopia, 1515, 1532, 1539, 1541,  
     1553  
     French Equatorial Africa, 1105,  
     1111–2  
     French-speaking Africa, 873–90  
     French West Africa, 900, 903, 926  
     Gabon, 1192, 1194, 1197  
     Gambia, 554  
     Ghana, 601–20  
     Guinea, 945  
     High Commission Territories, 1706  
     Ivory Coast, 975  
     Kenya, 1316–7  
     Liberia, 654, 673, 678  
     Madagascar, 1209n, 1220, 1222, 1241,  
     1245, 1247–8  
     Mali, 996  
     Mauritius, 1571  
     Mozambique, 2049, 2122, 2125,  
     2138–9  
     Nigeria, 737–40, 743–54, 756–7  
     Northern Rhodesia, 1630  
     Nyasaland, 1661  
     Portuguese territories, 2018, 2034,  
     2038, 2043, 2047, 2049  
     Réunion, 1250  
     Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Federa-  
     tion), 1601, 1604–5, 1608–10, 1616,  
     1618–9, 1661  
     Rwanda, 2001, 2015  
     Sahara, 1030–2, 1043–4  
     Senegal, 1062  
     Sierra Leone, 812, 814–5, 823–4, 833,  
     835  
     Somalia, 1425n, 1434, 1437

Economics—Continued  
     Somaliland, British, 1433  
     South Africa, 1824–5, 1833  
     Southern Rhodesia, 1683, 1688  
     Spanish Guinea, 2155, 2158  
     Sudan, 1483, 1488, 1491  
     Swaziland, 1741  
     Tanganyika, 1348, 1358, 1362  
     Togo, 1069, 1077  
     Uganda, 1387, 1408  
     West Africa, 504, 506, 513–5, 517–9  
     Zanzibar, 1414  
*The Economist* (London), 209, 1287,  
     1376–7  
 Education, 364–90, 408  
     bibliography, 226n, 364–6  
     Burundi, 2009  
     Congo (Leopoldville), 1980, 1983–4  
     Ethiopia, 1534  
     French-speaking Africa, 378, 894  
     Guinea, 953  
     Mozambique, 2124  
     Nigeria, 793, 801–2, 804–5  
     Northern Rhodesia, 1623  
     Nyasaland, 1667  
     Portuguese territories, 369, 2036  
     Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1578  
     Rwanda, 2009  
     Sierra Leone, 834  
     Southern Rhodesia, 1681  
     Spanish Guinea, 2144  
     Tanganyika, 1351  
     West Africa, 532–3  
     *See also* African students abroad  
 Edwards, Adrian C., 2086  
 Efik (tribe, Nigeria), 764  
 Egba (tribe, Nigeria), 702  
 Egerton, F. Clement C., 1128, 2066  
 Egharevba, Jacob U., 709  
 Egyptian influence in Africa, 107  
 Egyptian Society of International Law,  
     510  
 Eiselen, W., 1837n  
 Ekwensi, Cyprian, 797  
 Elections, 121  
     Kenya, 1309  
     Nyasaland, 1664  
 Electric power, Uganda, 1376  
 Elephants, 448, 455n, 1103n  
 Elias, Taslin O., 91, 190–1 592, 724  
*Elisabethville, 1911–1961*, 1989  
 Elisofon, Eliot, 317  
 Elkan, Walter, 1378  
 Ellenberger, Victor, 286  
 Ellis, William, 1240n  
 Elton, Lord, 1464n  
 Embu (tribe, Kenya), 1335  
 Emerson, Rupert, 113, 156–7  
     *ed.*, 146  
*Encyclopédie coloniale et maritime*, 845  
*Encyclopédie du Congo belge*, 1875  
*L'Enfant africain*, 231

- Engholm, G. F., 121  
 English language teaching, 387  
 Ennis, Merlin, 2087  
 Enquêtes bibliographiques [series], 193n  
 Epstein, Arnold L., 1644–5  
 Eritrea, 1537–8, 1543–5  
 Ermont, Philippe, 1009, 1051  
 Eskelund, Karl, 31, 576n  
 Estermann, Carlos, 2088  
*Estudos ultramarinos* (Lisbon), 2018  
*États africains d'expression française et République malgache*, 862  
 ETHIOPIA, 1504–57  
     bibliography, 1506, 1514  
 Ethiopia. Ministry of Commerce and Industry, 1532  
     Press and Information Department, 1511  
*Ethiopia Observer*, 1512  
*Ethiopian Economic Review* (Addis Ababa), 1532  
*Ethnographic Survey of Africa*, 270, 550, 636–8, 771, 830, 1129, 1301, 1420, 1440, 1499, 1546, 1550, 1647, 1673, 1702, 1720, 1733, 1744, 1955, 1959–61, 1970, 2091–2  
 Ethnology, Ethnography, *see* Anthropology  
*Études éburnéennes*, 968  
*Études mauritaniennes*, 1014, 1016, 1019  
*Études sénégalaises*, 1053–4, 1059, 1063  
*Études sociales nord-africaines*, 846, 1031–2  
*Études soudanaises*, 989  
*Études voltaïques*, 1094  
 Eurafrika, 885n  
*Europe France outremer* (Paris) special issues, 457, 863, 879–80, 970, 1007, 1049, 1130, 1194  
 European Economic Community, 197, 204–5, 207–8n, 218, 878  
     *Bulletin*, 204  
 European penetration, 75–6  
     Central Africa (French), 1110, 1169  
     Congo, 1884, 1888  
     French-speaking Africa, 841  
     Rhodesias, 1585, 1690, 1693, 1695–6  
     Southeast Africa, Portuguese, 2118–20  
     Southern Africa, 1736  
 Evangelista, Júlio, 2041  
 Evans, Evelyn J. A., 388  
 Evans, Peter, 1332n  
 Evans-Pritchard, Edward E., 1494–7  
     *ed.*, 271, 357  
 Ewe (people, Ghana and Togo), 637, 1085–6  
 Exploration, 74, 77, 82, 84  
     Chad, 1169  
     Dahomey, 932  
 Exploration—Continued  
     East Africa, 1282, 1284  
     Ethiopia, 1522, 1528  
     French Equatorial Africa, 1103, 1110  
     French West Africa, 901  
     Gambia, 556–7  
     Ivory Coast, 980  
     Nigeria, 701  
     Rhodesias, 1581, 1693, 1695  
     South Africa, 1782  
     Spanish Guinea, 2156  
     West Africa, 499–500  
     Western Sudan (Mali), 987, 993  
 Ezera, Kalu, 725
- ## F
- FAC, *see* Fonds d'Aide et de Coopération  
 FAMA, *see* Foundation for Mutual Assistance in Africa  
 FAO, *see* Food and Agriculture Organization . . .  
 FIDES, *see* Fonds d'Investissement pour le Développement Économique et Social  
*Fabian Colonial Essays*, 92  
 Fabri, Marcel, 1932  
 Fabummi, L. A., 1463n  
 Fage, J. D., 56n, 60, 69, 497, 580  
     *ed.*, 64  
 Fagg, William B., 316–7, 794, 2052  
 Fair, J. D., 1829n  
 Falasha (Jewish group, Ethiopia), 1551–2  
 Fali (tribe, Northern Cameroons), 772  
 Fallers, Lloyd A., 1379  
 Fallers, Margaret Chave, 1301n  
 Fang (tribe, Cameroun-Gabon), 914n, 1186  
 Fang Ntumu (tribe, Spanish Guinea), 2159, 2163n  
 Fanti (tribe, Ghana), 622  
 Farson, Negley, 32  
 Farwell, Byron, 74  
 Faublée, Jacques, 1217–8  
 Favrod, Charles-Henri, 35n, 114  
 Fawzi, Saad Ed Din, 1455  
 Fax, Elton C., 481n  
 Fearn, Hugh, 1317  
 Federalism, 126  
     East Africa, 1289  
     Eritrea, 1538, 1543n  
     French-speaking Africa, 853, 860  
     Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1372n, 1611, 1661, 1670–1  
 Fédération des Entreprises Congolaises, 1933  
 Feldheim, Pierre, 1946–7  
 Felgas, Helio A. Esteves, 2077, 2089  
*Fellowships for Africans*, 375n  
 Ferguson, John, 804
- Fernando Poo, 2145, 2146n, 2149, 2162, 2167  
     *See also* Spanish Guinea  
 Ferreira, Manuel, 2103  
 Ferreira Paulo, Leopoldina, 2056, 2104  
 Fetichism, *see* Religion, traditional  
 Fiawoo, D. K., 527  
 Field, Margaret J., 626–9  
 Figueiredo, Antônio de, 2042  
 Filesì, Teobaldo, 179, 250  
 Finances, 203, 221–2  
     Basutoland, 1716  
     Bechuanaland, 1726  
     Nigeria, 750–1, 753  
     Northern Rhodesia, 1630  
     Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1605  
     Swaziland, 1741  
     Zanzibar, 1414  
     *See also* Economics  
 Finkelstein, Laurence S., 1427n  
 Firestone plantations, Liberia, 652, 669, 676, 683  
 Fish and fishing industry, 449  
     East Africa, 1297  
     Ghana, 613  
     Liberia, 678n  
     Mauritius, 1576  
     Senegal, 1059  
     Sierra Leone, 823  
     Somalia, 1447n  
 Fitzgerald, Walter, 11  
 Flavin, Martin, 1876  
 Flint, John E., 710  
 Fokon'olona (local government system, Madagascar), 1212  
*Folia scientifica Africae Centralis*, 1877  
 Folklore, 315  
     Angola, 2084, 2087  
     Dahomey, 941  
     Ethiopia, 1548–9, 1552  
     Ghana, 640, 648  
     Kenya, 1323–4  
     Madagascar, 1213n, 1218  
     Nigeria, 799  
     Somalia, 1438  
     South Africa, 1737n, 1854  
     Spanish Guinea, 2160, 2163n  
     Sudan, 1503  
     West Africa, 523  
 Folliet, Joseph, 857  
 Fonds d'Aide et de Coopération, 874, 880  
 Fonds d'Investissement pour le Développement Économique et Sociale, 874, 881  
 Fonds d'Investissement d'Outre Mer [FIDOM], 874  
 Font Tullot, Inocencio, 2150  
 Food, 28n, 430, 436, 437  
     French West Africa, 919  
     Ghana, 616



- Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 424, 427-8, 438, 1533
- Foran, W. Robert, 455n
- Forbes, Robert H., 1033
- Ford, Victor C. R., 1288
- ✓ Forde, Daryll, 555, 752n, 771n  
*ed.*, 235, 270, 282, 287, 764
- Foreign relations of African countries, 118, 146-54  
 bibliography, 149  
 with Communist China, 177, 181, 183  
 Egypt, 107  
 Soviet Union, 175-6  
 United Nations, 149, 152-5  
 United States, 156-74
- Forests and forestry, 426, 440n  
 French Equatorial Africa, 1097-8
- Gabon, 1203
- Ghana, 602, 614
- Liberia, 678n
- Somalia, 1447n
- West Africa, 543
- Forrester, Marion W., 1318
- Fortes, Meyer, 630-2  
*ed.*, 271
- Fortt, J. M., 1398
- Fortune, G., 1582
- Fosbrooke, Henry, 1371
- Foster, Paul, 1275n
- Foster, Raymond S., 817
- Foundation for Mutual Assistance in Africa [FAMA], 464
- Fourie, L., 1755n
- Fournier, H., 1241
- Fraenkel, P. J., 1583
- Fralon, Jean, 1135
- France. Ambassade, U.S. Service de Presse . . . , 847n, 881, 937, 1008n, 1043n, 1050n, 1089n, 1155n, 1191, 1219  
 Direction de la Documentation, 847, 937, 971, 986, 1008, 1021, 1034, 1050, 1073, 1089, 1132-3, 1155, 1168, 1183, 1191, 1220-1, 1260-1, 2151  
 Institut National de la Statistique et des Études Économiques, 882, 945  
 Laws, Statutes, etc., 868n  
 Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer [ORSTOM], 933, 964, 969, 1120, 1147, 1165, 1175, 1182, 1190, 1212  
 Service des Affaires Sahariennes, 1025  
 Service des Statistiques d'Outre-Mer, 883
- La France de l'Océan Indien*, 1262
- Franck, Frederick, 33, 1200n
- Frankel, S. Herbert, 117, 210
- Franklin, Norton N., 1824
- Frantz, C., 1687
- Fraser, Douglas, 314
- Frazier, E. Franklin, 2
- Freeman-Grenville, G. S. P., 1349  
*ed.*, 1350
- Freetown, Sierra Leone, 811
- Freitag, Ruth, *comp.*, 423
- Freitas, Antônio Joaquim de, 2122
- FRENCH EQUATORIAL AFRICA (former), 1095-117  
 bibliography, 1095
- French Equatorial Africa. Haut Commissariat, 1105
- FRENCH-SPEAKING AFRICA, 838-895  
 bibliography, 838, 852, 882n
- French Union, 857, 865, 868
- FRENCH WEST AFRICA (former), 266-7, 896-929  
 bibliography, 896-7, 925
- French West Africa. Gouvernement Général, 938
- Frère, Suzanne, 1222
- Frewen, Richard, 1696
- Frey, Roger, 1179n
- Fripp, Constance E., *ed.*, 1693n
- Fröhlich, Gerd, 946
- Froelich, Jean C., 892, 1074, 1134
- Froment-Guieysse, Georges, *ed.*, 845, 970n
- Fula (tribe, Portuguese Guinea), 2095  
 language, 550
- Fulani (people, Northern Nigeria, etc.), 768, 785, 790n, 2095
- Fullard, Harold, *ed.*, 48
- Furbay, Elizabeth J., 680n
- Furon, Raymond, 457-9, 1035
- Furse, Sir Ralph D., 93
- Fuster Casas, José M., 2163n
- Future of the Overseas Food Corporation*, 1369n
- Fyfe, Christopher, 818
- G**
- Gã (people, Ghana), 626-8, 636
- Gabatshwana, S. M., 1722n
- GABON, 1186-204
- Gabon. Chambre de Commerce . . . , 1192  
 Direction de l'Information, 1193
- Gabus, Jean, 1036
- Gache, Paul, 211
- Gaisseau, Pierre D., 947
- Gaitskell, Arthur, 1481
- Galla (tribe, Ethiopia, etc.), 1550
- Gallagher, Charles F., 106
- Gallagher, John, 83
- Galletti, R., 746
- Gallieni, Joseph S., 987-8, 1223  
*about*, 1223n, 1226
- Gallois, L., *ed.*, 23n
- Galvão, Henrique, 2078
- GAMBIA, 544-63, 832  
 bibliography, 544
- Gambia. Laws, Statutes, etc., 546  
 "Gambia, Africa's Test Case," 547  
 "Gambia and Senegal Get Together," 547n
- Gambia Constitutional Conference, 548
- Gambia Oilseeds Marketing Board, 549
- Gambia-Senegal, relations, 547, 553
- Gamble, David P., 544, 550
- Games and toys, 266-7
- Gandhi, Mohandas K., 1808
- Gann, Lewis H., 136, 1617n, 1623
- Garcia de Orta* (Lisbon), 2028
- Gardiner, Robert K., 232
- Garnier, Christine, 680n, 1009, 1051, 1135
- Gary, Roman, 1103n
- Gaspar, V. M. Rabaça, 2072
- Gasse, Victor, 1246
- Gathorne-Hardy, G. M., 1542n
- Gatti, Attilio, 14n, 455n
- Gatti, Ellen, 14n
- Gaudy, M., 429
- Gautier, Emile F., 905
- Gauze, René, 1156
- Gbadamosi, Bakare, 798
- Gbaya (tribe, Central African Republic), 1163n
- Geddes, Henry, 1103n
- Gelfand, Michael, 471, 1624, 1697-8
- Geluwe, H. van, 1959-61
- Gendarme, René, 1247
- Genevray, J., 657
- Geografia universale illustrata*, 23n
- Géographie universelle*, 23n
- Géographie universelle Larousse*, 23n
- Geography, 11, 18, 20, 22-3, 26, 28  
 Chad, 1166  
 East Africa, 1273  
 French-speaking Africa, 845, 852  
 French West Africa, 905  
 Gambia, 561, 825  
 Ghana, 568  
 Ivory Coast, 979  
 Nigeria, 689, 693  
 Sahara, 1029  
 Sierra Leone, 825  
 South Africa, 1770  
 Spanish Guinea, 2158, 2167-9  
 Sudan, 1452  
 West Africa, 483
- Geography, economic, 213  
 East Africa, 1288
- Geography, physical  
 Chad, 1177-8  
 Congo (Leopoldville), 1881  
 Ethiopia, 1505
- Geology, 458  
 Basutoland, 1713  
 Congo (Leopoldville), 1872, 1881  
 Ghana, 618n  
 Katanga, 1996  
 Mozambique, 2122

- Geology—Continued  
Réunion, 1252  
Spanish Guinea, 2163n  
*See also*, Minerals and mining
- George, Betty, 1351  
George, John B., 1352  
Gérard, Albert, 351  
Gérard-Libois, J., *ed.*, 1905–6  
German colonies, 32, 86n  
    Cameroons, 1145–6  
    East Africa, 1283  
    South West Africa, 1752  
    *See also* Partition of Africa
- Gersdorff, Ralph von, 2029, 2123  
Gerstenmaier, Eugen, 3  
Gerster, Georg, 1037  
Gervis, Pearce, 819  
Gezira scheme, Sudan, 1481, 1489  
GHANA, 564–650, 981  
    bibliography, 564–5, 567  
Ghana. Government Statistician, 606  
    Information Services, 566n, 607–8  
    1960 Population Census of Ghana, 603  
    Second Development Plan, 604  
    Town and Country Planning Division, 609  
*Ghana Today* (Accra), 571  
*Ghana Year Book*, 570n  
Gibb, H. A. R., *tr.*, 61  
Gibbs, Peter, 1617n  
Gibson, B. D., 408  
Gicarú, Muga, 1319  
Gide, André, 1106  
Giffen, M. B., 1464n  
Gigon, Fernand, 948  
Giorgetti, Filberto, 341  
Girling, F. K., 1380  
Gisu (tribe, Uganda), 1301n  
Githens, Thomas S., 430  
Glebo (tribe, Liberia), 656n  
Glickman, Harvey, reviews by, 116, 129, 131, 725, 1481, 1606, 1617, 1679  
Glidiy-Ewe (tribe, Togo), 1086  
Gluckman, Max, 271-2, 274, 1646  
    *ed.*, 1580  
Goddard, Thomas N., 837n  
Goemé, V., *ed.*, 1974  
Gold Coast, *see* Ghana  
Goldblatt, Isidor, 1750  
Goldie, *Sir* George, *about*, 710, 714  
Goldschmidt, Walter, 157  
Goldthorp, J. E., 274  
Gonçalves, José Júlio, 2019, 2105  
Gonidec, P. F., 864  
Gonzalez Echegaray, Carlos, 2163n  
Good, Robert C., 1916  
Goodall, Elizabeth, 1584  
Goodwin, A. J. H., 1844n  
Goody, John R., 521–22  
    *ed.*, 649
- Gorane (tribe, Chad), 1167  
Gordon, Charles George, *about*, 1464  
Gordon, King, 1917  
Gordon-Brown, A., *ed.*, 1779, 1286  
Gore, Albert, 172n  
Gorer, Geoffrey, 486n  
Gorillas, 1103n  
Gorissen, Pierre, 1977  
Gorst, Sheila, 212  
Gosset, Pierre, 34  
Gosset, Renée, 34  
Gouilly, Alphonse, 906  
Gould, Peter R., 12, 610  
Gouraud, Henri J. E., 1010, 1169  
Gourou, Pierre, 213, 1934  
Government, 91, 96, 98  
    Chad, 1168  
    Congo (Brazzaville), 1181  
    Congo (Leopoldville), 1902, 1915, 1923  
    East Africa, 1298  
    Ethiopia, 1540  
    French-speaking Africa, 853, 862, 864, 866  
    French West Africa, 904  
    Gabon, 1193  
    Ghana, 588, 600  
    Guinea, 957  
    Ivory Coast, 971  
    Madagascar, 1248  
    Mozambique, 2126–7  
    Nigeria, 713, 726, 731, 735  
    Rwanda, 2000, 2006  
    Sierra Leone, 821  
    Spanish Guinea, 2165, 2172  
    Tanganyika, 1352  
    Togo, 1124, 1131, 1136  
    West Africa, 505–6, 508  
    *See also* Colonial policies; Native administration; Politics
- Goyat, Michel, 907  
Graham, R. H. Carson, 2067  
Grandidier, Alfred, 1224–5  
Grandidier, Guillaume, 1206, 1224–6  
Grandvaux, Luis Augusto, 2113  
Grant, Claude H. B., 454  
Grant, James, 693  
Grasses, 428  
Gray, Brian, 1723n  
Gray, *Sir* John Milner, 551, 1412  
Gray, Richard, 1470, 1607, 1614n  
Gray, Robert F., 1353  
Grazing, Somalia, 1447n  
Gt. Brit. Advisory Commission on the Review of the Constitution of the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1608  
    Central Office of Information, 214n, 372n, 566n, 820, 1609  
    Colonial Advisory Council of Agriculture, 431–2, 444n
- Great Britain—Continued  
Colonial Office:  
    annual reports, 94, 552, 572, 821, 1075, 1136, 1320, 1354, 1382, 1413, 1430, 1564, 1659, 1707–9  
    Colonial Research Studies, 552, 554, 753–4, 757, 763, 780, 1138, 1370, 1380, 1383, 1418, 1562, 1644, 1717, 1719  
    publications, 90, 95, 188, 214–5, 1138, 1289, 1290n, 1382  
    Commission on Financial and Economic Position [of colonies], 1414, 1630, 1716, 1726, 1741  
    Dept. of Technical Cooperation, 215  
    East Africa Royal Commission, 1290  
    East African Economic and Fiscal Commission, 1291  
    Foreign Office. Historical Section, 78n, 2106–7, 2114, 2152  
    High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland, 1706  
    Ministry of Food, 1369n  
    Nyasaland Commission of Inquiry, 1660  
    Office of Commonwealth Relations, 1707–10, 1717  
    Treaties, 553  
“Greater Somalia” issue, 1442  
Greaves, Lionel B., 1710n  
Green, John E. S., 1585  
Green, Lawrence G., 485, 1751  
Green, Margaret M., 765–6  
Green, Theodore F., 172n  
Greenberg, Joseph H., 299, 307n, 767  
Greene, Graham, 33, 680n  
Greenough, Richard, 373  
Greenwall, Harry J., 680n  
Grenfell, George, *about*, 1891  
Griaule, Marcel, 316, 318, 1170  
Griffith, V. L., 1390  
Grist, D. H., 444  
Grivot, René, 939, 972  
Gross, Felix, 1596n  
Grosskopf, J. F. W., 1823n  
Groundnut affair, *see* Peanuts, Tanganyika  
Groves, Charles Pelham, 402  
Gruchy, Joy de, 1822n  
Grzimek, Bernard, 451  
Grzimek, Michael, 451  
Guernier, Eugène L., 75, 319  
    *ed.*, 845  
Guèye, Lamine, 865  
Guggisberg, Charles A. W., 452  
*Guid’ Afrique équatoriale*, 1107  
*Guid’ ouest africain*, 899n  
*Guida per l’esportatore italiano*, 225n  
*Guide-annuaire de la Côte française des Somalis*, 1262



*Guide to Historical Literature*, see Note on Bibliography, p. 1

*Guide to Materials for West African History in European Archives*, 498  
GUINEA, 945–60

Guinea, Spanish. Delegación Colonial de Estadística, 2153

Gobierno General de los Territorios del Golfo de Guinea, 2154

Laws, Statutes, etc., 2155

*Guinée indépendante*, 950

*Guinée; prélude à l'indépendance*, 949

Gulliver, P. H., 1301n, 1302, 1355–6

Gulliver, Pamala, 1301n

Gunn, Harold D., 771n

Gunther, John, 35

Guthrie, Malcolm, 300, 301n  
*ed.*, 293

Gutkind, A. E., *comp.*, 1299n, 1400n

Gutkind, Peter C. W., 351, 1400n

Gwynn, Stephen L., 489n, 499

## H

Hackett, Peter, 301n

Hahlo, H. R., 1809–10

Hahn, C. H. L., 1755n

Haile Selassie, 1534

*about*, 1510–1, 1517–8

Hailey, William M. H., *Baron*, 13, 96, 1711

Hair, P. E. H., 809

Halcrow, *Sir* William, 618

Hall, *Sir* Douglas, 1431

Hama, Boubou, 891

Hambly, Wilfrid D., 2090

Hamilton, J. A. de C., *ed.*, 1456

Hamilton, R. A., *ed.*, 68

Hammond, Richard J., 2043

Hammond-Tooke, W. D., 1837n

Hamon, Léo, 856n

Hampaté Ba, Amadou, 989

Hance, William A., 216

Hancock, *Sir* W. Keith, 1787

*Handbook of African Languages* [series], 301

*Handbook of Tanganyika*, 1357

Handbooks and guides, 46

Central African Republic, 1156

Congo (Leopoldville), 1875

East Africa, 1286

Ethiopia, 1506

French Equatorial Africa, 1097–8

French-speaking Africa, 885n

French West Africa, 898–9

Gambia, 545

Ghana, 567, 570

Liberia, 668

Madagascar, 1209

Mozambique, 2117, 2140

Nigeria, 692, 695, 698, 700, 747

Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1615, 1779

Handbooks and guides—Continued

Sierra Leone, 837

South Africa, 1773–4, 1778–9

Sudan, 1454

Tanganyika, 1357

West Africa, 493

Zanzibar, 1421

Hanley, Gerald, 1430n

Hanna, Alexander J., 76, 1586–7

Hanson, Russell G., 375

Harcourt, François d', 36

Harding, Colin, 1588

Hardy, Georges, 848, 1052

Hardyman, J. T., 1227

Hargreaves, J. D., 822

Harley, George Way, 658  
*ed.*, 672

Harrar, J. George, *ed.*, 465

Harries, Lyndon, 1303–4

Harris, *Sir* Douglas, 1408

Harris, John, 684

Harris, Lyndon, 244

Harris, Marvin, 2124

Harris, Norman Dwight, 78n

Harris, Philip J., 726

Harroy, Jean Paul, 433, 2014–5

Hart, Philip A., 172n

Harvard African Expedition, 659, 1926–7

Haswell, Margaret R., 554

Hatch, John C., 14, 667

Hausa (people, Northern Nigeria), 754, 761, 767, 784

Hauser, A., 1053

Havlik, Jiří, 15

Haw, Richard C., 434n

Hawkins, Edward K., 757n, 1383

Haya (tribe, Tanganyika), 1344

Haydon, E. S., 1384

Hayes, Wayne L., 172n

Hazareesingh, K., 1565

Hazlewood, Arthur, 217, 1661  
*comp.*, 194

Healy, Allan M., 60n

Hehe (tribe, Tanganyika), 1340

Hellmann, Ellen P., 1844n  
*ed.*, 1811

Hempstone, Smith, 37, 1990

Henderson, Ian, 1321

Henderson, K. D. D., *ed.*, 1476

Henderson, P. D., 1661

Hennessy, Maurice N., 1890

Henry, Paul-Marc, 146

Herero (people, South West Africa), 1775, 1760, 2088

Herskovits, Frances S., 941

Herskovits, Melville J., 16, 166, 940–2  
*ed.*, 264

Hertefelt, Marcel d', 2011

Herzog, George, 672n

Heseltine, Nigel, 434

Heyse, Théodore, 193n, 226n, 1862–6

Hickman, Gladys M., 1273

Hiddingh, Willem, 1721n

HIGH COMMISSION TERRITORIES, 1704–11  
bibliography, 1706

Higher education, 370, 375, 379–80, 383, 386, 394

bibliography, 226n, 365

Nigeria, 801, 804–5

Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1578

Highland, Genevieve A., *ed.*, 622n

Hilbert, John, 1163n

Hill, Adelaide C., 2

Hill, J. F. R., 1362

Hill, Mervyn F., 1292–3

Hill, Polly, 611

Hill, Richard Leslie, 1450, 1471

Hiller, V. W., *ed.*, 1693n

Hilliard, Frederick H., 533

Hilton, T. E., 612

Himmelheber, Hans, 320, 660

Himmelheber, Ulrike, 660–1

Hinden, Rita, *ed.*, 92

Hintrager, Oscar, 1752

History, 53–86

Angola, 1889, 2063, 2073

Basutoland, 1718, 1721

Bechuanaland, 1734–5

Cameroon, 1144–6

Chad, 1169, 1178

Congo (Brazzaville), 1184

Congo (Leopoldville), 1884–98

Dahomey, 930, 932, 934, 940

East Africa, 1270–1, 1276–8, 1280, 1282, 1285

Ethiopia, 1519–29

French Equatorial Africa, 1101, 1110

French-speaking Africa, 841, 843–4, 848, 851–2, 891

French West Africa, 901, 917

Gabon, 1202

Gambia, 551, 558, 560

Ghana, 578–87

Guinea, 954

Ivory Coast, 961–2, 976–7, 980

Katanga, 1987

Kenya, 1322, 1326, 1337

Liberia, 656, 663–4

Madagascar, 1210, 1213n, 1215–6, 1223–6, 1228, 1240

Mali, 987–9, 992–4

Mauritania, 1010, 1019

Mauritius, 1560–1, 1563, 1568

Mozambique, 2118–20, 2128–9

Niger, 1024

Nigeria, 701–14, 764

Northern Rhodesia, 1623–4

Nyasaland, 1656

Portuguese Guinea, 2102

Portuguese territories, 2023, 2025, 2027, 2033

History—Continued  
 Réunion, 1251, 1255–6  
 Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1581, 1585–96, 1613  
 Rwanda, 2007, 2017  
 Sahara, 1026, 1038  
 Senegal, 1047, 1052, 1056, 1068  
 Sierra Leone, 816, 818, 822, 827  
 Somalia, 1428, 1436  
 South Africa, 1780–803  
 South West Africa, 1758, 1760  
 Southeast Africa, 2118–20  
 Southern Rhodesia, 1678, 1682, 1690, 1692–3, 1695–6  
 Spanish Guinea, 2156–7, 2162  
 Sudan, 1463–80  
 Sudan, Southern, 1466, 1470  
 Tanganyika, 1349–50  
 Togo, 1071  
 Uganda, 1385, 1389  
 West Africa, 495–503  
 Zanzibar, 1412, 1415–7  
*See also* Archaeology; Precolonial history  
 Hlubi (tribe, South Africa), 1837  
 Hopley, Charles W., 1322  
 Hockey, S. W., 388  
 Hodgkin, Robin A., 374  
 Hodgkin, Thomas L., 56n, 115–6, 711, 908  
 Hoernlé, A. Winifred, 1844n  
 Hoernlé, Reinhold F., 1812  
 Hoffherr, René, 884  
 Hoffman, Stanley, 146  
 Hofmeyr, Jan Hendrik, 1788  
 Hogg, V. W., 739  
 Holas, Bohumil, 273, 662, 914n, 951, 973–4  
 Holdsworth, Mary, 3, 4n  
 Hole, Hugh Marshall, 1589–93  
*Holiday*, special issue, 41n  
 Holleman, F. D., 185  
 Holleman, J. F., 1580, 1699–700  
 Hollingsworth, Lawrence W., 1274, 1415  
 Hollis, Sir Alfred Claud, 1323–4  
 Holm, Henrietta M., 1432, 1535  
 Holmes, John, 146  
 Holmes, Ralph J., 1447n  
 Holt, Peter M., 1472–3  
 Homburger, Liliás, 265, 302  
 Homen de Mello, Manuel J., 2042n  
 Homicide, 269  
 Hoopes, Roy H., 161  
 Hopen, C. Edward, 768  
 Hopgood, Cecil H., 290  
 Hopkinson, Tom, 1856n  
 Hornell, James, 823  
 Horrabin, J. F., 45  
 Horrell, Muriel, 1822n  
*ed.*, 1822  
 Horton, Robin, 697n  
 Hoskyns, Catherine, 127

Hotten, John Camden, *ed.*, 1513  
 Hottentot (people, Southern Africa), 1755, 1844  
 Houart, Pierre, 1921n  
 Houghton, D. Hobart, 1822n  
*ed.*, 1825  
 Houis, Maurice, 952  
 Houphouet-Boigny, *about*, 598n  
 Housing:  
     bibliography, 226n  
     Madagascar, 1213n  
     Nigeria, 742  
 Howard, Cecil, 489n  
*ed.*, 500  
 Howarth, David, 1625  
 Howe, Russell W., 486, 1195  
 Howe, Sonia E., 1228  
 Howell, Paul P., 1487–8, 1498  
 Howlett, Jacques, 316  
 Hubbard, John, 769  
 Huberich, Charles H., 663  
 Huddleston, Trevor, 1826  
 Huffnagel, H. P., 1533  
 Hughes, A. J. B., 1701–2  
 Hughes, John, 17  
 Hughes, Langston, *ed.*, 353  
 Hulstaert, G., 1954n  
*Human Problems in British Central Africa* (Livingstone, Northern Rhodesia), 1598  
 Hunt, John A., 1433  
 Hunter, Guy, 233  
 Hunter, Monica, *see* Wilson, Monica  
 Hunter  
 Hunting, 445n, 1103n, 1156, 2129, 2146n  
 Huntingford, G. W. B., 1301n, 1325, 1499n, 1519, 1550  
 Hurst, Harold E., 1482, 1487  
 Hurwitz, Nathaniel, 1829n  
 Husson, Philippe, 1011  
 Huth, Arno, 354  
 Hutt, A. McD. Bruce, 1340  
 Huxley, Elspeth, 487, 1275, 1326  
 Huxley, Sir Julian, 450n  
 Hymans, Jacques Louis, 838n

## I

IDEA, *see* Spain. Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas. Instituto de Estudios Africanos  
 IFAN, *see* Institut Français d'Afrique Noire  
 INCIDI, *see* International Institute of Differing Civilizations  
 INEAC, *see* Institut National pour l'Étude Agronomique du Congo Belge  
 INFORCONGO, *see* Belgium. Office de l'Information (etc.)

IRSAC, *see* Institut pour la Recherche Scientifique en Afrique Centrale  
 Ibadan, Nigeria. University College, 685  
 Ibadan, *about* 783  
 Ibibio (tribe, Nigeria), 771n, 786  
 Ibn Batuta, 61  
 Ibo (group, Nigeria), 765–6, 771, 773–4, 790n, 792–3, 803  
 Idenburg, P. J., 3  
 Idewu, Olawale, 799  
 Idowu, E. Bolaji, 770  
 Idrisi, 61  
 Ikeotuonye, Vincent C., 718n  
 Ila (language group, Northern Rhodesia) 1652  
 Ila-Tonga (peoples, Northern Rhodesia), 1647  
 Île Bourbon, *see* Réunion  
 Independence, *see* Nationalism; Politics of individual countries; Self-government  
*Index to South African Periodicals*, 1763  
 Indians in Africa, 138  
     East Africa, 1274  
     Mauritius, 1562  
     Natal, 1829n  
     South Africa, 1808  
 Indirect rule, *see* Native administration  
 Industries, 207–8, 251  
     bibliography, 226n  
     Social aspects, 232, 235  
     Ghana, 601  
     Nigeria, 758–9  
     Southern Rhodesia, 1688  
*Informations Eurafdoc*, 2021  
 Ingham, Kenneth, 1276, 1385  
 Ingold, F. J. J., 1172n  
 Ingold, G., 994n  
 Ingrams, William Harold, 1386, 1416, 1566  
 Initiation rites, 286  
     Guinea, 947, 953  
     Mali, 1002  
     Northern Rhodesia, 1650  
     Tanganyika, 1344n  
*Initiations africaines* (series), 913  
 Insects, 456  
 Institut d'Études Centrafricaines, 1108, 1109, 1202  
 Institut de Recherche Scientifique de la République Malgache, 1241  
 Institut de Recherches du Togo, 1081  
 Institut de Recherches Scientifiques du Cameroun, 1125, 1137  
 Institut de Sociologie Solvay, *see* Brussels. Université Libre  
 Institut Français d'Afrique Noire [IFAN], 909–14, 1053–4  
*Bulletin*, 909, 1003



- Institut Français d'Afrique Noire*—  
Continued  
*Initiations africaines*, 273, 502, 842, 901, 913  
*Mémoires*, 657, 662, 912, 916–7, 927, 930, 951, 982, 1004, 1039, 1047, 1061, 1067, 1074, 1093, 1142, 1144, 1178  
*See also Études éburnéennes, Études sénégalaises* etc.
- Institut National pour l'Étude Agronomique du Congo Belge [INEAC], 1861, 1878
- Institut pour la Recherche Scientifique en Afrique Centrale [IRSAC], 1877
- Institut Royal Colonial Belge, *see* Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer
- Institute of International Education, 375
- Institute of Race Relations, 137  
publications, 233, 920, 1607, 1613–4, 1897, 1927, 2076
- Institute of Social Research, *ed.*, 1829n
- Instituto de Estudios Africanos, *see* Spain. Consejo Superior . . .
- Inter-African Conference on Social Sciences, 234
- Inter-African Labour Institute, 248
- International Affairs* (London), special issue, 117
- International African Institute, 235, 287, 479, 555, 771, 914, 1499, 1647  
bibliography series, 262, 1267  
*See also Ethnographic Survey of Africa; Handbook of African Languages; Monographies ethnologiques africaines*
- International African Seminar, *Makerere College*, 1959, 274
- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, 740, 1387, 1434  
*See also* Economic Survey Mission to Kenya, Tanganyika
- International Children's Centre, 236, 472
- International Congress of African Culture, *Salisbury*, 1962, 321
- International Index*, 41n
- International Institute of Differing Civilizations, 104n, 237
- International Labor Office, 249
- International Missionary Council, 391n
- International Seminar on Ethno-History in Africa, 62
- International West African Conference, 511
- Investment, foreign, 198, 204, 208n, 210, 220  
American, 164, 169, 652, 1619  
German, 211
- Investment—Continued  
in East Africa, 1287  
French-speaking West Africa, 926  
Ghana, 620  
Liberia, 652, 676  
Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1616, 1619  
Tanganyika, 1363  
Uganda, 1377
- Inyanga (district, Southern Rhodesia), 1694
- Irrigation  
Kalahari desert, 1727  
Mali, 998  
Somalia, 1446, 1448  
Sudan, 1481–2, 1487  
Tanganyika, 1353
- Irvine, Alexander G., 1610
- Irvine, Frederick R., 435, 613–4
- Isaacs, Harold R., 162
- Islam, 394–5, 405, 411, 416, 420  
East Africa, 1303  
Ethiopia, 1555  
French-speaking Africa, 892  
French West Africa, 906  
Mauritania (bibliography), 1003  
Nigeria, 767, 783  
Portuguese Guinea, 2105, 2112  
Sudan, 1462  
West Africa, 528–9
- Islamic law, 188
- Isnard, Hildebert, 1248n
- Issa (tribe), *see* Somaliland, French
- Istituto Italiano per l'Africa, 250
- Istituto Nazionale per il Commercio Estero, 1483, 2125
- Italiaander, Rolf, 127n
- Italian colonial administration  
Eritrea, 1537  
Ethiopia, 1541  
Somaliland, Italian, 1427, 1429, 1435, 1441, 1443–5
- Italians in Africa, 250
- Italo-Ethiopian War, 1542
- Italy. Ministero degli Affari Esteri, 1435
- Iteso (tribe, Uganda), 1392
- Ivory carvings, 2052
- IVORY COAST, 961–81
- Ivory Coast. Direction de la Statistique . . . , 975
- Izard, Michel, 1090
- Izard-Héritier, Françoise, 1090
- J
- Jabavu, Noni, 1388
- Jablow, Alta, 523
- Jack, Daniel T., 824, 1671
- Jack, Homer, A., 2079
- Jackson, Barbara Ward, 118, 218
- Jackson, Sir Frederick J., 1277
- Jackson, Henry C., 1457–9
- Jackson, I. C., 741
- Jackson, S. P., 49n
- Jacquot, André, 301n, 1185
- Jadot, Joseph M., 1978
- Jahn, Janheinz, 322
- Jahoda, Gustav, 633
- Jardine, Douglas, 1436
- Jarrett, Harold R., 18, 825
- Jaspan, M. A., 1647
- Jean, Suzanne, 1157
- Jeffrey, D. G. B., 372
- Jeffries, Sir Charles J., 97
- Jenny, Hans, 1507n
- Jentgen, Pierre, 2006
- Jésman, Czeslaw, 1526
- Jie (tribe, Uganda), 1302
- Jinja, Uganda, 1399
- Jobson, Richard, 556
- Joelson, F. S., *ed.*, 1286n
- Johann, A. E., *pseud.*, *see* Wollschläger
- Johannesburg. Public Library, 275
- Johnson, Albert F., 565
- Johnson, Carol A., *comp.*, 146
- Johnson, James, 667
- Johnson, John J., *ed.*, 111
- Johnson, Ralph L., 1447n
- Johnson, S. J. M., 656n
- Johnson, Thomas S., 826
- Johnston, Bruce F., 436, 445n
- Johnston, Sir Harry H., 303, 664, 1389, 1594, 1891  
*about*, 80
- Joint Acquisitions List of Africana*, *see* Note on Bibliography, p. 1
- Jones, A. H. M., 1527
- Jones, A. M., 342, 1648
- Jones, Arthur Creech, 92, 1611
- Jones, D. H., 56n  
*ed.*, 68
- Jones, G. I., 764, 771n, 1717
- Jones, George Howard, 541
- Jones, Hugh W., 63
- Jones, Ruth, *comp.*, 262, 479, 1267
- Jones, S. H. M., 390
- Jones, Thomas Jesse, *ed.*, 367–8
- Jones, William O., 437
- Joos, Louis C., 56n
- Jopp, Keith, 608
- Joseph, Gaston, 976
- Joset, Paul E., 288
- Joshi, N. R., 438
- Joucla, Edmond A., 896
- Journal of African Administration*, 94n
- Journal of African History*, 64
- Journal of African Languages*, 304
- Journal of African Law*, 192
- Journal of Human Relations*, 19
- Journal of Local Administration Overseas*, 94n
- Journal of Modern African Studies*, 119

*Journal of Negro Education*, special issue, 376

*See also* 41n

Journées d'études coloniales, *Antwerp*, 1935

Joy, Charles R., 46n  
*ed.*, 1200

Judaism, Ethiopia, 1552–3

Judd, Helen O., 232

Jukum (language group), 777

Junod, H. P., 1837n

Junod, Henri A., 1839

Juvenile delinquency, 236  
bibliography, 226n

## K

Kaberry, Phyllis M., 1138  
*ed.*, 276

Kabre (tribe, Togo) 1079, 1081

Kagame, Alexis, 2007

Kahin, George Mct., 147

Kahn, Ellison, 1809–10

Kalahari (desert, Southern Africa) 1725,  
1727, 1737–9, 1753

Kalanda, Mabika, 1991

Kalck, Pierre, 1158

Kamarck, Andrew M., 157

Kamba (tribe, Kenya) 1301n

Kambalame, John, 1662

Kampala, Uganda, 1397, 1400

Kane, Nora S., 1678

Kane, Robert S., 46

Kanza, Thomas, 1918

Karefa-Smart, John, 410n

Kariba Dam (Rhodesia) 1579, 1625  
*See also* Tonga (tribe)

Karp, Mark, 1437

Kartun, Derek, 182n

KATANGA, 1985–98  
bibliography, 1985

Kaunda, Kenneth, 1631

Kavirondo (region, Kenya) 271, 1338

Kaye, Barrington, 634

Keay, R. W. J., 425

Kede (tribe, Northern Nigeria) 271

Keet, B. B., 1813

Keiser, Robert L., 665

Keiskammahoek Rural Survey, 1822n

Keita, Modibo, 990

Keith, Arthur Berriedale, 1888n

Keltie, *Sir* John Scott, 78n

Kendall, Henry, 1390

Kent, Raymond K., 1229

KENYA, 449n, 1301n, 1308–39, 1442  
bibliography, 1268

Kenyatta, Jomo, 1328  
*about*, 1314n, 1315

Keppel-Jones, Arthur, 1789–1790

Kerharo, Joseph, 1091–2

Kerremans-Ramioulle, M. L., 226n

Kettner, Jiří, 15

Kétu, Dahomey, 783n

Khoisan (peoples, South Africa) 1843  
*See also* Bushmen; Hottentot

Kiersen, S., 1762n

Kikuyu (tribe, Kenya), 1301n, 1328–9,  
1331, 1335

Kilby, Peter, 758n

Kimbangu, Simon, *about*, 392, 1911,  
1973

*See also* Separatist Churches

Kimble, David, 20, 20n, 98, 581  
*ed.* 119

Kimble, George H. T., 20, 1619

Kimble, Helen, *ed.* 119

King, Anthony, 343

Kingdon, Donald, 546, 727

King's African Rifles, 1295

Kingsley, Mary H., 488–9, 1127n

Kingsnorth, G. W., 65, 1280

Kinsey, Grover, 1447n

Kinship, 282, 627, 631, 1496, 1700–1,  
2085

*See also* Anthropology

Kirby, P. R., 1844n, 1852

Kirdi (tribe, North Cameroun) 1142

Kirk, John, *about* 1581

Kirk-Greene, Anthony H. W., 712  
*ed.* 701

reviews by, 710, 714, 768, 784

Kirsch, M., 864n

Kissi (tribe, Guinea) 955

Kitchen, Helen, 1076  
*ed.* 185, 382

*See also* Africa Report

Kittler, Glenn D., 403

Kivu (province, Congo) 1941

Kiwanga, Mtema Towagale, 1345

Klemme, Marvin, 1447n

Kloman, E. H., 146

Knight, R. L., 1489n

Knight-Bruce, *Bishop*, 1693n

Knopfli, Josue, *ed.* 2126

Kochnitzky, Léon, 1979

Koelle, Sigismund Wilhelm, 305

Koffler, Camilla, 453

Koinange, Mbiyu, 1332n

Kombe, L., 1648

Kondapi, C., 138

Konde (tribe, Nyasaland) 1663

Kong, Ivory Coast, 968

Konkomba (tribe, Ghana) 278, 649  
(Togo) 1074

Konkouré (region, Guinea) 945

Kono (tribe, Guinea) 951

Kordofan, Sudan, 782n

Kpelle (tribe, Liberia) 673

Krieger, Kurt, 323

Krige, Eileen J., 1840–1, 1844n

Krige, J. D., 1841

Kronenberg, Andreas, 1171

Kru (tribe, Liberia) 657

Kruger, Rayne, 1791

Kuczynski, Robert R., 259, 1139

Kup, A. P., 827

Kuper, Hilda, 1702, 1742–4

Kuper, Leo, 1814

Kutscher, Gert, 323  
*ed.*, 330

Kwashiorkor, 478n

Kyagambiddwa, Joseph, 344, 1391

## L

Labachery, Henri, 316

Labor, 247–56

bibliography, 247

directory, 256

Angola, 2065, 2070

Bechuanaland, 1731

Congo (Brazzaville) 1182

Congo (Leopoldville) 1946–7, 1949

East Africa, 254, 1296

French-speaking Africa, 864, 886

French West Africa, 907

Mozambique, 2124

Northern Rhodesia, 254

Portuguese Territories 2038–9, 2047

Sao Tomé and Príncipe, 2114n

South Africa, 1834

Southern Rhodesia, 1703

Sudan, 1455

Tanganyika, 254, 1355

Uganda, 1378, 1398

West Africa, 254, 516

Labouret, Henri, 285n, 843n, 915, 1093

La Fontaine, J. S., 1301n

Lagden, *Sir* Godfrey, 1718

Lagos, Nigeria, 742

Lagus, Charles, 1579n

Lake Victoria, 1288

Lala (tribe, Northern Rhodesia) 1648

Lalibela, Ethiopia, 1521

Lambarene, Gabon, 1198–200

Lambert, H. E., 1329

Lambert, Pierre, 1948

Lamy, R., 1265

*Die Länder Afrikas* (series) 10, 832,  
1080, 1449, 2029, 2123

Land tenure

bibliography, 193n, 226n

law, 277, 644, 721, 724, 775, 780

registration, 90

Basutoland, 1719

Dahomey, 933

East Africa, 1290

Ghana, 644

Madagascar, 1246

Nigeria, 721, 724, 763, 766, 775, 780

Rwanda, 2016

Tanganyika, 1356, 1359

Uganda, 1396

Zanzibar, 1418

Landskron, William A., 195



- Langba (tribe, Central African Republic) 1157
- Langenhove, Fernand van, 1912, 1919
- Langsam, Walter C., *ed.*, 86
- Languages and linguistics, 293–313, 387  
     bibliography, 262, note, p. 58–9  
     Chad [Teda] 1171n  
     Congo (Leopoldville) 1954, 1958n  
     East Africa [Swahili] 1299  
     Ethiopia, 1557  
         bibliography, 1504  
     French West Africa, 916  
     Kenya, 1323–4  
     Liberia, 672  
     Nigeria, 769  
     Pemba, 1422  
     Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1582  
     Somalia, 1426  
     Southern Sudan, 1493  
     Sudanese Arabic, 1462  
     Togo, 916  
     Upper Volta, 1094  
     West Africa, 524
- Lanham, Peter, 1717n
- Lantier, Raymond, 1174
- Lapie, Pierre O., 1172
- Larea Palacín, Arcadio de, 2163n
- Larimore, Ann E., 1399n
- Lasserre, Guy, 1196
- Laszlo, Andreas E., 2068
- Lattre, Jean Michel de, 885
- Laude, N., 1880
- Laure, René, 208n
- Laurence, Margaret, *ed.*, 1438
- Lavergne de Tressan, Michel de, 916
- Lavroff, D. G., 866
- Law, 184–92  
     bibliography, 187n  
     Cameroon, 1121  
     Congo (Leopoldville) 1915, 1923, 1942, 1948  
     Ethiopia, 1531, 1536  
     French-speaking Africa, 864, 868  
     French West Africa, 902, 923  
     Gambia, 546  
     Ghana, 186, 592, 599  
     Liberia, 666  
     Nigeria, 724, 727, 775  
     Northern Rhodesia, 1644  
     Portuguese Territories, 2039–40  
     Sierra Leone, 592  
     South Africa, 1809  
     Spanish Guinea, 2154, 2172  
     Uganda, 1384  
         *See also* Customary law; Islamic law
- Lawman, Tony, 1626
- Lawrance, J. C. D., 1392
- Lawson, Rowena M., 512
- Laye, Camera, 953
- Lazió, Branko M., 180
- Leaders, African, biographies, 21, 114, 127  
     training, 691  
     Congo (Leopoldville) 1899, 1943  
     French-speaking Africa, 867  
     Gambia, 563  
     Nigeria, 692, 700, 703, 715
- Leakey, Louis S. B., 66, 1330–2  
     *ed.*, 70
- Leask, Thomas, 1693n
- Lebeuf, Annie M. D., 914n, 1173
- Lcbeuf, Jean Paul, 772, 1159, 1174
- Leblanc, Maria, 1994
- Leblond, Ary, 1226n, 1254
- Leblond, Marius, 1226n, 1254–5, 1566n
- Lebou (tribe, Senegal) 550, 1059
- Leclerc, *General*, 1172
- LeCoeur, Charles, 1171n
- LeCocur, Marguerite, 1171n
- Lecoq, Raymond, 1140
- Lee, Ulysses, 2
- LeFebvre, Jacques, 1936
- Lefèvre, Raymond, 127n, 867
- Legendre, Sidney J., 1753
- Legge, Ronald, 1579n
- Legislative council, *see* Colonial legislatures
- Legum, Colin, 120, 148, 225n, 1372n, 1920–1  
     *ed.*, 21
- Leith-Ross, Sylvia, 773–4
- Lem, F. H., 991
- Lemarchand, René, 1867
- Lembezat, Bertrand, 914n, 1116n, 1141–2
- Lemoyne, Robert, 1262
- Leopard-men, *see* Secret societies
- Leopold II, King of the Belgians, 1892, 1895, 1897
- Leprosy, 469, 2163n
- Leroi-Gourhan, André, 893
- Le Rouvreur, Albert, 1175
- Leslau, Charlotte *comp.*, 355
- Leslau, Wolf, 307n, 1504, 1551  
     *comp.*, 355  
     *ed.*, 1552
- Lessa, Almerindo, 2108
- Lesser Dependencies of Mauritius, 1572
- Lessing, Doris, 1687n
- Lessing, Pieter, 178n
- Lestrade, G. P., 1837n, 1844n
- Lestranger, Monique de, 914n, 951n
- Leubuscher, Charlotte, 219, 752n, 1358
- Lcurquin, Philippe, 1868n, 2008
- Leuzinger, Elsy, 324
- Lewis, Hylan, 157
- Lewis, I. M., 1439–40  
     review by, 1442
- Lewis, Leonard J., *ed.*, 368
- Lewis, Roy, 828
- Lewis, Sir Samuel, *about*, 822
- Leyder, Jean, 226n
- Leys, Colin, 1602n, 1679  
     *ed.*, 1612
- Leys, Norman, 1333
- Lhande, Pierre, 1240n
- Lhote, Henri, 67, 1038
- LIBERIA, 106, 651–85  
     bibliography, 651, 662–3
- Liberia. Bureau of Folkways, 656n  
     Laws, Statutes, etc., 666  
     “Liberia; A Guardian Survey”, 667  
     *Liberian Yearbook*, 668
- Libraries, 384, 388  
     bibliography, 388n  
     Congo, 1977
- Libreville, Gabon, 1196
- Lichtervelde, Louis de, 1892
- Liebenow, J. Gus, 106
- Liège. Université. Fondation pour les Recherches Scientifiques au Congo Belge, 2009
- Lienhardt, Godfrey, 278, 1500  
     *ed.*, 357  
     review by, 1498
- Lima, Augusto J. Santos, 2109
- Lindbergh, Anne Morrow, 2110n
- Linton, Ralph, 317, 1230
- Lions, 451, 1293n
- Lippmann, Alphonse, 1264
- Lipscomb, J. F., 1332n
- Lipsky, George A., 1514
- List of American Doctoral Dissertations on Africa*, *see* Note on Bibliography, p. 1
- Literature, African, 348–63  
     anthologies, 353, 360, 362, 531  
     bibliography, 314, 361  
     Congo (Leopoldville), 1978  
     French-speaking Africa, 895  
     Ghana, 650  
     Guinea, 953  
     Nigeria, 791–2, 796–800, 803, 807–8  
     Nyasaland, 1662  
     Somalia, 1438  
     South Africa, 1850–1, 1853  
     Sudan, 1502  
     West Africa, 531
- Little, Kenneth L., 829  
     *ed.*, 527
- Littlewood, Margaret, 1129n
- Living standards  
     Cameroon, 1120  
     Mali, 996  
     Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1605  
     Ruanda-Urundi, 2008  
     South Africa, 1822n  
         *See also* Social studies
- Livingstone, David, 77, 404, 1693n  
     *about*, 402, 1581n
- Lloyd, Miss L. C., *ed.*, 1737n
- Lloyd, Peter C., 527, 775
- Lobato, Alexandre, 2127–8

Lobengula, *about*, 1591  
 Lobi (tribe, Upper Volta, etc.) 1093  
 Local government, 87, 94n, 726  
 Locust control, 446  
 LoDagaa (tribe, Ghana, etc.) 521  
 Loftus, E. A., 1284n  
 Logan, Rayford W., 2, 86n  
 Logoli (tribe, Kenya), 1338  
 Lokoya (tribe, Sudan, etc.), 1499n  
 Lomax, Louis E., 139  
 London. University. School of Oriental and African Studies, 68  
 Longmore, Laura, 1827  
 Look, special issue, 41n  
 López, Emilio Guinea, 2146n  
 Lord, Albert B., 2087  
 Lorimer, E. O., *ed.*, 240  
 Lorimer, Frank, 260  
 Lotuko (tribe, Sudan, etc.) 1499n  
 Lounnon, Albert, 1256  
 Lourenço Marques Directory, *see* *Anuário da Província de Moçambique*  
 Loveday, Arthur F., 1595  
 Lovedu (tribe, South Africa) 1841  
 Low, Donald Anthony, 1393  
 Lowenstein, Allard K., 1754  
 LoWiili (tribe, Ghana, etc.) 522  
 Lozi (tribe, Northern Rhodesia) 1580, 1646–7  
 Luapula (region, Northern Rhodesia) 1643  
 Luba (language) *see* Baluba  
 Lucas, Sir Charles, 78  
 Luchaire, François, 868  
 Luena (tribe, Angola) 2093  
 Luganda language, 1391n  
     *See also* Baganda  
 Lugard, F. J. D., *Baron*, 81n, 1278  
     *about*, 81, 85  
 Lugbara (tribe, Uganda & Congo) 278, 1395  
     language, 1493  
 Luguru (tribe, Tanganyika) 1371  
 Luke, Harry C., 810  
 Lulua (tribe, Katanga) 1991  
 Lumumba, Patrice, 1921  
     *about*, 1921n  
 Lunda (tribe, Northern Rhodesia, Angola) 1653, 2092–3  
 Luo (people, Sudan) 1492  
 Lupi, Luis C., 2044  
 Luther, Ernest W., 1515  
 Luthuli, Albert J., 1815  
 Luvale (tribe, Northern Rhodesia) 1655  
 Lux, André, 251  
 Ly, Abdoulaye, 1055–8  
 Lyall, Archibald, 2110  
 Lydekker, Richard, 449  
 Lyne, Robert N., 1417  
 Lynes, Tony, 1574  
 Lystad, Robert A., 635  
     *ed.*, 27

## M

Macaulay, J. B., 1804  
 McColloch, C. L., 1447n  
 McCord, William, 598n  
 MacCrone, Ian D., 1816  
     *ed.*, 1812  
 McCulloch, Merran, 235, 830, 1129n, 2091–2  
 McDermott, P. L., 1285n  
 Macedo, Diogo de, 2053  
 McEwen, Frank, 321n  
 McGee, Gale W., 172  
 MacGregor, James C., 1721n  
 McKay, Vernon, 149, 157  
     *comp.*, *see* *Guide to Historical Literature*  
 Mackenzie, Duncan R., 1663  
 Mackenzie, John, *Bishop*, *about*, 1656  
 Mackenzie, Leonard A., 1727  
 Mackenzie, William J. M., *ed.*, 121  
 Mackworth Praed, Cyril W., 454  
 McLaughlin, E. A., 438  
 Maclean, George, *about*, 582  
 McLoughlin, Peter F., 1484  
 MacMichael, Sir Harold A., 1474–5  
 Macmillan, Harold, 12  
 Macmillan, Mona, 1279  
 Macmillan, William M., 56n, 79, 122  
 McNair, James I., *ed.*, 77  
 McPhee, Allan, 513  
 Madagascar *à travers ses provinces*, 1248  
 Magic, 286, 288, 405  
     Angola, 2094  
     Basutoland, 1712, 1717  
     Cameroons, 1135  
     Congo (Leopoldville), 1956, 1971  
     Guinea, 947  
     Ivory Coast, 965, 1091  
     Mali, 891, 982n  
     Nigeria, 786  
     Somaliland, French, 1264  
     Southern Rhodesia, 1697  
     Upper Volta, 1088, 1091  
 Maes, Joseph, 1962  
 Mahdiya, the, 1464, 1466, 1472, 1478  
 Maigret, Julien, 1116n  
 Mair, Lucy P., 99–100, 117, 241, 244, 1394, 1664  
     *ed.*, 1338  
 Maistriaux, Robert, 377, 1980  
 Majó Framis, Ricardo, 2156  
 MALAGASY REPUBLIC, 1205–49, 1258  
     bibliography, 262, 1205–6  
 Malagasy Republic. Service de l'Information, 1231  
 Malcolm, D. McK., 1837n  
 Malcolm, Donald W., 1359  
 Malherbe, E. G., 1823n  
 MALI, 982–1002, 1033  
 Malim, Michael, 1567  
 Malinowski, Bronislaw, 276

Mambwe (tribe, Northern Rhodesia) 1654  
 Mandari (tribe, Southern Sudan) 278  
 Mandingo (tribe, Guinea and Portuguese Guinea) 954, 2098  
 Mandinka language (Gambia) 559  
 Mandja (tribe, Central African Republic) 1162  
 Manganese, 1194  
 Mangin, G., 185  
 Manioc, 437  
 Manjaco (tribe, Portuguese Guinea) 2099  
 Mannoni, D. O., 103n, 1232  
 Manners, Robert A., *ed.*, 112  
 Mano (tribe, Liberia) 658  
 Manoukian, Madeline, 636–8  
 Man-O-War Bay Training Center, Southern Cameroons, 691  
 Mantero, Eduardo, 2114n  
 Manue, G. R., 879  
 Maquet, Jacques J., 2010–1  
 Marais, Johannes S., 1792, 1828, 1844n  
 Maran, René, 1104n, 1110  
 Marbut, C. F., 442n  
*Marchés tropicaux et méditerranéens*, special issue, 875n  
 Marcus, Edward, 125, 220  
 Marcus, Mildred R., 220  
 Marein, Nathan, 1536  
 Margarido, Alfredo, 351  
 Marie André du Sacré Coeur, *Sister*, 237–9  
 Markets, 201–2, 211  
     East Africa, 1291  
     French-speaking Africa, 875  
     Marketing boards, West Africa, 504, 836  
     *See also* Trade  
 Marquard, Leopold, 1817  
 Marr Institute of Language and Mentality, 294  
 Marriage, 230, 239, 244, 282  
     Bechuanaland, 1730  
     Nigeria, 764n  
     Northern Rhodesia, 1635n, 1640, 1650n  
     Senegal, 1045  
     Southern Rhodesia, 1700  
     Southern Sudan, 1496  
 Marris, Peter, 742  
 Mars, J., 752n  
 Marsh, Zoë, 1280  
 Martelli, George, 1893  
 Marti, Montserrat Palau, 914n  
 Martin, Eveline C., 501  
 Martin, Henri, *tr.*, 1144  
 Martin du Gard, Maurice, 1226n, 1566n  
 Martinez Dominguez, Victor, 2163n  
 Martins, Manual Alfredo de Morais, 2069  
 Marvel, Tom, 1879



- Marwick, Brian A., 1745
- Maryland in Liberia (state) 656
- Masai (tribe, Kenya and Tanganyika) 1323
- Masefield, Geoffrey B., 1409n
- Mashonaland (region, Southern Rhodesia) 1693n, 1695, 1697–700
- Masks, 323, 537, 658n  
*See also* Sculpture
- Mason, Philip, 140, 1290n, 1613–4
- Mason, Reginald J., 374n
- Massé, H., 1053
- Matabeleland (region, Southern Rhodesia) 9, 1693n, 1695–6
- Matheson, J. K., *ed.*, 1294
- Mathew, Gervase, 56n  
*ed.*, 1276n
- Mathews, *Sir* Lloyd Wm., *about*, 1417
- Matthews, David, *ed.*, 1598n
- Mau Mau, 29, 38, 1313–4, 1321, 1331–2
- Maugham, R. C. F., 664n, 2129
- Maugham, Robin, 992
- Maunier, René, 240, 843
- Mauny, Raymond, 502, 917
- Maupoil, *comp.*, 896
- Maurette, Fernand, 23n
- Maurice, Albert, 74
- MAURITANIA, 1003–19, 1039–40  
bibliography, 1003, 1025
- Mauritania-Morocco, relations, 1015, 1018
- Le Mauritanien* (Nouakchott), 1012
- MAURITIUS, 1255, 1258, 1266, 1558–76  
bibliography, 1558–9
- Mauritius. Dept. of Education, 1568
- Mauritius Chamber of Agriculture, 1569
- Mauritius Sugar Industry Research Institute, 1570
- Mayer, Jean, 1932
- Mayer, Philip, 1829n
- Mbandja (tribe, Congo) 1955
- Mbari Writer's and Artist's Club, 356n, 800
- Mboya, Tom, 1334  
*about*, 598n, 1336
- Mbuiti, *see* Bwiti
- Meade, James, *ed.*, 1571
- Medicine, African, 468, 471, 474, 476  
Angola, 2094  
Basutoland, 1717  
Ivory Coast, 1091–2  
Liberia, 658  
Southern Rhodesia, 1697  
Upper Volta, 1091–2
- Medicine and health services, 401, 468–78  
Angola, 2068  
Chad, 1013  
Congo (Leopoldville) 1952  
Gabon, 1198–200  
Liberia, 657–9
- Medicine and health services—Cont.  
Mauritania, 1013  
Nigeria, 690  
Northern Rhodesia, 1624, 1627  
São Tomé, 2114n  
Spanish Guinea, 2145, 2163n  
Sudan, 1460
- Meek, Charles Kingsley, 277, 776–80
- Meeker, Oden, 38
- Meeus, Franciscus de, 1981
- Meinhof, Carl, 306
- Meisler, Stanley, 1060
- Melady, Thomas P., 127n
- Melby, John F., 375n
- Mellanby, Kenneth, 801
- Ménard, André, 1253
- Mende (tribe, Sierra Leone) 829, 831
- Mendelsohn, Jack, 405
- Mendelssohn, Sidney, 1764–5
- Mendes, Afonso, 2070
- Mendiaux, Édouard, 1894
- Menelik, Emperor of Ethiopia, *about*, 1520
- Méniaud, Jacques, 852n, 893n, 993–4
- Mental health, 468, 474
- Mentality, African, 377, 2163n
- Mer Rouge, Afrique Orientale*, 1265
- Mercier, Georges, 1032
- Mercier, Paul, 1053, 1059
- Mercier, Robert, 211
- Merker, M., 1323n
- Merlier, Michel, 1893n
- Merriam, Alan P., 314, 1922  
*comp.*, 336
- Mersadier, Y., 1053n
- Meru (tribe, Kenya) 1310
- Metcalf, G. E., 582
- Metzger, O. F., 1077
- Mews, Hazel, 384
- Meyer, Jean D., 1013
- Meyerowitz, Eva L. R., 639–42
- Meyers Handbuch über Afrika*, 22
- Michel, Louis, 1207
- Michel, Serge, 1921n
- Michiels, Albert, 1880
- Middle East Journal*, 1425n
- Middleton, Dorothy, 85
- Middleton, John, 278, 1301n, 1395, 1418  
*ed.*, 278
- Middleton, Lamar, 78n
- Migeod, Frederick W. H., 524, 831, 1143
- Migliorini, Elio, 23
- Migrations, Madagascar, 1216n
- Migratory labor, bibliography, 247  
*See also* Labor
- Milcent, Ernest, 106, 918, 1060
- Millikan, Max F., *ed.*, 163
- Millin, Sarah Gertrude, 1596, 1772, 1793
- Mills, *Lady* Dorothy, 680n
- Minelle, Jean, 1249
- Miner, Horace M., 995  
*ed.*, 241
- Minerals and mining, 457–62  
Basutoland, 1713  
French Equatorial Africa, 1102  
French-speaking Africa, 879  
Gabon, 1194, 1197  
Ivory Coast, 967  
Katanga, 1987, 1996–8  
Madagascar, 1243–4  
Mozambique, 2122  
Nigeria, 752  
Northern Rhodesia, 1620, 1628  
Sahara, 1030–2, 1035  
Somalia, 1447n  
South Africa, 1833
- Mission Anthropologique de l'A.O.F., 919
- Mission Socio-Économique du Soudan, 996
- Missionary Research Library, New York, 407
- Missions & missionaries, Catholic, 30, 393, 397, 399, 403, 406  
Burundi, 2004  
Central African Republic, 1153  
Congo, 1974, 1981  
East Africa, 409n  
Gabon, 1187–8  
Madagascar, 1240n  
Portuguese Guinea, 2112  
Portuguese territories, 2024, 2032, 2057
- Missions & missionaries, Protestant, 391, 401, 407, 414  
Angola, 2067  
Bechuanaland, 1736  
Congo, 1891, 1896, 1976  
Liberia, 670  
Madagascar, 1227, 1240  
Mozambique, 2130  
Northern Rhodesia, 1599  
Nyasaland, 1656  
South West Africa, 1758  
Southern Rhodesia, 1599, 1690, 1693, 1695
- Mitchell, J. C., 1580, 1665, 1703
- Mitchell, *Sir* Philip E., 1281
- Mitchison, Lois, 694
- Mitchison, Naomi H., 573
- Moçambique* (Tanananarive) 2131
- Mockford, Julian, 1722n
- Modisane, Bloke, 800
- Moffat, Mary, 1693n
- Moffat, Robert, 1693n  
*about*, 1690
- Moffett, J. P., *ed.*, 1357, 1362
- Mokhtar ould Hamidoun, 1014
- Mombasa, Kenya, 2120
- Monckton Commission, 1608
- Moncure, Robert C., 445n
- Monfreid, Henri de, 1257, 1266

Monod, Théodore, 439, 511n, 913, 1039-40  
*Monographies ethnologiques africaines*  
 [Series] 270, 914, 951n, 982n, 1173, 1185, 1233  
 Monroe, Elizabeth, 1527  
 Montgomery, John D., 164  
*Monthly List of Official Colonial Publications*, see Note, p. 19  
 Moore, Francis, 557  
 Moore, Gerald, *ed.*, 360n  
 Moorehead, Alan, 455, 1282, 1528  
 Mopeli-Paulus, A. S., 1717n  
 Moran, Willian E., 200  
 Moreira, Adriano, 185, 2045  
 Moreira, Eduardo, 2130  
 Morel, Edmund D., 1892n  
 Moreno Moreno, José A., 2157  
 Morgaut, Marc-Edmond, 252, 886  
 Morgenthau, Ruth Schachter, 156, 908  
 Morocco. Ministry of Information and Tourism, 1015  
 Morogoro (district, Tanganyika) 1371  
 Morris, Colin M., 1632  
 Mosmans, Guy, 406  
 Moss, Frank E., 172  
 Mossi (tribe, Upper Volta) 1087-8, 1090  
 Mota, Avelino Teixeira da, 2111  
 Mouëzy, Henri, 977  
 Moussa, Pierre, 887  
 Moyse-Bartlett, Hubert, 1295  
 MOZAMBIQUE, 2117-41  
   bibliography, 2122, 2131  
 Mozambique. Direcção dos Serviços de Agrimensura, 2132  
 Mphahlele, Ezekiel, 356, 1853  
   *ed.*, 96, 796  
 Müller, Friedrich W., 296  
 Müller, Fritz F., 1283  
 Mufulira Copper Mines, 1620  
 Mukulehe (tribe, Cameroons) 1142  
 Mukwaya, A. B., 1300n, 1396, 1398  
 Muldoon, Guy D., 455n  
 Mulhall, Harry, 790  
 Muller, R., 1265  
 Multiracial society, 1602-3  
   *See also* Race relations  
 Mumford, William B., 378  
 Munger, Edwin S., 39, 1397  
   *comp.*, see *Select Bibliography: Asia, Africa . . .*  
 Munier, Pierre M., 1016  
 Munyangaju, Aloys, 2012  
 Munno, Settimio, *ed.*, 2112  
 Murdock, George P., 279  
 Murray, Pauli, 599  
 Murray, W. A., 1823n  
 Music and musical instruments, 336-47  
   bibliography, 314, 336-7  
   church music, 347  
   recordings, 338n, 339

Music and musical instruments—Cont.  
 Ghana, 345, 643  
 Mauritania, 1017  
 Northern Rhodesia, 1648  
 South Africa, 1852, 1859  
 Uganda, 1391, 1404  
 Musiker, Reuben, 1762n  
 Musson, A. L., 1447n  
 Mustafa, Sophia, 1360

## N

NADA (Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia) 1680  
 Nadel, Siegfried F., 271, 781-2  
 Nama (tribe, South West Africa) 1755  
 Nandi (tribe, Kenya) 1324-5  
 el-Nasri, Abdel Rahman, 1451  
*Natal Regional Survey*, 1829  
 National Academy of Sciences, 465  
 National Conference on UNESCO, 165  
*National Geographic Magazine*, special issue, 41n  
 National parks, 450  
   *See also* Wild Life  
 Nationalism, 89, 113, 115, 117-8, 123-5, 136, 142, 145, 179  
   Angola, 2074-83  
   Congo (Leopoldville) 1899, 1901, 1918-22  
   French-speaking Africa, 871, 895  
   Ghana, 581, 594-8  
   Kenya, 1328, 1336, 1339  
   Liberia, 653  
   Madagascar, 1236-7  
   Nigeria, 716, 722  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1631, 1634  
   Nyasaland, 1666  
   Tanganyika, 1361  
   Uganda, 1372  
   Zanzibar, 1411  
   *See also* country breakdown under Politics, Race relations  
 Nationalist revolt, Angola, 2074-83  
*Nations nouvelles* (Cotonou) 869  
 Native administration, 81, 85, 87, 96, 99  
   High Commission Territories, 1711  
   Nigeria, 731, 779  
   Tanganyika, 1272, 1341  
   Uganda, 1393  
*The Native Tribes of South West Africa*, 1755  
 Ndebele (tribe, Southern Rhodesia) 1701-2  
 Ndembu (tribe, Northern Rhodesia) 1653  
 N'Diaye, Jean-Pierre, 894  
 N'Diaye, S., *ed.*, 1012  
 Neame, Alan, *ed.*, 74

Nederlands Adviesbureau voor Ingenieurswerken in het Buitenland, 743-4  
 Negritude, 6, 349, 351, 356, 362, 871  
 Neres, Philip, 920  
 Neuberger, Maurine B., 172n  
 Neumark, S. Daniel, 157  
 Neutralism, 150-1, 206  
   *See also* Foreign relations  
 Nevins, Henry W., 2114n  
*New Nations*, see *National nouvelles*  
 New York. Museum of Primitive Art, 325  
 Newbold, Sir Douglas, 1476  
 Newbury, Colin W., 503  
 Newlyn, Walter T., 221  
 Ngbaka (tribe, Congo) 1955  
 Ngbandi (tribe, Congo) 1955  
 Ngombe (tribe, Congo) 1955, 1972  
 Ngonde (tribe, Nyasaland-Tanganyika) 1675, 1366-7  
 Ngoni (tribe, Northern Rhodesia) 1580, 1635  
   (Nyasaland) 1668-9  
 Nguni (people, South Africa) 1837  
 Ngwato (tribe, Bechuanaland) 271  
 Nhaneca-Humbe (group, Angola) 2088  
 Niane, Djibril Tamsir, 950, 954  
 Nicaise, Joseph, 241  
 Nicolas, Jean Paul, 1061  
 NIGER, 1020-4  
 NIGERIA, 121, 126, 573, 576, 684-808  
   bibliography, 684-8  
 Nigeria. Cocoa Marketing Board, 746  
   Commission on Post-School Certificate and Higher Education, 802  
   Federal Ministry of Commerce and Industries, 747  
   Federal Government Development Programme, 745  
   Laws, Statutes, etc., 727  
   National Economic Council, 748  
   Nigerianisation Office, 728  
*Nigeria Handbook*, 695  
*Nigeria in Costume*, 696  
*Nigeria Magazine* (Lagos) 697n  
*Nigeria 1960*, 697  
*Nigeria Yearbook*, 698  
 Nigerian Economic Society, 749  
 Nigerian Institute of Social and Economic Research, 736, 739, 751, 758-9, 775, 1119, 1151  
*Nigerian Journal of Economic and Social Studies*, 749  
*Nigerian Publications*, 686  
 Nikiprowetzky, Tolia, 1017  
 Nile river  
   Blue Nile, 1509, 1528  
   Drainage, 1487  
   Nile waters questions, 1479, 1482, 1486



Nilo-Hamitic peoples (East Africa and Sudan) 1301n, 1499  
 Nilotic peoples (Sudan and Uganda) 1301n, 1499  
 Niven, Cecil R., 713  
 N'Jie, Pierre, *about*, 563  
 Njoya, *Sultan of the Bamun*, 1144  
 Nketia, J. H. Kwabena, 345, 643  
 Nkrumah, Kwame, 594–6  
     *about*, 598  
 Nomadism, 1041, 1439  
 Noon, John A., 253  
 Nord, Pierre, 885n  
 Northcott, William C., 1690  
 Northern Nigeria, 712, 715n, 771n, 776–80  
 NORTHERN RHODESIA, 1621–55  
 Northwestern University Interdisciplinary Committee on African Studies, 166  
 Norton de Matos, José M. R., 2037n  
 Nossi Bé (island, Madagascar) 1213n  
 Nosti, Jaime, 2158  
*Not Just Peanuts*, 1369n  
*Notes et études documentaires*, *see* France. Direction de la Documentation  
 Ntara, Samuel, 1662n  
 Nuba (tribe, Southern Sudan) 782n  
 Nuer (tribe, Southern Sudan) 271, 1493, 1495–7  
     language, 1493n  
 Nupe (tribe, Nigeria) 771n, 781–2  
 Nuyens, J., 193n, 226n  
 Nyakyusa (tribe, Nyasaland-Tanganyika border) 1356, 1365–7, 1580  
 Nyanza (region, Kenya) 1317  
 NYASALAND, 1656–75  
 Nyasaland. Committee of Inquiry into African Education, 1667  
 Nyasaland. Delegation of Chiefs and Citizens, 1611n  
 Nyembezi, C. L., 1854  
 Nyerere, Julius, 3  
     *about*, 598n  
 Nykia (tribe, East Africa) 1301n  
 Nyoro (tribe, East Africa) 1301n  
 Nzekwu, Onuora, 803  
     *ed.*, 697n

## O

OAMCE, *see* Organisation Africaine et Malgache de Coopération Économique  
 ORSTOM, *see* France. Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer  
 Oakes, John B., 150  
 Oberg, K., 271  
 Oberjohann, Heinrich, 1103n  
 O'Brien, Conor Cruise, 1995  
 O'Connel, James, 733

Odú (Ibadan) 796n  
 Office du Niger, 996, 998, 1030  
*Official Publications of French West Africa*, 897  
*Official Publications of British East Africa*, 1268  
 Ogrizek, Doré, *ed.*, 46n  
 O'Hara, Barratt, 172n  
 Ojike, Mbonu, 242  
 Okigbo, Pius Nwabafu, 750  
 Okovango (river, South West Africa) 1753  
 Okuma, Thomas Masaji, 2080  
*Okyeame* (Accra) 796n  
 Oil palms, 517, 518, 930n, 933, 969, 1157  
 Olbrechts, Frans M., 1982  
 Ol'derogge, D. A., *ed.*, 4, 315n, 1526n  
 Oldham, Joseph H., 408, 1602n  
 Olesa Muñido, Francisco F., 2163n  
 Oliveira, Antônio de, 2054  
 Oliveira, Jorge E. de Costa, 2046  
 Oliveira Boleo, José de, 2133  
 Oliveira Santos, F. M., 2114n  
 Oliver, Roland A., 56n, 69, 80, 409  
     *ed.*, 64, 1276n  
 Oliver, Samuel Pasfield, 1240n  
 Ollennu, N. A., 644  
 Olubummo, Adegoke, 804  
 Olugboji, Dayo, 729  
 Ommanney, Francis D., 1419, 1576  
 Omotayo, Adu, 799  
 One-party governments, 106  
 Onkole (tribe, Uganda) 271  
 Oppenheimer series, 1693  
 Orchard, Ronald K., *ed.*, 391n  
 Orde-Brown, G. St., J., 254, 378, 1296, 1335  
 Orewa, G. O., 751  
 Organisation Africaine et Malgache de Coopération Économique, 888  
 Organisation Commune des Régions Sahariennes, 1030, 1032, 1034–5, 1043–4  
 Organization for European Economic Cooperation, 542  
 Organization of African Unity, *see* Introduction, p. iv.  
 Orizu, Akweke A. Nwafor, 730  
 Orlova, Antonina Semenovna, 4n, 9  
 Ottenberg, Phoebe, *ed.*, 165n, 280  
 Ottenberg, Simon, *ed.*, 165n, 280  
 Ounianga (region, Chad) 1166  
 Ousmane, Diallo, 950  
 Ovambo (people, South West Africa) 1755  
     (Angola) 2088  
*Oversea Quarterly* (London) 381n  
 Overseas Food Corporation, 1369n  
 Ovimbundu (tribe, Angola) 2085–6, 2090–1

*Oxford Library of African Literature*  
 [Series] 357

## P

Padelford, Norman J., *ed.*, 146  
 Padirac, Raoul, 857  
 Padmore, George, 123, 597, 669  
 Pahouin (group, Cameroun-Gabon) 914n  
 Pales, Léon, 919  
 Palmer, Mabel, 1829n  
 Pamue (people, Spanish Guinea) 2146n  
 Pan-African Congress on Prehistory, 70  
 Pan-Africanism, 6, 120, 123–4, 149, 596, 729, 855  
 Panetta, Ester, 1963  
 Panikkar, K. Madhava, 124n  
 Panikkar, K. Madhu, 124, 2081  
 Panis, J. C., 1042  
 Pankhurst, Estelle Sylvia, 1441, 1529, 1537–8  
     *ed.*, 1512  
 Pankhurst, Richard K. P., 1538–9  
     *ed.*, 1512  
 Panofsky, Hans E., *comp.*, 247  
*Panorama* (Washington) 390n  
 Panyella, Augusto, 2159  
 Papy, Louis, 1063  
 Paques, Viviana, 914n, 951n  
 Paraf, Pierre, 849  
 Park, Mungo, *about*, 499  
 Parker, C. J. L., 1717n  
 Parker, Franklin, 1681  
 Parrinder, Edward Geoffrey, 289, 525–6, 783  
 Parties, political, 116, 127  
     French-speaking Africa, 856  
     Senegal, 1065  
     Uganda, 1393  
     Zanzibar, 1411  
 Partition of Africa, 75–6, 78, 80, 83, 86, 1271  
 Paton, Alan, 1855  
 Pattee, Richard, 2030  
 Patterson, John H., 1293n  
 Patterson, Sheila, 1830  
 Paul, Andrew, 1477  
 Paulme, Denise, 316, 326–7, 955, 974n, *ed.*, 243  
 Paulus, Jean P., 185, 1923  
 Pauvert, J. C., 1099n, 1186  
 Pauwels, M., 2013  
 Paver, B. G., 1691  
 Payne, W. J. A., 444n  
 Payne, William A., 1757n  
 Peace Corps, 161  
 Peake, Cyrus H., 86  
 Peanuts, 517, 542, 549, 1063, 1369  
 Pearce, F. B., 1416n  
 Pearcy, George E., 47  
 Peasant agriculture, 441, 933, 984, 1935, 1937

- Péchoux, Laurent, 1078  
 Pedi (tribe, South Africa), 1837  
 Pedler, F. J., 514  
 Pedrals, Denis-Pierre de, 53n, 281, 850  
 Pedraza, Howard J., 714  
 Peiser, G., 866  
 Pelissier, Paul, 1063  
 Pelissier, René, 2151  
 Pellegrin, Fr., 1203n  
 Pemba, *see* Zanzibar  
   language & verse, 1422  
 Perham, Margery F., 81, 101, 731,  
   1326n, 1540  
   *ed.*, 82, 600, 752, 1278, 1710n  
 Perier, G. D., 1979n  
 Perin, François, 1924  
 Perin-Hockers, Maryse, 1949  
 Periodicals, special issues, note, p. 9  
   politico-economic, note, p. 22-3  
 Perrott, Daisy V., 1299n  
 Perry, Ruth, 687  
*Perspectives d'outre-mer* (Monaco)  
   special issues, 978, 1062, 1111, 1258  
 Petch, G. A., 515  
 Pétilion, Léon, 1925  
 Petroleum  
   Gabon, 1197  
   Sahara, 1030, 1032  
 Peul (tribe, Mali) 989, 1000 (Senegal)  
   1063  
   *See also* Fulani  
*Le Peuple malgache; monographies*  
*ethnologiques*, 1233  
 Pevée, Albert, 1983  
 Pfeffer, Karl H., 615, 832  
 Phelps-Stokes Commission on African  
   Education, 367-8, 412  
 Philip (George) and Son Ltd., 48  
 Phillips, Arthur, 185, 244  
 Phillips, C. E. Lucas, 1617n  
 Phillips, John F. V., 440, 598  
 Phillips, P., 1482n  
 Phillips, Ralph W., 438  
 Phillips, Ray E., 1831  
 Phillips Report, Southern Rhodesia,  
   1683  
 Physical anthropology, 268, 273, 283  
   Cape Verde Islands, 2108  
   Liberia, 659, 662  
   Mozambique, 2137  
   Nigeria, 790  
   Portuguese territories, 2051, 2056  
   Spanish Guinea, 2149  
 Pick, Hella, 667  
 Picture albums, 33, 40, 696  
 Pidoux, Edmond, 1234  
 Pienaar, S., 1818  
 Pierson-Mathy, Mme. P., 870  
 Pietermaritzburg. University of Natal.  
   Dept. of Economics, 1829n  
 Pifer, Alan J., 379  
 Pike, K. L., 307n  
 Pim, Sir Alan W., 441, 752n, 1414,  
   1630n, 1716, 1726, 1741  
 Pinder, Frank E., 678n  
 Pinxten, Karel, 1937  
 Pippet, Gabriel, 534n  
 Pirates, Madagascar, 1216  
   Mauritius, 1560  
 Pitcher, G. M., 564n  
 Pitt, T. S. L., 1612  
 Pius XII, *Pope*, 397  
 Place, James, *ed.*, 1284  
*A Plan for the Mechanized Production*  
*of Groundnuts in East and Central*  
*Africa*, 1369n  
 Playne, Beatrice, 1521n  
 Plewman Commission, Southern Rho-  
   desia, 1685  
 Plimpton, Ruth T., 167  
 Plisnier-Ladame, F., 226n  
 Poetry, African, 350-1, 362, 531, 798,  
   1304, 1422, 1437, 1502  
 Poirier, Jean, 185, 893  
 Pokomo (tribe, East Africa), 1301n  
 Poleman, Thomas T., 616  
 Political and Economic Planning, Lon-  
   don, 380  
 Political systems, indigenous, 100, 271,  
   278, 1842  
   Dahomey, 936  
   East Africa, 1305  
   Ghana, 591, 628, 639  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1635, 1643, 1655  
   Nyasaland, 1675  
   Tanganyika, 1368  
   Uganda, 1379  
 Politics, 8, 15, 21-2, 35, 37, 47, 105-31  
   Angola, 2065, 2071, 2074-83  
   Basutoland, 1718  
   Bechuanaland, 1710n  
   Cameroon, 1130, 1132-3, 1148  
   Congo (Brazzaville) 1183  
   Congo (Leopoldville) 1874, 1899-927  
   Dahomey, 937, 970  
   Ethiopia, 1534, 1540  
   French Equatorial Africa, 1115  
   French-speaking Africa 844, 847-9,  
     853-72  
   French West Africa, 908, 918, 920,  
     925, 929  
   Gabon, 1191  
   Gambia, 547, 553, 563  
   Ghana, 588, 590-1, 593-8  
   Guinea, 106, 124, 948-50, 959-60  
   High Commission Territories, 1705,  
     1710  
   Ivory Coast, 106, 971-2, 981  
   Katanga, 1986, 1988, 1990-3, 1995  
   Liberia, 106, 653, 663, 674, 677, 682  
   Madagascar, 1211, 1221, 1227, 1229,  
     1232, 1236-7  
   Mali, 990  
   Mauritania, 1007-9, 1011, 1015, 1018  
 Politics—Continued  
   Niger, 970, 1020-1  
   Nigeria, 715-20, 722  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1631-2, 1634  
   Nyasaland, 1657, 1664, 1666, 1670,  
     1672  
   Portuguese territories, 2026, 2030-1,  
     2034, 2041-2, 2044-5, 2048  
   Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Federa-  
     tion) 1602-4, 1606-9, 1611-4,  
     1617  
   Rwanda, 2005, 2010-2  
   Senegal, 106, 121, 1046, 1049, 1055,  
     1060, 1064-5  
   Sierra Leone, 121, 820  
   Somalia, 1424-5, 1427, 1442  
   South Africa, *see* Race relations  
   South West Africa, 1748-50  
   Spanish Guinea, 2147-8  
   Sudan, 1461, 1468-9  
   Swaziland, 1740  
   Tanganyika, 106  
   Togo, 1070-3, 1075-6, 1078, 1082-5,  
     1134  
   Uganda, 1372, 1381, 1386, 1393, 1405  
   Upper Volta, 970, 1089  
   Zanzibar, 1411  
 Pondo (tribe, South Africa) 1837, 1848  
 Pons, V. G., 235  
 Poor whites, South Africa, 1823  
 Population, 28n, 258-61  
   bibliography, 260  
   Cameroon, 1125-6, 1139, 1165  
   Central African Republic, 1159-60  
   Chad, 1165, 1174n  
   Congo (Leopoldville) 1932, 1934,  
     1939  
   French Equatorial Africa, 1114  
   French West Africa, 927  
   Gabon, 1186  
   Ghana, 145, 603, 612  
   Guinea, 545  
   Madagascar, 1216n, 1245  
   Mauritius, 1571, 1574  
   Rwanda, 2016  
   Spanish Guinea, 2145, 2153  
   Togo, 1081, 1139  
   *See also* Urbanization  
 Poquin, Jean J., 889  
 Porter, Dorothy B., 2, 314  
 Porter, Horace G., 445n  
 Porto-Novo, 930, 944  
 Portugal. Agência General do Ultra-  
   mar, 2031, 2111n  
   Centro do Documentação Científica  
     Ultramarina, 2020-1  
   Comissão para o Estudo da Produ-  
     tividade em África, 2047  
   Instituto Nacional de Estatística, 2035  
   Junta das Missões Geográficas e de  
     Investigações do Ultramar, 2022,  
     2028, 2032, 2055-6  
   Laws, Statutes, etc., 2134



- Portugal, relations with United Nations, 2041, 2048
- Portuguese administration in Africa, 2025–7, 2030–1, 2037, 2042, 2045, 2048
- PORTUGUESE GUINEA, 2029, 2096, 2105, 2107, 2110–2  
bibliography, 2111
- Portuguese in Africa, history, 494, 2118–20
- PORTUGUESE TERRITORIES, 2019–57  
bibliography, 2018–22, 2043n
- Postel, Albert Williams, 460
- Potekhin, Ivan I., 4n, 9, 574  
*ed.*, 4, 176
- Potous, Paul L., 455n
- Pott, Douglas, 1746
- Poupart, Robert, 1950
- Powdermaker, Hortense, 1649
- Powesland, Philip G., 1378n, 1398
- Prasad, Bisheshwar, *ed.*, 24
- Pratt, R. Cranford, 1393  
*ed.*, 1612
- Pré, Roland, 956
- Pre-colonial history, 54, 56, 58–9, 61–2, 72, 281, 852  
Cameroun, 1144  
Central African Republic, 1158  
Chad, 1170, 1174, 1178  
Dahomey, 930, 932, 936  
East Africa, 1270  
Gabon, 1190, 1202  
Guinea, 954  
Ivory Coast, 977, 980  
Madagascar, 1216  
Mali, 982, 989, 992, 1000  
Mauritania, 1019  
Niger, 1024  
Sudan, 1465, 1467, 1475  
Tanganyika, 1349–50  
West Africa, 495–6, 502, 917  
Zanzibar, 1412
- Pre-history, *see* Archaeology
- Présence Africaine, 895, 950  
Collection Présence africaine, 59, 291, 1208  
Enquêtes et études [series] 363, 859, 878, 1056–7, 1204  
Présence africaine [period.] 206, 316, 348–9, 950  
publications, 9, 267, 858, 871–2, 878n, 922, 949–50, 954, 959–60, 1055, 1058, 1065, 1140, 1208, 1236, 1238
- Press, 352, 354, 358–9, 535, 1866, 1875
- “La Presse en Afrique au sud du Sahara,” 358
- Prest, Alan R., 753
- Price, Frederick A., 670
- Price, J. H., 121
- Price, Roger, *about*, 1736
- Price, Thomas, 244n, 1672
- Priest, Jane H., 1952
- Priestly, Herbert I., 851
- Prins, A. H. J., 1301n, 1420
- Problèmes agricoles au Sénégal*, 1063
- “The Proposed African Development Bank”, 222
- Prosperi, Franco, 1235
- Prost, André, 1094
- Prothero, R. M., 257
- Provaznik, Dušan, 15
- Proverbs, 355  
*See also* Folklore
- Psychoanalysis, 474
- Public Affairs Information Service Bulletin*, 41n
- Pugh, John C., 689
- Puig, François, 1079
- Putnam, Anne E., 1968n
- Pygmies, 1180, 1201, 1963–6, 1968
- ## Q
- Quaranta di San Severino, Ferdinando, *barone*, 1541
- Queen's Quarterly*, special issue, 41n
- Quioca [or Quicos] (tribe, Angola) 2055, 2093–4
- ## R
- Rabearivelo, Jean J., *about*, 1211
- Rabemananjara, Jacques, 950, 1236
- Rabemananjara, Raymond W., 1237
- Race relations, 31, 132–45, 292n  
bibliography, 140  
Kenya, 1319, 1326, 1328, 1333  
*See also* Mau Mau  
Northern Rhodesia, 1632, 1634  
Nyasaland, 1657, 1660, 1666  
Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1602–3, 1607, 1613–4, 1617  
South Africa, 133, 140–1, 1804–8, 1811–22  
South West Africa, 1754, 1756–7  
Southern Rhodesia, 1677, 1679, 1686–7, 1690n  
Swaziland, 1746
- Race Relations Journal*, 1822n
- Race Relations News*, 1822n
- Rachewiltz, Boris de, 320n
- Radcliffe-Brown, Alfred R., *ed.*, 282
- Radin, Paul, *ed.*, 315
- Radio broadcasting, Central Africa, 1583
- Railroads  
Angola, 2064  
Congo (Leopoldville) 1887  
Djibouti-Addis Ababa, 1261, 1530  
Kenya and Uganda, 1292  
Tanganyika, 1293  
Trans-Saharan, 1042
- Raisman Report, 1291
- Rait, Maria, 9
- Rake, Alan, 1336
- Ramón Alvarez, Heriberto, 2163n
- Randall, R. J., 1671
- Ranger, Terence, 1679n
- Rassegna di studi etiopici*, 1512n
- Rattray, J. M., 428
- Rattray, Robert S., 645–8
- Raum, Otto F., 1347n
- Rawcliffe, Donovan H., 1332n
- Rayautra, Mamadou Traore, 957
- Rayner, William, 1682
- Read, Margaret, 381, 1668–9
- Reade, Winwood, 490
- Reader, D. H., 1829n
- Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature*, 41n
- Réalités* (New York) 41n
- Realités africaines*, 1112
- Rebelo, Horacio de Sá Viana, 2071
- Recherches africaines*, 958
- Redfern, John, 1722n
- Redinha, José, 2093
- Reeve, Henry Fenwick, 558, 664n
- Reeves, Richard Ambrose, *Bp.*, 1819
- Region Ecuatorial, *see* Spanish Guinea
- Rego, Antônio da Silva, 2033, 2057
- Reindorf, Carl C., 583
- Reinicke, Frederick G., 1447n
- Reitz, Deneys, 1794
- Religion, traditional, 287, 289, 290–2, 405, 1188n  
Congo (Leopoldville) 1956–7, 1971  
Dahomey, 942  
French-speaking Africa, 848, 891  
Gabon, 1190, 1204  
Ghana, 626, 629, 632, 641, 646  
Guinea, 951  
Kenya, 1310  
Mali, 982n, 985, 1001  
Madagascar, 1239  
Nigeria, 767, 770, 782–3, 786, 789  
Northern Rhodesia, 1641  
Rwanda, 2007n, 2013  
Southern Rhodesia, 1698–9  
Sudan, 1493, 1497, 1500  
Uganda, 1395  
West Africa, 525–6, 529–30
- Reste, Joseph F., 1113
- RÉUNION, 1226n, 1238, 1250–8, 1262
- Revue encyclopédique de l'Afrique*, 845n, 943, 970n, 1022
- Revue de Madagascar*, 1231n
- Rey, Charles F., 1516
- Rey Stolle, Alejandro, 2160
- Reyner, A. S., 1425n
- Rhodes, Cecil, *about*, 1485, 1596  
*See also* Rhodesia and Nyasaland, history

- Rhodes-Livingstone Institute, 102, 1597–8, 1640–3  
*Communications*, 1582, 1597, 1621  
publications, 1580, 1623, 1635, 1640–3, 1645–6, 1653–4  
*Rhodes-Livingstone Papers*, 1598, 1635n, 1636, 1639, 1653n, 1655, 1665, 1675, 1699, 1701
- Rhodes University, *Grahamstown*. Institute of Social and Economic Research, 1825, 1832
- Rhodesia, Northern. Dept. of Agriculture, 1633
- Rhodesia, Southern. Advisory Committee on the Development of Economic Resources, 1683  
Select Committee on the Resettlement of Natives, 1684  
Urban African Affairs Commission, 1685
- RHODESIA AND NYASALAND (Federation) 1577–625, 1670  
bibliography, 1577, 1615
- Rhodesia and Nyasaland. Central African Archives, 1577, 1692–3  
Federal Information Dept., 1615  
Ministry of Economic Affairs, 1671  
Office for Rhodesia and Nyasaland Affairs, 1616
- Rice, 444n, 562, 955, 1063
- Richard-Molard, Jacques, 921–2
- Richard-Toll (region, Senegal) 1063
- Richards, Audrey I., 271, 1398, 1580, 1650–1  
*ed.*, 1305, 1398
- Richards, Charles G., *ed.*, 1284
- Richardson, E. M., 833
- Richardson, Irvine, 301n
- Richardson, Nathaniel R., 671
- Richmond, Anthony H., 141
- Richmond, Thomas R., 445n
- Riebeeck, Jan van, 1795
- Rigby, Christopher P., 1417n
- Rio Muni, *see* Spanish Guinea
- Ríos, Mateo, 2161
- Rita-Ferreira, Antônio, 2135
- Ritner, Peter, 168
- Rivkin, Arnold, 151
- Road guides, 43
- Roads  
bibliography, 183n, 226n  
Somalia, 1447n  
Uganda, 1383  
West Africa, 519
- Roan Antelope Copper Mines, 1620, 1649
- Robequain, Charles, 890, 1238
- Robert, André P., 185, 923
- Robert, Maurice, 1881, 1996
- Roberts, E. S., *comp.*, 1762n
- Roberts, Stephen H., 851n
- Robins, Eric, 1579n
- Robinson, James H., 394n
- Robinson, Keith, 1694
- Robinson, Kenneth E., 838  
*ed.*, 121
- Robinson, Ronald, 83
- Roche, Jean de la, 1104n
- Rock paintings, 67
- Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1587
- Sahara, 1038
- Southern Africa, 1783
- West Africa, 502  
*See also* Archaeology
- Rodger, Frederick C., 473
- Rodrigues, Junior, 2136
- Rodrigues dos Santos, Joaquim, 2137
- Roelandts, C. M., 739
- Roeykens, A., 1895
- Rogaly, Joe, 1686
- Rogers, Cyril A., 1687
- “Role of the Military in Sub-Saharan Africa”, 1295n
- Romulo, Carlos P., 147n
- Roper, Joseph I., 516
- Rosberg, Carl G., 125, 159, 1309
- Rosenstein-Rodan, P. N., 163n
- Rosenthal, Eric, 1718n  
*comp.*, 1773
- Ross, Edward Alsworth, 2114n
- Ross, Emory, 410
- Ross, Myrta, 410
- Ross, William MacGregor, 1337
- Rothchild, Donald S., 126
- Rothmann, M. E., 1823n
- Rouch, Jane, 1921n
- Rouch, Jean, 274, 914n, 951n, 982, 1921n
- Rouck, René de, 1882
- Rougerie, Gabriel, 979
- Roukens de Lange, E. J., *comp.*, 1747
- Roussier, Paul, *ed.*, 980
- Roux, Edward, 1820
- Rowan, D. C., 221
- Rowlands, Evan C., 559
- Royal Chronicle of Abyssinia*, 1523n
- Royal Institute of International Affairs, 89n, 732, 1710n
- Royal Niger Company, 710, 714
- Rozin, M. S., 461
- Ruanda-Urundi, trust territory, 2000, 2002, 2006, 2014–5
- Rubin, Leslie, 599
- Rudd, Charles Dunnell, 1693n
- Rudin, Harry R., 1145
- Ruel, M. J., 1119
- Ruffie, Jacques, 2108
- Rumeau, A., 51
- Russell, Mrs. Charles E. B., 1417n
- Russians in Africa, 9  
in Ethiopia, 1526
- Ruth Sloan Associates, 359, 382–3
- Rutherford, Peggy, *ed.*, 360
- Ruud, Jörgen, 1239
- RWANDA, 2000–17
- Ryan, Isobel, 575, 699
- Ryckmans, Pierre, 1926
- Rydings, H. A., 480
- S
- SANB [*South African National Bibliography*] 1761n
- Sachs, Wulf, 474
- Sadler, Sir Michael Ernest, *ed.*, 534
- Sady, Emil J., 153
- SAHARA, 1025–44  
bibliography, 1025, 1029
- Sahara, Western, *see* Mali, Mauritania
- Saho (tribe, Somalia, etc.), 1440
- Sailing directions, 52
- Saint Faith's Farm, Southern Rhodesia, 1677
- Saintoyant, Jules F., 1184
- Salvador de Sá, *about*, 2063
- Salvemini, Gaetano, 1542n
- Samory, *about*, 994
- Sampson, Anthony, 25, 1818, 1856
- Sanger, Clyde, 1617
- Santos, Almeida, 2077n
- Santos, Augusto L. Ferreira do, 2072
- Santos, Eduardo dos, 2094
- Santos, Manuel Pimentel Pereira dos, 2138
- Santos, Rui Martins dos, 2139
- Sao (pre-Islamic civilization), 1170, 1174
- SAO TOMÉ AND PRÍNCIPE, 2029, 2062n, 2111, 2114–6  
bibliography, 2116
- Sarakolé (tribe, Senegal), 1063
- Sarrault, Albert, 843n
- Sartre, Jean-Paul, 316, 362
- Saul, C. D., 1762n, 1767n
- Saunders, John T., 805
- Savonnet, G., 1053n
- Schachter, Ruth, *see* Morgenthau, Ruth S.
- Schaefer, Ludwig F., 1542
- Schapera, Isaac, 185, 271, 1728–33, 1842–4  
*ed.*, 404, 1693n, 1766, 1844
- Schebesta, Paul, 1964–6
- Schiffers, Heinrich, 84
- Schlippe, Pierre de, 1485
- Schlosser, Katesa, 411
- Schmalenbach, Werner, 328
- Schöne Schriften aus Afrika*, 361
- Schramm, Josef, 1080
- Schreiner, Olive, 1311n, 1857
- Schuller, Mary Craig, *ed.*, 228
- Schulthess, Emil, 40
- Schwab, George, 672



- Schwarz, E. H. L., 1727n  
 Schweitzer, Albert, 1198–200  
*Science-Afrique*, 463n  
 Scientific Council for Africa [CSA], 49, 193, 258, 384, 439, 463, 466–7  
   *See also* Commission for Technical Cooperation in Africa  
 Scientific research, 463–7, 909–13, 1877  
   bibliography, 226n  
 Scott, D. J. R., 121  
 Scott, Michael, 1756–7  
 Scott, Richenda, 752n  
 Scott, Sir Robert, 1402, 1572  
 Scudder, Thayer, 1642n  
 Sculpture, 315, 317, 320, 325–6, 328, 330, 333, 335  
   Chad, 1174  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1982  
   Mali, 991  
   Nigeria, 794, 806  
   West Africa, 536–8  
     *See also* Arts, by country  
 Seaver, George, 404n  
 Sechele, *about*, 1735  
 Secret societies, 288  
   Liberia, 658n, 680  
   Mali, 1002  
   Sierra Leone, 829  
   Tanganyika, 1344n  
 Segal, Ronald, 127  
   *ed.*, 1769  
 Segy, Ladislas, 329  
*Select Bibliography: Asia, Africa . . .*  
   Note on Bibliography p. 1  
 Self-government, 79, 89, 97–8, 100n, 102  
   *See also* Nationalism  
 Seligman, Brenda Z., 1501  
 Seligman, Charles G., 283, 1501  
 Sellen, Thorsten, *ed.*, 5n  
 Selous, Frederick Courtney, 1595n  
 Seminar on Population Problems, *Cairo*, 1962, 261  
 SENEGAL, 1045–68  
*Le Sénégal en marche*, 1064  
 “The Senegambian Idea”, 547n  
 Senghor, Leopold Sédar, 3, 351, 871, 1065  
   *ed.*, 362  
 Senoulo (tribe, Ivory Coast, etc.) 914n  
 Separatist churches, 392, 411, 413, 421  
   Congo, 1973  
   East Africa, 1307  
   Nyasaland, 1672  
   South Africa, 1847  
   Spanish Guinea, 2171  
 Séré de Rivières, Edmond, 1023, 1066  
 Serer (tribe, Gambia) 550  
*Serials for African Studies*, 359n  
 Serna Burgaleto, Jesus de la, 2163n  
 Settlement and settlers, European, 75, 78, 136  
   Angola, 2158  
   British West Africa, 501  
   Kenya, 1326, 1332n, 1333, 1337  
   Réunion, 1251  
   Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 136  
   Senegal, 1047  
   South Africa, *see* History  
   Southern Rhodesia, 1682, 1690, 1693  
 Shambala (tribe, Tanganyika) 1368  
 Shangaan (people, South Africa) 1837  
 Shantz, Homer L., 442–3  
 Sheddick, Vernon G. J., 1719–20  
 Shelswell-White, Geoffrey H., 1421  
 Shepherd, George W., 128  
 Sheppard, Vivian L. O., 90  
 Shepperson, George, 1672  
 Shibeika, Mekki, 1478  
 Shilluk language (Southern Sudan) 1503  
 al-Shinqīṭī, Ahmad ibn al-Amīn, 1019  
 Shirazi (people, Zanzibar) 1420  
 Shona (group, Southern Rhodesia) 1580, 1697–700, 1702  
 Shore, Herbert L., 314  
 Shrubsall, F., 1389n  
 Sibley, James L., 673  
 Sibree, James, 1240  
 Sieber, Roy, 314, 806  
 SIERRA LEONE, 121, 809–37  
   bibliography, 809–10  
 Sierra Leone. Commission of Inquiry into the Issue of Alluvial Diamond Mining Licenses, 835  
 Sierra Leone. Produce Marketing Board, 836  
*Sierra Leone Year Book*, 837  
 Sík, Endre, 83n  
 Sillans, Roger, 1203–4  
 Sillery, Anthony, 26, 1734–5  
 Silva, Carlos A. Vieira da, *ed.*, 2140  
 Silva, Hélder Lains e, 2115  
 Silveira, Luís, 2162  
 Simmonds, N. W., 444n  
 Simmons, D., 764  
 Simmons, J., *ed.*, 82  
 Simoons, Frederick J., 1553  
 Simpson, C. L., 674  
 Sithole, Ndabaningi, 142  
 Skaife, Sydney H., 456  
 Skinner, Snider W., 617, 1938  
 Sklar, Richard L., 737n  
 Slade, Ruth M., 1896–7, 1927  
 Slaski, J., 1647  
 Slater, Montagu, 1314n  
 Slave trade and slavery, 57  
   Central African Republic, 1160  
   Congo, 1885  
   East Africa, 1271, 1278, 1417  
   Ethiopia, 1516  
   Mali, 992  
 Slave trade and slavery—Continued  
   Nigeria, 764  
   Sudan, 1484  
   West Africa, 503  
     *See also* Contract labor  
 Slawewski, Leon M. S., 181  
 Sleeping sickness, 2114n  
 Sloan, Ruth, 307  
   *See also* Ruth Sloan Associates  
 Smet, Guy, 193n, 226n  
 Smith, Anna H., *ed.*, Note, p. 58  
 Smith, Anthony, 535  
 Smith, Edwin W., 160, 284, 412, 1599, 1652, 1736  
   *ed.*, 290  
 Smith, F. G., 444n  
 Smith, M. F., 761  
 Smith, Marian W., *ed.*, 331  
 Smith, Michael G., 754, 784  
 Smith, T. E., 121n  
 Smuts, Jan Christiaan, 1821  
   *about*, 7187, 1793  
 Smythe, Hugh H., 2, 3, 19, 755  
 Smythe, Mabel M., 3, 19, 755  
 Sneguireff, I. H., *ed.*, 294  
 Snell, Geoffrey S., 1325n  
 Sobo (tribe, Nigeria), 769  
 Social sciences, research, 27  
   bibliography, 226n  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1877, 2009  
   East Africa, 1300  
   Gambia, 555  
   Ruanda-Urundi, 2009  
   Spanish Guinea, 2163  
 Social studies, applied, 226–46  
   bibliography, 226–7  
   research, 27, 241, 1597–8  
   Burundi, 1999  
   Cameroon, 1119–20, 1125, 1138, 1151  
   Central African Republic, 1159–61  
   Chad, 1165  
   Congo (Brazzaville), 1179, 1182  
   Congo (Leopoldville), 1935, 1941–52  
   Dahomey, 933, 944  
   Ethiopia, 1553  
   French Equatorial Africa, 1102  
   French-speaking Africa, 840, 846  
   French West Africa, 919  
   Gabon, 1186, 1196  
   Ghana, 591, 621, 625, 633–5  
   Guinea, 953  
   Ivory Coast, 964, 968–9, 973–4  
   Katanga, 1994  
   Kenya, 1318  
   Madagascar, 1212, 1217, 1222  
   Mali, 984, 995–6  
   Nigeria, 699, 736, 741–2, 754–5  
   Northern Rhodesia, 1621, 1639–42, 1649, 1651, 1653–5  
   Nyasaland, 1665, 1668–9  
   Portuguese territories, 2057

- Social studies—Continued
- Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Fed.), 1598n, 1600
- Rwanda, 2008, 2010
- Senegal, 1053
- Sierra Leone, 811, 813, 829, 833
- Somaliland, French, 1265
- South Africa, 1822n, 1823, 1825–34
- Southern Rhodesia, 1703
- Swaziland, 1742–3
- Tanganyika, 1355–6
- Togo, 1139
- Uganda, 1399
- West Africa, 481, 520, 522, 527
- See also Anthropology
- Socialism, African, 206, 871, 1064
- Société Africaine de Culture, 289n
- Société des Africanistes, *Journal*, see Note, p. 1
- Sociological Review*, special issue, 527
- Sociology, see Anthropology; Social Sciences; Social Studies
- Sofer, Cyril, 1399
- Sofer, Rhona, 1399
- Soga, John Henderson, 1845–6
- Soga (tribe, Uganda) 1301n, 1379
- Sohier, Antoine, 185, 1967
- Sohier, Jean, 1967n
- Soil erosion, 434, 1633
- See also Desertification
- Soiuz Zhurnal'istov SSSR, 1921n
- Solomon, Marvin D., *comp.*, 651
- Somali (people, Northeast Africa) 1428, 1439–40
- language, 1426, 1428
- See also Somalia
- SOMALIA, 1423–49
- bibliography, 1423, 1439–40
- Somalia. Information Services, 1442
- "Somalia: The Problems of Underdevelopment," 1425n
- Somaliland, British, 1430–1, 1433, 1439
- bibliography, 1433
- SOMALILAND, FRENCH, 1238, 1253, 1258–66
- Songhai (tribe, Mali) 891, 951, 982
- Sonjo (tribe, Tanganyika) 1353
- Soret, Marcel, 914n, 1114, 1185, 1202
- Sornay, Pierre de, 1573
- Sotho (group, Basutoland and South Africa) 1715, 1720, 1837, 1849
- Sousa Dias, Gastão, 2073
- SOUTH AFRICA, REPUBLIC OF, 1761–859
- bibliography, 1761–8, 1770, 1803, 1806
- South Africa. Bureau of Census and Statistics, 1774
- Commission for the Socio-Economic Development of the Bantu Areas, 1832
- Geological Survey, 1833
- South African Catalogue of Books*, 1768
- South African Institute of Race relations, 1746, 1748, 1811, 1822, 1851
- South African Police Force (Rhodesia) 1588
- South African Public Library, 1767
- See also *Bibliography of African Bibliographies*
- SOUTH WEST AFRICA, 1747–60, 1779
- bibliography, 1747
- Southall, Aidan W., 1398, 1400
- ed., 274
- Southern Rhodesia, 1676–703
- Southorn, Bella S., *Lady*, 560
- Southworth Commission, 1666
- Sovetskaiâ Entsiklopediâ*, 40
- Soviet literature, 4, 9, 132, 1921n
- bibliography, 4n, 9
- Soyinka, Wole, *ed.*, 796
- Spain. Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas. Instituto de Estudios Africanos [IDEA] 2143, 2145n, 2163–5
- Dirección General de Marruecos y Colonias, 2166
- Dirección General de Plazas y Provincias Africanas, 179n
- SPANISH GUINEA, 2029, 2142–73
- bibliography, 2142, 2163
- Spencer, John H., 146
- Spilsbury, Calvin C., 517
- Spiro, Herbert J., 129
- Spitz, Georges, 924, 997–8
- Splett, Oskar, *ed.*, 3
- Squires, H. C., 1460
- Stahl, Kathleen M., 1361
- Stamp, Laurence Dudley, 28
- Stanley, Henry M., 74, 1892n
- Stanley, Richard, *ed.*, 74
- Stanleyville, Congo, 235
- Stapf, Otto, 664
- Stapleton, G. Brian, 756
- Statistics, official sources, 195–6
- Staudenraus, P. J., 675
- Stebbing, Edward P., 543
- Steenberghen, R., 1981
- Steiner, Arthur H., 1541n
- Stenmans, Alain, 1898
- Stenning, Derrick J., 785
- Stevens, G. A., 534n
- Stevenson-Hamilton, James, 1693n, 1775
- Stewart, I. G., 753
- Stewart, James, 1693n
- Stibbe, Pierre, 1237n
- Stillman, Calvin W., Note, p. 23
- Stockley, G. M., 1713
- Stoecker, Helmuth, *ed.*, 1146
- Strasser, Daniel, 1043
- Strong, Richard P., *ed.*, 659
- SUDAN, 1450–503
- bibliography, 1450–1, 1473
- Sudan. Commission of Inquiry into the Disturbances in the Southern Sudan, 1461
- Jonglei Investigation Team, 1487
- Southern Development Investigation Team, 1488
- Sudan, French (former) see Mali
- Sudan Colloquial Arabic*, 1462n
- Sudan Notes and Records*, 1450n
- Sudan, Southern, 782n, 1450n, 1466, 1470, 1488
- Sugar industry, Mauritius, 1569–70
- Suicide, 269
- Suid-Afrikaanse Katalogus van Boeke*, 1768
- Suid-Afrikaanse Nasionale Bibliografie*, 1761n
- Sukuma (tribe, Tanganyika) 1343–4, 1359
- Sundkler, Bengt G. W., 413–4, 1847
- Summers, Roger, 1694
- ed., 1584
- Suret-Canale, Jean, 852, 950, 954n, 958
- Survey of Kenya, 1327
- Survey of Race Relations, 1822n
- Sutherland, Efua, 607
- Swahili, language, 1299, 1301n
- poetry, 1304
- Swahili-speaking peoples, 1420
- Swanzy, H. M., *ed.*, 650
- Swazi (people), 1742–5, 1837
- SWAZILAND, 1709, 1740–6, 1774
- Sweeney, James Johnson, 315
- Swilling, Ernst A., 1103n
- Sydow, Eckart von, 330
- Symposium on Africa, Wellesley College, 130
- Symposium on the Artist in Tribal Society, 331
- T
- Tabler, Edward C., 1695
- ed., 1696
- Tait, David, 278, 649
- Talbot, A. M., 1776
- Talbot, David A., 1517–8
- Talbot, P. Amaury, 786–90
- Talbot, W. J., 1776
- Tallensi (tribe, Ghana) 271, 630–2
- Tamakloe, E. F., 569
- Tana (lake, Ethiopia) 1509
- Tanala (tribe, Madagascar) 1230
- Tananarive, Malagasy Republic, 1241
- TANGANYIKA, 1340–71
- bibliography, 1268, 1342, 1362
- Tanganyika. Ministry of Commerce and Industry, 1363
- Tardits, Claude, 351, 933, 944, 1147
- Tassili (mountains, Sahara) 1038
- Tassin de Saint Péreuse, Marie, 919
- Tatay, Ramón, 2146n
- Tauxier, Louis, 999–1001



- Taxation, Nigeria, 751  
 Taylor, A., *ed.*, 532  
 Taylor, Brian, 1301n  
 Taylor, Charles J., 614n  
 Taylor, J. Clagett, 1364  
 Taylor, John V., 415, 1401  
 Taylor, Wayne C., 676  
 Teacher Training, 383, 385  
*Teaching and Education in Belgian Congo*, 1984  
 Teague, Michael, 561  
 Technical Assistance Mission to the Trust Territory of Somaliland, 1443  
 Teda (tribe, Sahara) 1027–8 (Chad) 1171  
 Teita (tribe, Kenya) 1301n  
 Teixeira, Antônio José da Silva, 2113  
 Tema, Ghana, 605, 608  
 Tempany, Harold A., 444  
 Tempels, Placide, 291  
 Templin, Ralph, 19  
 Tennant, R. K., 1714  
 Tenreiro, Francisco, 2116  
 Tescaroli, Livio, 1502  
 Tevendale, W. B., 618n  
 Tevoedjre, Albert, 872  
 Tew, Mary, 1673  
 Theal, George McCall, 1796–9  
 Theater, African, 363  
     bibliography, 314  
 Thembu (tribe, South Africa) 1837  
 Theobald, Alan B., 1478n  
 Theobald, Robert, *ed.*, 491  
 Theological schools, Protestant, 414  
 Thieme, Darius, *comp.*, 337n  
 Thierry, Solange, 1242n  
 Thiout, Michel, 1242  
 Thomas, Benjamin E., 42  
 Thomas, Elizabeth Marshall, 1737  
 Thomas, H. B., 290, 1402  
 Thomas, Louis V., 1067  
 Thomas, Marc R., 1044  
 Thompson, Cecil H., 1618  
 Thompson, Leonard M., 1800  
 Thompson, Virginia McLean, 106, 925, 1115  
 Thomson, A. A. M., 85  
 Thomson, Joseph, 1323n  
 Thurnwald, Hilde, 1306  
 Thurnwald, Richard, 265, 1306  
 Tibesti (region, Chad), 1171  
 Tigre language (Ethiopia), 1557  
 Tigrña language (Ethiopia), 1557  
 Tikar (tribe, Cameroun), 1129  
 Tilho, A. J. M., 1177  
 Tilman, Robert O., *ed.*, 733  
 Timbuctoo, Mali, 995  
*The Times* (London), 50  
 Timothy, Bankele, 598n  
 Tindall, Joseph, 1758  
 Tinker, Hugh, 117  
 Tisserant, Charles, 1161  
 Titmuss, Richard Morris, 1574  
 Tiv (tribe, Nigeria) 278, 760, 762–3, 771n  
 TOGO, 1069–86  
 Togo. Service d'Information, 1082  
 Tomlinson Commission, South Africa, 1832  
 Tonga (tribe, Northern Rhodesia), 1580, 1625, 1637, 1639–42, 1647  
 Toro (tribe, Uganda), 1301n  
 Tothill, J. D., 1489  
     *ed.*, 1403  
 Toubou (tribe, Chad), 1167  
 Touchette, Joseph I., 46n  
 Toucouleur (people, Senegal), 1063  
 Toupet, Charles, 1003  
 Toura (tribe, Ivory Coast), 974n  
 Touré, Sékou, 959–60  
 Toussaint, Auguste, 1558–9, 1561  
     *ed.*, 1575  
 Touval, Saadia, 1425n  
 Tow, Leonard, 1688  
 Towert, A. M. F., 1762n  
 Town planning  
     Ghana, 609  
     Uganda, 1390  
 Townsend, E. Reginald, *ed.*, 677  
 Townsend, Mary E., 86  
 Toynbee, Arnold J., 1542n  
 Tracey, Hugh, 346, 1858, 2141  
     *comp.*, 1859  
 Trade, 200–2, 225n  
     French-speaking West Africa, 926  
     Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1610  
     Sudan, 1483  
     Tanganyika, 1363, 1370  
     *See also* Common Market; European Economic Community; U.S. trade relations  
 Trade unions, 120, 256  
     Camerouns, Southern, 1151  
     Congo (Leopoldville), 1950  
     Sudan, 1455  
     *See also* Labor  
 Trans-Saharan railway, 1042  
 Transport, 519  
     East Africa, 1287n, 1288  
     French-speaking Africa, 879n  
     Ghana, 610  
     Nigeria, 739, 743–4, 757  
     *See also* Railroads; Roads  
 Traoré, Bakary, 363  
 Trautman, R., 913n  
*Le Travail en Afrique noire*, 255  
 Travel guides, *see* Handbooks and guides  
 Trevaskis, G. K. N., 1543  
 Trewartha, Glenn T., 1939  
 Trézenem, Édouard, 1116  
 Tribal names, indexes, 262–3, 268, 275, 279  
 Trilles, H., 1201  
 Trimingham, John Spencer, 3, 416–20, 528–9, 1462, 1554–5  
 Troup, Freda, 1757n  
 Trowell, Hubert C., 475  
 Trowell, Kathleen Margaret, 332–3, 1404  
 Trusteeship system, U.S., 152–3  
     Cameroons, 1124, 1131–2, 1134, 1136, 1149–50  
     Somaliland, Italian, 1424, 1427, 1434–5, 1437, 1441, 1443–5  
     South West Africa, 1750, 1754, 1756–7, 1759  
     Tanganyika, 1342, 1354, 1358, 1364  
     Togoland, 1070, 1072, 1075, 1078, 1083–5, 1124, 1134  
 Tshekedi, Khama, 1710n, 1746n  
     *about*, 1722  
 Tswana (tribes, Bechuanaland), 1728–9, 1733  
 Tuareg (peoples, Sahara, etc.), 1027–8, 1038  
 Tubman, William, V. S., 677  
 Tucker, A. N., 301n, 1426n  
 Tucker, A. R., *bishop*, 1401n  
 Turkana (tribe, Kenya), 1302  
 Turnbull, Colin M., 1951, 1968  
 Turner, B. L., 443  
 Turner, V. W., 1647, 1653  
 Tutchokwe (tribe, Angola), 2093  
 Tutuola, Amos, 807–8  
 Tylden, G., 1721
- ## U
- UAM, *see* Union Africaine et Malgache  
 UNECA, *see* United Nations Economic Commission for Africa  
 UNESCO, *see* United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization  
 Ubangi-Shari, *see* Central African Republic.  
 UGANDA, 1372–409  
     bibliography, 1268n, 1382, 1386  
     “Uganda Becomes Independent”, 1405  
     *Uganda Journal*, 1406  
 Ukeje, L. O., *ed.*, 697  
 Ullendorff, Edward, 1556–7  
 Ulloa, R. Villarino, 2145, 2163n  
 Umbundu, *see* Ovimbundu  
 Underdeveloped areas, bibliography, 194  
 Underwood, Leon, 536–8  
 Ungo (tribe, Northern Rhodesia), 1636n  
 Union Africaine et Malgache, 855, 862, 869, 888  
 Union des Peuples Camerounais, 1148  
 Union Minière du Haut-Katanga, 1996–8  
 U.S.S.R., relations with Africa, 176  
     *See also* Communism  
 United Africa Co., 518

United Nations, 373n  
 Advisory Council for Somaliland, 1444  
 Dept. of Economic and Social Affairs, 223, 1601n  
 Dept. of Public Information, 154, 1544  
 Economic Commission for Africa, 154, 196, 224-5, 261, 371, 424, 519  
 Library, 196n  
 General Assembly. Committee on South West Africa, 1759  
 General Assembly. Special Committee on Territories under Portuguese administration, 2048  
 General Assembly. Subcommittee on the situation in Angola, 2082  
 Secretariat, 245, 385, 2016  
 Trusteeship Council. Visiting Mission to East Africa, 1445, 2016n  
 Visiting Mission to West Africa, 1083-5, 1149-50  
 United Nations and Africa, 146, 149, 152-5  
 Congo, 1917, 1990, 1992, 1995  
 Eritrea, 1544  
 Portuguese Africa, 2041, 2048  
*See also* Trusteeship system  
 United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization [UNESCO] 235, 371, 373, 375n, 386-8, 452n, 1041  
 Division of Natural Sciences, 51  
 Education Clearing House, 387  
 Mass Communication Techniques Division, 354n  
*UNESCO Bulletin for Libraries*, 388  
 U.S. Bureau of Foreign Commerce, 225n, 748n, 926, 1619  
 Bureau of International Labor Affairs, 256  
 Congress. House. Committee on Foreign Affairs, 169-71  
 Congress. Senate. Committee on Foreign Relations, 172  
 Dept. of Agriculture. Economic Research Service, 445  
 Dept. of the Army. Headquarters, *see Africa, Its Problems and Prospects*  
 Dept. of state. Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs, 173  
 Dept. of State. External Research Division, 174  
 Dept. of State. Office of Research and Analysis for the Mid-East and Africa, 47n  
 Economic Cooperation Administration, 1446-7  
 Foreign Service Institute, 307n  
 Hydrographic Office, 52  
 Library of Congress, 146, 225n, 359n, 423, 688, 897, 1268, 1423

U.S. Bureau of Foreign Commerce—  
 Continued  
 Mutual Security Agency, 2049  
 Operations Mission to Italy, 1447  
 Operations Mission to Liberia, 678  
 Operations Mission to the Somali Republic, 1448  
 Public Health Service, 1952  
 Trade and Industrial Development Mission to Middle Africa, 1117  
 U.S. Information Agency, 170-1  
 United States and Africa  
 aid, economic and technical, 158, 163-4, 170-2  
 Ethiopia, 1535  
 Liberia, 678  
 Portuguese territories, 2049  
 Somalia, 1446-8  
 educational activities in Africa, 173  
 policy, 149, 156, 158-9, 163-4, 166, 168  
 relations with Liberia, 665  
 trade relations, 225n, 926, 1117  
*U.S. and Canadian Publications on Africa*, *see* Note on Bibliography, p. 1  
*The Unity of the Nile Valley*, 1479  
*Universitas* (Legon, Ghana) 650n  
 Universities, *see* Higher education  
 Unzueta y Yuste, Abelardo de, 2167-9  
 UPPER VOLTA, 1087-94  
 Urbanization  
 bibliography, 226n, 227  
 social aspects, 232-5  
 Burundi, 1999  
 Cameroun, 1125  
 Central African Republic, 1159-60  
 Chad, 1174n  
 Congo (Brazzaville), 1179, 1182  
 Congo (Leopoldville) 1943, 1945  
 Dahomey, 944  
 French Equatorial Africa, 1114  
 Gabon, 1196  
 Madagascar, 1241  
 Northern Rhodesia, 1644-5  
 Senegal, 1053  
 South Africa, 1826-7, 1829n, 1831-2  
 Southern Rhodesia, 1685  
 Uganda, 1378, 1390, 1397, 1399-400  
 West Africa, 527  
 Urquhart, Duncan H., 444n  
*Urundi*, 2004n  
 Urvoy, Yves F., 927, 1024, 1178  
 Ushpol, Rowse, 1762n  
 Usoni, Luigi, 1545  
 Usumbura, Burundi, 1999  
 Uvarov, Boris P., 446  
 Uwanaka, Charles U., 734

## V

Vai (tribe, Liberia) 657  
 Valenge (tribe, Mozambique), 2121

Van der Horst, Sheila T., 1834  
 Van der Plas, Charles D., 562  
 Van der Post, Laurens, 143, 1674, 1738-9  
 Vandewoude, Emiel J. L. M., 1969  
 Van Dongen, Irene S., 1287n  
 Van Dyke, H. A., 1447n  
 Vane, Michael, 476  
 Van Rensburg, Patrick, 44  
 Van Riebeeck Society, 1758, 1795  
 Vansina, Jan, 56n, 1970, 2017  
 Van Warmelo, J. J., 1837n, 1844n  
 Varley, Douglas H., *comp.*, 337  
 Vathonga (tribe, South Africa) 1837  
 Vaulx, Bernard de, 84n, 393n  
 Vavenda (tribe, South Africa), 1837  
 Veciana Vilaldach, Antonio de, 2170-1  
 Vedder, Heinrich, 1755, 1760  
 Vegetation, 425, 428, 439, 442-3  
 Gabon, 1203  
 Ghana, 614  
 Northern Rhodesia, 1633  
 Spanish Guinea, 2146n  
 Velsen, J. van, 1702  
 Vere-Hodge, Edward R., 60n, 1285  
 Verger, Pierre, 530  
 Vergiat, Antonin M., 1162-3  
 Verhaegen, Benoît, *ed.*, 1905-7  
 Verhaegen, Paul, 226n, 1945n  
 Vianès, Suzanne, 1233n  
 Vidal de la Blache, *ed.*, 23n  
 Viguier, Pierre, 928  
 Villard, André, 1068  
 Villari, Luigi, 1542n  
 Villarino Ulloa, Ramon, 2163n  
 Villiers, A., 842, 1004  
 Viney, N. M., *comp.*, 1433  
*Voices of Ghana*, 650  
 Volta River Project, 605, 608, 618  
 Vos, Pierre de, 1921n  
 Vugusu (tribe, Kenya) 1338  
 Vulaines, Jacques, 1116n  
 Vulliamy, Colwyn E., 1801

## W

Wabena (tribe, Tanganyika), 1345  
 Wachsmann, K. P., 1404  
 Wachuku, J. A., 6  
 Wagner, Günter, 271, 1338  
 Wakefield Report, 1369n  
 Walker, André Raponda, 1202-4  
*about*, 1190  
 Walker, Audrey A., *comp.*, 1268n  
 Walker, Barbara K., *ed.*, 799  
 Walker, Eric A., 89n, 1802-3  
 Walker, Gilbert J., 757  
 Walker, Warren S., *ed.*, 799  
 Wallace, Kathleen, 489n  
 Wallerstein, Immanuel, 125, 131, 156, 929, 981  
 Wallis, J. P. R., *ed.*, 77n, 1693



- Walraet, Marcel, 1985  
Ward, Ida C., 92, 313  
Ward, William E. F., 71, 584–5  
*ed.*, 372  
Warmelo, N. J. von, *tr.*, 306  
Warmington, W. A., 758, 1119, 1151  
Warner, Douglas, 576  
Warner, Esther S., 679–80  
Warren, Cline, 1490  
Washington, Forrester B., 334  
Water power, 24, 1658, 1727  
Watkins, Mark Hanna, 307n  
Watson, George D., 689n  
Watson, Sir Malcolm, 1627  
Watson, William, 1612, 1654  
Webb, Gwenlilian, 540n  
Welbourn, Frederick B., 421, 1307  
Welch, Floretta J., 1747n  
Welch, Galbraith, 681  
Wellington, John H., 1777  
Wells, F. A., 758  
Wells, Somalia, 1446  
Welmers, William E., 299n, 307  
Weman, Henry, 347  
Werner, Alice, 308–9,  
*tr.*, 306  
WEST AFRICA, 479–543  
    bibliography, 262, 479–80  
*West Africa* (London), 492  
*West African Directory*, 493  
West African Institute of Social and  
    Economic Research, 621  
    *See also*, Nigerian Institute . . .  
*West African Review* (Liverpool), 547,  
    563  
Westermann, Diedrich, 72, 265, 285,  
    301n, 310–3, 422, 1086, 1503  
Westwood, Andrew, 2083  
Weulersse, Jacques, 144  
Wheare, Joan, 735  
Wheat, 445n  
Wheeler, Elizabeth Hunting, *ed.*, 228  
Wheeler, J. F. G., 1576  
Whetstone, Harold V., 670n  
Whitaker, Philip, 121  
White, Charles M. N., 1655  
White Fathers, 403  
    *See also* Missions, Catholic  
Whitehead, W., 1647  
Whiteley, Wilfred H., 351, 1422  
*comp.*, 1299n  
*Who's Who in Nigeria*, 700  
“Who's Who in the Gambia,” 563  
*Who's Who of Southern Africa*, 1778  
*Who's Who of the Federation of Rho-*  
*desia and Nyasaland*, 1577n, 1779  
Who's who, *see also* Leaders  
Wiedner, Donald L., 73  
Wieschhoff, Heinrich A., 103  
*comp.*, 263  
Wight, Martin, 600  
Wigny, Pierre, 1940  
Wilbois, Joseph, 1152  
Wilcocks, Charles, 477  
Wilcocks, R. W., 1823n  
Wilcox, Francis O., 155  
Wild, Roland, 680n  
Wild life, 447–56  
    conservation, 450, 452  
    Cameroons, 1127  
    French-speaking Africa, 842  
    Mauritania, 1004  
    Mozambique, 2129  
    Northern Rhodesia, 1622  
    Rhodesia and Nyasaland, 1579n  
    South Africa, 1775  
    Spanish Guinea, 2146  
    West Africa, 539–40  
Wilks, Ivor, 586  
Willem Hiddingh Reprint Series, 1721n  
Williams, Chancellor, 389  
Williams, Maude W., 670n  
Williams, Walter B., 670n  
Williamson, G., 444n  
Wills, J., Brian, *ed.*, 619  
Wilson, A. T., 1633  
Wilson, Charles Morrow, 680n  
Wilson, Godfrey, 1580, 1600, 1675  
Wilson, Monica Hunter, 1365–7, 1600,  
    1837n, 1844n, 1848  
Wilson-Haffenden, James R., 790n  
Winans, Edgar V., 1368  
Wing, Joseph van, 1971  
*ed.*, 1974  
Wingate, Sir Reginald, *about*, 1480  
Wingate, Sir Ronald, 1480  
Wingenbach, Charles, 161n  
Wingert, Paul S., 335  
Winter, Edward H., 278, 1407  
Wise, Colin, 533  
Witch doctors, *see* Medicine, African  
Witchcraft, 286, 289  
    Ghana, 624, 626  
    Kenya, 1313  
    Sudan, 1494  
    Upper Volta, 1088, 1091  
    *See also* Magic; Medicine, African  
Wittman, (G. H.) Co., Inc., 620  
Woddis, Jack, 182  
Wolfe, Alvin W., 1972  
Wolfson, Freda, 587  
Wollschläger, Alfred, 41  
Wolof (tribe, Gambia), 550  
    (Senegal), 1045, 1063  
Women, 228, 237–9, 243, 246, 381, 470  
    bibliography, 226n  
    Cameroons, 1138  
    East Africa, 1306  
    Katanga, 1994  
    Liberia, 661  
    Mozambique, 2121  
    Nigeria, 773–4  
    South Africa, 1827  
Wood, Alan, 1369  
Wood, Anthony St. John, 1634  
Wood, Carroll E., Jr., 430  
Wood, Susan B., 1339  
Woodruff, Harry W., 1618  
Woods, C. A., 1829n  
Woodtli, Robert, 462  
Woolf, Leonard S., 78n  
World Confederation of Organizations  
    of the Teaching Profession, 390  
World Health Organization, 468, 478  
*World List of Future International*  
*Meetings*, 146n  
World Movement of Mothers, African  
    Congress, 228n  
World Trade Information Series, 225n  
World Union of Catholic Women's Or-  
    ganizations, 246  
Worthington, Edgar B., 452, 467, 1297,  
    1408  
Worthington, Stella, 1297  
Worzella, W. W., 1447n  
Wraith, Ronald E., 505n, 1298  
Wright, Fergus C., 1370  
Wright, Richard, 145, 147n, 577  
Wrigley, C. C., 1300, 1409  
Writers, African  
    anthologies, 353, 366  
    bibliography, 314, 361  
    congresses, 321, 348–9  
    *See also* Literature, African  
Wrong, Margaret, 92  
Wylde, A. B., 1520n
- ## X
- Xhosa (tribe, South Africa) 1837, 1845  
Xydias, N., 235
- ## Y
- Yako (tribe, Nigeria) 764  
Yakobson, Sergius, 1526n  
Yancy, Ernest J., 682  
Yao (tribe, Nyasaland) 1580, 1665  
Ydewalle, Charles d', 1883, 1998  
*Yearbook and Guide to East Africa*, 1286  
*Yearbook and Guide to Southern Africa*,  
    1779  
Yesifu, Tijani M., 759  
Yglesias de la Riva, A., 2172  
Ylla [pseud.] *see* Koffler, Camilla  
Yoruba (people, Nigeria) 343, 503,  
    526–7, 713, 721, 770–1, 775, 783n,  
    796n, 798  
Young, James C., 683  
Young, Roland A., 1371  
Young, T. Cullen, 292  
*ed.*, 1662  
Younger, Kenneth G., 104  
*about*, 117  
Yushmanov, N. V., *ed.*, 294  
YveDyak, *ed.*, 1491

## Z

Zahan, Dominique, 1002

*Zaire* (Bruxelles) 1868

Zamora Loboc, Miguel, 2173

Zande scheme, 1485

ZANZIBAR, 1410-22

bibliography, 1268, 1412, 1416, 1420

Zaria, Northern Nigeria, 754, 784

Zartman, I. William, 183

Zelinsky, Wilbur, 1939

Ziéglé, Henri, 1116n

Ziervogel, D., 1849

Zimbabwe ruins, Southern Rhodesia,  
1689, 1691

Zischka, Anton, 208n

Zöhrer, Ludwig G. A., 1449

Zulu (people, South Africa) 271, 1836-  
7, 1840

folklore, 1854

songs, 1859

Zuylen, Pierre van, 1898



## RECENT LIBRARY OF CONGRESS PUBLICATIONS ON AFRICA

- African Music: A Briefly Annotated Bibliography.\*\* 1964. In preparation.
- Agricultural Development Schemes in Sub-Saharan Africa: A Bibliography.\*\* 1963. 189 p. \$1.25.
- A list of American Doctoral Dissertations on Africa.\*\* 1962. 69 p. 35 cents.
- Official Publications of British East Africa:\*
- Part I. The East Africa High Commission and Other Regional Documents. 1960, reprinted 1961. 67 p. 60 cents.
- Part II. Tanganyika. 1962. 134 p. \$1.00.
- Part III. Kenya and Zanzibar. 1962. 162 p. \$1.25.
- Part IV. Uganda. 1963. 100 p. \$1.00.
- Official Publications of French Equatorial Africa, French Cameroons and Togo, 1946-1958: A Guide.\*\* 1963. In press.
- Official Publications of French West Africa, 1946-1958: A Guide.\* 1960, reprinted 1961. 88 p. 75 cents.
- Official Publications of Sierra Leone and Gambia.\*\* 1963. 92 p. 55 cents.
- Serials for African Studies.\*\* Washington, 1961. 163 p. \$1.00.
- United States and Canadian Publications on Africa in 1960.\*\* 1962. 98 p. 50 cents.

## OUT OF PRINT

- African Libraries, Book Production, and Archives: A List of References. 1962. 64 p.
- Nigerian Official Publications, 1869-1959: A Guide. 1959. 153 p.
- North and Northeast Africa: A Selected, Annotated List of Writings, 1951-1957. 1957. 182 p.
- Official Publications of Somaliland, 1941-1959: A Guide. 1960. 41 p. Positive microfilm available from Photoduplication Service, Library of Congress, for \$2.25.

---

\*Available from the Card Division, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C., 20540.

\*\*Available from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 20402.













LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 133 289 2